2004 ASME BOILER & PRESSURE VESSEL CODE

AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

VIII

Division 1

RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION OF PRESSURE VESSELS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE
AN INTERNATIONAL CODE

RULES FOR CONSTRUCTION OF PRESSURE VESSELS

VIII

Division 1

2004 Edition
July 1, 2004

ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE
SUBCOMMITTEE ON PRESSURE VESSELS

THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
NEW YORK, NEW YORK

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Date of Issuance: July 1, 2004
(Includes all Addenda dated July 2003 and earlier)

This international code or standard was developed under procedures accredited as meeting the criteria for American National Standards and it is an American National Standard. The Standards Committee that approved the code or standard was balanced to assure that individuals from competent and concerned interests have had an opportunity to participate. The proposed code or standard was made available for public review and comment that provides an opportunity for additional public input from industry, academia, regulatory agencies, and the public-at-large.

ASME does not "approve," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, proprietary device, or activity.

ASME does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights asserted in connection with any items mentioned in this document, and does not undertake to insure anyone utilizing a standard against liability for infringement of any applicable letters patent, nor assume any such liability. Users of a code or standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any such patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility.

Participation by federal agency representative(s) or person(s) affiliated with industry is not to be interpreted as government or industry endorsement of this code or standard.

ASME accepts responsibility for only those interpretations of this document issued in accordance with the established ASME procedures and policies, which precludes the issuance of interpretations by individuals.

The footnotes in this document are part of this American National Standard.

ASME collective membership mark

The above ASME symbols are registered in the U.S. Patent Office.

"ASME" is the trademark of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

No part of this document may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 56-3934
Printed in the United States of America

Adopted by the Council of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 1914.
Revised 1940, 1941, 1943, 1946, 1949, 1952, 1953, 1956, 1959, 1962, 1965, 1968, 1971, 1974, 1977, 1980, 1983, 1986, 1989, 1992, 1995, 1998, 2001, 2004

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers
Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990

Copyright © 2004 by
THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS
All Rights Reserved

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

2004 ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE

04

SECTIONS

I Rules for Construction of Power Boilers

II Materials
  Part A — Ferrous Material Specifications
  Part B — Nonferrous Material Specifications
  Part C — Specifications for Welding Rods, Electrodes, and Filler Metals
  Part D — Properties (Customary)
  Part D — Properties (Metric)

III Subsection NCA — General Requirements for Division 1 and Division 2

III Division 1
  Subsection NB — Class 1 Components
  Subsection NC — Class 2 Components
  Subsection ND — Class 3 Components
  Subsection NE — Class MC Components
  Subsection NF — Supports
  Subsection NG — Core Support Structures
  Subsection NH — Class 1 Components in Elevated Temperature Service
  Appendices

III Division 2 — Code for Concrete Containments

III Division 3 — Containments for Transport and Storage of Spent Nuclear Fuel and High Level Radioactive Material and Waste

IV Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers

V Nondestructive Examination

VI Recommended Rules for the Care and Operation of Heating Boilers

VII Recommended Guidelines for the Care of Power Boilers

VIII Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels
  Division 1
  Division 2 — Alternative Rules
  Division 3 — Alternative Rules for Construction of High Pressure Vessels

IX Welding and Brazing Qualifications

X Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Pressure Vessels

XI Rules for Inservice Inspection of Nuclear Power Plant Components

XII Rules for Construction and Continued Service of Transport Tanks

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ADDENDA

Colored-sheet Addenda, which include additions and revisions to individual Sections of the Code, are published annually and will be sent automatically to purchasers of the applicable Sections up to the publication of the 2007 Code. The 2004 Code is available only in the loose-leaf format; accordingly, the Addenda will be issued in the loose-leaf, replacement-page format.

INTERPRETATIONS

ASME issues written replies to inquiries concerning interpretation of technical aspects of the Code. The Interpretations for each individual Section will be published separately and will be included as part of the update service to that Section. They will be issued semiannually (July and December) up to the publication of the 2004 Code. Interpretations of Section III, Divisions 1 and 2, will be included with the update service to Subsection NCA.

Beginning with the 2004 Edition, Interpretations of the Code will be distributed annually in July with the issuance of the edition and subsequent addenda. Interpretations previously distributed in January will be posted in January at www.cstools.asme.org/interpretations and included in the July distribution.

CODE CASES

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider proposed additions and revisions to the Code and to formulate Cases to clarify the intent of existing requirements or provide, when the need is urgent, rules for materials or constructions not covered by existing Code rules. Those Cases which have been adopted will appear in the appropriate 2004 Code Cases book: (1) Boilers and Pressure Vessels and (2) Nuclear Components. Supplements will be sent automatically to the purchasers of the Code Cases books up to the publication of the 2007 Code.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

CONTENTS

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Openings and Reinforcements

Braced and Stayed Surfaces

Ligaments

Fabrication

Inspection and Tests

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Design

Fabrication

Inspection and Tests

Marking and Reports

Pressure Relief Devices

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Inspection and Tests

Marking and Reports

Pressure Relief Devices

Figures

Tables

General

Materials

Design

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Inspection and Tests

Marking and Reports

Pressure Relief Devices

Figure

Tables

General

Materials

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Design

Fabrication

Inspection and Tests

Marking and Reports

Pressure Relief Devices

Tables

General

Materials

Design

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Nondestructive Examination of Welded Joints

Fabrication

Inspection and Testing

Marking and Reports

Pressure Relief Devices

Figures

General

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDICES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FOREWORD

04

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers set up a committee in 1911 for the purpose of formulating standard rules for the construction of steam boilers and other pressure vessels. This committee is now called the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee.

The Committee's function is to establish rules of safety, relating only to pressure integrity, governing the construction[1] of boilers, pressure vessels, transport tanks and nuclear components, and inservice inspection for pressure integrity of nuclear components and transport tanks, and to interpret these rules when questions arise regarding their intent. This code does not address other safety issues relating to the construction of boilers, pressure vessels, transport tanks and nuclear components, and the inservice inspection of nuclear components and transport tanks. The user of the Code should refer to other pertinent codes, standards, laws, regulations, or other relevant documents. With few exceptions, the rules do not, of practical necessity, reflect the likelihood and consequences of deterioration in service related to specific service fluids or external operating environments. Recognizing this, the Committee has approved a wide variety of construction rules in this Section to allow the user or his designee to select those which will provide a pressure vessel having a margin for deterioration in service so as to give a reasonably long, safe period of usefulness. Accordingly, it is not intended that this Section be used as a design handbook; rather, engineering judgment must be employed in the selection of those sets of Code rules suitable to any specific service or need.

This Code contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for construction activities. The Code does not address all aspects of these activities and those aspects which are not specifically addressed should not be considered prohibited. The Code is not a handbook and cannot replace education, experience, and the use of engineering judgment. The phrase *engineering judgment* refers to technical judgments made by knowledgeable designers experienced in the application of the Code. Engineering judgments must be consistent with Code philosophy and such judgments must never be used to overrule mandatory requirements or specific prohibitions of the Code.

The Committee recognizes that tools and techniques used for design and analysis change as technology progresses and expects engineers to use good judgment in the application of these tools. The designer is responsible for complying with Code rules and demonstrating compliance with Code equations when such equations are mandatory. The Code neither requires nor prohibits the use of computers for the design or analysis of components constructed to the requirements of the Code. However, designers and engineers using computer programs for design or analysis are cautioned that they are responsible for all technical assumptions inherent in the programs they use and they are responsible for the application of these programs to their design.

The Code does not fully address tolerances. When dimensions, sizes, or other parameters are not specified with tolerances, the values of these parameters are considered nominal and allowable tolerances or local variances may be considered acceptable when based on engineering judgment and standard practices as determined by the designer.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee deals with the care and inspection of boilers and pressure vessels in service only to the extent of providing suggested rules of good practice as an aid to owners and their inspectors.

The rules established by the Committee are not to be interpreted as approving, recommending, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design or as limiting in any way the manufacturer's freedom to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the Code rules.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee meets regularly to consider revisions of the rules, new rules as dictated by technological development, Code Cases, and requests for interpretations. Only the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee has the authority to provide official interpretations of this Code. Requests for revisions, new rules, Code Cases, or interpretations shall be addressed to the Secretary in writing and shall give full particulars in order to receive consideration and action (see Mandatory Appendix covering preparation of technical inquiries). Proposed revisions to the Code resulting from inquiries

[1] *Construction*, as used in this Foreword, is an all-inclusive term comprising materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

will be presented to the Main Committee for appropriate action. The action of the Main Committee becomes effective only after confirmation by letter ballot of the Committee and approval by ASME.

Proposed revisions to the Code approved by the Committee are submitted to the American National Standards Institute and published at *http://cstools.asme.org/wbpms/public/index.cfm?PublicReview=Revisions* to invite comments from all interested persons. After the allotted time for public review and final approval by ASME, revisions are published annually in Addenda to the Code.

Code Cases may be used in the construction of components to be stamped with the ASME Code symbol beginning with the date of their approval by ASME.

After Code revisions are approved by ASME, they may be used beginning with the date of issuance shown on the Addenda. Revisions, except for revisions to material specifications in Section II, Parts A and B, become mandatory six months after such date of issuance, except for boilers or pressure vessels contracted for prior to the end of the six-month period. Revisions to material specifications are originated by the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and other recognized national or international organizations, and are usually adopted by ASME. However, those revisions may or may not have any effect on the suitability of material, produced to earlier editions of specifications, for use in ASME construction. ASME material specifications approved for use in each construction Code are listed in the Guidelines for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Parts A and B. These Guidelines list, for each specification, the latest edition adopted by ASME, and earlier and later editions considered by ASME to be identical for ASME construction.

The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in the formulation of its rules and in the establishment of maximum design and operating pressures considers materials, construction, methods of fabrication, inspection, and safety devices.

The Code Committee does not rule on whether a component shall or shall not be constructed to the provisions of the Code. The Scope of each Section has been established to identify the components and parameters considered by the Committee in formulating the Code rules.

Questions or issues regarding compliance of a specific component with the Code rules are to be directed to the ASME Certificate Holder (Manufacturer). Inquiries concerning the interpretation of the Code are to be directed to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee. ASME is to be notified should questions arise concerning improper use of an ASME Code symbol.

The specifications for materials given in Section II are identical with or similar to those of specifications published by ASTM, AWS, and other recognized national or international organizations. When reference is made in an ASME material specification to a non-ASME specification for which a companion ASME specification exists, the reference shall be interpreted as applying to the ASME material specification. Not all materials included in the material specifications in Section II have been adopted for Code use. Usage is limited to those materials and grades adopted by at least one of the other Sections of the Code for application under rules of that Section. All materials allowed by these various Sections and used for construction within the scope of their rules shall be furnished in accordance with material specifications contained in Section II or referenced in the Guidelines for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Parts A and B, except where otherwise provided in Code Cases or in the applicable Section of the Code. Materials covered by these specifications are acceptable for use in items covered by the Code Sections only to the degree indicated in the applicable Section. Materials for Code use should preferably be ordered, produced, and documented on this basis; Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Part A and Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Section II, Part B list editions of ASME and year dates of specifications that meet ASME requirements and which may be used in Code construction. Material produced to an acceptable specification with requirements different from the requirements of the corresponding specifications listed in the Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Part A or Part B may also be used in accordance with the above, provided the material manufacturer or vessel manufacturer certifies with evidence acceptable to the Authorized Inspector that the corresponding requirements of specifications listed in the Guideline for Acceptable ASTM Editions in Part A or Part B have been met. Material produced to an acceptable material specification is not limited as to country of origin.

When required by context in this Section, the singular shall be interpreted as the plural, and vice-versa; and the feminine, masculine, or neuter gender shall be treated as such other gender as appropriate.

Either U.S. Customary units or SI units may be used for compliance with all requirements of this edition, but one system shall be used consistently throughout for all phases of construction.

Either the U.S. Customary units or SI units that are listed in Mandatory Appendix 33 are identified in the text, or are identified in the nomenclature for equations, shall be used consistently for all phases of construction (e.g., materials, design, fabrication, and reports). Since values in the two systems are not exact equivalents, each system shall be used independently of the other without mixing U.S. Customary units and SI units.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

When SI units are selected, U.S. Customary values in referenced specifications that do not contain SI units shall be converted to SI values to at least three significant figures for use in calculations and other aspects of construction.

With the publication of the 2004 Edition, Section II, Part D is published as two separate publications. One publication contains values only in U.S. Customary units and the other contains values only in SI units. The selection of the version to use is dependent on the set of units selected for construction.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF CODE SYMBOLS AND CODE AUTHORIZATION IN ADVERTISING

ASME has established procedures to authorize qualified organizations to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. It is the aim of the Society to provide recognition of organizations so authorized. An organization holding authorization to perform various activities in accordance with the requirements of the Code may state this capability in its advertising literature.

Organizations that are authorized to use Code Symbols for marking items or constructions that have been constructed and inspected in compliance with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code are issued Certificates of Authorization. It is the aim of the Society to maintain the standing of the Code Symbols for the benefit of the users, the enforcement jurisdictions, and the holders of the symbols who comply with all requirements.

Based on these objectives, the following policy has been established on the usage in advertising of facsimiles of the symbols, Certificates of Authorization, and reference to Code construction. The American Society of Mechanical Engineers does not "approve," "certify," "rate," or "endorse" any item, construction, or activity and there shall be no statements or implications that might so indicate. An organization holding a Code Symbol and/or a Certificate of Authorization may state in advertising literature that items, constructions, or activities "are built (produced or performed) or activities conducted in accordance with the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code," or "meet the requirements of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code."

The ASME Symbol shall be used only for stamping and nameplates as specifically provided in the Code. However, facsimiles may be used for the purpose of fostering the use of such construction. Such usage may be by an association or a society, or by a holder of a Code Symbol who may also use the facsimile in advertising to show that clearly specified items will carry the symbol. General usage is permitted only when all of a manufacturer's items are constructed under the rules.

The ASME logo, which is the cloverleaf with the letters ASME within, shall not be used by any organization other than ASME.

STATEMENT OF POLICY ON THE USE OF ASME MARKING TO IDENTIFY MANUFACTURED ITEMS

The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code provides rules for the construction of boilers, pressure vessels, and nuclear components. This includes requirements for materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, and stamping. Items constructed in accordance with all of the applicable rules of the Code are identified with the official Code Symbol Stamp described in the governing Section of the Code.

Markings such as "ASME," "ASME Standard," or any other marking including "ASME" or the various Code Symbols shall not be used on any item that is not constructed in accordance with all of the applicable requirements of the Code.

Items shall not be described on ASME Data Report Forms nor on similar forms referring to ASME that tend to imply that all Code requirements have been met when, in fact, they have not been. Data Report Forms covering items not fully complying with ASME requirements should not refer to ASME or they should clearly identify all exceptions to the ASME requirements.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

PERSONNEL
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee
Subcommittees, Subgroups, and Working Groups

As of January 1, 2004

MAIN COMMITTEE

G. G. Karcher, *Chair*
J. G. Feldstein, *Vice Chair*
J. S. Brzuszkiewicz, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
J. E. Batey
D. L. Berger
M. N. Bressler
D. A. Canonico
F. C. Cherny
D. A. Douin
R. E. Gimple
M. Gold
T. E. Hansen
C. L. Hoffmann
D. F. Landers
W. M. Lundy
J. R. MacKay
U. R. Miller
R. A. Moen
P. A. Molvie
C. C. Neely
T. P. Pastor
C. J. Pieper
M. D. Rana
B. W. Roberts
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
A. Selz
R. W. Swayne
D. E. Tanner
S. V. Voorhees

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE (MAIN COMMITTEE)

J. G. Feldstein, *Chair*
G. G. Karcher, *Vice Chair*
J. S. Brzuszkiewicz, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
D. A. Canonico
R. E. Gimple
M. Gold
J. R. MacKay
T. P. Pastor
A. Selz
A. J. Spencer
D. E. Tanner

HONORARY MEMBERS (MAIN COMMITTEE)

R. D. Bonner
R. J. Bosnak
R. J. Cepluch
L. J. Chockie
W. D. Doty
J. R. Farr
R. C. Griffin
E. J. Hemzy
M. H. Jawad
J. LeCoff
F. N. Moschini
W. E. Somers
L. P. Zick, Jr.

HONORS AND AWARDS COMMITTEE

J. R. MacKay, *Chair*
J. N. Shih, *Secretary*
J. E. Batey
D. L. Berger
J. G. Feldstein
M. Gold
F. E. Gregor
W. L. Haag, Jr.
M. H. Jawad
D. P. Jones
T. P. Pastor
C. J. Pieper
R. R. Stevenson

MARINE CONFERENCE GROUP

J. Tiratto, *Chair*
L. W. Douthwaite
J. L. Jones

CONFERENCE COMMITTEE

D. A. Douin — Illinois *(Chair)*
R. D. Reetz — North Dakota *(Vice Chair)*
D. E. Tanner — Ohio *(Secretary)*
R. J. Aben, Jr. — Michigan
J. S. Aclaro — California
J. T. Amato — Minnesota
E. A. Anderson — Chicago, Illinois
F. R. Andrus — Oregon
R. D. Austin — Colorado
M. M. Barber — Michigan
R. Barlett — Arizona
F. P. Barton — Virginia
W. K. Brigham — New Hampshire
D. E. Burns — Nebraska
J. H. Burpee — Maine
C. Castle — Nova Scotia, Canada
R. R. Cate — Louisiana
D. C. Cook — California
R. A. Coomes — Kentucky
D. Eastman — Newfoundland and Labrador, Canada
G. L. Ebeyer — New Orleans, Louisiana
E. Everett — Georgia
J. M. Given, Jr. — North Carolina
P. C. Hackford — Utah
J. B. Harlan — Delaware
M. L. Holloway — Oklahoma
K. Hynes — Prince Edward Island, Canada
D. T. Jagger — Ohio
D. J. Jenkins — Kansas
S. Katz — British Columbia, Canada
M. Kotb — Quebec, Canada
K. T. Lau — Alberta, Canada
S. E. Lyons — Arkansas
M. A. Malek — Florida
G. F. Mankel — Alaska
R. D. Marvin II — Washington
I. W. Mault — Manitoba, Canada
H. T. McEwen — Mississippi
R. Mile — Ontario, Canada
M. F. Mooney — Massachusetts
Y. Nagpaul — Hawaii
T. Parks — Texas
J. D. Payton — Pennsylvania
M. R. Peterson — Alaska
H. D. Pfaff — South Dakota
D. C. Price — Yukon Territory, Canada
R. S. Pucek — Wisconsin
D. E. Ross — New Brunswick, Canada
M. Shuff — West Virginia
N. Surtees — Saskatchewan, Canada
M. R. Toth — Tennessee
M. J. Verhagen — Wisconsin
M. Washington — New Jersey
R. B. West — Iowa
M. J. Wheel — Vermont
D. J. Willis — Indiana

INTERNATIONAL INTEREST REVIEW GROUP

V. Felix
S. H. Leong
P. Williamson

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SUBCOMMITTEE ON POWER BOILERS (SC I)

J. R. MacKay, *Chair*
D. L. Berger, *Vice Chair*
J. N. Shih, *Secretary*
D. A. Canonico
K. K. Coleman
P. D. Edwards
J. Hainsworth
T. E. Hansen
J. S. Hunter
C. F. Jeerings
J. P. Libbrecht
H. Lorenz
W. L. Lowry
T. C. McGough
R. E. McLaughlin
P. A. Molvie
J. T. Pillow
R. G. Presnak
B. W. Roberts
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
J. P. Swezy
J. M. Tanzosh
R. V. Wielgoszinski
D. J. Willis

Honorary Members (SC I)

D. N. French
W. E. Somers
R. L. Williams

Subgroup on Design (SC I)

P. A. Molvie, *Chair*
M. L. Coats
J. D. Fishburn
C. F. Jeerings
J. C. Light
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
J. L. Seigle
N. Surtees
J. P. Swezy
S. V. Torkildson
R. V. Wielgoszinski

Subgroup on Fabrication and Examination (SC I)

D. L. Berger, *Chair*
J. T. Pillow, *Secretary*
J. Hainsworth
T. E. Hansen
T. C. McGough
R. E. McLaughlin
Y. Oishi
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
J. P. Swezy
R. V. Wielgoszinski

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC I)

R. E. McLaughlin, *Chair*
J. Hainsworth, *Secretary*
D. L. Berger
P. D. Edwards
C. F. Jeerings
J. C. Light
W. L. Lowry
T. C. McGough
J. T. Pillow
R. P. Sullivan
R. V. Wielgoszinski
D. J. Willis

Subgroup on Materials (SC I)

B. W. Roberts, *Chair*
J. S. Hunter, *Secretary*
D. A. Canonico
K. K. Coleman
K. L. Hayes
J. F. Henry
J. P. Libbrecht
F. Masuyama
J. M. Tanzosh
H. N. Titer, Jr.

Subgroup on Piping (SC I)

T. E. Hansen, *Chair*
D. L. Berger
P. D. Edwards
W. L. Lowry
F. Massi
T. C. McGough
M. W. Smith
E. A. Whittle

Heat Recovery Steam Generators Task Group (SC I & SC VIII)

T. E. Hansen, *Chair*
R. W. Anderson
G. L. Bostick
I. J. Cotton
L. R. Douglas
J. D. Fishburn
E. M. Ortman
A. L. Plumley
D. W. Rahoi
R. D. Scheuler, Jr.
R. H. Sirois
J. C. Steverman, Jr.
J. K. Tercey
S. R. Timko
S. V. Torkildson

SUBCOMMITTEE ON MATERIALS (SC II)

M. Gold, *Chair*
R. A. Moen, *Vice Chair*
N. Lobo, *Secretary*
D. C. Agarwal
W. R. Apblett, Jr.
M. N. Bressler
H. D. Bushfield
J. Cameron
D. A. Canonico
D. W. Gandy
M. H. Gilkey
J. F. Grubb
J. F. Henry
C. L. Hoffmann
F. Masuyama
R. K. Nanstad
M. L. Nayyar
E. G. Nisbett
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
E. Shapiro
R. C. Sutherlin
R. W. Swindeman
J. M. Tanzosh
B. E. Thurgood
J. C. Vaillant

Honorary Members (SC II)

A. P. Ahrendt
T. M. Cullen
R. Dirscherl
W. D. Doty
W. D. Edsall
J. J. Heger
G. C. Hsu
C. E. Spaeder, Jr.
A. W. Zeuthen

Subgroup on External Pressure (SC II & SC-D)

R. W. Mikitka, *Chair*
J. A. Morrow, *Secretary*
S. R. Frost
D. S. Griffin
J. F. Grubb
M. Katcher
E. Michalopoulos
D. Nadel
D. F. Shaw
C. H. Sturgeon

Subgroup on Ferrous Specifications (SC II)

E. G. Nisbett, *Chair*
A. Appleton
R. M. Davison
B. M. Dingman
M. J. Dosdourian
T. Graham
J. F. Grubb
K. M. Hottle
D. Janikowski
D. C. Krouse
L. J. Lavezzi
W. C. Mack
J. K. Mahaney
A. S. Melilli
K. E. Orie
E. Upitis
R. Zawierucha
A. W. Zeuthen

Subgroup on International Material Specifications (SC II)

W. M. Lundy, *Chair*
J. P. Glaspie, *Secretary*
D. C. Agarwal
H. D. Bushfield
D. A. Canonico
W. D. Doty
D. M. Fryer
A. F. Garbolevsky
J. P. Glaspie
M. Gold
D. O. Henry
M. Higuchi
H. Lorenz
F. Osweiller
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
E. A. Steen
E. Upitis

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Subgroup on Nonferrous Alloys (SC II)

D. W. Rahoi, *Chair*
M. Katcher, *Secretary*
W. R. Apblett, Jr.
H. D. Bushfield
L. G. Coffee
M. H. Gilkey
E. L. Hibner
G. C. Hsu
A. G. Kireta, Jr.
J. Kissell
O. Miyahara
D. T. Peters
E. Shapiro
R. C. Sutherlin
R. Zawierucha

Subgroup on Strength, Ferrous Alloys (SC II)

C. L. Hoffmann, *Chair*
J. M. Tanzosh, *Secretary*
W. R. Apblett, Jr.
D. A. Canonico
K. K. Coleman
M. Gold
F. Masuyama
O. Miyahara
R. A. Moen
H. Murakami
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
M. S. Shelton
R. W. Swindeman
B. E. Thurgood
T. P. Vassallo

Subgroup on Strength of Weldments (SC II & SC IX)

J. M. Tanzosh, *Chair*
K. K. Coleman
W. D. Doty
K. L. Hayes
J. F. Henry
D. W. Rahoi
B. W. Roberts
W. J. Sperko
B. E. Thurgood

Subgroup on Toughness (SC II & SC VIII)

W. S. Jacobs, *Chair*
J. L. Arnold
R. J. Basile
J. Cameron
W. D. Doty
H. E. Gordon
C. D. Lamb
K. Mokhtarian
C. C. Neely
T. T. Phillips
M. D. Rana
D. A. Swanson
E. Upitis
S. Yukawa

Special Working Group on Nonmetallic Materials (SC II)

C. W. Rowley, *Chair*
F. L. Brown
P. S. Hill
F. R. Volgstadt
R. H. Walker
F. Worth

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR POWER (SC III)

R. W. Barnes, *Chair*
R. M. Jessee, *Vice Chair*
C. A. Sanna, *Secretary*
Y. Asada
W. H. Borter
E. B. Branch
M. N. Bressler
F. C. Cherny
R. E. Cornman, Jr.
W. D. Doty
R. P. Deubler
B. A. Erler
G. M. Foster
D. H. Hanrath
R. S. Hill III
C. L. Hoffmann
C. C. Kim
D. F. Landers
W. C. LaRochelle
K. A. Manoly
E. A. Mayhew
W. N. McLean
R. A. Moen
C. J. Pieper
R. F. Reedy
B. B. Scott
J. D. Stevenson
C. H. Walters
K. R. Wichman

Honorary Member (SC III)

F. R. Drahos

Subgroup on Containment Systems for Spent Fuel and High-Level Waste Transport Packagings (SC III)

G. M. Foster, *Chair*
G. J. Solovey, *Vice Chair*
D. K. Morton, *Secretary*
W. H. Borter
J. T. Conner
E. L. Farrow
J. M. Floyd
R. S. Hill III
H. W. Lee
P. E. McConnell
I. D. McInnes
A. B. Meichler
G. C. Mok
R. E. Nickell
T. J. O'Connell
E. L. Pleins
T. Saegusa
H. P. Shrivastava
N. M. Simpson
R. H. Smith
J. D. Stevenson
C. J. Temus
P. Turula
A. D. Watkins
S. Yukawa

Subgroup on Design (SC III)

R. P. Deubler, *Chair*
C. W. Bruny, *Vice Chair*
A. N. Nguyen, *Secretary*
T. M. Adams
E. B. Branch
M. N. Bressler
D. L. Caldwell
J. R. Cole
R. E. Cornman, Jr.
A. A. Dermenjian
D. H. Hanrath
R. S. Hill III
R. I. Jetter
H. Kobayashi
J. T. Land
D. F. Landers
K. A. Manoly
R. J. Masterson
W. N. McLean
J. C. Minichiello
T. Nakamura
W. Z. Novak
I. Saito
G. C. Slagis
J. D. Stevenson
K. R. Wichman

Working Group on Supports (SG-D) (SC III)

R. J. Masterson, *Chair*
F. J. Birch, *Secretary*
U. S. Bandyopadhyay
R. P. Deubler
J. C. Finneran, Jr.
A. N. Nguyen
P. R. Olson
I. Saito
J. R. Stinson
D. V. Walshe
C.-I. Wu

Working Group on Core Support Structures (SG-D) (SC III)

J. T. Land

Working Group on Dynamic and Extreme Load Conditions (SG-D) (SC III)

D. L. Caldwell, *Chair*
P. L. Anderson, *Secretary*
M. K. Au-Yang
R. D. Blevins
P.-Y. Chen
W. S. LaPay
H. Lockert
P. R. Olson

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Working Group on Piping (SG-D) (SC III)

J. R. Cole, *Chair*
P. Hirschberg, *Secretary*
T. M. Adams
G. A. Antaki
J. Catalano
C. Y. Chern
J. T. Conner
R. J. Gurdal
R. W. Haupt
R. S. Hill III
D. F. Landers
V. Matzen
J. F. McCabe
J. C. Minichiello
F. F. Naguib
A. N. Nguyen
O. O. Oyamada
R. D. Patel
E. C. Rodabaugh
M. S. Sills
G. C. Slagis
V. K. Verma
E. A. Wais
C.-I. Wu

Working Group on Probabilistic Methods in Design (SG-D) (SC III)

R. S. Hill III, *Chair*
J. T. Conner, *Secretary*
T. Asayama
B. M. Ayyub
K. R. Balkey
A. A. Dermenjian
I. Saito
M. E. Schmidt
J. P. Tucker

Working Group on Pumps (SG-D) (SC III)

R. E. Cornman, Jr., *Chair*
A. A. Fraser
M. Higuchi
G. R. Jones
J. W. Leavitt
J. E. Livingston
J. R. Rajan
D. B. Spencer, Jr.
G. K. Vaghasia

Working Group on Valves (SG-D) (SC III)

W. N. McLean, *Chair*
R. R. Brodin
R. Koester
J. D. Page
S. N. Shields
H. R. Sonderegger
J. C. Tsacoyeanes
J. P. Tucker
R. G. Visalli

Working Group on Vessels (SG-D) (SC III)

C. W. Bruny, *Chair*
F. F. Naguib, *Secretary*
D. H. Hanrath
M. Hartzman
W. J. Heilker
A. Kalnins
R. B. Keating
D. E. Matthews
G. K. Miller
W. Z. Novak
E. Pelling
H. S. Thornton

Special Working Group on Environmental Effects (SG-D) (SC III)

W. Z. Novak, *Chair*
Y. Asada
R. S. Hill III
C. L. Hoffmann
R. A. Moen
S. Yukawa

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC III & SC 3C)

W. C. LaRochelle, *Chair*
C. A. Lizotte, *Secretary*
A. Appleton
B. H. Berg
E. A. Mayhew
R. P. McIntyre
R. Mile
M. R. Minick
B. B. Scott
H. K. Sharma
D. M. Vickery
D. V. Walshe
C. H. Walters

Subgroup on Materials, Fabrication, and Examination (SC III)

C. L. Hoffmann, *Chair*
G. P. Milley, *Secretary*
B. H. Berg
W. H. Borter
D. M. Doyle
G. M. Foster
G. B. Georgiev
R. M. Jessee
C. C. Kim
M. Lau
R. A. Moen
H. Murakami
C. J. Pieper
N. M. Simpson
W. J. Sperko
K. B. Stuckey
S. Yukawa

Subgroup on Pressure Relief (SC III)

S. F. Harrison, Jr., *Chair*
F. C. Cherny
E. M. Petrosky
A. L. Szeglin
D. G. Thibault

Special Working Group on Editing and Review (SC III)

R. F. Reedy, *Chair*
W. H. Borter
M. N. Bressler
D. L. Caldwell
R. P. Deubler
B. A. Erler
D. H. Hanrath
W. C. LaRochelle
J. D. Stevenson

JOINT ACI-ASME COMMITTEE ON CONCRETE COMPONENTS FOR NUCLEAR SERVICE (SC 3C)

M. F. Hessheimer, *Chair*
T. C. Inman, *Vice Chair*
A. J. Roby, *Secretary*
J. F. Artuso
A. C. Eberhardt
B. A. Erler
J. Gutierrez
D. C. Jeng
T. E. Johnson
N.-H. Lee
B. B. Scott
R. E. Shewmaker
J. D. Stevenson
A. Y. C. Wong

SUBCOMMITTEE ON HEATING BOILERS (SC IV)

P. A. Molvie, *Chair*
S. V. Voorhees, *Vice Chair*
G. Moino, *Secretary*
R. Bartlett
T. L. Bedeaux
D. C. Bixby
J. Calland
B. G. French
W. L. Haag, Jr.
J. D. Hoh
D. J. Jenkins
K. M. McTague
K. R. Moskwa
E. A. Nordstrom
J. L. Seigle
R. V. Wielgoszinski
F. P. Barton, *Honorary Member*
R. B. Duggan, *Honorary Member*
R. H. Weigel, *Honorary Member*
J. I. Woodward, *Honorary Member*

Subgroup on Care and Operation of Heating Boilers (SC IV)

S. V. Voorhees, *Chair*
T. L. Bedeaux
K. J. Hoey
J. D. Hoh
K. M. McTague
P. A. Molvie

Subgroup on Cast Iron Boilers (SC IV)

K. M. McTague, *Chair*
T. L. Bedeaux
C. P. McQuiggan
K. R. Moskwa
R. H. Weigel
J. I. Woodworth

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Subgroup on Water Heaters (SC IV)

W. L. Haag, Jr., *Chair*
J. Calland
T. D. Gantt
F. M. Lucas
K. M. McTague
E. Robinson
F. J. Schreiner
M. A. Taylor
T. E. Trant

Subgroup on Welded Boilers (SC IV)

J. L. Seigle, *Chair*
R. Bartlett
T. L. Bedeaux
J. Calland
B. G. French
E. A. Nordstrom
R. P. Sullivan
R. V. Wielgoszinski

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION (SC V)

J. E. Batey, *Chair*
F. B. Kovacs, *Vice Chair*
E. H. Maradiaga, *Secretary*
S. J. Akrin
A. S. Birks
N. Y. Faransso
G. W. Hembree
R. W. Kruzic
J. F. Manning
W. C. McGaughey
R. D. McGuire
D. R. Quattlebaum, Jr.
F. J. Sattler
E. F. Summers, Jr.
M. J. Wheel

Subgroup on General Requirements/ Personnel Qualifications and Inquiries (SC V)

R. D. McGuire, *Chair*
J. E. Batey
A. S. Birks
N. Y. Faransso
G. W. Hembree
J. R. MacKay
J. P. Swezy

Subgroup on Surface Examination Methods (SC V)

S. J. Akrin, *Chair*
A. S. Birks
N. Y. Faransso
G. W. Hembree
R. W. Kruzic
D. R. Quattlebaum, Jr.
F. J. Sattler
E. F. Summers, Jr.
M. J. Wheel

Subgroup on Volumetric Methods (SC V)

G. W. Hembree, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
J. E. Batey
N. Y. Faransso
R. Kellerhall
F. B. Kovacs
R. W. Kruzic
J. F. Manning
W. C. McGaughey
F. J. Sattler
E. F. Summers, Jr.
J. P. Swezy

Working Group on Acoustic Emissions (SG-VM) (SC V)

J. E. Batey
J. F. Manning

Working Group on Radiography (SG-VM) (SC V)

G. W. Hembree, *Chair*
S. J. Akrin
J. E. Batey
N. Y. Faransso
F. B. Kovacs
R. W. Kruzic
E. F. Summers, Jr.
J. P. Swezy

Working Group on Ultrasonics (SG-VM) (SC V)

N. Y. Faransso
O. F. Hedden
R. Kellerhall
R. W. Kruzic
J. F. Manning
W. C. McGaughey
F. J. Sattler

SUBCOMMITTEE ON PRESSURE VESSELS (SC VIII)

T. P. Pastor, *Chair*
K. Mokhtarian, *Vice Chair*
S. J. Rossi, *Secretary*
R. J. Basile
V. Bogosian
J. Cameron
R. M. Elliott
J. G. Feldstein
J. P. Glaspie
M. J. Houle
W. S. Jacobs
G. G. Karcher
K. T. Lau
R. Mahadeen
R. W. Mikitka
U. R. Miller
C. C. Neely
M. J. Pischke
M. D. Rana
S. C. Roberts
C. D. Rodery
K. J. Schneider
A. Selz
J. R. Sims, Jr.
E. A. Steen
K. K. Tam
E. L. Thomas, Jr.
E. Upitis

Subgroup on Design (SC VIII)

U. R. Miller, *Chair*
R. E. Knoblock, *Secretary*
O. A. Barsky
R. J. Basile
M. R. Bauman
M. R. Breach
S. M. Caldwell
J. R. Farr
J. P. Glaspie
W. S. Jacobs
R. W. Mikitka
K. Mokhtarian
T. P. Pastor
M. D. Rana
G. B. Rawls, Jr.
C. D. Rodery
A. Selz
S. C. Shah
C. H. Sturgeon
K. K. Tam
E. L. Thomas, Jr.

Subgroup on Fabrication and Inspection (SC VIII)

C. D. Rodery, *Chair*
E. A. Steen, *Vice Chair*
J. L. Arnold
W. J. Bees
H. E. Gordon
M. J. Houle
W. S. Jacobs
D. J. Kreft
D. C. Lamb
J. S. Lee
B. R. Morelock
M. J. Pischke
B. F. Shelley

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC VIII)

S. C. Roberts, *Chair*
D. B. Demichael, *Secretary*
V. Bogosian
R. M. Elliott
J. P. Glaspie
K. T. Lau
A. S. Mann
C. C. Neely
A. S. Olivares
K. J. Schneider
K. K. Tam

Subgroup on Materials (SC VIII)

J. Cameron, *Chair*
E. E. Morgenegg, *Secretary*
D. C. Agarwal
W. D. Doty
J. F. Grubb
E. L. Hibner
M. Katcher
H. Lorenz
W. M. Lundy
E. G. Nisbett
K. E. Orie
D. W. Rahoi
E. Upitis

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Special Working Group on Graphite Pressure Equipment (SC VIII)

M. D. Johnson, *Chair*
U. D'Urso, *Secretary*
G. Braussen
F. L. Brown
S. W. Hairston
S. Malone
M. R. Minick
T. A. Pindroh
E. Soltow
A. A. Stupica

Special Working Group on Heat Transfer Equipment (SC VIII)

R. Mahadeen, *Chair*
G. Aurioles, *Secretary*
O. A Barsky
S. M. Caldwell
M. J. Holtz
U. R. Miller
T. W. Norton
F. Osweiller
R. J. Stastny
S. Yokell
R. P. Zoldak

Special Working Group on High-Pressure Vessels (SC VIII)

J. R. Sims, Jr., *Chair*
D. T. Peters, *Vice Chair*
P. A. Reddington, *Secretary*
L. P. Antalffy
R. C. Biel
D. J. Burns
P. N. Chaku
R. E. Feigel
J. L. Heck, Jr.
A. H. Honza
V. T. Hwang
M. M. James
P. Jansson
J. A. Kapp
J. Keltjens
D. P. Kendall
A. K. Khare
S. C. Mordre
G. J. Mraz
K. D. Murphy
S. N. Pagay
E. H. Perez
E. D. Roll
J. F. Sullivan
F. W. Tatar
S. Tereda

Task Group on Impulsively Loaded Vessels (SC VIII)

R. B. Nickell, *Chair*
S. J. Rossi, *Secretary*
G. A. Antaki
D. D. Barker
R. C. Biel
D. W. Bowman
D. L. Caldwell
J. E. Didlake, Jr.
T. A. Duffey
B. L. Haroldsen
H. L. Heaton
E. A. Rodriguez
J. R. Sims, Jr.

SUBCOMMITTEE ON WELDING (SC IX)

J. G. Feldstein, *Chair*
W. J. Sperko, *Vice Chair*
M. R. Aranzamendez, *Secretary*
D. A. Bowers
M. L. Carpenter
L. P. Connor
W. D. Doty
P. D. Flenner
M. J. Houle
J. S. Lee
W. M. Lundy
R. D. McGuire
B. R. Newmark
A. S. Olivares
M. J. Pischke
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
M. J. Rice
G. W. Spohn III
M. J. Stanko
P. L. Van Fosson
R. R. Young
W. K. Scattergood, *Honorary Member*

Subgroup on Brazing (SC IX)

M. J. Pischke, *Chair*
F. Beckman
L. F. Campbell
M. L. Carpenter
M. J. Houle
C. F. Jeerings
J. P. Swezy

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC IX)

B. R. Newmark, *Chair*
P. R. Evans
R. M. Jessee
A. S. Olivares
H. B. Porter
R. A. Weiss
K. R. Willens

Subgroup on Materials (SC IX)

M. L. Carpenter, *Chair*
M. Bernasek
L. P. Connor
R. M. Jessee
C. C. Kim
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
H. A. Sadler
C. E. Sainz
W. J. Sperko
M. J. Stanko
R. R. Young

Subgroup on Performance Qualification (SC IX)

D. A. Bowers, *Chair*
V. A. Bell
L. P. Connor
R. B. Corbit
P. R. Evans
P. D. Flenner
K. L. Hayes
M. J. Houle
J. S. Lee
W. M. Lundy
R. D. McGuire
M. B. Sims
G. W. Spohn III

Subgroup on Procedure Qualification (SC IX)

D. A. Bowers, *Chair*
M. J. Rice, *Secretary*
R. K. Brown, Jr.
A. S. Olivares
F. C. Ouyang
S. D. Reynolds, Jr.
M. B. Sims
W. J. Sperko
J. P. Swezy
P. L. Van Fosson
T. C. Wiesner

SUBCOMMITTEE ON FIBER-REINFORCED PLASTIC PRESSURE VESSELS (SC X)

D. Eisberg, *Chair*
P. J. Conlisk, *Vice Chair*
A. J. Roby, *Secretary*
F. L. Brown
J. L. Bustillos
T. W. Cowley
T. J. Fowler
L. E. Hunt
J. C. Murphy
D. J. Painter
D. J. Pinell
G. Ramirez
J. R. Richter
B. F. Shelley
F. W. Van Name
D. O. Yancey, Jr.
P. H. Ziehl

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR INSERVICE INSPECTION (SC XI)

R. E. Gimple, *Chair*
G. C. Park, *Vice Chair*
O. Martinez, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
R. L. Beverly
T. J. Conner
D. D. Davis
R. L. Dyle
E. L. Farrow
F. E. Gregor
D. O. Henry
R. D. Kerr
D. F. Landers
J. T. Lindberg
K. Miya
W. E. Norris
A. T. Roberts III
W. R. Rogers III
L. Sage
D. A. Scarth
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
J. E. Staffiera
R. W. Swayne
E. W. Throckmorton
C. S. Withers
R. A. Yonekawa
K. K. Yoon

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Honorary Members (SC XI)

S. H. Bush
L. J. Chockie
C. D. Cowfer
O. F. Hedden
J. P. Houstrup
L. R. Katz
P. C. Riccardella

Subgroup on Evaluation Standards (SC XI)

W. H. Bamford, Jr., *Chair*
J. M. Bloom
R. C. Cipolla
S. Coffin
G. H. De Boo
R. M. Gamble
T. J. Griesbach
K. Hasegawa
P. J. Hijeck
D. N. Hopkins
Y. Imamura
K. Koyama
D. R. Lee
S. Ranganath
D. A. Scarth
W. L. Server
G. L. Stevens
C. A. Tomes
A. Van Der Sluys
K. R. Wichman
G. M. Wilkowski
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa

Working Group on Flaw Evaluation (SG-ES) (SC XI)

R. C. Cipolla, *Chair*
G. H. De Boo, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
M. Basol
J. M. Bloom
E. Friedman
T. J. Griesbach
F. D. Hayes
D. N. Hopkins
Y. Imamura
K. Koyama
D. R. Lee
H. S. Mehta
M. A. Mitchell
J. E. O'Sullivan
R. K. Qashu
S. Ranganath
D. A. Scarth
T. S. Schurman
W. L. Server
F. A. Simonen
K. R. Wichman
G. M. Wilkowski
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa
V. A. Zilberstein

Working Group on Operating Plant Criteria (SG-ES) (SC XI)

T. J. Griesbach, *Chair*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
H. Behnke
B. A. Bishop
E. Friedman
S. R. Gosselin
P. J. Hijeck
S. N. Malik
P. Manbeck
H. S. Mehta
R. Pace
J. S. Panesar
D. W. Peltola
J. R. Pfefferle
S. Ranganath
S. T. Rosinski
W. L. Server
E. A. Siegel
F. A. Simonen
G. L. Stevens
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa
C. Santos, Jr., *Alternate*

Working Group on Pipe Flaw Evaluation (SG-ES) (SC XI)

D. A. Scarth, *Chair*
G. M. Wilkowski, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
R. C. Cipolla
N. G. Cofie
S. K. Daftuar
G. H. De Boo
E. Friedman
L. F. Goyette
K. Hasegawa
D. N. Hopkins
K. K. Kashima
H. S. Mehta
K. Miyazaki
J. S. Panesar
K. K. Yoon
S. Yukawa
V. A. Zilberstein

Subgroup on Liquid-Metal–Cooled Systems (SC XI)

C. G. McCargar, *Chair*
W. L. Chase
R. W. King

Working Group on Liquid-Metal Reactor Covers (SG-LMCS) (SC XI)

W. L. Chase, *Chair*

Subgroup on Nondestructive Examination (SC XI)

J. C. Spanner, Jr., *Chair*
C. J. Wirtz, *Secretary*
F. L. Becker
N. R. Bentley
B. Bevins
T. L. Chan
C. B. Cheezem
C. D. Cowfer
F. J. Dodd
D. O. Henry
M. R. Hum
G. L. Lagleder
J. T. Lindberg
G. A. Lofthus
J. J. McArdle III
M. C. Modes
A. S. Reed
F. J. Schaaf, Jr.
M. F. Sherwin

Working Group on Personnel Qualification and Surface, Visual, and Eddy Current Examination (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

J. J. McArdle III, *Chair*
M. F. Sherwin, *Secretary*
D. R. Cordes
B. L. Curtis
G. B. Georgiev
D. O. Henry
A. S. Reed
J. C. Spanner, Jr.
S. H. Von Fuchs
C. J. Wirtz

Working Group on Pressure Testing (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

D. W. Lamond, *Chair*
J. M. Boughman, *Secretary*
T. M. Anselmi
J. J. Churchwell
R. J. Cimoch
S. Coffin
G. L. Fechter
K. W. Hall
R. E. Hall
J. K. McClanahan
A. McNeill III
B. L. Montgomery

Working Group on Procedure Qualification and Volumetric Examination (SG-NDE) (SC XI)

N. R. Bentley, *Chair*
B. Bevins, *Secretary*
F. L. Becker
C. B. Cheezem
C. D. Cowfer
S. R. Doctor
F. J. Dodd
M. E. Gothard
D. A. Jackson
R. Kellerhall
D. B. King
D. Kurek
G. L. Lagleder
G. A. Lofthus
S. M. Walker
C. E. Moyer, *Alternate*

Subgroup on Repair/Replacement Activities (SC XI)

R. W. Swayne, *Chair*
J. T. Conner, *Secretary*
D. E. Boyle
M. N. Bressler
R. E. Cantrell
E. V. Farrell, Jr.
P. D. Fisher
E. B. Gerlach
R. E. Gimple
R. A. Hermann
T. E. Hiss
E. V. Imbro
R. D. Kerr
S. L. McCracken
M. S. McDonald
B. R. Newton
W. R. Rogers III
R. R. Stevenson
D. E. Waskey
C. S. Withers
R. A. Yonekawa

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Working Group on Design and Programs (SG-RRA) (SC XI)

T. E. Hiss, *Chair*
E. V. Farrell, Jr., *Secretary*
D. E. Boyle
S. B. Brown
J. T. Conner
S. K. Fisher
E. B. Gerlach
D. R. Graham
E. V. Imbro
D. F. Landers
M. S. McDonald
W. R. Rogers III
R. R. Stevenson
R. W. Swayne
A. H. Taufique
T. P. Vassallo, Jr.
R. A. Yonekawa

Working Group on Welding and Special Repair Process (SG-RRA) (SC XI)

D. E. Waskey, *Chair*
R. E. Cantrell, *Secretary*
J. A. Davis
S. J. Findlan
P. D. Fisher
A. J. Giannuzzi
R. P. Indap
R. D. Kerr
C. C. Kim
M. Lau
S. L. McCracken
B. R. Newton
J. E. O'Sullivan
J. G. Weicks
K. R. Willens
E. V. Andruskiewicz, *Alternate*

Subgroup on Water-Cooled Systems (SC XI)

E. W. Throckmorton, *Chair*
G. E. Whitman, *Secretary*
J. M. Agold
G. L. Belew
J. M. Boughman
W. J. Briggs
R. E. Ciemiewicz
D. D. Davis
E. L. Farrow
O. F. Hedden
M. L. Herrera
S. D. Kulat
D. W. Lamond
M. P. Lintz
W. E. Norris
J. E. Staffiera
H. M. Stephens, Jr.
K. B. Thomas
S. M. Walker
R. A. West
H. L. Graves III, *Alternate*

Working Group on Containment (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

J. E. Staffiera, *Chair*
H. M. Stephens, Jr., *Secretary*
H. Ashar
W. J. Briggs
S. G. Brown
K. K. N. Chao
R. E. Ciemiewicz
R. C. Cox
M. J. Ferlisi
H. L. Graves III
H. T. Hill
R. D. Hough
C. N. Krishnaswamy
M. P. Lintz
D. Naus
S. C. Petitgout
W. E. Norris, *Alternate*

Working Group on ISI Optimization (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

E. A. Siegel, *Chair*
R. L. Turner, *Secretary*
W. H. Bamford, Jr.
N. R. Bentley
J. M. Boughman
R. E. Hall
D. G. Naujock
M. F. Sherwin
K. B. Thomas
G. E. Whitman

Working Group on Implementation of Risk-Based Examination (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

S. D. Kulat, *Chair*
J. M. Agold, *Secretary*
S. A. Ali
K. R. Balkey
B. A. Bishop
H. Q. Do
R. Fougerousse
M. R. Graybeal
M. L. Herrera
J. T. Lindberg
I. Mach
R. K. Mattu
A. McNeill III
J. T. Mitman
P. J. O'Regan
M. J. Paterak
J. H. Phillips
M. A. Pyne
F. A. Simonen
R. A. West
A. T. Keim, *Alternate*

Working Group on Inspection of Systems and Components (SG-WCS) (SC XI)

K. B. Thomas, *Chair*
G. E. Whitman, *Secretary*
V. L. Armentrout
G. L. Belew
H. Q. Do
R. Fougerousse
M. R. Hum
S. D. Kulat
J. T. Lindberg
I. Mach
D. G. Naujock
C. Pendleton
C. M. Ross
D. Song
E. W. Throckmorton
R. L. Turner
R. A. West

Working Group on General Requirements (SC XI)

A. T. Roberts III, *Chair*
K. Rhyne, *Secretary*
T. L. Chan
J. W. Crider
E. L. Farrow
D. W. Kinley III
R. K. Mattu
L. Sage
S. R. Scott
C. S. Withers

Special Working Group on Editing and Review (SC XI)

R. W. Swayne, *Chair*
R. L. Beverly
M. P. Lintz
L. Sage
J. E. Staffiera
C. J. Wirtz

Special Working Group on Plant Life Extension (SC XI)

F. E. Gregor, *Chair*
M. P. Lintz, *Secretary*
T. M. Anselmi
D. D. Davis
P.-T. Kuo
T. A. Meyer

SUBCOMMITTEE ON TRANSPORT TANKS (SC XII)

A. Selz, *Chair*
P. D. Stumpf, *Secretary*
A. N. Antoniou
C. Becht IV
M. L. Coats
M. A. Garrett
C. H. Hochman
G. G. Karcher
G. McRae
M. R. Minick
M. D. Rana
C. M. Serratella
S. Staniszewski
G. R. Stoeckinger
M. R. Toth
A. P. Varghese
S. V. Voorhees
C. H. Walters

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Subgroup on Design and Materials (SC XII)

M. D. Rana, *Chair*
C. Becht IV
D. A. Canonico
W. D. Doty
G. G. Karcher
M. Manikkam
S. L. McWilliams
T. P. Pastor
M. D. Pham
J. L. Rademacher
T. A. Rogers
C. M. Serratella
A. P. Varghese
M. R. Ward
E. A. Whittle

Subgroup on Fabrication and Inspection (SC XII)

S. V. Voorhees, *Chair*
J. A. Byers
D. A. Canonico
M. L. Coats
J. J. Engelking
B. L. Gehl
L. D. Holsinger
D. J. Kreft
G. McRae
M. R. Minick

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC XII)

C. H. Hochman, *Chair*
T. W. Alexander
D. M. Allbritten
C. A. Betts
J. F. Cannon
J. L. Freiler
W. L. Garfield
M. A. Garrett
K. L. Gilmore
T. B. Lee
N. J. Paulick
G. R. Stoeckinger
M. R. Toth
C. H. Walters
L. Wolpert

SUBCOMMITTEE ON BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL ACCREDITATION (SC-BPVA)

K. I. Baron, *Secretary*
M. B. Doherty
P. D. Edwards
R. M. Elliott
P. C. Hackford
W. C. LaRochelle
B. B. MacDonald
L. E. McDonald
K. M. McTague
R. K. Reamey
M. L. Sisk
N. Surtees
D. E. Tanner
B. C. Turczynski
D. E. Tuttle
V. Bogosian, *Alternate*
M. A. DeVries, *Alternate*
C. E. Ford, *Alternate*
J. W. Frey, *Alternate*
T. E. Hansen, *Alternate*
L. J. Kuchera, *Alternate*
K. T. Lau, *Alternate*
G. P. Milley, *Alternate*
B. R. Morelock, *Alternate*
J. D. O'Leary, *Alternate*
J. A. West, *Alternate*
R. V. Wielgoszinski, *Alternate*
A. J. Spencer, *Honorary Member*

SUBCOMMITTEE ON NUCLEAR ACCREDITATION (SC-NA)

R. R. Stevenson, *Chair*
W. C. LaRochelle, *Vice Chair*
M. C. Tromba, *Secretary*
V. Bogosian
M. N. Bressler
G. Deily
S. M. Goodwin
K. A. Huber
M. Kotb
R. P. McIntyre
M. R. Minick
H. B. Prasse
T. E. Quaka
A. T. Roberts III
P. D. Edwards, *Alternate*
B. G. Kovarik, *Alternate*
C. Lizotte, *Alternate*
D. E. Tanner, *Alternate*
R. V. Wielgoszinski, *Alternate*
H. L. Wiger, *Alternate*
O. E. Trapp, *Staff Representative*

SUBCOMMITTEE ON DESIGN (SC-D)

R. J. Basile, *Chair*
E. H. Maradiaga, *Secretary*
R. W. Barnes
M. R. Breach
R. P. Deubler
G. G. Graven
R. I. Jetter
D. P. Jones
R. W. Mikitka
U. R. Miller
W. J. O'Donnell
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
A. Selz

Subgroup on Design Analysis (SC-D)

M. R. Breach
P. J. Conlisk
R. J. Gurdal
G. L. Hollinger
D. P. Jones
A. Kalnins
W. J. Koves
O. Maekawa
G. Taxacher
E. L. Thomas, Jr.
R. A. Whipple

Subgroup on Elevated Temperature Design (SC-D)

R. I. Jetter, *Chair*
C. Becht IV
J. Cervenka
D. S. Griffin
M. H. Jawad
W. J. O'Donnell
D. A. Osage
J. S. Porowski
D. F. Shaw
M. S. Shelton

Subgroup on Fatigue Strength (SC-D)

W. J. O'Donnell, *Chair*
P. R. Donavin
R. J. Gurdal
J. A. Hayward
P. Hirschberg
P. Hsu
D. P. Jones
G. Kharshafdjian
C. Lawton
S. Majumdar
M. J. Manjoine
T. Nakamura
G. Taxacher
H. H. Ziada

Subgroup on Openings (SC-D)

M. R. Breach, *Chair*
R. W. Mikitka, *Secretary*
G. G. Graven
V. T. Hwang
J. C. Light
R. B. Luney
J. P. Madden
D. R. Palmer
J. A. Pfeifer
M. D. Rana
E. C. Rodabaugh

Special Working Group on Bolted Flanged Joints (SC-D)

R. W. Mikitka, *Chair*
G. D. Bibel
E. Michalopoulos
S. N. Pagay
P. G. Scheckermann
R. W. Schneider
R. D. Schueler, Jr.
A. Selz
M. S. Shelton

SUBCOMMITTEE ON SAFETY VALVE REQUIREMENTS (SC-SVR)

S. F. Harrison, Jr., *Chair*
J. A. West, *Vice Chair*
U. D'Urso, *Secretary*
J. F. Ball
S. Cammeresi
J. A. Cox
R. D. Danzy
D. B. Demichael
R. J. Doelling
H. I. Gregg
P. C. Hackford
W. F. Hart
C. A. Neumann
D. J. Scallan
A. J. Spencer
J. C. Standfast
Z. Wang

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Subgroup on Design (SC-SVR)

J. A. West, *Chair*
R. D. Danzy
R. J. Doelling
H. I. Gregg
D. Miller
A. J. Spencer
T. R. Tarbay

Subgroup on General Requirements (SC-SVR)

D. B. Demichael, *Chair*
J. F. Ball
G. Brazier
J. P. Glaspie
P. C. Hackford
C. A. Neumann
J. W. Ramsey
J. W. Richardson
J. C. Standfast

Subgroup on Testing (SC-SVR)

J. A. Cox, *Chair*
S. Cammeresi
J. E. Cierpiot
G. D. Goodson
W. F. Hart
K. C. Roy
D. J. Scallan
Z. Wang

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

INTRODUCTION

SCOPE

U-1 SCOPE

U-1(a)

U-1(a)(1) The Foreword provides the basis for the rules described in this Division.

U-1(a)(2) For the scope of this Division, pressure vessels are containers for the containment of pressure, either internal or external. This pressure may be obtained from an external source, or by the application of heat from a direct or indirect source, or any combination thereof.

U-1(a)(3) This Division contains mandatory requirements, specific prohibitions, and nonmandatory guidance for pressure vessel materials, design, fabrication, examination, inspection, testing, certification, and pressure relief. The Code does not address all aspects of these activities, and those aspects which are not specifically addressed should not be considered prohibited. Engineering judgment must be consistent with the philosophy of this Division, and such judgments must never be used to overrule mandatory requirements or specific prohibitions of this Division. See also informative and nonmandatory guidance regarding metallurgical phenomena in Appendix A of Section II, Part D.

U-1(b) This Division is divided into three Subsections, Mandatory Appendices, and Nonmandatory Appendices. Subsection A consists of Part UG, covering the general requirements applicable to all pressure vessels. Subsection B covers specific requirements that are applicable to the various methods used in the fabrication of pressure vessels. It consists of Parts UW, UF, and UB dealing with welded, forged, and brazed methods, respectively. Subsection C covers specific requirements applicable to the several classes of materials used in pressure vessel construction. It consists of Parts UCS, UNF, UHA, UCI, UCL, UCD, UHT, ULW, and ULT dealing with carbon and low alloy steels, nonferrous metals, high alloy steels, cast iron, clad and lined material, cast ductile iron, ferritic steels with properties enhanced by heat treatment, layered construction, and low temperature materials, respectively. Section II, Part D also contains tables of maximum allowable stress values for these classes of materials.

The Mandatory Appendices address specific subjects not covered elsewhere in this Division, and their requirements are mandatory when the subject covered is included in construction under this Division. The Nonmandatory Appendices provide information and suggested good practices.

U-1(c)

U-1(c)(1) The scope of this Division has been established to identify the components and parameters considered in formulating the rules given in this Division. Laws or regulations issued by municipality, state, provincial, federal, or other enforcement or regulatory bodies having jurisdiction at the location of an installation establish the mandatory applicability of the Code rules, in whole or in part, within their jurisdiction. Those laws or regulations may require the use of this Division of the Code for vessels or components not considered to be within its Scope. These laws or regulations should be reviewed to determine size or service limitations of the coverage which may be different or more restrictive than those given here.

U-1(c)(2) Based on the Committee's consideration, the following classes of vessels are not included in the scope of this Division; however, any pressure vessel which meets all the applicable requirements of this Division may be stamped with the Code U Symbol:

(a) those within the scope of other Sections;

(b) fired process tubular heaters;

(c) pressure containers which are integral parts or components of rotating or reciprocating mechanical devices, such as pumps, compressors, turbines, generators, engines, and hydraulic or pneumatic cylinders where the primary design considerations and/or stresses are derived from the functional requirements of the device;

(d) except as covered in U-1(f), structures whose primary function is the transport of fluids from one location to another within a system of which it is an integral part, that is, piping systems;

(e) piping components, such as pipe, flanges, bolting, gaskets, valves, expansion joints, fittings, and the pressure containing parts of other components, such as strainers and devices which serve such purposes as mixing, separating, snubbing, distributing, and metering or

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

controlling flow, provided that pressure containing parts of such components are generally recognized as piping components or accessories;

(f) a vessel for containing water[1] under pressure, including those containing air the compression of which serves only as a cushion, when none of the following limitations are exceeded:

(1) a design pressure of 300 psi (2 MPa);

(2) a design temperature of 210°F (99°C);

(g) a hot water supply storage tank heated by steam or any other indirect means when none of the following limitations is exceeded:

(1) a heat input of 200,000 Btu/hr (58.6 kW);

(2) a water temperature of 210°F (99°C);

(3) a nominal water containing capacity of 120 gal (450 L);

(h) vessels having an internal or external operating pressure (see 3-2) not exceeding 15 psi (100 kPa) with no limitation on size [see UG-28(f)];

(i) vessels having an inside diameter, width, height, or cross section diagonal not exceeding 6 in. (152 mm), with no limitation on length of vessel or pressure;

(j) pressure vessels for human occupancy.[2]

U-1(d) The rules of this Division have been formulated on the basis of design principles and construction practices applicable to vessels designed for pressures not exceeding 3000 psi (20 MPa). For pressures above 3000 psi (20 MPa), deviations from and additions to these rules usually are necessary to meet the requirements of design principles and construction practices for these higher pressures. Only in the event that after having applied these additional design principles and construction practices the vessel still complies with all of the requirements of this Division may it be stamped with the applicable Code symbol.

U-1(e) In relation to the geometry of pressure containing parts, the scope of this Division shall include the following:

U-1(e)(1) where external piping; other pressure vessels including heat exchangers; or mechanical devices, such as pumps, mixers, or compressors, are to be connected to the vessel:

(a) the welding end connection for the first circumferential joint for welded connections [see UW-13(g)];

(b) the first threaded joint for screwed connections;

(c) the face of the first flange for bolted, flanged connections;

(d) the first sealing surface for proprietary connections or fittings;

U-1(e)(2) where nonpressure parts are welded directly to either the internal or external pressure retaining surface of a pressure vessel, this scope shall include the design, fabrication, testing, and material requirements established for nonpressure part attachments by the applicable paragraphs of this Division;[3]

U-1(e)(3) pressure retaining covers for vessel openings, such as manhole and handhole covers;

U-1(e)(4) the first sealing surface for proprietary fittings or components for which rules are not provided by this Division, such as gages, instruments, and nonmetallic components.

U-1(f) The scope of the Division includes provisions for pressure relief devices necessary to satisfy the requirements of UG-125 through UG-136 and Appendix 11.

U-1(g) Unfired steam boilers as defined in Section I shall be constructed in accordance with the rules of Section I or this Division [see UG-125(b) and UW-2(c)].

The following pressure vessels in which steam is generated shall be constructed in accordance with the rules of this Division:

U-1(g)(1) vessels known as evaporators or heat exchangers;

U-1(g)(2) vessels in which steam is generated by the use of heat resulting from operation of a processing system containing a number of pressure vessels such as used in the manufacture of chemical and petroleum products;

U-1(g)(3) vessels in which steam is generated but not withdrawn for external use.

U-1(h) Pressure vessels or parts subject to direct firing from the combustion of fuel (solid, liquid, or gaseous), which are not within the scope of Sections I, III, or IV may be constructed in accordance with the rules of this Division [see UW-2(d)].

U-1(i) Gas fired jacketed steam kettles with jacket operating pressures not exceeding 50 psi (345 kPa) may be constructed in accordance with the rules of this Division (see Appendix 19).

U-1(j) Pressure vessels exclusive of those covered in U-1(c), U-1(g), U-1(h), and U-1(i) that are not required by the rules of this Division to be fully radiographed,

---

[1] The water may contain additives provided the flash point of the aqueous solution at atmospheric pressure is 185°F or higher. The flash point shall be determined by the methods specified in ASTM D 93 or in ASTM D 56, whichever is appropriate.

[2] Requirements for pressure vessels for human occupancy are covered by ANSI/ASME PVHO-1.

[3] These requirements for design, fabrication, testing, and material for nonpressure part attachments do not establish the length, size, or shape of the attachment material. Pads and standoffs are permitted and the scope can terminate at the next welded or mechanical joint.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

which are not provided with quick actuating closures (see UG-35), and that do not exceed the following volume and pressure limits may be exempted from inspection by Inspectors, as defined in UG-91, provided that they comply in all other respects with the requirements of this Division:

U-1(j)(1) 5 cu ft (0.14 m^3) in volume and 250 psi (1.7 MPa) design pressure; or

U-1(j)(2) 3 cu ft (0.08 m^3) in volume and 350 psi (2.4 MPa) design pressure;

U-1(j)(3) $1\frac{1}{2}$ cu ft (0.04 m^3) in volume and 600 psi (4.1 MPa) design pressure.

In an assembly of vessels, the limitations in (1) through (3) above apply to each vessel and not the assembly as a whole. Straight line interpolation for intermediate volumes and design pressures is permitted. Vessels fabricated in accordance with this rule shall be marked with the "UM" Symbol in Fig. UG-116 sketch (b) and with the data required in UG-116. Certificates of Compliance shall satisfy the requirements of UG-120(a).

U-1(k) The degree of nondestructive examination(s) and the acceptance standards beyond the requirements of this Division shall be a matter of prior agreement between the Manufacturer and user or his designated agent.

GENERAL

U-2 GENERAL

(a) The user or his designated agent[4] shall establish the design requirements for pressure vessels, taking into consideration factors associated with normal operation, such other conditions as startup and shutdown, and abnormal conditions which may become a governing design consideration (see UG-22).

Such consideration shall include but shall not be limited to the following:

(1) the need for corrosion allowances;

(2) the definition of lethal services. For example, see UW-2(a).

(3) the need for postweld heat treatment beyond the requirements of this Division and dependent on service conditions;

(4) for pressure vessels in which steam is generated, or water is heated [see U-1(g) and (h)], the need for piping, valves, instruments, and fittings to perform the functions covered by PG-59 through PG-61 of Section I.

(b) Responsibilities[5]

(1) The Manufacturer of any vessel or part to be marked with the Code Symbol has the responsibility of complying with all of the applicable requirements of this Division and, through proper certification, of assuring that all work done by others also complies. The vessel or part Manufacturer shall have available for the Inspector's review the applicable design calculations. See 10-5 and 10-15(d).

(2) Some types of work, such as forming, nondestructive examination, and heat treating, may be performed by others (for welding, see UW-26 and UW-31). It is the vessel or part Manufacturer's responsibility to ensure that all work so performed complies with all the applicable requirements of this Division. After ensuring Code compliance, the vessel or part may be Code stamped by the appropriate Code stamp holder after acceptance by the Inspector.

(c) A vessel may be designed and constructed using any combination of the methods of fabrication and the classes of materials covered by this Division provided the rules applying to each method and material are complied with and the vessel is marked as required by UG-116.

(d) When the strength of any part cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of safety, the rules provide procedures for establishing its maximum allowable working pressure.

(e) It is the duty of the Inspector to make all of the inspections specified by the rules of this Division, and of monitoring the quality control and the examinations made by the Manufacturer. He shall make such other inspections as in his judgment are necessary to permit him to certify that the vessel has been designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements. The Inspector has the duty of verifying that the applicable calculations have been made and are on file at Manufacturer's plant at the time the Data Report is signed. Any questions concerning the calculations raised by the Inspector must be resolved. See UG-90(c)(1).

(f) The rules of this Division shall serve as the basis for the Inspector to:

(1) perform the required duties;

(2) authorize the application of the Code Symbol;

(3) sign the Certificate of Shop (or Field Assembly) Inspection.

(g) This Division of Section VIII does not contain rules to cover all details of design and construction. Where complete details are not given, it is intended that

[4] For this Division, the user's designated agent may be either a design agency specifically engaged by the user, the Manufacturer of a system for a specific service which includes a pressure vessel as a part and which is purchased by the user, or an organization which offers pressure vessels for sale or lease for specific services.

[5] See UG-90(b) and UG-90(c)(1) for summaries of the responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the duties of the Inspector.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

the Manufacturer, subject to the acceptance of the Inspector, shall provide details of design and construction which will be as safe as those provided by the rules of this Division.

(h) Field assembly of vessels constructed to this Division may be performed as follows.

(1) The Manufacturer of the vessel completes the vessel in the field, completes the Form U-1 or U-1A Manufacturer's Data Report, and stamps the vessel.

(2) The Manufacturer of parts of a vessel to be completed in the field by some other party stamps these parts in accordance with Code rules and supplies the Form U-2 or U-2A Manufacturer's Partial Data Report to the other party. The other party, who must hold a valid U Certificate of Authorization, makes the final assembly, required NDE, final pressure test; completes the Form U-1 or U-1A Manufacturer's Data Report; and stamps the vessel.

(3) The field portion of the work is completed by a holder of a valid U Certificate of Authorization other than the vessel Manufacturer. The stamp holder performing the field work is required to supply a Form U-2 or U-2A Manufacturer's Partial Data Report covering the portion of the work completed by his organization (including data on the pressure test if conducted by the stamp holder performing the field work) to the Manufacturer responsible for the Code vessel. The vessel Manufacturer applies his U Stamp in the presence of a representative from his Inspection Agency and completes the Form U-1 or U-1A Manufacturer's Data Report with his Inspector.

In all three alternatives, the party completing and signing the Form U-1 or U-1A Manufacturer's Data Report assumes full Code responsibility for the vessel. In all three cases, each Manufacturer's Quality Control System shall describe the controls to assure compliance for each Code stamp holder.

(i) For some design analyses, both a chart or curve and a formula or tabular data are given. Use of the formula or tabular data may result in answers which are slightly different from the values obtained from the chart or curve. However, the difference, if any, is within practical accuracy and either method is acceptable.

U-3 STANDARDS REFERENCED BY THIS DIVISION

(a) Throughout this Division references are made to various standards, such as ANSI standards, which cover pressure–temperature rating, dimensional, or procedural standards for pressure vessel parts. These standards, with the year of the acceptable edition, are listed in Table U-3.

(b) Rules for the use of these standards are stated elsewhere in this Division.

U-4 UNITS OF MEASUREMENT 04

Either U.S. Customary units or SI units may be used for compliance with all requirements of this edition, but one system shall be used consistently throughout for all phases of construction.

Either the U.S. Customary units or SI units that are listed in Mandatory Appendix 33 are identified in the text, or are identified in the nomenclature for equations, shall be used consistently for all phases of construction (e.g. materials, design, fabrication, and reports). Since values in the two systems are not exact equivalents, each system shall be used independently of the other without mixing U.S. Customary units and SI units.

When SI units are selected, U.S. Customary values in referenced specifications that do not contain SI units shall be converted to SI values to at least three significant figures for use in calculations and other aspects of construction.[6]

[6] Guidance for conversion of units from U.S. Customary to SI is found in Nonmandatory Appendix GG.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

04

TABLE U-3
YEAR OF ACCEPTABLE EDITION OF REFERENCED STANDARDS IN THIS DIVISION

Title	Number	Year
Seat Tightness of Pressure Relief Valves	API Std. 527	1991
Unified Inch Screw Threads (UN and UNR Thread Form)	ASME B1.1	1989 (R2001)(2)
Pipe Threads, General Purpose (Inch)	ANSI/ASME B1.20.1	1983 (R1992)(2)
Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 25, 125, 250, and 800	ASME/ANSI B16.1	1989
Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings	ASME B16.5	1996(1)
Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings	ASME B16.9	2001
Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded	ASME B16.11	2001
Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings Classes 125 and 250	ANSI/ASME B16.15	1985
Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges — Ring-Joint, Spiral Wound, and Jacketed	ASME B16.20	1993
Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500	ASME B16.24	1991
Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 150 and 300	ASME/ANSI B16.42	1987
Large Diameter Steel Flanges, NPS 26 Through NPS 60	ASME B16.47	1996
Square and Hex Nuts (Inch Series)	ASME/ANSI B18.2.2	1987 (R1994)(2)
Welded and Seamless Wrought Steel Pipe	ASME B36.10M	2000
Pressure Relief Devices	ASME PTC 25	2001
Qualifications for Authorized Inspection	ASME QAI-1	(3)
ASNT Central Certification Program	ACCP	Rev 3, November 1997
ASNT Standard for Qualification and Certification of Nondestructive Testing Personnel	CP-189	1995
Recommended Practice for Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing	SNT-TC-1A	1996, A98
Standard Test Methods for Flash Point by Tag Closed Tester	ASTM D 56	1987
Standard Test Methods for Flash Point by Pensky-Martens Closed Tester	ASTM D 93	1990

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

TABLE U-3
YEAR OF ACCEPTABLE EDITION OF REFERENCED STANDARDS IN THIS DIVISION (CONT'D)

Title	Number	Year
Methods of Tension Testing of Metallic Materials	ASTM E 8	1990
Methods of Verification and Classification of Extensometers	ASTM E 83	1990
Reference Photographs for Magnetic Particle Indications on Ferrous Castings	ASTM E 125	1963 (R1985)(2)
Hardness Conversion Tables for Metals	ASTM E 140	1988
Standard Reference Radiographs for Heavy-Walled (2 to $4\frac{1}{2}$-in. (51 to 114-mm)) Steel Castings	ASTM E 186	1998
Method of Conducting Drop Weight Test to Determine Nil Ductility Transition Temperature of Ferritic Steel	ASTM E 208	1987a
Standard Reference Radiographs for Heavy-Walled ($4\frac{1}{2}$ to 12-in. (114 to 305-mm)) Steel Castings	ASTM E 280	1998
Standard Reference Radiographs for Steel Castings up to 2 in. (51 mm) in Thickness	ASTM E 446	1998
Marking and Labeling Systems	ANSI/UL-969	1991

NOTES:
(1) See UG-11(a)(2).
(2) R — Reaffirmed.
(3) See UG-91.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SUMMARY OF CHANGES

The 2004 Edition of this Code contains revisions in addition to the 2001 Edition with 2002 and 2003 Addenda. The revisions are identified with the designation **04** in the margin and, as described in the Foreword, become mandatory six months after the publication date of the 2004 Edition. To invoke these revisions before their mandatory date, use the designation "2004 Edition" in documentation required by this Code. If you choose not to invoke these revisions before their mandatory date, use the designation "2001 Edition through the 2003 Addenda" in documentation required by this Code.

Changes given below are identified on the pages by a margin note, **04**, placed next to the affected area.

Page	*Location*	*Change*
iii	List of Sections	Updated to reflect 04
xxv–xxvii	Foreword	Editorially revised
4	U-4	Added
5	Table U-3	Revised
15, 16	UG-23	(1) First paragraph of subpara. (a) revised (2) Step 2 revised (3) Step 4 revised (4) Second and third lines of subpara. (e) and first and second lines of subpara. (e)(2) corrected by errata
18, 19, 21–23	UG-28	(1) Nomenclature for *B* revised (2) In subpara. (c)(1), Steps 4 and 7 revised (3) In subpara. (d), Steps 2 and 5 revised
	UG-29	(1) Nomenclature for *B* revised (2) Step 2 split into Steps 2a and 2b and revised
36, 37	UG-35.2	Revised in its entirety
39	UG-36(c)(3)(d)	Last sentence added
52, 53	UG-44	Revised
55	UG-47(b)	Revised
61	UG-79	Revised
68	UG-84(f)(2)	Seventh line corrected by errata
71	UG-93(a)(1)	First line corrected by errata
78	UG-101(l)(1)	First sentence revised
79	UG-101(o)(1)	First sentence revised
81	UG-115(b)	Revised

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Page	Location	Change
	UG-116	(1) Subparagraphs (a)(4) through (a)(6) redesignated as (a)(5) through (a)(7), respectively (2) New subpara. (a)(4) and footnote 38 added
85	Fig. UG-118	Revised
	UG-118(c)	Last line corrected by errata
87, 88	UG-120(d)(2)	Last line corrected by errata
	UG-125	(1) Subparagraph (c)(2) revised (2) Subparagraph (g) revised in its entirety
101	UG-136(d)(5)	Revised
103, 104	UW-2	(1) Subparagraph (a)(1)(c) revised in its entirety (2) Last line of subpara. (d)(2) corrected by errata
108	UW-12(f)	Thirteenth line corrected by errata
116	UW-13(g)	Added
	UW-13(h)	Redesignated from former subpara. (g)
124	UW-16(c)(2)	Revised in its entirety
125	UW-16(f)(3)(a)(5)	Added
129	UW-19(c)(2)	Revised
130	UW-26(d)	Revised
136	UW-40(f)(5)(c)	Revised
149	UB-14	Revised in its entirety
161, 165	Table UCS-56	Normal Holding Temperature, Minimum, revised for P-No. 4 Gr. Nos. 1, 2 and P-No. 10B
178	Fig. UCS-66.2	First line of Step 6 corrected by errata
183	UCS-79	(1) Subparagraph (d)(4) revised (2) Subparagraph (e) deleted
186	UNF-19	(1) Subparagraph (d) corrected by errata (2) Subparagraphs (e) and (f) added
189, 190	Table UNF-23.3	Revised
	UNF-56(f)	Added
198–200	Table UHA-23	Revised
219	UCL-35	Fifth, sixth, and third lines of subparas. (a), (b), and (c), respectively, corrected by errata
239	Fig. ULW-2.1	Revised
241	ULW-17	Subparagraph (b)(3) deleted
246	Fig. ULW-17.4	Revised

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Page	*Location*	*Change*
259	ULW-76	Revised
266, 267	Table ULT-23	Revised
274–328	Part UHX	Revised in its entirety
332, 333	1-4(f)	Except (f)(2), corrected by errata in its entirety
365	3-2	Definition for *full vacuum (FV)* added
376, 377	5-1	(1) Subparagraph (d) redesignated as (e) (2) New subpara. (d) added
	5-3	Revised in its entirety
378, 379	5-6	Revised in its entirety
396	10-1	Third sentence added
413	13-4(j)(2)	Revised
444, 445	14-1(a)	Last sentence added
	14-3(b)(2)	Revised
453	17-2(c)	Revised
465	Appendix 20	(1) Title revised (2) Paragraphs 20-1, 20-2, and 20-4 revised
469	23-2(b)	Revised
	23-3	Nomenclature for *F* revised
	23-4(a)(2)	Revised
479–504	Appendix 26	Revised in its entirety
510	Appendix 29	Deleted
516	32-2(a)	First line corrected by errata
	32-4(e)	Fifth line corrected by errata
517, 518	32-6	Second and third lines of subparas. (e) and (h), respectively, corrected by errata
519	Appendix 33	Added
520	A-1(a)	Revised in its entirety
521	Table A-2	Note (4) corrected by errata
581–586	Appendix M	(1) M-5 revised in its entirety (2) M-6 deleted (3) M-7 through M-15 redesignated as M-6 through M-14, respectively (4) Subparagraph (a) of new M-13 revised
597	Form U-1A	Revised
604	Table W-3	Note 24 revised
633–635	Appendix FF	Added
636–639	Appendix GG	Added

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Page	*Location*	*Change*
640, 641	Index	*Connections, clamp,* corrected by errata

NOTE: Volume 54 of the Interpretations to Section VIII, Division 1, of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code follows the last page of this Edition.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SUBSECTION A
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

PART UG
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION AND ALL MATERIALS

UG-1 SCOPE

The requirements of Part UG are applicable to all pressure vessels and vessel parts and shall be used in conjunction with the specific requirements in Subsections B and C and the Mandatory Appendices that pertain to the method of fabrication and the material used.

MATERIALS

UG-4 GENERAL

(a) Material subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those that are permitted in the applicable Part of Subsection C, except as otherwise permitted in UG-9, UG-10, UG-11, UG-15, and the Mandatory Appendices. Material may be identified as meeting more than one material specification and/or grade provided the material meets all requirements of the identified material specification(s) and/or grade(s) [see UG-23(a)].

(b) Material for nonpressure parts, such as skirts, supports, baffles, lugs, clips, and extended heat transfer surfaces, need not conform to the specifications for the material to which they are attached or to a material specification permitted in this Division, but if attached to the vessel by welding shall be of weldable quality [see UW-5(b)]. The allowable stress values for material not identified in accordance with UG-93 shall not exceed 80% of the maximum allowable stress value permitted for similar material in Subsection C.

(c) Material covered by specifications in Section II is not restricted as to the method of production unless so stated in the specification, and so long as the product complies with the requirements of the specification. (See UG-85.)

(d) Materials other than those allowed by this Division may not be used, unless data thereon are submitted to and approved by the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee in accordance with Appendix 5 in Section II, Part D.

(e) Materials outside the limits of size and/or thickness given in the title or scope clause of the specifications given in Section II, and permitted by the applicable part of Subsection C, may be used if the material is in compliance with the other requirements of the specification,[1] and no size or thickness limitation is given in the stress tables. In those specifications in which chemical composition or mechanical properties vary with size or thickness, materials outside the range shall be required to conform to the composition and mechanical properties shown for the nearest specified range.

[1] In some instances the limitations of the scope clause in the material specifications are based on a very realistic maximum. It is recommended that the designer and/or fabricator confer with the material manufacturer or supplier before proceeding, thus assuring himself that except for size or thickness, all requirements of the material specification will be met and so certified.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(f) It is recommended that the user or his designated agent assure himself that materials used for the construction of the vessels will be suitable for the intended service with respect to retention of satisfactory mechanical properties, and resistance to corrosion, erosion, oxidation, and other deterioration during their intended service life. See also informative and nonmandatory guidance regarding metallurgical phenomena in Appendix A of Section II, Part D.

UG-5 PLATE[2]

Plate used in the construction of pressure parts of pressure vessels shall conform to one of the specifications in Section II for which allowable stress values are given in the tables referenced in UG-23, except as otherwise provided in UG-4, UG-10, UG-11, and UG-15.

UG-6 FORGINGS

Forged material may be used in pressure vessel construction provided the material has been worked sufficiently to remove the coarse ingot structure. Specifications and maximum allowable stress values for acceptable forging materials are given in the tables referenced in UG-23. (See Part UF for forged vessels.)

UG-7 CASTINGS

Cast material may be used in the construction of pressure vessels and vessel parts. Specifications and maximum allowable stress values for acceptable casting materials are given in the tables referenced in UG-23. These allowable stress values shall be multiplied by the applicable casting quality factor given in UG-24 for all materials except cast iron.

UG-8 PIPE AND TUBES

(a) Pipe and tubes of seamless or welded[3] construction conforming to one of the specifications given in Section II may be used for shells and other parts of pressure vessels. Allowable stress values for the materials used in pipe and tubes are given in the tables referenced in UG-23.

(b) Integrally finned tubes may be made from tubes that conform in every respect with one of the specifications given in Section II. These tubes may be used under the following conditions.

(1) The tubes, after finning, shall have a temper or condition which conforms to one of those provided in the governing specifications, or, when specified, they may be furnished in the "as-fabricated condition" where the finned portions of the tube are in the cold worked temper (as-finned) resulting from the finning operation, and the unfinned portions in the temper of the tube prior to finning.

(2) The maximum allowable stress value for the finned tube shall be that given in the tables referenced in UG-23 for the tube before finning except as permitted in (3) below.

(3) The maximum allowable stress value for a temper or condition that has a higher stress value than that of the tube before finning may be used provided that qualifying mechanical property tests demonstrate that such a temper or condition is obtained and conforms to one of those provided in the governing specifications in Section II, and provided that allowable stress values have been established in the tables referenced in UG-23 for the tube material used. The qualifying mechanical property tests shall be made on specimens of finned tube from which the fins have been removed by machining. The frequency of tests shall be as required in the unfinned tube specification.

(4) The maximum allowable internal or external working pressure of the tube shall be based on the root diameter and the minimum wall of the finned section, or the outside diameter and wall of the unfinned section together with appropriate stress values, whichever results in the lower maximum allowable working pressure. Alternatively, the maximum allowable external pressure for tubes with integral fins may be established under the rules of Appendix 23.

(5) In addition to the tests required by the governing specifications, each tube after finning shall be subjected to a pneumatic test or a hydrostatic test as indicated below. UG-90(c)(1)(i) requirement for a visual inspection by the Inspector does not apply to either of these tests.

(a) an internal pneumatic test of not less than 250 psi (1.7 MPa) for 5 sec without evidence of leakage. The test method shall permit easy visual detection of any leakage such as immersion of the tube under water or a pressure differential method.[4]

(b) an individual tube hydrostatic test in accordance with UG-99 which permits complete examination of the tube for leakage.

[2] The term "plate" for the purpose of this usage includes sheet and strip also.

[3] Pipe and tubing fabricated by fusion welding, with filler metal added, may not be used in Code construction unless it is fabricated in accordance with Code rules as a pressure part.

[4] The pressure differential method is described in "Materials Research Standards," Vol. 1, No. 7, July 1961, published by ASTM.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UG-9 WELDING MATERIALS

Welding materials used for production shall comply with the requirements of this Division, those of Section IX, and the applicable qualified welding procedure specification. When the welding materials comply with one of the specifications in Section II, Part C, the marking or tagging of the material, containers, or packages as required by the applicable Section II specification may be accepted for identification in lieu of a Certified Test Report or a Certificate of Compliance. When the welding materials do not comply with one of the specifications of Section II, the marking or tagging shall be identifiable with the welding materials set forth in the welding procedure specification, and may be accepted in lieu of a Certified Test Report or a Certificate of Compliance.

UG-10 MATERIAL IDENTIFIED WITH OR PRODUCED TO A SPECIFICATION NOT PERMITTED BY THIS DIVISION, AND MATERIAL NOT FULLY IDENTIFIED

(a) Identified Material With Complete Certification From the Material Manufacturer. Material identified with a specification not permitted by this Division, or procured to chemical composition requirements, and identified to a single production lot as required by a permitted specification may be accepted as satisfying the requirements of a specification permitted by this Division provided the conditions set forth in (1) or (2) below are satisfied.

(1) Recertification by an Organization Other Than the Vessel or Part Manufacturer

(a) All requirements, including but not limited to, melting method, melting practice, deoxidation, quality, and heat treatment, of the specification permitted by this Division, to which the material is to be recertified, have been demonstrated to have been met.

(b) A copy of the certification by the material manufacturer of the chemical analysis required by the permitted specification, with documentation showing the requirements to which the material was produced and purchased, and which demonstrates that there is no conflict with the requirements of the permitted specification, has been furnished to the vessel or part Manufacturer.

(c) A certification that the material was manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the specification to which the material is recertified, excluding the specific marking requirements, has been furnished to the vessel or part Manufacturer, together with copies of all documents and test reports pertinent to the demonstration of conformance to the requirements of the permitted specification.

(d) The material and the Certificate of Compliance or the Material Test Report have been identified with the designation of the specification to which the material is recertified and with the notation "Certified per UG-10."

(2) Recertification by the Vessel or Part Manufacturer

(a) A copy of the certification by the material manufacturer of the chemical analysis required by the permitted specification, with documentation showing the requirements to which the material was produced and purchased, and which demonstrates that there is no conflict with the requirements of the permitted specification, is available to the Inspector.

(b) For applications in which the maximum allowable stresses are subject to a cautionary note, documentation is available to the Inspector which establishes what deoxidation was performed during the material manufacture, to the degree necessary for the vessel or part Manufacturer to make a decision with regard to the cautionary note.

(c) Documentation is available to the Inspector which demonstrates that the metallurgical structure, mechanical property, and hardness requirements of the permitted specification have been met.

(d) For material recertified to a permitted specification which requires a fine austenitic grain size or which requires that a fine grain practice be used during melting, documentation is available to the Inspector which demonstrates that the heat treatment requirements of the permitted specification have been met, or will be met during fabrication.

(e) The material has marking, acceptable to the Inspector, for identification to the documentation.

(f) When the conformance of the material with the permitted specification has been established, the material has been marked as required by the permitted specification.

(b) Material Identified to a Particular Production Lot as Required by a Specification Permitted by This Division but Which Cannot Be Qualified Under UG-10(a). Any material identified to a particular production lot as required by a specification permitted by this Division, but for which the documentation required in UG-10(a) is not available, may be accepted as satisfying the requirements of the specification permitted by this Division provided that the conditions set forth below are satisfied.

(1) Recertification by an Organization Other Than the Vessel or Part Manufacturer. Not permitted.

(2) Recertification by the Vessel or Part Manufacturer

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(a) Chemical analyses are made on different pieces from the lot to establish a mean analysis which is to be accepted as representative of the lot. The pieces chosen for analysis shall be selected at random from the lot. The number of pieces selected shall be at least 10% of the number of pieces in the lot, but not less than three. For lots of three pieces or less, each piece shall be analyzed. Each individual analysis for an element shall conform to the limits for product analysis in the permitted specification, and the mean for each element shall conform to the heat analysis limits of that specification. Analyses need only be made for those elements required by the permitted specification. However, consideration should be given to making analyses for elements not specified in the specification but which would be deleterious if present in excessive amounts.

(b) Mechanical property tests are made in accordance with the requirements of the permitted specification, and the results of the tests conform to the specified requirements.

(c) For applications in which the maximum allowable stresses are subject to a cautionary note, chemical analysis results are obtained which are sufficient to establish what deoxidation was used during the material manufacture, to the degree necessary for making a decision with regard to the cautionary note.

(d) When the requirements of the permitted specification include metallurgical structure requirements (i.e., fine austenitic grain size), tests are made and the results are sufficient to establish that those requirements of the specification have been met.

(e) When the requirements of the permitted specification include heat treatment, the material is heat treated in accordance with those requirements, either prior to or during fabrication.

(f) When the conformance of the material with the permitted specification has been established, the material has been marked as required by the permitted specification.

(c) Material Not Fully Identified. Material which cannot be qualified under the provisions of either UG-10(a) or UG-10(b), such as material not fully identified as required by the permitted specification or unidentified material, may be accepted as satisfying the requirements of a specification permitted by this Division provided that the conditions set forth below are satisfied.

(1) Qualification by an Organization Other Than the Vessel or Part Manufacturer. Not permitted.

(2) Qualification by the Vessel or Part Manufacturer

(a) Each piece is tested to show that it meets the chemical composition for product analysis and the mechanical properties requirements of the permitted specification. Chemical analyses need only be made for those elements required by the permitted specification. However, consideration should be given to making analyses for elements not specified in the specification but which would be deleterious if present in excessive amounts. For plates, when the direction of final rolling is not known, both a transverse and a longitudinal tension test specimen shall be taken from each sampling location designated in the permitted specification. The results of both tests shall conform to the minimum requirements of the specification, but the tensile strength of only one of the two specimens need conform to the maximum requirement.

(b) The provisions of (b)(2)(c), (b)(2)(d), and (b)(2)(e) above are met.

(c) When the identity of the material with the permitted specification has been established in accordance with (a) and (b) above, each piece (or bundle, etc., if permitted in the specification) is marked with a marking giving the permitted specification number and grade, type, or class as applicable and a serial number identifying the particular lot of material. A suitable report, clearly marked as being a "Report on Tests of Nonidentified Material," shall be completed and certified by the vessel or part Manufacturer. This report, when accepted by the Inspector, shall constitute authority to use the material in lieu of material procured to the requirements of the permitted specification.

UG-11 PREFABRICATED OR PREFORMED PRESSURE PARTS

Prefabricated or preformed pressure parts for pressure vessels which are subject to allowable working stresses due to internal or external pressure in the vessel and which are furnished by other than the location of the Manufacturer responsible for the vessel to be marked with the Code Symbol shall conform to all applicable requirements of this Division as related to the vessel, including service restrictions applicable to the material, inspection in the shop of the parts Manufacturer, and the furnishing of Partial Data Reports as provided for in UG-120(c) except as permitted in (a), (b), and (c) below. Manufacturers with multiple locations, each with its own Certificate of Authorization, may transfer pressure vessel parts from one of its locations to another without Partial Data Reports, provided the Quality Control System describes the method of identification, transfer, and receipt of the parts. When the prefabricated or preformed parts are furnished with a nameplate and the nameplate interferes with further fabrication or service, and where stamping on the material is prohibited, the Manufacturer

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of the completed vessel, with the concurrence of the Authorized Inspector, may remove the nameplate. The removal of the nameplate shall be noted in the "Remarks" section of the vessel Manufacturer's Data Report. The nameplate shall be destroyed. The rules of (a), (b), and (c) below shall not be applied to quick-actuating closures [UG-35(b)].

(a) Cast, Forged, Rolled, or Die Formed Standard Pressure Parts

(1) Pressure parts, such as pipe fittings, flanges, nozzles, welding necks, welding caps, manhole frames and covers, that are wholly formed by casting, forging, rolling, or die forming shall not require inspection, identification in accordance with UG-93(a) or (b), or Partial Data Reports. Standard pressure parts which comply with some ASME/ANSI standard[5] shall be made of materials permitted by this Division or of materials specifically listed in an ASME/ANSI product standard listed elsewhere in this Division. Standard pressure parts which comply with a Manufacturer's standard[6,7] shall be made of materials permitted by this Division. Parts made to either an ASME/ANSI standard or Manufacturer's standard shall be marked with the name or trademark of the parts manufacturer and such other markings as are required by the standard. Such markings shall be considered as the parts Manufacturer's certification that the product complies with the material specifications and standards indicated and is suitable for service at the rating indicated. The intent of this paragraph will have been met if, in lieu of the detailed marking on the part itself, the parts described herein have been marked in any permanent or temporary manner that will serve to identify the part with the parts manufacturer's written listing of the particular items and such listings are available for examination by the Inspector.

(2) Flanges and flanged fittings may be used at the pressure–temperature ratings specified in the appropriate standard listed in this Division. Other pressure–temperature ratings may be used if the flange satisfies the requirements of UG-11(a)(1) and, using the specified gaskets and bolting, satisfies the design requirements of UG-34 or Appendix 2 of this Division.

(3) Parts of small size falling within this category for which it is difficult or impossible to obtain identified material or which may be stocked and for which identification in accordance with UG-93 cannot be economically obtained and are not customarily furnished, and which do not appreciably affect the safety of the vessel, may be used for relatively unimportant parts or parts stressed to not more than 50% of the stress value permitted by this Division provided they are suitable for the purpose intended and are acceptable to the Inspector [see (a)(1) above and UG-4(b)]. The Manufacturer of the vessel to be marked with the Code Symbol shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions specified for the vessel in accordance with the rules of this Division.

(b) Cast, Forged, Rolled, or Die Formed Nonstandard Pressure Parts. Pressure parts such as shells, heads, removable doors, and pipe coils that are wholly formed by casting, forging, rolling, or die forming may be supplied basically as materials. All such parts shall be made of materials permitted under this Division and the Manufacturer of the part shall furnish identification in accordance with UG-93. Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the parts Manufacturer and with such other markings as will serve to identify the particular parts with accompanying material identification. The Manufacturer of the vessel to be marked with the Code Symbol shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions specified for the completed vessel in accordance with the rules of this Division.

(c) Welded Standard Pressure Parts for Use Other Than the Shell or Heads of a Vessel. Pressure parts, such as welded standard pipe fittings, welding caps, and flanges that are fabricated by one of the welding processes recognized by this Division shall not require inspection, identification in accordance with UG-93(a) or (b), or Partial Data Reports provided:

(1) standard pressure parts which comply with some ASME/ANSI product standard[5] shall be made of materials permitted by this Division or of materials specifically listed in an ASME/ANSI product standard listed elsewhere in this Division. Standard pressure parts which comply with a Manufacturer's standard[6,7] shall be made of materials permitted by this Division.

(2) welding for pressure parts which comply with a Manufacturer's standard[6,7] shall comply with the requirements of UW-26(a), (b), and (c) and UW-27 through UW-40. Welding for pressure parts which comply with some ASME/ANSI product standard[5] shall comply with the requirements of UW-26(a), (b), and (c) and

[5] These are pressure parts which comply with some ASME/ANSI product standard accepted by reference in UG-44. The ASME/ANSI product standard establishes the basis for the pressure–temperature rating and marking unless modified in UG-44.

[6] These are pressure parts which comply with a parts Manufacturer's standard which defines the pressure–temperature rating marked on the part and described in the parts Manufacturer's literature. The Manufacturer of the completed vessel shall satisfy himself that the part is suitable for the design conditions of the completed vessel in accordance with the rules of this Division.

[7] Pressure parts may be in accordance with an ASME/ANSI product standard not covered by footnote 5, but such parts shall satisfy the requirements applicable to a parts Manufacturer's standard and footnote 6.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UW-27 through UW-40, or with the welding requirements of SA-234. Markings, where applicable, or Certification by the parts Manufacturer where markings are not applicable, shall be accepted as evidence of compliance with the above welding requirements. Such parts shall be marked as required by UG-11(a)(1).

Such parts shall be marked with the name or trademark of the parts manufacturer and with such other markings as will serve to identify the materials of which the parts are made. Such markings shall be considered as the parts Manufacturer's certification that the product complies with (1) above. A statement by the parts Manufacturer that all welding complies with Code requirements shall be accepted as evidence that the product complies with (2) above.

(3) if radiography or postweld heat treatment is required by the rules of this Division, it may be performed either in the plant of the parts Manufacturer or in the plant of the manufacturer of the vessel to be marked with the Code Symbol.

If the radiographing is done under the control of the parts manufacturer, the completed radiographs, properly identified, with a radiographic inspection report, shall be forwarded to the vessel Manufacturer and shall be available to the Inspector.

(4) if heat treatment is performed at the plant of the parts manufacturer, certification by the parts manufacturer that such treatment was performed shall be accepted as evidence of compliance with applicable Code paragraphs. This certification shall be available to the Inspector.

(d) Parts furnished under the provisions of (a), (b), and (c) above need not be manufactured by a Certificate of Authorization Holder.

UG-12 BOLTS AND STUDS

(a) Bolts and studs may be used for the attachment of removable parts. Specifications, supplementary rules, and maximum allowable stress values for acceptable bolting materials are given in the tables referenced in UG-23.

(b) Studs shall be threaded full length or shall be machined down to the root diameter of the thread in the unthreaded portion, provided that the threaded portions are at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ diameters in length.

Studs greater than eight diameters in length may have an unthreaded portion which has the nominal diameter of the thread, provided the following requirements are met:

(1) the threaded portions shall be at least $1\frac{1}{2}$ diameters in length;

(2) the stud shall be machined down to the root diameter of the thread for a minimum distance of 0.5 diameters adjacent to the threaded portion;

(3) a suitable transition shall be provided between the root diameter and the unthreaded portion; and

(4) particular consideration shall be given to any dynamic loadings.

UG-13 NUTS AND WASHERS

(a) Nuts shall conform to the requirements in the applicable Part of Subsection C (see UCS-11 and UNF-13). They shall engage the threads for the full depth of the nut.

(b) The use of washers is optional. When used, they shall be of wrought materials.

UG-14 RODS AND BARS

Rod and bar stock may be used in pressure vessel construction for pressure parts such as flange rings, stiffening rings, frames for reinforced openings, stays and staybolts, and similar parts. Rod and bar materials shall conform to the requirements for bars or bolting in the applicable part of Subsection C.

UG-15 PRODUCT SPECIFICATION

When there is no material specification listed in Subsection C covering a particular wrought product of a grade, but there is an approved specification listed in Subsection C covering some other wrought product of that grade, the product for which there is no specification may be used provided:

(a) the chemical and physical properties, heat treating requirements, and requirements for deoxidation, or grain size requirements conform to the approved specification listed in Subsection C. The stress values for that specification given in the tables referenced in UG-23 shall be used.

(b) the manufacturing procedures, tolerances, tests, and marking are in accordance with a Section II specification covering the same product form of a similar material;

(c) for the case of welded tubing made of plate, sheet, or strip, without the addition of filler metal, the appropriate stress values are multiplied by a factor of 0.85;

(d) the product is not pipe or tubing fabricated by fusion welding with the addition of filler metal unless it is fabricated in accordance with the rules of this Division as a pressure part;

(e) mill test reports reference the specifications used in producing the material and in addition make reference to this paragraph.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

DESIGN

UG-16 GENERAL

(a) The design of pressure vessels and vessel parts shall conform to the general design requirements in the following paragraphs and in addition to the specific requirements for *Design* given in the applicable Parts of Subsections B and C.

(b) Minimum Thickness of Pressure Retaining Components. Except for the special provisions listed below, the minimum thickness permitted for shells and heads, after forming and regardless of product form and material, shall be $^1\!/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) exclusive of any corrosion allowance. Exceptions are:

(1) the minimum thickness does not apply to heat transfer plates of plate-type heat exchangers;

(2) this minimum thickness does not apply to the inner pipe of double pipe heat exchangers nor to tubes in shell-and-tube heat exchangers, where such pipes or tubes are NPS 6 (DN 150) and less. This exemption applies whether or not the outer pipe or shell is constructed to Code rules. All other pressure parts of these heat exchangers which are constructed to Code rules must meet the $^1\!/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) minimum thickness requirements.

(3) the minimum thickness of shells and heads of unfired steam boilers shall be $^1\!/_4$ in. (6 mm) exclusive of any corrosion allowance;

(4) the minimum thickness of shells and heads used in compressed air service, steam service, and water service, made from materials listed in Table UCS-23, shall be $^3\!/_{32}$ in. (2.5 mm) exclusive of any corrosion allowance.

(5) this minimum thickness does not apply to the tubes in air cooled and cooling tower heat exchangers if all the following provisions are met:

(a) the tubes shall not be used for lethal UW-2(a) service applications;

(b) the tubes shall be protected by fins or other mechanical means;

(c) the tube outside diameter shall be a minimum of $^3\!/_8$ in. (10 mm) and a maximum of $1^1\!/_2$ in. (38 mm);

(d) the minimum thickness used shall not be less than that calculated by the formulas given in UG-27 or 1-1 and in no case less than the greater of the minimum thickness calculated using a design pressure of 500 psi (3.5 MPa) at 70°F (20°C) or 0.022 in. (0.5 mm).

(c) Mill Undertolerance. Plate material shall be ordered not thinner than the design thickness. Vessels made of plate furnished with an undertolerance of not more than the smaller value of 0.01 in. (0.25 mm) or 6% of the ordered thickness may be used at the full design pressure for the thickness ordered. If the specification to which the plate is ordered allows a greater undertolerance, the ordered thickness of the materials shall be sufficiently greater than the design thickness so that the thickness of the material furnished is not more than the smaller of 0.01 in. (0.25 mm) or 6% under the design thickness.

(d) Pipe Undertolerance. If pipe or tube is ordered by its nominal wall thickness, the manufacturing undertolerance on wall thickness shall be taken into account except for nozzle wall reinforcement area requirements in accordance with UG-37 and UG-40. The manufacturing undertolerances are given in the several pipe and tube specifications listed in the applicable Tables in Subsection C. After the minimum wall thickness is determined, it shall be increased by an amount sufficient to provide the manufacturing undertolerance allowed in the pipe or tube specification.

(e) Corrosion Allowance in Design Formulas. The dimensional symbols used in all design formulas throughout this Division represent dimensions in the corroded condition.

UG-17 METHODS OF FABRICATION IN COMBINATION

A vessel may be designed and constructed by a combination of the methods of fabrication given in this Division, provided the rules applying to the respective methods of fabrication are followed and the vessel is limited to the service permitted by the method of fabrication having the most restrictive requirements (see UG-116).

UG-18 MATERIALS IN COMBINATION

Except as specifically prohibited by other rules of this Division, a vessel may be designed and constructed of any combination of materials permitted in Subsection C, provided the applicable rules are followed and the requirements in Section IX for welding dissimilar metals are met.

The requirements for the base metals, HAZ's, and weld metal(s) of a dissimilar metal weldment shall each be applied in accordance with the rules of this Division. (For example, if a carbon steel base metal is joined to a stainless steel base metal with a nickel filler metal, the rules of Part UCS apply to the carbon steel base metal and its HAZ; Part UHA to the stainless steel base metal and its HAZ; and Part UNF to the weld metal.)

NOTE: Because of the different thermal coefficients of expansion of dissimilar materials, caution should be exercised in design and construction under the provisions of this paragraph in order to avoid difficulties in service under extreme temperature conditions, or with unusual restraint of parts such as may occur at points of stress concentration and also because of metallurgical changes occurring at elevated temperatures. [See also *Galvanic Corrosion* in Appendix A, A-440(c), of Section II, Part D.]

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UG-19 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS

(a) Combination Units. When a pressure vessel unit consists of more than one independent pressure chamber, operating at the same or different pressures and temperatures, each such pressure chamber (vessel) shall be designed and constructed to withstand the most severe condition of coincident pressure and temperature expected in normal service. Only the parts of chambers which come within the scope of this Division, U-1, need be constructed in compliance with its provisions. Also, see 9-1(c) for jacketed vessels.

(b) Special Shapes. Vessels other than cylindrical and spherical and those for which no design rules are provided in this Division may be designed under the conditions set forth in U-2.

(c) When no design rules are given and the strength of a pressure vessel or vessel part cannot be calculated with a satisfactory assurance of accuracy, the maximum allowable working pressure of the completed vessel shall be established in accordance with the provisions of UG-101.

UG-20 DESIGN TEMPERATURE

(a) Maximum. Except as required in UW-2(d)(3), the maximum temperature used in design shall be not less than the mean metal temperature (through the thickness) expected under operating conditions for the part considered (see 3-2). If necessary, the metal temperature shall be determined by computation or by measurement from equipment in service under equivalent operating conditions.

(b) Minimum. The minimum metal temperature used in design shall be the lowest expected in service except when lower temperatures are permitted by the rules of this Division (see UCS-66 and UCS-160) (See footnote 36). The minimum mean metal temperature shall be determined by the principles described in (a) above. Consideration shall include the lowest operating temperature, operational upsets, autorefrigeration, atmospheric temperature, and any other sources of cooling [except as permitted in (f)(3) below for vessels meeting the requirements of (f) below]. The MDMT marked on the nameplate shall correspond to a coincident pressure equal to the MAWP. When there are multiple MAWP's, the largest value shall be used to establish the MDMT marked on the nameplate. Additional MDMT's corresponding with other MAWP's may also be marked on the nameplate (See footnote 36).

(c) Design temperatures listed in excess of the maximum temperatures listed in the tables referenced in UG-23 are not permitted. In addition, design temperatures for vessels under external pressure shall not exceed the maximum temperatures given on the external pressure charts.

(d) The design of zones with different metal temperatures may be based on their determined temperatures.

(e) Suggested methods for obtaining the operating temperature of vessel walls in service are given in Appendix C.

(f) Impact testing per UG-84 is not mandatory for pressure vessel materials which satisfy all of the following.

(1) The material shall be limited to P-No. 1, Gr. No. 1 or 2, and the thickness, as defined in UCS-66(a) [see also General Note (1) in Fig. UCS-66.2], shall not exceed that given in (a) or (b) below:

(a) $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) for materials listed in Curve A of Fig. UCS-66;

(b) 1 in. (25 mm) for materials listed in Curve B, C, or D of Fig. UCS-66.

(2) The completed vessel shall be hydrostatically tested per UG-99(b) or (c) or 27-4.

(3) Design temperature is no warmer than 650°F (345°C) nor colder than −20°F (−29°C). Occasional operating temperatures colder than −20°F (−29°C) are acceptable when due to lower seasonal atmospheric temperature.

(4) The thermal or mechanical shock loadings are not a controlling design requirement. (See UG-22.)

(5) Cyclical loading is not a controlling design requirement. (See UG-22.)

UG-21 DESIGN PRESSURE[8]

Vessels covered by this Division of Section VIII shall be designed for at least the most severe condition of coincident pressure and temperature expected in normal operation. For this condition and for test conditions, the maximum difference in pressure between the inside and outside of a vessel, or between any two chambers of a combination unit, shall be considered [see UG-98, UG-99(e), and 3-2].

[8] It is recommended that a suitable margin be provided above the pressure at which the vessel will be normally operated to allow for probable pressure surges in the vessel up to the setting of the pressure relieving devices (see UG-134).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UG-22 LOADINGS

The loadings to be considered in designing a vessel shall include those from:

(a) internal or external design pressure (as defined in UG-21);

(b) weight of the vessel and normal contents under operating or test conditions (this includes additional pressure due to static head of liquids);

(c) superimposed static reactions from weight of attached equipment, such as motors, machinery, other vessels, piping, linings, and insulation;

(d) the attachment of:

(1) internals (see Appendix D);

(2) vessel supports, such as lugs, rings, skirts, saddles, and legs (see Appendix G);

(e) cyclic and dynamic reactions due to pressure or thermal variations, or from equipment mounted on a vessel, and mechanical loadings;

(f) wind, snow, and seismic reactions, where required;

(g) impact reactions such as those due to fluid shock;

(h) temperature gradients and differential thermal expansion;

(i) abnormal pressures, such as those caused by deflagration.

04 UG-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES[9]

(a) The maximum allowable stress value is the maximum unit stress permitted in a given material used in a vessel constructed under these rules. The maximum allowable tensile stress values permitted for different materials are given in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D. With the publication of the 2004 Edition, Section II, Part D is published as two separate publications. One publication contains values only in the U.S. Customary units and the other contains values only in SI units. The selection of the version to use is dependent on the set of units selected for construction. A listing of these materials is given in the following tables, which are included in Subsection C. For material identified as meeting more than one material specification and/or grade, the maximum allowable tensile stress value for either material specification and/or grade may be used provided all requirements and limitations for the material specification and grade are met for the maximum allowable tensile stress value chosen.

Table UCS-23 Carbon and Low Alloy Steel (stress values in Section II, Part D, Table 3 for bolting, and Table 1A for other carbon steels)

Table UNF-23 Nonferrous Metals (stress values in Section II, Part D, Table 3 for bolting, and Table 1B for other nonferrous metals)

Table UHA-23 High Alloy Steel (stress values in Section II, Part D, Table 3 for bolting, and Table 1A for other high alloy steels)

Table UCI-23 Maximum Allowable Stress Values in Tension for Cast Iron

Table UCD-23 Maximum Allowable Stress Values in Tension for Cast Ductile Iron

Table UHT-23 Ferritic Steels with Properties Enhanced by Heat Treatment (stress values in Section II, Part D, Table 1A)

Table ULT-23 Maximum Allowable Stress Values in Tension for 5%, 8%, and 9% Nickel Steels and 5083-0 Aluminum Alloy at Cryogenic Temperatures for Welded and Nonwelded Construction

(b) The maximum allowable longitudinal compressive stress to be used in the design of cylindrical shells or tubes, either seamless or butt welded, subjected to loadings that produce longitudinal compression in the shell or tube shall be the smaller of the following values:

(1) the maximum allowable tensile stress value permitted in (a) above;

(2) the value of the factor B determined by the following procedure where

t = the minimum required thickness of the cylindrical shell or tube
R_o = outside radius of cylindrical shell or tube
E = modulus of elasticity of material at design temperature. The modulus of elasticity to be used shall be taken from the applicable materials chart in Section II, Part D, Subpart 3. (Interpolation may be made between lines for intermediate temperatures.)

The joint efficiency for butt welded joints shall be taken as unity.

The value of B shall be determined as follows.

Step 1. Using the selected values of t and R, calculate the value of factor A using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{(R_o/t)}$$

Step 2. Using the value of A calculated in Step 1, enter the applicable material chart in Section II, Part D, Subpart 3 for the material under consideration. Move vertically to an intersection with the material/temperature line for the design temperature (see UG-20). Interpolation may be made between lines for intermediate temperatures. If

[9] For the basis on which the tabulated stress values have been established, see Appendix 1 of Section II, Part D.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

tabular values in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D are used, linear interpolation or any other rational interpolation method may be used to determine a B value that lies between two adjacent tabular values for a specific temperature. Such interpolation may also be used to determine a B value at an intermediate temperature that lies between two sets of tabular values, after first determining B values for each set of tabular values.

In cases where the value at A falls to the right of the end of the material/temperature line, assume an intersection with the horizontal projection of the upper end of the material/temperature line. If tabular values are used, the last (maximum) tabulated value shall be used. For values of A falling to the left of the material/temperature line, see Step 4.

Step 3. From the intersection obtained in Step 2, move horizontally to the right and read the value of factor B. This is the maximum allowable compressive stress for the values of t and R_o used in Step 1.

Step 4. For values of A falling to the left of the applicable material/temperature line, the value of B shall be calculated using the following formula:

$$B = \frac{AE}{2}$$

If tabulated values are used, determine B as in Step 2 and apply it to the equation in Step 4.

Step 5. Compare the value of B determined in Steps 3 or 4 with the computed longitudinal compressive stress in the cylindrical shell or tube, using the selected values of t and R_o. If the value of B is smaller than the computed compressive stress, a greater value of t must be selected and the design procedure repeated until a value of B is obtained which is greater than the compressive stress computed for the loading on the cylindrical shell or tube.

(c) The wall thickness of a vessel computed by these rules shall be determined such that, for any combination of loadings listed in UG-22 that induce primary stress and are expected to occur simultaneously during normal operation[10] of the vessel, the induced maximum general primary membrane stress does not exceed the maximum allowable stress value in tension (see UG-23), except as provided in (d) below. Except where limited by special rules, such as those for cast iron in flanged joints, the above loads shall not induce a combined maximum primary membrane stress plus primary bending stress across the thickness which exceeds $1\frac{1}{2}$ times[11] the maximum allowable stress value in tension (see UG-23). It is recognized that high localized discontinuity stresses may exist in vessels designed and fabricated in accordance with these rules. Insofar as practical, design rules for details have been written to limit such stresses to a safe level consistent with experience.

The maximum allowable stress values that are to be used in the thickness calculations are to be taken from the tables at the temperature which is expected to be maintained in the metal under the conditions of loading being considered. Maximum stress values may be interpolated for intermediate temperatures.

(d) For the combination of earthquake loading, or wind loading with other loadings in UG-22, the wall thickness of a vessel computed by these rules shall be determined such that the general primary membrane stress shall not exceed 1.2 times the maximum allowable stress permitted in (a), (b), or (c) above. This rule is applicable to stresses caused by internal pressure, external pressure, and axial compressive load on a cylinder.

Earthquake loading and wind loading need not be considered to act simultaneously.

(e) Localized discontinuity stresses [see (c) above] are calculated in Appendix 1, 1-5(g) and 1-8(e), Part UHX, and Appendix 5. The primary plus secondary stresses[11] at these discontinuities shall be limited to S_{PS}, where $S_{PS} = 3S$, and S is the maximum allowable stress of the material at temperature [see (a) above].

In lieu of using $S_{PS} = 3S$, a value of $S_{PS} = 2S_Y$ may be used, where S_Y is the yield strength at temperature, provided the following are met:

(1) the allowable stress of material S is not governed by time-dependent properties as provided in Tables 1A or 1B of Section II, Part D;

(2) the room temperature ratio of the specified minimum yield strength to specified minimum tensile strength for the material does not exceed 0.7;

(3) the value for S_Y at temperature can be obtained from Table Y-1 of Section II, Part D.

UG-24 CASTINGS

(a) Quality Factors. A casting quality factor as specified below shall be applied to the allowable stress values for cast materials given in Subsection C except for castings permitted by Part UCI. At a welded joint in a casting, only the lesser of the casting quality factor or the weld joint efficiency specified in UW-12 applies, but not both. NDE methods and acceptance standards are given in Appendix 7.

(1) A factor not to exceed 80% shall be applied to static castings which are examined in accordance with

[10] See 3-2 Definition of Terms.

[11] The user of the Code is cautioned that for elevated metal temperatures when high membrane stress and/or high bending stress exist in the section, some inelastic straining due to creep in excess of the limits allowed by the criteria of Appendix 1 of Section II, Part D may occur.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

the minimum requirements of the material specification. In addition to the minimum requirements of the material specification, all surfaces of centrifugal castings shall be machined after heat treatment to a finish not coarser than 250 μin. (6.3 μm) arithmetical average deviation, and a factor not to exceed 85% shall be applied.

(2) For nonferrous and ductile cast iron materials, a factor not to exceed 90% shall be applied if in addition to the minimum requirements of UG-24(a)(1):

(a) each casting is subjected to a thorough examination of all surfaces, particularly such as are exposed by machining or drilling, without revealing any defects;

(b) at least three pilot castings[12] representing the first lot of five castings made from a new or altered design are sectioned or radiographed at all critical sections (see footnote 1, Appendix 7) without revealing any defects;

(c) one additional casting taken at random from every subsequent lot of five is sectioned or radiographed at all critical sections without revealing any defects; and

(d) all castings other than those which have been radiographed are examined at all critical sections by the magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods in accordance with the requirements of Appendix 7.

(3) For nonferrous and ductile cast iron materials, a factor not to exceed 90% may be used for a single casting which has been radiographed at all critical sections and found free of defects.

(4) For nonferrous and ductile cast iron materials, a factor not to exceed 90% may be used for a casting which has been machined to the extent that all critical sections are exposed for examination for the full wall thickness; as in tubesheets drilled with holes spaced no farther apart than the wall thickness of the casting. The examination afforded may be taken in lieu of destructive or radiographic testing required in (2)(b) above.

(5) For carbon, low alloy, or high alloy steels, higher quality factors may be applied if in addition to the minimum requirements of (a)(1) above, additional examinations are made as follows.

(a) For centrifugal castings, a factor not to exceed 90% may be applied if the castings are examined by the magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods in accordance with the requirements of Appendix 7.

(b) For static and centrifugal castings a factor not to exceed 100% may be applied if the castings are examined in accordance with all of the requirements of Appendix 7.

[12] *Pilot casting* — Any one casting, usually one of the first from a new pattern, poured of the same material and using the identical foundry procedure (risering, gating, pouring, and melting) as the castings it is intended to represent. Any pilot casting or castings taken to represent a lot and the castings of that lot shall be poured from a heat of metal from which the castings on the current order are poured.

(6) The following additional requirements apply when castings (including those permitted in UG-11) are to be used in vessels to contain lethal substances (UW-2).

(a) Castings of cast iron (UCI-2) and cast ductile iron (UCD-2) are prohibited.

(b) Each casting of nonferrous material permitted by this Division shall be radiographed at all critical sections (see footnote 1, Appendix 7) without revealing any defects. The quality factor for nonferrous castings for lethal service shall not exceed 90%.

(c) Each casting of steel material permitted by this Division shall be examined per Appendix 7 for severe service applications [7-3(b)]. The quality factor for lethal service shall not exceed 100%.

(b) Defects. Imperfections defined as unacceptable by either the material specification or by Appendix 7, 7-3, whichever is more restrictive, are considered to be defects and shall be the basis for rejection of the casting. Where defects have been repaired by welding, the completed repair shall be subject to reexamination and, when required by either the rules of this Division or the requirements of the castings specification, the repaired casting shall be postweld heat treated and, to obtain a 90% or 100% quality factor, the repaired casting shall be stress relieved.

(c) Identification and Marking. Each casting to which a quality factor greater than 80% is applied shall be marked with the name, trademark, or other traceable identification of the manufacturer and the casting identification, including the casting quality factor and the material designation.

UG-25 CORROSION

(a) The user or his designated agent (see U-2) shall specify corrosion allowances other than those required by the rules of this Division. Where corrosion allowances are not provided, this fact shall be indicated on the Data Report.

(b) Vessels or parts of vessels subject to thinning by corrosion, erosion, or mechanical abrasion shall have provision made for the desired life of the vessel by a suitable increase in the thickness of the material over that determined by the design formulas, or by using some other suitable method of protection. (See Appendix E.)

NOTE: When using high alloys and nonferrous materials either for solid wall or clad or lined vessels, refer to UHA-6, UCL-3, and UNF-4, as appropriate.

(c) Material added for these purposes need not be of the same thickness for all parts of the vessel if different rates of attack are expected for the various parts.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(d) No additional thickness need be provided when previous experience in like service has shown that corrosion does not occur or is of only a superficial nature.

(e) Telltale Holes. Telltale holes may be used to provide some positive indication when the thickness has been reduced to a dangerous degree. Telltale holes shall not be used in vessels which are to contain lethal substances [see UW-2(a)], except as permitted by ULW-76 for vent holes in layered construction. When telltale holes are provided, they shall have a diameter of $\frac{1}{16}$ in. to $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm to 5 mm) and have a depth not less than 80% of the thickness required for a seamless shell of like dimensions. These holes shall be provided in the opposite surface to that where deterioration is expected. [For telltale holes in clad or lined vessels, see UCL-25(b).]

(f) Openings for Drain. Vessels subject to corrosion shall be supplied with a suitable drain opening at the lowest point practicable in the vessel; or a pipe may be used extending inward from any other location to within $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) of the lowest point.

UG-26 LININGS

Corrosion resistant or abrasion resistant linings, whether or not attached to the wall of a vessel, shall not be considered as contributing to the strength of the wall except as permitted in Part UCL (see Appendix F).

UG-27 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) The minimum required thickness of shells under internal pressure shall not be less than that computed by the following formulas,[13] except as permitted by Appendix 32. In addition, provision shall be made for any of the loadings listed in UG-22, when such loadings are expected. The provided thickness of the shells shall also meet the requirements of UG-16, except as permitted in Appendix 32.

(b) The symbols defined below are used in the formulas of this paragraph.

t = minimum required thickness of shell
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
R = inside radius of the shell course under consideration,[14]
S = maximum allowable stress value (see UG-23 and the stress limitations specified in UG-24)
E = joint efficiency for, or the efficiency of, appropriate joint in cylindrical or spherical shells, or the efficiency of ligaments between openings, whichever is less.

For welded vessels, use the efficiency specified in UW-12.

For ligaments between openings, use the efficiency calculated by the rules given in UG-53.

(c) Cylindrical Shells. The minimum thickness or maximum allowable working pressure of cylindrical shells shall be the greater thickness or lesser pressure as given by (1) or (2) below.

(1) Circumferential Stress (Longitudinal Joints). When the thickness does not exceed one-half of the inside radius, or P does not exceed $0.385SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{SEt}{R + 0.6t} \tag{1}$$

(2) Longitudinal Stress (Circumferential Joints).[15] When the thickness does not exceed one-half of the inside radius, or P does not exceed $1.25SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt}{R - 0.4t} \tag{2}$$

(d) Spherical Shells. When the thickness of the shell of a wholly spherical vessel does not exceed $0.356R$, or P does not exceed $0.665SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt}{R + 0.2t} \tag{3}$$

(e) When necessary, vessels shall be provided with stiffeners or other additional means of support to prevent overstress or large distortions under the external loadings listed in UG-22 other than pressure and temperature.

(f) A stayed jacket shell that extends completely around a cylindrical or spherical vessel shall also meet the requirements of UG-47(c).

(g) Any reduction in thickness within a shell course or spherical shell shall be in accordance with UW-9.

UG-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS AND TUBES UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE 04

(a) Rules for the design of shells and tubes under external pressure given in this Division are limited to

[13] Formulas in terms of the outside radius and for thicknesses and pressures beyond the limits fixed in this paragraph are given in 1-1 to 1-3.

[14] For pipe, the inside radius R is determined by the nominal outside radius minus the nominal wall thickness.

[15] These formulas will govern only when the circumferential joint efficiency is less than one-half the longitudinal joint efficiency, or when the effect of supplementary loadings (UG-22) causing longitudinal bending or tension in conjunction with internal pressure is being investigated. An example illustrating this investigation is given in L-2.1 and L-2.2.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

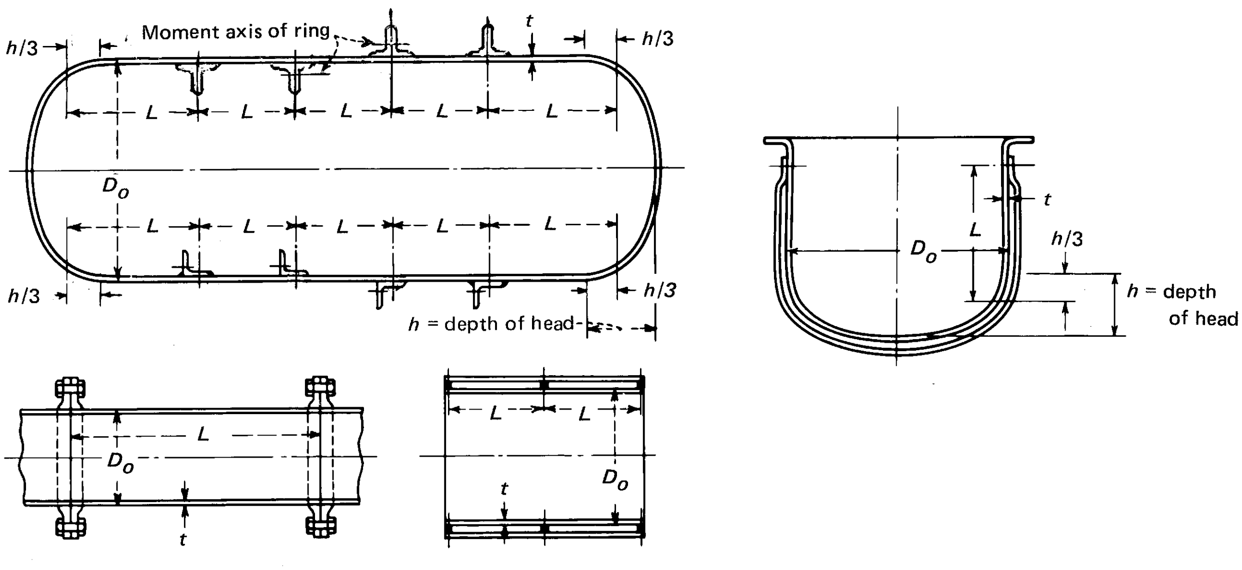


FIG. UG-28 DIAGRAMMATIC REPRESENTATION OF VARIABLES FOR DESIGN OF CYLINDRICAL VESSELS SUBJECTED TO EXTERNAL PRESSURE

cylindrical shells, with or without stiffening rings, tubes, and spherical shells. Three typical forms of cylindrical shells are shown in Fig. UG-28. Charts used in determining minimum required thicknesses of these components are given in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D.

(b) The symbols defined below are used in the procedures of this paragraph:

A = factor determined from Fig. G in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and used to enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D. For the case of cylinders having D_o/t values less than 10, see UG-28(c)(2).

B = factor determined from the applicable material chart or table in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for maximum design metal temperature [see UG-20(c)]

D_o = outside diameter of cylindrical shell course or tube

E = modulus of elasticity of material at design temperature. For external pressure design in accordance with this Section, the modulus of elasticity to be used shall be taken from the applicable materials chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D. (Interpolation may be made between lines for intermediate temperatures.)

L = total length, in. (mm), of a tube between tubesheets, or design length of a vessel section between lines of support (see Fig. UG-28.1). A line of support is:

(1) a circumferential line on a head (excluding conical heads) at one-third the depth of the head from the head tangent line as shown on Fig. UG-28;

(2) a stiffening ring that meets the requirements of UG-29;

(3) a jacket closure of a jacketed vessel that meets the requirements of 9-5;

(4) a cone-to-cylinder junction or a knuckle-to-cylinder junction of a toriconical head or section which satisfies the moment of inertia requirement of 1-8.

P = external design pressure [see Note in UG-28(f)]

P_a = calculated value of maximum allowable external working pressure for the assumed value of t, [see Note in (f) below]

R_o = outside radius of spherical shell

t = minimum required thickness of cylindrical shell or tube, or spherical shell, in. (mm)

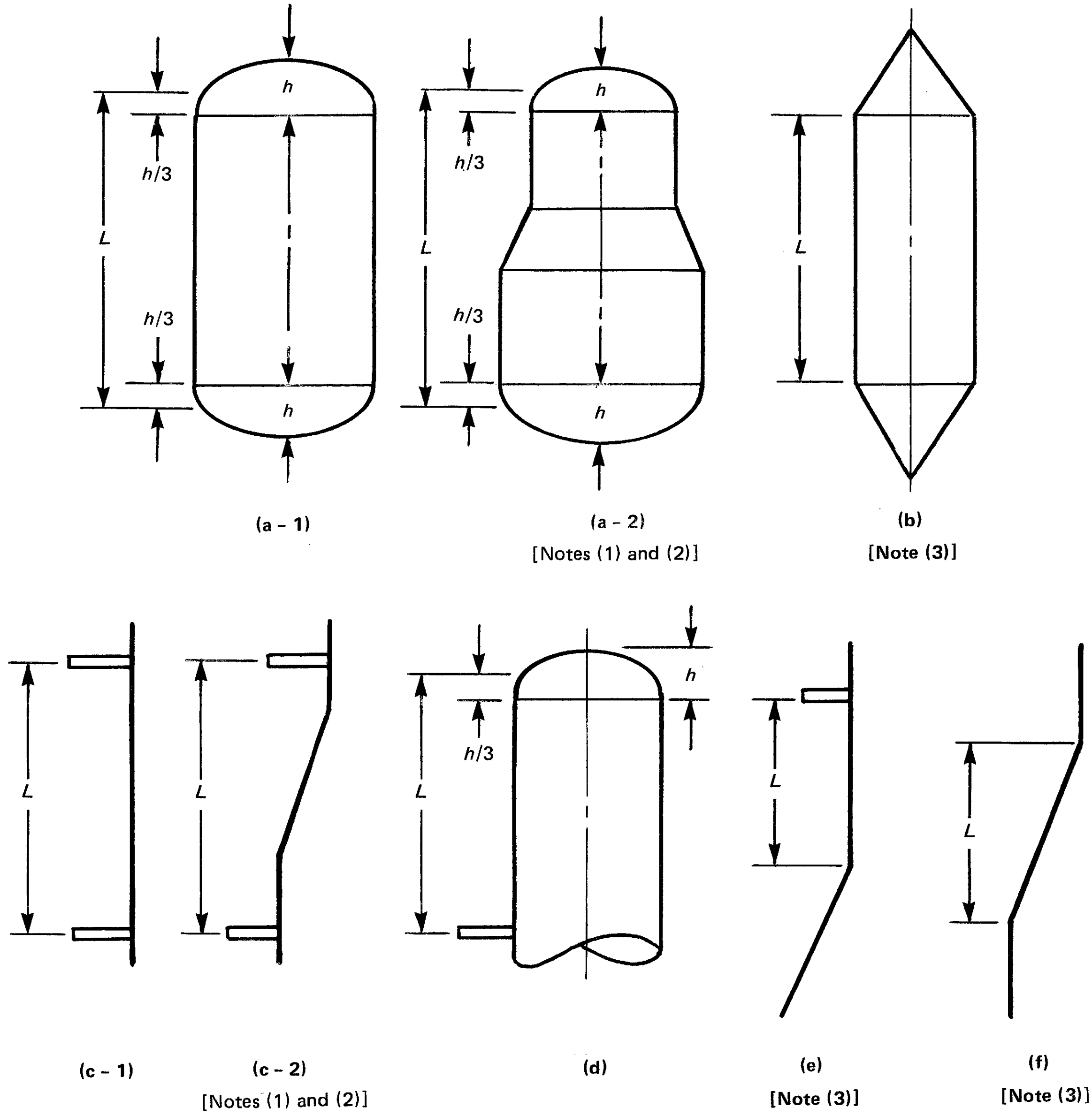
t_s = nominal thickness of cylindrical shell or tube, in. (mm)

(c) Cylindrical Shells and Tubes. The required minimum thickness of a cylindrical shell or tube under external pressure, either seamless or with longitudinal butt joints, shall be determined by the following procedure.

(1) Cylinders having D_o/t values ≥ 10:

Step 1. Assume a value for t and determine the ratios L/D_o and D_o/t.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTES:

(1) When the cone-to-cylinder or the knuckle-to-cylinder junction is not a line of support, the nominal thickness of the cone, knuckle, or toriconical section shall not be less than the minimum required thickness of the adjacent cylindrical shell.

(2) Calculations shall be made using the diameter and corresponding thickness of each cylindrical section with dimension L as shown. Thicknesses of the transition sections are based on Note (1).

(3) When the cone-to-cylinder or the knuckle-to-cylinder junction is a line of support, the moment of inertia shall be provided in accordance with 1-8.

FIG. UG-28.1 DIAGRAMMATIC REPRESENTATION OF LINES OF SUPPORT FOR DESIGN OF CYLINDRICAL VESSELS SUBJECTED TO EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Step 2. Enter Fig. G in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D at the value of L/D_o determined in Step 1. For values of L/D_o greater than 50, enter the chart at a value of $L/D_o = 50$. For values of L/D_o less than 0.05, enter the chart at a value of $L/D_o = 0.05$.

Step 3. Move horizontally to the line for the value of D_o/t determined in Step 1. Interpolation may be made for intermediate values of D_o/t. From this point of intersection move vertically downward to determine the value of factor A.

Step 4. Using the value of A calculated in Step 3, enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration. Move vertically to an intersection with the material/temperature line for the design temperature (see UG-20). Interpolation may be made between lines for intermediate temperatures. If tabular values in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D are used, linear interpolation or any other rational interpolation method may be used to determine a B value that lies between two adjacent tabular values for a specific temperature. Such interpolation may also be used to detemine a B value at an intermediate temperature that lies between two sets of tabular values, after first determining B values for each set of tabular values.

In cases where the value of A falls to the right of the end of the material/temperature line, assume an intersection with the horizontal projection of the upper end of the material/temperature line. If tabular values are used, the last (maximum) tabulated value shall be used. For values of A falling to the left of the material/temperature line, see Step 7.

Step 5. From the intersection obtained in Step 4, move horizontally to the right and read the value of factor B.

Step 6. Using this value of B, calculate the value of the maximum allowable external working pressure P_a using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{4B}{3(D_o/t)}$$

Step 7. For values of A falling to the left of the applicable material/temperature line, the value of P_a can be calculated using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{2AE}{3(D_o/t)}$$

If tabular values are used, determine B as in Step 4 and apply it to the equation in Step 6.

Step 8. Compare the calculated value of P_a obtained in Steps 6 or 7 with P. If P_a is smaller than P, select a larger value for t and repeat the design procedure until a value of P_a is obtained that is equal to or greater than P. An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-3(a).

(2) Cylinders having D_o/t values <10:

Step 1. Using the same procedure as given in UG-28(c)(1), obtain the value of B. For values of D_o/t less than 4, the value of factor A can be calculated using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{1.1}{(D_o/t)^2}$$

For values of A greater than 0.10, use a value of 0.10.

Step 2. Using the value of B obtained in Step 1, calculate a value P_{a1} using the following formula:

$$P_{a1} = \left[\frac{2.167}{(D_o/t)} - 0.0833\right] B$$

Step 3. Calculate a value P_{a2} using the following formula:

$$P_{a2} = \frac{2S}{D_o/t}\left[1 - \frac{1}{D_o/t}\right]$$

where S is the lesser of two times the maximum allowable stress value in tension at design metal temperature, from the applicable table referenced in UG-23, or 0.9 times the yield strength of the material at design temperature. Values of yield strength are obtained from the applicable external pressure chart as follows:

(a) For a given temperature curve, determine the B value that corresponds to the right hand side termination point of the curve.

(b) The yield strength is twice the B value obtained in (a) above.

Step 4. The smaller of the values of P_{a1} calculated in Step 2, or P_{a2} calculated in Step 3 shall be used for the maximum allowable external working pressure P_a. Compare P_a with P. If P_a is smaller than P, select a larger value for t and repeat the design procedure until a value for P_a is obtained that is equal to or greater than P.

(d) Spherical Shells. The minimum required thickness of a spherical shell under external pressure, either seamless or of built-up construction with butt joints, shall be determined by the following procedure:

Step 1. Assume a value for t and calculate the value of factor A using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{(R_o/t)}$$

Step 2. Using the value of A calculated in Step 1, enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration. Move vertically to an intersection with the material/temperature line for the design temperature (see UG-20). Interpolation may be made between lines for intermediate temperatures. If tabular values in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

are used, linear interpolation or any other rational interpolation method may be used to detemine a B value that lies between two adjacent tabular values for a specific temperature. Such interpolation may also be used to determine a B value at an intermediate temperature that lies between two sets of tabular values, after first detemining B values for each set of tabular values.

In cases where the value at A falls to the right of the end of the material/temperature line, assume an intersection with the horizontal projection of the upper end of the material/temperature line. If tabular values are used, the last (maximum) tabulated value shall be used. For values at A falling to the left of the material/temperature line, see Step 5.

Step 3. From the intersection obtained in Step 2, move horizontally to the right and read the value of factor B.

Step 4. Using the value of B obtained in Step 3, calculate the value of the maximum allowable external working pressure P_a using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{B}{(R_o/t)}$$

Step 5. For values of A falling to the left of the applicable material/temperature line, the value of P_a can be calculated using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{0.0625E}{(R_o/t)^2}$$

If tabulated values are used, determine B as in Step 2 and apply it to the equation in Step 4.

Step 6. Compare P_a obtained in Steps 4 or 5 with P. If P_a is smaller than P, select a larger value for t and repeat the design procedure until a value for P_a is obtained that is equal to or greater than P. An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-3(b).

(e) The external design pressure or maximum allowable external working pressure shall not be less than the maximum expected difference in operating pressure that may exist between the outside and the inside of the vessel at any time.

(f) Vessels intended for service under external working pressures of 15 psi (0.1 MPa) and less [see U-1(c)(2)(h)] may be stamped with the Code Symbol denoting compliance with the rules for external pressure provided all the applicable rules of this Division are satisfied. When the Code Symbol is to be applied, the user or his designated agent shall specify the required maximum allowable external working pressure.[16] The vessel shall be designed and stamped with the maximum allowable external working pressure.

(g) When there is a longitudinal lap joint in a cylindrical shell or any lap joint in a spherical shell under external pressure, the thickness of the shell shall be determined by the rules in this paragraph, except that $2P$ shall be used instead of P in the calculations for the required thickness.

(h) Circumferential joints in cylindrical shells may be of any type permitted by the Code and shall be designed for the imposed loads.

(i) Those portions of pressure chambers of vessels which are subject to a collapsing pressure and which have a shape other than that of a complete circular cylinder or formed head, and also jackets of cylindrical vessels which extend over only a portion of the circumference, shall be fully staybolted in accordance with the requirements of UG-47 through UG-50 or shall be proof tested in compliance with UG-101(p).

(j) When necessary, vessels shall be provided with stiffeners or other additional means of support to prevent overstress or large distortions under the external loadings listed in UG-22 other than pressure and temperature.

UG-29 STIFFENING RINGS FOR CYLINDRICAL SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE 04

(a) External stiffening rings shall be attached to the shell by welding or brazing [see UG-30]. Internal stiffening rings need not be attached to the shell when the rings are designed to carry the loads and adequate means of support is provided to hold the ring in place when subjected to external pressure loads. Segments of rings need not be attached when the requirements of UG-29(c) are met.

Except as exempted in (f) below, the available moment of inertia of a circumferential stiffening ring shall be not less than that determined by one of the following two formulas:

$$I_s = [D_o^2 L_s(t + A_s/L_s)A]/14$$

$$I_s' = [D_o^2 L_s(t + A_s/L_s)A]/10.9$$

I_s = required moment of inertia of the stiffening ring cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell

I_s' = required moment of inertia of the combined ring-shell cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell

I = available moment of inertia of the stiffening ring cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell

I' = available moment of inertia of combined ring-shell cross section about its neutral axis parallel

[16] It is recommended that a suitable margin be provided when establishing the maximum allowable external working pressure to allow for pressure variations in service.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

to the axis of the shell. The nominal shell thickness t_s shall be used and the width of shell which is taken as contributing to the moment of inertia of the combined section shall not be greater than $1.10\sqrt{D_o t_s}$ and shall be taken as lying one-half on each side of the centroid of the ring. Portions of the shell plate shall not be considered as contributing area to more than one stiffening ring.

CAUTIONARY NOTE: Stiffening rings may be subject to lateral buckling. This should be considered in addition to the requirements for I_s and I'_s [see U-2(g)].

If the stiffeners should be so located that the maximum permissible effective shell sections overlap on either or both sides of a stiffener, the effective shell section for that stiffener shall be shortened by one-half of each overlap.

A_s = cross-sectional area of the stiffening ring

A = factor determined from the applicable chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material used in the stiffening ring, corresponding to the factor B, below, and the design temperature for the shell under consideration

B = factor determined from the applicable chart or table in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material used for the stiffening ring [see UG-20(c)]

L_s = one-half of the distance from the center line of the stiffening ring to the next line of support on one side, plus one-half of the center line distance to the next line of support on the other side of the stiffening ring, both measured parallel to the axis of the cylinder. A line of support is:

(a) a stiffening ring that meets the requirements of this paragraph;

(b) a circumferential connection to a jacket for a jacketed section of a cylindrical shell;

(c) a circumferential line on a head at one-third the depth of the head from the head tangent line as shown on Fig. UG-28;

(d) a cone-to-cylinder junction.

P, D_o, E, t, and t_s are as defined in UG-28(b).

The adequacy of the moment of inertia for a stiffening ring shall be determined by the following procedure.

Step 1. Assuming that the shell has been designed and D_o, L_s, and t are known, select a member to be used for the stiffening ring and determine its cross-sectional area A_s. Then calculate factor B using the following formula:

$$B = \tfrac{3}{4}\left(\frac{PD_o}{t + A_s/L_s}\right)$$

Step 2a. If tabular values in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D are used, linear interpolation or any other rational interpolation method may be used to determine an A value that lies between two adjacent tabular values for a specific temperature. Linear interpolation may also be used to determine an A value at an intermediate temperature that lies between two sets of tabular values, after first determining A values for each set of tabular values. The value of A so determined is then applied in the equation for I or I_s' in Steps 6a or 6b.

Step 2b. If material charts in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D are used, enter the right-hand side of the applicable material chart for the material under consideration at the value of B determined by Step 1. If different materials are used for the shell and stiffening ring, use the material chart resulting in the larger value of A in Step 4, below.

Step 3. Move horizontally to the left to the material/temperature line for the design metal temperature. For values of B falling below the left end of the material/temperature line, see Step 5.

Step 4. Move vertically to the bottom of the chart and read the value of A.

Step 5. For values of B falling below the left end of the material/temperature line for the design temperature, the value of A can be calculated using the formula $A = 2B/E$.

Step 6a. In those cases where only the stiffening ring is considered, compute the required moment of inertia from the formula for I_s given above.

Step 6b. In those cases where the combined ring-shell is considered, compute the required moment of inertia from the formula for I_s' given above.

Step 7a. In those cases where only the stiffening ring is considered, determine the available moment of inertia I as given in the definitions.

Step 7b. In those cases where the combined ring-shell is considered, determine the available moment of inertia I' as given in the definitions.

NOTE: In those cases where the stiffening ring is not attached to the shell or where the stiffening ring is attached but the designer chooses to consider only the ring, Step 6a and Step 7a are considered. In those cases where the stiffening ring is attached to the shell and the combined moment of inertia is considered, Step 6b and Step 7b are considered.

Step 8. If the required moment of inertia is greater than the available moment of inertia for the section selected, for those cases where the stiffening ring is not attached or where the combined ring-shell stiffness was not considered, a new section with a larger moment of inertia must be selected; the ring must be attached to the shell and the combination shall be considered; or the ring-shell combination which was previously not considered together shall be considered together. If the required moment of inertia is greater than the available moment of inertia for those cases where the combined ring-shell

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

was considered, a new ring section with a larger moment of inertia must be selected. In any case, when a new section is used, all of the calculations shall be repeated using the new section properties of the ring or ring-shell combination.

If the required moment of inertia is smaller than the actual moment of inertia of the ring or ring-shell combination, whichever is used, that ring section or combined section is satisfactory.

An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-5.

(b) Stiffening rings shall extend completely around the circumference of the cylinder except as permitted in (c) below. Any joints between the ends or sections of such rings, such as shown in Fig. UG-29.1(A) and (B), and any connection between adjacent portions of a stiffening ring lying inside or outside the shell as shown in Fig. UG-29.1(C) shall be made so that the required moment of inertia of the combined ring-shell section is maintained.

(c) Stiffening rings placed on the inside of a vessel may be arranged as shown in Fig. UG-29.1(E) and (F) provided that the required moment of inertia of the ring in (E) or of the combined ring-shell section in (F) is maintained within the sections indicated. Where the gap at (A) or (E) does not exceed eight times the thickness of the shell plate, the combined moment of inertia of the shell and stiffener may be used.

Any gap in that portion of a stiffening ring supporting the shell, such as shown in Fig. UG-29.1(D) and (E), shall not exceed the length of arc given in Fig. UG-29.2 unless additional reinforcement is provided as shown in Fig. UG-29.1(C) or unless the following conditions are met:

(1) only one unsupported shell arc is permitted per ring; and

(2) the length of the unsupported shell arc does not exceed 90 deg; and

(3) the unsupported arcs in adjacent stiffening rings are staggered 180 deg; and

(4) the dimension L defined in UG-28(b) is taken as the larger of the following: the distance between alternate stiffening rings, or the distance from the head tangent line to the second stiffening ring plus one-third of the head depth.

(d) When internal plane structures perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the cylinder (such as bubble trays or baffle plates) are used in a vessel, they may also be considered to act as stiffening rings provided they are designed to function as such.

(e) Any internal stays or supports used as stiffeners of the shell shall bear against the shell of the vessel through the medium of a substantially continuous ring.

NOTE: Attention is called to the objection to supporting vessels through the medium of legs or brackets, the arrangement of which may cause concentrated loads to be imposed on the shell. Vertical vessels should be supported through a substantial ring secured to the shell (see G-3). Horizontal vessels, unless supported at or close to the ends (heads) or at stiffening rings, should be supported through the medium of substantial members extending over at least one-third of the circumference, as shown at (K) in Fig. UG-29.1.

Attention is called also to the hazard of imposing highly concentrated loads by the improper support of one vessel on another or by the hanging or supporting of heavy weights directly on the shell of the vessel. (See Appendix G.)

(f) When closure bars or other rings are attached to both the inner shell and outer jacket of a vessel, with pressure in the space between the jacket and inner shell, this construction has adequate inherent stiffness, and therefore the rules of this paragraph do not apply.

UG-30 ATTACHMENT OF STIFFENING RINGS

(a) Stiffening rings may be placed on the inside or outside of a vessel, and except for the configurations permitted by UG-29, shall be attached to the shell by welding or brazing. Brazing may be used if the vessel is not to be later stress relieved. The ring shall be essentially in contact with the shell and meet the rules in UG-29(b) and (c). Welding of stiffening rings shall comply with the requirements of this Division for the type of vessel under construction.

(b) Stiffening rings may be attached to the shell by continuous, intermittent, or a combination of continuous and intermittent welds or brazes. Some acceptable methods of attaching stiffening rings are illustrated in Fig. UG-30.

(c) Intermittent welding shall be placed on both sides of the stiffener and may be either staggered or in-line. Length of individual fillet weld segments shall not be less than 2 in. (50 mm) and shall have a maximum clear spacing between toes of adjacent weld segments of $8t$ for external rings and $12t$ for internal rings where t is the shell thickness at the attachment. The total length of weld on each side of the stiffening ring shall be:

(1) not less than one-half the outside circumference of the vessel for rings on the outside; and

(2) not less than one-third the circumference of the vessel for rings on the inside.

(d) A continuous full penetration weld is permitted as shown in sketch (e) of Fig. UG-30. Continuous fillet welding or brazing on one side of the stiffener with intermittent welding or brazing on the other side is permitted for sketches (a), (b), (c), and (d) of Fig. UG-30 when the thickness t_w of the outstanding stiffening element [sketches (a) and (c)] or width w of the stiffening element

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

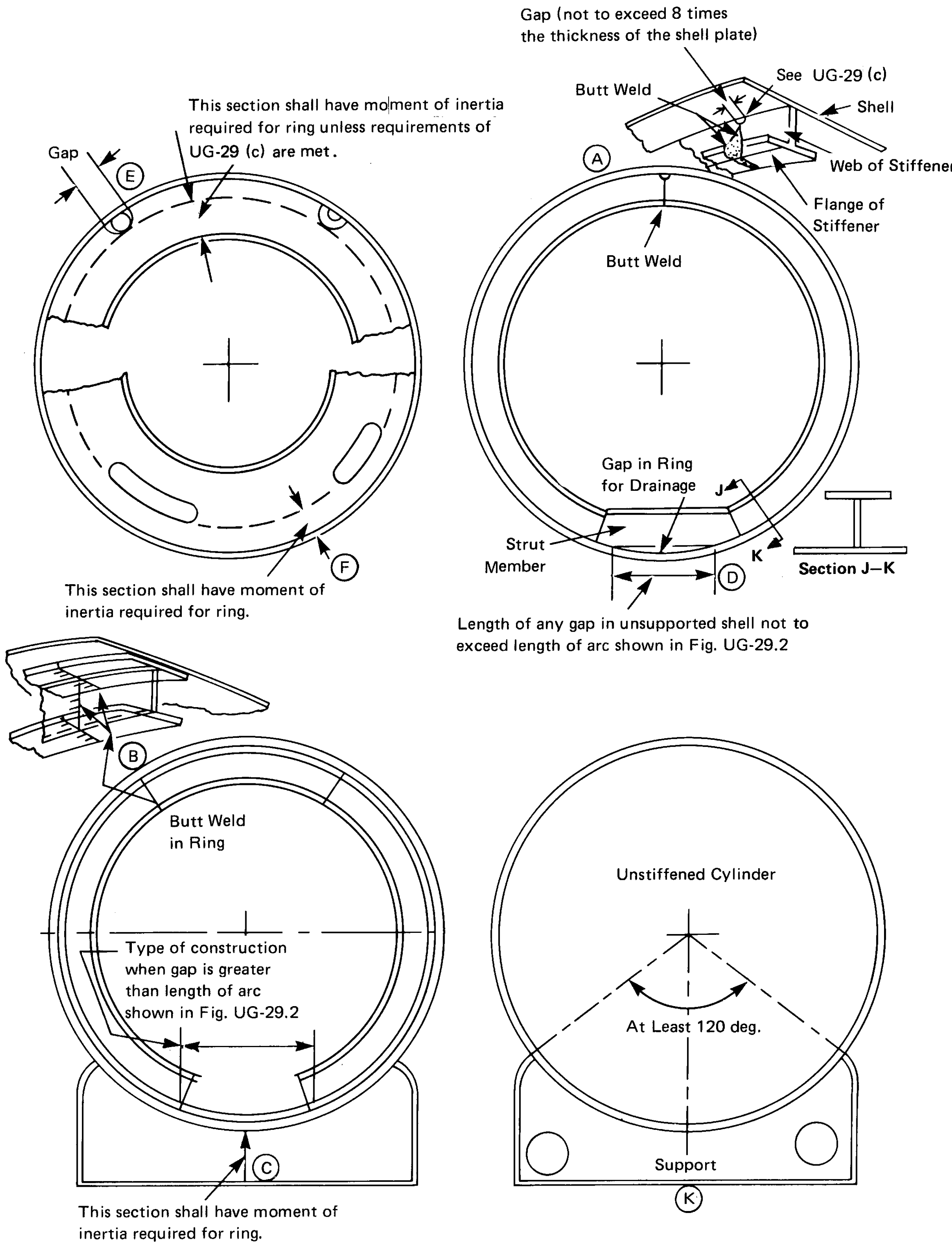


FIG. UG-29.1 VARIOUS ARRANGEMENTS OF STIFFENING RINGS FOR CYLINDRICAL VESSELS SUBJECTED TO EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

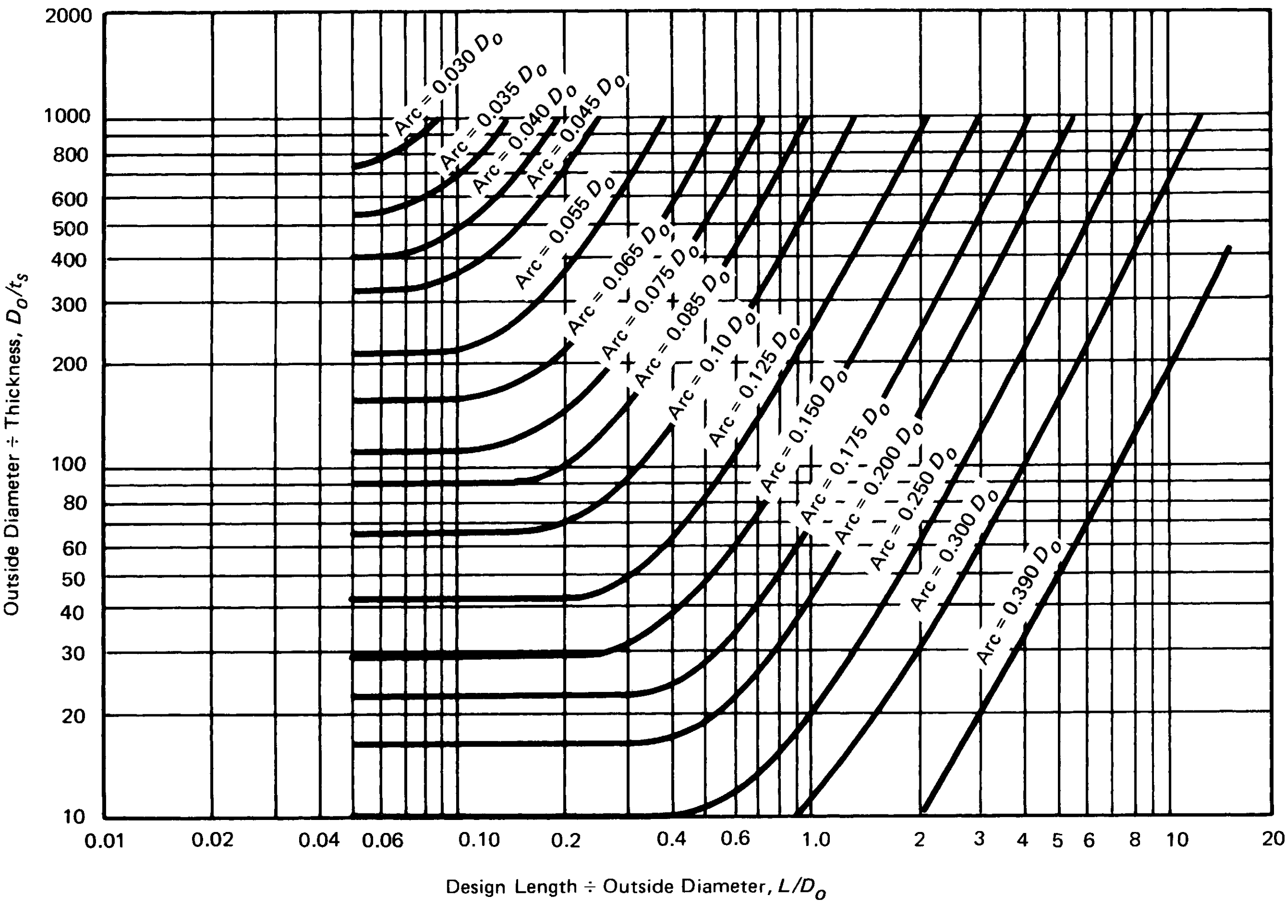


FIG. UG-29.2 MAXIMUM ARC OF SHELL LEFT UNSUPPORTED BECAUSE OF GAP IN STIFFENING RING OF CYLINDRICAL SHELL UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

mating to the shell [sketches (b) and (d)] is not more than 1 in. (25 mm). The weld segments shall be not less than 2 in. (50 mm) long and shall have a maximum clear spacing between toes of adjacent weld segments of 24*t*.

(e) Strength of Attachment Welds. Stiffening ring attachment welds shall be sized to resist the full radial pressure load from the shell between stiffeners, and shear loads acting radially across the stiffener caused by external design loads carried by the stiffener (if any) and a computed radial shear equal to 2% of the stiffening ring's compressive load. See Example L-5 of Appendix L.

(1) The radial pressure load from shell, lb/in.,is equal to PL_s.

(2) The radial shear load is equal to $0.01PL_sD_O$.

(3) P, L_s, and D_O are defined in UG-29.

(f) Minimum Size of Attachment Welds. The fillet weld leg size shall be not less than the smallest of the following:

(1) $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm);

(2) vessel thickness at the weld location;

(3) stiffener thickness at weld location.

UG-31 TUBES, AND PIPE WHEN USED AS TUBES OR SHELLS

(a) Internal Pressure. The required wall thickness for tubes and pipe under internal pressure shall be determined in accordance with the rules for shells in UG-27.

(b) External Pressure. The required wall thickness for tubes and pipe under external pressure shall be determined in accordance with the rules in UG-28.

(c) The thickness as determined under (a) or (b) above shall be increased when necessary to meet the following requirements.

(1) Additional wall thickness should be provided when corrosion, erosion, or wear due to cleaning operations is expected.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

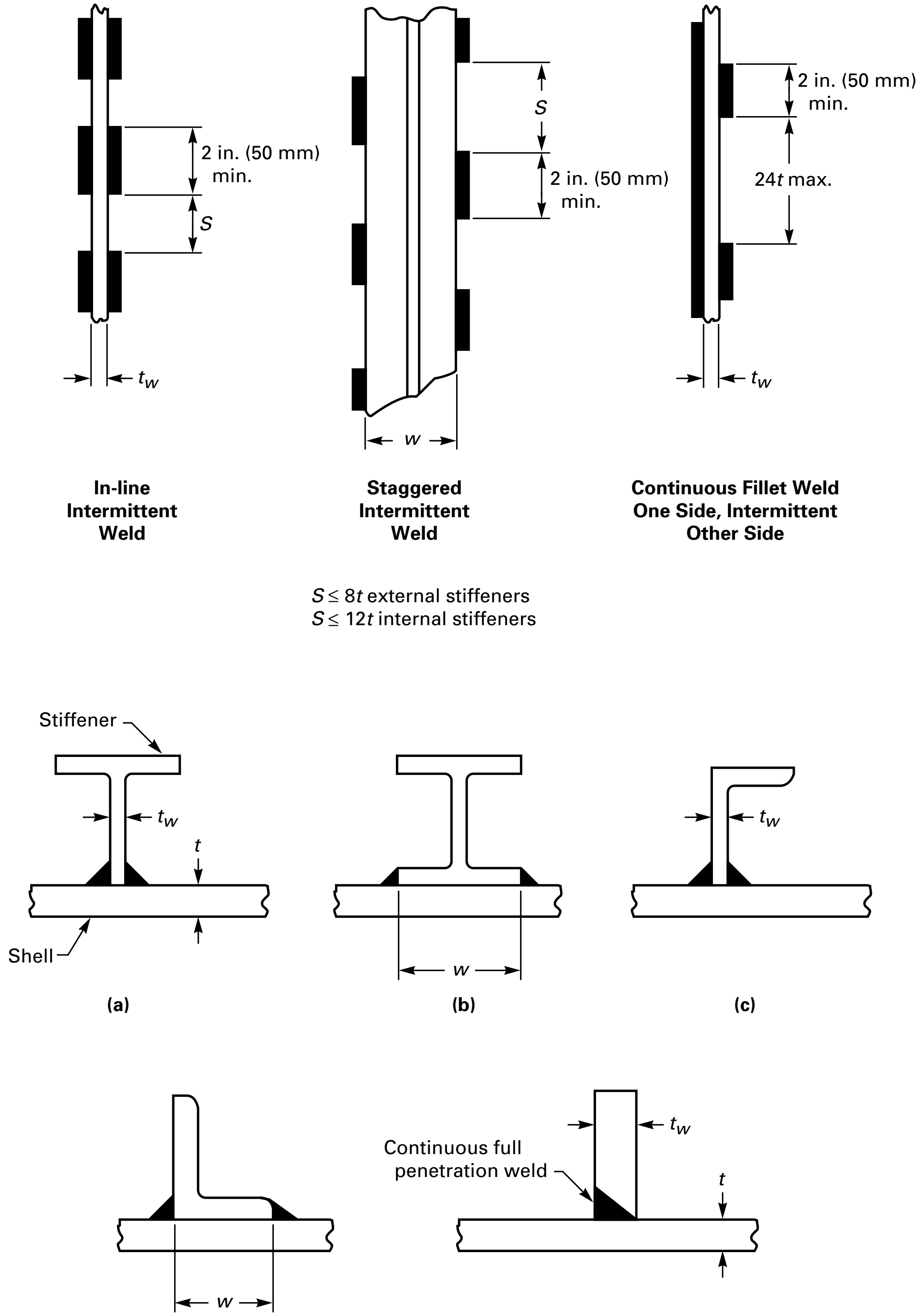


FIG. UG-30 SOME ACCEPTABLE METHODS OF ATTACHING STIFFENING RINGS

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(2) Where ends are threaded, additional wall thickness is to be provided in the amount of $0.8/n$ in. ($20/n$ mm) [where n equals the number of threads per inch (25.4 mm)].

NOTE: The requirements for rolling, expanding, or otherwise seating tubes in tube plates may require additional wall thickness and careful choice of materials because of possible relaxation due to differential expansion stresses.

UG-32 FORMED HEADS, AND SECTIONS, PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

(a) The minimum required thickness at the thinnest point after forming[17] of ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, conical, and toriconical heads under pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be computed by the appropriate formulas in this paragraph,[18] except as permitted by Appendix 32. In addition, provision shall be made for any of the loadings listed in UG-22. The provided thickness of the heads shall also meet the requirements of UG-16, except as permitted in Appendix 32.

(b) The thickness of an unstayed ellipsoidal or torispherical head shall in no case be less than the required thickness of a seamless hemispherical head divided by the efficiency of the head-to-shell joint.

(c) The symbols defined below are used in the formulas of this paragraph:

t = minimum required thickness of head after forming
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
D = inside diameter of the head skirt; or inside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or inside diameter of a conical head at the point under consideration, measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis
D_i = inside diameter of the conical portion of a toriconical head at its point of tangency to the knuckle, measured perpendicular to the axis of the cone
= $D - 2r(1 - \cos\alpha)$
r = inside knuckle radius
S = maximum allowable stress value in tension as given in the tables referenced in UG-23, except as limited in UG-24 and (e) below.
E = lowest efficiency of any joint in the head; for hemispherical heads this includes head-to-shell joint; for welded vessels, use the efficiency specified in UW-12
L = inside spherical or crown radius. The value of L for ellipsoidal heads shall be obtained from Table UG-37.
α = one-half of the included (apex) angle of the cone at the center line of the head (see Fig. 1-4)

(d) Ellipsoidal Heads With t/L ≥ 0.002. The required thickness of a dished head of semiellipsoidal form, in which half the minor axis (inside depth of the head minus the skirt) equals one-fourth of the inside diameter of the head skirt, shall be determined by

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt}{D + 0.2t} \qquad (1)$$

NOTE: For ellipsoidal heads with $t/L < 0.002$, the rules of 1-4(f) shall also be met.

An acceptable approximation of a 2:1 ellipsoidal head is one with a knuckle radius of $0.17D$ and a spherical radius of $0.90D$.

(e) Torispherical Heads With t/L ≥ 0.002. The required thickness of a torispherical head for the case in which the knuckle radius is 6% of the inside crown radius and the inside crown radius equals the outside diameter of the skirt, [see (j) below], shall be determined by

$$t = \frac{0.885PL}{SE - 0.1P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{SEt}{0.885L + 0.1t} \qquad (2)$$

NOTE: For torispherical heads with $t/L < 0.002$, the rules of 1-4(f) shall also be met.

Torispherical heads made of materials having a specified minimum tensile strength exceeding 70,000 psi (500 MPa) shall be designed using a value of S equal to 20,000 psi (150 MPa) at room temperature and reduced in proportion to the reduction in maximum allowable stress values at temperature for the material (see UG-23).

(f) Hemispherical Heads. When the thickness of a hemispherical head does not exceed $0.356L$, or P does not exceed $0.665SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

$$t = \frac{PL}{2SE - 0.2P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt}{L + 0.2t} \qquad (3)$$

(g) Conical Heads and Sections (Without Transition Knuckle). The required thickness of conical heads or conical shell sections that have a half apex-angle α not greater than 30 deg shall be determined by

$$t = \frac{PD}{2\cos\alpha(SE - 0.6P)} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt\cos\alpha}{D + 1.2t\cos\alpha} \qquad (4)$$

[17] In order to ensure that a finished head is not less than the minimum thickness required, it is customary to use a thicker plate to take care of possible thinning during the process of forming. The neck of an opening in a head with an integrally flanged opening will thin out due to the fluing operation. This is permissible provided the neck thickness is not less than the thickness required for a cylindrical shell subject to internal and/or external pressure, as applicable, and having an inside diameter equal to the maximum diameter of the opening [see UG-38(a) and UG-46(j)].

[18] Formulas in terms of outside dimensions and for heads of other proportions are given in 1-4 together with illustrative examples.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

A reinforcing ring shall be provided when required by the rule in 1-5(d) and (e).

Conical heads or sections having a half apex-angle α greater than 30 deg. without a transition knuckle shall comply with Formula (4) and 1-5(g).

(h) Toriconical Heads and Sections. The required thickness of the conical portion of a toriconical head or section, in which the knuckle radius is neither less than 6% of the outside diameter of the head skirt nor less than three times the knuckle thickness, shall be determined by Formula (4) in (g) above, using D_i in place of D.

The required thickness of the knuckle shall be determined by Formula (3) of 1-4(d) in which

$$L = \frac{D_i}{2 \cos \alpha}$$

Toriconical heads or sections may be used when the angle $\alpha \leq 30$ deg. and are mandatory for conical head designs when the angle α exceeds 30 deg, unless the design complies with 1-5(g).

(i) When an ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, conical, or toriconical head is of a lesser thickness than required by the rules of this paragraph, it shall be stayed as a flat surface according to the rules of UG-47 for braced and stayed flat plates.

(j) The inside crown radius to which an unstayed head is dished shall be not greater than the outside diameter of the skirt of the head. The inside knuckle radius of a torispherical head shall be not less than 6% of the outside diameter of the skirt of the head but in no case less than 3 times the head thickness.

(k) A dished head with a reversed skirt may be used in a pressure vessel provided the maximum allowable working pressure for the head is established in accordance with the requirements of UG-101.

(l) All formed heads, thicker than the shell and concave to pressure, intended for butt welded attachment, shall have a skirt length sufficient to meet the requirements of Fig. UW-13.1, when a tapered transition is required. All formed heads concave to pressure and intended for butt welded attachment need not have an integral skirt when the thickness of the head is equal to or less than the thickness of the shell. When a skirt is provided, its thickness shall be at least that required for a seamless shell of the same inside diameter.

(m) Heads concave to pressure, intended for attachment by brazing, shall have a skirt length sufficient to meet the requirements for circumferential joints in Part UB.

(n) Any taper at a welded joint within a formed head shall be in accordance with UW-9. The taper at a circumferential welded joint connecting a formed head to a main shell shall meet the requirements of UW-13 for the respective type of joint shown therein.

(o) If a torispherical, ellipsoidal, or hemispherical head is formed with a flattened spot or surface, the diameter of the flat spot shall not exceed that permitted for flat heads as given by Formula (1) in UG-34, using $C = 0.25$.

(p) Openings in formed heads under internal pressure shall comply with the requirements of UG-36 through UG-46.

(q) A stayed jacket that completely covers a formed inner head or any of the types included in this paragraph shall also meet the requirements of UG-47(c).

UG-33 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

(a) General. The required thickness at the thinnest point after forming [see footnote 17, UG-32(a)] of ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, toriconical, and conical heads and conical segments under pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall be computed by the appropriate formulas given in this paragraph (see UG-16). In addition, provisions shall be made for any other loading given in UG-22. The required thickness for heads due to pressure on the convex side shall be determined as follows.

(1) For ellipsoidal and torispherical heads, the required thickness shall be the greater of the following:

(a) the thickness computed by the procedure given in UG-32 for heads with pressure on the concave side (plus heads) using a design pressure 1.67 times the design pressure on the convex side, assuming a joint efficiency $E = 1.00$ for all cases; or

(b) the thickness as computed by the appropriate procedure given in (d) or (e) below.

In determining the maximum allowable working pressure on the convex side of ellipsoidal or torispherical heads, reverse the procedures in (a)(1)(a) and (a)(1)(b) above, and use the smaller of the pressures obtained.

(2) For hemispherical heads, the required thickness shall be determined by the rules given in (c) below.

(3) For conical and toriconical heads and conical sections, the required thickness shall be determined by the rules given in (f) below.

(b) Nomenclature. The nomenclature defined below is used in this paragraph. Figure 1-4 shows principal dimensions of typical heads.

A, B, E, and *P* are as defined in UG-28(b)

D_o = outside diameter of the head skirt

$D_o/2h_o$ = ratio of the major to the minor axis of ellipsoidal heads, which equals the outside diameter of the head skirt divided by twice the outside height of the head (see Table UG-33.1)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UG-33.1
VALUES OF SPHERICAL RADIUS FACTOR K_o FOR ELLIPSOIDAL HEAD WITH PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE
Interpolation Permitted for Intermediate Values

$D_o/2h_o$	...	3.0	2.8	2.6	2.4	2.2
K_o	...	1.36	1.27	1.18	1.08	0.99
$D_o/2h_o$	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.0
K_o	0.90	0.81	0.73	0.65	0.57	0.50

t_e = effective thickness of conical section
= $t \cos \alpha$
L_c = axial length of conical section, excluding the knuckle, of a toriconical head or section (see Fig. UG-33.1)
L_e = equivalent length of conical section
= $(L/2)(1 + D_s/D_L)$
L = axial length of cone or conical section (see Fig. UG-33.1) [for a toriconical head or section, see UG-33(g)].
D_s = outside diameter at small end of conical section under consideration
D_L = outside diameter at large end of conical section under consideration
h_o = one-half of the length of the outside minor axis of the ellipsoidal head, or the outside height of the ellipsoidal head measured from the tangent line (head-bend line)
K_o = factor depending on the ellipsoidal head proportions $D_o/2h_o$ (see Table UG-33.1)
R_o = for hemispherical heads, the outside radius
R_o = for ellipsoidal heads, the equivalent outside spherical radius taken as K_oD_o
R_o = for torispherical heads, the outside radius of the crown portion of the head
t = minimum required thickness of head after forming, in. (mm)
α = one-half the apex angle in conical heads and sections, deg.

(c) Hemispherical Heads. The required thickness of a hemispherical head having pressure on the convex side shall be determined in the same manner as outlined in UG-28(d) for determining the thickness for a spherical shell. An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-6.3.

(d) Ellipsoidal Heads. The required thickness of an ellipsoidal head having pressure on the convex side, either seamless or of built-up construction with butt joints, shall not be less than that determined by the following procedure.

Step 1. Assume a value for t and calculate the value of factor A using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{R_o/t}$$

Step 2. Using the value of A calculated in Step 1, follow the same procedure as that given for spherical shells in UG-28(d), Steps 2 through 6. An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-6.1.

(e) Torispherical Heads. The required thickness of a torispherical head having pressure on the convex side, either seamless or of built-up construction with butt joints, shall not be less than that determined by the same design procedure as is used for ellipsoidal heads given in (d) above, using the appropriate value for R_o. An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-6.2.

(f) Conical Heads and Sections. The required thickness of a conical head or section under pressure on the convex side, either seamless or of built-up construction with butt joints, shall be determined in accordance with the following subparagraphs.

(1) When α is equal to or less than 60 deg.:

(a) cones having D_L/t_e values ≥ 10:

Step 1. Assume a value for t_e and determine the ratios L_e/D_L and D_L/t_e.

Step 2. Enter Fig. G of Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D at a value of L/D_o equivalent to the value of L_e/D_L determined in Step 1. For values of L_e/D_L greater than 50, enter the chart at a value of $L_e/D_L = 50$.

Step 3. Move horizontally to the line for the value of D_o/t equivalent to the value of D_L/t_e determined in Step 1. Interpolation may be made for intermediate values of D_L/t_e. From this point of intersection move vertically downwards to determine the value of factor A.

Step 4. Using the value of A calculated in Step 3, enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration. Move vertically to an intersection with the material/temperature line for the design temperature (see UG-20). Interpolation may be made between lines for intermediate temperatures.

In cases where the value of A falls to the right of the end of the material/temperature line, assume an intersection with the horizontal projection of the upper end of the material/temperature line. For values of A falling to the left of the material/temperature line, see Step 7.

Step 5. From the intersection obtained in Step 4, move horizontally to the right and read the value of factor B.

Step 6. Using this value of B, calculate the value of the maximum allowable external working pressure P_a using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{4B}{3(D_L/t_e)}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

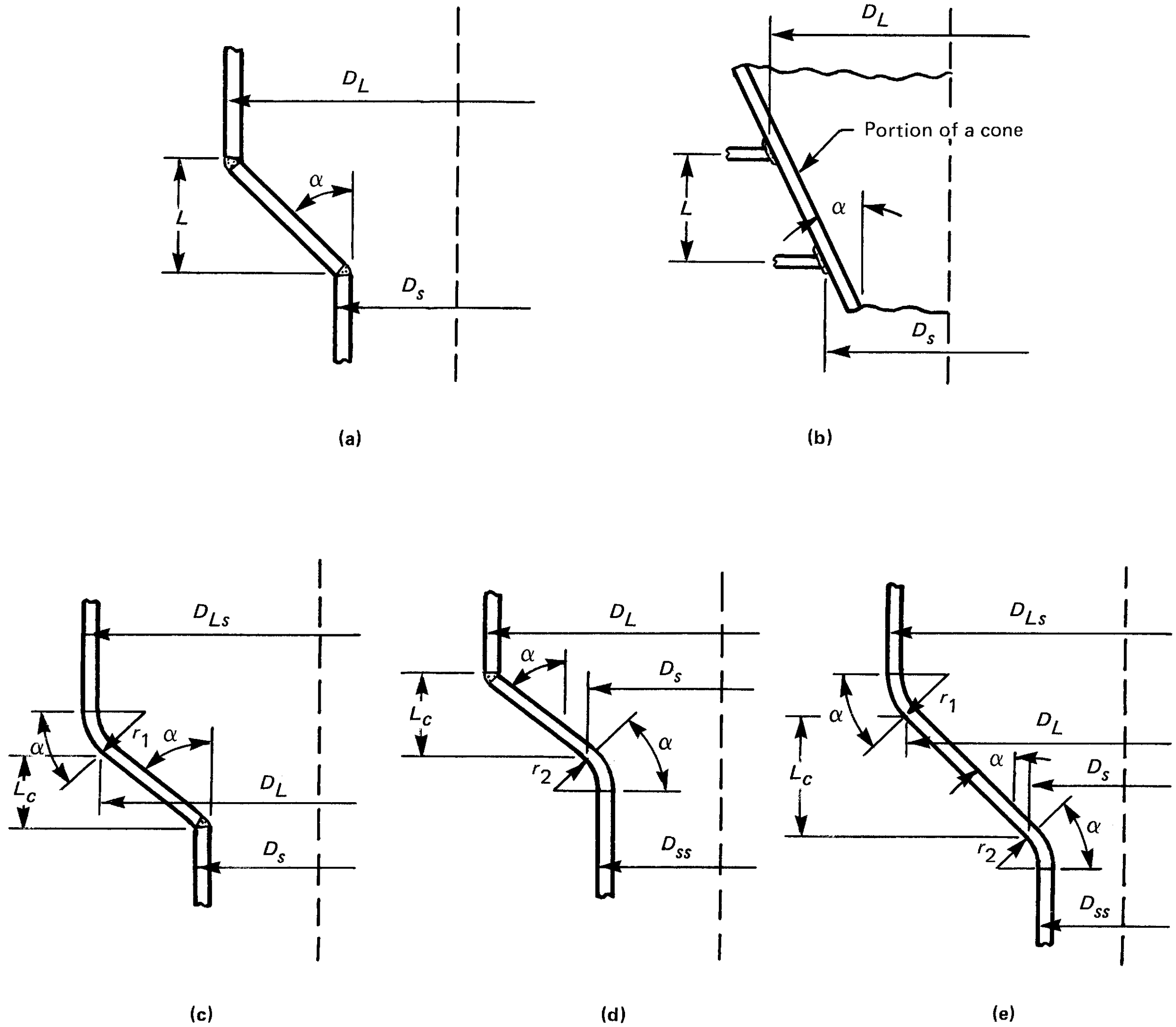


FIG. UG-33.1 LENGTH L OF SOME TYPICAL CONICAL SECTIONS FOR EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Step 7. For values of A falling to the left of the applicable material/temperature line, the value of P_a can be calculated using the following formula:

$$P_a = \frac{2AE}{3(D_L/t_e)}$$

Step 8. Compare the calculated value of P_a obtained in Steps 6 or 7 with P. If P_a is smaller than P, select a larger value for t and repeat the design procedure until a value of P_a is obtained that is equal to or greater than P. An example illustrating the use of this procedure is given in L-6.4.

Step 9. Provide adequate reinforcement of the cone-to-cylinder juncture according to 1-8.

(b) cones having D_L/t_e values <10:

Step 1. Using the same procedure as given in (f)(1)(a) above, obtain the value of B. For values of D_L/t_e less than 4, the value of factor A can be calculated using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{1.1}{(D_L/t_e)^2}$$

For values of A greater than 0.10, use a value of 0.10.

Step 2. Using the value of B obtained in Step 1, calculate a value P_{a1} using the following formula:

$$P_{a1} = \left[\frac{2.167}{(D_L/t_e)} - 0.0833\right] B$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Step 3. Calculate a value P_{a2} using the following formula:

$$P_{a2} = \frac{2S}{D_L / t_e}\left[1 - \frac{1}{D_L / t_e}\right]$$

where

S = the lesser of two times the maximum allowable stress value in tension at design metal temperature, from the applicable Table referenced by UG-23, or 0.9 times the yield strength of the material at design temperature

Values of yield strength are obtained from the applicable external pressure chart as follows.

(a) For a given temperature curve, determine the B value that corresponds to the right hand side termination point of the curve.

(b) The yield strength is twice the B value obtained in (a) above.

Step 4. The smaller of the values of P_{a1} calculated in Step 2, or P_{a2} calculated in Step 3 shall be used for the maximum allowable external working pressure P_a. Compare P_a with P. If P_a is smaller than P, select a larger value for t and repeat the design procedure until a value for P_a is obtained that is equal to or greater than P.

Step 5. Provide adequate reinforcement of the cone-to-cylinder juncture according to 1-8. When the cone-to-cylinder juncture is a line of support, the moment of inertia at the cone-to-cylinder shall be provided in accordance with 1-8.

(2) When α of the cone is greater than 60 deg., the thickness of the cone shall be the same as the required thickness for a flat head under external pressure, the diameter of which equals the largest diameter of the cone (see UG-34).

(3) The thickness of an eccentric cone shall be taken as the greater of the two thicknesses obtained using both the smallest and largest α in the calculations.

(g) The required thickness of a toriconical head having pressure on the convex side, either seamless or of built-up construction with butt joints within the head, shall not be less than that determined from (f) above with the exception that L_e shall be determined as follows.

(1) For sketch (c) in Fig. UG-33.1,

$$L_e = r_1 \sin\alpha + \frac{L_c}{2}\left(\frac{D_L + D_s}{D_{Ls}}\right)$$

(2) For sketch (d) in Fig. UG-33.1,

$$L_e = r_2 \frac{D_{ss}}{D_L} \sin\alpha + \frac{L_c}{2}\left(\frac{D_L + D_s}{D_L}\right)$$

(3) For sketch (e) in Fig. UG-33.1,

$$L_e = \left(r_1 + r_2 \frac{D_{ss}}{D_{Ls}}\right) \sin\alpha + \frac{L_c}{2} \frac{(D_L + D_s)}{D_{Ls}}$$

When the knuckle-to-cylinder juncture is a line of support, the moment of inertia at the knuckle-to-cylinder juncture shall be provided in accordance with 1-8.

(h) When lap joints are used in formed head construction or for longitudinal joints in a conical head under external pressure, the thickness shall be determined by the rules in this paragraph, except that $2P$ shall be used instead of P in the calculations for the required thickness.

(i) The required length of skirt on heads convex to pressure shall comply with the provisions of UG-32(l) and (m) for heads concave to pressure.

(j) Openings in heads convex to pressure shall comply with the requirements of UG-36 through UG-46.

UG-34 UNSTAYED FLAT HEADS AND COVERS

(a) The minimum thickness of unstayed flat heads, cover plates and blind flanges shall conform to the requirements given in this paragraph. These requirements apply to both circular and noncircular[19] heads and covers. Some acceptable types of flat heads and covers are shown in Fig. UG-34. In this figure, the dimensions of the component parts and the dimensions of the welds are exclusive of extra metal required for corrosion allowance.

(b) The symbols used in this paragraph and in Fig. UG-34 are defined as follows:

C = a factor depending upon the method of attachment of head, shell dimensions, and other items as listed in (d) below, dimensionless. The factors for welded covers also include a factor of 0.667 which effectively increases the allowable stress for such constructions to 1.5S.

D = long span of noncircular heads or covers measured perpendicular to short span

d = diameter, or short span, measured as indicated in Fig. UG-34

E = joint efficiency, from Table UW-12, of any Category A weld as defined in UW-3(a)(1)

h_G = gasket moment arm, equal to the radial distance from the center line of the bolts to the line of the gasket reaction, as shown in Table 2-5.2

L = perimeter of noncircular bolted head measured along the centers of the bolt holes

[19] Special consideration shall be given to the design of shells, nozzle necks or flanges to which noncircular heads or covers are attached [see U-2(c)].

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

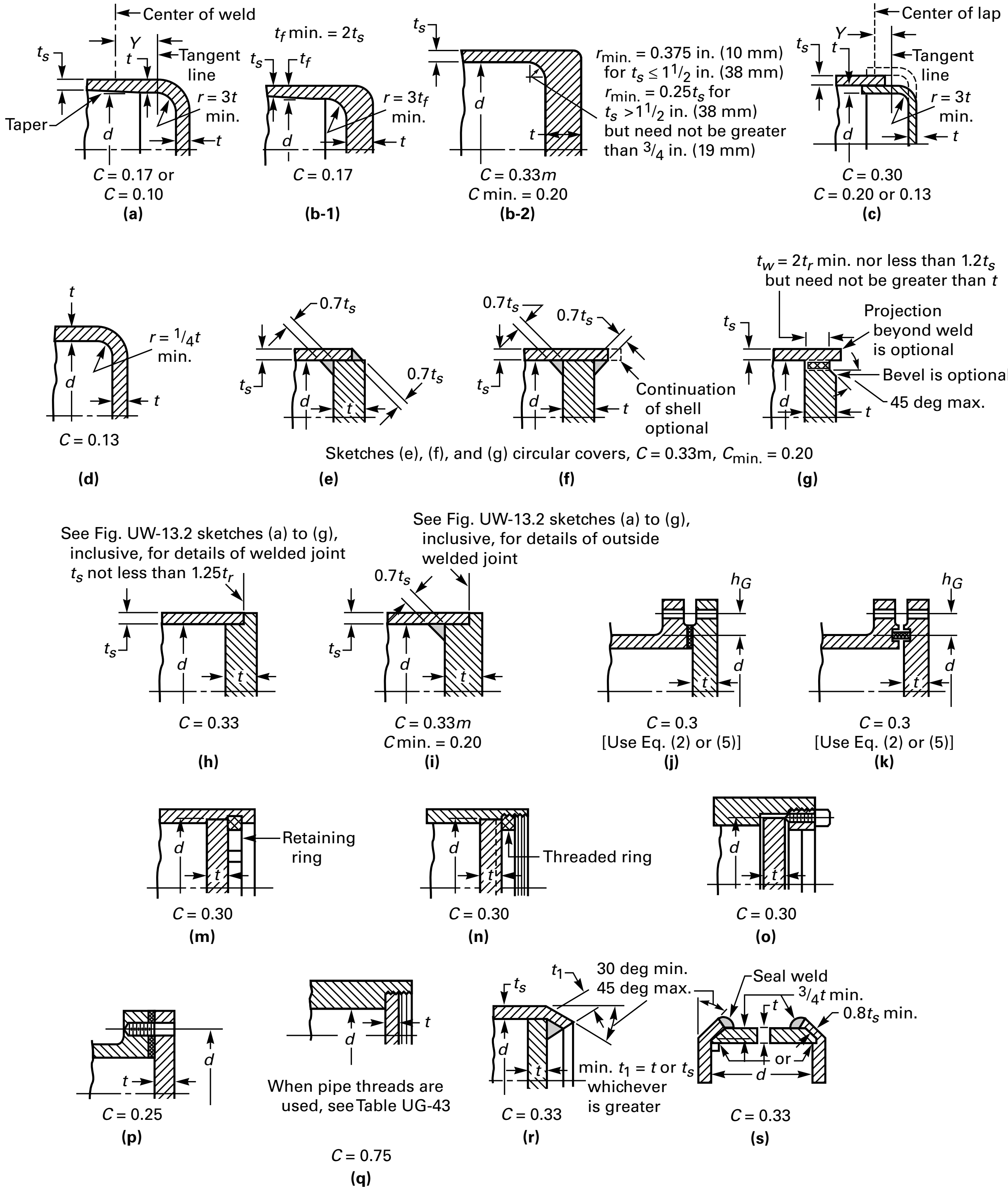


FIG. UG-34 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF UNSTAYED FLAT HEADS AND COVERS

The Above Illustrations Are Diagrammatic Only. Other Designs That Meet the Requirements of UG-34 Are Acceptable.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

m = the ratio t_r/t_s, dimensionless
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
r = inside corner radius on a head formed by flanging or forging
S = maximum allowable stress value in tension from applicable table of stress values referenced by UG-23
t = minimum required thickness of flat head or cover
t_f = nominal thickness of the flange on a forged head, at the large end, as indicated in Fig. UG-34 sketch (b)
t_h = nominal thickness of flat head or cover
t_r = required thickness of seamless shell, for pressure
t_s = nominal thickness of shell
t_w = thickness through the weld joining the edge of a head to the inside of a vessel, as indicated in Fig. UG-34 sketch (g)
t_1 = throat dimension of the closure weld, as indicated in Fig. UG-34 sketch (r)
W = total bolt load given for circular heads for Formulas (3) and (4), 2-5(e)
Y = length of flange of flanged heads, measured from the tangent line of knuckle, as indicated in Fig. UG-34 sketches (a) and (c), in. (mm)
Z = a factor of noncircular heads and covers that depends on the ratio of short span to long span, as given in (c) below, dimensionless

(c) The thickness of flat unstayed heads, covers, and blind flanges shall conform to one of the following three requirements.[20]

(1) Circular blind flanges conforming to any of the flange standards listed in Table U-3 and further limited in UG-44 shall be acceptable for the diameters and pressure–temperature ratings in the respective standard when the blind flange is of the types shown in Fig. UG-34 sketches (j) and (k).

(2) The minimum required thickness of flat unstayed circular heads, covers and blind flanges shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{CP/SE} \tag{1}$$

except when the head, cover, or blind flange is attached by bolts causing an edge moment [sketches (j) and (k)] in which case the thickness shall be calculated by

$$t = d\sqrt{CP/SE + 1.9Wh_G/SEd^3} \tag{2}$$

When using Formula (2), the thickness t shall be calculated for both operating conditions and gasket seating, and the greater of the two values shall be used. For operating conditions, the value of P shall be the design pressure, and the values of S at the design temperature and W from Formula (3) of 2-5(e) shall be used. For gasket seating, P equals zero, and the values of S at atmospheric temperature and W from Formula (4) of 2-5(e) shall be used.

(3) Flat unstayed heads, covers, or blind flanges may be square, rectangular, elliptical, obround, segmental, or otherwise noncircular. Their required thickness shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{ZCP/SE} \tag{3}$$

where

$$Z = 3.4 - \frac{2.4d}{D} \tag{4}$$

with the limitation that Z need not be greater than two and one-half (2.5).

Formula (3) does not apply to noncircular heads, covers, or blind flanges attached by bolts causing a bolt edge moment [sketches (j) and (k)]. For noncircular heads of this type, the required thickness shall be calculated by the following formula:

$$t = d\sqrt{ZCP/SE + 6Wh_G/SELd^2} \tag{5}$$

When using Formula (5), the thickness t shall be calculated in the same way as specified above for Formula (2).

(d) For the types of construction shown in Fig. UG-34, the minimum values of C to be used in Formulas (1), (2), (3), and (5) are:

Sketch (a). $C = 0.17$ for flanged circular and noncircular heads forged integral with or butt welded to the vessel with an inside corner radius not less than three times the required head thickness, with no special requirement with regard to length of flange, and where the welding meets all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part UW.

$C = 0.10$ for circular heads, when the flange length for heads of the above design is not less than

$$Y = \left(1.1 - 0.8\frac{t_s^2}{t_h^2}\right)\sqrt{dt_h} \tag{6}$$

$C = 0.10$ for circular heads, when the flange length Y is less than the requirements in Formula (6) but the shell thickness is not less than

$$t_s = 1.12t_h\sqrt{1.1 - Y/\sqrt{dt_h}} \tag{7}$$

for a length of at least $2\sqrt{dt_s}$.

When $C = 0.10$ is used, the taper shall be at least 1:3.

Sketch (b-1). $C = 0.17$ for forged circular and noncircular heads integral with or butt welded to the vessel,

[20] The formulas provide safe construction as far as stress is concerned. Greater thicknesses may be necessary if deflection would cause leakage at threaded or gasketed joints.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

where the flange thickness is not less than two times the shell thickness, the corner radius on the inside is not less than three times the flange thickness, and the welding meets all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part UW.

Sketch (b-2). $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for forged circular and noncircular heads integral with or butt welded to the vessel, where the flange thickness is not less than the shell thickness, the corner radius on the inside is not less than the following:

$$r_{\min} = 0.375 \text{ in. (10 mm) for } t_s \leq 1\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ in. (38 mm)}$$

$$r_{\min} = 0.25t_s \text{ for } t_s > 1\tfrac{1}{2} \text{ in. (38 mm) but need not be greater than } \tfrac{3}{4} \text{ in. (19 mm)}$$

The welding shall meet all the requirements for circumferential joints given in Part UW.

Sketch (c). $C = 0.13$ for circular heads lap welded or brazed to the shell with corner radius not less than $3t$ and Y not less than required by Formula (6) and the requirements of UW-13 are met.

$C = 0.20$ for circular and noncircular lap welded or brazed construction as above, but with no special requirement with regard to Y.

$C = 0.30$ for circular flanged plates screwed over the end of the vessel, with inside corner radius not less than $3t$, in which the design of the threaded joint against failure by shear, tension, or compression, resulting from the end force due to pressure, is based on a factor of safety of at least four, and the threaded parts are at least as strong as the threads for standard piping of the same diameter. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

Sketch (d). $C = 0.13$ for integral flat circular heads when the dimension d does not exceed 24 in. (600 mm), the ratio of thickness of the head to the dimension d is not less than 0.05 or greater than 0.25, the head thickness t_h is not less than the shell thickness t_s, the inside corner radius is not less than $0.25t$, and the construction is obtained by special techniques of upsetting and spinning the end of the shell, such as employed in closing header ends.

Sketches (e), (f), and (g). $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for circular plates, welded to the inside of a vessel, and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of welded vessels. If a value of m less than 1 is used in calculating t, the shell thickness t_s shall be maintained along a distance inwardly from the inside face of the head equal to at least $2\sqrt{dt_s}$. The throat thickness of the fillet welds in sketches (e) and (f) shall be at least $0.7t_s$. The size of the weld t_w in sketch (g) shall be not less than 2 times the required thickness of a seamless shell nor less than 1.25 times the nominal shell thickness but need not be greater than the head thickness; the weld shall be deposited in a welding groove with the root of the weld at the inner face of the head as shown in the sketch.

$C = 0.33$ for noncircular plates, welded to the inside of a vessel and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of welded vessels. The throat thickness of the fillet welds in sketches (e) and (f) shall be at least $0.7t_s$. The size of the weld t_w in sketch (g) shall be not less than 2 times the required thickness of a seamless shell nor less than 1.25 times the nominal shell thickness but need not be greater than the head thickness; the weld shall be deposited in a welding groove with the root of the weld at the inner face of the head as shown in the sketch.

Sketch (h). $C = 0.33$ for circular plates welded to the end of the shell when t_s is at least $1.25t_r$ and the weld details conform to the requirements of UW-13(e) and Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (a) to (g) inclusive. See also UG-93(d)(3).

Sketch (i). $C = 0.33m$ but not less than 0.20 for circular plates if an inside fillet weld with minimum throat thickness of $0.7t_s$ is used and the details of the outside weld conform to the requirements of UW-13(e) and Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (a) to (g) inclusive, in which the inside weld can be considered to contribute an amount equal to t_s to the sum of the dimensions a and b. See also UG-93(d)(3).

Sketches (j) and (k). $C = 0.3$ for circular and noncircular heads and covers bolted to the vessel as indicated in the figures. Note that Formula (2) or (5) shall be used because of the extra moment applied to the cover by the bolting.

When the cover plate is grooved for a peripheral gasket, as shown in sketch (k), the net cover plate thickness under the groove or between the groove and the outer edge of the cover plate shall be not less than

$$d\sqrt{1.9Wh_G/Sd^3}$$

for circular heads and covers, nor less than

$$d\sqrt{6Wh_G/SLd^2}$$

for noncircular heads and covers.

Sketches (m), (n), and (o). $C = 0.3$ for a circular plate inserted into the end of a vessel and held in place by a positive mechanical locking arrangement, and when all possible means of failure (either by shear, tension, compression, or radial deformation, including flaring, resulting from pressure and differential thermal expansion) are resisted with a factor of safety of at least four. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

Sketch (p). $C = 0.25$ for circular and noncircular covers bolted with a full-face gasket, to shells, flanges or side plates.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Sketch (q). $C = 0.75$ for circular plates screwed into the end of a vessel having an inside diameter d not exceeding 12 in. (300 mm); or for heads having an integral flange screwed over the end of a vessel having an inside diameter d not exceeding 12 in. (300 mm); and when the design of the threaded joint, against failure by shear, tension, compression, or radial deformation, including flaring, resulting from pressure and differential thermal expansion, is based on a factor of safety of at least four. If a tapered pipe thread is used, the requirements of Table UG-43 shall also be met. Seal welding may be used, if desired.

Sketch (r). $C = 0.33$ for circular plates having a dimension d not exceeding 18 in. (450 mm) inserted into the vessel as shown and otherwise meeting the requirements for the respective types of welded vessels. The end of the vessel shall be crimped over at least 30 deg., but not more than 45 deg. The crimping may be done cold only when this operation will not injure the metal. The throat of the weld shall be not less than the thickness of the flat head or shell, whichever is greater.

Sketch (s). $C = 0.33$ for circular beveled plates having a diameter d not exceeding 18 in. (450 mm), inserted into a vessel, the end of which is crimped over at least 30 deg., but not more than 45 deg., and when the undercutting for seating leaves at least 80% of the shell thickness. The beveling shall be not less than 75% of the head thickness. The crimping shall be done when the entire circumference of the cylinder is uniformly heated to the proper forging temperature for the material used. For this construction, the ratio t_s/d shall be not less than the ratio P/S nor less than 0.05. The maximum allowable pressure for this construction shall not exceed $P = S/5d$ for Customary units ($P = 127S/d$ for SI units).

This construction is not permissible if machined from rolled plate.

UG-35 OTHER TYPES OF CLOSURES

UG-35.1 Spherically Dished Covers

Requirements for design of circular spherically dished heads with bolting flanges are given in 1-6.

04 UG-35.2 Quick-Actuating (Quick-Opening) Closures

UG-35.2(a) Definitions

UG-35.2(a)(1) Quick-actuating or quick-opening closures are those that permit substantially faster access to the contents space of a pressure vessel than would be expected with a standard bolted flange connection (bolting through one or both flanges). Closures with swing bolts are not considered quick-actuating (quick-opening).

UG-35.2(a)(2) Holding elements are parts of the closure used to hold the cover to the vessel, and/or to provide the load required to seal the closure. Hinge pins or bolts can be holding elements.

UG-35.2(a)(3) Locking components are parts of the closure that prevent a reduction in the load on a holding element that provides the force required to seal the closure, or prevent the release of a holding element. Locking components may also be used as holding elements.

UG-35.2(a)(4) The locking mechanism or locking device may consist of a combination of locking components.

UG-35.2(a)(5) The use of a multi-link component, such as a chain, as a holding element is not permitted.

UG-35.2(b) General Design Requirements

UG-35.2(b)(1) Quick-actuating closures shall be designed such that the locking elements will be engaged prior to or upon application of pressure and will not disengage until the pressure is released.

UG-35.2(b)(2) Quick-actuating closures shall be designed such that the failure of a single locking component while the vessel is pressurized (or contains a static head of liquid acting at the closure) will not:

(a) cause or allow the closure to be opened or leak; or

(b) result in the failure of any other locking component or holding element; or

(c) increase the stress in any other locking component or holding element by more than 50% above the allowable stress of the component.

UG-35.2(b)(3) Quick-actuating closures shall be designed and installed such that it may be determined by visual external observation that the holding elements are in satisfactory condition.

UG-35.2(b)(4) Quick-actuating closures shall also be designed so that all locking components can be verified to be fully engaged by visual observation or other means prior to the application of pressure to the vessel.

UG-35.2(b)(5) When installed, all vessels having quick-actuating closures shall be provided with a pressure indicating device visible from the operating area and suitable to detect pressure at the closure.

UG-35.2(c) Specific Design Requirements

UG-35.2(c)(1) Quick-actuating closures that are held in position by positive locking devices and that are fully released by partial rotation or limited movement of the closure itself or the locking mechanism, and any closure that is other than manually operated, shall be so

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

designed that when the vessel is installed the following conditions are met:

(a) The closure and its holding elements are fully engaged in their intended operating position before pressure can be applied in the vessel.

(b) Pressure tending to force the closure open or discharge the vessel contents clear of the vessel shall be released before the closure can be fully opened for access.

(c) In the event that compliance with UG-35.2 (c)(1)(a) and (c)(1)(b) above is not inherent in the design of the closure and its holding elements, provisions shall be made so that devices to accomplish this can be added when the vessel is installed.

UG-35.2(c)(2) The design rules of Appendix 2 of this Division may not be applicable to design Quick-Actuating or Quick-Opening Closures, see 2-1(e).

UG-35.2(c)(3) The designer shall consider the effects of cyclic loading, other loadings (see UG-22) and mechanical wear on the holding and locking components.

UG-35.2(c)(4) It is recognized that it is impractical to write requirements to cover the multiplicity of devices used for quick access, or to prevent negligent operation or the circumventing of safety devices. Any device or devices which will provide the safeguards broadly described in UG-35.2(c)(1)(a), (c)(1)(b), and (c)(1)(c) above will meet the intent of this Division.

UG-35.2(d) Alternative Designs for Manually Operated Closures

UG-35.2(d)(1) Quick-actuating closures that are held in position by a locking mechanism designed for manual operation shall be so designed that there will be visible leakage of the contents of the vessel prior to disengagement of the locking components and release of the closure. The design of the closure shall be such that any leakage shall be directed away from the operator and shall discharge to a safe location.

UG-35.2(d)(2) Manually operated closures need not satisfy UG-35.2 (c)(1)(a), (c)(1)(b), or (c)(1)(c) above, but such closures shall be equipped with an audible or visible warning device that will warn the operator if pressure is applied to the vessel before the holding elements and locking components are fully engaged in their intended position or if an attempt is made to disengage the locking mechanism before the pressure within the vessel is released.

UG-35.2(e) Supplementary Requirements for Quick-Actuation (Quick-Opening) Closures

Nonmandatory Appendix FF provides additional design information for the Manufacturer and provides installation, operational, and maintenance requirements for the Owner.

OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS[21]

(Typical examples of the application of these rules are given in Appendix L.)

UG-36 OPENINGS IN PRESSURE VESSELS

(a) Shape of Opening[22]

(1) Openings in cylindrical or conical portions of vessels, or in formed heads, shall preferably be circular, elliptical, or obround.[23] When the long dimension of an elliptical or obround opening exceeds twice the short dimensions, the reinforcement across the short dimensions shall be increased as necessary to provide against excessive distortion due to twisting moment.

(2) Openings may be of other shapes than those given in (1) above, and all corners shall be provided with a suitable radius. When the openings are of such proportions that their strength cannot be computed with assurance of accuracy, or when doubt exists as to the safety of a vessel with such openings, the part of the vessel affected shall be subjected to a proof hydrostatic test as prescribed in UG-101.

(b) Size of Openings

(1) Properly reinforced openings in cylindrical shells are not limited as to size except with the following provisions for design. The rules in UG-36 through UG-43 apply to openings not exceeding the following: for vessels 60 in. (1 500 mm) inside diameter and less, one-half the vessel diameter, but not to exceed 20 in. (500 mm); for vessels over 60 in. (1 500 mm) inside diameter, one-third the vessel diameter, but not to exceed 40 in. (1 000 mm). For openings exceeding these limits, supplemental rules of 1-7 shall be satisfied in addition to UG-36 through UG-43.

(2) Properly reinforced openings in formed heads and spherical shells are not limited in size. For an opening in an end closure, which is larger than one-half the inside diameter of the shell, one of the following alternatives to reinforcement may also be used:

[21] The rules governing openings as given in this Division are based on the stress intensification created by the existence of a hole in an otherwise symmetrical section. External loadings such as those due to the thermal expansion or unsupported weight of connecting piping have not been evaluated. These factors should be given attention in unusual designs or under conditions of cyclic loading.

[22] The opening made by a pipe or a circular nozzle, the axis of which is not perpendicular to the vessel wall or head, may be considered an elliptical opening for design purposes.

[23] An obround opening is one which is formed by two parallel sides and semicircular ends.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

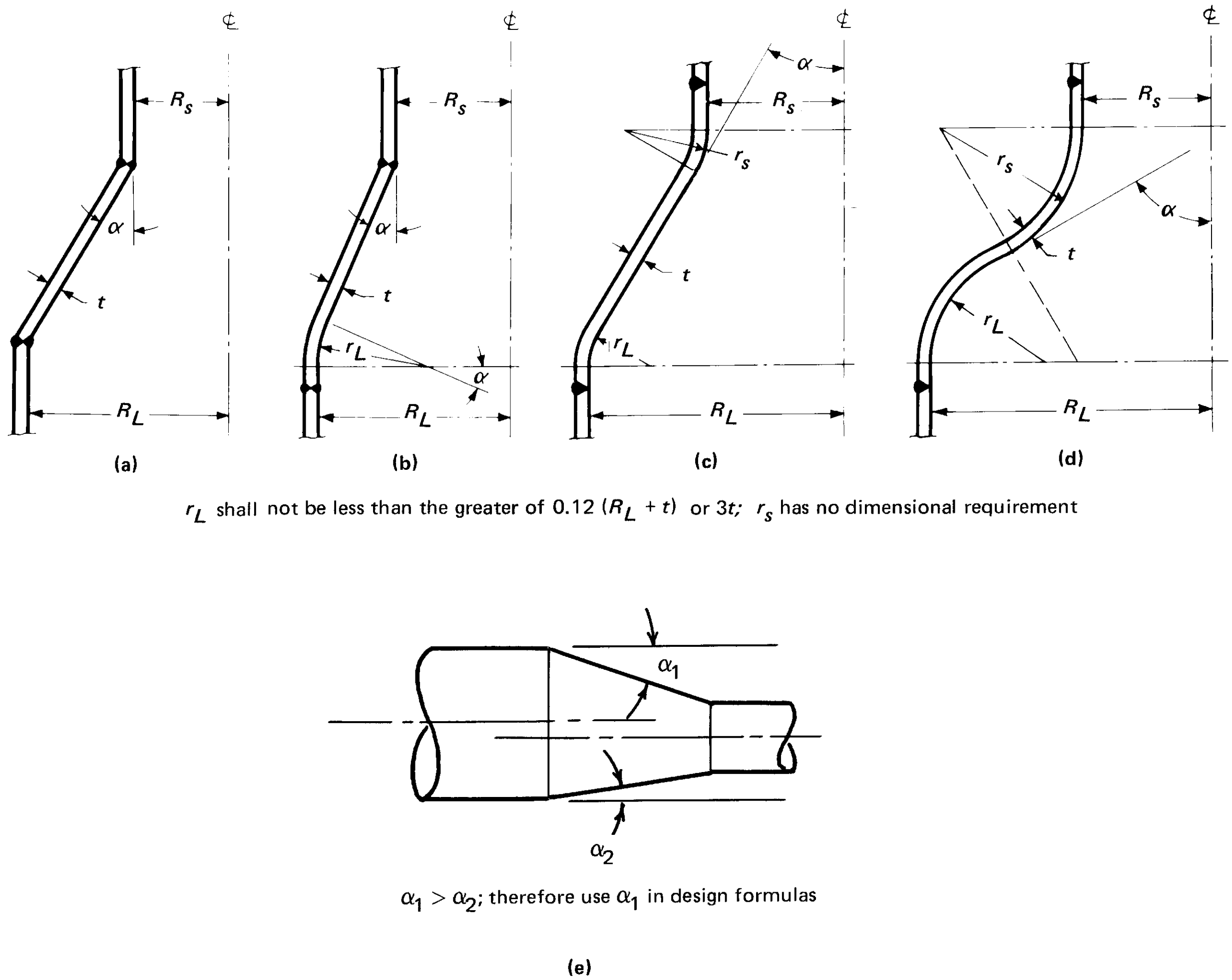


FIG. UG-36 LARGE HEAD OPENINGS — REVERSE-CURVE AND CONICAL SHELL-REDUCER SECTIONS

(a) a conical section as shown in Fig. UG-36 sketch (a);

(b) a cone with a knuckle radius at the large end as shown in Fig. UG-36 sketch (b);

(c) a reverse curve section as shown in Fig. UG-36 sketches (c) and (d); or

(d) using a flare radius at the small end as shown in Fig. UG-33.1 sketch (d).

The design shall comply with all the requirements of the rules for reducer sections [see (e) below] insofar as these rules are applicable.

(c) Strength and Design of Finished Openings

(1) All references to dimensions in this and succeeding paragraphs apply to the finished construction after deduction has been made for material added as corrosion allowance. For design purposes, no metal added as corrosion allowance may be considered as reinforcement. The finished opening diameter is the diameter d as defined in UG-37 and in Fig. UG-40.

(2)(a) Openings in cylindrical or conical shells, or formed heads shall be reinforced to satisfy the requirements in UG-37 except as given in (3) below.

(b) Openings in flat heads shall be reinforced as required by UG-39.

(3) Openings in vessels not subject to rapid fluctuations in pressure do not require reinforcement other than that inherent in the construction under the following conditions:

(a) welded, brazed, and flued connections meeting the applicable rules and with a finished opening not larger than:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$3\frac{1}{2}$ in. (89 mm) diameter — in vessel shells or heads with a required minimum thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) or less;

$2\frac{3}{8}$ in. (60 mm) diameter — in vessel shells or heads over a required minimum thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm);

(b) threaded, studded, or expanded connections in which the hole cut in the shell or head is not greater than $2\frac{3}{8}$ in. (60 mm) diameter;

(c) no two isolated unreinforced openings, in accordance with (a) or (b) above, shall have their centers closer to each other than the sum of their diameters;

04 *(d)* no two unreinforced openings, in a cluster of three or more unreinforced openings in accordance with (a) or (b) above, shall have their centers closer to each other than the following: for cylindrical or conical shells,

$$(1 + 1.5 \cos \theta)(d_1 + d_2);$$

for doubly curved shells and formed or flat heads,

$$2.5(d_1 + d_2)$$

where

θ = the angle between the line connecting the center of the openings and the longitudinal axis of the shell

d_1, d_2 = the finished diameter of the two adjacent openings

The centerline of an unreinforced opening as defined in (a) and (b) above shall not be closer than its finished diameter to any material used for reinforcement of an adjacent reinforced opening.

(d) Openings Through Welded Joints. Additional provisions governing openings through welded joints are given in UW-14.

(e) Reducer Sections Under Internal Pressure

(1) The formulas and rules of this paragraph apply to concentric reducer sections wherein all the longitudinal loads are transmitted wholly through the shell of the reducer. Where loads are trans-mitted in part or as a whole by other elements, e.g., inner shells, stays, or tubes, the rules of this paragraph do not apply.

(2) The thickness of each element of a reducer, as defined in (4) below, under internal pressure shall not be less than that computed by the applicable formula. In addition, provisions shall be made for any of the other loadings listed in UG-22, where such loadings are expected.

(3) The symbols defined in either UG-32(c) or below are used in this paragraph (see Fig. UG-36).

t = minimum required thickness of the considered element of a reducer after forming

R_L = inside radius of larger cylinder

R_s = inside radius of smaller cylinder

r_L = inside radius of knuckle at larger cylinder

α = one-half of the included (apex) angle of a conical element

r_s = radius to the inside surface of flare at the small end

(4) Elements of a Reducer. A transition section reducer consisting of one or more elements may be used to join two cylindrical shell sections of different diameters but with a common axis provided the requirements of this paragraph are met.

(a) Conical Shell Section. The required thickness of a conical shell section, or the allowable working pressure for such a section of given thickness, shall be determined by the formulas given in UG-32(g).

(b) Knuckle Tangent to the Larger Cylinder. Where a knuckle is used at the large end of a reducer section, its shape shall be that of a portion of an ellipsoidal, hemispherical, or torispherical head. The thickness and other dimensions shall satisfy the requirements of the appropriate formulas and provisions of UG-32.

(5) Combination of Elements to Form a Reducer. When elements of (4) above, having different thicknesses are combined to form a reducer, the joints including the plate taper required by UW-9(c) shall lie entirely within the limits of the thinner element being joined.

(a) A reducer may be a simple conical shell section, Fig. UG-36 sketch (a), without knuckle, provided the half-apex angle α is not greater than 30 deg., except as provided for in 1-5(g). A reinforcement ring shall be provided at either or both ends of the reducer when required by the rules of 1-5.

(b) A toriconical reducer, Fig. UG-36 sketch (b), may be shaped as a portion of a toriconical head, UG-32(h), a portion of a hemispherical head plus a conical section, or a portion of an ellipsoidal head plus a conical section, provided the half-apex angle α is not greater than 30 deg., except as provided for in 1-5(g). A reinforcement ring shall be provided at the small end of the conical reducer element when required by the rules in 1-5.

(c) Reverse curve reducers, Fig. UG-36 sketches (c) and (d), may be shaped of elements other than those of (e)(4) above. See U-2(g).

(f) Reducers Under External Pressure. The rules of UG-33(f) shall be followed, where applicable, in the design of reducers under external pressure.

(g) Oblique Conical Shell Sections Under Internal Pressure. A transition section reducer consisting of an oblique conical shell section may be used to join two cylindrical shell sections of different diameters and axes, provided the following requirements are used.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(1) The required thickness shall be determined by the formulas given in UG-32(g).

(2) The angle α to be used shall be the largest included angle between the oblique cone and the attached cylindrical section [see Fig. UG-36 sketch (e)] and shall not be greater than 30 deg.

(3) Diametrical dimensions to be used in the design formulas shall be measured perpendicular to the axis of the cylinder to which the cone is attached.

(4) A reinforcement ring shall be provided at either or both ends of the reducer when required by the rules of 1-5.

UG-37 REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED FOR OPENINGS IN SHELLS AND FORMED HEADS

(a) Nomenclature. The symbols used in this paragraph are defined as follows:

A = total cross-sectional area of reinforcement required in the plane under consideration (see Fig. UG-37.1) (includes consideration of nozzle area through shell if S_n/S_v<1.0)

A_1 = area in excess thickness in the vessel wall available for reinforcement (see Fig. UG-37.1) (includes consideration of nozzle area through shell if S_n/S_v<1.0)

A_2 = area in excess thickness in the nozzle wall available for reinforcement (see Fig. UG-37.1)

A_3 = area available for reinforcement when the nozzle extends inside the vessel wall (see Fig. UG-37.1)

A_{41}, A_{42}, A_{43} = cross-sectional area of various welds available for reinforcement (see Fig. UG-37.1)

A_5 = cross-sectional area of material added as reinforcement (see Fig. UG-37.1)

c = corrosion allowance

D = inside shell diameter

D_p = outside diameter of reinforcing element (actual size of reinforcing element may exceed the limits of reinforcement established by UG-40; however, credit cannot be taken for any material outside these limits)

d = finished diameter of circular opening or finished dimension (chord length at midsurface of thickness excluding excess thickness available for reinforcement) of nonradial opening in the plane under consideration, in. (mm) [see Figs. UG-37.1 and UG-40]

E = 1 (see definitions for t_r and t_rn)

E_1 = 1 when an opening is in the solid plate or in a Category B butt joint; or

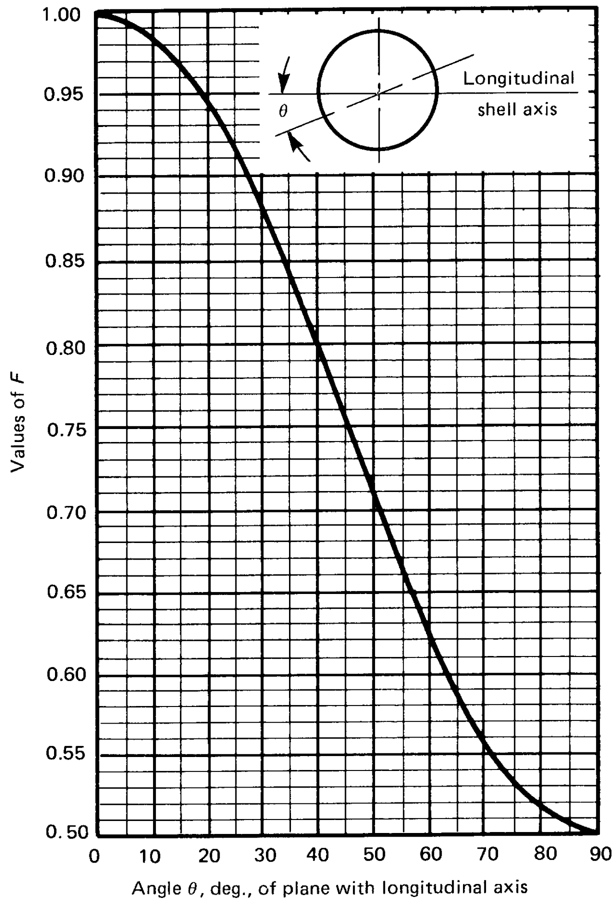


FIG. UG-37 CHART FOR DETERMINING VALUE OF F, AS REQUIRED IN UG-37

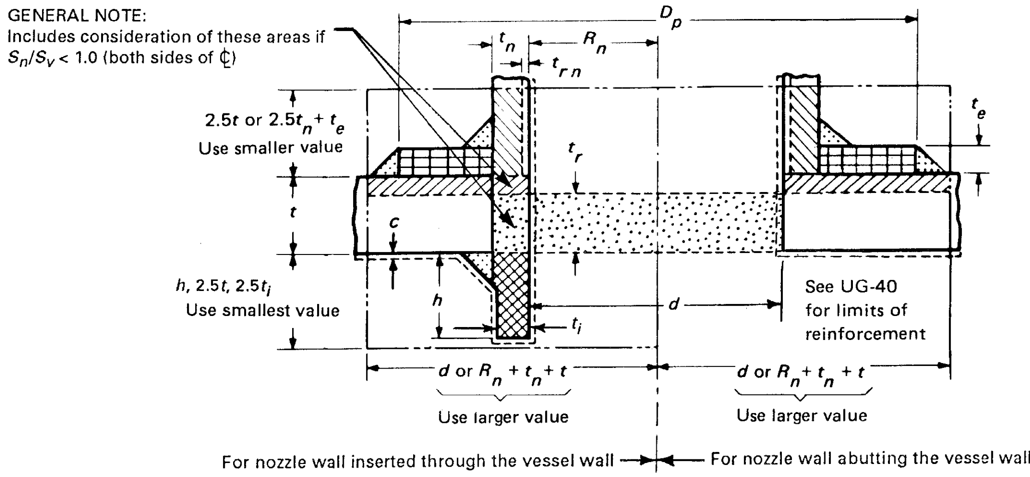
= joint efficiency obtained from Table UW-12 when any part of the opening passes through any other welded joint

F = correction factor which compensates for the variation in internal pressure stresses on different planes with respect to the axis of a vessel. A value of 1.00 shall be used for all configurations except that Fig. UG-37 may be used for integrally reinforced openings in cylindrical shells and cones. [See UW-16(c)(1).]

h = distance nozzle projects beyond the inner surface of the vessel wall. (Extension of the nozzle beyond the inside surface of the vessel wall is not limited; however, for reinforcement calculations, credit shall not be taken for material outside the limits of reinforcement established by UG-40.)

K_1 = spherical radius factor (see definition of t_r and Table UG-37)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Without Reinforcing Element

$= A = d\,t_r\,F + 2t_n\,t_r\,F(1 - f_{r1})$		Area required
$= A_1 \begin{cases} = d(E_1 t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1 t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \\ = 2(t + t_n)(E_1 t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1 t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \end{cases}$		Area available in shell; use larger value
$= A_2 \begin{cases} = 5(t_n - t_{rn})\,f_{r2}\,t \\ = 5(t_n - t_{rn})\,f_{r2}\,t_n \end{cases}$		Area available in nozzle projecting outward; use smaller value
$= A_3 \begin{array}{l} = 5t\,t_i\,f_{r2} \\ = 5t_i\,t_i\,f_{r2} \\ = 2h\,t_i\,f_{r2} \end{array}$		Area available in inward nozzle; use smallest value
$= A_{41}$ = outward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$		Area available in outward weld
$= A_{43}$ = inward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$		Area available in inward weld
If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} \geqslant A$		Opening is adequately reinforced
If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} < A$		Opening is not adequately reinforced so reinforcing elements must be added and/or thicknesses must be increased

With Reinforcing Element Added

A = same as A, above	Area required
A_1 = same as A_1, above	Area available
$A_2 \begin{cases} = 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t \\ = 2(t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e)f_{r2} \end{cases}$	Area available in nozzle projecting outward; use smaller area
A_3 = same as A_3, above	Area available in inward nozzle
$= A_{41}$ = outward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r3}$	Area available in outward weld
$= A_{42}$ = outer element weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r4}$	Area available in outer weld
$= A_{43}$ = inward nozzle weld = $(\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$	Area available in inward weld
$= A_5 = (D_p - d - 2t_n)\,t_e\,f_{r4}$ [Note (1)]	Area available in element
If $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + A_5 \geqslant A$	Opening is adequately reinforced

NOTE:
(1) This formula is applicable for a rectangular cross-sectional element that falls within the limits of reinforcement.

FIG. UG-37.1 NOMENCLATURE AND FORMULAS FOR REINFORCED OPENINGS
(This Figure Illustrates a Common Nozzle Configuration and Is Not Intended to Prohibit Other Configurations Permitted by the Code.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UG-37
VALUES OF SPHERICAL RADIUS FACTOR K_1
Equivalent spherical radius $= K_1D$; $D/2h$ = axis ratio. For definitions, see 1-4(b). Interpolation permitted for intermediate values.

$D/2h$	. . .	3.0	2.8	2.6	2.4	2.2
K_1	. . .	1.36	1.27	1.18	1.08	0.99
$D/2h$	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.0
K_1	0.90	0.81	0.73	0.65	0.57	0.50

L = length of projection defining the thickened portion of integral reinforcement of a nozzle neck beyond the outside surface of the vessel wall [see Fig. UG-40 sketch (e)]

P = internal design pressure (see UG-21), psi (MPa)

R = inside radius of the shell course under consideration

R_n = inside radius of the nozzle under consideration

S = allowable stress value in tension (see UG-23), psi (MPa)

S_n = allowable stress in nozzle, psi (MPa) (see S, above)

S_v = allowable stress in vessel, psi (MPa) (see S, above)

S_p = allowable stress in reinforcing element (plate), psi (MPa) (see S, above)

f_r = strength reduction factor, not greater than 1.0 [see UG-41(a)]

f_{r1} = S_n/S_v for nozzle wall inserted through the vessel wall

f_{r1} = 1.0 for nozzle wall abutting the vessel wall and for nozzles shown in Fig. UG-40, sketch (j), (k), (n) and (o).

f_{r2} = S_n/S_v

f_{r3} = (lesser of S_n or S_p)$/S_v$

f_{r4} = S_p/S_v

t = specified vessel wall thickness,[24] (not including forming allowances). For pipe it is the nominal thickness less manufacturing undertolerance allowed in the pipe specification.

t_e = thickness or height of reinforcing element(see Fig. UG-40)

t_i = nominal thickness of internal projection of nozzle wall

t_r = required thickness of a seamless shell based on the circumferential stress, or of a formed head, computed by the rules of this Division for the designated pressure, using $E = 1$, except that:

(a) when the opening and its reinforcement are entirely within the spherical portion of a torispherical head, t_r is the thickness required by 1-4(d), using $M = 1$;

(b) when the opening is in a cone, t_r is the thickness required for a seamless cone of diameter D measured where the nozzle axis pierces the inside wall of the cone;

(c) when the opening and its reinforcement are in an ellipsoidal head and are located entirely within a circle the center of which coincides with the center of the head and the diameter of which is equal to 80% of the shell diameter, t_r is the thickness required for a seamless sphere of radius K_1D, *where D is the shell diameter and* K_1 is given by Table UG-37.

t_n = nozzle wall thickness.[24] Except for pipe, this is the wall thickness not including forming allowances. For pipe, use the nominal thickness [see UG-16(d)].

t_{rn} = required thickness of a seamless nozzle wall

W = total load to be carried by attachment welds (see UG-41)

(b) General. The rules in this paragraph apply to all openings other than:

(1) small openings covered by UG-36(c)(3);

(2) openings in flat heads covered by UG-39;

(3) openings designed as reducer sections covered by UG-36(e);

(4) large head openings covered by UG-36(b)(2);

(5) tube holes with ligaments between them conforming to the rules of UG-53.

Reinforcement shall be provided in amount and distribution such that the area requirements for reinforcement are satisfied for all planes through the center of the opening and normal to the vessel surface. For a circular opening in a cylindrical shell, the plane containing the axis of the shell is the plane of greatest loading due to pressure. Not less than half the required reinforcement shall be on each side of the center line of single openings.

(c) Design for Internal Pressure. The total cross-sectional area of reinforcement A required in any given plane through the opening for a shell or formed head under internal pressure shall be not less than

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$$

(d) Design for External Pressure

(1) The reinforcement required for openings in single-walled vessels subject to external pressure need be only 50% of that required in (c) above, where t_r is the wall thickness required by the rules for vessels under external pressure and the value of

[24] In the corroded condition, see UG-16(e).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

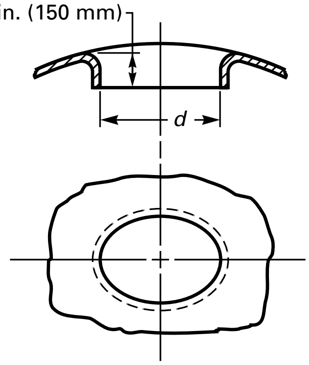


FIG. UG-38 MINIMUM DEPTH FOR FLANGE OF FLUED IN OPENINGS

F shall be 1.0 in all external pressure reinforcement calculations.

(2) The reinforcement required for openings in each shell of a multiple-walled vessel shall comply with (1) above when the shell is subject to external pressure, and with (c) above when the shell is subject to internal pressure, regardless of whether or not there is a common nozzle secured to more than one shell by strength welds.

(e) Design for Alternate Internal and External Pressure. Reinforcement of vessels subject to alternate internal and external pressures shall meet the requirements of (c) above for internal pressure and of (d) above for external pressure.

(f) Details and formulas for required area and available area are given in Fig. UG-37.1.

UG-38 FLUED OPENINGS IN SHELLS AND FORMED HEADS

(a) Flued openings in shells and formed heads made by inward or outward forming of the head plate shall meet the requirements for reinforcement in UG-37. The thickness of the flued flange shall also meet the requirements of UG-27 and / or UG-28, as applicable, where L as used in UG-28 is the minimum depth of flange as shown in Fig. UG-38. The minimum thickness of the flued flange on a vessel subject to both internal and external pressure shall be the larger of the two thicknesses as determined above.

(b) The minimum depth of flange of a flued in opening exceeding 6 in. (150 mm) in any inside dimension, when not stayed by an attached pipe or flue, shall equal $3t_r$ or (t_r + 3 in.) (for SI units, t_r + 75 mm), whichever is less, where t_r is the required shell or head thickness. The depth of flange shall be determined by placing a straight edge across the side opposite the flued opening along the major axis and measuring from the straightedge to the edge of the flanged opening (see Fig. UG-38).

(c) There is no minimum depth of flange requirement for flued out openings.

(d) The minimum width of bearing surface for a gasket on a self-sealing flued opening shall be in accordance with UG-46(j).

UG-39 REINFORCEMENT REQUIRED FOR OPENINGS IN FLAT HEADS

UG-39(a) General. The rules in this paragraph apply to all openings in flat heads except opening(s) which do not exceed the size and spacing limits in UG-36(c)(3) and do not exceed one-fourth the head diameter or shortest span.

UG-39(b) Single and multiple openings in flat heads that have diameters equal to or less than one-half the head diameter may be reinforced as follows.

UG-39(b)(1) Flat heads that have a single opening with a diameter that does not exceed one-half the head diameter or shortest span, as defined in UG-34, shall have a total cross-sectional area of reinforcement for all planes through the center of the opening not less than that given by the formula

$$A = 0.5dt + tt_n\,(1 - f_{r1})$$

where d, t_n, and f_{r1} are defined in UG-37 and t in UG-34.

UG-39(b)(2) Multiple openings none of which have diameters exceeding one-half the head diameter and no pair having an average diameter greater than one-quarter the head diameter may be reinforced individually as required by (1) above when the spacing between any pair of adjacent openings is equal to or greater than twice the average diameter of the pair.

When spacing between adjacent openings is less than twice but equal to or more than $1\frac{1}{4}$ the average diameter of the pair, the required reinforcement for each opening in the pair, as determined by (1) above, shall be summed together and then distributed such that 50% of the sum is located between the two openings. Spacings of less than $1\frac{1}{4}$ the average diameter of adjacent openings shall be treated by rules of U-2(g).

UG-39(b)(3) In no case shall the width of ligament between two adjacent openings be less than one-quarter the diameter of the smaller of the two openings in the pair. The width of ligament between the edge of any

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

one opening and the edge of the flat head (such as U_3 or U_5 in Fig. UG-39) shall not be less than one-quarter the diameter of that one opening.

UG-39(c) Flat heads which have an opening with a diameter that exceeds one-half the head diameter or shortest span, as defined in UG-34, shall be designed as follows.

UG-39(c)(1) When the opening is a single, circular centrally located opening in a circular flat head, the head shall be designed according to Appendix 14 and related factors in Appendix 2. The head-to-shell junction may be integral, as shown in Fig. UG-34 sketches (a), (b-1), (b-2), (d), and (g). The head may also be attached by a butt weld or a full-penetration corner weld similar to the joints shown in Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), or (f). The large centrally located opening may have a nozzle which is integrally formed or integrally attached by a full penetration weld or may be plain without an attached nozzle or hub. The head thickness does not have to be calculated by UG-34 rules. The thickness that satisfies all the requirements of Appendix 14 meets the requirements of the Code.

UG-39(c)(2) Opening(s) may be located in the rim space surrounding the central opening. See Fig. UG-39. Such openings may be reinforced by area replacement in accordance with the formula in (b)(1) above using as a required head thickness the thickness that satisfies rules of Appendix 14. Multiple rim openings shall meet spacing rules of (b)(2) and (b)(3) above. Alternatively, the head thickness that meets the rules of Appendix 14 may be increased by multiplying it by the square root of two (1.414) if only a single opening is placed in the rim space or if spacing p between two such openings is twice or more than their average diameter. For spacing less than twice their average diameter, the thickness that satisfies Appendix 14 shall be divided by the square root of efficiency factor e, where e is defined in (e)(2) below.

The rim opening(s) shall not be larger in diameter than one-quarter the differences in head diameter less central opening diameter. The minimum ligament width U shall not be less than one-quarter the diameter of the smaller of the two openings in the pair. A minimum ligament width of one-quarter the diameter of the rim opening applies to ligaments designated as U_2, U_4, U_3, and U_5 in Fig. UG-39.

UG-39(c)(3) When the large opening is any other type than that described in (c)(1) above, there are no specific rules given. Consequently, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be met.

UG-39(d) As an alternative to (b)(1) above, the thickness of flat heads and covers with a single opening with a diameter that does not exceed one-half the head diameter may be increased to provide the necessary reinforcement as follows.

UG-39(d)(1) In Formula (1) or (3) of UG-34(c), use $2C$ or 0.75 in place of C, whichever is the lesser; except that, for sketches (b-1), (b-2), (e), (f), (g), and (i) of Fig. UG-34, use $2C$ or 0.50, whichever is the lesser.

UG-39(d)(2) In Formula (2) or (5) of UG-34(c), double the quantity under the square root sign.

UG-39(e) Multiple openings none of which have diameters exceeding one-half the head diameter and no pair having an average diameter greater than one-quarter the head diameter may be reinforced as follows.

UG-39(e)(1) When the spacing between a pair of adjacent openings is equal to or greater than twice the average diameter of the pair, and this is so for all opening pairs, the head thickness may be determined by rules in (d) above.

UG-39(e)(2) When the spacing between adjacent openings in a pair is less than twice but equal to or greater than $1\frac{1}{4}$ the average diameter of the pair, the required head thickness shall be that determined by (d) above multiplied by a factor h, where

$$h = \sqrt{0.5/e}$$

$$e = [(p - d_{ave})/p]_{smallest}$$

where

e = smallest ligament efficiency of adjacent opening pairs in the head
p = center-to-center spacing of two adjacent openings
d_{ave} = average diameter of the same two adjacent openings

UG-39(e)(3) Spacings of less than $1\frac{1}{4}$ the average diameter of adjacent openings shall be treated by rules of U-2(g).

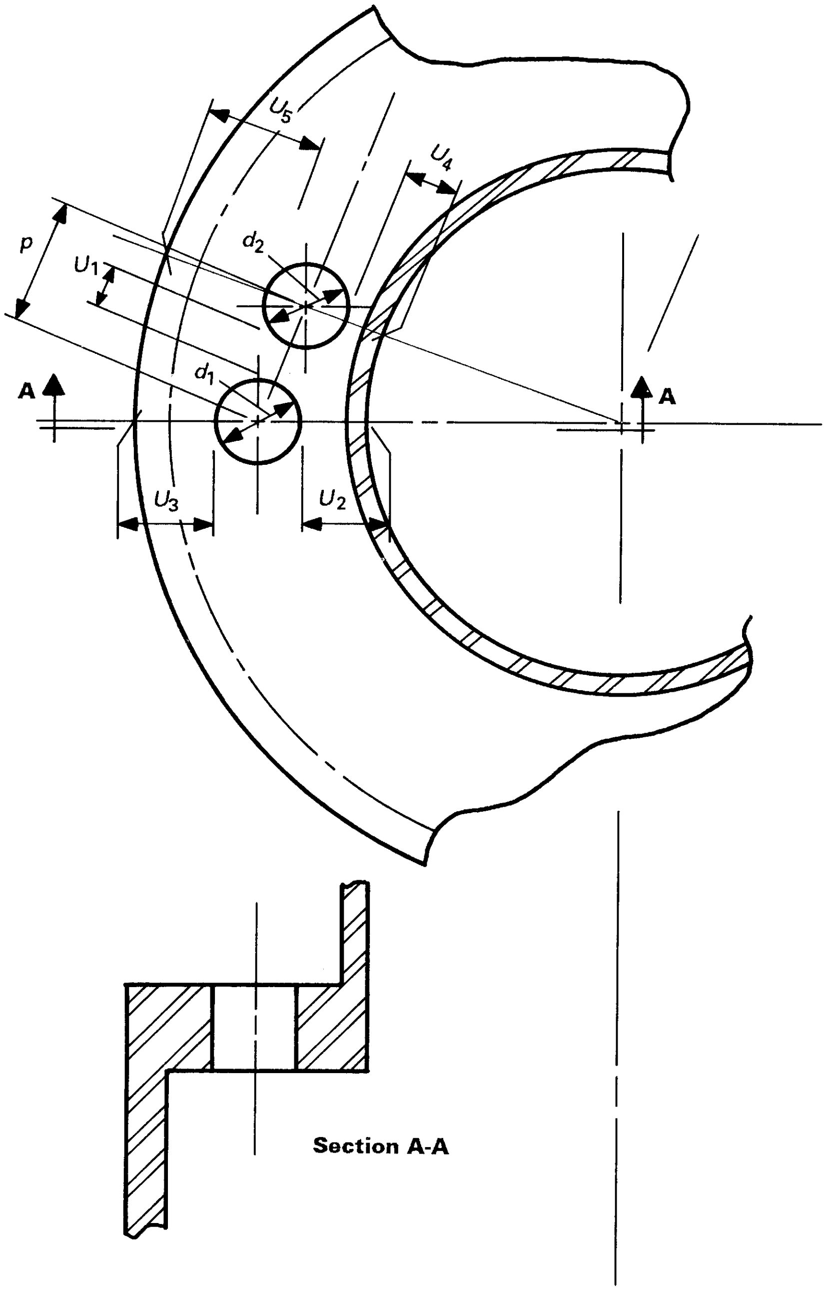
UG-39(e)(4) In no case shall the width of ligament between two adjacent openings be less than one-quarter the diameter of the smaller of the two openings in the pair.

UG-39(e)(5) The width of ligament between the edge of any one opening and the edge of the flat head (such as U_3 or U_5 in Fig. UG-39) shall not be less than one-quarter the diameter of that one opening.

UG-40 LIMITS OF REINFORCEMENT

(a) The boundaries of the cross sectional area in any plane normal to the vessel wall and passing through the center of the opening within which metal must be located in order to have value as reinforcement are designated as

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



p = spacing, center-to-center, between openings
$U_1, U_2, \ldots$ = ligament width
$(d_1 + d_2)/2$ = average diameter of pair of openings

FIG. UG-39 MULTIPLE OPENINGS IN RIM OF HEADS WITH A LARGE CENTRAL OPENING

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

the limits of reinforcement for that plane (see Fig. UG-37.1). Figure UG-40 depicts thicknesses t, t_e, and t_n, or t_i and diameter d used in establishing the limits of reinforcement. All dimensions are in the corroded condition; for nomenclature, see UG-37(a).

(b) The limits of reinforcement, measured parallel to the vessel wall, shall be at a distance, on each side of the axis of the opening, equal to the greater of the following:

(1) the diameter d of the finished opening;

(2) the radius R_n of the finished opening plus the vessel wall thickness t, plus the nozzle wall thickness t_n.

(c) The limits of reinforcement, measured normal to the vessel wall, shall conform to the contour of the surface at a distance from each surface equal to the smaller of the following:

(1) $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the vessel wall thickness t;

(2) $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the nozzle wall thickness t_n plus the thickness t_e as defined in Fig. UG-40.

(d) Metal within the limits of reinforcement that may be considered to have reinforcing value shall include the following:

(1) metal in the vessel wall over and above the thickness required to resist pressure and the thickness specified as corrosion allowance. the area in the vessel wall available as reinforcement is the larger of the values of A_1 given by the formulas in Fig. UG-37.1.

(2) metal over and above the thickness required to resist pressure and the thickness specified as corrosion allowance in that part of a nozzle wall extending outside the vessel wall. The maximum area in the nozzle wall available as reinforcement is the smaller of the values of A_2 given by the formulas in Fig. UG-37.1.

All metal in the nozzle wall extending inside the vessel wall A_3 may be included after proper deduction for corrosion allowance on all the exposed surface is made. No allowance shall be taken for the fact that a differential pressure on an inwardly extending nozzle may cause opposing stress to that of the stress in the shell around the opening:

(3) metal in attachment welds A_4 and metal added as reinforcement A_5.

(e) With the exception of studding outlet type flanges and the straight hubs of forged nozzle flanges [see UG-44(j)], bolted flange material within the limits of reinforcement shall not be considered to have reinforcing value.

UG-41 STRENGTH OF REINFORCEMENT

(a) Material used for reinforcement shall have an allowable stress value equal to or greater than that of the material in the vessel wall, except that when such material is not available, lower strength material may be used, provided the area of reinforcement is increased in inverse proportion to the ratio of the allowable stress values of the two materials to compensate for the lower allowable stress value of the reinforcement. No credit may be taken for the additional strength of any reinforcement having a higher allowable stress value than that of the vessel wall. Deposited weld metal outside of either the vessel wall or any reinforcing pad used as reinforcement shall be credited with an allowable stress value equivalent to the weaker of the materials connected by the weld. Vessel-to-nozzle or pad-to-nozzle attachment weld metal within the vessel wall or within the pad may be credited with a stress value equal to that of the vessel wall or pad, respectively.

(b) On each side of the plane defined in UG-40(a), the strength of the attachment joining the vessel wall and reinforcement or any two parts of the attached reinforcement shall be at least equal to the smaller of:

(1) the strength in tension of the cross section of the element or elements of reinforcement being considered (see $W_{1\text{-}1}$, $W_{2\text{-}2}$, and $W_{3\text{-}3}$ of Fig. UG-41.1 for examples and L-7 for numerical examples);

(2) the strength in tension of the area defined in UG-37 less the strength in tension of the reinforcing area which is integral in the vessel wall as permitted by UG-40(d)(1) (see W of Fig. UG-41.1 for examples and L-7 for numerical examples);

(3) for welded attachments, see UW-15 for exemptions to strength calculations.

(c) The strength of the attachment joint shall be considered for its entire length on each side of the plane of the area of reinforcement defined in UG-40. For obround openings, consideration shall also be given to the strength of the attachment joint on one side of the plane transverse to the parallel sides of the opening which passes through the center of the semicircular end of the opening.

(d) For detailed requirements for welded and brazed reinforcement see the appropriate paragraphs in the Parts devoted to these subjects (see UW-15 and UB-19).

UG-42 REINFORCEMENT OF MULTIPLE OPENINGS

(See UG-39 for multiple openings in flat heads.)

(a) When any two openings are spaced at less than two times their average diameter, so that their limits of reinforcement overlap [see Fig. UG-42 sketch (a)], the two openings shall be reinforced in the plane connecting the centers, in accordance with the rules of UG-37, UG-38, UG-40, and UG-41 with a combined reinforcement that has an area not less than the sum of the areas required for each opening. No portion of the cross section is to be considered as applying to more than one opening, nor to be

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

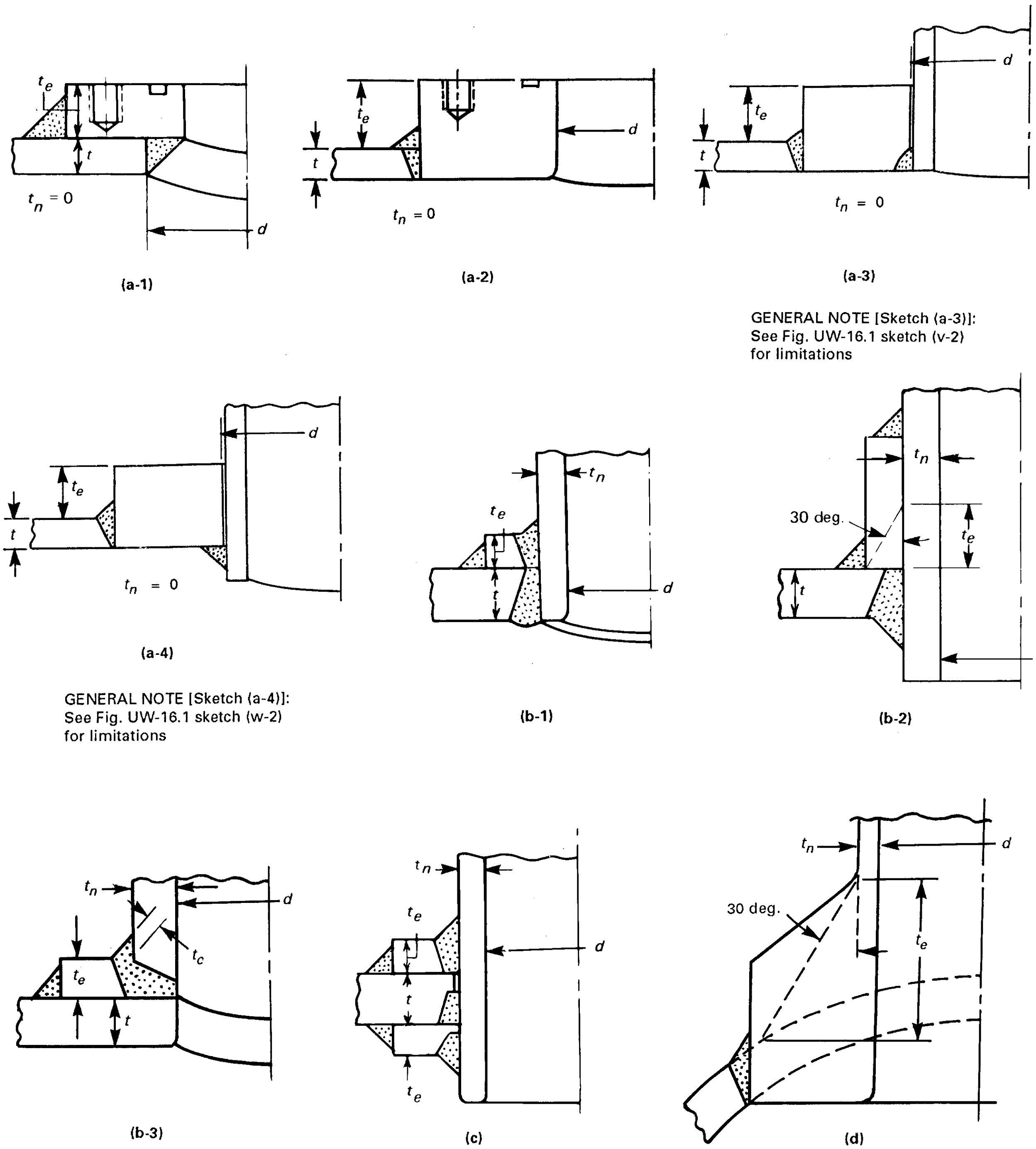
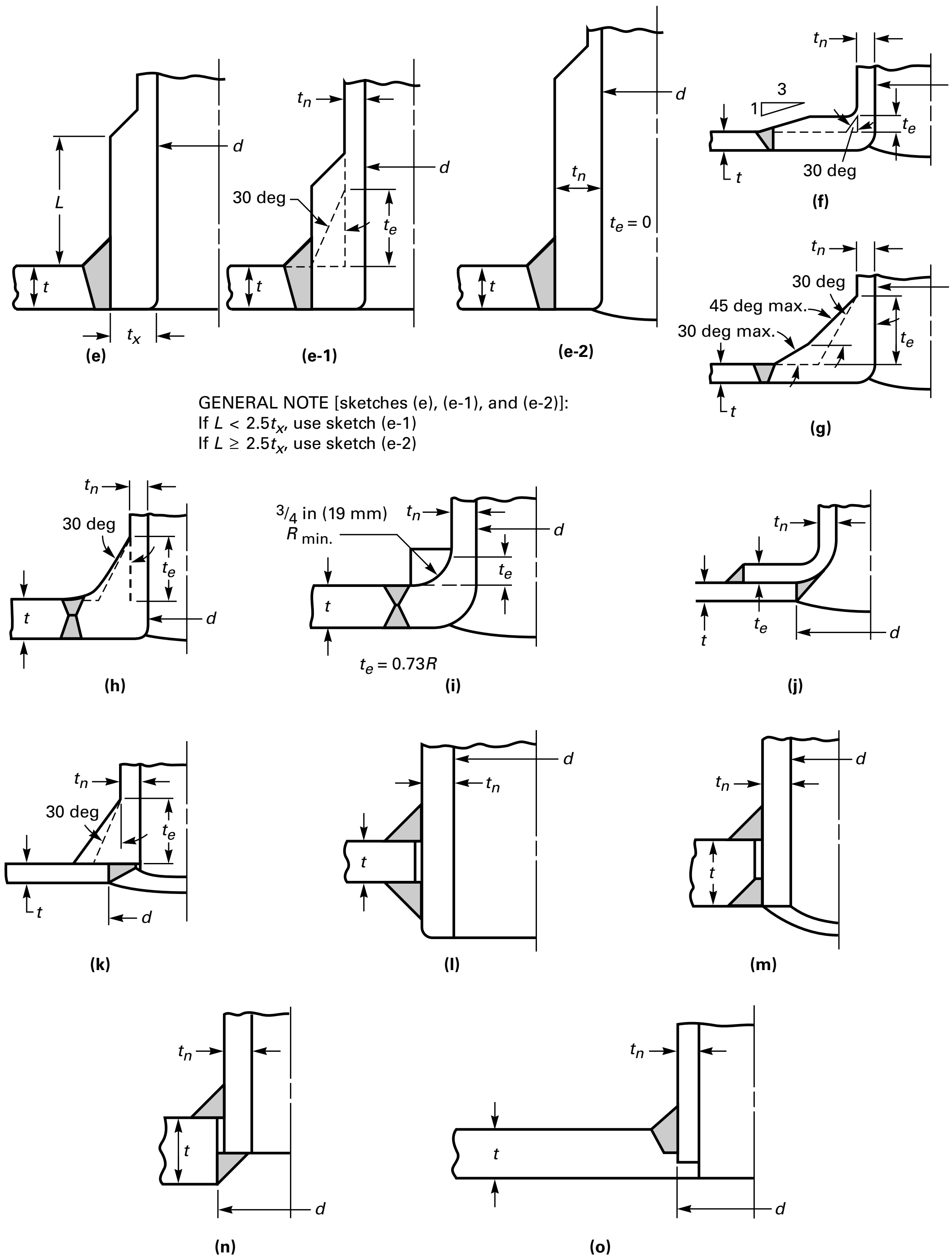


FIG. UG-40 SOME REPRESENTATIVE CONFIGURATIONS DESCRIBING THE REINFORCEMENT DIMENSION t_e AND THE OPENING DIMENSION d

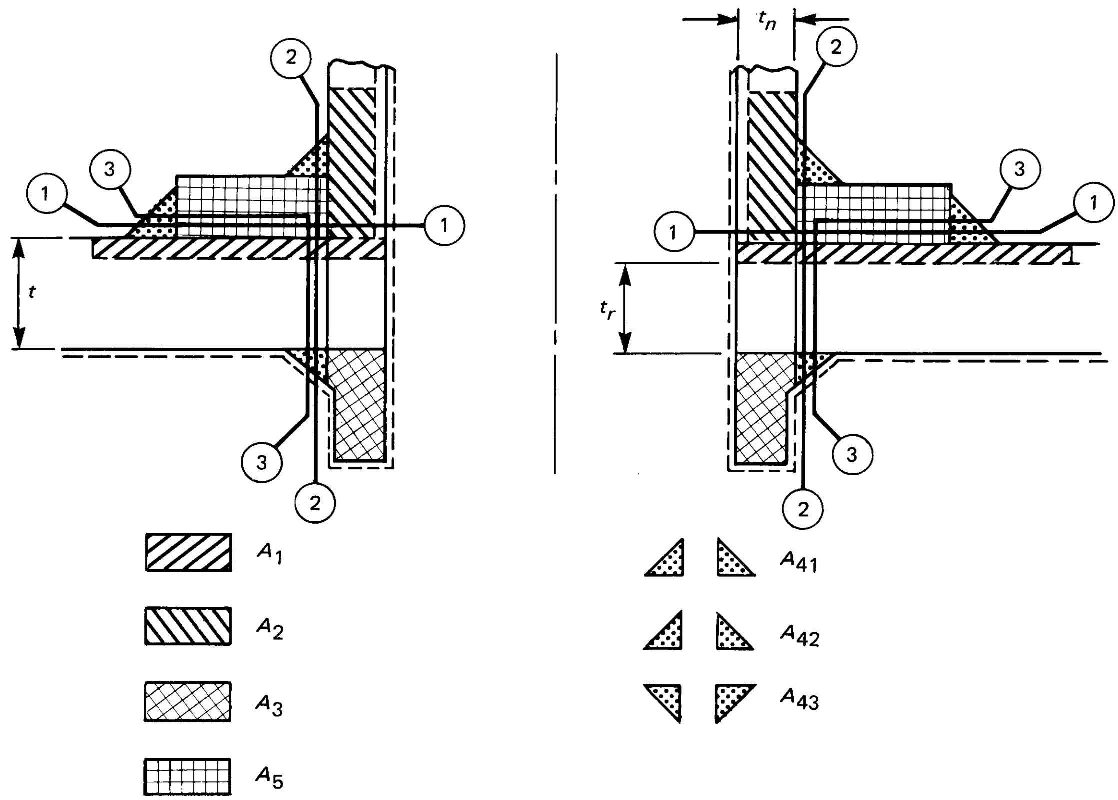
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE [sketches (e), (e-1), and (e-2)]:
If $L < 2.5t_x$, use sketch (e-1)
If $L \geq 2.5t_x$, use sketch (e-2)

FIG. UG-40 SOME REPRESENTATIVE CONFIGURATIONS DESCRIBING THE REINFORCEMENT DIMENSION t_e AND THE OPENING DIMENSION d (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



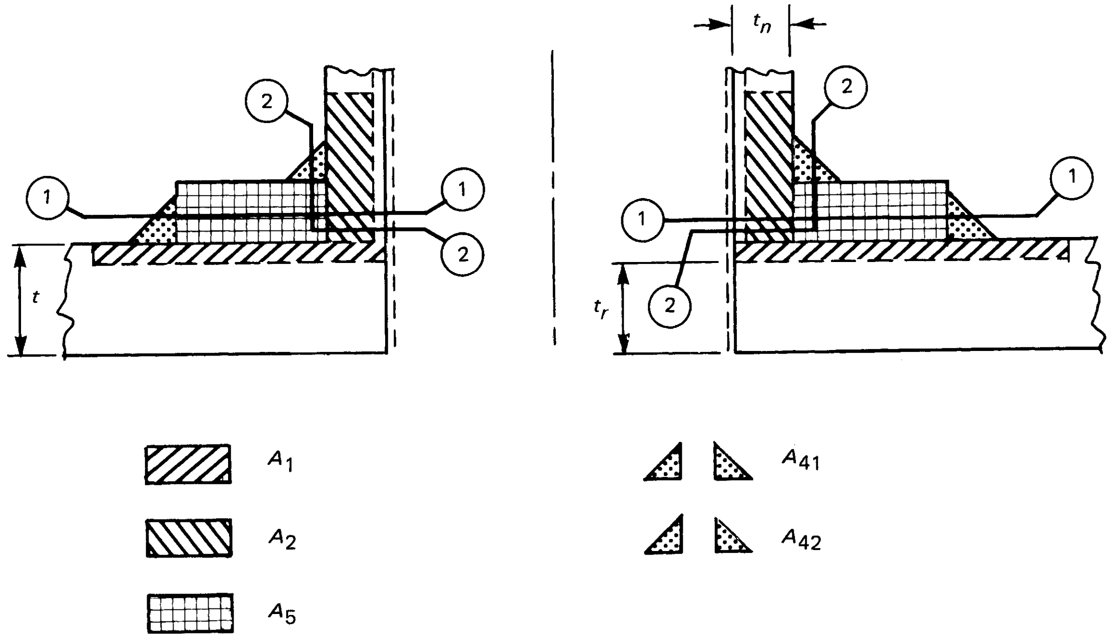
W = total weld load [UG-41(b)(2)]
= $[A - A_1 + 2t_n f_{r1}(E_1 t - F t_r)]S_v$
$W_{1\text{-}1}$ = weld load for strength path 1-1 [UG-41(b)(1)]
= $(A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})S_v$
$W_{2\text{-}2}$ = weld load for strength path 2-2 [UG-41(b)(1)]
= $(A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})S_v$
$W_{3\text{-}3}$ = weld load for strength path 3-3 [UG-41(b)(1)]
= $(A_2 + A_3 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})S_v$

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Areas A_1, A_2, A_3, A_5, and A_{4i} are modified by f_{rx} factors.
(b) Nomenclature is the same as in UG-37 and Fig. UG-37.1.

(a) Depicts Typical Nozzle Detail With Neck Inserted Through the Vessel Wall

FIG. UG-41.1 NOZZLE ATTACHMENT WELD LOADS AND WELD STRENGTH PATHS TO BE CONSIDERED

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



W = total weld load [UG-41(b)(2)]
$= (A - A_1)S_v$
$W_{1\text{-}1}$ = weld load for strength path 1-1 [UG-41(b)(1)]
$= (A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})S_v$
$W_{2\text{-}2}$ = weld load for strength path 2-2 [UG-41(b)(1)]
$= (A_2 + A_{41})S_v$

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Areas A_1, A_2, A_5, and A_{4i} are modified by f_{rx} factors.
(b) Nomenclature is the same as in UG-37 and Fig. UG-37.1.

(b) Depicts Typical Nozzle Detail With Neck Abutting the Vessel Wall

FIG. UG-41.1 NOZZLE ATTACHMENT WELD LOADS AND WELD STRENGTH PATHS TO BE CONSIDERED (CONT'D)

considered more than once in a combined area.

(1) The available area of the head or shell between openings having an overlap area shall be proportioned between the two openings by the ratio of their diameters.

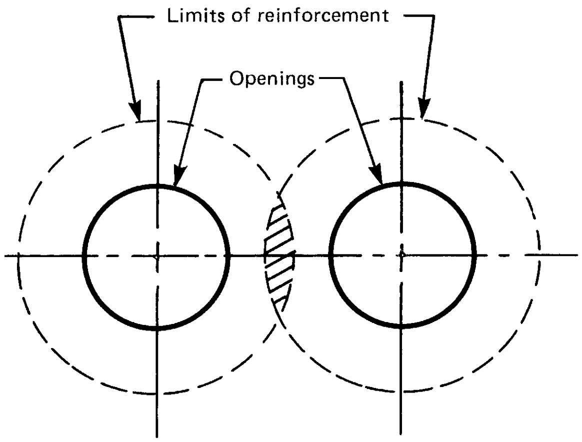
(2) If the area of reinforcement between the two openings is less than 50% of the total required for the two openings, the supplemental rules of 1-7(a) and (c) shall be used.

(3) A series of openings all on the same center line shall be treated as successive pairs of openings.

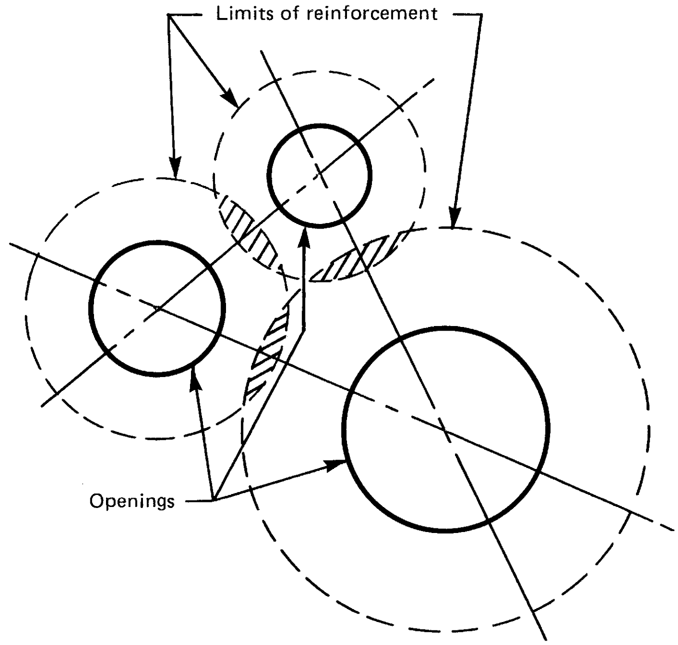
(b) When more than two openings are spaced as in (a) above [see Fig. UG-42 sketch (b)], and are to be provided with a combined reinforcement, the minimum distance between centers of any two of these openings shall be $1\frac{1}{3}$ times their average diameter, and the area of reinforcement between any two openings shall be at least equal to 50% of the total required for the two openings. If the distance between centers of two such openings is less than $1\frac{1}{3}$ times their average diameter, no credit for reinforcement shall be taken for any of the material between these openings. Such openings must be reinforced as described in (c) below.

(c) Alternatively, any number of adjacent openings, in any arrangement, may be reinforced by using an assumed opening enclosing all such openings. The limits for reinforcement of the assumed opening shall be those given in

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Two Openings Spaced at Less Than Two Times Their Average Diameter



(b) More Than Two Openings Spaced at Less Than Two Times Their Average Diameter

FIG. UG-42 EXAMPLES OF MULTIPLE OPENINGS

UG-40(b)(1) and (c)(1). The nozzle walls of the actual openings shall not be considered to have reinforcing value. When the diameter of the assumed opening exceeds the limits in UG-36(b)(1), the supplemental rules of 1-7(a) and (c) shall also be used.

(d) When a group of openings is reinforced by a thicker section butt welded into the shell or head, the edges of the inserted section shall be tapered as prescribed in UW-9(c).

(e) When a series of two or more openings in a cylindrical shell are arranged in a regular pattern, reinforcement of the openings may be provided per the rules of ligaments in UG-53.

UG-43 METHODS OF ATTACHMENT OF PIPE AND NOZZLE NECKS TO VESSEL WALLS

(a) General. Nozzles may be attached to the shell or head of a vessel by any of the methods of attachment given in this paragraph, except as limited in UG-36.

(b) Welded Connections. Attachment by welding shall be in accordance with the requirements of UW-15 and UW-16.

(c) Brazed Connections. Attachment by brazing shall be in accordance with the requirements of UB-17 through UB-19.

(d) Studded Connections. Connections may be made by means of studs. The vessel shall have a flat surface machined on the shell, or on a built-up pad, or on a properly attached plate or fitting. Drilled holes to be tapped shall not penetrate within one-fourth of the wall thickness from the inside surface of the vessel after deducting corrosion allowance, unless at least the minimum thickness required as above is maintained by adding metal to the inside surface of the vessel. The tapped holes shall also conform to the requirements of (g) below. Studded connections shall meet the requirements for reinforcement in UG-36 through UG-42.

(e) Threaded Connections. Pipes, tubes, and other threaded connections that conform to the ANSI/ASME Standard for Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch (ANSI/ASME B1.20.1) may be screwed into a threaded hole in a vessel wall, provided the pipe engages the minimum number of threads specified in Table UG-43 after allowance has been made for curvature of the vessel wall. The thread shall be a standard taper pipe thread except that a straight thread of at least equal strength may be used if other sealing means to prevent leakage are provided. A built-up pad or a properly attached plate or fitting may be used to provide the metal thickness and number of threads required in Table UG-43, or to furnish reinforcement when required.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UG-43
MINIMUM NUMBER OF PIPE THREADS FOR CONNECTIONS

Size of pipe connection, NPS (DN)	$\frac{1}{2}$ & $\frac{3}{4}$ (DN 15 & 20)	1, $1\frac{1}{4}$, & $1\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 25, 32, & 40)	2 (DN 50)	$2\frac{1}{2}$ & 3 (DN 65 & 80)	4–6 (DN 100–150)	8 (DN 200)	10 (DN 250)	12 (DN 300)
Threads engaged	6	7	8	8	10	12	13	14
Min. plate thickness required, in. (mm)	0.43 (11.0)	0.61 (15)	0.70 (18)	1.0 (25)	1.25 (32)	1.5 (38)	1.62 (41)	1.75 (45)

Threaded connections larger than 4 in. pipe size (DN 100) shall not be used in vessels that contain liquids having a flash-point below 110°F (43°C), or flammable vapors, or flammable liquids at temperatures above that at which they boil under atmospheric pressure.

Threaded connections larger than 3 in. pipe size (DN 80) shall not be used when the maximum allowable working pressure exceeds 125 psi (0.8 MPa), except that this 3 in. pipe size (DN 80) restriction does not apply to plug closures used for inspection openings, end closures, or similar purposes, or to integrally forged openings in vessel heads meeting the requirement of UF-43.

(f) Expanded Connections. A pipe, tube, or forging may be attached to the wall of a vessel by inserting through an unreinforced opening and expanding into the shell, provided the diameter is not greater than 2 in. pipe size (DN 50). A pipe, tube, or forging not exceeding 6 in. (150 mm) in outside diameter may be attached to the wall of a vessel by inserting through a reinforced opening and expanding into the shell.

Such connections shall be:

(1) firmly rolled in and beaded; or

(2) rolled in, beaded, and seal-welded around the edge of the bead; or

(3) expanded and flared not less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) over the diameter of the hole; or

(4) rolled, flared, and welded; or

(5) rolled and welded without flaring or beading, provided:

(a) the ends extend at least $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), but no more than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm), through the shell;

(b) the throat of the weld is at least $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm), but no more than $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm).

When the tube or pipe does not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) in outside diameter, the shell may be chamfered or recessed to a depth at least equal to the thickness of the tube or pipe and the tube or pipe may be rolled into place and welded. In no case shall the end of the tube or pipe extend more than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) beyond the shell.

Grooving of shell openings in which tubes and pipe are to be rolled or expanded is permissible.

Expanded connections shall not be used as a method of attachment to vessels used for the processing or storage of flammable and/or noxious gases and liquids unless the connections are seal-welded.

(g) Where tapped holes are provided for studs, the threads shall be full and clean and shall engage the stud for a length not less than the larger of d_s or

$$0.75\, d_s \times \frac{\text{Maximum allowable stress value of stud material at design temperature}}{\text{Maximum allowable stress value of tapped material at design temperature}}$$

in which d_s is the nominal diameter of the stud, except that the thread engagement need not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}d_s$.

UG-44 FLANGES AND PIPE FITTINGS 04

The following standards covering flanges and pipe fittings are acceptable for use under this Division in accordance with the requirements of UG-11. Pressure–temperature ratings shall be in accordance with the appropriate standard except that the pressure–temperature ratings for ASME B16.9 and ASME B16.11 fittings shall be calculated as for straight seamless pipe in accordance with the rules of this Division including the maximum allowable stress for the material. The thickness tolerance of the ASME standards shall apply.

UG-44(a) ASME/ANSI B16.5, Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings [see UG-11(a)(2)]

UG-44(b) ASME B16.9, Factory-Made Wrought Buttwelding Fittings

UG-44(c) ASME B16.11, Forged Fittings, Socket-Welding and Threaded

UG-44(d) ANSI/ASME B16.15, Cast Bronze Threaded Fittings, Classes 125 and 250

UG-44(e) ASME B16.20, Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges — Ring-Joint, Spiral-Wound, and Jacketed

UG-44(f) ASME B16.24, Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 150, 300, 400, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500

UG-44(g) ASME/ANSI B16.42, Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Class 150 and 300

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UG-44(h) ASME B16.47, Large Diameter Steel Flanges, NPS 26 Through NPS 60

UG-44(i) A forged nozzle flange may use the ASME B16.5 pressure–temperature ratings for the flange material being used, provided all of the following are met.

UG-44(i)(1) The forged nozzle flange shall meet all dimensional requirements of a flanged fitting given in ASME B16.5 with the exception of the inside diameter. The inside diameter of the forged nozzle flange shall not exceed the inside diameter of the same size and class lap joint flange given in ASME B16.5.

UG-44(i)(2) The outside diameter of the forged nozzle neck shall be at least equal to the hub diameter of the same size and class ASME B16.5 lap joint flange; larger hub diameters shall be limited to nut stop diameter dimensions; see Fig. 2-4 sketches (12) and (12a).

UG-45 NOZZLE NECK THICKNESS

The minimum wall thickness of nozzle necks shall be the larger of (a) or (b) below. Shear stresses caused by UG-22 loadings shall not exceed the allowable shear stress in (c) below. For applications of rules in this paragraph refer to Appendix L, Examples 2, 5, and 8 (see L-7.2, L-7.5, and L-7.8, respectively).

UG-45(a) The minimum wall thickness of a nozzle neck or other connection (including access openings and openings for inspection) shall not be less than the thickness computed from the applicable loadings in UG-22 plus the thickness added for allowances for corrosion and threading, as applicable [see UG-31(c)(2)], on the connection.

UG-45(b) Additionally, the minimum thickness of a nozzle neck or other connection (except for access openings and openings for inspection only) shall not be less than the smaller of the nozzle wall thickness as determined by the applicable rule in (b)(1), (b)(2) or (b)(3) below, and the wall thickness as determined by (b)(4) below:

UG-45(b)(1) for vessels under internal pressure only, the thickness (plus corrosion allowance) required for pressure (assuming $E = 1.0$) for the shell or head at the location where the nozzle neck or other connection attaches to the vessel but in no case less than the minimum thickness specified for the material in UG-16(b);

UG-45(b)(2) for vessels under external pressure only, the thickness (plus corrosion allowance) obtained by using the external design pressure as an equivalent internal design pressure (assuming $E = 1.0$) in the formula for the shell or head at the location where the nozzle neck or other connection attaches to the vessel but in no case less than the minimum thickness specified for the material in UG-16(b);

UG-45(b)(3) for vessels designed for both internal and external pressure, the greater of the thicknesses determined by (b)(1) or (b)(2) above;

UG-45(b)(4) the minimum thickness[25] of standard wall pipe plus the thickness added for corrosion allowance on the connection; for nozzles larger than the largest pipe size included in ANSI/ASME B36.10M, the wall thickness of that largest size plus the thickness added for corrosion allowance on the connection.

UG-45(c) The allowable stress value for shear in the nozzle neck shall be 70% of the allowable tensile stress for the nozzle material.

UG-46 INSPECTION OPENINGS[26]

(a) All pressure vessels for use with compressed air and those subject to internal corrosion or having parts subject to erosion or mechanical abrasion (see UG-25), except as permitted otherwise in this paragraph, shall be provided with suitable manhole, handhole, or other inspection openings for examination and cleaning.

Compressed air as used in this paragraph is not intended to include air which has had moisture removed to provide an atmospheric dew point of −50°F (−46°C) or less.

Inspection openings may be omitted in vessels covered in UG-46(b), and in the shell side of fixed tubesheet heat exchangers. When inspection openings are not provided, the Manufacturer's Data Report shall include one of the following notations under remarks:

(1) "UG-46(b)" when telltale holes are used in lieu of inspection openings;

(2) "UG-46(a)" when inspection openings are omitted in fixed tubesheet heat exchangers;

(3) "UG-46(c)," "UG-46(d)," or "UG-46(e)" when provision for inspection is made in accordance with one of these paragraphs;

(4) the statement "for noncorrosive service."

(b) When provided with tell-tale holes complying with the provisions of UG-25, inspection openings as required in (a) above may be omitted in vessels not over 36 in. (900 mm). I.D. which are subject only to corrosion, provided that the holes are spaced one hole per 10 sq ft (0.9 m^2) (or fraction thereof) of internal vessel surface area where corrosion is expected with a minimum of four uniformly spaced holes per vessel. This provision does not apply to vessels for compressed air.

[25] The minimum thickness for all materials is that wall thickness listed in Table 2 of ANSI/ASME B36.10M, less 12½%. For diameters other than those listed as standard (STD) in the Table, this shall be based upon the next larger pipe size. When a material specification does not specify schedule weights conforming to ANSI/ASME B36.10M, the pipe weight indicated as regular shall be used when so designated in the specification. If not so designated, the heaviest schedule listed shall be used even though this is less than the thickness of standard weight pipe of ANSI/ASME B36.10M.

[26] All dimensions given, for size of vessel on which inspection openings are required, are nominal.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(c) Vessels over 12 in. (300 mm) I.D. under air pressure which also contain, as an inherent requirement of their operation, other substances which will prevent corrosion need not have openings for inspection only, provided the vessel contains suitable openings through which inspection can be made conveniently, and provided such openings are equivalent in size and number to the requirements for inspection openings in (f) below.

(d) For vessels 12 in. (300 mm) or less in inside diameter, openings for inspection only may be omitted if there are at least two removable pipe connections not less than NPS $^3/_4$ (DN 20).

(e) Vessels less than 16 in. (400 mm) and over 12 in. (300 mm) I.D. shall have at least two handholes or two threaded pipe plug inspection openings of not less than NPS $1^1/_2$ (DN 40) except as permitted by the following: when vessels less than 16 in. (400 mm) and over 12 in. (300 mm) I.D. are to be installed so that inspection cannot be made without removing the vessel from the assembly, openings for inspection only may be omitted provided there are at least two removable pipe connections of not less than NPS $1^1/_2$ (DN 40).

(f) Vessels that require access or inspection openings shall be equipped as follows.[27]

(1) All vessels less than 18 in. (450 mm) and over 12 in. (300 mm) I.D. shall have at least two handholes or two plugged, threaded inspection openings of not less than NPS $1^1/_2$ (DN 40).

(2) All vessels 18 in. (450 mm) to 36 in. (900 mm), inclusive, I.D. shall have a manhole or at least two handholes or two plugged, threaded inspection openings of not less than NPS 2 (DN 50).

(3) All vessels over 36 in. (900 mm) I.D. shall have a manhole, except that those whose shape or use makes one impracticable shall have at least two handholes 4 in. × 6 in. (100 mm × 150 mm) or two equal openings of equivalent area.

(4) When handholes or pipe plug openings are permitted for inspection openings in place of a manhole, one handhole or one pipe plug opening shall be in each head or in the shell near each head.

(5) Openings with removable heads or cover plates intended for other purposes may be used in place of the required inspection openings provided they are equal at least to the size of the required inspection openings.

(6) A single opening with removable head or cover plate may be used in place of all the smaller inspection openings provided it is of such size and location as to afford at least an equal view of the interior.

(7) Flanged and/or threaded connections from which piping, instruments, or similar attachments can be removed may be used in place of the required inspection openings provided that:

(a) the connections are at least equal to the size of the required openings; and

(b) the connections are sized and located to afford at least an equal view of the interior as the required inspection openings.

(g) When inspection or access openings are required, they shall comply at least with the following requirements.

(1) An elliptical or obround manhole shall be not less than 12 in. × 16 in. (300 mm × 400 mm). A circular manhole shall be not less than 16 in. (400 mm) I.D.

(2) A handhole opening shall be not less than 2 in. × 3 in. (50 mm × 75 mm), but should be as large as is consistent with the size of the vessel and the location of the opening.

(h) All access and inspection openings in a shell or unstayed head shall be designed in accordance with the rules of this Division for openings.

(i) When a threaded opening is to be used for inspection or cleaning purposes, the closing plug or cap shall be of a material suitable for the pressure and no material shall be used at a temperature exceeding the maximum temperature allowed in this Division for that material. The thread shall be a standard taper pipe thread except that a straight thread of at least equal strength may be used if other sealing means to prevent leakage are provided.

(j) Manholes of the type in which the internal pressure forces the cover plate against a flat gasket shall have a minimum gasket bearing width of $^{11}/_{16}$ in. (17 mm).

BRACED AND STAYED SURFACES

UG-47 BRACED AND STAYED SURFACES

(a) The minimum thickness and maximum allowable working pressure for braced and stayed flat plates and those parts which, by these rules, require staying as flat plates with braces or staybolts of uniform diameter symmetrically spaced, shall be calculated by the following formulas:

$$t = p\sqrt{\frac{P}{SC}} \tag{1}$$

$$P = \frac{t^2 SC}{p^2} \tag{2}$$

where

t = minimum thickness of plate
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
S = maximum allowable stress value in tension (see UG-23)
p = maximum pitch. The maximum pitch is the greatest distance between any set of parallel straight

[27] Dimensions referred to are nominal.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

lines passing through the centers of staybolts in adjacent rows. Each of the three parallel sets running in the horizontal, the vertical, and the inclined planes shall be considered.

C = 2.1 for welded stays or stays screwed through plates not over $^7\!/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness with ends riveted over

C = 2.2 for welded stays or stays screwed through plates over $^7\!/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) in thickness with ends riveted over

C = 2.5 for stays screwed through plates and fitted with single nuts outside of plate, or with inside and outside nuts, omitting washers; and for stays screwed into plates as shown in Fig. UG-47 sketch (b)

C = 2.8 for stays with heads not less than 1.3 times the diameter of the stays screwed through plates or made a taper fit and having the heads formed on the stays before installing them, and not riveted over, said heads being made to have a true bearing on the plate

C = 3.2 for stays fitted with inside and outside nuts and outside washers where the diameter of washers is not less than $0.4p$ and thickness not less than t

04 *(b)* The minimum thickness of plates to which stays may be applied, in other than cylindrical or spherical outer shell plates, shall be $^5\!/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) except for welded construction covered by UW-19 or Appendix 17.

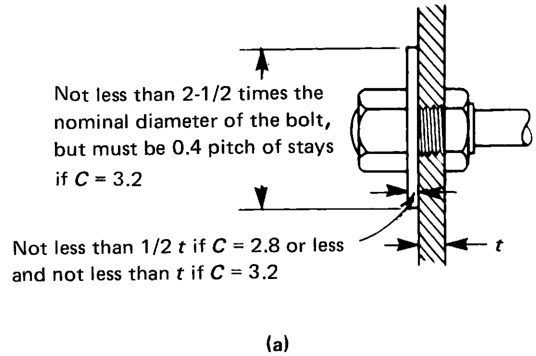
(c) If a stayed jacket extends completely around a cylindrical or spherical vessel, or completely covers a formed head, it shall meet the requirements given in (a) above, and shall also meet the applicable requirements for shells or heads in UG-27(c) and (d) and UG-32. In addition, where any nozzle or other opening penetrates the cylindrical or spherical vessel, or completely covered head, and the jacket, the vessel or formed head shall be designed in accordance with UG-37(d)(2).

(d) When two plates are connected by stays and but one of these plates requires staying, the value of C shall be governed by the thickness of the plate requiring staying.

(e) Acceptable proportions for the ends of through stays with washers are indicated in Fig. UG-47 sketch (a). See UG-83.

(f) The maximum pitch shall be $8^1\!/_2$ in. (220 mm), except that for welded-in staybolts the pitch may be greater provided it does not exceed 15 times the diameter of the staybolt.

(g) When the staybolting of shells is unsymmetrical by reason of interference with butt straps or other construction, it is permissible to consider the load carried by each staybolt as the area calculated by taking the distance from the center of the spacing on one side of the bolt to the center of the spacing on the other side.



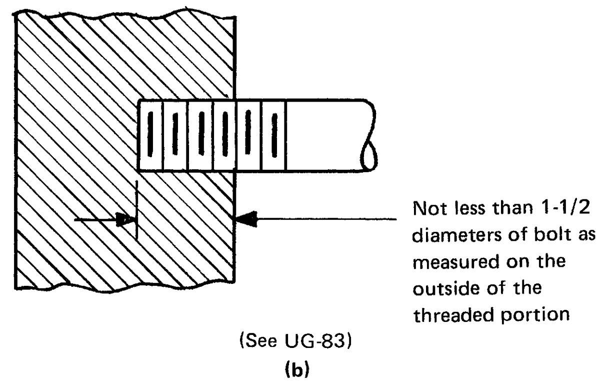


FIG. UG-47 ACCEPTABLE PROPORTIONS FOR ENDS OF STAYS

UG-48 STAYBOLTS

(a) The ends of staybolts or stays screwed through the plate shall extend beyond the plate not less than two threads when installed, after which they shall be riveted over or upset by an equivalent process without excessive scoring of the plates, or they shall be fitted with threaded nuts through which the bolt or stay shall extend.

(b) The ends of steel stays upset for threading shall be fully annealed.

(c) Requirements for welded-in staybolts are given in UW-19.

UG-49 LOCATION OF STAYBOLTS

(a) When the edge of a flat stayed plate is flanged, the distance from the center of the outermost stays to the inside

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of the supporting flange shall not be greater than the pitch of the stays plus the inside radius of the flange.

UG-50 DIMENSIONS OF STAYBOLTS

(a) The required area of a staybolt at its minimum cross section[28] and exclusive of any allowance for corrosion shall be obtained by dividing the load on the staybolt computed in accordance with (b) below by the allowable stress value for the material used, as given in Subsection C, and multiplying the result by 1.10.

(b) Load Carried by Stays. The area supported by a stay shall be computed on the basis of the full pitch dimensions, with a deduction for the area occupied by the stay. The load carried by a stay is the product of the area supported by the stay and the maximum allowable working pressure.

(c) Stays made of parts joined by welding shall be checked for strength using a joint efficiency of 60% for the weld.

LIGAMENTS

UG-53 LIGAMENTS

(a) The symbols used in the formulas and charts of this paragraph are defined as follows:

p = longitudinal pitch of tube holes
p_1 = unit length of ligament
p' = diagonal pitch of tube holes
θ = angle of diagonal with longitudinal line, deg.
s = longitudinal dimension of diagonal pitch
$= p' \cos \theta$
d = diameter of tube holes
n = number of tube holes in length p_1

(b) When a cylindrical shell is drilled for tubes in a line parallel to the axis of the shell for substantially the full length of the shell as shown in Figs. UG-53.1 through UG-53.3, the efficiency of the ligaments between the tube holes shall be determined as follows.

(1) When the pitch of the tube holes on every row is equal (see Fig. UG-53.1), the formula is

$$\frac{p - d}{p} = \text{efficiency of ligament}$$

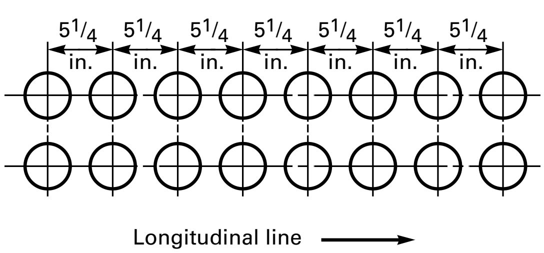
(2) When the pitch of tube holes on any one row is unequal (as in Figs. UG-53.2 and UG-53.3), the formula is

$$\frac{p_1 - nd}{p_1} = \text{efficiency of ligament}$$

(c) When the adjacent longitudinal rows are drilled as described in (b) above, diagonal and circumferential ligaments shall also be examined. The least equivalent longitudinal efficiency shall be used to determine the minimum required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure.

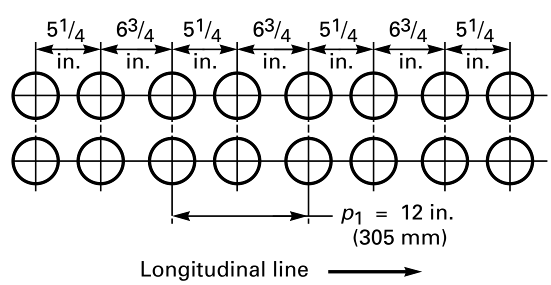
(d) When a cylindrical shell is drilled for holes so as to form diagonal ligaments, as shown in Fig. UG-53.4, the efficiency of these ligaments shall be determined by Figs. UG-53.5 and UG-53.6. Figure UG-53.5 is used to determine the efficiency of longitudinal and diagonal ligaments with limiting boundaries where the condition of equal efficiency of diagonal and longitudinal ligaments form one boundary and the condition of equal efficiency of diagonal and circumferential ligaments form the other boundary. Figure UG-53.6 is used for determining the equivalent longitudinal efficiency of diagonal ligaments. This efficiency is used in the formulas for setting the minimum required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure.

(e) Figure UG-53.5 is used when either or both longitudinal and circumferential ligaments exist with diagonal ligaments. To use Fig. UG-53.5, compute the value of p'/p_1 and also the efficiency of the longitudinal ligament. Next find in the diagram, the vertical line corresponding



GENERAL NOTE: $5^1/_4$ in. = 133 mm

FIG. UG-53.1 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES EQUAL IN EVERY ROW

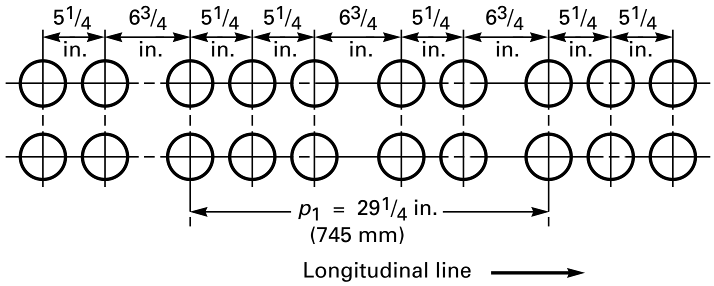


GENERAL NOTE: $5^1/_4$ in. = 135 mm
$6^3/_4$ in. = 170 mm

FIG. UG-53.2 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES UNEQUAL IN EVERY SECOND ROW

[28] The minimum cross section is usually at the root of the thread.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: 5 1/4 in. = 135 mm
6 3/4 in. = 170 mm

FIG. UG-53.3 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH PITCH OF HOLES VARYING IN EVERY SECOND AND THIRD ROW

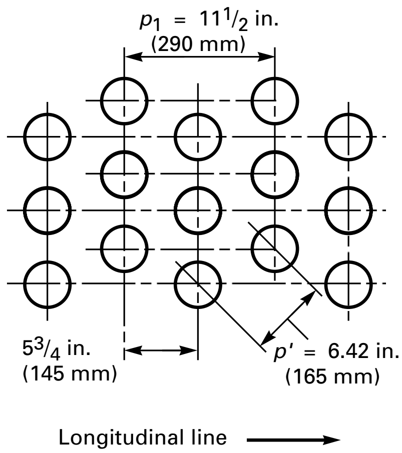


FIG. UG-53.4 EXAMPLE OF TUBE SPACING WITH TUBE HOLES ON DIAGONAL LINES

to the longitudinal efficiency of the ligament and follow this line vertically to the point where it intersects the diagonal line representing the ratio of p'/p_1. Then project this point horizontally to the left, and read the diagonal efficiency of the ligament on the scale at the edge of the diagram. The minimum shell thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure shall be based on the ligament that has the lower efficiency.

(f) Figure UG-53.6 is used for holes which are not in line, placed longitudinally along a cylindrical shell. The diagram may be used for pairs of holes for all planes between the longitudinal plane and the circumferential plane. To use Fig. UG-53.6, determine the angle θ between the longitudinal shell axis and the line between the centers of the openings, θ, and compute the value of p'/d. Find in the diagram, the vertical line corresponding to the value of θ and follow this line vertically to the line representing the value of p'/d. Then project this point horizontally to the left, and read the equivalent longitudinal efficiency of the diagonal ligament. This equivalent longitudinal efficiency is used to determine the minimum required thickness and the maximum allowable working pressure.

(g) When tube holes in a cylindrical shell are arranged in symmetrical groups which extend a distance greater than the inside diameter of the shell along lines parallel to the axis and the same spacing is used for each group, the efficiency for one of the groups shall be not less than the efficiency on which the maximum allowable working pressure is based.

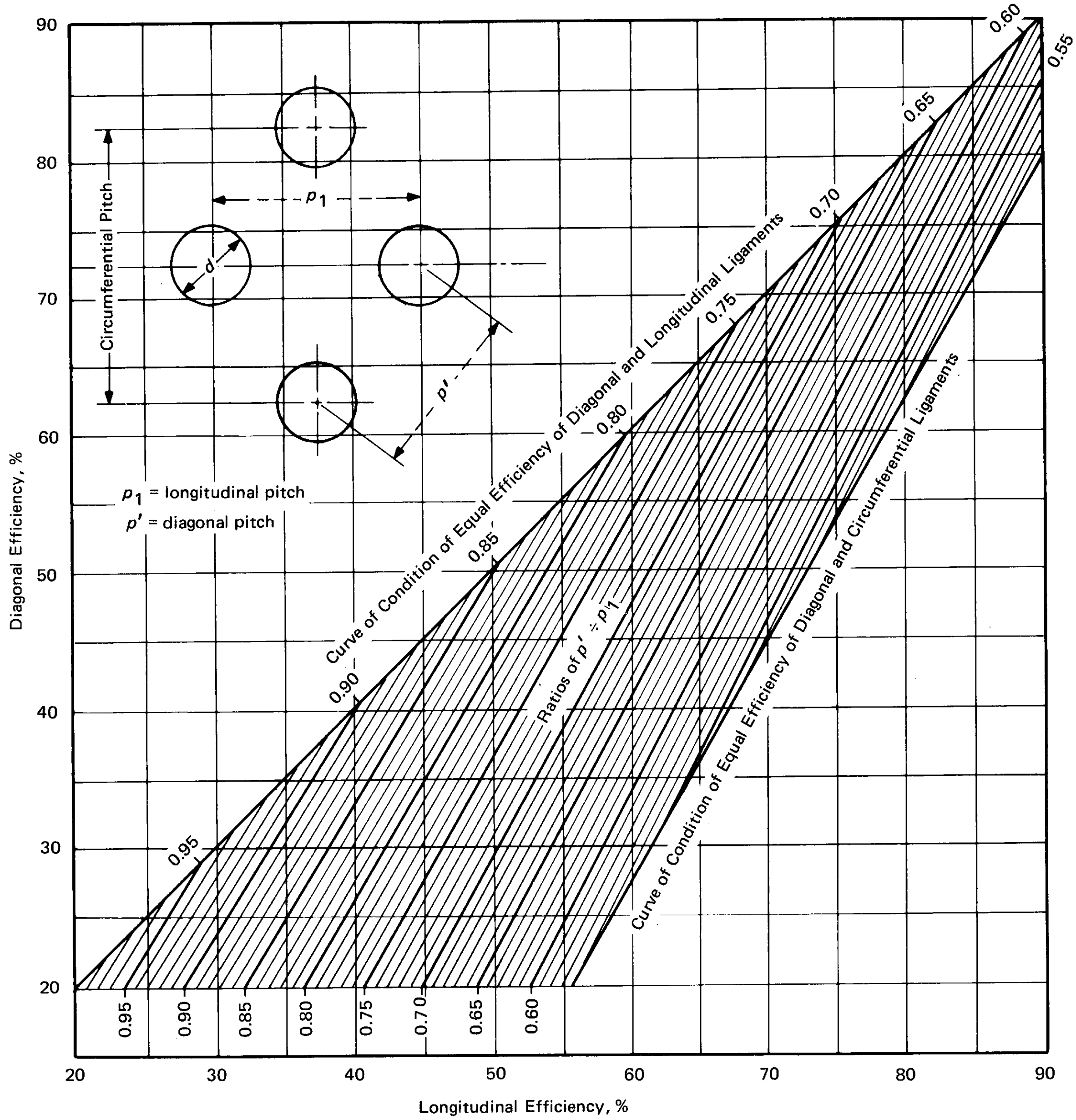
(h) The average ligament efficiency in a cylindrical shell, in which the tube holes are arranged along lines parallel to the axis with either uniform or nonuniform spacing, shall be computed by the following rules and shall satisfy the requirements of both.[29]

(1) For a length equal to the inside diameter of the shell for the position which gives the minimum efficiency, the efficiency shall be not less than that on which the maximum allowable working pressure is based. When the inside diameter of the shell exceeds 60 in. (1 500 mm), the length shall be taken as 60 in. (1 500 mm) in applying this rule.

(2) For a length equal to the inside radius of the shell for the position which gives the minimum efficiency, the efficiency shall be not less than 80% of that on which the maximum allowable working pressure is based. When the inside radius of the shell exceeds 30 in., the length shall be taken as 30 in. (760 mm) in applying this rule.

[29] The rules in this paragraph apply to ligaments between tube holes and not to single openings. They may give lower efficiencies in some cases than those for symmetrical groups which extend a distance greater than the inside diameter of the shell as covered in (e) above. When this occurs, the efficiencies computed by the rules under (b) above shall govern.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTES:

(1) Equations are provided for the user's option in Notes (2), (3), and (4) below. The use of these equations is permitted for values beyond those provided by Fig. UG-53.5.

(2) Diagonal efficiency, % $= \dfrac{J + 0.25 - (1 - 0.01E_{\text{long.}})\sqrt{0.75 + J}}{0.00375 + 0.005J}$, where $J = (p'/p_1)^2$

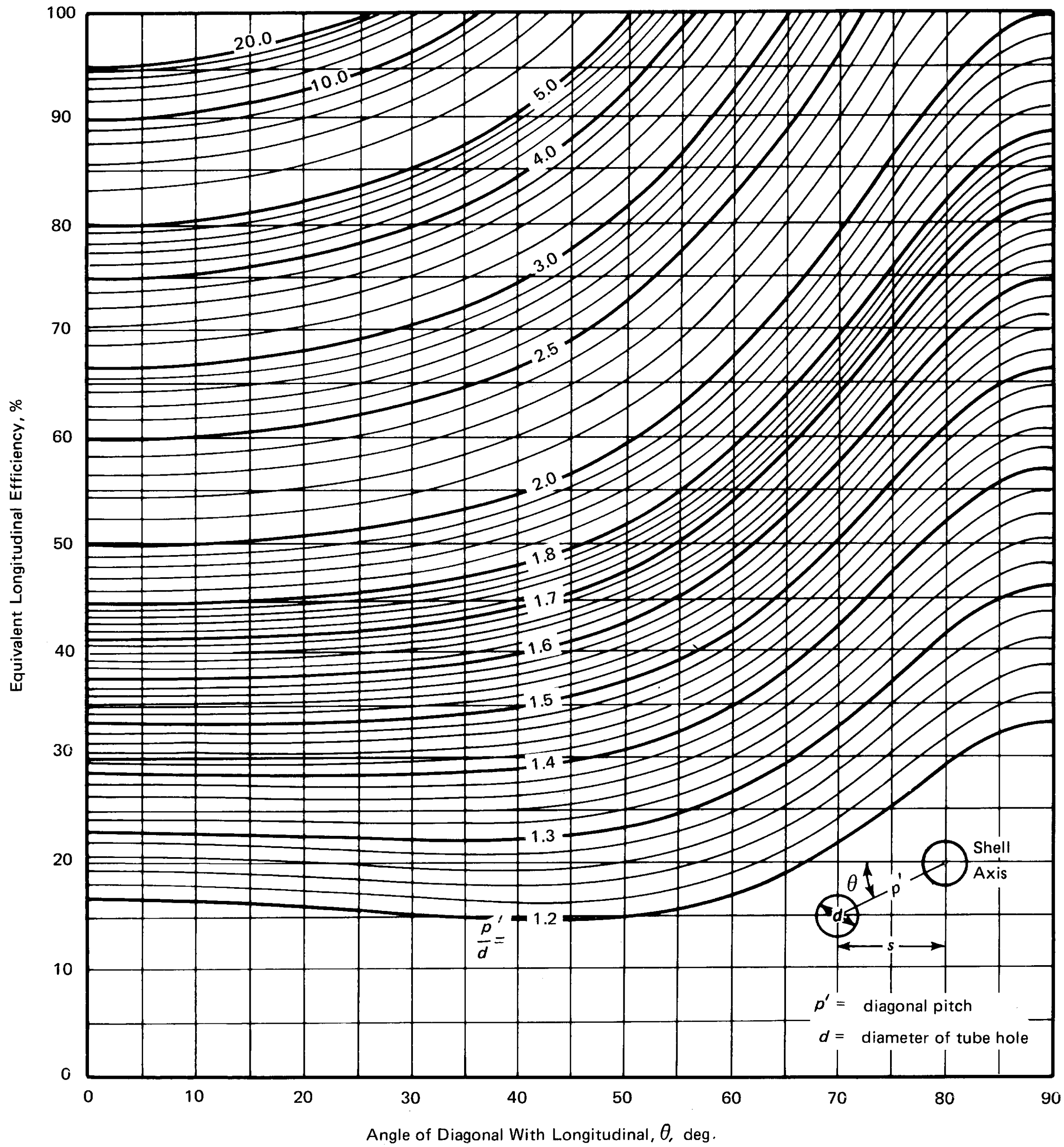
(3) Curve of condition of equal efficiency of diagonal and circumferential ligaments,

diagonal efficiency, % $= \dfrac{200M + 100 - 2(100 - E_{\text{long.}})\sqrt{1 + M}}{(1 + M)}$, where $M = [(100 - E_{\text{long.}})/(200 - 0.5E_{\text{long.}})]^2$

(4) Longitudinal efficiency, % $= E_{\text{long.}} = [(p_1 - d)/p_1]\,100$

FIG. UG-53.5 DIAGRAM FOR DETERMINING THE EFFICIENCY OF LONGITUDINAL AND DIAGONAL LIGAMENTS BETWEEN OPENINGS IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTES:

(1) The equation in Note (2) below is provided for the user's option. The use of the equation is prohibited beyond the range of the abscissa and ordinate shown.

(2) Equivalent longitudinal efficiency,

$$\% = \frac{\sec^2\theta + 1 - \left(\dfrac{\sec\theta}{p'/d}\right)\sqrt{3 + \sec^2\theta}}{0.015 + 0.005\sec^2\theta}$$

FIG. UG-53.6 DIAGRAM FOR DETERMINING EQUIVALENT LONGITUDINAL EFFICIENCY OF DIAGONAL LIGAMENTS BETWEEN OPENINGS IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(i) When ligaments occur in cylindrical shells made from welded pipe or tubes, and their calculated efficiency is less than 85% (longitudinal) or 50% (circumferential), the efficiency to be used in the formulas of UG-27 is the calculated ligament efficiency. In this case, the appropriate stress value in tension (see UG-23) may be multiplied by the factor 1.18.

(j) Examples illustrating the application of the rules in this paragraph are given in Appendix L.

UG-54 SUPPORTS

(a) All vessels shall be so supported and the supporting members shall be arranged and/or attached to the vessel wall in such a way as to provide for the maximum imposed loadings (see UG-22 and UG-82).

(b) Appendix G contains suggested rules for the design of supports.

UG-55 LUGS FOR PLATFORMS, LADDERS, AND OTHER ATTACHMENTS TO VESSEL WALLS

(a) Lugs or clips may be welded, brazed, or bolted to the outside or inside of the vessel to support ladders, platforms, piping, motor or machinery mounts, and attachment of insulating jackets (see UG-22). The material of the lugs or clips shall be in accordance with UG-4.

(b) External piping connected to a pressure vessel shall be installed so as not to overstress the vessel wall. (see UG-22 and UG-82).

(c) Appendix G provides guidance on the design of attachments.

FABRICATION

UG-75 GENERAL

The fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts shall conform to the general fabrication requirements in the following paragraphs and to the specific requirements for *Fabrication* given in the applicable Parts of Subsections B and C.

UG-76 CUTTING PLATES AND OTHER STOCK

(a) Plates, edges of heads, and other parts may be cut to shape and size by mechanical means such as machining, shearing, grinding, or by oxygen or arc cutting. After oxygen or arc cutting, all slag and detrimental discoloration of material which has been molten shall be removed by mechanical means prior to further fabrication or use.

(b) Ends of nozzles or manhole necks which are to remain unwelded in the completed vessel may be cut by shearing provided sufficient additional material is removed by any other method that produces a smooth finish.

(c) Exposed inside edges shall be chamfered or rounded.

UG-77 MATERIAL IDENTIFICATION (SEE UG-85)

(a) Material for pressure parts preferably should be laid out so that when the vessel is completed, one complete set of the original identification markings required by UG-94 will be plainly visible. The pressure vessel Manufacturer shall maintain traceability of the material to the original identification markings by one or more of the following methods: accurate transfer of the original identification markings to a location where the markings will be visible on the completed vessel; identification by a coded marking traceable to the original required marking; or recording the required markings using methods such as material tabulations or as built sketches which assure identification of each piece of material during fabrication and subsequent identification in the completed vessel. Such transfers of markings shall be made prior to cutting except that the Manufacturer may transfer markings immediately after cutting provided the control of these transfers is described in his written Quality Control System (see 10-6). Except as indicated in (b) below, material may be marked by any method acceptable to the Inspector. The Inspector need not witness the transfer of the marks but shall satisfy himself that it has been correctly done (see UHT-86).

(b) Where the service conditions prohibit die-stamping for material identification, and when so specified by the user, the materials manufacturer shall mark the required data on the plates in a manner which will allow positive identification upon delivery. The markings must be recorded so that each plate will be positively identified in its position in the completed vessel to the satisfaction of the Inspector. Transfer of markings for material that is to be divided shall be done as in (a) above.

(c) When material is formed into shapes by anyone other than the Manufacturer of the completed pressure vessel, and the original markings as required by the applicable material specification are unavoidably cut out, or the material is divided into two or more parts, the Manufacturer of the shape shall either:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(1) transfer the original identification markings to another location on the shape; or

(2) provide for identification by the use of a coded marking traceable to the original required marking, using a marking method agreed upon and described in the quality control system of the Manufacturer of the completed pressure vessel.

Identification in accordance with UG-93, in conjunction with the above modified marking requirements, shall be considered sufficient to identify these shapes. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports and parts stamping are not a requirement unless there has been fabrication to the shapes that include welding, except as exempted by UG-11.

UG-78 REPAIR OF DEFECTS IN MATERIALS

Defects in material may be repaired provided acceptance by the Inspector is first obtained for the method and extent of repairs. Defective material that cannot be satisfactorily repaired shall be rejected.

04 UG-79 FORMING SHELL SECTIONS AND HEADS

(a) All plates for shell sections and for heads shall be formed to the required shape by any process that will not unduly impair the physical properties of the material. Limits are provided on cold working of all carbon and low alloy steels, nonferrous alloys, high alloy steels, and ferritic steels with tensile properties enhanced by heat treatment [see UCS-79(d), UHA-44(a)(1), UNF-79(a)(1), and UHT-79(a)].

(b) If the plates are to be rolled, the adjoining edges of longitudinal joints of cylindrical vessels shall first be shaped to the proper curvature by preliminary rolling or forming in order to avoid having objectionable flat spots along the completed joints (see UG-80).

(c) When the vessel shell section, heads, or other pressure boundary parts are cold formed by other than the manufacturer of the vessel, the required certification for the part shall indicate whether or not the part has been heat-treated [see UCS-79, UHA-44, UNF-79, and UHT-79].

UG-80 PERMISSIBLE OUT-OF-ROUNDNESS OF CYLINDRICAL, CONICAL, AND SPHERICAL SHELLS

(a) Internal Pressure. The shell of a completed vessel shall be substantially round and shall meet the following requirements.

(1) The difference between the maximum and minimum inside diameters at any cross section shall not exceed 1% of the nominal diameter at the cross section under consideration. The diameters may be measured on the inside or outside of the vessel. If measured on the outside, the diameters shall be corrected for the plate thickness at the cross section under consideration (see Fig. UG-80.2).

(2) When the cross section passes through an opening or within 1 I.D. of the opening measured from the center of the opening, the permissible difference in inside diameters given above may be increased by 2% of the inside diameter of the opening. When the cross section passes through any other location normal to the axis of the vessel, including head-to-shell junctions, the difference in diameters shall not exceed 1%.

For vessels with longitudinal lap joints, the permissible difference in inside diameters may be increased by the nominal plate thickness.

(b) External Pressure. The shell of a completed vessel to operate under external pressure shall meet the following requirements at any cross section.

(1) The out-of-roundness limitations prescribed in (a)(1) and (a)(2) above.

(2) The maximum plus-or-minus deviation from the true circular form, measured radially on the outside or inside of the vessel, shall not exceed the maximum permissible deviation e obtained from Fig. UG-80.1. Use

$$e = 1.0t$$

or

$$e = 0.2t$$

respectively, for points falling above or below these curves. Measurements shall be made from a segmental circular template having the design inside or outside radius (depending upon where the measurements are taken) and a chord length equal to twice the arc length obtained from Fig. UG-29.2. The values of L and D_o in Figs. UG-29.2 and UG-80.1 shall be determined as follows:

(a) for cylinders, L and D_o as defined in UG-28(b);

(b) for cones and conical sections, L and D_o values to be used in the figures are given below in terms of the definitions given in UG-33(b). In all cases below,

$$L_e = 0.5L(1 + D_s/D_L)$$

(1) at the large diameter end,

$$L = L_e$$

$$D_o = D_L$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

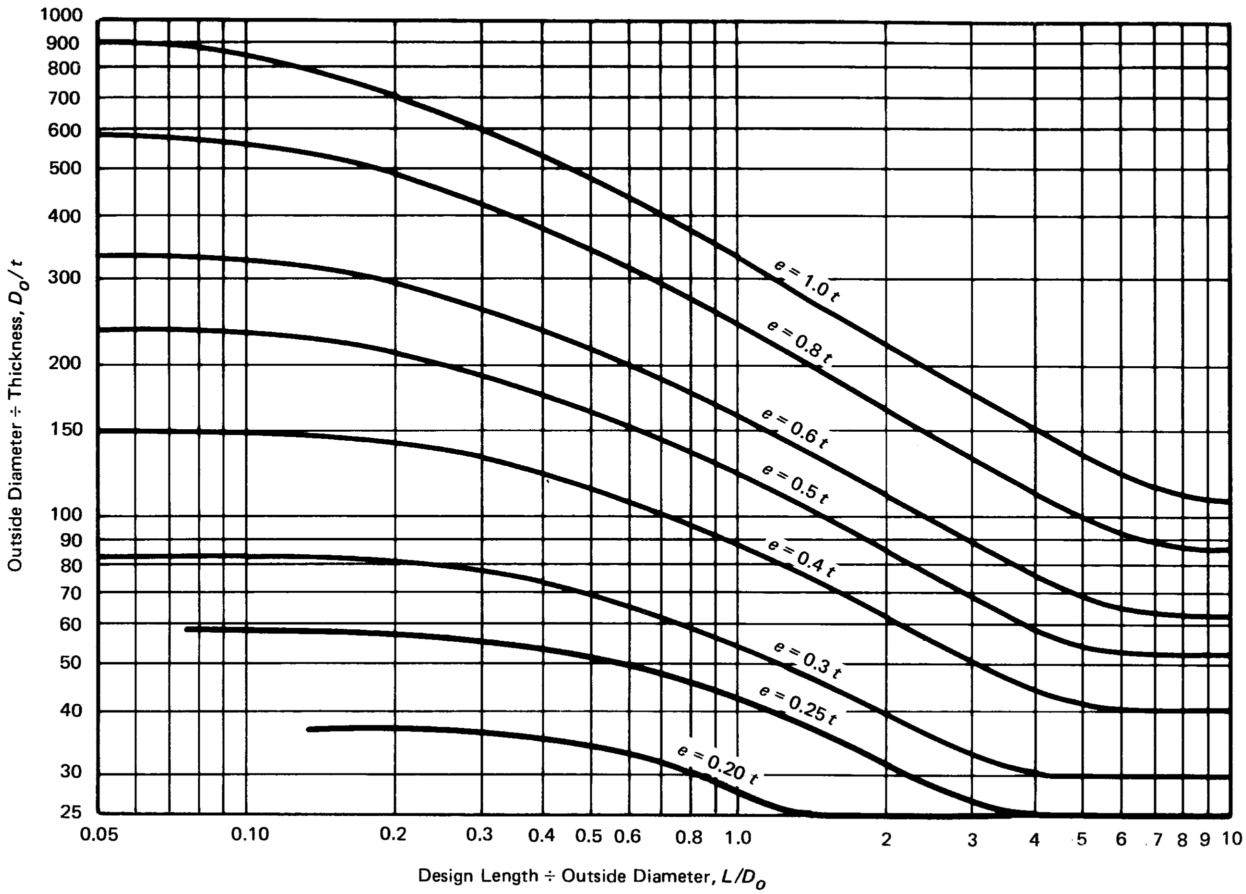


FIG. UG-80.1 MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE DEVIATION FROM A CIRCULAR FORM e FOR VESSELS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

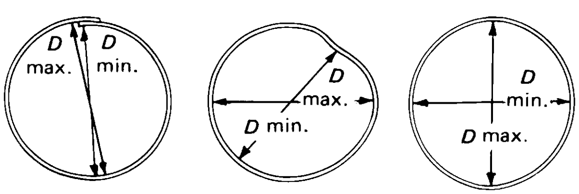


FIG. UG-80.2 EXAMPLE OF DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM INSIDE DIAMETERS IN CYLINDRICAL, CONICAL, AND SPHERICAL SHELLS

(2) at the small diameter end,

$$L = L_e(D_L/D_s)$$

$$D_o = D_s$$

(3) at the midlength diameter,

$$L = L_e[2D_L/(D_L + D_s)]$$

$$D_o = 0.5(D_L + D_s)$$

(4) at any crosssection having an outside diameter of D_x,

$$L = L_e(D_L/D_x)$$

$$D_o = D_x$$

(c) for spheres, L is one-half of the outside diameter D_o.

(3) For cylinders and spheres, the value of t shall be determined as follows.

(a) For vessels with butt joints, t is the nominal plate thickness less corrosion allowance.

(b) For vessels with longitudinal lap joints, t is the nominal plate thickness and the permissible deviation is

$$t + e$$

(c) Where the shell at any cross section is made of plates having different thicknesses, t is the nominal

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

thickness of the thinnest plate less corrosion allowance.

(4) For cones and conical sections, the value of t shall be determined as in (3) above, except that t in (a), (b), and (c) shall be replaced by t_e as defined in UG-33(b).

(5) The requirements of (b)(2) above shall be met in any plane normal to the axis of revolution for cylinders and cones and in the plane of any great circle for spheres. For cones and conical sections, a check shall be made at locations (1), (2), and (3) of (b)(2)(b) above and such other locations as may be necessary to satisfy manufacturers and inspectors that requirements are met.

(6) Measurements shall be taken on the surface of the base metal and not on welds or other raised parts of the material.

(7) The dimensions of a completed vessel may be brought within the requirements of this paragraph by any process which will not impair the strength of the material.

(8) Sharp bends and flat spots shall not be permitted unless provision is made for them in the design.

(9) If the nominal thickness of plate used for a cylindrical vessel exceeds the minimum thickness required by UG-28 for the external design pressure, and if such excess thickness is not required for corrosion allowance or loadings causing compressive forces, the maximum permissible deviation e determined for the nominal plate thickness used may be increased by the ratio of factor B for the nominal plate thickness used divided by factor B for the minimum required plate thickness; and the chord length for measuring e_{max} shall be determined by D_o/t for the nominal plate thickness used.

(10) Vessels fabricated of pipe may have permissible variations in diameter (measured outside) in accordance with those permitted under the specification covering its manufacture.

(11) An example illustrating the application of these rules for a vessel under external pressure is given in L-4.

UG-81 TOLERANCE FOR FORMED HEADS

(a) The inner surface of a torispherical, toriconical, hemispherical, or ellipsoidal head shall not deviate outside of the specified shape by more than $1\frac{1}{4}$% of D nor inside the specified shape by more than $\frac{5}{8}$% of D, where D is the nominal inside diameter of the vessel shell at point of attachment. Such deviations shall be measured perpendicular to the specified shape and shall not be abrupt. The knuckle radius shall not be less than that specified.

(b) Hemispherical heads or any spherical portion of a torispherical or ellipsoidal head designed for external pressure shall, in addition to satisfying (a) above, meet the tolerances specified for spheres in UG-80(b) using a value of 0.5 for L/D_o.

(c) Measurements for determining the deviations specified in (a) above shall be taken from the surface of the base metal and not from welds.

(d) The skirts of heads shall be sufficiently true to round so that the difference between the maximum and minimum inside diameters shall not exceed 1% of the nominal diameter.

(e) When the skirt of any unstayed formed head is machined to make a driving fit into or over a shell, the thickness shall not be reduced to less than 90% of that required for a blank head (see UW-13) or the thickness of the shell at the point of attachment. When so machined, the transition from the machined thickness to the original thickness of the head shall not be abrupt but shall be tapered for a distance of at least three times the difference between the thicknesses.

UG-82 LUGS AND FITTING ATTACHMENTS

All lugs, brackets, saddle type nozzles, manhole frames, reinforcement around openings, and other appurtenances shall be formed and fitted to conform reasonably to the curvature of the shell or surface to which they are attached.

(a) When pressure parts, such as saddle type nozzles, manhole frames, and reinforcement around openings, extend over pressure retaining welds, such welds shall be ground flush for the portion of the weld to be covered.

(b) When nonpressure parts, such as lugs, brackets, and support legs and saddles, extend over pressure retaining welds, such welds shall be ground flush as described in (a) above, or such parts shall be notched or coped to clear those welds.

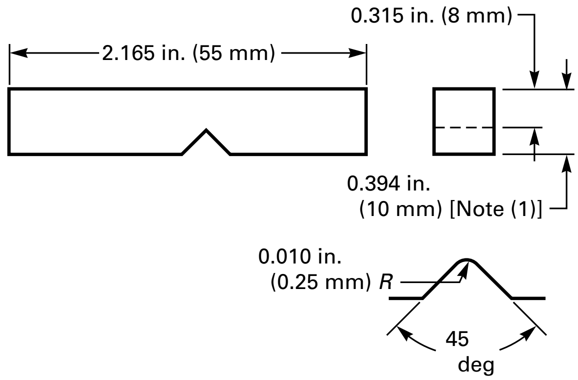
UG-83 HOLES FOR SCREW STAYS

Holes for screw stays shall be drilled full size or punched not to exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) less than full diameter of the hole for plates over $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) in thickness and $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) less than the full diameter of the hole for plates not exceeding $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) in thickness, and then drilled or reamed to the full diameter. The holes shall be tapped fair and true with a full thread.

UG-84 CHARPY IMPACT TESTS

UG-84(a) General. Charpy impact tests in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph shall be made on weldments and all materials for shells, heads, nozzles,

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



NOTE:
(1) See UG-84(c) for thickness of reduced size specimen.

FIG. UG-84 SIMPLE BEAM IMPACT TEST SPECIMENS (CHARPY TYPE TEST)

and other vessel parts subject to stress due to pressure for which impact tests are required by the rules in Subsection C.

UG-84(b) Test Procedures

UG-84(b)(1) Impact test procedures and apparatus shall conform to the applicable paragraphs of SA-370.

UG-84(b)(2) Unless permitted by Table UG-84.4, impact test temperature shall not be warmer than the minimum design metal temperature [see UG-20(b)]. The test temperature may be colder than the minimum specified in the material specification of Section II.

UG-84(c) Test Specimens

UG-84(c)(1) Each set of impact test specimens shall consist of three specimens.

UG-84(c)(2) The impact test specimens shall be of the Charpy V-notch type and shall conform in all respects to Fig. UG-84. The standard (10 mm × 10 mm) specimens, when obtainable, shall be used for nominal thicknesses of $^7/_{16}$ in. (11 mm) or greater, except as otherwise permitted in (c)(2)(a) below.

(a) For materials that normally have absorbed energy in excess of 180 ft-lbf (240 J) when tested using full size (10 mm × 10 mm) specimens at the specified testing temperature, subsize (10 mm × 6.7 mm) specimens may be used in lieu of full size specimens. However, when this option is used, the acceptance value shall be 75 ft-lbf (100 J) minimum for each specimen and the lateral expansion in mils (mm) shall be reported.

UG-84(c)(3) For material from which full size (10 mm × 10 mm) specimens cannot be obtained, either due to the material shape or thickness, the specimens shall be either the largest possible standard subsize specimens obtainable or specimens of full material nominal thickness which may be machined to remove surface irregularities. [The test temperature criteria of (c)(5)(b) below shall apply for Table UCS-23 materials having a specified minimum tensile strength less than 95,000 psi (655 MPa) when the width along the notch is less than 80% of the material nominal thickness.] Alternatively, such material may be reduced in thickness to produce the largest possible Charpy subsize specimen. Toughness tests are not required where the maximum obtainable Charpy specimen has a width along the notch less than 0.099 in. (2.5 mm).

UG-84(c)(4)

(a) Except for materials produced and impact tested in accordance with the requirements in the specifications listed in General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1, the applicable minimum energy requirement for all specimen sizes for Table UCS-23 materials having a specified minimum tensile strength less than 95,000 psi (655 MPa) shall be that shown in Fig. UG-84.1, multiplied by the ratio of the actual specimen width along the notch to the width of a full-size (10 mm × 10 mm) specimen, except as otherwise provided in (c)(2)(a) above.

(b) The applicable minimum lateral expansion opposite the notch for all specimen sizes for Table UCS-23 materials, having a specified minimum tensile strength of 95,000 psi (655 MPa) or more, shall be as required in UHT-6(a)(3) and UHT-6(a)(4). For UHT materials, all requirements of UHT-6(a)(3) and UHT-6(a)(4) shall apply. For Table UHA-23 materials, all requirements of UHA-51 shall apply.

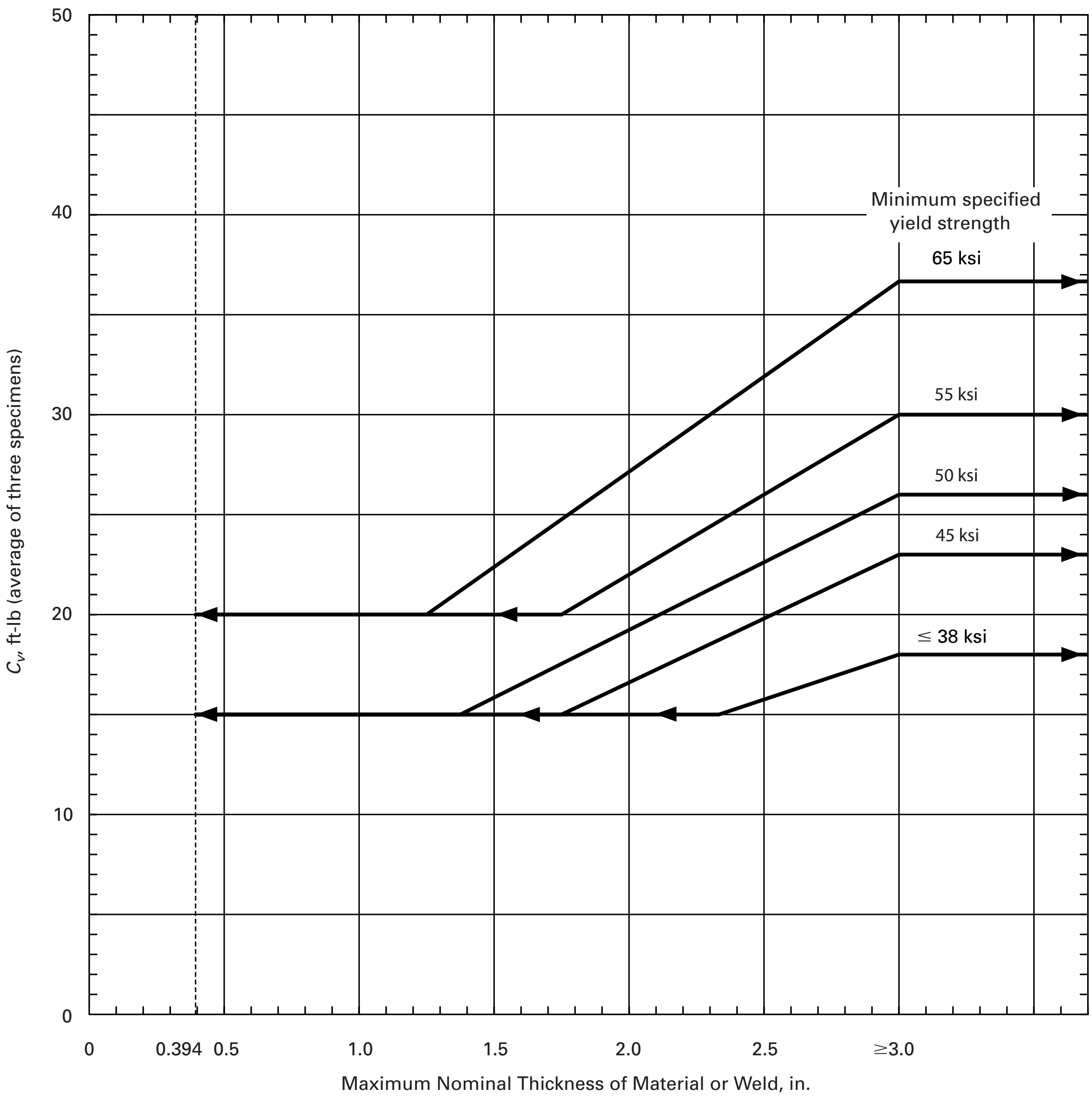
UG-84(c)(5) For all Charpy impact tests the following test temperature criteria shall be observed.

(a) For Materials of Nominal Thickness Equal to or Greater Than 0.394 in. (10 mm). Where the largest obtainable Charpy V-notch specimen has a width along the notch of at least 0.315 in. (8 mm), the Charpy test using such a specimen shall be conducted at a temperature not warmer than the minimum design metal temperature.[30] Where the largest possible test specimen has a width along the notch less than 0.315 in. (8 mm), the test shall be conducted at a temperature lower than the minimum design metal temperature[30] by the amount shown in Table UG-84.2 for that specimen width. [This latter requirement does not apply when the option of (c)(2)(a) above is used.]

(b) For Materials of Nominal Thickness Less Than 0.394 in. (10 mm). Where the largest obtainable Charpy V-notch specimen has a width along the notch

[30] Where applicable for Part UCS materials, the impact test temperature may be adjusted in accordance with UG-84(b)(2) and Table UG-84.4.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Interpolation between yield strengths shown is permitted.

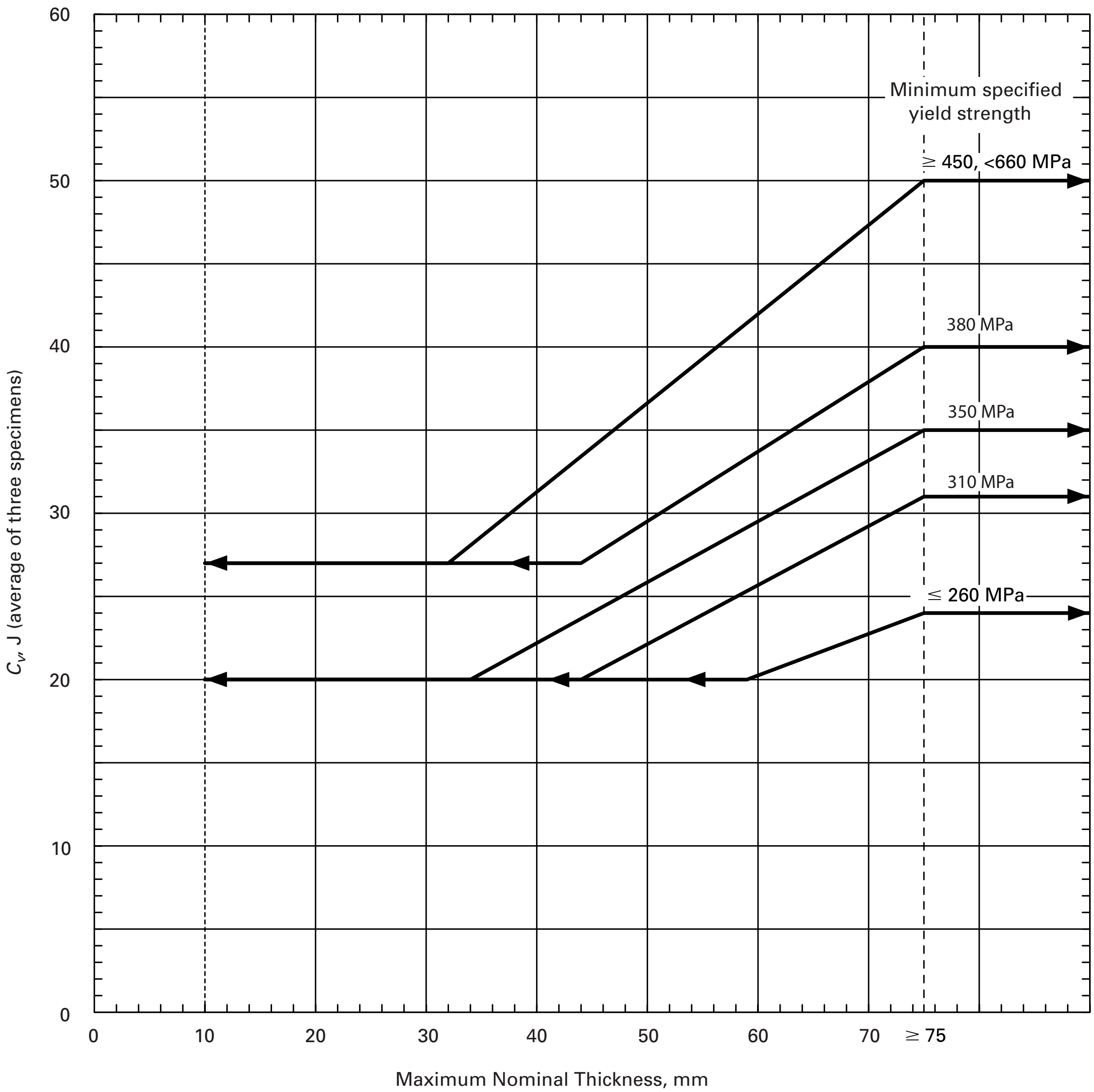
(b) The minimum impact energy for one specimen shall not be less than $^2/_3$ of the average energy required for three specimens.

(c) Material produced and impact tested in accordance with SA-320, SA-333, SA-334, SA-350, SA-352, SA-420, impact tested SA/AS 1548 (*L* impact designations), SA-437, SA-540 (except for materials produced under Table 2, Note 4 in SA-540), and SA-765 do not have to satisfy these energy values. They are acceptable for use at minimum design metal temperature not colder than the test temperature when the energy values required by the applicable specification are satisfied.

(d) For materials having a specified minimum tensile strength of 95 ksi or more, see UG-84(c)(4)(b).

FIG. UG-84.1 CHARPY V-NOTCH IMPACT TEST REQUIREMENTS FOR FULL SIZE SPECIMENS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS, HAVING A SPECIFIED MINIMUM TENSILE STRENGTH OF LESS THAN 95 ksi, LISTED IN TABLE UCS-23

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) Interpolation between yield strengths shown is permitted.

(b) The minimum impact energy for one specimen shall not be less than $^2/_3$ of the average energy required for three specimens.

(c) Material produced and impact tested in accordance with SA-320, SA-333, SA-334, SA-350, SA-352, SA-420, impact tested SA/AS 1548 (*L* impact designations), SA-437, SA-540 (except for materials produced under Table 2, Note 4 in SA-540), and SA-765 do not have to satisfy these energy values. They are acceptable for use at minimum design metal temperature not colder than the test temperature when the energy values required by the applicable specification are satisfied.

(d) For materials having a specified minimum tensile strength of 655 MPa or more, see UG-84(c)(4)(b).

FIG. UG-84.1M CHARPY V-NOTCH IMPACT TEST REQUIREMENTS FOR FULL SIZE SPECIMENS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS, HAVING A SPECIFIED MINIMUM TENSILE STRENGTH OF LESS THAN 655 MPa, LISTED IN TABLE UCS-23

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UG-84.2
CHARPY IMPACT TEST TEMPERATURE REDUCTION BELOW MINIMUM DESIGN METAL TEMPERATURE
For Table UCS-23 Materials Having a Specified Minimum Tensile Strength of Less Than 95,000 psi (655 MPa) When the Subsize Charpy Impact Width Is Less Than 80% of the Material Thickness

Actual Material Thickness [See UG-84(c)(5)(b)] of Charpy Impact Specimen Width Along the Notch[1]	
Thickness, in. (mm)	Temperature Reduction, °F (°C)
0.394 (Full-size standard bar) (10)	0 (0)
0.354 (9)	0 (0)
0.315 (8.00)	0 (0)
0.295 (3/4 size bar) (7.5)	5 (3)
0.276 (7)	8 (4)
0.262 (2/3 size bar) (6.7)	10 (6)
0.236 (6)	15 (8)
0.197 (1/2 size bar) (5.00)	20 (11)
0.158 (4)	30 (17)
0.131 (1/3 size bar) (3.3)	35 (19)
0.118 (3.00)	40 (22)
0.099 (1/4 size bar) (2.5)	50 (28)

NOTE:
(1) Straight line interpolation for intermediate values is permitted.

TABLE UG-84.3
SPECIFICATIONS FOR IMPACT TESTED MATERIALS IN VARIOUS PRODUCT FORMS

Product Form	Spec. No.
Plates	
Parts UCS and UHT	SA-20, S5
Part UHA	SA-480
Pipe	SA-333
Tubes	SA-334
Forgings	SA-350
Castings	SA-352
Bolting materials (and bars)	SA-320
Piping fittings	SA-420

of at least 80% of the material nominal thickness, the Charpy test of such a specimen shall be conducted at a temperature not warmer than the minimum design metal temperature.[30]

Where the largest possible test specimen has a width along the notch of less than 80% of the material nominal thickness, the test, for Table UCS-23 materials having specified minimum tensile strength of less than 95,000 psi (655 MPa), shall be conducted at a temperature lower than the minimum design metal temperature[30] by an amount equal to the difference (referring to Table UG-84.2) between the temperature reduction corresponding to the actual material thickness and the temperature reduction corresponding to the Charpy specimen width actually tested. [This latter requirement does not apply when the option of (c)(2)(a) above is used.] For Table UCS-23 materials having a specified minimum tensile strength of 95,000 psi (655 MPa) and over, for Table UHT-23 materials, and for Table UHA-23 materials, the test shall be conducted at a temperature not warmer than the minimum design temperature.

UG-84(c)(6) When the average value of the three specimens equals or exceeds the minimum value permitted for a single specimen and the value for more than one specimen is below the required average value, or when the value for one specimen is below the minimum value permitted for a single specimen, a retest of three additional specimens shall be made. The value for each of these retest specimens shall equal or exceed the required average value.

When an erratic result is caused by a defective specimen or there is uncertainty in test procedure, a retest will be allowed. When the option of (c)(2)(a) above is used for the initial test and the acceptance value of 75 ft-lbf (100 J) minimum is not attained, retest using full size (10 mm × 10 mm) specimens will be allowed.

UG-84(d) Impact Tests of Material

UG-84(d)(1) Reports or certificates of impact tests by the material manufacturer will be acceptable evidence that the material meets the requirements of this paragraph, provided the specimens comply with UCS-85, UHT-5, or UHT-81, as applicable.

UG-84(d)(2) The manufacturer of the vessel may have impact tests made to prove the suitability of a material which the material manufacturer has not impact tested provided the number of tests and the method of taking the test specimens shall be as specified for the material manufacturer (see UG-85).

UG-84(e) Procedural Requirements

UG-84(e)(1) Product Form Procedural Requirements. When no procedural requirements are listed in the material specifications, impact testing of each form of material shall comply with the applicable product form procedural requirements of the specifications listed in Table UG-84.3.

UG-84(e)(2) Small Parts. The manufacturer of small parts, either cast or forged, may certify a lot of not more than 20 duplicate parts by reporting the results of one set of impact specimens taken from one such part selected at random, provided the same specification and heat of material and the same process of production, including heat treatment, were used for all of the lot. When the part is too small to provide the three specimens of at least minimum size shown in Fig. UG-84, no impact test need be made.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UG-84.4
IMPACT TEST TEMPERATURE DIFFERENTIAL

Minimum Specified Yield Strength, ksi (MPa)	Temperature Difference, °F (°C) [Note (1)]
≤40 (280)	10 (6)
≤55 (380)	5 (3)
>55 (380)	0 (0)

NOTE:
(1) Impact test temperature may be warmer than the minimum design temperature by the amount shown.

UG-84(e)(3) Small Vessels. For small vessels in conformance with U-1(j), one set of impact specimens of the material may represent all vessels from the same heat of material not in excess of 100 vessels or one heat-treatment furnace batch, whichever is smaller.

UG-84(f) Impact Testing of Welds

UG-84(f)(1) For steel vessels of welded construction the impact toughness of welds and heat affected zones of procedure qualification test plates and vessel impact test plates (production impact test plates) shall be determined as required herein.

04 *UG-84(f)(2)* All test plates shall be subjected to heat treatment, including cooling rates and aggregate time at temperature or temperatures as established by the Manufacturer for use in actual manufacture. Heat treatment requirements of UG-85, UCS-85, UHT-81, and UHT-82 shall apply to the test plates except that the provisions of UCS-85(g) are not applicable to test plates for welds joining P-No. 3, Gr. Nos. 1 and 2 materials.

UG-84(g) Location, Orientation, Temperature, and Values of Weld Impact Tests. All weld impact tests shall comply with the following.

UG-84(g)(1) Each set of weld metal impact specimens shall be taken across the weld with the notch in the weld metal. Each specimen shall be oriented so that the notch is normal to the surface of the material and one face of the specimen shall be within $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) of the surface of the material.

UG-84(g)(2) Each set of heat affected zone impact specimens shall be taken across the weld and of sufficient length to locate, after etching, the notch in the heat affected zone. The notch shall be cut approximately normal to the material surface in such a manner as to include as much heat affected zone material as possible in the resulting fracture.

UG-84(g)(3) For welds made by a solid-state welding process, such as for electric resistance welded (ERW) pipe, the weld impact tests shall consist only of one set of three specimens taken across the weld with the notch at the weld center line. Each specimen shall be oriented so that the notch is normal to the surface of the material and one face of the specimen shall be within $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) of the surface of the material. The weld impact tests are not required if the weld and the base metal have been: annealed, normalized, normalized and tempered, double normalized and tempered, or quenched and tempered.

UG-84(g)(4) The test temperature for welds and heat affected zones shall not be higher than required for the base materials.

UG-84(g)(5) Impact values shall be at least as high as those required for the base materials.

UG-84(h) Impact Tests of Welding Procedure Qualifications

UG-84(h)(1) General. For steel vessels of welded construction, the impact toughness of the welds and heat affected zones of the procedure qualification test plates shall be determined in accordance with (g) above and the following subparagraphs.

UG-84(h)(2) When Required. Welding procedure impact tests shall be made when required by UCS-67, UHT-82, or UHA-51. For vessels constructed to the rules of Part UCS, the test plate material shall satisfy all of the following requirements relative to the material to be used in production:

(a) be of the same P-Number and Group Number;

(b) be in the same heat treated condition; and

(c) meet the minimum notch toughness requirements of UG-84(c)(4) for the thickest material of the range of base material qualified by the procedure (see Fig. UG-84.1).

If impact tests are required for the deposited weld metal, but the base material is exempted from impact tests (as in UHA-51), welding procedure test plates shall be made. The test plate material shall be material of the same P-Number and Group Number used in the vessel. One set of impact specimens shall be taken with the notch approximately centered in the weld metal and perpendicular to the surface; the heat affected zone need not be impact tested.

When the welding procedure employed for production welding is used for fillet welds only, it shall be qualified by a groove weld qualification test. The qualification test plate or pipe material shall meet the requirements of (a), (b), and (c) above when impact testing is a requirement. This welding procedure test qualification is in addition to the requirements of Section IX, QW-202.2 for P-No. 11 materials.

UG-84(h)(3) Material Over $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) Thick. When procedure tests are made on material over $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) in thickness, three sets of impact specimens are

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

required. One set of heat affected zone specimens shall be taken as described in (g)(2) above. Two sets of impact specimens shall be taken from the weld with one set located near [within $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm)] the surface of one side of the material and one set taken as near as practical midway between the surface and the center of thickness of the opposite side as described in (g) above.

UG-84(h)(4) Essential Variables. The additional essential variables specified in Section IX, QW-250, for impact testing are required.

UG-84(i) Vessel (Production) Impact Test Plates

UG-84(i)(1) General. In addition to the requirements of (h) above, impact tests of welds and heat affected zones shall be made in accordance with (g) above for each qualified welding procedure used on each vessel or group of vessels as defined in (3) below. The vessel impact test plate shall be from one of the heats of steel used for the vessel or group of vessels. For Category A joints, the test plate shall, where practicable, be welded as an extension to the end of a production joint so that the test plate weldment will represent as nearly as practicable the quality and type of welding in the vessel joint. For Category B joints that are welded using a different welding procedure than used on Category A joints, a test plate shall be welded under the production welding conditions used for the vessel, using the same type of equipment and at the same location and using the same procedures as used for the joint, and it shall be welded concurrently with the production welds or as close to the start of production welding as practicable.

UG-84(i)(2) When Required. Vessel (production) impact test plates shall be made for all joints for which impact tests are required for the welding procedure by UCS-67, UHT-82, or UHA-51 (except where production test plates are specifically exempt by these paragraphs). Test shall be made of the weld metal and/or heat affected zone to the extent required by the procedure test (see UCS-67 and UHA-51).

UG-84(i)(3) Number of Vessel Impact Test Plates Required

(a) For each vessel, one test plate shall be made for each welding procedure used for joints of Categories A and B, unless the vessel is one of several as defined in (b) or (c) below.

In addition, for Category A and B joints the following requirements shall apply.

(1) If automatic or semiautomatic welding is performed, a test plate shall be made in each position employed in the vessel welding.

(2) If manual welding is also employed, a test plate shall be made in the flat position only, except if welding is to be performed in other positions a test plate need be made in the vertical position only (where the major portions of the layers of welds are deposited in the vertical upward direction). The vertically welded test plate will qualify the manual welding in all positions.

(b) For several vessels or parts of vessels, welded within any 3 month period at one location, the plate thickness of which does not vary by more than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), or 25%, whichever is greater, and of the same specification and grade of material, a test plate shall be made for each 400 ft (120 m) of joints welded by the same procedure.

(c) For small vessels not exceeding the volume limitations defined in U-1(j) made from one heat of material requiring impact tests, one welded test joint made from the same heat of material and welded with the same electrode and the same welding procedure may represent one lot of 100 vessels or less, or each heat treatment furnace batch, whichever is smaller.

UG-84(j) Rejection. If the vessel test plate fails to meet the impact requirements, the welds represented by the plate shall be unacceptable. Reheat treatment and retesting or retesting only are permitted.

UG-85 HEAT TREATMENT

When plate specification heat treatments are not performed by the material manufacturer, they shall be performed by, or be under the control of, the fabricator who shall then place the letter "T" following the letter "G" in the Mill plate marking (see SA-20) to indicate that the heat treatments required by the material specification have been performed. The fabricator shall also document in accordance with UG-93(b) that the specified heat treatment has been performed.

UCS-85, UHT-5(e), and UHT-81 provide requirements for heat treatment of test specimens.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UG-90 GENERAL

(a) The inspection and testing of pressure vessels to be marked with the Code U Symbol and the testing of vessels to be marked with the Code UM Symbol shall conform to the general requirements for inspection and testing in the following paragraphs and in addition to the specific requirements for *Inspection and Tests* given in the applicable Parts of Subsections B and C.

(b) The Manufacturer has the responsibility of assuring that the quality control, the detailed examinations, and the tests required by this Division are performed. The Manufacturer shall perform his specified duties. See

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UG-92 and 10-15. Some, but not all, of these responsibilities, which are defined in the applicable rules, are summarized as follows:

(1) the Certificate of Authorization from the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee authorizing the Manufacturer to fabricate the class of vessel being constructed [UG-117(a)];

(2) the drawings and design calculations for the vessel or part [10-5 and 10-15(d)];

(3) identification for all material used in the fabrication of the vessel or part (UG-93);

(4) securing Partial Data Reports [UG-120(c)];

(5) access for the Inspector in accordance with UG-92 and 10-15;

(6) examination of all materials before fabrication to make certain they have the required thickness, to detect defects [UG-93(d)], to make certain the materials are permitted by this Division (UG-4), and that traceability (UG-77) to the material identification (UG-93) has been maintained;

(7) documentation of impact tests when such tests are required (UF-5, UCS-66, UHA-51, UHT-6, and ULT-5);

(8) concurrence of the Inspector prior to any repairs (UG-78, UW-38, UF-37, and UF-38);

(9) examination of the shell and head sections to confirm they have been properly formed to the specified shapes within the permissible tolerances (UG-79, UG-80, UG-81, UF-27, and UF-29);

(10) qualification of the welding and/or brazing procedures before they are used in fabrication [UG-84(h), UW-28(b), and UB-31];

(11) qualification of welders and welding operators and brazers before using the welders or brazers in production work (UW-29, UW-48, UB-32, and UB-43);

(12) examination of all parts prior to joining to make certain they have been properly fitted for welding or brazing and that the surfaces to be joined have been cleaned and the alignment tolerances are maintained (UW-31, UW-32, UW-33, and UB-17);

(13) examination of parts as fabrication progresses, for material marking (UG-94), that defects are not evident (UG-95), and that dimensional geometries are maintained (UG-96 and UF-30);

(14) provision of controls to assure that all required heat treatments are performed (UW-2, UW-10, UG-85, UF-31, and 10-11);

(15) provision of records of nondestructive testing examinations performed on the vessel or vessel parts. This shall include retaining the radiographic film if radiographic examinations are performed (UW-51, UW-52, and 10-10);

(16) making the required hydrostatic or pneumatic test and having the required inspection performed during such test (UG-99, UG-100, and UW-50);

(17) applying the required stamping and/or nameplate to the vessel and making certain it is applied to proper vessel (UG-116, UG-118, and UG-119);

(18) preparing required Manufacturer's Data Report and having it certified by the Inspector (UG-120);

(19) providing for retention of radiographs (UW-51), ultrasonic test reports (12-4), and Manufacturer's Data Reports (UG-120).

(c)(1) The Inspector shall make all inspections specifically required of him plus such other inspections as he believes are necessary to enable him to certify that all vessels which he authorizes to be stamped with the Code Symbol have been designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this Division. Some, but not all, of the required inspections and verifications, which are defined in the applicable rules, are summarized as follows:

(a) verifying that the Manufacturer has a valid Certificate of Authorization [UG-117(a)] and is working to a Quality Control System [UG-117(e)];

(b) verifying that the applicable design calculations are available [U-2(b), U-2(c), 10-5, and 10-15(d)];

(c) verifying that materials used in the construction of the vessel comply with the requirements of UG-4 through UG-14 (UG-93);

(d) verifying that all welding and brazing procedures have been qualified (UW-28, UW-47, and UB-42);

(e) verifying that all welders, welding operators, brazers, and brazing operators have been qualified (UW-29, UW-48, and UB-43);

(f) verifying that the heat treatments, including PWHT, have been performed (UG-85, UW-10, UW-40, UW-49, and UF-52);

(g) verifying that material imperfections repaired by welding were acceptably repaired [UG-78, UW-52(d)(2)(c), UF-37, and UF-47(c)];

(h) verifying that weld defects were acceptably repaired [UW-51(c) and UW-52(c)];

(i) verifying that required nondestructive examinations, impact tests, and other tests have been performed and that the results are acceptable (UG-84, UG-93, UW-50, UW-51, UW-52, and UB-44);

(j) making a visual inspection of vessel to confirm that the material identification numbers have been properly transferred (UG-77 and UG-94);

(k) making a visual inspection of the vessel to confirm that there are no material or dimensional defects (UG-95, UG-96, and UG-97);

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(l) performing internal and external inspections and witnessing the hydrostatic or pneumatic tests (UG-96, UG-97, UG-99, UG-100, and UG-101);

(m) verifying that the required marking is provided (UG-115) and that any nameplate has been attached to the proper vessel;

(n) signing the Certificate of Inspection on the Manufacturer's Data Report when the vessel, to the best of his knowledge and belief, is in compliance with all the provisions of this Division.

(2) When multiple, duplicate pressure vessel fabrication makes it impracticable for the Inspector to personally perform each of his required duties,[31] the Manufacturer, in collaboration with the Inspector, shall prepare an inspection and quality control procedure setting forth, in complete detail, the method by which the requirements[31] of this Division will be maintained. This procedure shall be included in the Manufacturer's written Quality Control System [see UG-117(e)]. This procedure shall be submitted to and shall have received the acceptance of the inspection agency. It shall then be submitted by the inspection agency for written acceptance by the legal jurisdiction concerned [see UG-117(f)] and by an ASME Designee. The joint reviews required by UG-117(f) shall include an ASME Designee. The inspection procedure shall be used in the plant of the named Manufacturer by the inspection agency submitting it, and shall be carried out by an Inspector in the employ of that inspection agency. Any changes in this inspection and quality control procedure which affect the requirements of this Division are subject to review and acceptance by the parties required for a joint review. The Data Report for such a vessel shall include under "Remarks" the statement: "Constructed under the provisions of UG-90(c)(2)."

UG-91 THE INSPECTOR

(a) All references to *Inspectors* throughout this Division mean the Authorized Inspector as defined in this paragraph. All inspections required by this Division of Section VIII shall be:

(1) by an Inspector regularly employed by an ASME accredited Authorized Inspection Agency,[32] i.e., the inspection organization of a state or municipality of the United States, a Canadian province, or an insurance company authorized to write boiler and pressure vessel insurance, except that

(2) inspections may be by the regularly employed user's Inspector in the case of a User-Manufacturer which manufactures pressure vessels exclusively for its own use and not for resale [see UG-116(a)(1)].

Except as permitted in (2) above, the Inspector shall not be in the employ of the Manufacturer. All Inspectors shall have been qualified by a written examination under the rules of any state of the United States or province of Canada which has adopted the Code.

(b) In addition to the duties specified, the Inspector has the duty to monitor the Manufacturer's Quality Control System as required in Appendix 10.

UG-92 ACCESS FOR INSPECTOR

The Manufacturer of the vessel shall arrange for the Inspector to have free access to such parts of all plants as are concerned with the supply or manufacture of materials for the vessel, when so requested. The Inspector shall be permitted free access, at all times while work on the vessel is being performed, to all parts of the Manufacturer's shop that concern the construction of the vessel and to the site of field erected vessels during the period of assembly and testing of the vessel. The Manufacturer shall keep the Inspector informed of the progress of the work and shall notify him reasonably in advance when vessels will be ready for any required tests or inspections.

UG-93 INSPECTION OF MATERIALS

(a) Except as otherwise provided in UG-4(b), UG-10, UG-11, or UG-15, requirements for acceptance of materials furnished by the material manufacturer or material supplier in complete compliance with a material specification of Section II shall be as follows.

(1) For plates,[2] the vessel Manufacturer shall obtain 04
the material test report or certificate of compliance as provided for in the material specification and the Inspector shall examine the Material Test Report or certificate of compliance and shall determine that it represents the material and meets the requirements of the material specification.

(2) For all other product forms, the material shall be accepted as complying with the material specification if the material specification provides for the marking of each piece with the specification designation, including the grade, type, and class if applicable, and each piece is so marked.

---

[31] See UG-90(b) and UG-90(c)(1) for summaries of the responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the duties of the Inspector.

[32] Whenever *Authorized Inspection Agency* or *AIA* is used in this Code, it shall mean an Authorized Inspection Agency accredited by ASME in accordance with the requirements in the latest edition of ASME QAI-1.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(3) If the material specification does not provide for the marking of each piece as indicated in (a)(2) above, the material shall be accepted as complying with the material specification provided the following requirements are met.

(a) Each bundle, lift, or shipping container is marked with the specification designation, including the grade, type, and class if applicable by the material manufacturer or supplier.

(b) The handling and storage of the material by the vessel Manufacturer shall be documented in his Quality Control System such that the Inspector can determine that it is the material identified in (a)(3)(a) above. Traceability to specific lot, order, or heat is not required. Traceability is required only to material specification and grade and type and class, if applicable.

(4) For pipe or tube where the length is not adequate for the complete marking in accordance with the material specification or not provided in accordance with (a)(3) above, the material shall be acceptable as complying with the material specification provided the following are met:

(a) a coded marking is applied to each piece of pipe or tube by the material manufacturer or material supplier; and

(b) the coded marking applied by the material manufacturer or material supplier is traceable to the specification designation, including the grade, type, and class if applicable.

(b) Except as otherwise provided in UG-4(b), UG-10, UG-11, or UG-15, when some requirements of a material specification of Section II have been completed by other than the material manufacturer [see UG-84(d) and UG-85], then the vessel Manufacturer shall obtain supplementary material test reports or certificates of compliance and the Inspector shall examine these documents and shall determine that they represent the material and meet the requirements of the material specification.

(c) When requirements or provisions of this Division applicable to materials exceed or supplement the requirements of the material specification of Section II (see UG-24, UG-84, and UG-85), then the vessel Manufacturer shall obtain supplementary material test reports or certificates of compliance and the Inspector shall examine these documents and shall determine that they represent the material and meet the requirements or provisions of this Division.

(d) All materials to be used in constructing a pressure vessel shall be examined before fabrication for the purpose of detecting, as far as possible, imperfections which would affect the safety of the vessel.

(1) Particular attention should be given to cut edges and other parts of rolled plate which would disclose the existence of serious laminations, shearing cracks, and other imperfections.

(2) All materials that are to be tested in accordance with the requirements of UG-84 shall be inspected for surface cracks.

(3) When a pressure part is to be welded to a flat plate thicker than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) to form a corner joint under the provision of UW-13(e), the weld joint preparation in the flat plate shall be examined before welding as specified in (d)(4) below by either the magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods. After welding, both the peripheral edge of the flat plate and any remaining exposed surface of the weld joint preparation shall be reexamined by the magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods as specified in (d)(4) below. When the plate is nonmagnetic, only the liquid penetrant method shall be used. The requirements of this paragraph shall not apply to those joints when 80% or more of the pressure load is carried by tubes, stays, or braces.

(4) For Fig. UW-13.2 the weld joint preparation and the peripheral edges of flat plate forming a corner joint shall be examined as follows:

(a) the weld edge preparation of typical weld joint preparations in the flat plate as shown in sketches (b), (c), (d), (f), and (n);

(b) the outside peripheral edge of the flat plate after welding as shown in sketches (a), (b), (c), and (d);

(c) the outside peripheral edge of the flat plate after welding, as shown in sketches (e), (f), and (g) if the distance from the edge of the completed weld to the peripheral edge of the flat plate is less than the thickness of the flat plate such as defined in UG-34(b);

(d) the inside peripheral surface of the flat plate after welding as shown in sketches (m) and (n);

(e) no examination is required on the flat plate as shown in sketches (h), (i), (j), (k), and (l).

(e) The Inspector shall assure himself that the thickness and other dimensions of material comply with the requirements of this Division.

(f) The Inspector shall satisfy himself that the inspection and marking requirements of UG-24 have been complied with for those castings assigned a casting quality factor exceeding 80%.

UG-94 MARKING ON MATERIALS

The Inspector shall inspect materials used in the construction to see that they bear the identification required by the applicable material specification, except as otherwise provided in UG-4(b), UG-10, UG-11, UG-15, or UG-93. Should the identifying marks be obliterated or the material be divided into two or more parts, the marks

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

shall be properly transferred by the manufacturer as provided in UG-77(a). See UG-85.

UG-95 EXAMINATION OF SURFACES DURING FABRICATION

As fabrication progresses, all materials used in the construction shall be examined for imperfections that have been uncovered during fabrication as well as to determine that the work has been done properly.

UG-96 DIMENSIONAL CHECK OF COMPONENT PARTS

(a) The Manufacturer shall examine the pressure retaining parts to make certain they conform to the prescribed shape and meet the thickness requirements after forming. The Manufacturer of the vessel shall furnish accurately formed templates as required by the Inspector for verification. See UG-80.

(b) Before attaching nozzles, manhole frames, nozzle reinforcement and other appurtenances to the inside or outside of the vessel they shall be examined to make certain they properly fit the vessel curvature. See UG-82.

(c) The Inspector shall satisfy himself that the above dimensional requirements have been met. This shall include making such dimensional measurements as he considers necessary.

UG-97 INSPECTION DURING FABRICATION

(a) When conditions permit entry into the vessel, as complete an examination as possible shall be made before final closure.

(b) The Inspector shall make an external inspection of the completed vessel at the time of the final hydrostatic test or pneumatic test.

(c) All welds, including the nozzle welds, of homogeneously lead-lined vessels shall be visually inspected on the inside prior to application of lining. A visual examination of the lining shall be made after completion to assure that there are no imperfections which might impair the integrity of the lining and subject the vessel to corrosion effects.

UG-98 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WORKING PRESSURE

UG-98(a) The maximum allowable working pressure for a vessel is the maximum pressure permissible at the top of the vessel in its normal operating position at the designated coincident temperature specified for that pressure. It is the least of the values found for maximum allowable working pressure for any of the essential parts of the vessel by the principles given in (b) below, and adjusted for any difference in static head that may exist between the part considered and the top of the vessel. (See 3-2.)

UG-98(b) The maximum allowable working pressure for a vessel part is the maximum internal or external pressure, including the static head thereon, as determined by the rules and formulas in this Division, together with the effect of any combination of loadings listed in UG-22 which are likely to occur, for the designated coincident temperature, excluding any metal thickness specified as corrosion allowance. See UG-25.

UG-98(c) Maximum allowable working pressure may be determined for more than one designated operating temperature, using for each temperature the applicable allowable stress value.

UG-99 STANDARD HYDROSTATIC TEST

(a) A hydrostatic test shall be conducted on all vessels after:

(1) all fabrication has been completed, except for operations which could not be performed prior to the test such as weld end preparation [see U-1(e)(1)(a)], cosmetic grinding on the base material which does not affect the required thickness; and

(2) all examinations have been performed, except those required after the test.

The completed vessels, except those tested in accordance with the requirements of UG-100 and UG-101, shall have satisfactorily passed the hydrostatic test prescribed in this paragraph.

(b) Except as otherwise permitted in (a) above and 27-4, vessels designed for internal pressure shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure which at every point in the vessel is at least equal to 1.3 times the maximum allowable working pressure[33] to be marked on the vessel multiplied by the lowest ratio (for the materials of which the vessel is constructed) of the stress value S for the test temperature on the vessel to the stress value S for the design temperature (see UG-21). All loadings that may exist during this test shall be given consideration.

(c) A hydrostatic test based on a calculated pressure may be used by agreement between the user and the manufacturer. The hydrostatic test pressure at the top of

[33] The maximum allowable working pressure may be assumed to be the same as the design pressure when calculations are not made to determine the maximum allowable working pressure.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

the vessel shall be the minimum of the test pressures calculated by multiplying the basis for calculated test pressure as defined in 3-2 for each pressure element by 1.3 and reducing this value by the hydrostatic head on that element. When this pressure is used, the Inspector shall reserve the right to require the manufacturer or the designer to furnish the calculations used for determining the hydrostatic test pressure for any part of the vessel.

(d) The requirements of (b) above represent the minimum standard hydrostatic test pressure required by this Division. The requirements of (c) above represent a special test based on calculations. Any intermediate value of pressure may be used. This Division does not specify an upper limit for hydrostatic test pressure. However, if the hydrostatic test pressure is allowed to exceed, either intentionally or accidentally, the value determined as prescribed in (c) above to the degree that the vessel is subjected to visible permanent distortion, the Inspector shall reserve the right to reject the vessel.

(e) Combination units [see UG-19(a) and UG-21] shall be tested by one of the following methods.

(1) Pressure chambers of combination units that have been designed to operate independently shall be hydrostatically tested as separate vessels, that is, each chamber shall be tested without pressure in the adjacent chamber. If the common elements of a combination unit are designed for a larger differential pressure than the higher maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the adjacent chambers, the hydrostatic test shall subject the common elements to at least their design differential pressure, corrected for temperature as in (b) above, as well as meet the requirements of (b) or (c) above for each independent chamber.

(2) When pressure chambers of combination units have their common elements designed for the maximum differential pressure that can possibly occur during startup, operation, and shutdown, and the differential pressure is less than the higher pressure in the adjacent chambers, the common elements shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure of at least 1.3 times the differential pressure to be marked on the unit, corrected for temperature as in UG-99(b).

Following the test of the common elements and their inspection as required by (g) below, the adjacent chambers shall be hydrostatically tested simultaneously [see (b) or (c) above]. Care must be taken to limit the differential pressure between the chambers to the pressure used when testing the common elements.

The vessel stamping and the vessel Data Report must describe the common elements and their limiting differential pressure. See UG-116(j) and UG-120(b).

(f) Single-wall vessels designed for a vacuum or partial vacuum only, and chambers of multichamber vessels designed for a vacuum or partial vacuum only, shall be subjected to an internal hydrostatic test or when a hydrostatic test is not practicable, to a pneumatic test in accordance with the provisions of UG-100. Either type of test shall be made at a pressure not less than 1.3 times the difference between normal atmospheric pressure and the minimum design internal absolute pressure.

(g) Following the application of the hydrostatic test pressure, an inspection shall be made of all joints and connections. This inspection shall be made at a pressure not less than the test pressure divided by 1.3. Except for leakage that might occur at temporary test closures for those openings intended for welded connections, leakage is not allowed at the time of the required visual inspection. Leakage from temporary seals shall be directed away so as to avoid masking leaks from other joints.

The visual inspection of joints and connections for leaks at the test pressure divided by 1.3 may be waived provided:

(1) a suitable gas leak test is applied;

(2) substitution of the gas leak test is by agreement reached between Manufacturer and Inspector;

(3) all welded seams which will be hidden by assembly be given a visual examination for workmanship prior to assembly;

(4) the vessel will not contain a "lethal" substance.

(h) Any nonhazardous liquid at any temperature may be used for the hydrostatic test if below its boiling point. Combustible liquids having a flash point less than 110°F (43°C), such as petroleum distillates, may be used only for near atmospheric temperature tests. It is recommended that the metal temperature during hydrostatic test be maintained at least 30°F (17°C) above the minimum design metal temperature, but need not exceed 120°F (48°C), to minimize the risk of brittle fracture. [See UG-20 and General Note (6) to Fig. UCS-66.2.] The test pressure shall not be applied until the vessel and its contents are at about the same temperature. If the test temperature exceeds 120°F (48°C), it is recommended that inspection of the vessel required by (g) above be delayed until the temperature is reduced to 120°F (48°C) or less.

CAUTION: A small liquid relief valve set to $1\frac{1}{3}$ times the test pressure is recommended for the pressure test system, in case a vessel, while under test, is likely to be warmed up materially with personnel absent.

(i) Vents shall be provided at all high points of the vessel in the position in which it is to be tested to purge possible air pockets while the vessel is filling.

(j) Before applying pressure, the test equipment shall be examined to see that it is tight and that all low-pressure filling lines and other appurtenances that should not be subjected to the test pressure have been disconnected.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(k) Vessels, except for those in lethal service, may be painted or otherwise coated either internally or externally, and may be lined internally, prior to the pressure test. However, the user is cautioned that such painting/coating/lining may mask leaks that would otherwise have been detected during the pressure test.

UG-100 PNEUMATIC TEST[34] (SEE UW-50)

(a) Subject to the provisions of UG-99(a)(1) and (a)(2), a pneumatic test prescribed in this paragraph may be used in lieu of the standard hydrostatic test prescribed in UG-99 for vessels:

(1) that are so designed and/or supported that they cannot safely be filled with water;

(2) not readily dried, that are to be used in services where traces of the testing liquid cannot be tolerated and the parts of which have, where possible, been previously tested by hydrostatic pressure to the pressure required in UG-99.

(b) Except for enameled vessels, for which the pneumatic test pressure shall be at least equal to, but need not exceed, the maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the vessel, the pneumatic test pressure shall be at least equal to 1.1 times the maximum allowable working pressure to be stamped on the vessel multiplied by the lowest ratio (for the materials of which the vessel is constructed) of the stress value S for the test temperature of the vessel to the stress value S for the design temperature (see UG-21). In no case shall the pneumatic test pressure exceed 1.1 times the basis for calculated test pressure as defined in 3-2.

(c) The metal temperature during pneumatic test shall be maintained at least 30°F (17°C) above the minimum design metal temperature to minimize the risk of brittle fracture. [See UG-20 and General Note (6) to Fig. UCS-66.2.]

(d) The pressure in the vessel shall be gradually increased to not more than one-half of the test pressure. Thereafter, the test pressure shall be increased in steps of approximately one-tenth of the test pressure until the required test pressure has been reached. Then the pressure shall be reduced to a value equal to the test pressure divided by 1.1 and held for a sufficient time to permit inspection of the vessel. Except for leakage that might occur at temporary test closures for those openings intended for welded connections, leakage is not allowed at the time of the required visual inspection. Leakage from temporary seals shall be directed away so as to avoid masking leaks from other joints.

The visual inspection of the vessel at the required test pressure divided by 1.1 may be waived provided:

(1) a suitable gas leak test is applied;

(2) substitution of the gas leak test is by agreement reached between Manufacturer and Inspector;

(3) all welded seams which will be hidden by assembly be given a visual examination for workmanship prior to assembly;

(4) the vessel will not contain a "lethal" substance.

(e) Vessels, except for those in lethal service, may be painted or otherwise coated either internally or externally, and may be lined internally, prior to the pressure test. However, the user is cautioned that such painting/coating/lining may mask leaks that would otherwise have been detected during the pressure test.

UG-101 PROOF TESTS TO ESTABLISH MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WORKING PRESSURE

UG-101(a) General

UG-101(a)(1) The maximum allowable working pressure for vessels or vessel parts for which the strength cannot be computed with a satisfactory assurance of accuracy (see U-2) shall be established in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph, using one of the test procedures applicable to the type of loading and to the material used in construction.

UG-101(a)(2) Provision is made in these rules for two types of tests to determine the internal maximum allowable working pressure:

(a) tests based on yielding of the part to be tested. These tests are limited to materials with a ratio of minimum specified yield to minimum specified ultimate strength of 0.625 or less.

(b) tests based on bursting of the part.

UG-101(a)(3) Safety of testing personnel should be given serious consideration when conducting proof tests, and particular care should be taken during bursting tests in (m) below.

UG-101(b) The tests in these paragraphs may be used only for the purpose of establishing the maximum allowable working pressure of those elements or component parts for which the thickness cannot be determined by

[34] In some cases it is desirable to test vessels when partly filled with liquids. For such vessels a combined hydrostatic and pneumatic test may be used as an alternative to the pneumatic test of this paragraph, provided the liquid level is set so that the maximum stress including the stress produced by pneumatic pressure at any point in the vessel (usually near the bottom) or in the support attachments, does not exceed 1.3 times the allowable stress value of the material multiplied by the applicable joint efficiency. After setting the liquid level to meet this condition, the test is conducted as prescribed in (b) and (c) above.

Air or gas is hazardous when used as a testing medium. It is therefore recommended that special precautions be taken when air or gas is used for test purposes.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

means of the design rules given in this Division. The maximum allowable working pressure of all other elements or component parts shall not be greater than that determined by means of the applicable design rules.

Tests to establish the maximum allowable working pressure of vessels, or vessel parts, shall be witnessed by and be acceptable to the Inspector, as indicated by his signature on the Manufacturer's report of the test. The report shall include sufficient detail to describe the test, the instrumentation and the methods of calibration used, and the results obtained. The report shall be made available to the Inspector for each application [see U-2(b) and UG-90(2)].

UG-101(c) The vessel or vessel part for which the maximum allowable working pressure is to be established shall not previously have been subjected to a pressure greater than 1.3 times the desired or anticipated maximum allowable working pressure, adjusted for operating temperature as provided in (k) below.

UG-101(d) Duplicate and Similar Parts. When the maximum allowable working pressure of a vessel or vessel part has been established by a proof test, duplicate parts, or geometrically similar parts, that meet all of the requirements in (d)(1) or (d)(2) below, need not be proof tested but shall be given a hydrostatic pressure test in accordance with UG-99, or a pneumatic pressure test in accordance with UG-100, except as otherwise provided in UCI-101, and UCD-101.

UG-101(d)(1) Duplicate Parts. All of the following requirements shall be met in order to qualify a part as a duplicate of the part that had been proof tested:

(a) same basic design configuration and type of construction;

(b) the material of the duplicate part is either:

(1) the same material specifications:

(a) alloy;

(b) grade, class;

(c) type, form;

(d) heat treatment; or

(2) the same or closely similar material when only the material specification, the alloy, grade, or form is different, provided the material meets the following additional requirements:

(a) has allowable stress in tension equal to or greater than the material used in the proof tested part at the test temperature [see (k) below];

(b) has the same P-Number (Section IX);

(c) for carbon or low alloy steels (Part UCS), has the same or tougher material grouping in UCS-66, Fig. UCS-66, and Notes;

(c) the nominal dimensions, diameter, or width and height, of the duplicate parts shall be the same, and the corresponding nominal thicknesses shall be the same as those used in the proof test. The length shall not be longer than that proof tested.

(d) heat treatment shall be the same as performed on the original part that was tested;

(e) the MAWP shall be calculated according to (e) below;

(f) when there are permissible deviations from the original part that was proof tested, a supplement to the original Proof Test Report shall be prepared that states and evaluates each deviation.

UG-101(d)(2) Geometrically Similar Parts. The maximum allowable working pressure for geometrically similar parts may be established by a series of proof tests that uniformly cover the complete range of sizes, pressure, or other variables by interpolation from smooth curves plotted from the results of the tests.[35]

(a) Sufficient tests shall be performed to provide at least five data points that are at increments that are within 20% to 30% of the range covered.

(b) The curves shall be based on the lower bound of the test data.

(c) Extrapolation is not permitted.

UG-101(e) Proof test methods UG-101(l), (m), (n), and (o) below establish a pressure at which the test is terminated. The results of the test are recorded in a Proof Test Report according to UG-101(b).

UG-101(e)(1) The MAWP for the first duplicate part, as defined in UG-101(d), to be put into service, shall be calculated according to the equations given in the proof test method applied.

The requirements for NDE are given in UG-24 and UW-12. Other requirements are based on thickness or material. These apply to parts which are to be put into service. It is not necessary to examine the part actually tested.

UG-101(e)(2) For subsequent duplicate parts, the MAWP may be recalculated for a different extent of NDE in a supplement to the original Proof Test Report.

UG-101(e)(3) The effect of the location of a weld joint may be evaluated and included in the Proof Test Report.

UG-101(f) A retest shall be allowed on a duplicate vessel or vessel part if errors or irregularities are obvious in the test results.

UG-101(g) In tests for determination of governing stresses, sufficient locations on the vessel shall be investigated to ensure that measurements are taken at the most critical areas. As a check that the measurements are being

[35] Examples of the use of modeling techniques are found in UG-127(a)(1)(b)(2) and UG-131(d)(2)(b), or refer to text books on the subject.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

taken on the most critical areas, the Inspector may require a brittle coating to be applied on all areas of probable high stress concentrations in the test procedures given in (n) and (o) below. The surfaces shall be suitably cleaned before the coating is applied in order to obtain satisfactory adhesion. The technique shall be suited to the coating material.

NOTE: Strains should be measured as they apply to membrane stresses and to bending stresses within the range covered by UG-23(c).

UG-101(h) Application of Pressure. In the procedures given in (l), (n), and (o) below, the Displacement Measurement Test, the hydrostatic pressure in the vessel or vessel part shall be increased gradually until approximately one-half the anticipated working pressure is reached. Thereafter, the test pressure shall be increased in steps of approximately one-tenth or less of the anticipated maximum allowable working pressure until the pressure required by the test procedure is reached. The pressure shall be held stationary at the end of each increment for a sufficient time to allow the observations required by the test procedure to be made, and shall be released to zero to permit determination of any permanent strain after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain or displacement over the previous equal pressure increment.

UG-101(i) Corrosion Allowance. The test procedures in this paragraph give the maximum allowable working pressure for the thickness of material tested. The thickness of the pressure vessel that is to be proof tested should be the corroded thickness. When this is not practical and when the thickness as tested includes extra thickness as provided in UG-25, the maximum allowable working pressure at which the vessel shall be permitted to operate shall be determined by multiplying the maximum allowable working pressure obtained from the test by the ratio

$$(t - c)^n / t^n$$

where

t = nominal thickness of the material at the weakest point

c = allowance added for corrosion, erosion, and abrasion

n = 1 for curved surfaces such as parts of cylinders, spheres, cones with angle $\alpha \leq 60$ deg; for stayed surfaces similar to those described in UW-19(b) and (c); and parts whose stress due to bending is ≤67% of the total stress

n = 2 for flat or nearly flat surfaces, such as flat sides, flanges, or cones with angle $\alpha > 60$ deg (except for stayed surfaces noted above) unless it can be shown that the stress due to bending at the limiting location is <67% of the total stress

UG-101(j) Determination of Yield Strength and Tensile Strength

UG-101(j)(1) For proof tests based on yielding, (l), (n), or (o) below, the yield strength (or yield point for those materials which exhibit that type of yield behavior indicated by a "sharp-kneed" portion of the stress-strain diagram) of the material in the part tested shall be determined in accordance with the method prescribed in the applicable material specification and as described in ASTM E 8, Tension Testing of Metallic Materials. For proof tests based on bursting, [see (m) below], the tensile strength instead of the yield strength of the material in the part tested shall be similarly determined.

UG-101(j)(2) Yield or tensile strength so determined shall be the average from three or four specimens cut from the part tested after the test is completed. The specimens shall be cut from a location where the stress during the test has not exceeded the yield strength. The specimens shall not be flame cut because this might affect the strength of the material. If yield or tensile strength is not determined by test specimens from the pressure part tested, alternative methods are given in (l), (m), (n), and (o) below for evaluation of proof test results to establish the maximum allowable working pressure.

UG-101(j)(3) When excess stock from the same piece of wrought material is available and has been given the same stress relieving heat treatment as the pressure part, the test specimens may be cut from this excess stock. The specimen shall not be removed by flame cutting or any other method involving sufficient heat to affect the properties of the specimen. When the sheet material is used, test specimens obtained from another piece cut from the same coil of sheet used in the proof tested component meet the requirements of this paragraph.

UG-101(k) Maximum Allowable Working Pressure at Higher Temperatures. The maximum allowable working pressure for vessels and vessel parts that are to operate at temperatures at which the allowable stress value of the material is less than at the test temperature shall be determined by the following formula:

$$P_0 = P_t \frac{S}{S_2}$$

where

P_0 = maximum allowable working pressure at the design temperature

P_t = maximum allowable working pressure at test temperature

S = maximum allowable stress value at the design temperature, as given in the tables referenced in UG-23 but not to exceed S_2

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

S_2 = maximum allowable stress value for the material used in the test at test temperature as given in the tables referenced in UG-23

UG-101(l) Brittle-Coating Test Procedure

04 *UG-101(l)(1)* Subject to the limitations of (a)(2)(a) above, this procedure may be used only for vessels and vessel parts under internal pressure, constructed of materials having a definitely determinable yield point (see SA-370, 13.1). The component parts that require proof testing shall be coated with a brittle coating in accordance with (g) above. Pressure shall be applied in accordance with (h) above. The parts being proof tested shall be examined between pressure increments for signs of yielding as evidenced by flaking of the brittle coating, or by the appearance of strain lines. The application of pressure shall be stopped at the first sign of yielding, or if desired, at some lower pressure.

UG-101(l)(2) The maximum allowable working pressure P in pounds per square inch (MPa) at test temperature for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas.

(a) If the average yield strength is determined in accordance with (j) above,

$$P = 0.5H \frac{S_y}{S_{y\ \text{avg}}}$$

(b) To eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the maximum allowable working pressure.

(1) For carbon steel meeting an acceptable Code specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (480 MPa),

(U.S Customary Units)

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S_\mu}{S_\mu + 5000} \right)$$

(SI Units)

$$P = 0.5H \left(\frac{S_\mu}{S_\mu + 35} \right)$$

(2) For any acceptable material listed in this Division,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped, psi (kPa)

S_y = specified minimum yield strength at room temperature, psi (kPa)

$S_{y\ \text{avg}}$ = actual average yield strength from test specimens at room temperature, psi (kPa)

S_μ = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature, psi (kPa)

When the formula in (l)(2)(b)(1) or (l)(2)(b)(2) above is used, the material in the pressure part shall have had no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal.

The maximum allowable working pressure at other temperatures shall be determined as provided in (k) above.

UG-101(m) Bursting Test Procedure

UG-101(m)(1) This procedure may be used for vessels or vessel parts under internal pressure when constructed of any material permitted to be used under the rules of this Division. The maximum allowable working pressure of any component part proof tested by this method shall be established by a hydrostatic test to failure by rupture of a full-size sample of such pressure part. The hydrostatic pressure at which rupture occurs shall be determined. Alternatively, the test may be stopped at any pressure before rupture that will satisfy the requirements for the desired maximum allowable working pressure.

UG-101(m)(2) The maximum allowable working pressure P in pounds per square inch (kilopascals) at test temperature for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas:

(a) parts constructed of materials other than cast materials:

$$P = \frac{B}{4} \times \frac{S_\mu E}{S_{\mu\ \text{avg}}} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{B}{4} \times \frac{S_\mu E}{S_{\mu r}}$$

(b) parts constructed of cast iron — see UCI-101; parts constructed of cast ductile iron — see UCD-101;

(c) parts constructed of cast materials, except cast iron and ductile iron:

$$P = \frac{Bf}{4} \times \frac{S_\mu E}{S_{\mu\ \text{avg}}} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{Bf}{4} \times \frac{S_\mu E}{S_{\mu r}}$$

where

B = bursting test pressure, or hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped

E = efficiency of welded joint, if used (see Table UW-12)

f = casting quality factor as specified in UG-24

S_μ = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

$S_{\mu\ \text{avg}}$ = average actual tensile strength of test specimens at room temperature

$S_{\mu r}$ = maximum tensile strength of range of specification at room temperature

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The maximum allowable working pressure at other temperatures shall be determined as provided in (k) above.

UG-101(n) Strain Measurement Test Procedure

UG-101(n)(1) Subject to limitations of (a)(2)(a) above, this procedure may be used for vessels or vessel parts under internal pressure, constructed of any material permitted to be used under the rules of this Division. Strains shall be measured in the direction of the maximum stress at the most highly stressed parts [see (g) above] by means of strain gages of any type capable of indicating incremental strains to 0.00005 in./in. (0.005%). It is recommended that the gage length be such that the expected maximum strain within the gage length does not exceed the expected average strain within the gage length by more than 10%. The strain gages and the method of attachment shall be shown by test to be reliable and the results documented for a range of strain values that is at least 50% higher than expected, when used with the material surface finish and configuration being considered. [See (e) above.]

UG-101(n)(2) Pressure shall be applied as provided in (h) above. After each increment of pressure has been applied, readings of the strain gages and the hydrostatic pressure shall be taken and recorded. The pressure shall be released and any permanent strain at each gage shall be determined after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in strain for this increment over the previous equal pressure increment. Only one application of each increment of pressure is required.

UG-101(n)(3) Two curves of strain against test pressure shall be plotted for each gage line as the test progresses, one showing the strain under pressure and one showing the permanent strain when the pressure is removed. The test may be discontinued when the test pressure reaches the value H which will, by the formula, justify the desired working pressure, but shall not exceed the pressure at which the plotted points for the most highly strained gage line reaches the value given below for the material used:

(a) 0.2% permanent strain for aluminum-base and nickel-base alloys;

(b) 0.2% permanent strain for carbon low alloy and high alloy steels;

(c) 0.5% strain under pressure for copper-base alloys.

UG-101(n)(4) The maximum allowable working pressure P in pounds per square inch (kilopascals) at test temperature for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas.

(a) If the average yield strength is determined in accordance with (j) above,

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S_y}{S_{y\text{ avg}}}\right)$$

(b) If the actual average yield strength is not determined by test specimens,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure at which the test was stopped in accordance with (n)(3) above

S_y = specified minimum yield strength at room temperature

$S_{y\text{ avg}}$ = actual average yield strength from test specimens at room temperature

The maximum allowable working pressure at other temperatures shall be determined as provided in (k) above.

UG-101(o) Displacement Measurement Test Procedure

UG-101(o)(1) Subject to the limitations of (a)(2)(a) above, this procedure may be used only for vessels and vessel parts under internal pressure, constructed of materials having a definitely determinable yield point (see SA-370, 13.1). Displacement shall be measured at the most highly stressed parts [see (g) above] by means of measuring devices of any type capable of measuring to 0.001 in. (0.02 mm). The displacement may be measured between two diametrically opposed reference points in a symmetrical structure, or between a reference point and a fixed base point. Pressure shall be applied as provided in (h) above. 04

UG-101(o)(2) After each increment of pressure has been applied, readings of the displacement and hydrostatic test pressure shall be taken and recorded. The pressure shall be released and any permanent displacement shall be determined after any pressure increment that indicates an increase in measured displacement for this increment over the previous equal pressure increment. Only one application of each increment is required. Care must be taken to assure that the readings represent only displacements of the parts on which measurements are being made and do not include any slip of the measuring devices or any movement of the fixed base points or of the pressure part as a whole.

UG-101(o)(3) Two curves of displacement against test pressure shall be plotted for each reference point as the test progresses, one showing the displacement under pressure and one showing the permanent displacement when the pressure is removed. The application of pressure shall be stopped when it is evident that the curve through the points representing displacement under pressure has deviated from a straight line.

UG-101(o)(4) The pressure coincident with the proportional limit of the material shall be determined by

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

noting the pressure at which the curve representing displacement under pressure deviates from a straight line. The pressure at the proportional limit may be checked from the curve of permanent displacement by locating the point where the permanent displacement begins to increase regularly with further increases in pressure. Permanent deformation at the beginning of the curve that results from the equalization of stresses and irregularities in the material may be disregarded.

UG-101(o)(5) The maximum allowable working pressure P in pounds per square inch (kilopascals) at test temperature for parts tested under this paragraph shall be computed by one of the following formulas.

(a) If the average yield strength is determined in accordance with (j) above,

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S_y}{S_{y\ \text{avg}}}\right)$$

(b) To eliminate the necessity of cutting tensile specimens and determining the actual yield strength of the material under test, one of the following formulas may be used to determine the maximum allowable working pressure.

(1) For carbon steel, meeting an acceptable Code specification, with a specified minimum tensile strength of not over 70,000 psi (480 MPa),

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S_\mu}{S_\mu + 5000}\right)$$

{SI Units)

$$P = 0.5H\left(\frac{S_\mu}{S_\mu + 35}\right)$$

(2) For any acceptable material listed in this Division,

$$P = 0.4H$$

where

H = hydrostatic test pressure coincident with the proportional limit of the weakest element of the component part tested

S_y = specified minimum yield strength at room temperature

$S_{y\ \text{avg}}$ = actual average yield strength from test specimens at room temperature

S_μ = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

When the formula in (o)(5)(b)(1) or (o)(5)(b)(2) above is used, the material in the pressure part shall have had no appreciable cold working or other treatment that would tend to raise the yield strength above the normal. The maximum allowable working pressure at other temperatures shall be determined as provided in (k) above.

UG-101(p) Procedure for Vessels Having Chambers of Special Shape Subject to Collapse

UG-101(p)(1) Pressure chambers of vessels, portions of which have a shape other than that of a complete circular cylinder or formed head, and also jackets of cylindrical vessels which extend over only a portion of the circumference, which are not fully staybolted as required by UG-28(i), shall withstand without excessive deformation a hydrostatic test of not less than three times the desired maximum allowable working pressure.

UG-101(p)(2) The maximum allowable working pressure at other temperatures shall be determined as provided in (k) above.

UG-102 TEST GAGES

(a) An indicating gage shall be connected directly to the vessel. If the indicating gage is not readily visible to the operator controlling the pressure applied, an additional indicating gage shall be provided where it will be visible to the operator throughout the duration of the test. For large vessels, it is recommended that a recording gage be used in addition to indicating gages.

(b) Dial indicating pressure gages used in testing shall be graduated over a range of about double the intended maximum test pressure, but in no case shall the range be less than $1\frac{1}{2}$ nor more than 4 times that pressure. Digital reading pressure gages having a wider range of pressure may be used provided the readings give the same or greater degree of accuracy as obtained with dial pressure gages.

(c) All gages shall be calibrated against a standard deadweight tester or a calibrated master gage. Gages shall be recalibrated at any time that there is reason to believe that they are in error.

UG-103 NONDESTRUCTIVE TESTING

Where magnetic particle examination is prescribed in this Division it shall be done in accordance with Appendix 6. Where liquid penetrant examination is prescribed it shall be done in accordance with Appendix 8.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UG-115 GENERAL

(a) The marking and certification of all pressure vessels built under this Division shall comply with the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

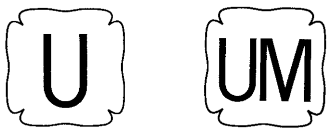


FIG. UG-116 OFFICIAL SYMBOLS FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD

requirements of the following paragraphs and in addition with the requirements for *Marking and Reports* given in the applicable Parts of Subsections B and C.

04 *(b)* The units of measurement used in Manufacturer's Data Reports, Manufacturer's Certificates of Compliance (UG-120), and capacity certification of pressure relief devices, and in marking or stamping pressure vessels, pressure vessel parts, and pressure relief devices, required by this Division, shall be either U.S. Customary units or SI units. However, one system shall be used consistently throughout for construction of pressure vessels. This includes all phases of construction (e.g., materials, design calculations, reports, fabrication, marking, and stamping). See U-4.

04 UG-116 REQUIRED MARKING

(a) Each pressure vessel shall be marked with the following:

(1)(a) the official Code U Symbol shown in Fig. UG-116 sketch (a) on vessels inspected in accordance with the requirements in UG-90 through UG-97 (when inspected by a user's Inspector as provided in UG-91, the word USER shall be marked above the Code Symbol); or

(b) the official UM Symbol shown in Fig. UG-116 sketch (b) on vessels constructed in accordance with the provisions in U-1(j).

(2) name of the Manufacturer of the pressure vessel preceded by the words "certified by";

(3) maximum allowable working pressure[36,37] ________ psi (kPa) at ______°F (°C);

(4) maximum allowable external working pressure[38], ________ psi (kPa) at ______°F (°C);

(5) minimum design metal temperature ______°F at maximum allowable working pressure ______ psi (kPa)[36]

(6) Manufacturer's serial number;

(7) year built.

(b)(1) The type of construction used for the vessel shall be indicated directly under the Code Symbol by applying the appropriate letter(s) as follows: vessels having Category A, B, or C joints (except nozzles or other openings and their attachment) in or joining parts of the vessels:

Type of Construction	Letter(s)
Arc or gas welded	W
Pressure welded (except resistance)	P
Brazed	B
Resistance welded	RES

(2) Vessels embodying a combination of types of construction shall be marked to indicate all of the types of construction used.

(c) When a vessel is intended for special service and the special requirements have been complied with [see UG-120(d)], the appropriate lettering shall be applied as listed below:

Lethal Service	L
Unfired Steam Boiler	UB
Direct Firing	DF

This lettering shall be separated by a hyphen and applied after the lettering of (b) above.

(d) The maximum allowable working pressure and temperature to be indicated on vessels embodying a combination of types of construction and material shall be based on the most restrictive detail of construction and material used.

(e) When a vessel has been radiographed in accordance with UW-11, marking shall be applied under the Code Symbol as follows:

(1) "RT 1" when all pressure-retaining butt welds, other than Category B and C butt welds associated with nozzles and communicating chambers that neither exceed NPS 10 (DN 250) nor $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. (29 mm) wall thickness [except as required by UHT-57(a)], have been radiographically examined for their full length in the manner prescribed in UW-51; full radiography of the above exempted Category B and C butt welds, if performed, may be recorded on the Manufacturer's Data Report; or

(2) "RT 2" when the complete vessel satisfies the requirements of UW-11(a)(5) and when the spot radiography requirements of UW-11(a)(5)(b) have been applied; or

(3) "RT 3" when the complete vessel satisfies the spot radiography requirements of UW-11(b); or

[36] When a pressure vessel is expected to operate at more than one pressure and temperature condition, other values of maximum allowable working pressure with the coincident permissible temperature may be added as required. See UG-20(b).

[37] The maximum allowable working pressure may be assumed to be the same as the design pressure when calculations are not made to determine the maximum allowable working pressure.

[38] The maximum allowable external working pressure is required only when specified as a design condition.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(4) "RT 4" when only part of the complete vessel has satisfied the radiographic requirements of UW-11(a) or where none of the markings "RT 1," "RT 2," or "RT 3" are applicable.

The extent of radiography and the applicable joint efficiencies shall be noted on the Manufacturer's Data Report.

(f)(1) The letters HT shall be applied under the Code Symbol when the complete vessel has been postweld heat treated as provided in UW-10.

(2) The letters PHT shall be applied under the Code Symbol when only part of the complete vessel has been postweld heat treated as provided in UW-10.

The extent of the postweld heat treatment shall be noted on the Manufacturer's Data Report.

(g) The Manufacturer shall have a valid Certificate of Authorization, and, with the acceptance of the Inspector, shall apply the Code Symbol to the vessel, which, together with the final certification [see U-1(j) and UG-120] shall indicate that all requirements of this Division have been met.

(1) Except as provided in (2) below, the Code Symbol shall be applied after the hydrostatic test or pneumatic test.

(2) The Code Symbol may be preapplied to a nameplate. The nameplate may be attached to the vessel after the final fabrication and examination sequence but before the hydrostatic tests or pneumatic test provided the procedure for sequence of stamping is described in the Manufacturer's accepted Quality Control System.

(h) Parts of vessels for which Partial Data Reports are required in UG-120(c) shall be marked by the parts Manufacturer with the following:

(1) the official Code Symbol shown in Fig. UG-116 sketch (a), above the word "PART";

(2) name of the Manufacturer of the part of the pressure vessel preceded by the words "certified by";

(3) the Manufacturer's serial number.

This requirement does not apply to such items as handhole covers, manhole covers and their accessories. [See (l) below.]

(i) All required markings shall be located in a conspicuous place on the vessel, preferably near a manhole or handhole (see M-3).

(j) Either of the following arrangements may be used in marking vessels having two or more independent pressure chambers designed for the same or different operating conditions. Each detachable chamber shall be marked so as to identify it positively with the combined unit.

(1) The marking may be grouped in one location on the vessel provided it is arranged so as to indicate clearly the data applicable to each chamber including the maximum differential pressure for the common elements when this pressure is less than the higher pressure in the adjacent chambers.

(2) The complete required marking may be applied to each independent pressure chamber, provided additional marking, such as stock space, jacket, tubes, or channel box, is used to indicate clearly to which chamber the data apply.

(k) In multiple-chamber vessels, only the parts of those chambers which are required to be built under this Division (see U-1) need bear the required marking. However, it is recommended that Manufacturers indicate on such vessels the working conditions for which the non-Code chambers were designed.

(l) Removable pressure parts shall be permanently marked in a manner to identify them with the vessel or chamber of which they form a part. This does not apply to manhole covers, handhole covers, and their accessory parts provided the marking requirements of UG-11 are met.

UG-117 CERTIFICATES OF AUTHORIZATION AND CODE SYMBOL STAMPS

UG-117(a) A Certificate of Authorization to use the Code U, UM, UV, or UD Symbols shown in Figs. UG-116, UG-129.1, and UG-129.2 will be granted by the Society pursuant to the provisions of the following paragraphs. Stamps for applying the Code Symbol shall be obtained from the Society. For those items to be stamped with the UM, UV, or UD Code Symbol, a Certified Individual shall provide oversight to ensure that each use of the UM, UV, or UD Symbol is in accordance with the requirements of this Division. In addition, each use of the UM, UV, or UD Code Symbol is to be documented on the Certificate of Compliance Form (U-3) for UM vessels, or a Certificate of Conformance Form (UV-1) or (UD-1) as appropriate.

(1) Requirements for the Certified Individual (CI). The *(CI)* shall:

(a) be an employee of the Manufacturer or Assembler.

(b) be qualified and certified by the Manufacturer or Assembler. Qualifications shall include as a minimum:

(1) knowledge of the requirements of this Division for the application of the appropriate Code Symbol;

(2) knowledge of the Manufacturer's or Assembler's quality program;

(3) training commensuate with the scope, complexity, or special nature of the activities to which oversight is to be provided.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(c) have a record, maintained and certified by the Manufacturer or Assembler, containing objective evidence of the qualifications of the *CI* and the training program provided.

(2) Duties of the Certified Individual (CI). The *(CI)* shall:

(a) verify that each item to which the Code Symbol is applied meets all applicable requirements of this Division and has a current capacity certification for the "UV" or "UD" symbols.

(b) for the "UV" or "UD" symbols, review documentation for each lot of items to be stamped to verify, for the lot, that requirements of this Division have been completed.

(c) sign the appropriate Certificate of Compliance/Conformance Form U-3, UV-1, or UD-1 as appropriate prior to release of control of the item.

(3) Certificate of Compliance/Conformance Forms U-3, UV-1, or UD-1.

(a) The appropriate Certificate of Conformance shall be filled out by the Manufacturer or Assembler and signed by the Certified Individual. Multiple duplicate pressure relief devices may be recorded on a single entry provided the devices are identical and produced in the same lot.

(b) The Manufacturer's or Assembler's written quality control program shall include requirements for completion of Certificates of Conformance forms and retention by the Manufacturer or Assembler for a minimum of five years.

UG-117(b) Application for Authorization. Any organization desiring a Certificate of Authorization shall apply to the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee of the Society, on forms issued by the Society,[39] specifying the Stamp desired and the scope of Code activities to be performed. When an organization intends to build Code items in plants in more than one geographical area, either separate applications for each plant or a single application listing the addresses of all such plants may be submitted. Each application shall identify the Authorized Inspection Agency providing Code inspection at each plant. A separate Certificate of Authorization will be prepared and a separate fee charged by the Society for each plant. Applicants for a UM Certificate of Authorization must already hold an S or U Certificate.

Each applicant must agree that each Certificate of Authorization and each Code Symbol Stamp are at all times the property of the Society, that they will be used according to the rules and regulations of this Division of the Code, and that they will be promptly returned to the Society upon demand, or when the applicant discontinues the Code activities covered by his Certificate, or when the Certificate of Authorization has expired and no new Certificate has been issued. The holder of a Code Symbol Stamp shall not allow any other organization to use it.

UG-117(c) Issuance of Authorization. Authorization to use Code Symbol Stamps may be granted or withheld by the Society in its absolute discretion. If authorization is granted, and the proper administrative fee paid, a Certificate of Authorization evidencing permission to use any such Symbol, expiring on the triennial anniversary date thereafter, except for UM Certificates [see (f) below], will be forwarded to the applicant. Each such certificate will identify the Code Symbol to be used, and the type of shop and/or field operations for which authorization is granted (see Appendix DD). The Certificate will be signed by the Chairman of the Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee and the Director of Accreditation.

Six months prior to the date of expiration of any such Certificate, the applicant must apply for a renewal of such authorization and the issuance of a new Certificate. The Society reserves the absolute right to cancel or refuse to renew such authorization, returning, pro rata, fees paid for the unexpired term. The Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee may at any time make such regulations concerning the issuance and use of Code Symbol Stamps as it deems appropriate, and all such regulations shall become binding upon the holders of any valid Certificates of Authorization.

UG-117(d) Inspection Agreement. As a condition of obtaining and maintaining a Certificate of Authorization to use the U or UM Code Symbol Stamps, the Manufacturer must have in force at all times an inspection contract or agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency as defined in UG-91 to provide inspection services. This inspection agreement is a written agreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspection Agency which specifies the terms and conditions under which the inspection services are to be furnished and which states the mutual responsibilities of the Manufacturer and the Authorized Inspectors. A Certificate Holder shall notify the Society whenever his agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency is cancelled or changed to another Authorized Inspection Agency. Neither Manufacturers nor Assemblers of pressure relief valves are required to have an inspection agreement with an Authorized Inspection Agency.

UG-117(e) Quality Control System. Any Manufacturer or Assembler holding or applying for a Certificate of Authorization to use the U, UM, UV, or UD Stamp shall have, and demonstrate, a Quality Control System to

[39] The application forms and related information and instructions may be obtained by writing to the Secretary, ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee, Three Park Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10016.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

establish that all Code requirements, including material, design, fabrication, examination (by the Manufacturer), inspection of vessel and vessel parts (by the Authorized Inspector), pressure testing, and certification will be met. The Quality Control Systems of UM, UV, or UD Stamp holders shall include duties of a Certified Individual, as required by this Division. The Quality Control System shall be in accordance with the requirements of Appendix 10.

UG-117(f) Evaluation for Authorization and Reauthorization. Before issuance or triennial renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the U or UM Stamp, the Manufacturer's facilities and organization are subject to a joint review by a representative of his inspection agency and an individual certified as an ASME Designee who is selected by the concerned legal jurisdiction. A written description or checklist of the Quality Control System which identifies what documents and what procedures the Manufacturer will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review.

A written report to the Society shall be made jointly by the ASME Designee and the Inspection Agency employed by the Manufacturer to do his Code inspection. This report is then reviewed by the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation, which will either issue a Certificate of Authorization or notify the applicant of deficiencies revealed by the review. In such a case, the applicant will be given an opportunity to explain or correct these deficiencies.

Certificates of Authorization will be endorsed to indicate the scope of activity authorized. Authorization may include field operations if the review team determines that these operations are adequately described in the quality control manual, and this determination is accepted by the Society.

Before issuance or renewal of a Certificate of Authorization for use of the UV or UD Stamp, the valve or rupture disk device Manufacturer's or Assembler's facilities and organization are subject to a review by a representative from an ASME designated organization. A written description or checklist of the quality control system, which identifies the documents and procedures the Manufacturer or Assembler will use to produce Code pressure relief valves, shall be available for review. The representative from an ASME designated organization shall make a written report to the Society, where the Subcommittee on Boiler and Pressure Vessel Accreditation will act on it as described above.

The purpose of the review is to evaluate the applicant's Quality Control System and its implementation. The applicant shall demonstrate sufficient administrative and fabrication functions of the system to show that he has the knowledge and ability to produce the Code items covered by his Quality Control System. Fabrication functions may be demonstrated using current work, a mock-up, or a combination of the two.

Certificates of Authorization for use of U, UV, and UD Stamps are valid for 3 years. UM Certificates are valid for 1 year, but reviews after the first and second years of each 3 year period are performed by the Authorized Inspection Agency only.

The Manufacturer may at any time make changes in the Quality Control System concerning the methods of achieving results, subject to acceptance by the Authorized Inspector. For Manufacturers of multiple duplicate pressure vessels,[40] acceptance of these changes by the ASME Designee is also required. For Manufacturers and Assemblers of UV stamped pressure relief valves or UD stamped rupture disk devices, such acceptance shall be by the ASME designated organization.

For those areas where there is no jurisdiction or where a jurisdiction does not choose to select an ASME Designee to review a vessel or vessel parts Manufacturer's facility, that function shall be performed by an ASME Designee selected by ASME. Where the jurisdiction is the Manufacturer's Inspection Agency, the joint review and joint report shall be made by the jurisdiction and an ASME Designee selected by ASME.

UG-117(g) Code Construction Before Receipt of Certificate of Authorization. When used to demonstrate his Quality Control System, a Manufacturer may start fabricating Code items before receipt of a Certificate of Authorization to use a Code Symbol Stamp under the following conditions.

UG-117(g)(1) The fabrication is done with the participation of the Authorized Inspector and is subject to his acceptance.

UG-117(g)(2) The activity is in conformance with the applicant's Quality Control System.

UG-117(g)(3) The item is stamped with the appropriate Code Symbol and certified once the applicant receives his Certificate of Authorization from the Society.

UG-118 METHODS OF MARKING

UG-118(a) The required marking shall be stamped directly on the vessel as provided in (b) and (c) below or shown on a separate nameplate as provided in UG-119.

UG-118(b) When the marking required by UG-116 is applied directly to the vessel, it shall be stamped with letters and figures at least $^5/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) high. Unless

[40] See UG-90(c)(2) for additional requirements applicable to multiple, duplicate pressure vessel fabrication.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

the requirements of (b)(1) or (2) below are met, such stamping shall not be used on vessels constructed of steel plates less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) thick or of nonferrous plates less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) thick but may be used on vessels constructed of thicker plates. The character size may be reduced as shown below for small diameter vessels with space limitations.

Nominal Outside Vessel Diameter		Character Size, Min., in. (mm)
Min., in. (mm)	Max., in. (mm)	
. . .	$3\frac{1}{2}$ (89)	$\frac{1}{8}$ (3)
>$3\frac{1}{2}$ (89)	$4\frac{1}{2}$ (114)	$\frac{3}{16}$ (5)
>$4\frac{1}{2}$ (114)	$6\frac{5}{8}$ (168)	$\frac{1}{4}$ (6)

UG-118(b)(1) For ferrous materials:

(a) the materials shall be limited to P-No. 1 Gr. Nos. 1 and 2;

(b) the minimum nominal plate thickness shall be 0.1875 in. (5 mm), or the minimum nominal pipe wall thickness shall be 0.154 in. (4 mm);

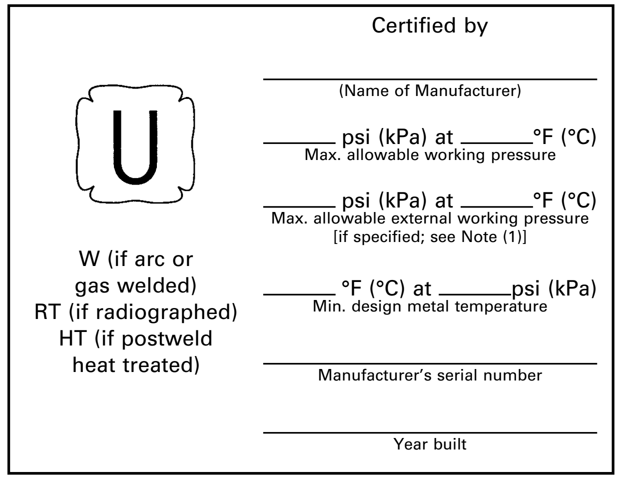
(c) the minimum design metal temperature shall be no colder than −20°F (−29°C);

UG-118(b)(2) for nonferrous materials:

(a) the materials shall be limited to aluminum as follows: SB-209 Alloys 3003, 5083, 5454, and 6061; SB-241 Alloys 3003, 5083, 5086, 5454, 6061, and 6063; and SB-247 Alloys 3003, 5083, and 6061;

(b) the minimum nominal plate thickness shall be 0.249 in. (6.30 mm), or the minimum nominal pipe thickness shall be 0.133 in. (3.38 mm).

04 *UG-118(c)* The stamping shall be arranged substantially as shown in Fig. UG-118 when space permits and shall be located in a conspicuous place on the vessel [see UG-116(i)].



GENERAL NOTE: Information within parentheses is not part of the required marking. Phrases identifying data may be abbreviated; minimum abbreviations shall be MAWP, MDMT, S/N, and year, respectively.

NOTE:
(1) The maximum allowable external working pressure is required only when specified as a design condition.

FIG. UG-118 FORM OF STAMPING 04

UG-119 NAMEPLATES

(a) Nameplates shall be used on vessels except when markings are directly applied in accordance with UG-118. Nameplates shall be metal suitable for the intended service and shall bear the markings called for in UG-116. The marking arrangement shall be substantially as shown in Fig. UG-118. Required nameplates shall be located in a conspicuous place on the vessel [see UG-116(j)].

(b) The nameplate thickness shall be sufficient to resist distortion due to the application of the marking and to be compatible with the method of attachment. The nameplate nominal thickness shall not be less than 0.020 in.

(c) Nameplates may have markings produced by either casting, etching, embossing, debossing, stamping, or engraving, except that the Code Symbol shall be stamped on the nameplate.

(1) The required markings on a nameplate shall be in characters not less than $\frac{5}{32}$ in. (4 mm) high, except that characters for pressure relief device markings may be smaller.

(2) Characters shall be either indented or raised at least 0.004 in. (0.10 mm) and shall be legible and readable.

(d) The nameplate may be marked before it is affixed to the vessel, in which case the Manufacturer shall ensure that the nameplate with the correct marking has been applied to the proper vessel, and the Inspector shall satisfy himself that this has been done.

(e) The nameplate shall be attached to the vessel or to a pad, bracket, or structure which is welded, brazed, or soldered directly to the vessel. The nameplate shall be located within 30 in. (760 mm) of the vessel. Removal shall require the willful destruction of the nameplate, or its attachment system. (See M-3.)

(1) Nameplates may be attached either by welding, brazing, or soldering.

(2) Nameplates may be attached by tamper-resistant mechanical fasteners of suitable metal construction.

(3) Nameplates may be attached with pressure-sensitive acrylic adhesive systems provided that, in addition to the requirements of this paragraph, those of Appendix 18 are met.

(f) An additional nameplate in accordance with (a) through (d) may be installed on the skirt, supports, jacket, or other permanent attachment to a vessel. All data on the additional plate, including the Code Symbol, shall be

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

as required for the mandatory nameplate. The marking need not be witnessed by the Inspector. The additional nameplate shall be marked: "DUPLICATE."

(g) When a nameplate is employed, the Manufacturer's name or identifying trademark, and vessel serial number (or National Board Number, if applicable,) may also be marked directly on the vessel in close proximity to the nameplate attachment. The marking shall be of a visible permanent type that is not detrimental to the vessel, and its location shall be indicated on the Data Report.

(1) If the thickness limitations of UG-118 preclude marking directly on the vessel shell or heads, it may be applied to the skirt, supports, jacket, or other permanent attachment to the vessel.

UG-120 DATA REPORTS

(a) A Data Report shall be filled out on Form U-1 or Form U-1A by the Manufacturer and shall be signed by the Manufacturer and the Inspector for each pressure vessel marked with the Code U Symbol. Same day production of vessels may be reported on a single Form provided all of the following requirements are met:

(1) vessels must be identical;

(2) vessels must be manufactured for stock or for the same user or his designated agent;

(3) serial numbers must be in uninterrupted sequence; and

(4) the Manufacturer's written Quality Control System includes procedures to control the development, distribution, and retention of the Data Reports.

The number of lines on the Data Report used to describe multiple components (e.g., nozzles, shell courses) may be increased or decreased as necessary to provide space to describe each component. If addition of lines used to describe multiple components results in the Data Report exceeding one page, space must be provided for the Manufacturer and Authorized Inspector to initial and date each of the additional pages. Horizontal spacing for information on each line may be altered as necessary. All information must be addressed; however, footnotes described in the remarks block are acceptable, e.g., for multiple cases of "none" or "not applicable."

A copy of the Manufacturer's Data Report shall be furnished to the user or his designated agent and, upon request, to the Inspector. The Manufacturer shall either keep a copy of the Manufacturer's Data Report on file for at least 5 years or the vessel may be registered and the Data Report filed with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43229.

A Manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance on Form U-3 shall be completed and signed by the Manufacturer for each pressure vessel marked with the Code UM Symbol. This Certificate shall be maintained by the Manufacturer for 5 years and a copy made available upon request. Identical vessels up to 1 day's production may be recorded on a single Certificate of Compliance.

(b) Both chambers of combination units must be described on the same Data Report. When the common elements of such units are designed for a differential pressure, this limiting pressure must also be reported.

(c) Partial Data Reports. Data Reports for pressure vessel parts requiring inspection under this Division which are furnished by other than the location of the Manufacturer responsible for the vessel to be marked with the Code Symbol shall be executed on the applicable Partial Data Report, Form U-2 or Form U-2A, by the parts Manufacturer and his Inspector in accordance with the requirements of this Division and shall be forwarded, in duplicate, to the Manufacturer of the completed vessel [see U-2(b)]. Form U-2A may be used for this purpose provided all the applicable information is recorded on this Form; otherwise Form U-2 shall be used. These Partial Data Reports, together with his own inspection, shall be the final Inspector's authority to witness the application of a Code Symbol to the vessel [see UG-90(c)]. When Form U-2 or Form U-2A is used, it shall be attached to the associated Form U-1 or Form U-1A by the Manufacturer of the vessel to be marked with the Code Symbol. Manufacturers with multiple locations, each with its own Certificate of Authorization, may transfer pressure vessel parts from one of its locations to another without Partial Data Reports, provided the Quality Control System describes the method of identification, transfer, and receipt of the parts.

(1) Data Reports for those parts of a pressure vessel which are furnished by a parts Manufacturer to the user of an existing Code vessel as replacement or repair parts shall be executed on Form U-2 or U-2A by the parts Manufacturer and his Inspector in accordance with the requirements of this Division. A copy of the parts Manufacturer's Partial Data Report shall be furnished to the user or his designated agent and maintained in accordance with (a) above.

(2) The parts Manufacturer shall indicate under "Remarks" the extent he has performed any or all of the design functions. When the parts Manufacturer performs only a portion of the design, he shall state which portions of the design he performed.

(3) Same day production of vessel parts may be reported on a single Form U-2 or Form U-2A provided all of the following are met:

(a) vessel parts shall be identical;

(b) Manufacturer's serial numbers must be in uninterrupted sequence; and

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(c) the Manufacturer's written Quality Control System includes procedures to control the development, distribution, and retention of the Partial Data Reports.

(4) For guidance in preparing Partial Data Reports, see Appendix W.

(d) This Division, in paragraphs such as UW-2, UF-1, UF-32(b), UB-1, UB-22, UCS-66, UNF-56, UHA-51, UCL-27, and UHT-6, establishes special requirements to qualify a vessel for certain "special services." (Paragraphs, such as UW-2, prohibit certain types of construction or materials in some special services.) The special services to which special requirements are applicable are classified as follows:

(1) lethal service [for example, see UW-2(a)];

04 *(2)* services below certain temperatures (for example, see UW-2(b), UCS-65, UHA-51, and UHT-6);

(3) unfired steam boiler [for example, see UW-2(c)];

(4) direct firing [for example, see UW-2(d)].

When a vessel is intended for such special services, the special service and the paragraphs of special requirements complied with shall be indicated on the Data Reports.

(e) For sample forms and guidance in their preparation, see Appendix W.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

04 UG-125 GENERAL

(a) All pressure vessels within the Scope of this Division, irrespective of size or pressure, shall be provided with pressure relief devices in accordance with the requirements of UG-125 through UG-137. It is the responsibility of the user to ensure that the required pressure relief devices are properly installed prior to initial operation. These pressure relief devices need not be supplied by the vessel Manufacturer. Unless otherwise defined in this Division, the definitions relating to pressure relief devices in Section 2 of ASME PTC 25 shall apply.

(b) An unfired steam boiler, as defined in U-1(g), shall be equipped with pressure relief devices required by Section I insofar as they are applicable to the service of the particular installation.

(c) All pressure vessels other than unfired steam boilers shall be protected by a pressure relief device that shall prevent the pressure from rising more than 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater, above the maximum allowable working pressure except as permitted in (1) and (2) below. (See UG-134 for pressure settings.)

(1) When multiple pressure relief devices are provided and set in accordance with UG-134(a), they shall prevent the pressure from rising more than 16% or 4 psi (30 kPa), whichever is greater, above the maximum allowable working pressure.

(2) Where an additional hazard can be created by exposure of a pressure vessel to fire or other unexpected sources of external heat, supplemental pressure relief devices shall be installed to protect against excessive pressure. Such supplemental pressure relief devices shall be capable of preventing the pressure from rising more than 21% above the maximum allowable working pressure. [For additional information, see Appendix M, M-14(a)]. The same pressure relief devices may be used to satisfy the capacity requirements of (c) or (c)(1) above and this paragraph provided the pressure setting requirements of UG-134(a) are met.

(3) Pressure relief devices, intended primarily for protection against exposure of a pressure vessel to fire or other unexpected sources of external heat installed on vessels having no permanent supply connection and used for storage at ambient temperatures of nonrefrigerated liquefied compressed gases,[41] are excluded from the requirements of (c)(1) and (c)(2) above, provided:

(a) the pressure relief devices are capable of preventing the pressure from rising more than 20% above the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessels;

(b) the set pressure marked on these devices shall not exceed the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessels;

(c) the vessels have sufficient ullage to avoid a liquid full condition;

(d) the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessels on which these pressure relief devices are installed is greater than the vapor pressure of the stored liquefied compressed gas at the maximum anticipated temperature[42] that the gas will reach under atmospheric conditions; and

(e) pressure relief valves used to satisfy these provisions also comply with the requirements of UG-129(a)(5), UG-131(c)(2), and UG-134(d)(2).

(d) Pressure relief devices shall be constructed, located, and installed so that they are readily accessible for inspection, replacement, and repair and so that they cannot be readily rendered inoperative (see Appendix M), and should be selected on the basis of their intended service.

[41] For the purpose of these rules, gases are considered to be substances having a vapor pressure greater than 40 psia (300 kPa absolute) at 100°F (40°C).

[42] Normally this temperature should not be less than 115°F (45°C).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(e) Pressure relief valves or nonreclosing pressure relief devices[43] may be used to protect against overpressure. Nonreclosing pressure relief devices may be used either alone or, if applicable, in combination with pressure relief valves on vessels.

NOTE: Use of nonreclosing pressure relief devices of some types may be advisable on vessels containing substances that may render a pressure relief valve inoperative, where a loss of valuable material by leakage should be avoided, or where contamination of the atmosphere by leakage of noxious fluids must be avoided. The use of rupture disk devices may also be advisable when very rapid rates of pressure rise may be encountered.

(f) Vessels that are to operate completely filled with liquid shall be equipped with pressure relief devices designed for liquid service, unless otherwise protected against overpressure.

(g) The pressure relief devices required in (a) above need not be installed directly on a pressure vessel when either of the following conditions apply:

(1) the source of pressure is external to the vessel and is under such positive control that the pressure in the vessel cannot exceed the maximum allowable working pressure at the operating temperature except as permitted in (c) above (see UG-98), or under the conditions set forth in Appendix M.

(2) there are no intervening stop valves between the vessel and the pressure relief device or devices except as permitted under UG-135(d).

NOTE: Pressure reducing valves and similar mechanical or electrical control instruments, except for pilot operated pressure relief valves as permitted in UG-126(b), are not considered as sufficiently positive in action to prevent excess pressures from being developed.

(h) Pressure relief valves for steam service shall meet the requirements of UG-131(b).

UG-126 PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES[44]

(a) Safety, safety relief, and relief valves shall be of the direct spring loaded type.

(b) Pilot operated pressure relief valves may be used, provided that the pilot is self-actuated and the main valve will open automatically at not over the set pressure and will discharge its full rated capacity if some essential part of the pilot should fail.

(c) The spring in a pressure relief valve shall not be set for any pressure more than 5% above or below that for which the valve is marked, unless the setting is within the spring design range established by the valve Manufacturer or is determined to be acceptable to the Manufacturer. The initial adjustment shall be performed by the Manufacturer, his authorized representative, or an Assembler, and a valve data tag shall be provided that identifies the set pressure capacity and date. The valve shall be sealed with a seal identifying the Manufacturer, his authorized representative, or the Assembler performing the adjustment.

(d) The set pressure tolerances, plus or minus, of pressure relief valves shall not exceed 2 psi (15 kPa) for pressures up to and including 70 psi (500 kPa) and 3% for pressures above 70 psi (500 kPa).

UG-127 NONRECLOSING PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

(a) Rupture Disk Devices[45]

(1) General. Every rupture disk shall have a marked burst pressure established by rules of UG-137(d)(3) within a manufacturing design range[46] at a specified disk temperature[47] and shall be marked with a lot[48] number. The burst pressure tolerance at the specified disk temperature shall not exceed ±2 psi (±15 kPa) for marked burst pressure up to and including 40 psi (300 kPa) and ±5% for marked burst pressure above 40 psi (300 kPa).

[43] A *pressure relief valve* is a pressure relief device which is designed to reclose and prevent the further flow of fluid after normal conditions have been restored. A *nonreclosing pressure relief device* is a pressure relief device designed to remain open after operation.

[44] A *safety valve* is a pressure relief valve actuated by inlet static pressure and characterized by rapid opening or pop action. A *relief valve* is a pressure relief valve actuated by inlet static pressure which opens in proportion to the increase in pressure over the opening pressure. A *safety relief valve* is a pressure relief valve characterized by rapid opening or pop action, or by opening in proportion to the increase in pressure over the opening pressure, depending on application. A *pilot operated pressure relief valve* is a pressure relief valve in which the major relieving device is combined with and is controlled by a self-actuated auxiliary pressure relief valve.

[45] A *rupture disk device* is a nonreclosing pressure relief device actuated by inlet static pressure and designed to function by the bursting of a pressure containing disk. A *rupture disk* is the pressure containing and pressure sensitive element of a rupture disk device. Rupture disks may be designed in several configurations, such as plain flat, prebulged, or reverse buckling. A *rupture disk holder* is the structure which encloses and clamps the rupture disk in position.

[46] The *manufacturing design range* is a range of pressure within which the marked burst pressure must fall to be acceptable for a particular requirement as agreed upon between the rupture disk Manufacturer and the user or his agent. The manufacturing design range must be evaluated in conjuction with the specified burst pressure to ensure that the marked burst pressure of the rupture disk will always be within applicable limits of UG-134. Users are cautioned that certain types of rupture disks have manufacturing ranges that can result in a marked burst pressure greater than the specified burst pressure.

[47] The specified disk temperature supplied to the rupture disk Manufacturer shall be the temperature of the disk when the disk is expected to burst.

[48] A *lot of rupture disks* is those disks manufactured of a material at the same time, of the same size, thickness, type, heat, and manufacturing process including heat treatment.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(2) Relieving Capacity. The rated flow capacity of a pressure relief system which uses a rupture disk device as the sole relief device shall be determined by a value calculated under the requirements of (a) using a coefficient of discharge or (b) using flow resistances below.

(a) When the rupture disk device discharges directly to atmosphere and

(1) is installed within eight pipe diameters from the vessel nozzle entry; and

(2) with a length of discharge pipe not greater than five pipe diameters from the rupture disk device; and

(3) the nominal diameters of the inlet and discharge piping are equal to or greater than the stamped NPS designator of the device, the calculated relieving capacity of a pressure relief system shall not exceed a value based on the applicable theoretical flow equation [see UG-131(e)(2) and Appendix 11] for the various media multiplied by a coefficient of discharge K equal to 0.62. The area A in the theoretical flow equation shall be the minimum net flow area[49] as specified by the rupture disk device Manufacturer.

(b) The calculated capacity of any pressure relief system may be determined by analyzing the total system resistance to flow. This analysis shall take into consideration the flow resistance of the rupture disk device, piping and piping components including the exit nozzle on the vessels, elbows, tees, reducers, and valves. The calculation shall be made using accepted engineering practices for determining fluid flow through piping systems. This calculated relieving capacity shall be multiplied by a factor of 0.90 or less to allow for uncertainties inherent with this method. The certified flow resistance[50] K_R for the rupture disk device, expressed as the velocity head loss, shall be determined in accordance with UG-131(k) through (r).

(3) Application of Rupture Disks

(a) A rupture disk device may be used as the sole pressure relieving device on a vessel.

NOTE: When rupture disk devices are used, it is recommended that the design pressure of the vessel be sufficiently above the intended operating pressure to provide sufficient margin between operating pressure and rupture disk bursting pressure to prevent premature failure of the rupture disk due to fatigue or creep.

Application of rupture disk devices to liquid service should be carefully evaluated to assure that the design of the rupture disk device and the dynamic energy of the system on which it is installed will result in sufficient opening of the rupture disk.

(b) A rupture disk device may be installed between a pressure relief valve[51] and the vessel provided:

(1) the combination of the pressure relief valve and the rupture disk device is ample in capacity to meet the requirements of UG-133(a) and (b);

(2) the marked capacity of a pressure relief valve (nozzle type) when installed with a rupture disk device between the inlet of the valve and the vessel shall be multiplied by a factor of 0.90 of the rated relieving capacity of the valve alone, or alternatively, the capacity of such a combination shall be established in accordance with (3) below;

(3) the capacity of the combination of the rupture disk device and the pressure relief valve may be established in accordance with the appropriate paragraphs of UG-132;

(4) the space between a rupture disk device and a pressure relief valve shall be provided with a pressure gage, a try cock, free vent, or suitable telltale indicator. This arrangement permits detection of disk rupture or leakage.[52]

(5) the opening[49]provided through the rupture disk, after burst, is sufficient to permit a flow equal to the capacity of the valve [(2) and (3) above], and there is no chance of interference with proper functioning of the valve; but in no case shall this area be less than the area of the inlet of the valve unless the capacity and functioning of the specific combination of rupture disk device and pressure relief valve have been established by test in accordance with UG-132.

(c) A rupture disk device may be installed on the outlet side[53] of a pressure relief valve which is opened by direct action of the pressure in the vessel provided:

(1) the pressure relief valve will not fail to open at its proper pressure setting regardless of any back pressure that can accumulate between the pressure relief valve disk and the rupture disk. The space between the pressure relief valve disk and the rupture disk shall be

[49] The *minimum net flow area* is the calculated net area after a complete burst of the disk with appropriate allowance for any structural members which may reduce the net flow area through the rupture disk device. The net flow area for sizing purposes shall not exceed the nominal pipe size area of the rupture disk device.

[50] The *certified flow resistance K_R* is a dimensionless factor used to calculate the velocity head loss that results from the presence of a rupture disk device in a pressure relief system.

[51] Use of a rupture disk device in combination with a pressure relief valve shall be carefully evaluated to ensure that the media being handled and the valve operational characteristics will result in opening of the valve coincident with the bursting of the rupture disk.

[52] Users are warned that a rupture disk will not burst at its design pressure if back pressure builds up in the space between the disk and the pressure relief valve which will occur should leakage develop in the rupture disk due to corrosion or other cause.

[53] This use of a rupture disk device in series with the pressure relief valve is permitted to minimize the loss by leakage through the valve of valuable or of noxious or otherwise hazardous materials, and where a rupture disk alone or disk located on the inlet side of the valve is impracticable, or to prevent corrosive gases from a common discharge line from reaching the valve internals.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

vented or drained to prevent accumulation of pressure, or suitable means shall be provided to ensure that an accumulation of pressure does not affect the proper operation of the pressure relief valve.[54]

(2) the pressure relief valve is ample in capacity to meet the requirements of UG-125(c);

(3) the marked burst pressure of the rupture disk at the specified disk temperature plus any pressure in the outlet piping shall not exceed the design pressure of the outlet portion of the pressure relief valve and any pipe or fitting between the valve and the rupture disk device. However, in no case shall the marked burst pressure of the rupture disk at the specified disk temperature plus any pressure in the outlet piping exceed the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel or the set pressure of the pressure relief valve.

(4) the opening provided through the rupture disk device after breakage is sufficient to permit a flow equal to the rated capacity of the attached pressure relief valve without exceeding the allowable overpressure;

(5) any piping beyond the rupture disk cannot be obstructed by the rupture disk or fragment;

(6) the system is designed to consider the adverse effects of any leakage through the pressure relief valve or through the outlet side rupture disk device, to ensure system performance and reliability.[55]

(7) the bonnet of a balancing bellows or diaphragm type pressure relief valve shall be vented to prevent accumulation of pressure in the bonnet.

(b) Breaking Pin Device[56]

(1) Breaking pin devices shall not be used as single devices but only in combination between the pressure relief valve and the vessel.

(2) The space between a breaking pin device and a pressure relief valve shall be provided with a pressure gage, a try cock, a free vent, or suitable telltale indicator. This arrangement permits detection of breaking pin device operation or leakage.

(3) Each breaking pin device shall have a rated pressure and temperature at which the pin will break. The breaking pin shall be identified to a lot number and shall be guaranteed by the Manufacturer to break when the rated pressure, within the following tolerances, is applied to the device:

Rated Pressure, psi (kPa)		Tolerance, Plus or Minus, psi (kPa)
Min.	Max.	
30 (200)	150 (1 000)	5 (35)
150 (1 000)	275 (1 900)	10 (70)
275 (1 900)	375 (2 600)	15 (100)

(4) The rated pressure of the breaking pin plus the tolerance in psi shall not exceed 105% of the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel to which it is applied.

(5) The rated pressure at the specified temperature[57] shall be verified by breaking two or more sample breaking pins from each lot of the same material and the same size as those to be used. The lot size shall not exceed 25. The test shall be made in a device of the same form and pressure dimensions as that in which the breaking pin is to be used.

(c) Spring Loaded Nonreclosing Pressure Relief Device

(1) A spring loaded nonreclosing pressure relief device, pressure actuated by means which permit the spring loaded portion of the device to open at the specified set pressure and remain open until manually reset, may be used provided the design of the spring loaded nonreclosing device is such that if the actuating means fail, the device will achieve full opening at or below its set pressure. Such a device may not be used in combination with any other pressure relief device. The tolerance on opening point shall not exceed ±5%.

(2) The calculated capacity rating of a spring loaded nonreclosing pressure relief device shall not exceed a value based on the applicable theoretical formula (see UG-131) for the various media, multiplied by: $K =$ coefficient $= 0.62$.

The area A (square inches) in the theoretical formula shall be the flow area through the minimum opening of the spring loaded nonreclosing pressure relief device.

(3) In lieu of the method of capacity rating in (2) above, a Manufacturer may have the capacity of a spring loaded nonreclosing pressure relief device design certified in general accordance with the procedures of UG-131, as applicable.

[54] Users are warned that many types of pressure relief valves will not open at the set pressure if pressure builds up in the space between the pressure relief valve disk and the rupture disk device. A specially designed pressure relief valve such as a diaphragm valve, pilot operated valve, or a valve equipped with a balancing bellows above the disk may be required.

[55] Some adverse effects resulting from leakage may include obstructing the flow path, corrosion of pressure relief valve components, and undesirable bursts of the outlet side rupture disk.

[56] A *breaking pin device* is a nonreclosing pressure relief device actuated by inlet static pressure and designed to function by the breakage of a load-carrying section of a pin which supports a pressure containing member. A *breaking pin* is the load-carrying element of a breaking pin device. A *breaking pin housing* is the structure which encloses the breaking pin mechanism. The material of the housing shall be listed in Section II and be permitted for use in this Division.

[57] The specified temperature supplied to the breaking pin manufacturer shall be the temperature of the breaking pin when an emergency condition exists and the pin is expected to break.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UG-128 LIQUID PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

Any liquid pressure relief valve used shall be at least NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15).

UG-129 MARKING

(a) Safety, Safety Relief, Relief, Liquid Pressure Relief, and Pilot Operated Pressure Relief Valves. Each safety, safety relief, relief, liquid pressure relief, and pilot operated pressure relief valve NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15) and larger shall be plainly marked by the Manufacturer or Assembler with the required data in such a way that the marking will not be obliterated in service. The marking may be placed on the valve or on a plate or plates that satisfy the requirements of UG-119:

(1) the name, or an acceptable abbreviation, of the Manufacturer and the Assembler;

(2) Manufacturer's design or type number;

(3) NPS size ________ (the nominal pipe size of the valve inlet);

(4) set pressure ________ psi (kPa), and, if applicable per UG-136(d)(4), cold differential test pressure ________ psi (kPa);

(5) certified capacity (as applicable):

(a) lb/hr of saturated steam at an overpressure of 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater for valves certified on steam complying with UG-131(b); or

(b) gal/min of water at 70°F (20°C) at an overpressure of 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater for valves certified on water; or

(c) SCFM [standard cubic feet per minute at 60°F and 14.7 psia (20°C and 101 kPa)], or lb/min, of air at an overpressure of 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater. Valves that are capacity certified in accordance with UG-131(c)(2) shall be marked "at 20% overpressure."

(d) In addition to one of the fluids specified above, the Manufacturer may indicate the capacity in other fluids (see Appendix 11).

(6) year built, or alternatively, a coding may be marked on the valve such that the valve Manufacturer or Assembler can identify the year the valve was assembled or tested;

(7) ASME Symbol as shown in Fig. UG-129.1. The pilot of a pilot operated pressure relief valve shall be plainly marked by the Manufacturer or Assembler showing the name of the Manufacturer, the Manufacturer's design or type number, the set pressure in pounds per square inch, and the year built, or alternatively, a coding that the Manufacturer can use to identify the year built.

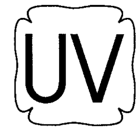


FIG. UG-129.1 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD FOR PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

On valves smaller than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15), the markings may be made on a metal tag attached by wire or adhesive meeting the requirements of UG-119 or other means suitable for the service conditions.

(b) Safety and safety relief valves certified for a steam discharging capacity under the provisions of Section I and bearing the official Code Symbol Stamp of Section I for safety valves may be used on pressure vessels. The rated capacity in terms of other fluids shall be determined by the method of conversion given in Appendix 11. [See UG-131(h).]

(c) Pressure Relief Valves in Combination With Rupture Disk Devices. Pressure relief valves in combination with rupture disk devices shall be marked with the capacity as established in accordance with UG-127(a)(3)(b)(2) (using 0.90 factor) or the combination capacity factor established by test in accordance with UG-132(a) or (b), in addition to the marking of UG-129(a) and (f) below. The marking may be placed on the pressure relief valve or rupture disk device or on a plate or plates that satisfy the requirements of UG-119. The marking shall include the following:

(1) name of Manufacturer of valve;

(2) design or type number of valve;

(3) name of Manufacturer of rupture disk device;

(4) design or type number of rupture disk device;

(5) capacity or combination capacity factor;

(6) name of organization responsible for this marking. This shall be either the vessel user, vessel Manufacturer, rupture disk Manufacturer, or pressure relief valve Manufacturer.

(d) Pressure Relief Valves in Combination With Breaking Pin Devices. Pressure relief valves in combination with breaking pin devices shall be marked in accordance with (a) above. In addition, the rated pressure shall be marked on the breaking pin and the breaking pin housing.

(e) Rupture Disk Devices. Every rupture disk shall be plainly marked by the Manufacturer in such a way that the marking will not be obliterated in service. The rupture disk marking may be placed on the flange of the disk or

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

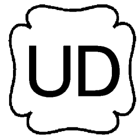


FIG. UG-129.2 OFFICIAL SYMBOL FOR STAMP TO DENOTE THE AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS' STANDARD FOR RUPTURE DISK DEVICES

on a metal tab that satisfies the requirements of UG-119. The marking shall include the following:

(1) the name or identifying trademark of the Manufacturer;
(2) Manufacturer's design or type number;
(3) lot number;
(4) disk material;
(5) size __________ [NPS (DN) of rupture disk holder];
(6) marked burst pressure __________ psi (kPa);
(7) specified disk temperature __________ °F (°C);
(8) minimum net flow area __________ sq in. (sq mm);
(9) certified flow resistance (as applicable):
(a) K_{RG} __________ for rupture disk certified on air or gases; or
(b) K_{RL} __________ for rupture disk certified on liquid; or
(c) K_{RGL} __________ for rupture disk certified on air or gases, and liquid;
(10) ASME symbol as shown in Fig. UG-129.2;
(11) year built, or alternatively, a coding may be marked on the rupture disk such that the rupture disk device Manufacturer can identify the year the rupture disk device was assembled and tested.

Items (1), (2), and (5) above and flow direction shall also be marked on the rupture disk holder.

(f) Spring Loaded Nonreclosing Pressure Relief Devices. Spring loaded nonreclosing pressure relief devices shall be marked in accordance with (a) above except that the Code Symbol Stamp is to be applied only when the capacity has been established and certified in accordance with UG-127(c)(3) and all other requirements of UG-130 have been met.

UG-130 CODE SYMBOL STAMP

Each pressure relief device[58] to which the Code Symbol (see Figs. UG-129.1 and UG-129.2) will be applied shall have been fabricated or assembled by a Manufacturer or Assembler holding a valid Certificate of Authorization (UG-117) and capacity certified in accordance with the requirements of this Division. A Certified Individual (*CI*) shall provide oversight as required by UG-117(a). Each use of the Code Symbol shall also be documented on a Certificate of Conformance Form UV-1 or UD-1, as appropriate.

UG-131 CERTIFICATION OF CAPACITY OF PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

(a) Before the Code Symbol is applied to any pressure relief device, the device Manufacturers shall have the capacity of their devices certified in accordance with the provisions of these paragraphs. For pressure relief valves, (b) through (j) below apply and for rupture disk devices, (k) through (r) below apply except where noted.

(b)(1) Capacity certification tests for pressure relief valves for compressible fluids shall be conducted on dry saturated steam, or air, or gas. When dry saturated steam is used, the limits for test purposes shall be 98% minimum quality and 20°F (10°C) maximum superheat. Correction from within these limits may be made to the dry saturated condition. Pressure relief valves for steam service may be rated as above, but at least one valve of each series shall be tested on steam to demonstrate the steam capacity and performance.

(2) Capacity certification tests for pressure relief valves for incompressible fluids shall be conducted on water at a temperature between 40°F (5°C) and 125°F (4°C and 50°C).

(c)(1) Capacity certification tests shall be conducted at a pressure which does not exceed the pressure for which the pressure relief valve is set to operate by more than 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater, except as provided in (c)(2) below. Minimum pressure for capacity certification tests shall be at least 3 psi (20 kPa) above set pressure. The reseating pressure shall be noted and recorded.

(2) Capacity certification tests of pressure relief valves for use in accordance with UG-125(c)(3) may be conducted at a pressure not to exceed 120% of the stamped set pressure of the valve.

(3)(a) Pressure relief valves for compressible fluids having an adjustable blowdown construction shall be adjusted prior to testing so that the blowdown does not exceed 5% of the set pressure or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater.

(b) The blowdown of pressure relief valves for incompressible fluids and pressure relief valves for compressible fluids having nonadjustable blowdown shall be noted and recorded.

[58] Vacuum relief devices are not covered by Code Symbol Stamp requirements.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(4) Capacity certification of pilot operated pressure relief valves may be based on tests without the pilot valves installed, provided prior to capacity tests it has been demonstrated by test to the satisfaction of the Authorized Observer that the pilot valve will cause the main valve to open fully at a pressure which does not exceed the set pressure by more than 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater, and that the pilot valve in combination with the main valve will meet all the requirements of this Division.

(d)(1) A capacity certification test is required on a set of three valves for each combination of size, design, and pressure setting. The stamped capacity rating for each combination of design, size, and test pressure shall not exceed 90% of the average capacity of the three valves tested. The capacity for each set of three valves shall fall within a range of ±5% of the average capacity. Failure to meet this requirement shall be cause to refuse certification of that particular pressure relief valve design.

(2) If a Manufacturer wishes to apply the Code Symbol to a design of pressure relief valves, four valves of each combination of pipe size and orifice size shall be tested. These four valves shall be set at pressures which cover the approximate range of pressures for which the valve will be used or covering the range available at the certified test facility that shall conduct the tests. The capacities based on these four tests shall be as follows.

(a) For compressible fluids, the slope W/P of the actual measured capacity versus the flow pressure for each test point shall be calculated and averaged:

$$\text{slope} = \frac{W}{P} = \frac{\text{measured capacity}}{\text{absolute flow pressure, psia}}$$

All values derived from the testing must fall within ±5% of the average value:

$$\text{minimum slope} = 0.95 \times \text{average slope}$$

$$\text{maximum slope} = 1.05 \times \text{average slope}$$

If the values derived from the testing do not fall between the minimum and maximum slope values, the Authorized Observer shall require that additional valves be tested at the rate of two for each valve beyond the maximum and minimum values with a limit of four additional valves.

The relieving capacity to be stamped on the valve shall not exceed 90% of the average slope times the absolute accumulation pressure:

$$\text{rated slope} = 0.90 \times \text{average slope}$$

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$\text{stamped capacity} \leq \text{rated slope (1.10} \times \text{set pressure} + 14.7\text{) or (set pressure + 3 psi} + 14.7\text{), whichever is greater}$$

(SI Units)

$$\text{stamped capacity} \leq \text{rated slope (1.10} \times \text{set pressure} + 100\text{ kPa) or (set pressure + 20 kPa} + 101\text{ kPa), whichever is greater}$$

For valves certified in accordance with (c)(2) above

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$\text{stamped capacity} \leq \text{rated slope (1.20} \times \text{set pressure} + 14.7\text{ or (set pressure + 3 psi} + 14.7\text{), whichever is greater}$$

(SI Units)

$$\text{stamped capacity} \leq \text{rated slope (1.20} \times \text{set pressure} + 100\text{ kPa) or (set pressure + 20 kPa} + 101\text{ kPa), whichever is greater}$$

(b) For incompressible fluids, the capacities shall be plotted on log–log paper against the differential (inlet minus discharge pressure) test pressure and a straight line drawn through these four points. If the four points do not establish a straight line, two additional valves shall be tested for each unsatisfactory point, with a limit of two unsatisfactory points. Any point that departs from the straight line by more than 5% should be considered an unsatisfactory point. The relieving capacity shall be determined from this line. The certified capacity shall not exceed 90% of the capacity taken from the line.

(e) Instead of individual capacity certification as provided in (d) above, a coefficient of discharge K may be established for a specific pressure relief valve design according to the following procedure.

(1) For each design, the pressure relief valve Manufacturer shall submit for test at least three valves for each of three different sizes (a total of nine valves) together with detailed drawings showing the valve construction. Each valve of a given size shall be set at a different pressure.

(2) Tests shall be made on each pressure relief valve to determine its capacity-lift, popping and blow-down pressures, and actual capacity in terms of the fluid used in the test. A coefficient K_D shall be established for each test run as follows:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$K_D = \frac{\text{actual flow}}{\text{theoretical flow}} = \text{coefficient of discharge}$$

where actual flow is determined quantitatively by test, and theoretical flow is calculated by the appropriate formula which follows:

For tests with dry saturated steam,

$$W_T = 51.5AP$$

NOTE: For dry saturated steam pressures over 1500 psig (10.9 MPa gage) and up to 3200 psig (22.1 MPa gage), the value of W_T, calculated by the above equation, shall be corrected by being multiplied by the following factors, which shall be used only if it is 1.0 or greater.

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$\left(\frac{0.1906P - 1000}{0.2292P - 1061}\right)$$

(SI Units)

$$\left(\frac{27.6P - 1\,000}{33.2P - 1\,001}\right)$$

For tests with air,

$$W_T = 356AP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

For tests with natural gas,

$$W_T = CAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{ZT}}$$

For tests with water,

$$W_T = 2407A\sqrt{(P - P_d)w}$$

where

W_T = theoretical flow
A = actual discharge area through the valve at developed lift, sq in.
P = (set pressure × 1.10) plus atmospheric pressure, psia, or set pressure plus 3 psi (20 kPa) plus atmospheric pressure, whichever is greater
P_d = pressure at discharge from valve
M = molecular weight
T = absolute temperature at inlet, °F + 460°F (273°C)
C = constant for gas or vapor based on the ratio of specific heats
$k = c_p/c_v$ (see Fig. 11-1)
Z = compressibility factor corresponding to P and T
w = specific weight of water at valve inlet conditions

The average of the coefficients K_D of the nine tests required shall be multiplied by 0.90, and this product shall be taken as the coefficient K of that design. The coefficient of the design shall not be greater than 0.878 (the product of 0.9 × 0.975).

NOTE: All experimentally determined coefficients K_D shall fall within a range of ±5% of the average K_D found. Failure to meet this requirement shall be cause to refuse certification of that particular valve design.

To convert lb/hr of water to gal/min of water, multiply the capacity in lb/hr by 1/500.

(3) The official relieving capacity of all sizes and pressures of a given design, for which K has been established under the provisions of (e)(2) above, that are manufactured subsequently shall not exceed the value calculated by the appropriate formula in (e)(2) above multiplied by the coefficient K (see Appendix 11).

(4) The coefficient shall not be applied to valves whose beta ratio (ratio of valve throat to inlet diameter) lies outside the range of 0.15 to 0.75, unless tests have demonstrated that the individual coefficient of discharge K_D for valves at the extreme ends of a larger range is within ±5% of the average coefficient K. For designs where the lift is used to determine the flow area, all valves shall have the same nominal lift-to-seat diameter ratio (L/D).

(f) Tests shall be conducted at a place where the testing facilities, methods, procedures, and person supervising the tests (Authorized Observer) meet the applicable requirements of ASME PTC 25. The tests shall be made under the supervision of and certified by an Authorized Observer. The testing facilities, methods, procedures, and qualifications of the Authorized Observer shall be subject to the acceptance of the ASME on recommendation of a representative from an ASME designated organization. Acceptance of the testing facility is subject to review within each 5 year period.

(g) Capacity test data reports for each valve model, type, and size, signed by the Manufacturer and the Authorized Observer witnessing the tests shall be submitted to the ASME designated organization for review and acceptance.[59] Where changes are made in the design, capacity certification tests shall be repeated.

(h) For absolute pressures up to 1500 psia (10 MPa absolute), it is permissible to rate safety valves under PG-69.1.2 of Section I with capacity ratings at a flow pressure of 103% of the set pressure, for use on pressure vessels, without further test. In such instances, the capacity rating of the valve may be increased to allow for the flow pressure permitted in (c)(1) and (c)(3) above, namely, 110% of the set pressure, by the multiplier,

[59] Valve capacities and rupture disk device flow resistances are published in "Pressure Relief Device Certifications." This publication may be obtained from the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors, 1055 Crupper Avenue, Columbus, Ohio 43229.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$\frac{1.10p + 14.7}{1.03p + 14.7}$$

(SI Units)

$$\frac{1.10p + 100}{1.03p + 100}$$

where

p = set pressure, psig (kPa gage)

Such valves shall be marked in accordance with UG-129. This multiplier shall not be used as a divisor to transform test ratings from a higher to a lower flow.

For steam pressures above 1500 psig (10.3 MPa gage), the above multiplier is not applicable. For pressure relief valves with relieving pressures between 1500 psig (10.9 MPa gage) and 3200 psig (22.1 MPa gage), the capacity shall be determined by using the equation for steam and the correction factor for high pressure steam in (e)(2) above with the permitted absolute relieving pressure (for Customary units, $1.10p + 14.7$; for SI units, $1.10p + 101$) and the coefficient K for that valve design.

(i) Rating of nozzle type pressure relief valves, i.e., coefficient K_D, greater than 0.90 and nozzle construction, for saturated water shall be according to 11-2.

(j) When changes are made in the design of a pressure relief valve in such a manner as to affect the flow path, lift, or performance characteristics of the valve, new tests in accordance with this Division shall be performed.

(k) The certified flow resistance K_R of the rupture disk device used in UG-127(a)(2) shall be either $K_R = 2.4$, or as determined in accordance with (l) through (r) below.

(l) Flow resistance certification tests for rupture disk for air or gas service K_{RG} shall be burst and flow tested with air or gas. Flow resistance certification tests for liquid service K_{RL} shall be burst tested with water and flow tested with air or gas. Rupture disk for air or gas and liquid service K_{RGL} may be certified with air or gas as above, but at least one rupture disk of the number required under (o) below for each size of each series shall be burst tested with water and flow tested with air or gas to demonstrate the liquid service flow resistance.

(m) Flow resistance certification tests shall be conducted at a rupture disk device inlet pressure which does not exceed 110% of the device set pressure.

(n)(1) The flow resistance for rupture disk devices tested with nonpressure containing disk items, such as seals, support rings, and vacuum supports, is applicable for the same rupture device design without seals, support rings, or vacuum supports.

(2) A change in material for rupture disks and their nonpressure containing disk items, such as seals, support rings, and vacuum supports, is not considered a design change and does not require retesting.

(3) Additional linings, coatings, or platings may be used for the same design of rupture disk devices provided:

(a) the certificate holder has performed a verification burst test of rupture disks with the additional linings, coatings, or platings and has documented that the addition of these materials does not affect the rupture disk opening configuration; and

(b) such verification tests shall be conducted with rupture disks of the smallest size and minimum burst pressure for which the certified flow resistance with additional materials is to be used.

(o) Flow resistance certification of rupture disk devices shall be determined by one of the following methods.

(1) One Size Method

(a) For each rupture disk device design, three rupture disks from the same lot shall be individually burst and flow tested in accordance with (p) below. The burst pressure shall be the minimum of the rupture disk device design of the size tested.

(b) The certified flow resistance K_R determined in (p) below shall apply only to the rupture disk design of the size tested.

(c) When additional rupture disks of the same design are constructed at a later date, the test results on the original rupture disks may be included as applicable in the three size method described in (o)(2) below.

(2) Three Size Method

(a) This method of flow resistance certification may be used for a rupture disk device design of three or more sizes. The burst pressure shall be the minimum of the rupture disk device design for each of the sizes submitted for test.

(b) For each rupture disk device design, three rupture disks from the same lot shall be burst and flow tested in accordance with (p) below for each of three different sizes of the same design.

(c) The certified flow resistance K_R shall apply to all sizes and pressures of the design of the rupture disk device tested.

(p) A certified flow resistance K_R may be established for a specific rupture disk device design according to the following procedure.

(1) For each design, the rupture disk Manufacturer shall submit for test the required rupture disk devices in accordance with (o) above together with the cross section drawings showing the rupture disk device design.

(2) Tests shall be made on each rupture disk device to determine its burst pressure and flow resistance at a facility which meets the requirements of (f) above.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(3) Calculate an average flow resistance using the individual flow resistances determined in (p)(2) above. All individual flow resistances shall fall within the average flow resistance by an acceptance band of plus or minus three times the average of the absolute values of the deviations of the individual flow resistances from the average flow resistance. Any individual flow resistance that falls outside of this band shall be replaced on a two for one basis. A new average flow resistance shall be computed and the individual flow resistances evaluated as stated above.

(4) The certified flow resistance K_R for a rupture disk design shall not be less than zero and shall not be less than the sum of the average flow resistance plus three times the average of the absolute values of the deviations of individual flow resistances from the average flow resistance.

(q) Flow resistance test data reports for each rupture disk device design, signed by the Manufacturer and the Authorized Observer witnessing the tests, shall be submitted to the ASME designated organization for review and acceptance.[59]

(r) When changes are made in the design of a rupture disk device which affect the flow path or burst performance characteristics of the device, new tests in accordance with this Division shall be performed.

UG-132 CERTIFICATION OF CAPACITY OF PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES IN COMBINATION WITH NONRECLOSING PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

(a) Capacity of Pressure Relief Valves in Combination With a Rupture Disk Device at the Inlet

(1) For each combination of pressure relief valve design and rupture disk device design, the pressure relief valve Manufacturer or the rupture disk device Manufacturer may have the capacity of the combination certified as prescribed in (3) and (4) below.

(2) Capacity certification tests shall be conducted on saturated steam, air, or natural gas. When saturated steam is used, corrections for moisture content of the steam shall be made.

(3) The pressure relief valve Manufacturer or the rupture disk device Manufacturer may submit for tests the smallest rupture disk device size with the equivalent size of pressure relief valve that is intended to be used as a combination device. The pressure relief valve to be tested shall have the largest orifice used in the particular inlet size.

(4) Tests may be performed in accordance with the following subparagraphs. The rupture disk device and pressure relief valve combination to be tested shall be arranged to duplicate the combination assembly design.

(a) The test shall embody the minimum burst pressure of the rupture disk device design which is to be used in combination with the pressure relief valve design. The marked burst pressure shall be between 90% and 100% of the marked set pressure of the valve.

(b) The test procedure to be used shall be as follows.

The pressure relief valve (one valve) shall be tested for capacity as an individual valve, without the rupture disk device at a pressure 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater, above the valve set pressure.

The rupture disk device shall then be installed at the inlet of the pressure relief valve and the disk burst to operate the valve. The capacity test shall be performed on the combination at 10% or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater, above the valve set pressure duplicating the individual pressure relief valve capacity test.

(c) Tests shall be repeated with two additional rupture disks of the same nominal rating for a total of three rupture disks to be tested with the single pressure valve. The results of the test capacity shall fall within a range of 10% of the average capacity of the three tests. Failure to meet this requirement shall be cause to require retest for determination of cause of the discrepancies.

(d) From the results of the tests, a Combination Capacity Factor shall be determined. The Combination Capacity Factor is the ratio of the average capacity determined by the combination tests to the capacity determined on the individual valve.

The Combination Capacity Factor shall be used as a multiplier to make appropriate changes in the ASME rated relieving capacity of the pressure relief valve in all sizes of the design. The value of the Combination Capacity Factor shall not be greater than one. The Combination Capacity Factor shall apply only to combinations of the same design of pressure relief valve and the same design of rupture disk device as those tested.

(e) The test laboratory shall submit the test results to the ASME designated organization for acceptance of the Combination Capacity Factor.[60]

(b) Optional Testing of Rupture Disk Devices and Pressure Relief Valves

(1) If desired, a valve Manufacturer or a rupture disk Manufacturer may conduct tests in the same manner as outlined in (a)(4)(c) and (a)(4)(d) above using the next

[60] The *set pressure* is the value of increasing inlet static pressure at which a pressure relief device displays one of the operational characteristics as defined by opening pressure, popping pressure, start-to-leak pressure, burst pressure, or breaking pressure. (The applicable operating characteristic for a specific device design is specified by the device Manufacturer.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

two larger sizes of the design of rupture disk device and pressure relief valve to determine a Combination Capacity Factor applicable to larger sizes. If a greater Combination Capacity Factor is established and can be certified, it may be used for all larger sizes of the combination, but shall not be greater than one.

(2) If desired, additional tests may be conducted at higher pressures in accordance with (a)(4)(c) and (a)(4)(d) above to establish a maximum Combination Capacity Factor to be used at all pressures higher than the highest tested, but shall not be greater than one.

(c) Capacity of Breaking Pin Devices in Combination With Pressure Relief Valves

(1) Breaking pin devices in combination with pressure relief valves shall be capacity tested in compliance with UG-131(d) or UG-131(e) as a combination.

(2) Capacity certification and Code Symbol stamping shall be based on the capacity established in accordance with these paragraphs.

UG-133 DETERMINATION OF PRESSURE RELIEVING REQUIREMENTS

(a) Except as permitted in (b) below, the aggregate capacity of the pressure relief devices connected to any vessel or system of vessels for the release of a liquid, air, steam, or other vapor shall be sufficient to carry off the maximum quantity that can be generated or supplied to the attached equipment without permitting a rise in pressure within the vessel of more than 16% above the maximum allowable working pressure when the pressure relief devices are blowing.

(b) Pressure relief devices as permitted in UG-125(c)(2), as protection against excessive pressure caused by exposure to fire or other sources of external heat, shall have a relieving capacity sufficient to prevent the pressure from rising more than 21% above the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel when all pressure relief devices are blowing.

(c) Vessels connected together by a system of adequate piping not containing valves which can isolate any vessel may be considered as one unit in figuring the required relieving capacity of pressure relief devices to be furnished.

(d) Heat exchangers and similar vessels shall be protected with a pressure relief device of sufficient capacity to avoid overpressure in case of an internal failure.

(e) The official rated capacity, or the certified flow resistance and minimum net flow area, of a pressure relief device shall be that which is stamped on the device and guaranteed by the Manufacturer.

(f) The rated pressure relieving capacity of a pressure relief valve for other than steam or air shall be determined by the method of conversion given in Appendix 11.

(g) To prorate the relieving capacity at any relieving pressure greater than $1.10p$, as permitted under UG-125, a multiplier may be applied to the official relieving capacity of a pressure relief device as follows:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$\frac{P + 14.7}{1.10p + 14.7}$$

(SI Units)

$$\frac{P + 101}{1.10p + 101}$$

where

P = relieving pressure, psig (kPa gage)
p = set pressure, psig (kPa gage)

For steam pressures above 1,500 psig (10.3 MPa gage), the above multiplier is not applicable. For steam valves with relieving pressures greater than 1,500 psig (10 MPa gage) and less than or equal to 3,200 psig (22.1 MPa gage), the capacity at relieving pressures greater than $1.10p$ shall be determined using the equation for steam and the correction factor for high pressure steam in UG-131(e)(2) with the permitted absolute relieving pressure and the coefficient K for that valve design.

UG-134 PRESSURE SETTING OF PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

(a) When a single pressure relief device is used, the set pressure[60] marked on the device shall not exceed the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel. When the required capacity is provided in more than one pressure relief device, only one pressure relief device need be set at or below the maximum allowable working pressure, and the additional pressure relief devices may be set to open at higher pressures but in no case at a pressure higher than 105% of the maximum allowable working pressure, except as provided in (b) below.

(b) For pressure relief devices permitted in UG-125(c)(2) as protection against excessive pressure caused by exposure to fire or other sources of external heat, the device marked set pressure shall not exceed 110% of the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel. If such a pressure relief device is used to meet the requirements of both UG-125(c) and UG-125(c)(2), the device marked set pressure shall not be over the maximum allowable working pressure.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(c) The pressure relief device set pressure shall include the effects of static head and constant back pressure.

(d)(1) The set pressure tolerance for pressure relief valves shall not exceed ±2 psi (15 kPa) for pressures up to and including 70 psi (500 kPa) and ±3% for pressures above 70 psi (500 kPa), except as covered in (d)(2) below.

(2) The set pressure tolerance of pressure relief valves which comply with UG-125(c)(3) shall be within −0%, +10%.

(e) The burst pressure tolerance for rupture disk devices at the specified disk temperature shall not exceed ±2 psi (15 kPa) of marked burst pressure up to 40 psi (300 kPa) and ±5% of marked burst pressure 40 psi (300 kPa) and over.

UG-135 INSTALLATION

(a) Pressure relief devices intended for use in compressible fluid service shall be connected to the vessel in the vapor space above any contained liquid or to piping connected to the vapor space in the vessel which is to be protected. Pressure relief devices intended for use in liquid service shall be connected below the normal liquid level.

(b)(1) The opening through all pipe, fittings, and nonreclosing pressure relief devices (if installed) between a pressure vessel and its pressure relief valve shall have at least the area of the pressure relief valve inlet. The characteristics of this upstream system shall be such that the pressure drop will not reduce the relieving capacity below that required or adversely affect the proper operation of the pressure relief valve.

(2) The opening in the vessel wall shall be designed to provide unobstructed flow between the vessel and its pressure relief device (see Appendix M).[61]

(c) When two or more required pressure relief devices are placed on one connection, the inlet internal cross-sectional area of this connection shall be either sized to avoid restricting flow to the pressure relief devices or made at least equal to the combined inlet areas of the safety devices connected to it. The flow characteristics of the upstream system shall satisfy the requirements of (b) above. (See Appendix M.)

(d) There shall be no intervening stop valves between the vessel and its pressure relief device or devices, or between the pressure relief device or devices and the point of discharge, except:

(1) when these stop valves are so constructed or positively controlled that the closing of the maximum number of block valves possible at one time will not reduce the pressure relieving capacity provided by the unaffected pressure relief devices below the required relieving capacity; or

(2) under conditions set forth in Appendix M.

(e) The pressure relief devices on all vessels shall be so installed that their proper functioning will not be hindered by the nature of the vessel's contents.

(f) Discharge lines from pressure relief devices shall be designed to facilitate drainage or shall be fitted with drains to prevent liquid from lodging in the discharge side of the pressure relief device, and such lines shall lead to a safe place of discharge. The size of the discharge lines shall be such that any pressure that may exist or develop will not reduce the relieving capacity of the pressure relief devices below that required to properly protect the vessel, or adversely affect the proper operation of the pressure relief devices. [See UG-136(a)(8) and Appendix M.]

UG-136 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

UG-136(a) Mechanical Requirements

UG-136(a)(1) The design shall incorporate guiding arrangements necessary to ensure consistent operation and tightness.

UG-136(a)(2) The spring shall be designed so that the full lift spring compression shall be no greater than 80% of the nominal solid deflection. The permanent set of the spring (defined as the difference between the free height and height measured 10 min after the spring has been compressed solid three additional times after presetting at room temperature) shall not exceed 0.5% of the free height.

UG-136(a)(3) Each pressure relief valve on air, water over 140°F (60°C), or steam service shall have a substantial lifting device which when activated will release the seating force on the disk when the pressure relief valve is subjected to a pressure of at least 75% of the set pressure of the valve. Pilot operated pressure relief valves used on these services shall be provided with either a lifting device as described above or means for connecting and applying pressure to the pilot adequate to verify that the moving parts critical to proper operation are free to move.

UG-136(a)(4) The seat of a pressure relief valve shall be fastened to the body of the pressure relief valve in such a way that there is no possibility of the seat lifting.

[61] Users are warned that the proper operation of various rupture disk devices depends upon following the Manufacturer's installation instructions closely with regard to the flow direction marked on the device. Some device designs will burst at pressures much greater than their marked burst pressure when installed with the process pressure on the vent side of the device.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UG-136(a)(5) In the design of the body of the pressure relief valve, consideration shall be given to minimizing the effects of deposits.

UG-136(a)(6) Pressure relief valves having screwed inlet or outlet connections shall be provided with wrenching surfaces to allow for normal installation without damaging operating parts.

UG-136(a)(7) Means shall be provided in the design of all pressure relief valves for use under this Division for sealing all initial adjustments which can be made without disassembly of the valve. Seals shall be installed by the Manufacturer or Assembler at the time of initial adjustment. Seals shall be installed in a manner to prevent changing the adjustment without breaking the seal. For pressure relief valves larger than NPS $\frac{1}{2}$ (DN 15), the seal shall serve as a means of identifying the Manufacturer or Assembler making the initial adjustment.

UG-136(a)(8) If the design of a pressure relief valve is such that liquid can collect on the discharge side of the disk, except as permitted in (a)(9) below, the valve shall be equipped with a drain at the lowest point where liquid can collect (for installation, see UG-135).

UG-136(a)(9) Pressure relief valves that cannot be equipped with a drain as required in (a)(8) above because of design or application may be used provided:

(a) the pressure relief valves are used only on gas service where there is neither liquid discharged from the valve nor liquid formed by condensation on the discharge side of the valve; and

(b) the pressure relief valves are provided with a cover or discharge piping per UG-135(f) to prevent liquid or other contaminant from entering the discharge side of the valve; and

(c) the pressure relief valve is marked FOR GAS SERVICE ONLY in addition to the requirements of UG-129.

UG-136(a)(10) For pressure relief valves of the diaphragm type, the space above the diaphragm shall be vented to prevent a buildup of pressure above the diaphragm. Pressure relief valves of the diaphragm type shall be designed so that failure or deterioration of the diaphragm material will not impair the ability of the valve to relieve at the rated capacity.

UG-136(b) Material Selections

UG-136(b)(1) Cast iron seats and disks are not permitted.

UG-136(b)(2) Adjacent sliding surfaces such as guides and disks or disk holders shall both be of corrosion resistant material. Springs of corrosion resistant material or having a corrosion resistant coating are required. The seats and disks of pressure relief valves shall be of suitable material to resist corrosion by the fluid to be contained.

NOTE: The degree of corrosion resistance, appropriate to the intended service, shall be a matter of agreement between the manufacturer and the purchaser.

UG-136(b)(3) Materials used in bodies and bonnets or yokes shall be listed in Section II and this Division. Carbon and low alloy steel bodies, bonnets, yokes and bolting (UG-20) subject to in-service temperatures colder than −20°F (−30°C) shall meet the requirements of UCS-66, unless exempted by the following.

(a) The coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is 0.35 or less.

(b) The material(s) is exempted from impact testing per Fig. UCS-66.

UG-136(b)(4) Materials used in nozzles, disks, and other parts contained within the external structure of the pressure relief valves shall be one of the following categories:

(a) listed in Section II;

(b) listed in ASTM specifications;

(c) controlled by the Manufacturer of the pressure relief valve by a specification ensuring control of chemical and physical properties and quality at least equivalent to ASTM standards.

UG-136(c) Inspection of Manufacturing and/or Assembly of Pressure Relief Valves

UG-136(c)(1) A Manufacturer or Assembler shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of a representative from an ASME designated organization that his manufacturing, production, and testing facilities and quality control procedures will insure close agreement between the performance of random production samples and the performance of those valves submitted for Capacity Certification.

UG-136(c)(2) Manufacturing, assembly, inspection, and test operations including capacity are subject to inspections at any time by a representative from an ASME designated organization.

UG-136(c)(3) A Manufacturer or Assembler may be granted permission to apply the UV Code Symbol to production pressure relief valves capacity certified in accordance with UG-131 provided the following tests are successfully completed. This permission shall expire on the fifth anniversary of the date it is initially granted. The permission may be extended for 5 year periods if the following tests are successfully repeated within the 6-month period before expiration.

(a) Two sample production pressure relief valves of a size and capacity within the capability of an ASME accepted laboratory shall be selected by a representative from an ASME designated organization.

(b) Operational and capacity tests shall be conducted in the presence of a representative from an ASME designated organization at an ASME accepted laboratory.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The pressure relief valve Manufacturer or Assembler shall be notified of the time of the test and may have representatives present to witness the test. Pressure relief valves having an adjustable blowdown construction shall be adjusted by the Manufacturer or Assembler following successful testing for operation but prior to flow testing so that the blowdown does not exceed 7% of the set pressure or 3 psi (20 kPa), whichever is greater. This adjustment may be made on the flow test facility.

(c) Should any pressure relief valve fail to relieve at or above its certified capacity or should it fail to meet performance requirements of this Division, the test shall be repeated at the rate of two replacement pressure relief valves, selected in accordance with (c)(3)(a) above, for each pressure relief valve that failed.

(d) Failure of any of the replacement pressure relief valves to meet the capacity or the performance requirements of this Division shall be cause for revocation within 60 days of the authorization to use the Code Symbol on that particular type of pressure relief valve. During this period, the Manufacturer or Assembler shall demonstrate the cause of such deficiency and the action taken to guard against future occurrence, and the requirements of (c)(3) above shall apply.

UG-136(c)(4) Use of the Code Symbol Stamp by an Assembler indicates the use of original, unmodified parts in strict accordance with the instructions of the Manufacturer of the pressure relief valve.

(a) An assembler may transfer original and unmodified pressure relief parts produced by the Manufacturer to other Assemblers provided the following conditions are met:

(1) both Assemblers have been granted permission to apply the V or UV Code Symbol to the specific valve type in which the parts are to be used;

(2) the Quality Control System of the Assembler receiving the pressure relief valve parts shall define the controls for the procurement and acceptance of those parts; and

(3) the pressure relief valve parts are appropriately packaged, marked, or sealed by the Manufacturer to ensure that the parts are:

(a) produced by the Manufacturer; and

(b) the parts are original and unmodified.

(b) However, an Assembler may convert original finished parts by machining to another finished part for a specific application under the following conditions:

(1) Conversions shall be specified by the Manufacturer. Drawings and/or written instructions used for part conversion shall be obtained from the Manufacturer and shall include a drawing or description of the converted part before and after machining.

(2) The Assembler's quality control system, as accepted by a representative from an ASME designated organization, must describe in detail the conversion of original parts, provisions for inspection and acceptance, personnel training, and control of current Manufacturer's drawings and/or written instructions.

(3) The Assembler must document each use of a converted part and that the part was used in strict accordance with the instructions of the Manufacturer.

(4) The Assembler must demonstrate to the Manufacturer the ability to perform each type of conversion. The Manufacturer shall document all authorizations granted to perform part conversions. The Manufacturer and Assembler shall maintain a file of such authorizations.

(5) At least annually a review shall be performed by the Manufacturer of an Assembler's system and machining capabilities. The Manufacturer shall document the results of these reviews. A copy of this documentation shall be kept on file by the Assembler. The review results shall be made available to a representative from an ASME designated organization.

UG-136(c)(5) In addition to the requirements of UG-129, the marking shall include the name of the Manufacturer and the final Assembler. The Code Symbol Stamp shall be that of the final Assembler.

NOTE: Within the requirements of UG-136(c) and (d): A *Manufacturer* is defined as a person or organization who is completely responsible for design, material selection, capacity certification, manufacture of all component parts, assembly, testing, sealing, and shipping of pressure relief valves certified under this Division. An *Assembler* is defined as a person or organization who purchases or receives from a Manufacturer or another Assembler the necessary component parts or pressure relief valves and assembles, adjusts, tests, seals, and ships pressure relief valves certified under this Division, at a geographical location other than and using facilities other than those used by the Manufacturer. An Assembler may be organizationally independent of a Manufacturer or may be wholly or partly owned by a Manufacturer.

UG-136(d) Production Testing by Manufacturers and Assemblers

UG-136(d)(1) Each pressure relief valve to which the Code Symbol Stamp is to be applied shall be subjected to the following tests by the Manufacturer or Assembler. A Manufacturer or Assembler shall have a documented program for the application, calibration, and maintenance of gages and instruments used during these tests.

UG-136(d)(2) The primary pressure parts of each pressure relief valve exceeding NPS 1 (DN 25) inlet size or 300 psi (2100 MPa) set pressure where the materials used are either cast or welded shall be tested at a pressure of at least 1.5 times the design pressure of the parts. These tests shall be conducted after all machining operations on the parts have been completed. There shall be no visible sign of leakage.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UG-136(d)(3) The secondary pressure zone of each closed bonnet pressure relief valve exceeding NPS 1 (DN 25) inlet size when such pressure relief valves are designed for discharge to a closed system shall be tested with air or other gas at a pressure of at least 30 psi (200 kPa). There shall be no visible sign of leakage.

UG-136(d)(4) Each pressure relief valve shall be tested to demonstrate its popping or set pressure. Pressure relief valves marked for steam service or having special internal parts for steam service shall be tested with steam, except that pressure relief valves beyond the capability of the production steam test facility either because of size or set pressure may be tested on air. Necessary corrections for differentials in popping pressure between steam and air shall be established by the Manufacturer and applied to the popping point on air. Pressure relief valves marked for gas or vapor may be tested with air. Pressure relief valves marked for liquid service shall be tested with water or other suitable liquid. When a valve is adjusted to correct for service conditions of superimposed back pressure, temperature, or the differential in popping pressure between steam and air, the actual test pressure (cold differential test pressure) shall be marked on the valve per UG-129. Test fixtures and test drums where applicable shall be of adequate size and capacity to ensure that pressure relief valve action is consistent with the stamped set pressure within the tolerances required by UG-134(d).

04 *UG-136(d)(5)* After completion of the tests required by (d)(4) above, a seat tightness test shall be conducted. Unless otherwise designated by a Manufacturer's published pressure relief valve specification or another specification agreed to by the user, the seat tightness test and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with API 527.

UG-136(d)(6) Testing time on steam pressure relief valves shall be sufficient, depending on size and design, to insure that test results are repeatable and representative of field performance.

UG-136(e) Design Requirements. At the time of the submission of pressure relief valves for capacity certification, or testing in accordance with (c)(3) above, the ASME designated organization has the authority to review the design for conformity with the requirements of UG-136(a) and UG-136(b) and to reject or require modification of designs which do not conform, prior to capacity testing.

UG-136(f) Welding and Other Requirements. All welding, brazing, heat treatment, and nondestructive examination used in the construction of bodies, bonnets, and yokes shall be performed in accordance with the applicable requirements of this Division.

UG-137 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR RUPTURE DISK DEVICES

UG-137(a) Mechanical Requirements

UG-137(a)(1) The design shall incorporate arrangements necessary to ensure consistent operation and tightness.

UG-137(a)(2) Rupture disk devices having threaded inlet or outlet connections shall be designed to allow for normal installation without damaging the rupture disk.

UG-137(b) Material Selections

UG-137(b)(1) The rupture disk material is not required to conform to a material specification listed in ASME Section II. The rupture disk material shall be controlled by the Manufacturer of the rupture disk device by a specification ensuring the control of material properties.

UG-137(b)(2) Materials used in rupture disk holders shall be listed in Section II and this Division. Carbon and low alloy steel holders and bolting (UG-20) subject to in-service temperatures colder than −20°F (−30°C) shall meet the requirements of UCS-66, unless exempted by the following.

(a) The coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is 0.40 or less.

(b) The material(s) is exempted from impact testing per Fig. UCS-66.

UG-137(b)(3) Materials used in other parts contained within the external structure of the rupture disk holder shall be one of the following categories:

(a) listed in Section II; or

(b) listed in ASTM specifications; or

(c) controlled by the Manufacturer of the rupture disk device by a specification insuring control of chemical and physical properties and quality at least equivalent to ASTM standards.

UG-137(c) Inspection of Manufacturing of Rupture Disk Devices

UG-137(c)(1) A Manufacturer shall demonstrate to the satisfaction of a representative of an ASME designated organization that its manufacturing, production, and testing facilities and quality control procedures will insure close agreement between the performance of random production samples and the performance of those devices submitted for Certification.

UG-137(c)(2) Manufacturing, assembly, inspection, and test operations are subject to inspections at any time by an ASME designee.

UG-137(c)(3) A Manufacturer may be granted permission to apply the UD Code Symbol to production rupture disk devices certified in accordance with UG-131 provided the following tests are successfully completed.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

This permission shall expire on the fifth anniversary of the date it is initially granted. The permission may be extended for five year periods if the following tests are successfully repeated within the 6 month period before expiration.

(a) Two production sample rupture disk devices of a size and capacity within the capability of an ASME accepted laboratory shall be selected by a representative of an ASME designated organization.

(b) Burst and flow testing shall be conducted in the presence of a representative of an ASME designated organization at a place which meets the requirements of UG-131(f). The device Manufacturer shall be notified of the time of the test and may have representatives present to witness the test.

(c) Should any device fail to meet or exceed the performance requirements (burst pressure, minimum net flow area, and flow resistance) of UG-127, the test shall be repeated at the rate of two replacement devices, selected and tested in accordance with (c)(3)(a) and (c)(3)(b) above for each device that failed.

(d) Failure of any of the replacement devices to meet the performance requirements of this Division shall be cause for revocation within 60 days of the authorization to use the Code Symbol on that particular type of rupture disk device design. During this period, the Manufacturer shall demonstrate the cause of such deficiency and the action taken to guard against future occurrence, and the requirements of (c)(3) above shall apply.

UG-137(d) Production Testing by Manufacturers

UG-137(d)(1) Each rupture disk device to which the Code Symbol Stamp is to be applied shall be subjected to the following tests by the Manufacturer. The Manufacturer shall have a documented program for the application, calibration, and maintenance of gages and instruments used during these tests.

UG-137(d)(2) The pressure parts of each rupture disk holder exceeding NPS 1 (DN 25) inlet size or 300 psi (2 100 kPa) design pressure where the materials used are either cast or welded shall be tested at a pressure of at least 1.5 times the design pressure of the parts. These tests shall be conducted after all machining operations on the parts have been completed but prior to installation of the rupture disk. There shall be no visible sign of leakage.

UG-137(d)(3) Each lot of rupture disks shall be tested in accordance with one of the following methods. All tests of disks for a given lot shall be made in a holder of the same form and pressure area dimensions as that being used in service. Sample rupture disks, selected from each lot of rupture disks, shall be made from the same material and of the same size as those to be used in service. Test results shall be applicable only to rupture disks used in disk holders supplied by the rupture disk Manufacturer.

(a) At least two sample rupture disks from each lot of rupture disks shall be burst at the specified disk temperature. The marked burst pressure shall be determined so that the sample rupture disk burst pressures are within the burst pressure tolerance specified by UG-127(a)(1).

(b) At least four sample rupture disks, but not less than 5% from each lot of rupture disks, shall be burst at four different temperatures distributed over the applicable temperature range for which the disks will be used. This data shall be used to establish a smooth curve of burst pressure versus temperature for the lot of disks. The burst pressure for each data point shall not deviate from the curve more than the burst pressure tolerance specified in UG-127(a)(1).

The value for the marked burst pressure shall be derived from the curve for a specified temperature.

(c) For prebulged solid metal disks or graphite disks only, at least four sample rupture disks using one size of disk from each lot of material shall be burst at four different temperatures, distributed over the applicable temperature range for which this material will be used. These data shall be used to establish a smooth curve of percent change of burst pressure versus temperature for the lot of material. The acceptance criteria of smooth curve shall be as in (d)(3)(b) above.

At least two disks from each lot of disks, made from this lot of material and of the same size as those to be used, shall be burst at the ambient temperature to establish the room temperature rating of the lot of disks. The percent change shall be used to establish the marked burst pressure at the specified disk temperature for the lot of disks.

UG-137(e) Design Requirements. At the time of the inspection in accordance with (c)(3) above, a representative from an ASME designated organization has the authority to review the design for conformity with the requirements of UG-137(a) and UG-137(b) and to reject or require modification of designs which to not conform, prior to capacity testing.

UG-137(f) Welding and Other Requirements. All welding, brazing, heat treatment, and nondestructive examination used in the construction of rupture disk holders and pressure parts shall be performed in accordance with the applicable requirements of this Division.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SUBSECTION B REQUIREMENTS PERTAINING TO METHODS OF FABRICATION OF PRESSURE VESSELS

PART UW REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS FABRICATED BY WELDING

GENERAL

UW-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UW are applicable to pressure vessels and vessel parts that are fabricated by welding and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

04 UW-2 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

(a) When vessels are to contain lethal[1] substances, either liquid or gaseous, all butt welded joints shall be fully radiographed, except under the provisions of UW-2(a)(2) and UW-2(a)(3) below, and UW-11(a)(4). When fabricated of carbon or low alloy steel, such vessels shall be postweld heat treated. When a vessel is to contain fluids of such a nature that a very small amount mixed or unmixed with air is dangerous to life when inhaled, it shall be the responsibility of the user and/or his designated agent to determine if it is lethal. If determined as lethal, the user and/or his designated agent [see U-2(a)] shall so advise the designer and/or Manufacturer. It shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer to comply with the applicable Code provisions (see UCI-2 and UCD-2).

(1) The joints of various categories (see UW-3) shall be as follows.

(a) Except under the provisions of (a)(2) or (a)(3) below, all joints of Category A shall be Type No. (1) of Table UW-12.

(b) All joints of Categories B and C shall be Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12.

(c) Category C joints for lap joint stub ends shall be as follows.

(1) The finished stub end shall be attached to its adjacent shell with a Type No. (1) or Type No. (2) joint of Table UW-12. The finished stub end can be made from a forging or can be machined from plate material. [See UW-13(g)].

[1] By "lethal substances" are meant poisonous gases or liquids of such a nature that a very small amount of the gas or of the vapor of the liquid mixed or unmixed with air is dangerous to life when inhaled. For purposes of this Division, this class includes substances of this nature which are stored under pressure or may generate a pressure if stored in a closed vessel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(2) The lap joint stub end shall be fabricated as follows:

(a) The weld is made in two steps as shown in Fig. UW-13.5.

(b) Before making weld No. 2, weld No. 1 is examined by full radiography in accordance with UW-51, regardless of size. The weld and fusion between the weld buildup and neck is examined by ultrasonics in accordance with Appendix 12.

(c) Weld No. 2 is examined by full radiography in accordance with UW-51.

(3) The finished stub end may either conform to ASME B16.9 dimensional requirements or be made to a non-standard size, provided all requirements of this Division are met.

(d) All joints of Category D shall be full penetration welds extending through the entire thickness of the vessel wall or nozzle wall.

(2) Radiographic examination of the welded seam in exchanger tubes and pipes, to a material specification permitted by this Division, which are butt welded without the addition of filler metal may be waived, provided the tube or pipe is totally enclosed within a shell of a vessel which meets the requirements of UW-2(a). In the case of an exchanger, the shell and channel sides must be constructed to the rules for lethal vessels.

(3) If only one side of a heat exchanger contains a lethal substance, the other side need not be built to the rules for a vessel in lethal service if:

(a) exchanger tubes are seamless; or

(b) exchanger tubes conform to a tube specification permitted by this Division, are butt welded without addition of filler metal, and receive in lieu of full radiography all of the following nondestructive testing and examination:

(1) hydrotest in accordance with the applicable specification;

(2) pneumatic test under water in accordance with the applicable material specification, or if not specified, in accordance with SA-688;

(3) ultrasonic or nondestructive electric examination of sufficient sensitivity to detect surface calibration notches in any direction in accordance with SA-557, S1 or S3.

No improvement in longitudinal joint efficiency is permitted because of the additional nondestructive tests.

(b) When vessels are to operate below certain temperatures designated by Part UCS (see UCS-68), or impact tests of the material or weld metal are required by Part UHA, the joints of various categories (see UW-3) shall be as follows.

(1) All joints of Category A shall be Type No. (1) of Table UW-12 except that for austenitic chromium–nickel stainless steels listed in UHA-51(d)(1)(a) which satisfy the requirements of UHA-51(f), Type No. (2) joints may be used.

(2) All joints of Category B shall be Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12.

(3) All joints of Category C shall be full penetration welds extending through the entire section at the joint.

(4) All joints of Category D shall be full penetration welds extending through the entire thickness of the vessel wall or nozzle wall except that partial penetration welds may be used between materials listed in Table UHA-23 as follows:

(a) for materials shown in UHA-51(d)(1)(a) and (b) and UHA-51(d)(2)(a) at minimum design metal temperatures (MDMTs) of −320°F (−196°C) and warmer;

(b) for materials shown in UHA-51(d)(1)(c) and UHA-51(d)(2)(b) at MDMTs of −50°F (−45°C) and warmer.

(c) Unfired steam boilers with design pressures exceeding 50 psi (345 kPa) shall have all joints of Category A (see UW-3) in accordance with Type No. (1) of Table UW-12 and all joints in Category B in accordance with Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12. All butt welded joints shall be fully radiographed except under the provisions of UW-11(a)(4). When fabricated of carbon or low-alloy steel, such vessels shall be postweld heat treated. See also U-1(g), UG-16(b), and UG-125(b).

(d) Pressure vessels or parts subject to direct firing [see U-1(h)] may be constructed in accordance with all applicable rules of this Division and shall meet the following requirements.

(1) All welded joints in Category A (see UW-3) shall be in accordance with Type No. (1) of Table UW-12, and all welded joints in Category B, when the thickness exceeds $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm), shall be in accordance with Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12. No welded joints of Type No. (3) of Table UW-12 are permitted for either Category A or B joints in any thickness.

(2) When the thickness at welded joints exceeds $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) for carbon (P-No. 1) steels and for all thicknesses for low alloy steels (other than P-No. 1 steels), postweld heat treatment is required. For all other material and in any thickness, the requirements for postweld heat treatment shall be in conformance with the applicable Subsections of this Division. See also U-1(g), UG-16(b), and UCS-56.

(3) The user, his agent, or the Manufacturer of the vessel shall make available to the Inspector the calculations used to determine the design temperature of the vessel. The provisions of UG-20 shall apply except that

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

pressure parts in vessel areas having joints other than Type Nos. (1) and (2) of Table UW-12, subject to direct radiation and/or the products of combustion, shall be designed for temperatures not less than the maximum surface metal temperatures expected under operating conditions.

UW-3 WELDED JOINT CATEGORY

(a) The term "Category" as used herein defines the location of a joint in a vessel, but not the type of joint. The "Categories" established by this paragraph are for use elsewhere in this Division in specifying special requirements regarding joint type and degree of inspection for certain welded pressure joints. Since these special requirements, which are based on service, material, and thickness, do not apply to every welded joint, only those joints to which special requirements apply are included in the categories. The special requirements will apply to joints of a given category only when specifically so stated. The joints included in each category are designated as joints of Categories A, B, C, and D below. Figure UW-3 illustrates typical joint locations included in each category.

(1) Category A. Longitudinal welded joints within the main shell, communicating chambers,[2] transitions in diameter, or nozzles; any welded joint within a sphere, within a formed or flat head, or within the side plates[3] of a flat-sided vessel; circumferential welded joints connecting hemispherical heads to main shells, to transitions in diameters, to nozzles, or to communicating chambers.[2]

(2) Category B. Circumferential welded joints within the main shell, communicating chambers,[2] nozzles, or transitions in diameter including joints between the transition and a cylinder at either the large or small end; circumferential welded joints connecting formed heads other than hemispherical to main shells, to transitions in diameter, to nozzles, or to communicating chambers.[2]

(3) Category C. Welded joints connecting flanges, Van Stone laps, tubesheets, or flat heads to main shell, to formed heads, to transitions in diameter, to nozzles, or to communicating chambers[2]any welded joint connecting one side plate[3]to another side plate of a flat-sided vessel.

(4) Category D. Welded joints connecting communicating chambers[2]or nozzles to main shells, to spheres, to transitions in diameter, to heads, or to flat-sided vessels, and those joints connecting nozzles to communicating chambers[2](for nozzles at the small end of a transition in diameter, see Category B).

(b) When butt welded joints are required elsewhere in this Division for Category B, an angle joint connecting a transition in diameter to a cylinder shall be considered as meeting this requirement provided the angle α (see Fig. UW-3) does not exceed 30 deg. All requirements pertaining to the butt welded joint shall apply to the angle joint.

MATERIALS

UW-5 GENERAL

(a) Pressure Parts. Materials used in the construction of welded pressure vessels shall comply with the requirements for materials given in UG-4 through UG-15, and shall be proven of weldable quality. Satisfactory qualification of the welding procedure under Section IX is considered as proof.

(b) Nonpressure Parts. Materials used for nonpressure parts which are welded to the pressure vessel shall be proven of weldable quality as described below.

(1) For material identified in accordance with UG-10, UG-11, UG-15, or UG-93, satisfactory qualification of the welding procedure under Section IX is considered as proof of weldable quality.

(2) For materials not identifiable in accordance with UG-10, UG-11, UG-15, or UG-93, but identifiable as to nominal chemical analysis and mechanical properties, S-Number under Section IX, QW/QB-422, or to a material specification not permitted in this Division, satisfactory qualification of the welding procedure under Section IX is considered as proof of weldable quality. For materials identified by S-Numbers, the provisions of Section IX, QW/QB-422 may be followed for welding procedure qualification. The welding procedure need only be qualified once for a given nominal chemical analysis and mechanical properties or material specification not permitted in this Division.

(3) Material which cannot be identified may be proved to be of weldable quality by preparing a butt-joint test coupon from each piece of nonidentified material to be used. Guided bend test specimens made from the test coupon shall pass the tests specified in QW-451 of Section IX.

(c) Two materials of different specifications may be joined by welding provided the requirements of Section IX, QW-250, are met.

(d) Materials joined by the electroslag and electrogas welding processes shall be limited to ferritic steels and the

[2] *Communicating chambers* are defined as appurtenances to the vessel which intersect the shell or heads of a vessel and form an integral part of the pressure containing enclosure, e.g., sumps.

[3] *Side plates of a flat-sided vessel* are defined as any of the flat plates forming an integral part of the pressure containing enclosure.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

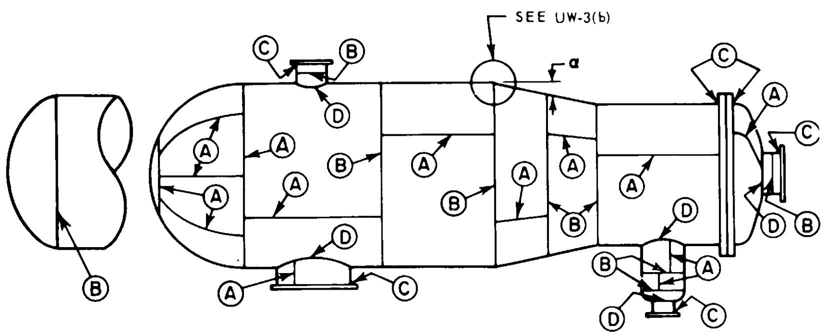


FIG. UW-3 ILLUSTRATION OF WELDED JOINT LOCATIONS TYPICAL OF CATEGORIES A, B, C, AND D

following austenitic steels which are welded to produce a ferrite containing weld metal: SA-240 Types 304, 304L, 316, and 316L; SA-182 F304, F304L, F316, and F316L; SA-351 CF3, CF3A, CF3M, CF8, CF8A, and CF8M.

(e) Materials joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be limited to materials assigned P-Numbers in Section IX and shall not include rimmed or semikilled steel.

DESIGN

UW-8 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are fabricated by welding and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Design* in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

UW-9 DESIGN OF WELDED JOINTS

(a) Permissible Types. The types of welded joints permitted in arc and gas welding processes are listed in Table UW-12, together with the limiting plate thickness permitted for each type. Butt type joints only are permitted with pressure welding processes [see UW-27(b)].

(b) Welding Grooves. The dimensions and shape of the edges to be joined shall be such as to permit complete fusion and complete joint penetration. Qualification of the welding procedure, as required in UW-28, is acceptable as proof that the welding groove is satisfactory.

(c) Tapered Transitions. A tapered transition having a length not less than *three* times the offset between the adjacent surfaces of abutting sections, as shown in Fig. UW-9, shall be provided at joints between sections that differ in thickness by more than one-fourth of the thickness of the thinner section, or by more than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm), whichever is less. The transition may be formed by any process that will provide a uniform taper. When the transition is formed by removing material from the thicker section, the minimum thickness of that section, after the material is removed, shall not be less than that required by UG-23(c). When the transition is formed by adding additional weld metal beyond what would otherwise be the edge of the weld, such additional weld metal buildup shall be subject to the requirements of UW-42. The butt weld may be partly or entirely in the tapered section or adjacent to it. This paragraph also applies when there is a reduction in thickness within a spherical shell or cylindrical shell course and to a taper at a Category A joint within a formed head. Provisions for tapers at circumferential, butt welded joints connecting formed heads to main shells are contained in UW-13.

(d) Except when the longitudinal joints are radiographed 4 in. (100 mm) each side of each circumferential welded intersection, vessels made up of two or more courses shall have the centers of the welded longitudinal joints of adjacent courses staggered or separated by a distance of at least five times the thickness of the thicker plate.

(e) Lap Joints. For lapped joints, the surface overlap shall be not less than four times the thickness of the inner plate except as otherwise provided for heads in UW-13.

(f) Welded Joints Subject to Bending Stresses. Except where specific details are permitted in other paragraphs, fillet welds shall be added where necessary to reduce stress concentration. Corner joints, with fillet welds only, shall not be used unless the plates forming the corner are properly supported independently of such welds. (See UW-18.)

(g) Minimum Weld Sizes. Sizing of fillet and partial penetration welds shall take into consideration the loading conditions in UG-22 but shall not be less than the minimum sizes specified elsewhere in this Division.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

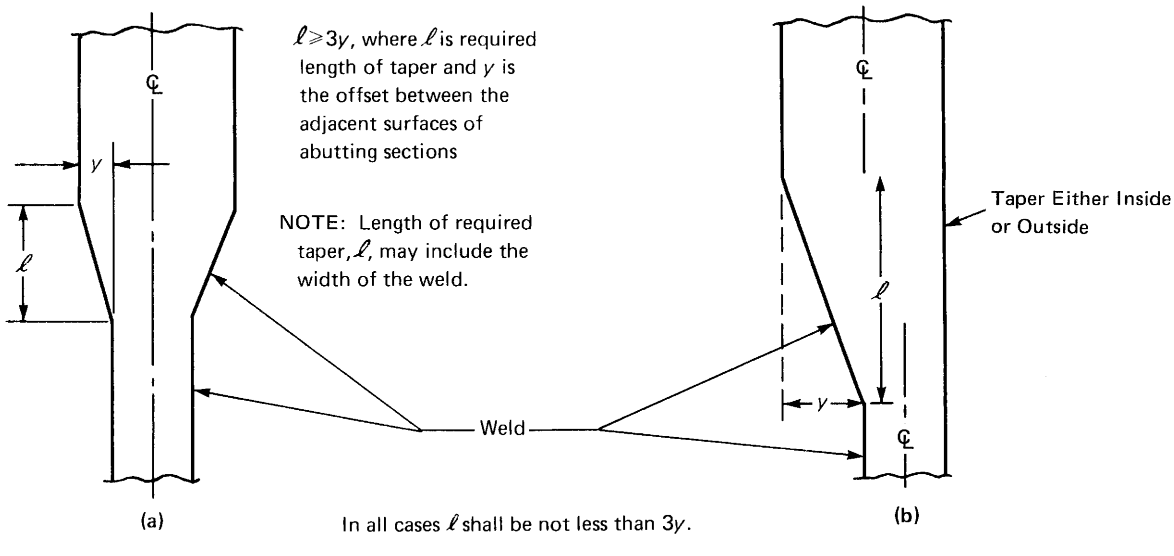


FIG. UW-9 BUTT WELDING OF PLATES OF UNEQUAL THICKNESS

UW-10 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

Pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts shall be postweld heat treated as prescribed in UW-40 when postweld heat treatment is required in the applicable part of Subsection C.

UW-11 RADIOGRAPHIC AND ULTRASONIC EXAMINATION

(a) Full Radiography. The following welded joints shall be examined radiographically for their full length in the manner prescribed in UW-51:

(1) all butt welds in the shell and heads of vessels used to contain lethal substances [see UW-2(a)];

(2) all butt welds in vessels in which the nominal thickness [see (g) below] at the welded joint exceeds $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm), or exceeds the lesser thicknesses prescribed in UCS-57, UNF-57, UHA-33, UCL-35, or UCL-36 for the materials covered therein, or as otherwise prescribed in UHT-57, ULW-51, ULW-52(d), ULW-54, or ULT-57; however, except as required by UHT-57(a), Categories B and C butt welds in nozzles and communicating chambers that neither exceed NPS 10 (DN 250) nor $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. (29 mm) wall thickness do not require any radiographic examination;

(3) all butt welds in the shell and heads of unfired steam boilers having design pressures exceeding 50 psi (350 kPa) [see UW-2(c)];

(4) all butt welds in nozzles, communicating chambers, etc., attached to vessel sections or heads that are required to be fully radiographed under (1) or (3) above; however, except as required by UHT-57(a), Categories B and C butt welds in nozzles and communicating chambers that neither exceed NPS 10 (DN 250) nor $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. (29 mm) wall thickness do not require any radiographic examination;

(5) all Category A and D butt welds in vessel sections and heads where the design of the joint or part is based on a joint efficiency permitted by UW-12(a), in which case:

(a) Category A and B welds connecting the vessel sections or heads shall be of Type No. (1) or Type No. (2) of Table UW-12;

(b) Category B or C butt welds [but not including those in nozzles or communicating chambers except as required in (2) above] which intersect the Category A butt welds in vessel sections or heads or connect seamless vessel sections or heads shall, as a minimum, meet the requirements for spot radiography in accordance with UW-52. Spot radiographs required by this paragraph shall not be used to satisfy the spot radiography rules as applied to any other weld increment.

(6) all butt welds joined by electrogas welding with any single pass greater than $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) and all butt welds joined by electroslag welding;

(7) ultrasonic examination in accordance with UW-53 may be substituted for radiography for the final closure seam of a pressure vessel if the construction of the vessel does not permit interpretable radiographs in accordance with Code requirements. The absence of suitable radiographic equipment shall not be justification for such substitution.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(8) exemptions from radiographic examination for certain welds in nozzles and communicating chambers as described in (2), (4), and (5) above take precedence over the radiographic requirements of Subsection C of this Division.

(b) Spot Radiography. Except as required in (a)(5)(b) above, butt welded joints made in accordance with Type No. (1) or (2) of Table UW-12 which are not required to be fully radiographed by (a) above, may be examined by spot radiography. Spot radiography shall be in accordance with UW-52. If spot radiography is specified for the entire vessel, radiographic examination is not required of Category B and C butt welds in nozzles and communicating chambers that exceed neither NPS 10 (DN 250) nor $1\frac{1}{8}$ in. (29 mm) wall thickness.

NOTE: This requirement specifies spot radiography for butt welds of Type No. (1) or No. (2) that are used in a vessel, but does not preclude the use of fillet and/or corner welds permitted by other paragraphs, such as for nozzle and manhole attachments, welded stays, flat heads, etc., which need not be spot radiographed.

(c) No Radiography. Except as required in (a) above, no radiographic examination of welded joints is required when the vessel or vessel part is designed for external pressure only, or when the joint design complies with UW-12(c).

(d) Electrogas welds in ferritic materials with any single pass greater that $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) and electroslag welds in ferritic materials shall be ultrasonically examined throughout their entire length in accordance with the requirements of Appendix 12. This ultrasonic examination shall be done following the grain refining (austenitizing) heat treatment or postweld heat treatment.

(e) In addition to the requirements in (a) and (b) above, all welds made by the electron beam process shall be ultrasonically examined for their entire length in accordance with the requirements of Appendix 12.

(f) When radiography is required for a welded joint in accordance with (a) and (b) above, and the weld is made by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes, the welded joints shall also be ultrasonically examined for their entire length in accordance with Appendix 12.

(g) For radiographic and ultrasonic examination of butt welds, the definition of nominal thickness at the welded joint under consideration shall be the nominal thickness of the thinner of the two parts joined. Nominal thickness is defined in 3-2.

UW-12 JOINT EFFICIENCIES

Table UW-12 gives the joint efficiencies E to be used in the formulas of this Division for joints completed by an arc or gas welding process. Except as required by UW-11(a)(5), a joint efficiency depends only on the type of joint and on the degree of examination of the joint and does not depend on the degree of examination of any other joint. The User or his designated agent [see U-2(a)] shall establish the type of joint and the degree of examination when the rules of this Division do not mandate specific requirements. Rules for determining the applicability of the efficiencies are found in the various paragraphs covering design formulas [for example, see UG-24(a) and UG-27]. For further guidance, see Appendix L.

(a) A value of E not greater than that given in column (a) of Table UW-12 shall be used in the design calculations for fully radiographed butt joints [see UW-11(a)], except that when the requirements of UW-11(a)(5) are not met, a value of E not greater than that given in column (b) of Table UW-12 shall be used.

(b) A value of E not greater than that given in column (b) of Table UW-12 shall be used in the design calculations for spot radiographed butt welded joints [see UW-11(b)].

(c) A value of E not greater than that given in column (c) of Table UW-12 shall be used in the design calculations for welded joints that are neither fully radiographed nor spot radiographed [see UW-11(c)].

(d) Seamless vessel sections or heads shall be considered equivalent to welded parts of the same geometry in which all Category A welds are Type No. 1. For calculations involving circumferential stress in seamless vessel sections or for thickness of seamless heads, $E = 1.0$ when the spot radiography requirements of UW-11(a)(5)(b) are met. $E = 0.85$ when the spot radiography requirements of UW-11(a)(5)(b) are not met, or when the Category A or B welds connecting seamless vessel sections or heads are Type No. 3, 4, 5, or 6 of Table UW-12.

(e) Welded pipe or tubing shall be treated in the same manner as seamless, but with allowable tensile stress taken from the welded product values of the stress tables, and the requirements of UW-12(d) applied.

(f) A value of E not greater than 0.80 may be used in the formulas of this Division for joints completed by any of the pressure welding processes given in UW-27(a), except for electric resistance welding, provided the welding process used is permitted by the rules in the applicable parts of Subsection C for the material being welded. The quality of such welds used in vessels or parts of vessels shall be proved as follows: Test specimens shall be representative of the production welding on each vessel. They may be removed from the shell itself or from a prolongation of the shell including the longitudinal joint, or, in the case of vessels not containing a longitudinal joint, from a test plate of the same material and thickness as the 04

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UW-12
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE JOINT EFFICIENCIES[1,5] FOR ARC AND GAS WELDED JOINTS

Type No.	Joint Description	Limitations	Joint Category	Degree of Radiographic Examination (a) Full[2]	(b) Spot[3]	(c) None
(1)	Butt joints as attained by double-welding or by other means which will obain the same quality of deposited weld metal on the inside and outside weld surfaces to agree with the requirements of UW-35. Welds using metal backing strips which remain in place are excluded.	None	A, B, C, & D	1.00	0.85	0.70
(2)	Single-welded butt joint with backing strip other than those included under (1)	*(a)* None except as in (b) below	A, B, C, & D	0.90	0.80	0.65
		(b) Circumferential butt joints with one plate offset; see UW-13(b)(4) and Fig. UW-13.1, sketch (k)	A, B, & C	0.90	0.80	0.65
(3)	Single-welded butt joint without use of backing strip	Circumferential butt joints only, not over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) thick and not over 24 in. (600 mm) outside diameter	A, B, & C	NA	NA	0.60
(4)	Double full fillet lap joint	*(a)* Longitudinal joints not over $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) thick	A	NA	NA	0.55
		(b) Circumferential joints not over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) thick	B & C[6]	NA	NA	0.55
(5)	Single full fillet lap joints with plug welds conforming to UW-17	*(a)* Circumferential joints[4] for attachment of heads not over 24 in. (600 mm) outside diameter to shells not over $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) thick	B	NA	NA	0.50
		(b) Circumferential joints for the attachment to shells of jackets not over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) in nominal thickness where the distance from the center of the plug weld to the edge of the plate is not less than $1^1/_2$ times the diameter of the hole for the plug.	C	NA	NA	0.50

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UW-12
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE JOINT EFFICIENCIES[1,5] FOR ARC AND GAS WELDED JOINTS (CONT'D)

Type No.	Joint Description	Limitations	Joint Category	Degree of Radiographic Examination (a) Full[2]	(b) Spot[3]	(c) None
(6)	Single full fillet lap joints without plug welds	*(a)* For the attachment of heads convex to pressure to shells not over $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) required thickness, only with use of fillet weld on inside of shell; or	A & B	NA	NA	0.45
		(b) for attachment of heads having pressure on either side, to shells not over 24 in. (600 mm) inside diameter and not over $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) required thickness with fillet weld on outside of head flange only	A & B	NA	NA	0.45
(7)	Corner joints, full penetration, partial penetration, and/or fillet welded	As limited by Fig. UW-13.2 and Fig UW-16.1	C[7] & D[7]	NA	NA	NA
(8)	Angle joints	Design per U-2(g) for Category B and C joints	B, C, & D	NA	NA	NA

NOTES:
(1) The single factor shown for each combination of joint category and degree of radiographic examination replaces both the stress reduction factor and the joint efficiency factor considerations previously used in this Division.
(2) See UW-12(a) and UW-51.
(3) See UW-12(b) and UW-52.
(4) Joints attaching hemispherical heads to shells are excluded.
(5) $E = 1.0$ for butt joints in compression.
(6) For Type No. 4 Category C joint, limitation not applicable for bolted flange connections.
(7) There is no joint efficiency E in the design formulas of this Division for Category C and D corner joints. When needed, a value of E not greater than 1.00 may be used.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

vessel and welded in accordance with the same procedure. One reduced-section tension test and two side-bend tests shall be made in accordance with, and shall meet the requirements of QW-150 and QW-160, Section IX.

UW-13 ATTACHMENT DETAILS

(a) Definitions

t_h = nominal thickness of head
t_p = minimum distance from outside surface of flat head to edge of weld preparation measured as shown in Fig. UW-13.2
t_s = nominal thickness of shell

(See UG-27, UG-28, UG-32, UG-34, and other paragraphs for additional definitions.)

(b)(1) Ellipsoidal, torispherical, and other types of formed heads, shall be attached to the shell as illustrated in the applicable Fig. UW-13.1 sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), and (k). The construction shown in sketch (f) may also be used for end heads when the thickness of the shell section of the vessel does not exceed $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) [see also (c) below]. Limitations relative to the use of these attachments shall be as given in the sketches and related notes and in Table UW-12. Figure UW-13.1 sketches (g), (h), and (j) are examples of attachment methods which are not permissible.

(2) Formed heads, concave or convex to the pressure, shall have a skirt length not less than that shown in Fig. UW-13.1, using the applicable sketch. Heads that are fitted inside or over a shell shall have a driving fit before welding.

(3) A tapered transition having a length not less than three times the offset between the adjacent surfaces of abutting sections as shown in Fig. UW-13.1 sketches (l) and (m) shall be provided at joints between formed heads and shells that differ in thickness by more than one-fourth the thickness of the thinner section or by more than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm), whichever is less. When a taper is required on any formed head thicker than the shell and intended for butt welded attachment [Fig. UW-13.1 sketches (n) and (o)], the skirt shall be long enough so that the required length of taper does not extend beyond the tangent line. When the transition is formed by removing material from the thicker section, the minimum thickness of that section, after the material is removed, shall not be less than that required by UG-23(c). When the transition is formed by adding additional weld metal beyond what would otherwise be the edge of the weld, such additional weld metal buildup shall be subject to the requirements of UW-42. The center line misalignment between shell and head shall be no greater than one-half the difference between the actual shell and head thickness, as illustrated in Fig. UW-13.1 sketches (l), (m), (n), and (o).

(4) Shells and heads may be attached to shells or heads using a butt weld with one plate offset as shown in Fig. UW-13.1 sketch (k). The weld bead may be deposited on the inside of the vessel only when the weld is accessible for inspection after the vessel is completed. The offset shall be smooth and symmetrical and shall not be machined or otherwise reduced in thickness. There shall be a uniform force fit with the mating section at the root of the weld. Should the offset contain a longitudinal joint the following shall apply.

(a) The longitudinal weld within the area of the offset shall be ground substantially flush with the parent metal prior to the offsetting operation.

(b) The longitudinal weld from the edge of the plate through the offset shall be examined by the magnetic particle method after the offsetting operation. Cracks and cracklike defects are unacceptable and shall be repaired or removed.

(c) As an acceptable alternative to magnetic particle examination or when magnetic particle methods are not feasible because of the nonmagnetic character of the weld deposit, a liquid penetrant method shall be used. Cracks and cracklike defects are unacceptable and shall be repaired or removed.

(c)(1) Intermediate heads, without limit to thickness, of the type shown in Fig. UW-13.1 sketch (f) may be used for all types of vessels provided that the outside diameter of the head skirt is a close fit inside the overlapping ends of the adjacent length of cylinder.

(2) The butt weld and fillet weld shall be designed to take shear based on $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum differential pressure that can exist. The allowable stress value for the butt weld shall be 70% of the stress value for the vessel material and that of the fillet 55%. The area of the butt weld in shear is the width at the root of the weld times the length of weld. The area of the fillet weld is the minimum leg dimension times the length of weld. The fillet weld may be omitted if the construction precludes access to make the weld, and the vessel is in noncorrosive service.

(d) The requirements for the attachment of welded unstayed flat heads to shells are given in UG-34 and in (e) and (f) hereunder.

(e) When shells, heads, or other pressure parts are welded to a forged or rolled plate to form a corner joint, as in Fig. UW-13.2, the joint shall meet the following requirements [see also UG-93(d)(3)].

(1) On the cross section through the welded joint, the line of fusion between the weld metal and the forged or rolled plate being attached shall be projected on planes

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

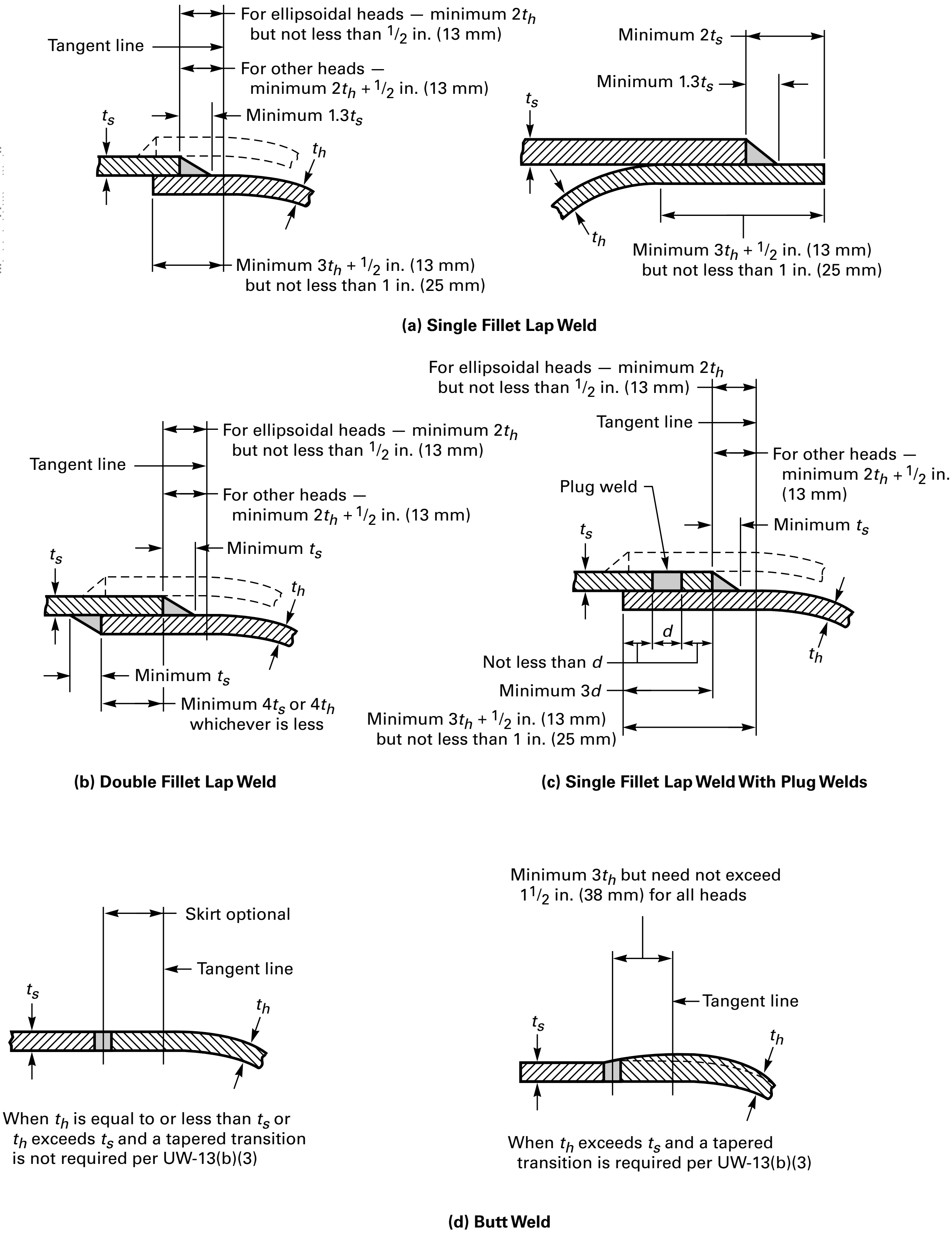
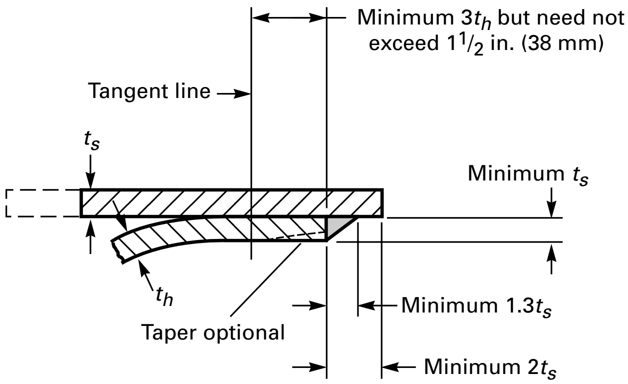
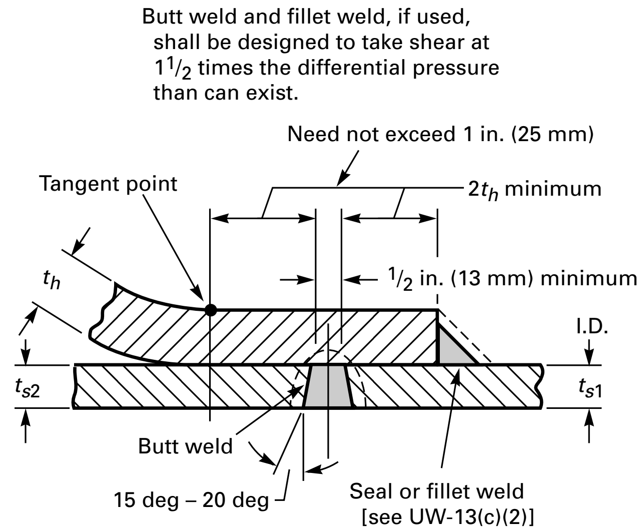


FIG. UW-13.1 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS
(See Table UW-12 for Limitations)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

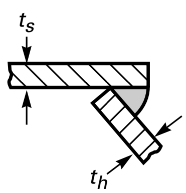


(e) Single Fillet Lap Weld

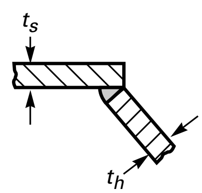


(f) Intermediate Head

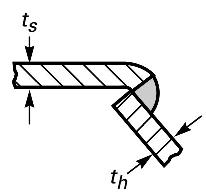
GENERAL NOTE: t_{s1} and t_{s2} may be different



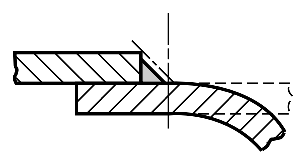
(g-1)



(g-2)

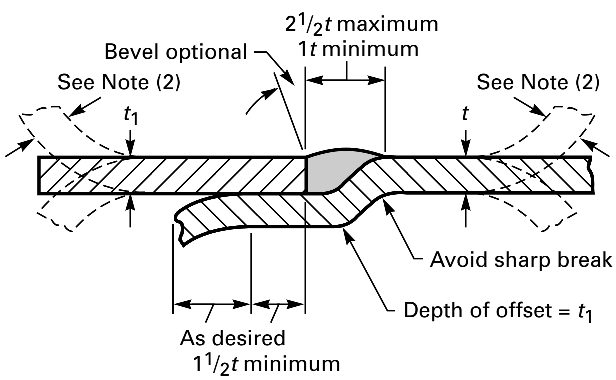


(h)



(j)

GENERAL NOTE: Sketches (g-1, (g-2), (h), and (j) are not permissible



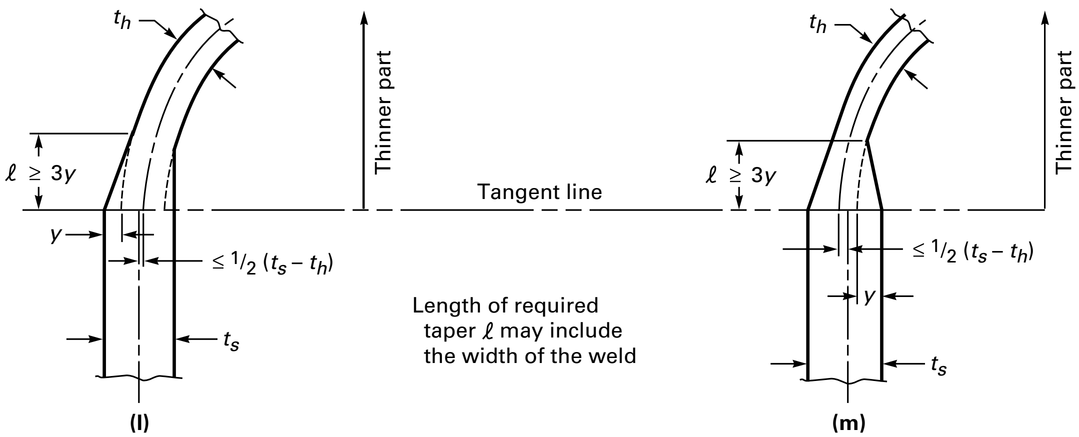
t or t_1 = $^5/_8$ maximum [see Note (1)]

NOTE:
(1) For joints connecting hemispherical heads to shells, the following shall apply:
 (a) t or t_1 = $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) maximum
 (b) maximum difference in thickness between t or t_1 = $^3/_{32}$ in. (2.5 mm);
 (c) use of this figure for joints connecting hemispherical heads to shells shall be noted in the "Remarks" part of the Data Report Form.
(2) See UW-13(b)(4) for limitation when weld bead is deposited from inside.

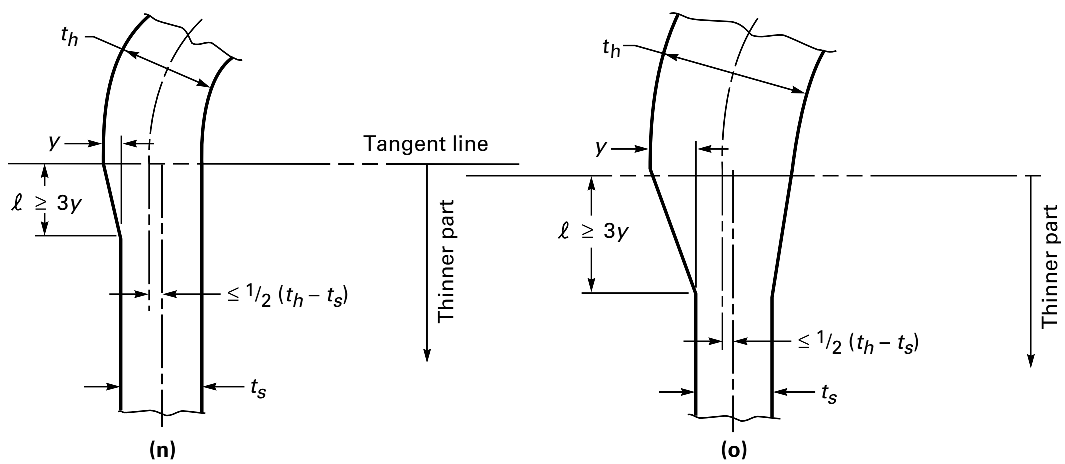
(k) Butt Weld With One Plate Edge Offset

FIG. UW-13.1 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS (CONT'D)
(See Table UW-12 for Limitations)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



In all cases, the projected length of taper ℓ shall be not less than $3y$.
The shell plate center line may be on either side of the head plate center line.

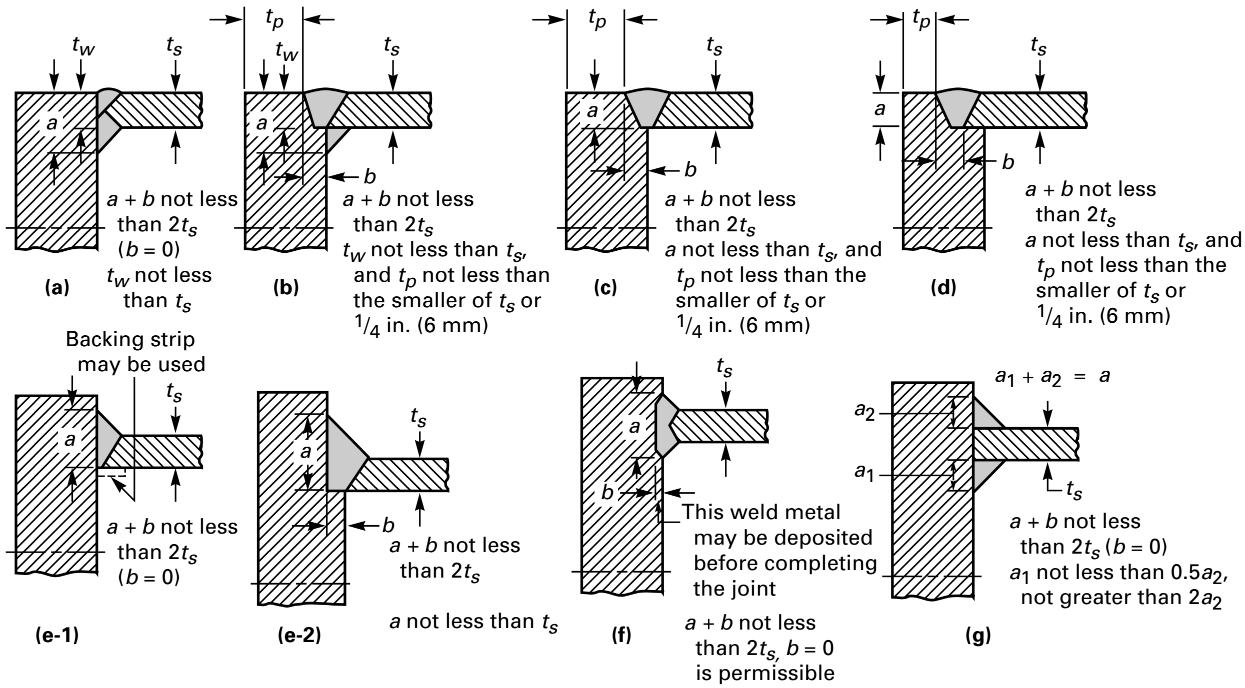


In all cases ℓ shall be not less than $3y$ when t_h exceeds t_s. Minimum length of skirt is $3t_h$ but need not exceed $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) except when necessary to provide required length of taper.
When t_h is equal to or less than $1.25t_s$, length of skirt shall be sufficient for any required taper.

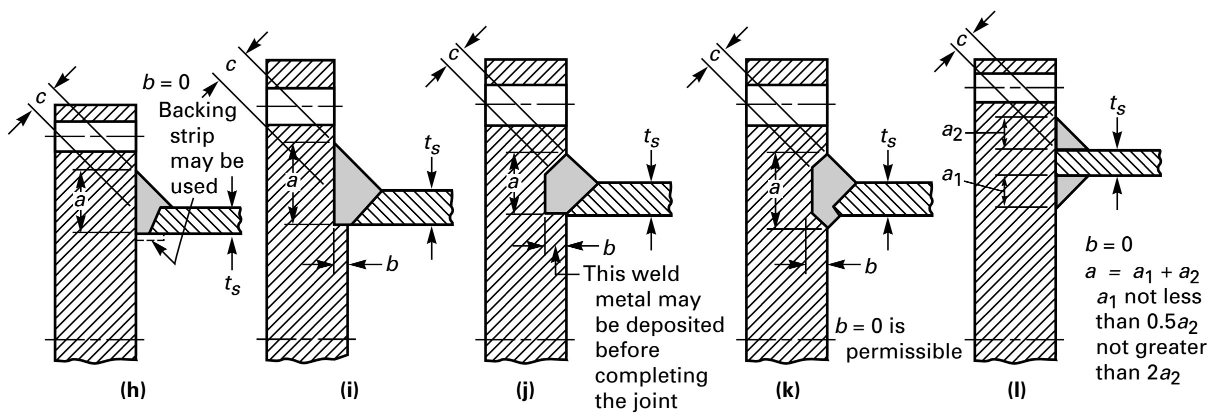
Length of required taper ℓ may include the width of the weld. The shell plate center line may be on either side of the head plate center line.

FIG. UW-13.1 HEADS ATTACHED TO SHELLS (CONT'D)
(See Table UW-12 for Limitations)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Typical Unstayed Flat Heads, Tubesheets Without a Bolting Flange, and Side Plates of Rectangular Vessels
For unstayed flat heads, see also UG-34



t_s is defined in UG-34(b)
Typical Tubesheets With a Bolting Flange

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) $a + b$ not less than $2t_s$, c not less than $0.7t_s$ or $1.4t_r$, whichever is less.
(b) t_s and t_r are as defined in UG-34(b).
(c) Dimension b is produced by the weld preparation and shall be verified after fit up and before welding.

FIG. UW-13.2 ATTACHMENT OF PRESSURE PARTS TO FLAT PLATES TO FORM A CORNER JOINT

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

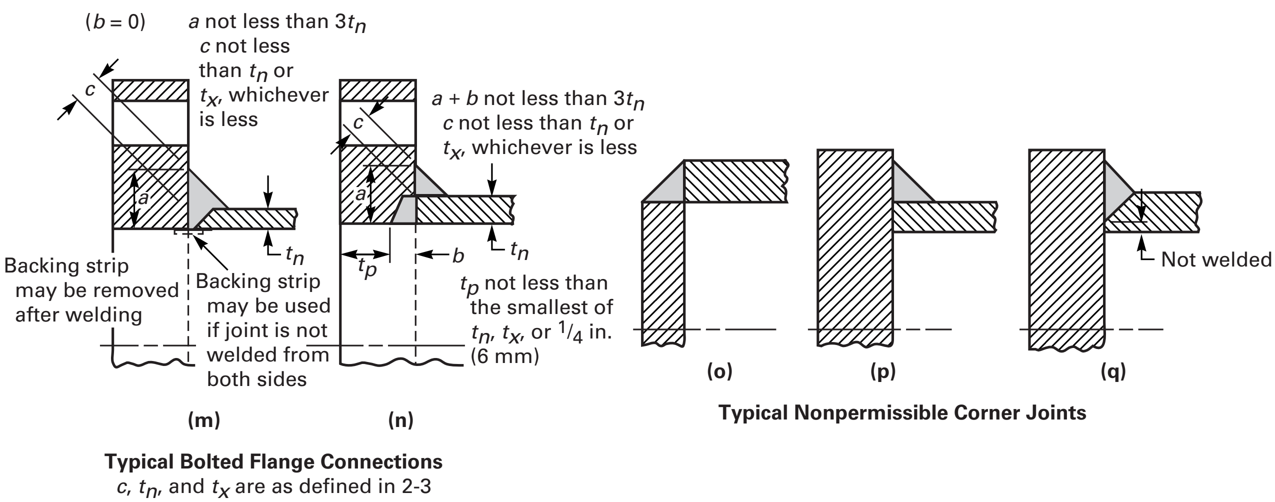


FIG. UW-13.2 ATTACHMENT OF PRESSURE PARTS TO FLAT PLATES TO FORM A CORNER JOINT (CONT'D)

both parallel to and perpendicular to the surface of the plate being attached, in order to determine the dimensions *a* and *b*, respectively (see Fig. UW-13.2).

(2) For flange rings of bolted flanged connections, the sum of *a* and *b* shall be not less than three times the nominal wall thickness of the abutting pressure part.

(3) For other components, the sum *a* and *b* shall be not less than two times the nominal wall thickness of the abutting pressure part. Examples of such components are flat heads, tube sheets with or without a projection having holes for a bolted connection, and the side plates of a rectangular vessel.

(4) Other dimensions at the joint shall be in accordance with details as shown in Fig. UW-13.2.

(5) Joint details that have a dimension through the joint less than the thickness of the shell, head or other pressure part, or that provide attachment eccentric thereto, are not permissible. See Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (o), (p), and (q).

(f) When used, the hub of a tubesheet or flat head shall have minimum dimensions in accordance with Fig. UW-13.3 and shall meet the following requirements.

(1) When the hub is integrally forged with the tubesheet or flat head, or is machined from a forging, the hub shall have the minimum tensile strength and elongation specified for the material, measured in the direction parallel to the axis of the vessel. Proof of this shall be furnished by a tension test specimen (subsize if necessary) taken in this direction and as close to the hub as practical.[4]

(2) When the hub is machined from plate, the requirements of Appendix 20 shall be met.

(g) When the hub of a lap joint stub end is machined from plate with the hub length in the through thickness direction of the plate, the requirements of Appendix 20 shall be met. **04**

(h) In the case of nozzle necks which attach to piping [see U-1(e)(1)(a)] of a lesser wall thickness, a tapered transition from the weld end of the nozzle may be provided to match the piping thickness although that thickness is less than otherwise required by the rules of this Division. This tapered transition shall meet the limitations as shown in Fig. UW-13.4. **04**

UW-14 OPENINGS IN OR ADJACENT TO WELDS

UW-14(a) Any type of opening that meets the requirements for reinforcement given in UG-37 or UG-39 may be located in a welded joint.

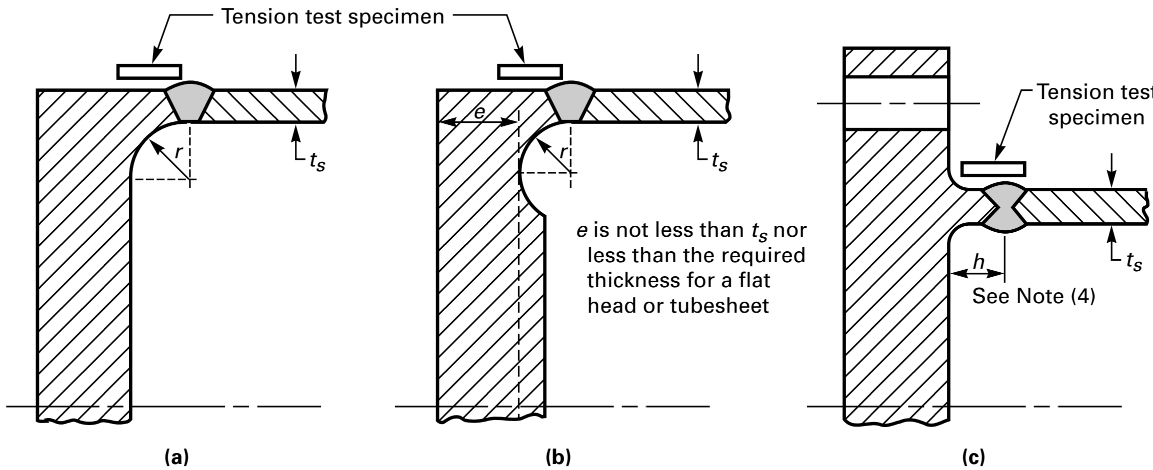
UW-14(b) Single openings meeting the requirements given in UG-36(c)(3) may be located in head-to-shell or Category B or C butt welded joints, provided the weld meets the radiographic requirements in UW-51 for a length equal to three times the diameter of the opening with the center of the hole at midlength. Defects that are completely removed in cutting the hole shall not be considered in judging the acceptability of the weld.

UW-14(c) In addition to meeting the radiographic requirements of (b) above, when multiple openings meeting the requirements given in UG-36(c)(3) are in line in a head-to-shell or Category B or C butt welded joint, the

[4] One test specimen may represent a group of forgings provided they are of the same design, are from the same heat of material and are forged in the same manner.

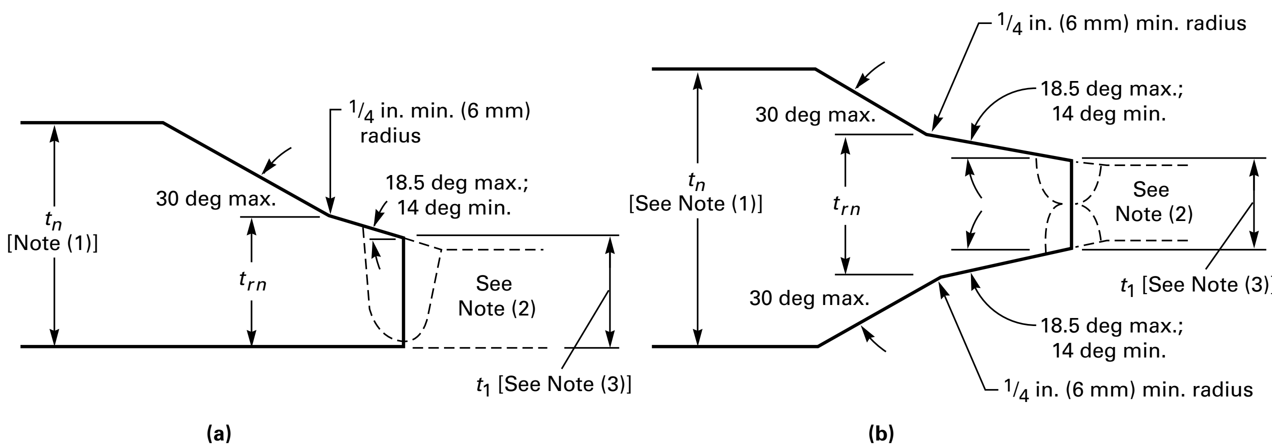
--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



NOTES:
(1) Refer to Fig. UG-34 sketch (b-2) for dimensional requirements.
(2) Not permissible if machined from rolled plate unless in accordance with Appendix 20. See UW-13(f).
(3) Tension test specimen may be located inside or outside the hub.
(4) h is the greater of $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) or $1.5t_s$, but need not exceed 2 in. (50 mm).

FIG. UW-13.3 TYPICAL PRESSURE PARTS WITH BUTT WELDED HUBS



NOTES:
(1) As defined in UG-40.
(2) Weld bevel is shown for illustration only.
(3) t_1 is not less than the greater of:
  (a) $0.8t_{rn}$ where
    t_{rn} = required thickness of seamless nozzle wall
  (b) Minimum wall thickness of connecting pipe

FIG. UW-13.4 NOZZLE NECKS ATTACHED TO PIPING OF LESSER WALL THICKNESS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

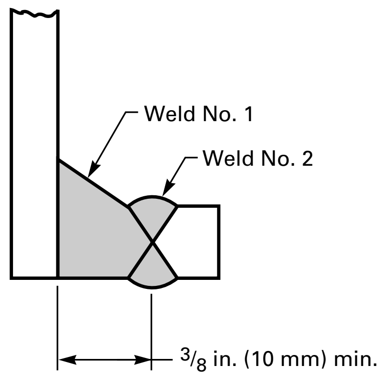


FIG. UW-13.5 FABRICATED LAP JOINT STUB ENDS FOR LETHAL SERVICE

requirements of UG-53 shall be met or the openings shall be reinforced in accordance with UG-37 through UG-42.

UW-14(d) Except when the adjacent butt weld satisfies the requirement for radiography in (b) above, the edge of openings in solid plate meeting the requirements of UG-36(c)(3) shall not be placed closer than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) from the edge of a Category A, B, or C weld for material $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) thick or less.

UW-15 WELDED CONNECTIONS

(a) Nozzles, other connections, and their reinforcements may be attached to pressure vessels by arc or gas welding. Sufficient welding shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the reinforcing parts as prescribed in UG-41 through shear or tension in the weld, whichever is applicable. The strength of groove welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear or to tension. The strength of fillet welds shall be based on the area subjected to shear (computed on the minimum leg dimension.) The inside diameter of a fillet weld shall be used in figuring its length.

(b) Strength calculations for nozzle attachment welds for pressure loading are not required for the following:

(1) Figure UW-16.1 sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f-1), (f-2), (f-3), (f-4), (g), (x-1), (y-1), and (z-1), and all the sketches in Figs. UHT-18.1 and UHT-18.2; see L-7.1 and L-7.7;

(2) openings that are exempt from the reinforcement requirements by UG-36(c)(3).

(3) openings designed in accordance with the rules for ligaments in UG-53.

(c) The allowable stress values for groove and fillet welds in percentages of stress values for the vessel material, which are used with UG-41 calculations, are as follows:

Groove-weld tension	74%
Groove-weld shear	60%
Fillet-weld shear	49%

NOTE: These values are obtained by combining the following factors: $87\frac{1}{2}$% for combined end and side loading, 80% for shear strength, and the applicable joint efficiency factors.

(d) Reinforcing plates and saddles of nozzles attached to the outside of a vessel shall be provided with at least one telltale hole [maximum size NPS $\frac{1}{4}$ (DN 8) tap] that may be tapped for a preliminary compressed air and soapsuds test for tightness of welds that seal off the inside of the vessel. These telltale holes may be left open or may be plugged when the vessel is in service. If the holes are plugged, the plugging material used shall not be capable of sustaining pressure between the reinforcing plate and the vessel wall.

UW-16 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ATTACHMENT WELDS AT OPENINGS

(a) General

(1) The terms: nozzles, connections, reinforcements, necks, tubes, fittings, pads, and other similar terms used in this paragraph define essentially the same type construction and form a Category D weld joint between the nozzle (or other term) and the shell, head, etc. as defined in UW-3(a)(4).

(2) The location and minimum size of attachment welds for nozzles and other connections shall conform to the requirements of this paragraph in addition to the strength calculations required in UW-15.

(b) Symbols. The symbols used in this paragraph and in Figs. UW-16.1 and UW-16.2 are defined as follows:

D_o = outside diameter of neck or tube attached by welding on inside of vessel shell only

G = radial clearance between hole in vessel wall and outside diameter of nozzle neck or tube

Radius = $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) minimum blend radius

r_1 = minimum inside corner radius, the lesser of $\frac{1}{4}t$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm)

t = nominal thickness of vessel shell or head,

t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle wall

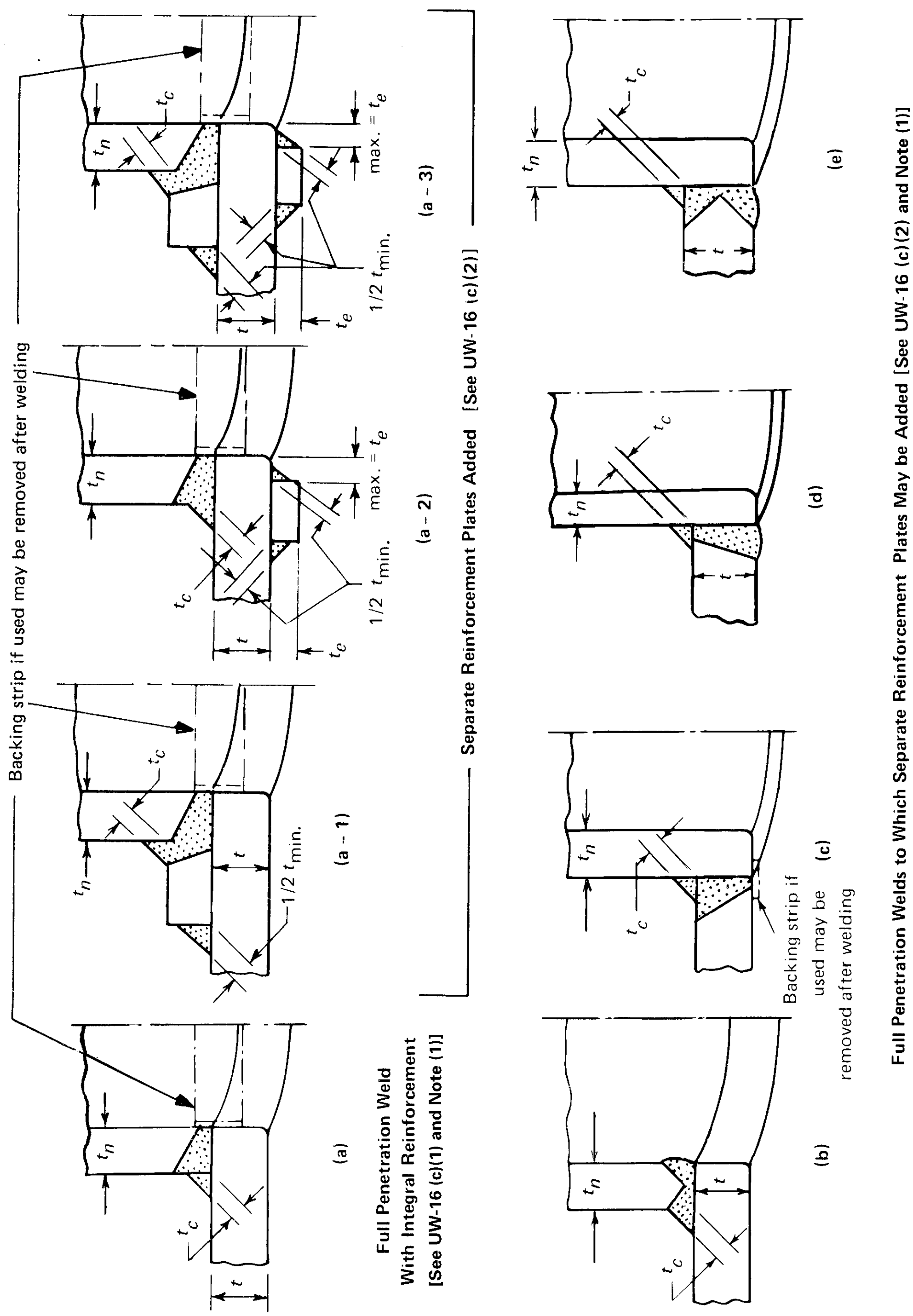
t_w = dimension of attachment welds (fillet, single-bevel, or single-J), measured as shown in Fig. UW-16.1

t_e = thickness of reinforcing plate, as defined in UG-40

t_{min} = the smaller of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) or the thickness of the thinner of the parts joined by a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

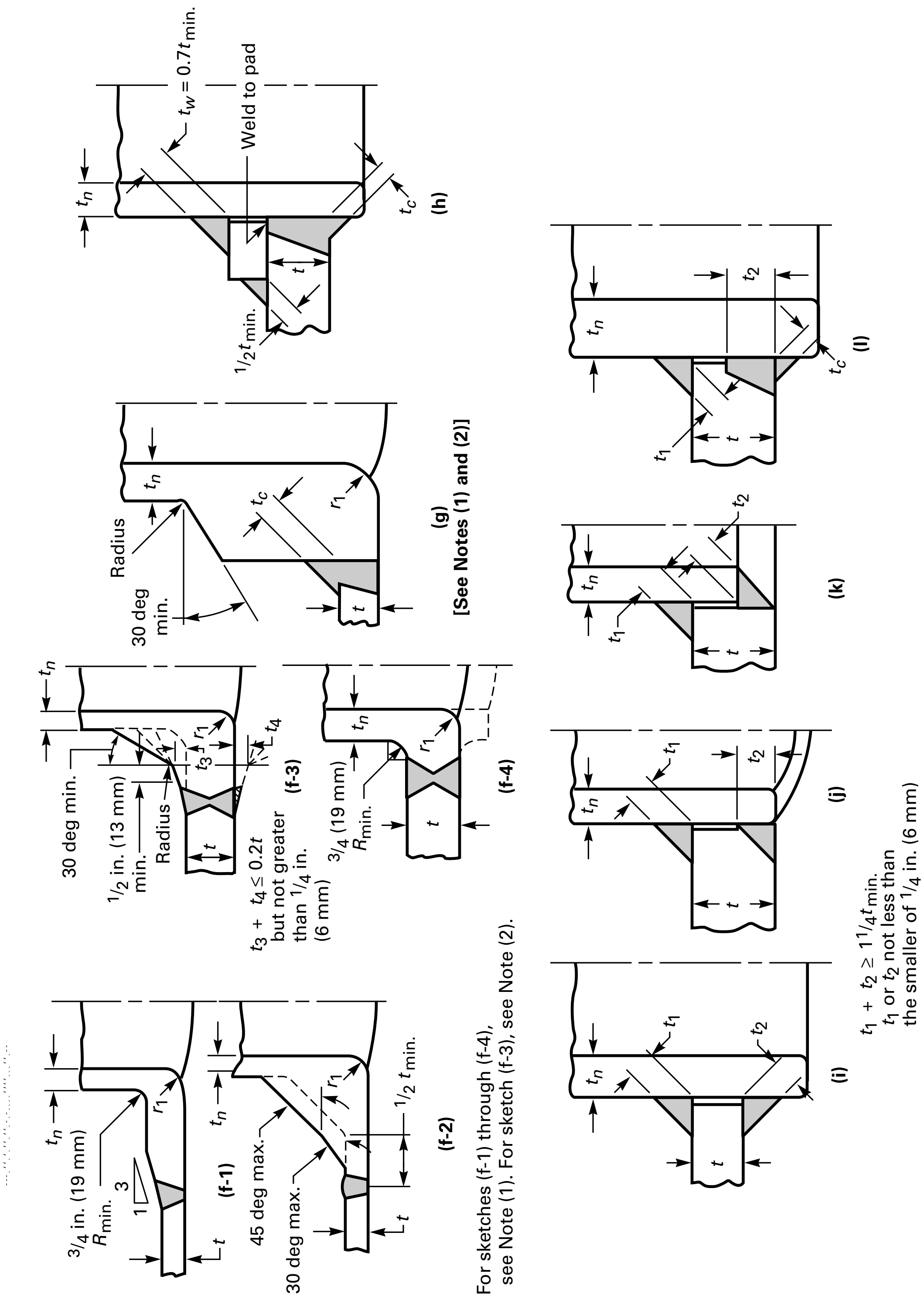
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



Notes follow on last page of this Figure

FIG. UW-16.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDED NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, HEADS, ETC.

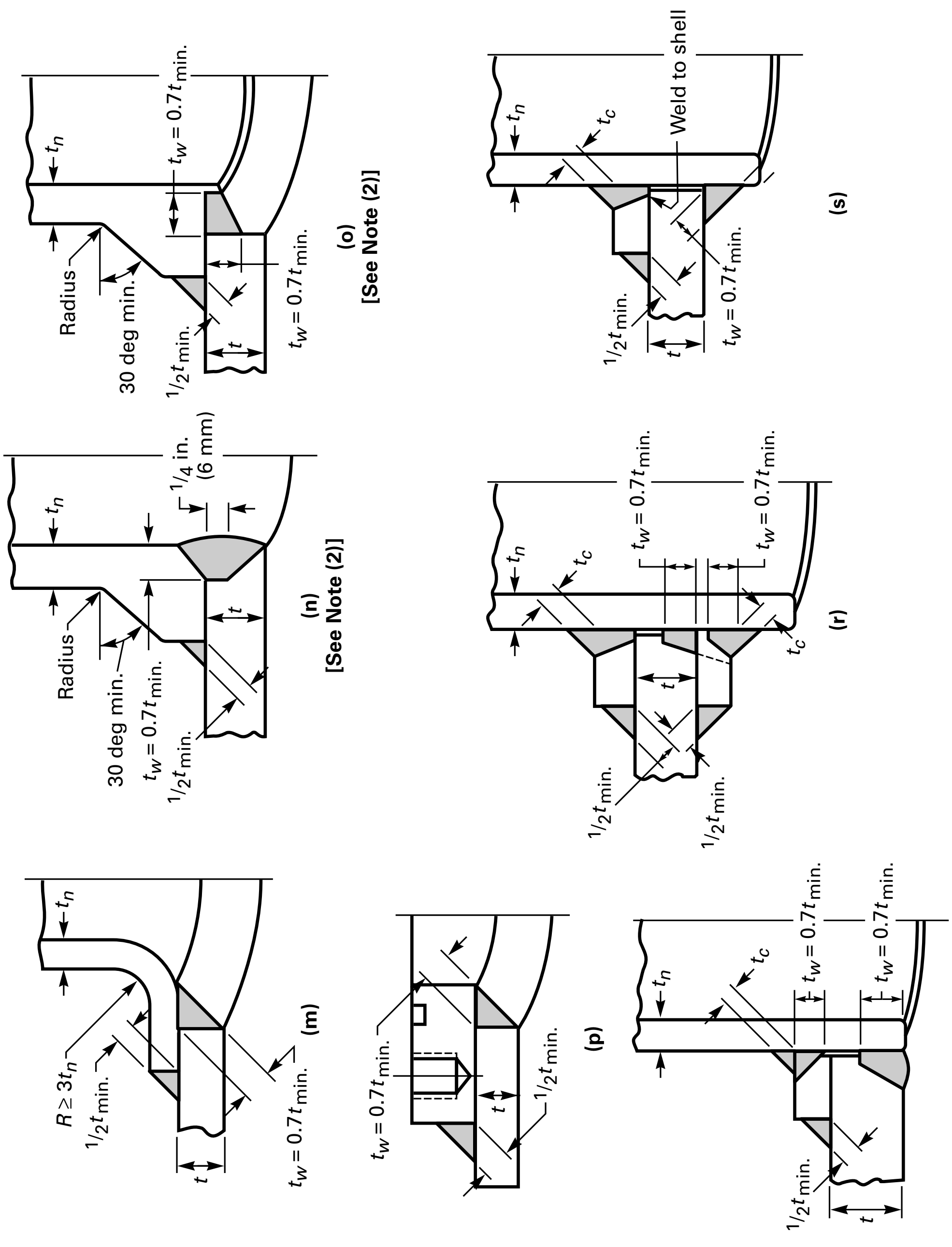
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



Notes follow on last page of this Figure

FIG. UW-16.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDED NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, HEADS, ETC. (CONT'D)

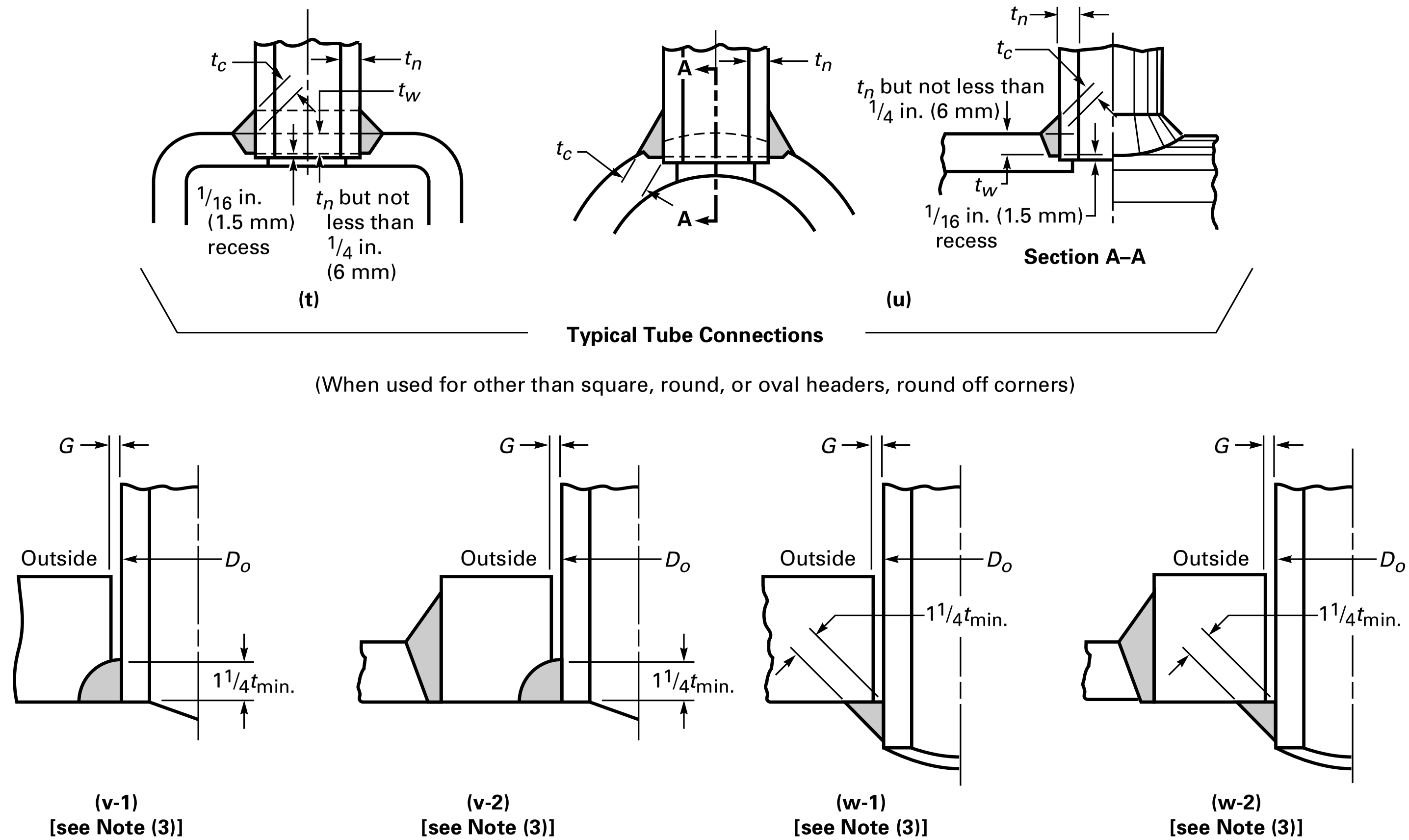
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Notes follow on last page of this Figure

FIG. UW-16.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDED NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, HEADS, ETC. (CONT'D)

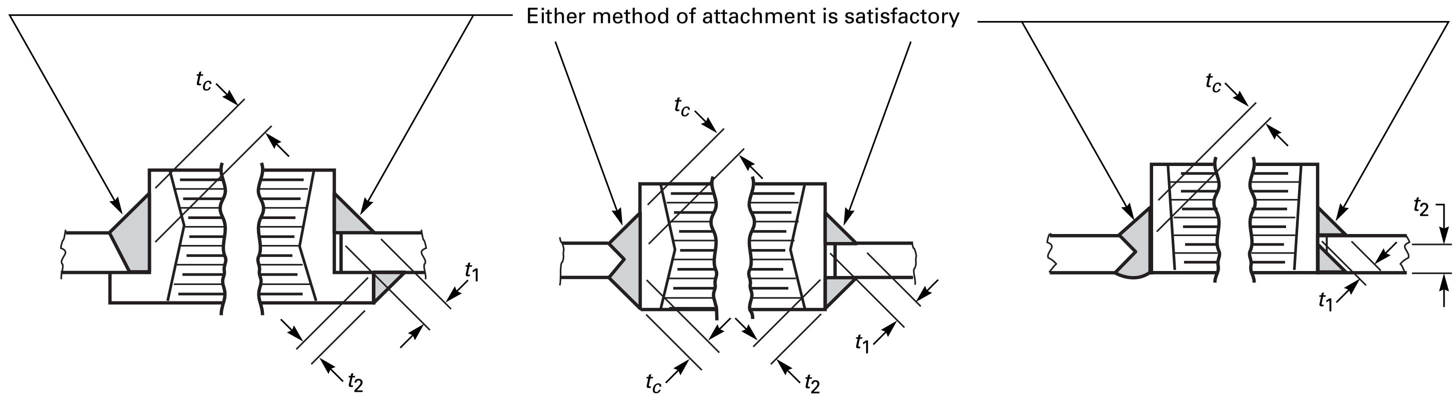
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Notes follow on last page of this Figure.

FIG. UW-16.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDED NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, HEADS, ETC. (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



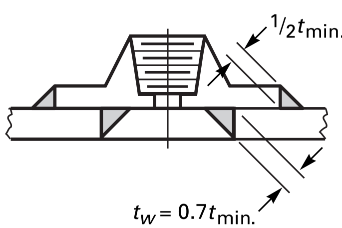
(x-1) (x-2)
[See Notes (1) and (4)]

(y-1) (y-2)
[See Notes (1) and (4)]

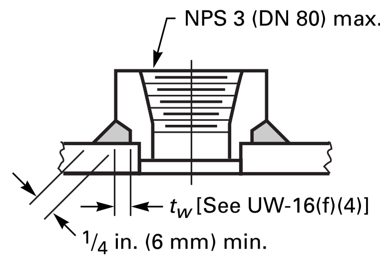
(z-1) (z-2)
[See Notes (1) and (4)]

$t_1 + t_2 \geq 1^1/_4 t_{min.}$

t_1 or t_2 not less than the smaller of $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_{min.}$



(aa)
[See Note (4)]



(bb)
[See Note (4)]

NOTES:
(1) Sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f-1) through (f-4), (g), (x-1), (y-1), and (z-1) are examples of nozzles with integral reinforcement.
(2) Where the term *Radius* appears, provide a $^1/_8$ in. (3 mm) minimum blend radius.
(3) For sketches (v-1) through (w-2):
(a) For applications where there are no external loads, $G = {}^1/_8$ in. (3 mm) max.
(b) With external loads:
$G = 0.005$ for $D_o \leq 1$ in. (25 mm); $G = 0.010$ for 1 in. (25 mm) $< D_o \leq 4$ in. (100 mm); $G = 0.015$ for 4 in. (100 mm) $< D_o \leq 6^5/_8$ in. (170 mm).
(4) For NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, see exemptions in UW-16(f)(2).

FIG. UW-16.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF WELDED NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS TO SHELLS, HEADS, ETC. (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

t_c = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_{\min}$ (inside corner welds may be further limited by a lesser length of projection of the nozzle wall beyond the inside face of the vessel wall)

t_1 or t_2 = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_{\min}$

(c) Necks Attached by a Full Penetration Weld. Necks abutting a vessel wall shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (a) and (b) for examples. Necks inserted through the vessel wall may be attached by a full penetration groove weld. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (c), (d), and (e). When complete joint penetration cannot be verified by visual inspection or other means permitted in this Division, backing strips or equivalent shall be used with full penetration welds deposited from one side.

If additional reinforcement is required, it shall be provided as integral reinforcement as described in (1) below, or by the addition of separate reinforcement elements (plates) attached by welding as described in (2) below.

(1) Integral reinforcement is that reinforcement provided in the form of extended or thickened necks, thickened shell plates, forging type inserts, or weld buildup which is an integral part of the shell or nozzle wall and, where required, is attached by full penetration welds. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (f-1), (f-2), (f-3), (f-4), (g), (x-1), (y-1), and (z-1) for examples of nozzles with integral reinforcement where the F factor in UG-37(b) may be used.

04 *(2)* Separate reinforcement elements (plates) may be added to the outside surface of the shell wall, the inside surface of the shell wall, or to both surfaces of the shell wall. When this is done, the nozzle and reinforcement is no longer considered a nozzle with integral reinforcement and the F factor in UG-37(a) shall be $F = 1.0$. Figure UW-16.1 sketches (a-1), (a-2), and (a-3) depict various applications of reinforcement elements added to sketch (a). Any of these applications of reinforcement elements may be used with necks of the types shown in Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (b), (c), (d), and (e) or any other integral reinforcement types listed in (1) above. The reinforcement plates shall be attached by welds at the outer edge of the plate, and at the nozzle neck periphery or inner edge of the plate if no nozzle neck is adjacent to the plate.

(a) The weld at the outer edge of the reinforcement plate shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of $\frac{1}{2}t_{\min}$.

(b) The weld at the inner edge of the reinforcement plate which does not abut a nozzle neck shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension $\frac{1}{2}t_{\min}$ [see Fig. UW-16.1, sketches (a-2) and (a-3)].

(c) The weld at the inner edge of the reinforcement plate when the reinforcement plate is full penetration welded to the nozzle neck shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of t_c [see Fig. UW-16.1, sketches (a-1) and (a-3)].

(d) The weld at the inner edge of the reinforcement plate when the reinforcement plate is not full penetration welded to the nozzle neck shall be a fillet weld with a minimum throat dimension of $t_w = 0.7t_{\min}$ [see Fig. UW-16.1, sketch (h)].

(d) Neck Attached by Fillet or Partial Penetration Welds

(1) Necks inserted into or through the vessel wall may be attached by fillet or partial penetration welds, one on each face of the vessel wall. The welds may be any desired combination of fillet, single-bevel, and single-J welds. The dimension of t_1 or t_2 for each weld shall be not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $0.7t_{\min}$, and their sum shall be not less than $1\frac{1}{4}t_{\min}$. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (i), (j), (k), and (l).

If additional reinforcement is required, it may be provided in the form of extended or thickened necks, thickened shell plates, forgings, and/or separate reinforcement elements (plates) attached by welding. Weld requirements shall be the same as given in (c)(2) above, except as follows. The welds attaching the neck to the vessel wall or to the reinforcement plate shall consist of one of the following:

(a) a single-bevel or single-J weld in the shell plate, and a single-bevel or single-J weld in each reinforcement plate. The dimension t_w of each weld shall be not less than $0.7t_{\min}$. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (q) and (r).

(b) a full penetration groove weld in each reinforcement plate, and a fillet, single-bevel, or single-J weld with a weld dimension t_w not less than $0.7t_{\min}$ in the shell plate. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketch (s).

(2) Nozzle necks, flared necks, and studding outlet type flanges may be attached by fillet welds or partial penetration welds between the outside diameter or the attachment and the outside surface of the shell and at the inside of the opening in the shell. The throat dimension of the outer attachment weld shall not be less than $\frac{1}{2}t_{\min}$. The dimension t_w of the weld at the inside of the shell cutout shall not be less than $0.7t_{\min}$. See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (m), (n), (o), and (p).

(e) Necks and Tubes up to and Including NPS 6 (DN 150) Attached From One Side Only. Necks and tubes not exceeding NPS 6 (DN 150) may be attached from one

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

side only on either the outside or inside surface of the vessel.

(1) When the neck or tube is attached from the outside only, a welding groove shall be cut into the surface to a depth of not less than t_n on the longitudinal axis of the opening. It is recommended that a recess $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) deep be provided at the bottom of the groove in which to center the nozzle. The dimension t_w of the attachment weld shall be not less than t_n nor less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) See Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (t) and (u).

(2) When the neck or tube is attached from the inside only, the depth of welding groove or throat of fillet weld shall be at least equal to $1^1/_4 t_{min}$. Radial clearance between vessel hole and nozzle outside diameter at the unwelded side shall not exceed tolerances given in Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (v-1), (v-2), (w-1), and (w-2). Such attachments shall satisfy the rules for reinforcement of openings except that no material in the nozzle neck shall be counted as reinforcement.

(f) Fittings: Internally Threaded, Externally Threaded, Socket Welded or Butt Welded. The attachment of fittings shall meet the following requirements.

(1) Except as provided for in (2), (3), (4), (5), and (6) below, fittings shall be attached by a full penetration groove weld or by two fillet or partial penetration welds, one on each face of the vessel wall. The minimum weld dimensions shall be as shown in Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (x), (y), (z), and (aa).

(2) Fittings not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80) shown on Fig. UW-16.1 sketches (x), (y), (z), (aa), and (bb) may be attached by welds that are exempt from size requirements with the following limitations.

(a) UW-15(a) requirements shall be satisfied for UG-22 loadings.

(b) For partial penetration welds or fillet welds, t_1 or t_2 shall not be less than the smaller of $^3/_{32}$ in. (2.5 mm) or $0.7t_{min}$.

(3)(a) Fittings and bolting pads not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80), as shown in Fig. UW-16.2, may be attached to vessels by a fillet weld deposited from the outside only with the following limitations:

(1) maximum vessel wall thickness of $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm);

(2) the maximum size of the opening in the vessel is limited to the outside diameter of the attached pipe plus $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm), but not greater than one-half of the vessel inside diameter;

(3) the attachment weld throat shall be the greater of the following:

(a) the minimum nozzle neck thickness required by UG-45 for the same nominal size connection; or

(b) that necessary to satisfy the requirements of UW-18 for the applicable loadings of UG-22.

(4) the typical fitting dimension t_f as shown in Fig. UW-16.2 sketch (p) shall be sufficient to accommodate a weld leg which will provide a weld throat dimension.

(5) In satisfying the rules for reinforcement of openings, no material in the nozzle neck shall be counted as reinforcement. 04

(b) If the opening exceeds the requirements of (f)(3)(a)(2) above or (f)(5)(d) below in any direction, or is greater than one-half the vessel inside diameter, the part of the vessel affected shall be subjected to a proof test as required in UG-36(a)(2), or the opening shall be reinforced in accordance with UG-37 and the nozzle or other connection attached, using a suitable detail in Fig. UW-16.1, if welded.

(4) Fittings not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80) may be attached by a fillet groove weld from the outside only as shown in Fig. UW-16.1 sketch (bb). The groove weld t_w shall not be less than the thickness of Schedule 160 pipe (ANSI/ASME B36.10).

(5) Flange-type fittings not exceeding NPS 2 (DN 50), with some acceptable types such as those shown in Fig. UW-16.2, may be attached without additional reinforcement other than that in the fitting and its attachment to the vessel wall. The construction satisfies the requirements of this Division without further calculation or proof test as permitted in UG-36(c)(3) provided all of the following conditions are met.

(a) Maximum vessel wall thickness shall not exceed $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm).

(b) Maximum design pressure shall not exceed 350 psi (2.5 MPa).

(c) Minimum fillet leg t_f is $^3/_{32}$ in. (2.45 mm).

(d) The finished opening, defined as the hole in the vessel wall, shall not exceed the outside diameter of the nominal pipe size plus $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm).

(6) Fittings conforming to Fig. UW-16.2 sketch (k) not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80) may be attached by a single fillet weld on the inside of the vessel only, provided the criteria of Fig. UW-16.1 sketch (w) and UW-16(e)(2) are met.

UW-17 PLUG WELDS

(a) Plug welds may be used in lap joints, in reinforcements around openings and in nonpressure structural attachments. They shall be properly spaced to carry their proportion of the load, but shall not be considered to take more than 30% of the total load to be transmitted.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

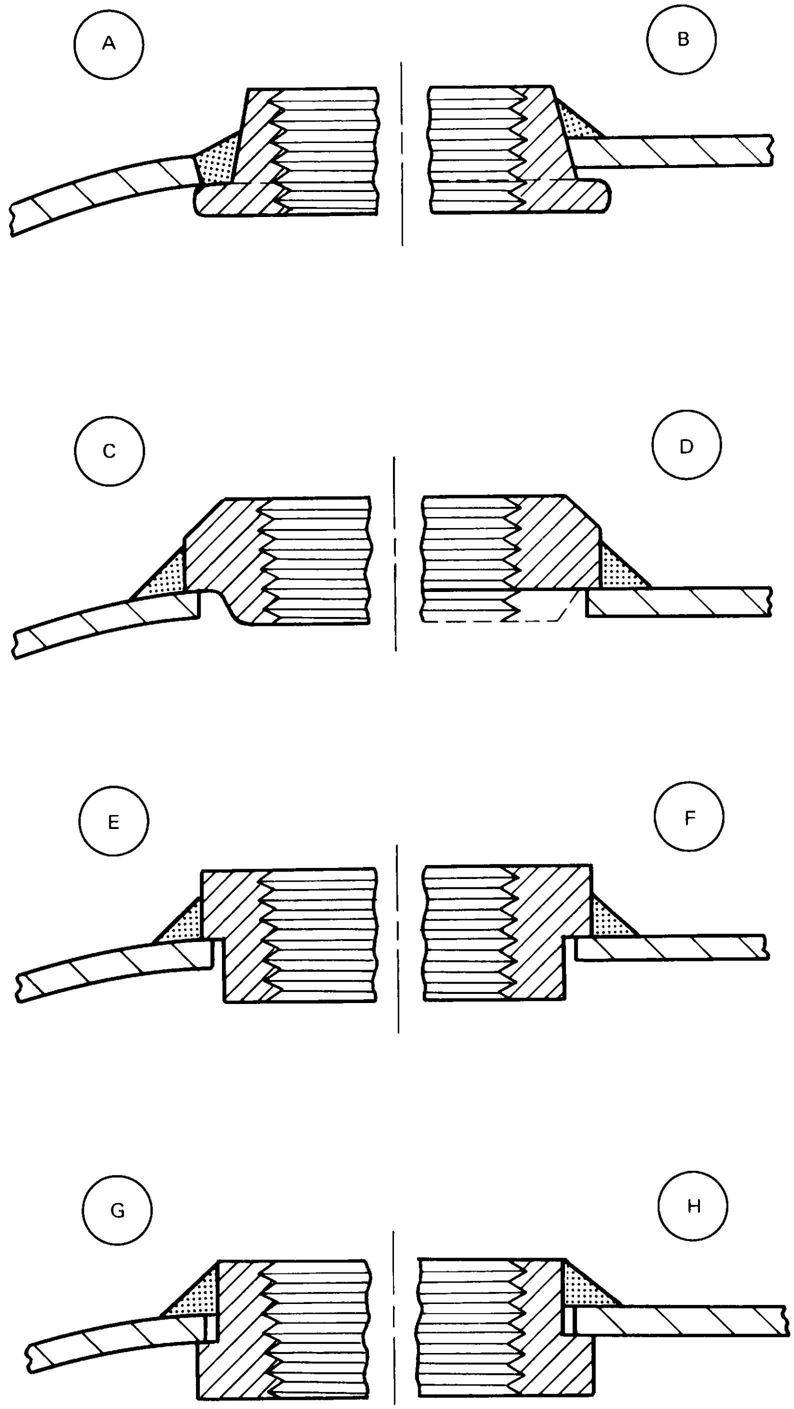


FIG. UW-16.2 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF SMALL FITTINGS
See UW-16(f)(3)(a) for Limitations

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

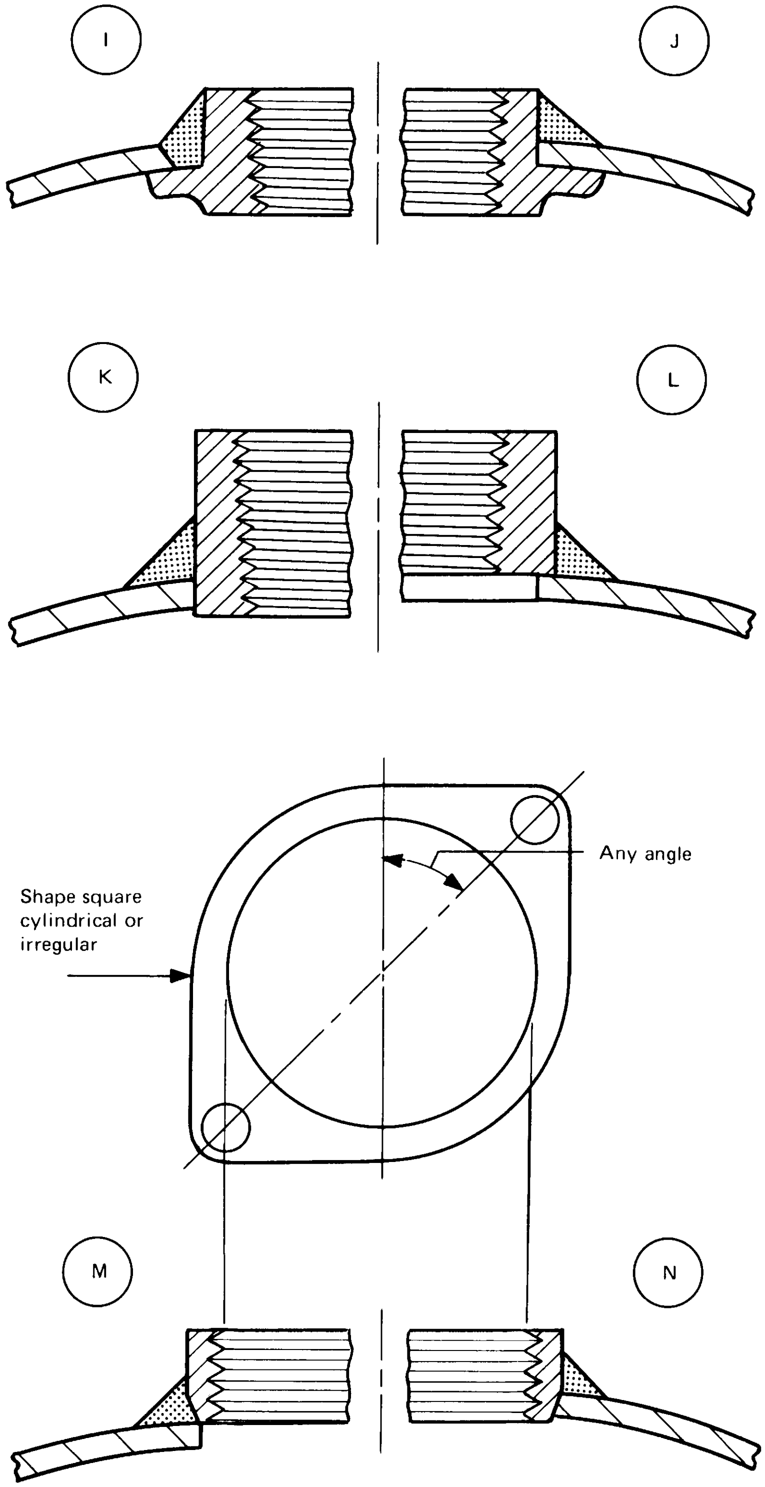


FIG. UW-16.2 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF SMALL FITTINGS (CONT'D)
See UW-16(f)(3)(a) for Limitations

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

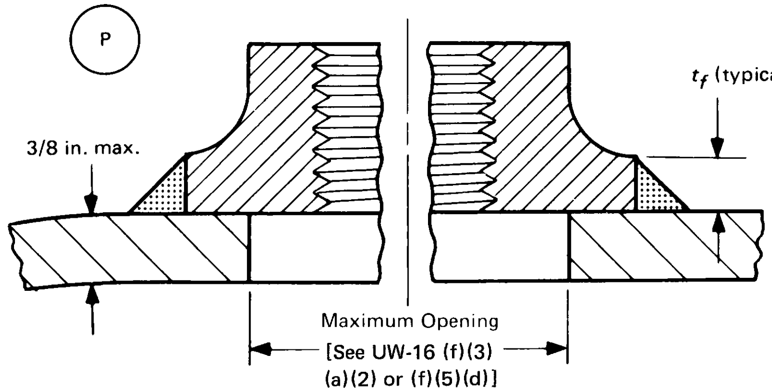


FIG. UW-16.2 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF SMALL FITTINGS (CONT'D)
See UW-16(f)(3)(a) for Limitations

(b) Plug weld holes shall have a diameter not less than $t + \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) and not more than $2t + \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), where t is the thickness in inches of the plate or attached part in which the hole is made.

(c) Plug weld holes shall be completely filled with weld metal when the thickness of the plate, or attached part, in which the weld is made is $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) or less; for thicker plates or attached parts the holes shall be filled to a depth of at least half the plate thickness or $\frac{5}{16}$ of the hole diameter, whichever is larger, but in no case less than $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm).

(d) The allowable working load on a plug weld in either shear or tension shall be computed by the following formula:

(U.S. Customary Units)

$$P = 0.63S(d - {}^1/_4)^2$$

(SI Units)

$$P = 0.63S(d - 6)^2$$

where

P = total allowable working load on the plug weld
d = the bottom diameter of the hole in which the weld is made
S = maximum allowable stress value for the material in which the weld is made (see UG-23)

UW-18 FILLET WELDS

(a) Fillet welds may be employed as strength welds for pressure parts within the limitations given elsewhere in this Division. Particular care shall be taken in the layout of joints in which fillet welds are to be used in order to assure complete fusion at the root of the fillet.

(b) Corner or tee joints may be made with fillet welds provided the plates are properly supported independently of such welds, except that independent supports are not required for joints used for the purposes enumerated in UG-55.

(c) Figures UW-13.1 and UW-13.2 show several construction details that are not permissible.

(d) Unless the sizing basis is given elsewhere in this Division, the allowable load on fillet welds shall equal the product of the weld area (based on minimum leg dimension), the allowable stress value in tension of the material being welded, and a joint efficiency of 55%.

UW-19 WELDED STAYED CONSTRUCTION

(a) Welded-in staybolts shall meet the following requirements:

(1) the arrangement shall substantially conform to one of those illustrated in Fig. UW-19.1;

(2) the required thickness of the plate shall not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm), but if greater than $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm), the staybolt pitch shall not exceed 20 in. (500 mm);

(3) the provisions of UG-47 and UG-49 shall be followed; and

(4) the required area of the staybolt shall be determined in accordance with the requirements in UG-50.

(b) Welded stays, substantially as shown in Fig. UW-19.2, may be used to stay jacketed pressure vessels provided:

(1) the pressure does not exceed 300 psi (2 MPa);

(2) the required thickness of the plate does not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm);

(3) the size of the fillet welds is not less than the plate thickness;

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

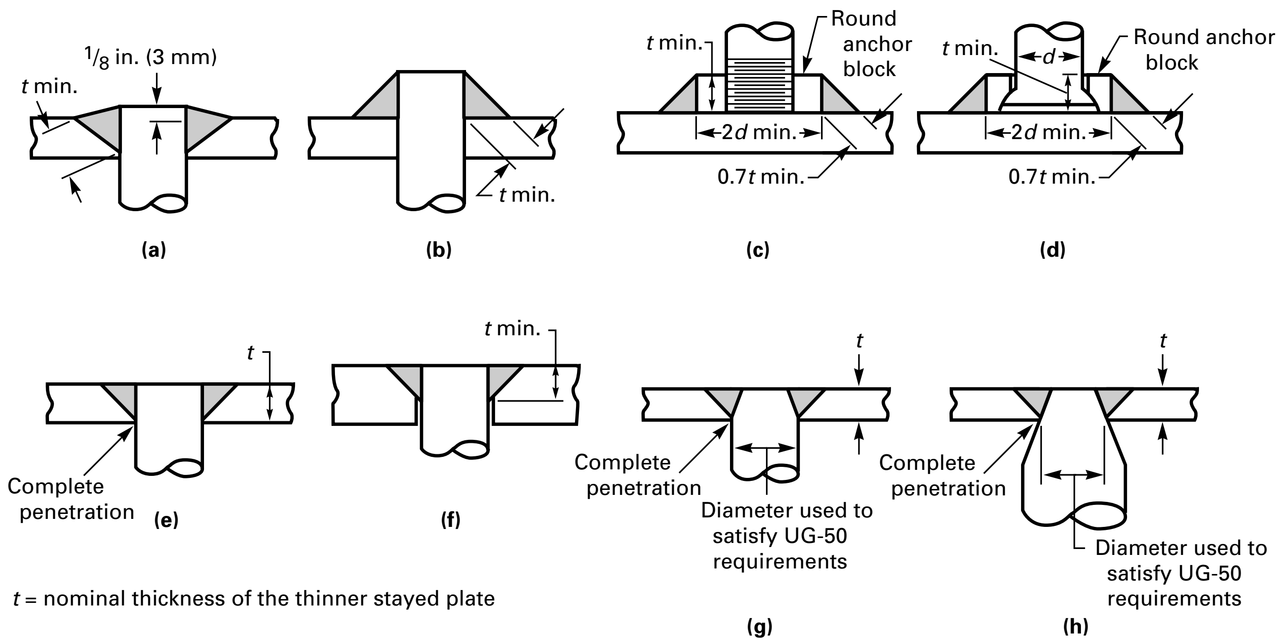


FIG. UW-19.1 TYPICAL FORMS OF WELDED STAYBOLTS

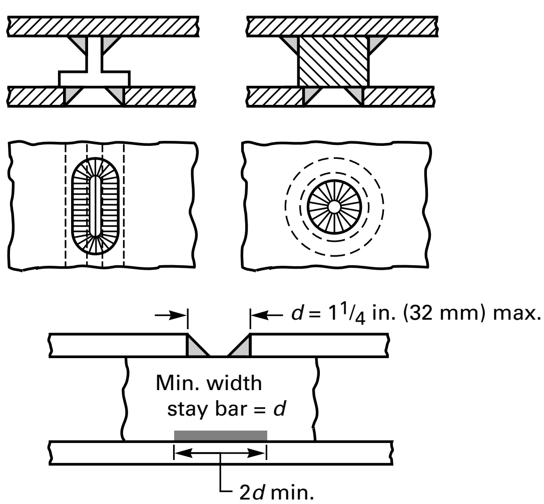


FIG. UW-19.2 USE OF PLUG AND SLOT WELDS FOR STAYING PLATES

(4) the inside welds are properly inspected before the closing plates are attached;

(5) the allowable load on the fillet welds is computed in accordance with UW-18(d);

(6) the maximum diameter or width of the hole in the plate does not exceed $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. (32 mm);

(7) the welders are qualified under the rules of Section IX;

(8) the maximum spacing of stays is determined by the formula in UG-47(a), using $C = 2.1$ if either plate is not over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) thick, $C = 2.2$ if both plates are over $\frac{7}{16}$ in. (11 mm) thick.

(c) Welded stayed construction, consisting of a dimpled or embossed plate welded to another like plate or to a plain plate may be used, provided:

(1) the welded attachment is made by fillet welds around holes or slots as shown in Fig. UW-19.2 or if the thickness of the plate having the hole or slot is $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm) or less, and the hole is 1 in. (25 mm) or less in diameter, the holes may be completely filled with weld metal. The allowable load on the weld shall equal the product of the thickness of the plate having the hole or slot, the circumference or perimeter of the hole or slot, the allowable stress value in tension of the weaker of the materials being joined and a joint efficiency of 55%;

(2) the maximum allowable working pressure of the dimpled or embossed components is established in accordance with the requirements of UG-101. The joint efficiency, E, used in UG-101 to calculate the MAWP of the dimpled panel shall be taken as 0.80. This proof test may be carried out on a representative panel. If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction, but not less than 24 in. (600 mm) in either direction; 04

(3) the plain plate, if used, shall meet the requirements for braced and stayed surfaces.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

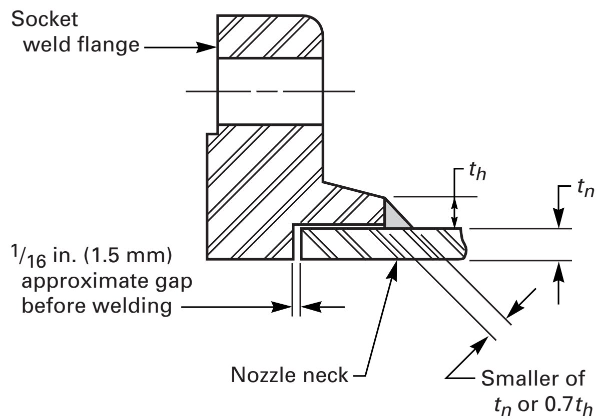


FIG. UW-21 WELDS OF SOCKET WELD FLANGES TO NOZZLE NECKS

(d) The welds need not be radiographed, nor need they be postweld heat treated unless the vessel or vessel part in which they occur is required to be postweld heat treated.

UW-21 FLANGE TO NOZZLE NECK WELDS

UW-21(a) ASME B16.5 socket weld flanges shall be welded to a nozzle neck using an external fillet weld. The minimum fillet weld throat dimension shall be the lesser of the nozzle wall thickness or 0.7 times the hub thickness of the socket weld flange. See Fig. UW-21.

UW-21(b) ASME B16.5 slip-on flanges shall be welded to a nozzle neck using an internal and an external fillet weld. The minimum fillet weld throat dimension shall equal 0.7 times the nozzle wall. See Fig. 2-4 sketch (3).

FABRICATION

UW-26 GENERAL

(a) The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are fabricated by welding and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

(b) Each Manufacturer or parts Manufacturer shall be responsible for the quality of the welding done by his organization and shall conduct tests not only of the welding procedure to determine its suitability to ensure welds which will meet the required tests, but also of the welders and welding operators to determine their ability to apply the procedure properly.

(c) No production welding shall be undertaken until after the welding procedures which are to be used have been qualified. Only welders and welding operators who are qualified in accordance with Section IX shall be used in production.

(d) The Manufacturer (Certificate Holder) may engage individuals by contract or agreement for their services as welders[5] at the shop location shown on the Certificate of Authorization and at field sites (if allowed by the Certificate of Authorization) for the construction of pressure vessels or vessel parts, provided all of the following conditions are met. 04

(1) All Code construction shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer.

(2) All welding shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's welding procedure specifications in accordance with the requirements of Section IX.

(3) All welders shall be qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX.

(4) The Manufacturer's Quality Control System shall include as a minimum:

(a) a requirement for complete and exclusive administrative and technical supervision of all welders by the Manufacturer;

(b) evidence of the Manufacturer's authority to assign and remove welders at his discretion without involvement of any other organization;

(c) a requirement for Assignment of Welder Identification symbols;

(d) evidence that this program has been accepted by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency which provides the inspection service.

(5) The Manufacturer shall be responsible for Code compliance of the vessel or part, including Code Symbol stamping and providing Data Report Forms properly executed and countersigned by the Inspector.

UW-27 WELDING PROCESSES

(a) The welding processes that may be used in the construction of vessels under this Part of this Division are restricted as follows:

(1) arc welding processes: atomic hydrogen, electrogas, gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, plasma arc, shielded metal arc, stud, and submerged arc;

[5] *Welder* includes brazer, welding and brazing operator.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(2) other than arc welding processes: electron beam, flash, electroslag, explosive,[6] induction, inertia and continuous drive friction, laser beam, oxyfuel gas, resistance, and thermit.

(b) Other than pressure inherent to the welding processes, no mechanical pressure or blows shall be applied except as permitted for peening in UW-39.

(c) Definitions are given in Section IX which include variations of these processes.

(d) Arc stud welding and resistance stud welding may be used only for non-pressure-bearing attachments, having a load or non-load-carrying function, except for material listed in Table UHT-23 provided that, in the case of ferrous materials, the heat treatment requirements of UCS-56 are complied with and the requirements of UW-28(b) and UW-29(a) are met prior to start of production welding. Studs shall be limited to 1 in. (25 mm) diameter maximum for round studs and an equivalent cross-sectional area for studs with other shapes.

(e) The electroslag welding process may be used for butt welds only in ferritic steels and austenitic stainless steels of types listed in UW-5(d), provided the requirements of UW-11(a)(6) and UW-11(d) are satisfied.

(f) The electrogas welding process may be used for butt welds only in ferritic steels and austenitic stainless steels of types listed in UW-5(d), provided the requirements of UW-11(a)(6) are satisfied. When a single pass is greater than $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) in ferritic materials, the joint shall be given a grain refining (austenitizing) heat treatment.

UW-28 QUALIFICATION OF WELDING PROCEDURE

(a) Each procedure of welding that is to be followed in construction shall be recorded in detail by the manufacturer.

(b) The procedure used in welding pressure parts and in joining load-carrying nonpressure parts, such as all permanent or temporary clips and lugs, to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

(c) The procedure used in welding nonpressure-bearing attachments which have essentially no load-carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation support pins, etc.), to pressure parts shall meet the following requirements.

(1) When the welding process is manual, machine, or semiautomatic, procedure qualification is required in accordance with Section IX.

(2) When the welding is any automatic welding process performed in accordance with a Welding Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), procedure qualification testing is not required.

(d) Welding of all test coupons shall be conducted by the Manufacturer. Testing of all test coupons shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer. Alternatively, AWS Standard Welding Procedure Specifications that have been accepted by Section IX may be used provided they meet all other requirements of this Division. Qualification of a welding procedure by one Manufacturer shall not qualify that procedure for any other Manufacturer except as provided in QW-201 of Section IX.

UW-29 TESTS OF WELDERS AND WELDING OPERATORS

(a) The welders and welding operators used in welding pressure parts and in joining load-carrying nonpressure parts (attachments) to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

(1) The qualification test for welding operators of machine welding equipment shall be performed on a separate test plate prior to the start of welding or on the first work piece.

(2) When stud welding is used to attach load-carrying studs, a production stud weld test of each welder or welding operator shall be performed on a separate test plate or tube prior to the start of welding on each work shift. This weld test shall consist of five studs, welded and tested by the bend or torque stud weld testing procedure described in Section IX.

(b) The welders and welding operators used in welding nonpressure-bearing attachments, which have essentially no load-carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation support pins, etc.), to pressure parts shall comply with the following.

(1) When the welding process is manual, machine, or semiautomatic, qualification in accordance with Section IX is required.

(2) When welding is done by any automatic welding process, performance qualification testing is not required.

(3) When stud welding is used, a production stud weld test, appropriate to the end use application requirements, shall be specified by the Manufacturer and carried out on a separate test plate or tube at the start of each shift.

(c) Each welder and welding operator shall be assigned an identifying number, letter, or symbol by the manufacturer which shall be used to identify the work of that welder or welding operator in accordance with UW-37(f).

(d) The Manufacturer shall maintain a record of the welders and welding operators showing the date and result

[6] *explosive welding* — a solid state welding process wherein coalescence is produced by the application of pressure by means of an explosion.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of tests and the identification mark assigned to each. These records shall be certified to by the Manufacturer and be accessible to the Inspector.

(e) Welding of all test coupons shall be conducted by the Manufacturer. Testing of all test coupons shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer. A performance qualification test conducted by one Manufacturer shall not qualify a welder or welding operator to do work for any other Manufacturer except as provided in QW-300 of Section IX.

UW-30 LOWEST PERMISSIBLE TEMPERATURES FOR WELDING

It is recommended that no welding of any kind be done when the temperature of the base metal is lower than 0°F (−20°C). At temperatures between 32°F (0°C) and 0°F (−20°C), the surface of all areas within 3 in. (75 mm) of the point where a weld is to be started should be heated to a temperature at least warm to the hand [estimated to be above 60°F (15°C)] before welding is started. It is recommended also that no welding be done when surfaces are wet or covered with ice, when snow is falling on the surfaces to be welded, or during periods of high wind, unless the welders or welding operators and the work are properly protected.

UW-31 CUTTING, FITTING, AND ALIGNMENT

(a) When plates are shaped by oxygen or arc cutting, the edges to be welded shall be uniform and smooth and shall be freed of all loose scale and slag accumulations before welding (see UG-76 and UCS-5).

(b) Plates that are being welded shall be fitted, aligned, and retained in position during the welding operation.

(c) Bars, jacks, clamps, tack welds, or other appropriate means may be used to hold the edges of parts in alignment. Tack welds used to secure alignment shall either be removed completely when they have served their purpose, or their stopping and starting ends shall be properly prepared by grinding or other suitable means so that they may be satisfactorily incorporated into the final weld. Tack welds, whether removed or left in place, shall be made using a fillet weld or butt weld procedure qualified in accordance with Section IX. Tack welds to be left in place shall be made by welders qualified in accordance with Section IX, and shall be examined visually for defects, and if found to be defective shall be removed.

Provided that the work is done under the provisions of U-2(b), it is not necessary that a subcontractor making such tack welds for a vessel or parts manufacturer be a holder of a Code Certificate of Authorization. The requirements of UW-26(d) do not apply to such tack welds.

(d) The edges of butt joints shall be held during welding so that the tolerances of UW-33 are not exceeded in the completed joint. When fitted girth joints have deviations exceeding the permitted tolerances, the head or shell ring, whichever is out-of-true, shall be reformed until the errors are within the limits specified. Where fillet welds are used, the lapped plates shall fit closely and be kept in contact during welding.

(e) When joining two parts by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes, one of the two parts must be held in a fixed position and the other part rotated. The two faces to be joined must be essentially symmetrical with respect to the axis of rotation. Some of the basic types of applicable joints are solid round to solid round, tube to tube, solid round to tube, solid round to plate, and tube to plate.

UW-32 CLEANING OF SURFACES TO BE WELDED

UW-32(a) The surfaces to be welded shall be clean and free of scale, rust, oil, grease, slag, detrimental oxides, and other deleterious foreign material. The method and extent of cleaning should be determined based on the material to be welded and the contaminants to be removed. When weld metal is to be deposited over a previously welded surface, all slag shall be removed by a roughing tool, chisel, chipping hammer, or other suitable means so as to prevent inclusion of impurities in the weld metal.

UW-32(b) Cast surfaces to be welded shall be machined, chipped, or ground to remove foundry scale and to expose sound metal.

UW-32(c) The requirements in (a) and (b) above are not intended to apply to any process of welding by which proper fusion and penetration are otherwise obtained and by which the weld remains free from defects.

UW-33 ALIGNMENT TOLERANCE

(a) Alignment of sections at edges to be butt welded shall be such that the maximum offset is not greater than the applicable amount for the welded joint category (see UW-3) under consideration, as listed in Table UW-33. The section thickness t is the nominal thickness of the thinner section at the joint.

(b) Any offset within the allowable tolerance provided above shall be faired at a three to one taper over the width of the finished weld, or if necessary, by adding

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UW-33

Customary Units

Section Thickness, in.	Joint Categories A	Joint Categories B, C, & D
Up to $\frac{1}{2}$, incl.	$\frac{1}{4}t$	$\frac{1}{4}t$
Over $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$, incl.	$\frac{1}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{4}t$
Over $\frac{3}{4}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$, incl.	$\frac{1}{8}$ in.	$\frac{3}{16}$ in.
Over $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2, incl.	$\frac{1}{8}$ in.	$\frac{1}{8}t$
Over 2	Lesser of $\frac{1}{16}t$ or $\frac{3}{8}$ in.	Lesser of $\frac{1}{8}t$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ in.

SI Units

Section Thickness, mm	Joint Categories A	Joint Categories B, C, & D
Up to 13, incl.	$\frac{1}{4}t$	$\frac{1}{4}t$
Over 13 to 19, incl.	3 mm	$\frac{1}{4}t$
Over 19 to 38, incl.	3 mm	5 mm
Over 38 to 51, incl.	3 mm	$\frac{1}{8}t$
Over 51	Lesser of $\frac{1}{16}t$ or 10 mm	Lesser of $\frac{1}{8}t$ or 19 mm

additional weld metal beyond what would otherwise be the edge of the weld. Such additional weld metal buildup shall be subject to the requirements of UW-42.

UW-34 SPIN-HOLES

Spin-holes are permitted at the center of heads to facilitate forming. Spin-holes not greater in diameter than $2\frac{3}{8}$ in. (60 mm) may be closed with a full-penetration weld using either a welded plug or weld metal. The weld and plug shall be no thinner than the head material adjacent to the spin-hole.

The finished weld shall be examined[7] and shall meet the acceptance requirements of Appendix 6 or Appendix 8 of this Division. Radiographic examination, if required by UW-11(a), and additional inspections, if required by the material specification, shall be performed.

This weld is a butt weld, but it is not categorized. It shall not be considered in establishing the joint efficiency of any part of the head or of the head-to-shell weld.

UW-35 FINISHED LONGITUDINAL AND CIRCUMFERENTIAL JOINTS

(a) Butt welded joints shall have complete penetration and full fusion. As-welded surfaces are permitted; however, the surface of welds shall be sufficiently free from coarse ripples, grooves, overlaps, and abrupt ridges and valleys to permit proper interpretation of radiographic and other required nondestructive examinations. If there is a question regarding the surface condition of the weld when interpreting a radiographic film, the film shall be compared to the actual weld surface for determination of acceptability.

(b) A reduction in thickness due to the welding process is acceptable provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The reduction in thickness shall not reduce the material of the adjoining surfaces below the minimum required thickness at any point.

(2) The reduction in thickness shall not exceed $\frac{1}{32}$ in. (1 mm) or 10% of the nominal thickness of the adjoining surface, whichever is less.[8]

(c) When a single-welded butt joint is made by using a backing strip which is left in place [Type No. (2) of Table UW-12], the requirement for reinforcement applies only to the side opposite the backing strip.

(d) To assure that the weld grooves are completely filled so that the surface of the weld metal at any point does not fall below the surface of the adjoining base materials,[9] weld metal may be added as reinforcement on each face of the weld. The thickness of the weld reinforcement on each face shall not exceed the following:

Customary Units

Material Nominal Thickness, in.	Maximum Reinforcement, in. Category B & C Butt Welds	Maximum Reinforcement, in. Other Welds
Less than $\frac{3}{32}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	$\frac{1}{32}$
$\frac{3}{32}$ to $\frac{3}{16}$, incl.	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{16}$
Over $\frac{3}{16}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$, incl.	$\frac{5}{32}$	$\frac{3}{32}$
Over $\frac{1}{2}$ to 1, incl.	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$
Over 1 to 2, incl.	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
Over 2 to 3, incl.	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{32}$
Over 3 to 4, incl.	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{7}{32}$
Over 4 to 5, incl.	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$
Over 5	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{5}{16}$

[7] Examination shall be by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods when the material is ferromagnetic, or by the liquid penetrant method when the material is nonmagnetic.

[8] It is not the intent of this paragraph to require measurement of reductions in thickness due to the welding process. If a disagreement between the Manufacturer and the Inspector exists as to the acceptability of any reduction in thickness, the depth shall be verified by actual measurement.

[9] Concavity due to the welding process on the root side of a single welded circumferential butt weld is permitted when the resulting thickness of the weld is at least equal to the thickness of the thinner member of the two sections being joined and the contour of the concavity is smooth.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

SI Units

Material Nominal Thickness, mm	Maximum Reinforcement, mm. Category B & C Butt Welds	Other Welds
Less than 2.4	2.4	0.8
2.4 to 4.8, incl.	3.2	1.6
Over 4.8 to 13, incl.	4.0	2.4
Over 13 to 25, incl.	4.8	2.4
Over 25 to 51, incl.	5	3.2
Over 51 to 76, incl.	6	4
Over 76 to 102, incl.	6	6
Over 102 to 127, incl.	6	6
Over 127	8	8

UW-36 FILLET WELDS

In making fillet welds, the weld metal shall be deposited in such a way that adequate penetration into the base metal at the root of the weld is secured. The reduction of the thickness of the base metal due to the welding process at the edges of the fillet weld shall meet the same requirements as for butt welds [see UW-35(b)].

UW-37 MISCELLANEOUS WELDING REQUIREMENTS

(a) The reverse side of double-welded joints shall be prepared by chipping, grinding, or melting out, so as to secure sound metal at the base of weld metal first deposited, before applying weld metal from the reverse side.

(b) The requirements in (a) above are not intended to apply to any process of welding by which proper fusion and penetration are otherwise obtained and by which the base of the weld remains free from defects.

(c) If the welding is stopped for any reason, extra care shall be taken in restarting to get the required penetration and fusion. For submerged arc welding, chipping out a groove in the crater is recommended.

(d) Where single-welded joints are used, particular care shall be taken in aligning and separating the components to be joined so that there will be complete penetration and fusion at the bottom of the joint for its full length.

(e) In welding plug welds, a fillet around the bottom of the hole shall be deposited first.

(f) Welder and Welding Operator Identification

(1) Each welder and welding operator shall stamp the identifying number, letter, or symbol assigned by the Manufacturer, on or adjacent to and at intervals of not more than 3 ft (1 m) along the welds which he makes in steel plates $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) and over in thickness and in nonferrous plates $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) and over in thickness; or a record shall be kept by the Manufacturer of welders and welding operators employed on each joint which shall be available to the Inspector. For identifying welds on vessels in which the wall thickness is less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) for steel material and less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) for nonferrous material, suitable stencil or other surface markings shall be used; or a record shall be kept by the Manufacturer of welders and welding operators employed on each joint which shall be available to the Inspector; or a stamp may be used provided the vessel part is not deformed and the following additional requirements are met:

(a) for ferrous materials:

(1) the materials shall be limited to P-No. 1 Gr. Nos. 1 and 2;

(2) the minimum nominal plate thickness shall be $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm), or the minimum nominal pipe wall thickness shall be 0.154 in. (3.91 mm);

(3) the minimum design metal temperature shall be no colder than −20°F (−29°C);

(b) for nonferrous materials:

(1) the materials shall be limited to aluminum as follows: SB-209 Alloys 3003, 5083, 5454, and 6061; SB-241 Alloys 3003, 5083, 5086, 5454, 6061, and 6063; and SB-247 Alloys 3003, 5083, and 6061;

(2) the minimum nominal plate thickness shall be 0.249 in. (6.32 mm), or the minimum nominal pipe thickness shall be 0.133 in. (3.37 mm).

(2) When a multiple number of permanent nonpressure part load bearing attachment welds, nonload bearing welds such as stud welds, or special welds such as tube-to-tubesheet welds are made on a vessel, the Manufacturer need not identify the welder or welding operator that welded each individual joint provided:

(a) the Manufacturer's Quality Control System includes a procedure that will identify the welders or welding operators that made such welds on each vessel so that the Inspector can verify that the welders or welding operators were all properly qualified;

(b) the welds in each category are all of the same type and configuration and are welded with the same welding procedure specification.

(3) Permanent identification of welders or welding operators making tack welds that become part of the final pressure weld is not required provided the Manufacturer's Quality Control System includes a procedure to permit the Inspector to verify that such tack welds were made by qualified welders or welding operators.

(g) The welded joint between two members joined by the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes shall be a full penetration weld. Visual examination of the as-welded flash roll of each weld shall be made

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

as an in-process check. The weld upset shall meet the specified amount within ±10%. The flash shall be removed to sound metal.

(h) Capacitor discharge welding may be used for welding temporary attachments and permanent nonstructural attachments without postweld heat treatment, provided the following requirements are met.

(1) A welding procedure specification shall be prepared in accordance with Section IX, insofar as possible describing the capacitor discharge equipment, the combination of materials to be joined, and the technique of application. Qualification of the welding procedure is not required.

(2) The energy output shall be limited to 125 W-sec.

UW-38 REPAIR OF WELD DEFECTS

Defects, such as cracks, pinholes, and incomplete fusion, detected visually or by the hydrostatic or pneumatic test or by the examinations prescribed in UW-11 shall be removed by mechanical means or by thermal gouging processes, after which the joint shall be rewelded [see UW-40(e)].

UW-39 PEENING

(a) Weld metal and heat affected zones may be peened by manual, electric, or pneumatic means when it is deemed necessary or helpful to control distortion, to relieve residual stresses, or to improve the quality of the weld. Peening shall not be used on the initial (root) layer of weld metal nor on the final (face) layer unless the weld is subsequently postweld heat treated. In no case, however, is peening to be performed in lieu of any postweld heat treatment required by these rules.

(b) Controlled shot peening and other similar methods which are intended only to enhance surface properties of the vessel or vessel parts shall be performed after any nondestructive examinations and pressure tests required by these rules.

UW-40 PROCEDURES FOR POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) The operation of postweld heat treatment shall be performed in accordance with the requirements given in the applicable Part in Subsection C using one of the following procedures. In the procedures that follow, the soak band is defined as the volume of metal required to meet or exceed the minimum PWHT temperatures listed in Table UCS-56. As a minimum, the soak band shall contain the weld, heat affected zone, and a portion of base metal adjacent to the weld being heat treated. The minimum width of this volume is the widest width of weld plus $1t$ or 2 in. (50 mm), whichever is less, on each side or end of the weld. The term t is the nominal thickness as defined in (f) below.

(1) heating the vessel as a whole in an enclosed furnace. This procedure is preferable and should be used whenever practicable.

(2) heating the vessel in more than one heat in a furnace, provided the overlap of the heated sections of the vessel is at least 5 ft (1.5 m). When this procedure is used, the portion outside of the furnace shall be shielded so that the temperature gradient is not harmful. The cross section where the vessel projects from the furnace shall not intersect a nozzle or other structural discontinuity.

(3) heating of shell sections and/or portions of vessels to postweld heat treat longitudinal joints or complicated welded details before joining to make the completed vessel. When the vessel is required to be postweld heat treated, and it is not practicable to postweld heat treat the completed vessel as a whole or in two or more heats as provided in (2) above, any circumferential joints not previously postweld heat treated may be thereafter locally postweld heat treated by heating such joints by any appropriate means that will assure the required uniformity. For such local heating, the soak band shall extend around the full circumference. The portion outside the soak band shall be protected so that the temperature gradient is not harmful. This procedure may also be used to postweld heat treat portions of new vessels after repairs.

(4) heating the vessel internally by any appropriate means and with adequate indicating and recording temperature devices to aid in the control and maintenance of a uniform distribution of temperature in the vessel wall. Previous to this operation, the vessel should be fully enclosed with insulating material, or the permanent insulation may be installed provided it is suitable for the required temperature. In this procedure the internal pressure should be kept as low as practicable, but shall not exceed 50% of the maximum allowable working pressure at the highest metal temperature expected during the postweld heat treatment period.

(5) heating a circumferential band containing nozzles or other welded attachments that require postweld heat treatment in such a manner that the entire band shall be brought up uniformly to the required temperature and held for the specified time. Except as modified in this paragraph below, the soak band shall extend around the entire vessel, and shall include the nozzle or welded attachment. The circumferential soak band width may be varied away from the nozzle or attachment weld requiring

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PWHT, provided the required soak band around the nozzle or attachment weld is heated to the required temperature and held for the required time. As an alternative to varying the soak band width, the temperature within the circumferential band away from the nozzle or attachment may be varied and need not reach the required temperature, provided the required soak band around the nozzle or attachment weld is heated to the required temperature, held for the required time, and the temperature gradient is not harmful throughout the heating and cooling cycle. The portion of the vessel outside of the circumferential soak band shall be protected so that the temperature gradient is not harmful. This procedure may also be used to postweld heat treat portions of vessels after repairs.

(6) heating the circumferential joints of pipe or tubing by any appropriate means using a soak band that extends around the entire circumference. The portion outside the soak band shall be protected so that the temperature gradient is not harmful. The proximity to the shell increases thermal restraint, and the designer should provide adequate length to permit heat treatment without harmful gradients at the nozzle attachment or heat a full circumferential band around the shell, including the nozzle.

(7) heating a local area around nozzles or welded attachments in the larger radius sections of a double curvature head or a spherical shell or head in such a manner that the area is brought up uniformly to the required temperature and held for the specified time. The soak band shall include the nozzle or welded attachment. The soak band shall include a circle that extends beyond the edges of the attachment weld in all directions by a minimum of t or 2 in. (50 mm), whichever is less. The portion of the vessel outside of the soak band shall be protected so that the temperature gradient is not harmful.

(8) heating of other configurations. Local area heating of other configurations not addressed in (a)(1) through (a)(7) above is permitted, provided that other measures (based upon sufficiently similar, documented experience or evaluation) are taken that consider the effect of thermal gradients, all significant structural discontinuities (such as nozzles, attachments, head to shell junctures), and any mechanical loads which may be present during PWHT. The portion of the vessel or component outside the soak band shall be protected so that the temperature gradient is not harmful.

(b) The temperatures and rates of heating and cooling to be used in postweld heat treatment of vessels constructed of materials for which postweld heat treatment may be required are given in UCS-56, UHT-56, UNF-56, and UHA-32.

(c) The minimum temperature for postweld heat treatment given in Tables UCS-56, UHT-56, and UHA-32 and in UNF-56, shall be the minimum temperature of the plate material of the shell or head of any vessel. Where more than one pressure vessel or pressure vessel part are postweld heat treated in one furnace charge, thermocouples shall be placed on vessels at the bottom, center, and top of the charge, or in other zones of possible temperature variation so that the temperature indicated shall be true temperature for all vessels or parts in those zones.[10]

(d) When pressure parts of two different P-Number Groups are joined by welding, the postweld heat treatment shall be that specified according to either UCS-56 or UHA-32, for the material requiring the higher postweld heat treatment temperature.

(e) Postweld heat treatment, when required, shall be done before the hydrostatic test and after any welded repairs except as permitted by UCS-56(f). A preliminary hydrostatic test to reveal leaks prior to postweld heat treatment is permissible.

(f) The term nominal thickness as used in Tables UCS-56, UCS-56.1, UHA-32 and UHT-56, is the thickness of the welded joint as defined below. For pressure vessels or parts of pressure vessels being postweld heat treated in a furnace charge, it is the greatest weld thickness in any vessel or vessel part which has not previously been postweld heat treated.

(1) When the welded joint connects parts of the same thickness, using a full penetration buttweld, the nominal thickness is the total depth of the weld exclusive of any permitted weld reinforcement.

(2) For groove welds, the nominal thickness is the depth of the groove.

(3) For fillet welds, the nominal thickness is the throat dimension. If a fillet weld is used in conjunction with a groove weld, the nominal thickness is the depth of the groove or the throat dimension, whichever is greater.

(4) For stud welds, the nominal thickness shall be the diameter of the stud.

(5) When a welded joint connects parts of unequal thicknesses, the nominal thickness shall be the following:

(a) the thinner of two adjacent butt-welded parts including head to shell connections;

(b) the thickness of the shell or the fillet weld, whichever is greater, in connections to intermediate heads of the type shown in Fig. UW-13.1 sketch (f);

(c) the thickness of the shell in connections to tubesheets, flat heads, covers, flanges (except for welded parts depicted in Fig. 2-4(7), where the thickness of the weld shall govern), or similar constructions; **04**

(d) in Figs. UW-16.1 and UW-16.2, the thickness of the weld across the nozzle neck or shell or head or

[10] Furnace gas temperature measurement alone is not considered sufficiently accurate.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

reinforcing pad or attachment fillet weld, whichever is the greater;

(e) the thickness of the nozzle neck at the joint in nozzle neck to flange connections;

(f) the thickness of the weld at the point of attachment when a nonpressure part is welded to a pressure part;

(g) the thickness of the weld in tube-to-tubesheet connections.

The thickness of the head, shell, nozzle neck, or other parts as used above shall be the wall thickness of the part at the welded joint under consideration. For plate material, the thickness as shown on the Material Test Report or material Certificate of Compliance before forming may be used, at the Manufacturer's option, in lieu of measuring the wall thickness at the welded joint.

(6) For repairs, the nominal thickness is the depth of the repair weld.

UW-41 SECTIONING OF WELDED JOINTS

Welded joints may be examined by sectioning when agreed to by user and Manufacturer, but this examination shall not be considered a substitute for spot radiographic examination. This type of examination has no effect on the joint factors in Table UW-12. The method of closing the hole by welding is subject to acceptance by the Inspector. Some acceptable methods are given in Appendix K.

UW-42 SURFACE WELD METAL BUILDUP

Construction in which deposits of weld metal are applied to the surface of base metal for the purpose of:

(a) restoring the thickness of the base metal for strength consideration; or

(b) modifying the configuration of weld joints in order to provide the tapered transition requirements of UW-9(c) and UW-33(b) shall be performed in accordance with the following rules.

(1) A butt welding procedure qualification in accordance with provisions of Section IX must be performed for the thickness of weld metal deposited, prior to production welding.

(2) All weld metal buildup must be examined over the full surface of the deposit by either magnetic particle examination to the requirements of Appendix 6, or by liquid penetrant examination to the requirements of Appendix 8.

When such surface weld metal buildup is used in welded joints which require full or spot radiographic examination, the weld metal buildup shall be included in the examination.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UW-46 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are fabricated by welding and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used. [For tests on reinforcing plates, see UW-15(d).]

UW-47 CHECK OF WELDING PROCEDURE

The Inspector shall assure himself that the welding procedure employed in the construction of a vessel has been qualified under the provisions of Section IX. The Manufacturer shall submit evidence to the Inspector that the requirements have been met.

UW-48 CHECK OF WELDER AND WELDING OPERATOR QUALIFICATIONS

(a) The Manufacturer shall certify that the welding on a vessel has been done only by welders and welding operators who have been qualified under the requirements of Section IX and the Inspector shall assure himself that only qualified welders and welding operators have been used.

(b) The Manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of the qualification tests of each welder and welding operator. The Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the welding procedure or of the ability of any welder and welding operator.

UW-49 CHECK OF POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT PRACTICE

The Inspector shall satisfy himself that all postweld heat treatment has been correctly performed and that the temperature readings conform to the requirements.

UW-50 NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION OF WELDS ON PNEUMATICALLY TESTED VESSELS

On welded pressure vessels to be pneumatically tested in accordance with UG-100, the full length of the following welds shall be examined[7] for the purpose of detecting cracks:

(a) all welds around openings;

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(b) all attachment welds, including welds attaching nonpressure parts to pressure parts, having a throat thickness greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

UW-51 RADIOGRAPHIC AND RADIOSCOPIC EXAMINATION OF WELDED JOINTS

(a) All welded joints to be radiographed shall be examined in accordance with Article 2 of Section V except as specified below.

(1) A complete set of radiographs and records, as described in T-291 and T-292 of Article 2 of Section V, for each vessel or vessel part shall be retained by the Manufacturer until the Manufacturer's Data Report has been signed by the Inspector.

(2) The Manufacturer shall certify that personnel performing and evaluating radiographic examinations required by this Division have been qualified and certified in accordance with their employer's written practice. SNT-TC-1A[11] shall be used as a guideline for employers to establish their written practice for qualification and certification of their personnel. Alternatively, the ASNT Central Certification Program (ACCP),[11] or CP-189[11] may be used to fulfill the examination and demonstration requirements of SNT-TC-1A and the employer's written practice. Provisions for training, experience, qualification, and certification of NDE personnel shall be described in the Manufacturer's Quality Control System [see Appendix 10].

(3) A written radiographic examination procedure is not required. Demonstration of density and penetrameter image requirements on production or technique radiographs shall be considered satisfactory evidence of compliance with Article 2 of Section V.

(4) The requirements of T-285 of Article 2 of Section V are to be used only as a guide. Final acceptance of radiographs shall be based on the ability to see the prescribed penetrameter image and the specified hole or the designated wire of a wire penetrameter.

(b) Indications shown on the radiographs of welds and characterized as imperfections are unacceptable under the following conditions and shall be repaired as provided in UW-38, and the repair radiographed to UW-51 or, at the option of the Manufacturer, ultrasonically examined in accordance with the method described in Appendix 12 and the standards specified in this paragraph, provided the defect has been confirmed by the ultrasonic examination to the satisfaction of the Authorized Inspector prior to making the repair. For material thicknesses in excess of 1 in. (25 mm), the concurrence of the user shall be obtained. This ultrasonic examination shall be noted under remarks on the Manufacturer's Data Report Form:

(1) any indication characterized as a crack or zone of incomplete fusion or penetration;

(2) any other elongated indication on the radiograph which has length greater than:

(a) $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) for t up to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm)

(b) $\frac{1}{3}t$ for t from $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) to $2\frac{1}{4}$ in. (57 mm)

(c) $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) for t over $2\frac{1}{4}$ in. (57 mm)

where

t = the thickness of the weld excluding any allowable reinforcement. For a butt weld joining two members having different thicknesses at the weld, t is the thinner of these two thicknesses. If a full penetration weld includes a fillet weld, the thickness of the throat of the fillet shall be included in t.

(3) any group of aligned indications that have an aggregate length greater than t in a length of $12t$, except when the distance between the successive imperfections exceeds $6L$ where L is the length of the longest imperfection in the group;

(4) rounded indications in excess of that specified by the acceptance standards given in Appendix 4.

(c) All welded joints to be examined by Real Time Radioscopic Examination shall be examined in accordance with Appendix II of Article 2 of Section V as specified below.

(1) A complete set of records, as described in II-292, shall be evaluated by the Manufacturer prior to being presented to the Inspector. Imperfections listed in UW-51(b)(1), (2), (3), and (4) are unacceptable and shall be repaired as provided in UW-38 and the repair reexamined by either film or Real Time Radioscopic Examination. Records shall be retained by the Manufacturer until the Data Report has been signed by the Inspector.

(2) Provisions for training, experience, qualification, and certification of personnel responsible for equipment setup, calibration, operation, and evaluation of examination data shall be described in the Manufacturer's Quality Control System [see Appendix 10].

(3) The use of Real Time Radioscopic Examination shall be noted under remarks on the Manufacturer's Data Report.

[11] Recommended Practice No. SNT-TC-1A, Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing, ACCP, ASNT Central Certification Program, and CP-189 are published by the American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Inc., 1711 Arlingate Plaza, Caller #28518, Columbus, Ohio 43228-0518.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UW-52 SPOT EXAMINATION OF WELDED JOINTS

NOTE: Spot radiographing of a welded joint is recognized as an effective inspection tool. The spot radiography rules are also considered to be an aid to quality control. Spot radiographs made directly after a welder or an operator has completed a unit of weld proves that the work is or is not being done in accordance with a satisfactory procedure. If the work is unsatisfactory, corrective steps can then be taken to improve the welding in the subsequent units, which unquestionably will improve the weld quality.

Spot radiography in accordance with these rules will not ensure a fabrication product of predetermined quality level throughout. It must be realized that an accepted vessel under these spot radiography rules may still contain defects which might be disclosed on further examination. If all radiographically disclosed weld defects must be eliminated from a vessel, then 100% radiography must be employed.

(a) Butt welded joints which are to be spot radiographed shall be examined locally as provided herein.

(b) Minimum Extent of Spot Radiographic Examination

(1) One spot shall be examined on each vessel for each 50 ft (15 m) increment of weld or fraction thereof for which a joint efficiency from column (b) of Table UW-12 is selected. However, for identical vessels or parts, each with less than 50 ft (15 m) of weld for which a joint efficiency from column (b) of Table UW-12 is selected, 50 ft (15 m) increments of weld may be represented by one spot examination.

(2) For each increment of weld to be examined, a sufficient number of spot radiographs shall be taken to examine the welding of each welder or welding operator. Under conditions where two or more welders or welding operators make weld layers in a joint, or on the two sides of a double-welded butt joint, one spot may represent the work of all welders or welding operators.

(3) Each spot examination shall be made as soon as practicable after completion of the increment of weld to be examined. The location of the spot shall be chosen by the Inspector after completion of the increment of welding to be examined, except that when the Inspector has been notified in advance and cannot be present or otherwise make the selection, the fabricator may exercise his own judgment in selecting the spots.

(4) Radiographs required at specific locations to satisfy the rules of other paragraphs, such as UW-9(d), UW-11(a)(5)(b), and UW-14(b), shall not be used to satisfy the requirements for spot radiography.

(c) Standards for Spot Radiographic Examination. Spot examination by radiography shall be made in accordance with the technique prescribed in UW-51(a). The minimum length of spot radiograph shall be 6 in. Spot radiographs may be retained or be discarded by the Manufacturer after acceptance of the vessel by the Inspector. The acceptability of welds examined by spot radiography shall be judged by the following standards.

(1) Welds in which indications are characterized as cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration shall be unacceptable.

(2) Welds in which indications are characterized as slag inclusions or cavities shall be unacceptable if the length of any such indication is greater than $\frac{2}{3}t$ where t is the thickness of the weld excluding any allowable reinforcement. For a butt weld joining two members having different thicknesses at the weld, t is the thinner of these two thicknesses. If a full penetration weld includes a fillet weld, the thickness of the throat of the fillet shall be included in t. If several indications within the above limitations exist in line, the welds shall be judged acceptable if the sum of the longest dimensions of all such indications is not more than t in a length of $6t$ (or proportionately for radiographs shorter than $6t$) and if the longest indications considered are separated by at least $3L$ of acceptable weld metal where L is the length of the longest indication. The maximum length of acceptable indications shall be $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm). Any such indications shorter than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) shall be acceptable for any plate thickness.

(3) Rounded indications are not a factor in the acceptability of welds not required to be fully radiographed.

(d) Evaluation and Retests

(1) When a spot, radiographed as required in (b)(1) or (b)(2) above, is acceptable in accordance with (c)(1) and (c)(2) above, the entire weld increment represented by this radiograph is acceptable.

(2) When a spot, radiographed as required in (b)(1) or (b)(2) above, has been examined and the radiograph discloses welding which does not comply with the minimum quality requirements of (c)(1) or (c)(2) above, two additional spots shall be radiographically examined in the same weld increment at locations away from the original spot. The locations of these additional spots shall be determined by the Inspector or fabricator as provided for the original spot examination in (b)(3) above.

(a) If the two additional spots examined show welding which meets the minimum quality requirements of (c)(1) and (c)(2) above, the entire weld increment represented by the three radiographs is acceptable provided the defects disclosed by the first of the three radiographs are removed and the area repaired by welding. The weld repaired area shall be radiographically examined in accordance with the foregoing requirements of UW-52.

(b) If either of the two additional spots examined shows welding which does not comply with the minimum quality requirements of (c)(1) or (c)(2) above, the entire

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

increment of weld represented shall be rejected. The entire rejected weld shall be removed and the joint shall be rewelded or, at the fabricator's option, the entire increment of weld represented shall be completely radiographed and only defects need be corrected.

(c) Repair welding shall be performed using a qualified procedure and in a manner acceptable to the Inspector. The rewelded joint, or the weld repaired areas, shall be spot radiographically examined at one location in accordance with the foregoing requirements of UW-52.

UW-53 TECHNIQUE FOR ULTRASONIC EXAMINATION OF WELDED JOINTS

Ultrasonic examination of welded joints when required or permitted by other paragraphs of this Division shall be performed in accordance with Appendix 12 and shall be evaluated to the acceptance standards specified in Appendix 12. The written examination procedure shall be available to the Inspector and shall be proven by actual demonstration to the satisfaction of the Inspector to be capable of detecting and locating imperfections described in this Division.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UW-60 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports, UG-115 through UG-120, shall apply without supplement to welded pressure vessels.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UW-65 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices, UG-125 through UG-136, shall apply without supplement to welded pressure vessels.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART UF
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS FABRICATED BY FORGING

GENERAL

UF-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UF are applicable to forged pressure vessels without longitudinal joints, including their component parts that are fabricated of carbon and low alloy steels or of high alloy steels within the limitations of Part UHA. These rules shall be used in conjunction with the applicable requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Subsection C that pertain to the respective classes of all materials used.

MATERIALS

UF-5 GENERAL

(a) Materials used in the construction of forged pressure vessels shall comply with the requirements for materials given in UG-4 through UG-14, except as specifically limited or extended in (b) and (c) below, and in UF-6.

(b) The heat analysis of forgings to be fabricated by welding shall not exceed carbon 0.35%. However, when the welding involves only minor nonpressure attachments as limited in UF-32, seal welding of threaded connections as permitted in UF-43, or repairs as limited by UF-37, the carbon content shall not exceed 0.50% by heat analysis. When by heat analysis the carbon analysis exceeds 0.50% no welding is permitted.

(c) This part contains special requirements applicable to SA-372 materials subjected to liquid quench and temper heat treatment. Such special requirements do not apply to austenitic materials or to materials not exceeding 95 ksi (655 MPa) specified minimum tensile strength. SA-372 materials may be subjected to accelerated cooling or may be quenched and tempered to attain their specified minimum properties provided:

(1) after heat treatment, inspection for injurious defects shall be performed according to UF-31(b)(1)(a);

(2) tensile strength shall not be greater than 20,000 psi (140 MPa) above their specified minimum tensile strength.

(d) For vessels constructed of SA-372 Grade J, Class 110 or Grade L material, transverse impact tests shall be made at the minimum allowable temperature in accordance with Part UHT of this Division, except in no case shall the test temperature be higher than −20°F (−29°C). Certification is required. An ultrasonic examination shall be made in accordance with UF-55.

UF-6 FORGINGS

All materials subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and limited to those listed in Table UCS-23 and UHA-23 for forgings or to plates, and seamless pipe and tube when such material is further processed by a forging operation.

UF-7 FORGED STEEL ROLLS USED FOR CORRUGATING PAPER MACHINERY

Materials and rules of construction to be applied in the manufacture of forged steel corrugating and pressure rolls used in machinery for producing corrugated paper are covered in SA-649 in Section II, Part A.

DESIGN

UF-12 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to vessels or main sections of vessels that are forged from ingots, slabs, billets, plate, pipe, or tubes, and shall be used to supplement the requirements for design which are applicable, as given in UG-16 through UG-55, and those given in UCS-16 through UCS-67, and UHA-20 through UHA-34. Sections of vessels may be joined by any method permitted in the several parts of this Division except as limited in UF-5(b) and UF-5(c).

Vessels constructed of SA-372 Grade A, B, C, or D; Grade E Class 65 or 70; Grade F Class 70; Grade G Class

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

70; Grade H Class 70; Grade J Class 65, 70, or 110; Grade L; or Grade M Class A or B must be of streamlined design, and stress raisers, such as abrupt changes in section, shall be minimized. Openings in vessels constructed of liquid quenched and tempered materials, other than austenitic steel, shall be reinforced in accordance with UG-37; UG-36(c)(3) shall not apply.

The nominal wall thickness of the cylindrical shell of vessels constructed of SA-372 Grade J, Class 110 shall not exceed 2 in. (50 mm).

UF-13 HEAD DESIGN

(a) The minimum required thickness of forged heads shall be computed using the formulas of UG-32. When heads are made separate from the body forging they may be attached by any method permitted in the several parts of this Division except as limited in UF-5(b) and UF-5(c).

(b) The juncture of a forged conical head with the body shall be a knuckle, the inside radius of which shall be not less than 6% of the internal diameter of the vessel. The thickness at the knuckle shall be not less than that of the cylinder and shall be faired into that of the head at the base of the cone.

(c) Except for the $3t$ requirements in UG-32(j) the design of the head shall comply with the applicable provisions of UG-32, UG-33, UG-34, and 1-6.

UF-25 CORROSION ALLOWANCE

(a) Provision shall be made for corrosion in accordance with the requirements in UG-25.

FABRICATION

UF-26 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to forged vessels, main sections of vessels and other vessel parts, and shall be used to supplement the applicable requirements for fabrication given in UG-75 through UG-84 and UCS-79. For high alloy steel forged vessels, the applicable paragraphs of Part UHA shall also apply.

UF-27 TOLERANCES ON BODY FORGINGS

(a) The inner surface of the body shall be true-to-round to the degree that the maximum difference between any two diameters at 90 deg. to each other, determined for any critical cross section, does not exceed 1% of the mean diameter at that section. Chip marks and minor depressions in the inner surface may be filled by welding to meet these tolerances when the welding is done as permitted in UF-32.

(b) If out-of-roundness exceeds the limit in (a) and the condition cannot be corrected, the forging shall be rejected except that if the out-of-roundness does not exceed 3%, the forging may be certified for a lower pressure in the formula:

$$\text{Reduced pressure } P' = P\left(\frac{1.25}{\dfrac{S_b}{S} + 1}\right)$$

and in which

$$S_b = \frac{1.5PR_1 t(D_1 - D_2)}{t^3 + 3\dfrac{P}{E}R_1 R_a^2}$$

where

P = maximum allowable working pressure for forging meeting the requirements of (a)
t = the average (mean) thickness
D_1, D_2 = the inside diameters maximum and minimum, respectively, as measured for the critical section, and for one additional section in each direction therefrom at a distance not exceeding $0.2D_2$. The average of the three readings for D_1 and D_2, respectively, shall be inserted in the formula.
S_b = bending stress at metal service temperature
E = modulus of elasticity of material at design temperature. The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.
S = design stress value, psi (kPa), at metal service temperature
R_1 = average inside radius at critical section
= $\frac{1}{4}(D_1 + D_2)$
R_a = average radius to middle of shell wall at critical section
= $\frac{1}{4}(D_1 + D_2) + t/2$

NOTES:
(1) Use $P' = P$ when S_b is less than $0.25S$.
(2) In all measurements, correct for corrosion allowance if specified.

UF-28 METHODS OF FORMING FORGED HEADS

Forged heads shall be made either by closing in extensions of the body of such shape and dimensions as may be

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

required to produce the final form desired, or by separate forgings [see UF-13(a)].

UF-29 TOLERANCE ON FORGED HEADS

Forged heads shall be as true as it is practicable to make them to the shape shown on the design drawings. Any deviations therefrom shall merge smoothly into the general shape of the head and shall not evidence a decrease of strength for the sections as required by the formulas for design.

UF-30 LOCALIZED THIN AREAS

Forgings are permitted to have small areas thinner than required if the adjacent areas surrounding each have sufficient thickness to provide the necessary reinforcement according to the rules for reinforcement in UG-40.

UF-31 HEAT TREATMENT

(a) Normalized or Annealed Material

(1) After all forging is completed, each vessel or forged part fabricated without welding shall be heat treated in accordance with the applicable material specification. When defects are repaired by welding, subsequent heat treatment may be necessary in accordance with UF-37(b).

(2) Vessels fabricated by welding of forged parts requiring heat treatment shall be heat treated in accordance with the applicable material specification as follows:

(a) after all welding is completed; or

(b) prior to welding, followed by postweld heat treatment of the finished weld in accordance with UW-40;

(c) when the welding involves only minor nonpressure attachments to vessels having carbon content exceeding 0.35% but not exceeding 0.50% by ladle analysis, requirements of UF-32(b) shall govern.

(b) Liquid Quenched Material

(1) Vessels fabricated from SA-372 forging material to be liquid quenched and tempered shall be subjected to this heat treatment in accordance with the applicable material specifications after the completion of all forging, welding of nonpressure attachments as permitted by UF-32, and repair welding as limited by UF-37. Seal welding of threaded connections, as permitted in UF-43, may be performed either before or after this heat treatment.

(a) After final heat treatment, such vessels shall be examined for the presence of cracks on the outside surface of the shell portion and on the inside surface where practicable. This examination shall be made by liquid penetrant when the material is nonmagnetic and by liquid penetrant or magnetic particle examination when the material is ferromagnetic.

(b) After final heat treatment, liquid quenched and tempered vessels, except those made of austenitic steels and except as provided in (c) below, shall be subjected to Brinell hardness tests at 5 ft (1.5 m) intervals with a minimum of four readings at each of not less than three different sections representing approximately the center and each end of the heat treated shell. The average of the individual Brinell hardness numbers at each section shall be not less than 10% below, nor more than 25% above the number obtained by dividing 500 into the specified minimum tensile strength of the material, and the highest average hardness number shall not exceed the lowest average value on an individual vessel by more than 40. Reheat treatment is permitted.

NOTE: Other hardness testing methods may be used and converted to Brinell numbers by means of the Table in ASTM E 140.

(c) For vessels which are integrally forged, having an overall length less than 5 ft (1.5 m) and a nominal thickness not exceeding $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm), the requirements of (b) above may be modified by taking a minimum of two hardness readings at each end of the vessel. These four hardness readings shall satisfy the requirements of (b) above as if the four hardnesses were applicable to one section.

(d) In the case of austenitic steels, the heat treatment procedures followed shall be in accordance with UHA-32.

(2) Non-Heat-Treated Material. Postweld heat treatment of vessels fabricated by welding of forged parts not requiring heat treatment shall meet with the requirements of UCS-56.

UF-32 WELDING FOR FABRICATION

(a) All welding used in connection with the fabrication of forged vessels or components shall comply with the applicable requirements of Parts UW, UCS, and UHA and UF-5(b) except as modified in (b) and (c) below. Procedure qualification in accordance with Section IX shall be performed with the heat treatment condition of the base metal and weld metal as in UF-31 as contemplated for the actual work.

(b) When the carbon content of the material exceeds 0.35% by ladle analysis, the vessel or part shall be fabricated without welding of any kind, except for repairs [see UF-37(b)], for seal welding of threaded connections as

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

permitted in UF-43, and for minor nonpressure attachments. Minor nonpressure attachments shall be joined by fillet welds of not over $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) throat dimensions. Such welding shall be allowed under the following conditions.

(1) The suitability of the electrode and procedure shall be established by making a groove weld specimen as shown in QW-461.2 of Section IX in material of the same analysis and of thickness in conformance with QW-451. The specimen before welding shall be in the same condition of heat treatment as the work it represents, and after welding the specimen shall be subjected to heat treatment equivalent to that contemplated for the work. Tensile and bend tests, as shown in QW-462.1, QW-462.2(a) and QW-462.3(a), shall be made. These tests shall meet the requirements of QW-150 and QW-160 of Section IX. The radius of the mandrel used in the guided bend test shall be as follows:

Specimen Thickness	Radius of Mandrel B^1	Radius of Die D^1
$\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm)	$1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm)	$1\frac{11}{16}$ in. (42 mm)
t	$3\frac{1}{3}t$	$4\frac{1}{3}t + \frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm)

NOTE:
(1) Corresponds to dimensions *B* and *D* in QW-466.1 in Section IX, and other dimensions to be in proportion.

Any cutting and gouging processes used in the repair work shall be included as part of the procedure qualification.

(2) Welders shall be qualified for fillet welding specified by making and testing a specimen in accordance with QW-462.4(b) and QW-180 of Section IX. Welders shall be qualified for repair welding by making a test plate in accordance with QW-461.3 from which the bend tests outlined in QW-452 shall be made. The electrode used in making these tests shall be of the same classification number as that specified in the procedure. The material for these tests can be carbon steel plate or pipe provided the test specimens are preheated, welded and postheated in accordance with the procedure specification for the type of electrode involved.

(3) The finished weld shall be postweld heat treated or given a further heat treatment as required by the applicable material specification. The types of welding permitted in UF-32(b) shall be performed prior to final heat treatment except for seal welding of threaded openings which may be performed either before or after final heat treatment.

(4) The finished welds shall be examined after postweld heat treatment by liquid penetrant when the material is nonmagnetic and by liquid penetrant or magnetic particle examination using the prod method when the material is ferromagnetic.

(c) The following requirements shall be used to qualify welding procedure and welder performance for seal welding of threaded connections in seamless forged pressure vessels of SA-372 Grades A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, and J materials.

(1) The suitability of the welding procedure, including electrode, and the welder performance shall be established by making a seal weld in the welding position to be used for the actual work and in a full-size prototype of the vessel neck, including at least some portion of the integrally forged head, conforming to the requirements of UF-43 and the same geometry, thickness, vessel material type, threaded-plug material type, and heat treatment as that for the production vessel it represents.

(2) The seal weld in the prototype at the threaded connection of the neck and plug shall be cross sectioned to provide four macro-test specimens taken 90 deg. apart.

(3) One face of each cross section shall be smoothed and etched with suitable etchant (see QW-470) to give a clear definition of the weld metal and heat affected zone. Visual examination of the cross sections of the weld metal and heat affected zone shall show complete fusion and freedom from cracks.

(4) All production welding shall be done in accordance with the procedure qualification of (c)(1) above, including the preheat and the electrode of the same classification as that specified in the procedure, and with welders qualified using that procedure.

(5) Seal welding of threaded connections may be performed either before or after final heat treatment.

(6) The finished weld shall be examined by liquid penetrant or magnetic particle examination using the prod method.

UF-37 REPAIR OF DEFECTS IN MATERIAL

(a) Surface defects, such as chip marks, blemishes, or other irregularities, shall be removed by grinding or machining and the surface exposed shall be blended smoothly into the adjacent area where sufficient wall thickness permits thin areas in compliance with the requirements of UF-30.

(b) Thinning to remove imperfections beyond those permitted in UF-30 may be repaired by welding only after acceptance by the Inspector. Defects shall be removed to sound metal as shown by acid etch or any other suitable method of examination. The welding shall be as outlined below.

(1) Material Having Carbon Content of 0.35% or Less (by Ladle Analysis)

(a) The welding procedure and welders shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(b) Postweld heat treatment after welding shall be governed as follows.

(1) All welding shall be postweld heat treated if UCS-56 requires postweld heat treatment, for all thicknesses of material of the analysis being used.

(2) Fillet welds need not be postweld heat treated unless required by (1) above or unless the fillet welds exceed the limits given in UCS-56.

(3) Repair welding shall be postweld heat treated when required by (b)(1)(b)(1) above or if it exceeds 6 sq in. (4 000 mm^2) at any spot or if the maximum depth exceeds $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm).

(c) Repair welding shall be radiographed if the maximum depth exceeds $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) Repair welds $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) and under in depth which exceed 6 sq in. (4 000 mm^2) at any spot and those made in materials requiring postweld heat treatment shall be examined by radiographing, magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination, or any alternative method suitable for revealing cracks.

(d) For liquid quenched and tempered steels, other than austenitic steels, welding repairs shall be in accordance with UF-37(b)(3).

(2) Material Having Carbon Content Over 0.35% (by Ladle Analysis)

(a) Welding repairs shall conform with UF-32(b) except that if the maximum weld depth exceeds $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), radiography, in addition to magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination, shall be used.

(b) For liquid quenched and tempered steels, other than austenitic steel, welding repair shall be in accordance with (b)(3) below.

(3) Welding repairs of materials which are to be or have been liquid quenched and tempered, regardless of depth or area of repairs shall have the repaired area radiographed and examined by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination.

UF-38 REPAIR OF WELD DEFECTS

The repair of welds of forgings having carbon content not exceeding 0.35% by ladle analysis shall follow the requirements of UW-38.

UF-43 ATTACHMENT OF THREADED NOZZLES TO INTEGRALLY FORGED NECKS AND THICKENED HEADS ON VESSELS

Threaded openings, over NPS 3 (DN 80), but not exceeding the smaller of one-half of the vessel diameter or NPS 8, may be used in the heads of vessels having integrally forged heads and necks that are so shaped and thickened as to provide a center opening, which shall meet the rules governing openings and reinforcements contained elsewhere in the Code. Length of thread shall be calculated for the opening design, but shall not be less than shown in Table UG-43. Threaded connections employing straight threads shall provide for mechanical seating of the assembly by a shoulder or similar means. When seal welding is employed in the installation of a threaded nozzle, the work shall be performed and inspected in the shop of the vessel manufacturer. Seal welding shall comply with UF-32.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UF-45 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of forged vessels and their component parts. These rules shall be used to supplement the applicable requirements for inspection and tests given in UG-90 through UG-102. All forged vessels shall be examined as manufacture proceeds, to assure freedom from loose scale, gouges or grooves, and cracks or seams that are visible. After fabrication has passed the machining stage, the vessel body shall be measured at suitable intervals along its length to get a record of variations in wall thickness, and the nozzles for connecting piping and other important details shall be checked for conformity to the design dimensions.

UF-46 ACCEPTANCE BY INSPECTOR

Surfaces which are not to be machined shall be carefully inspected for visible defects such as seams, laps, or folds. On surfaces to be machined the inspection shall be made after machining. Regions from which defective material has been removed shall be inspected after removal and again after any necessary repair.

UF-47 PARTS FORGING

(a) When welding is used in the fabrication of parts forgings completed elsewhere, the parts forging manufacturer shall furnish a Form U-2 Partial Data Report.

(b) All parts forgings completed elsewhere shall be marked with the manufacturer's name and the forging identification, including material designation. Should identifying marks be obliterated in the fabrication process, and for small parts, other means of identification shall be used. The forging manufacturer shall furnish reports of chemical and mechanical properties of the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

material and certification that each forging conforms to all requirements of Part UF.

(c) Parts forgings furnished as material for which parts Data Reports are not required need not be inspected at the plant of the forging manufacturer, but the manufacturer shall furnish a report of the extent and location of any repairs together with certification that they were made in accordance with all other requirements of UF-37 and UF-38. If desired, welding repairs of such forgings may be made, inspected, and tested at the shop of the pressure vessel manufacturer.

UF-52 CHECK OF HEAT TREATMENT AND POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

The Inspector shall check the provisions made for heat treatment to assure himself that the heat treatment is carried out in accordance with provisions of UF-31 and UF-32. He shall also assure himself that postweld heat treatment is done after repair welding when required under the rules of UF-37.

UF-53 TEST SPECIMENS

When test specimens are to be taken under the applicable specification, the Inspector shall be allowed to witness the selection, place the identifying stamping on them, and witness the testing of these specimens.

UF-54 TESTS AND RETESTS

Tests and retests shall be made in accordance with the requirements of the material specification.

UF-55 ULTRASONIC EXAMINATION

(a) For vessels constructed of SA-372 Grade J, Class 110 material, the completed vessel after heat treatment shall be examined ultrasonically in accordance with SA-388. The reference specimen shall have the same nominal thickness, composition, and heat treatment as the vessel it represents. Angle beam examination shall be calibrated with a notch of a depth equal to 5% of the nominal section thickness, a length of approximately 1 in. (25 mm), and a width not greater than twice its depth.

(b) A vessel is unacceptable if examination results show one or more imperfections which produce indications exceeding in amplitude the indication from the calibrated notch. Round bottom surface imperfections, such as pits, scores, and conditioned areas, producing indications exceeding the amplitude of the calibrated notch shall be acceptable if the thickness below the indication is not less than the design wall thickness of the vessel, and its sides are faired to a ratio of not less than three to one.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UF-115 GENERAL

The rules of UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply to forged vessels as far as practicable. Vessels constructed of liquid quenched and tempered material, other than austenitic steels, shall be marked on the thickened head, unless a nameplate is used.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UF-125 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices of UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART UB
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS FABRICATED BY BRAZING

GENERAL

UB-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in Part UB are applicable to pressure vessels and parts thereof that are fabricated by brazing and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

(b) Definition. The term brazing as used in Part UB is defined as a group of welding processes that produce coalescence of materials by heating them to the brazing temperature in the presence of a filler metal having liquidus above 840°F (450°C) and below the solidus of the base metal. The filler metal is distributed between the closely fitted surfaces of the joint by capillary attraction.

(c) Specific brazing processes which are permitted for use under this Division are classified by method of heating as follows:

(1) torch brazing;
(2) furnace brazing;
(3) induction brazing;
(4) electrical resistance brazing;
(5) dip brazing — salt and flux bath.

UB-2 ELEVATED TEMPERATURE

Operating temperature is dependent on the brazing filler metal as well as on the base metals being joined. The maximum allowable operating temperatures for the brazing filler metals are shown in Table UB-2.

UB-3 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

Brazed vessels shall not be used for services as follows:

(a) lethal services as defined in UW-2(a);
(b) unfired steam boilers as defined in U-1(g);
(c) direct firing [see UW-2(d)].

MATERIALS

UB-5 GENERAL

(a) Materials used in the construction of pressure vessels and parts thereof by brazing shall conform to the specifications in Section II and shall be limited to those materials for which allowable stress values have been assigned in the tables referenced by UG-23.

(b) Combinations of dissimilar metals may be joined by brazing provided they meet the qualification requirements of Section IX, and the additional requirements of UB-12 when applicable.

UB-6 BRAZING FILLER METALS

The selection of the brazing filler metal for a specific application shall depend upon its suitability for the base metals being joined and the intended service. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX and when necessary based on design temperature, with the additional requirements of this Section, is considered proof of the suitability of the filler metal. Brazing with brazing filler metals other than those listed in Section II, Part C, SFA-5.8 shall be separately qualified for both procedure and performance qualification in accordance with Section IX and when necessary with the additional requirements of this Section.

UB-7 FLUXES AND ATMOSPHERES

Suitable fluxes or atmospheres or combinations of fluxes and atmospheres shall be used to prevent oxidation of the brazing filler metal and the surfaces to be joined. Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure under Section IX and when necessary based on design temperature, with the additional requirements of this Section, is considered proof of the suitability of the flux and/or atmosphere.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UB-2
MAXIMUM DESIGN TEMPERATURES FOR BRAZING FILLER METAL

Filler Metal Classification	Column 1 Temperature, °F (°C), Below Which Section IX Tests Only Are Required	Column 2 Temperature, °F (°C), Range Requiring Section IX and Additional Tests
BCuP	300 (150)	300–350 (150–180)
BAg	400 (200)	400–500 (200–260)
BCuZn	400 (200)	400–500 (200–260)
BCu	400 (200)	400–650 (200–340)
BAlSi	300 (150)	300–350 (150–180)
BNi	1200 (650)	1200–1500 (650–815)
BAu	800 (430)	800–900 (430–480)
BMg	250 (120)	250–275 (120–135)

GENERAL NOTE: Temperatures based on AWS recommendations.

DESIGN

UB-9 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to pressure vessels and parts thereof that are fabricated by brazing and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A, and the specific requirements for *Design* in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

UB-10 STRENGTH OF BRAZED JOINTS

It is the responsibility of the Manufacturer to determine from suitable tests or from experience that the specific brazing filler metal selected can produce a joint which will have adequate strength at design temperature. The strength of the brazed joint shall not be less than the strength of the base metal, or the weaker of two base metals in the case of dissimilar metal joints.

UB-11 QUALIFICATION OF BRAZED JOINTS FOR DESIGN TEMPERATURES UP TO THE MAXIMUM SHOWN IN COLUMN 1 OF TABLE UB-2

Satisfactory qualification of the brazing procedure in accordance with Part QB of Section IX is considered evidence of the adequacy of the base materials, the brazing filler metal, the flux and/or atmosphere, and other variables of the procedure.

UB-12 QUALIFICATION OF BRAZED JOINTS FOR DESIGN TEMPERATURES IN THE RANGE SHOWN IN COLUMN 2 OF TABLE UB-2

For design temperatures in the range shown in Column 2 of Table UB-2, tests in addition to those in UB-11 are required. These tests shall be considered a part of the qualification procedure. For such design temperatures, two tension tests on production type joints are required, one at the design temperature and one at $1.05T$ where

T = the design temperature

Neither of these production type joints shall fail in the braze metal.

UB-13 CORROSION

(a) Provision shall be made for corrosion in accordance with the requirements in UG-25.

(b) Corrosion of the brazing filler metal and galvanic action between the brazing filler metal and the base metals shall be considered in selecting the brazing filler metal.

(c) The plate thickness in excess of that computed for a seamless vessel taking into account the applicable loadings in UG-22 may be taken as allowance for corrosion in vessels that have longitudinal joints of double-strap butt joint construction. Additional corrosion allowance shall be provided when needed, particularly on the inner buttstraps.

(d) The rules in this Part are not intended to apply to brazing used for the attachment of linings of corrosion resistant material that are not counted on to carry load.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

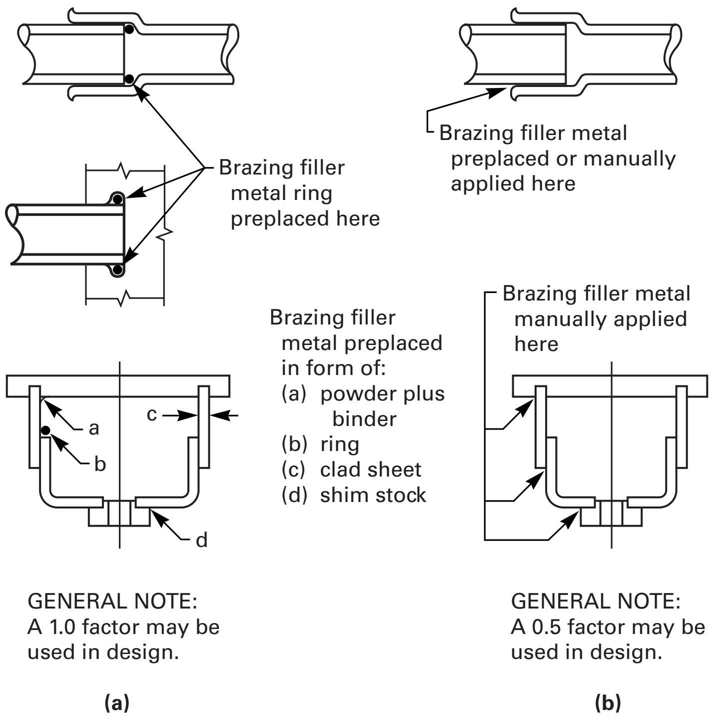


FIG. UB-14 EXAMPLES OF FILLER METAL APPLICATION

04 UB-14 JOINT EFFICIENCY FACTORS

(a) The joint efficiency factor to be used in the appropriate design equations of pressure vessels and parts thereof shall be 1.0 for joints in which visual examination assures that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint [see Fig. UB-14 sketch (a)].

(b) The joint efficiency factor to be used in the appropriate design equations of pressure vessels and parts thereof shall be 0.5 for joints in which visual examination will not provide proof that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint. [See Fig. UB-14 sketch (b); UB-15(b) and (c).]

(c) The appropriate joint efficiency factor to be used in design equations for seamless flat heads and seamless formed heads, excluding seamless hemispherical heads, is 1.0. The appropriate joint efficiency factor to be used in design equations for circumferential stress in seamless cylindrical or conical shells is 1.0.

UB-15 APPLICATION OF BRAZING FILLER METAL

(a) The design shall provide for the application of the brazing filler metal as part of the design of the joint. Where practicable, the brazing filler metal shall be applied in such a manner that it will flow into the joint or be distributed across the joint and produce visible evidence that it has penetrated the joint.

(b) Manual Application. The manual application of the brazing filler metal by face feeding to a joint should be from the one side only. Visual observation of the other side of the joint will then show if the required penetration of the joint by the filler metal has been obtained. If the side opposite to the filler metal application cannot be visually examined, as is the case with socket type joints in pipe and tubing (blind joint), a joint efficiency factor of 0.5 shall be used in design of this joint as provided in UB-14(b).

(c) Preplaced Brazing Filler Metal. The brazing filler metal may be preplaced in the form of slugs, powder, rings, strip, cladding, spraying or other means. After brazing, the brazing filler metal should be visible on both sides of the joint. If the brazing filler metal is preplaced within a blind joint in such a manner that it penetrates the major portion of the joint during brazing and appears at the visible side of the joint, a joint efficiency factor of 1.0 may be used in the design of the joint. If the brazing filler metal is preplaced on the outside or near the outside of a blind joint, and the other side cannot be inspected to ascertain complete penetration, then a joint efficiency factor of 0.5 shall be used in the design of the joint as provided in UB-14(b). Figure UB-14 illustrates a few examples of this rule.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

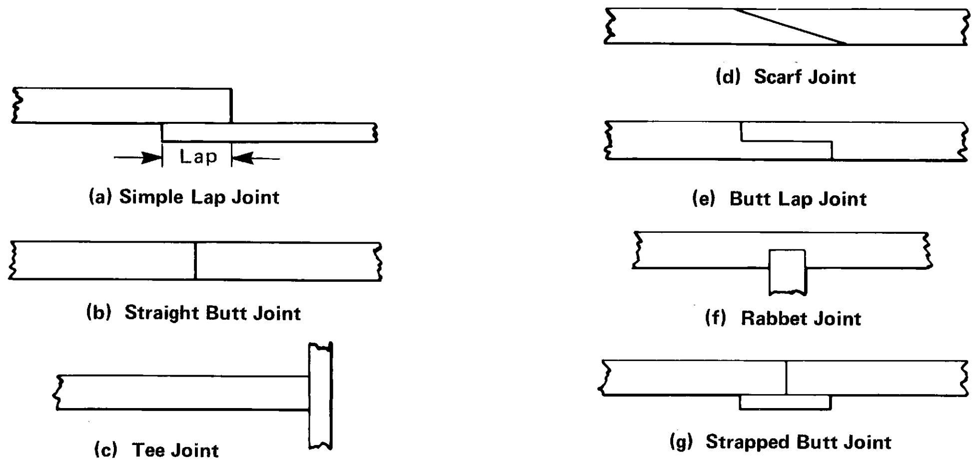


FIG. UB-16 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF BRAZED JOINTS
Other Equivalent Geometries Yielding Substantially Equal Results Also Are Acceptable

UB-16 PERMISSIBLE TYPES OF JOINTS

(a) Some permissible types of brazed joints are shown in Fig. UB-16. For any type of joint, the strength of the brazed section shall exceed that of the base metal portion of the test specimen in the qualification tension tests provided for in QB-150 of Section IX. Lap joints shall have a sufficient overlap to provide a higher strength in the brazed joint than in the base metal.

(b) The nominal thickness of base material used with lap joints tested using the test fixture shown in QB-462.1(e) shall not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm). There is no thickness limitation when specimens are tested without the test fixture shown in QB-462.1(e).

UB-17 JOINT CLEARANCE

The joint clearance shall be kept sufficiently small so that the filler metal will be distributed by capillary attraction. Since the strength of a brazed joint tends to decrease as the joint clearance used is increased, the clearances for the assembly of joints in pressure vessels or parts thereof shall be within the tolerances set up by the joint design and as used for the corresponding qualification specimens made in accordance with Section IX and UB-12 where applicable.

NOTE: For guidance, see Table UB-17 which gives recommended joint clearances at brazing temperature for various types of brazing filler metal. Brazing alloys will exhibit maximum unit strength if clearances are maintained within these limits.

TABLE UB-17
RECOMMENDED JOINT CLEARANCES AT BRAZING TEMPERATURE

Brazing Filler Metal	Clearance, in. (mm) [Note (1)]
BAlSi	0.006–0.010 (0.15–0.25) for laps less than or equal to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) 0.010–0.025 (0.25–0.64) for laps greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)
BCuP	0.001–0.005 (0.02–0.13)
BAg	0.002–0.005 (0.05–0.13)
BCuZn	0.002–0.005 (0.05–0.13)
BCu	0.000–0.002 (0.05–0.13) [Note (2)]
BNi	0.001–0.005 (0.02–0.13)

NOTES:
(1) In the case of round or tubular members, clearance on the radius is intended.
(2) For maximum strength use the smallest possible clearance.

UB-18 JOINT BRAZING PROCEDURE

A joint brazing procedure shall be developed for each different type of joint of a brazed assembly. A recommended form for recording the brazing procedure is shown in QB-482 of Section IX. If more than one joint occurs in a brazed assembly, the brazing sequence shall be specified on the drawing or in instructions accompanying the drawing. If welding and brazing are to be done on the same assembly, the welding shall precede the brazing unless it is determined that the heat of welding will not adversely affect the braze previously made.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UB-19 OPENINGS

(a) Openings for nozzles and other connections shall be far enough away from any main brazed joint so that the joint and the opening reinforcement plates do not interfere with one another.

(b) Openings for pipe connections in vessels having brazed joints may be made by inserting pipe couplings, not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80), or similar devices in the shell or heads and securing them by welding, without necessitating the application of the restrictive stamping provisions of UG-116, provided the welding is performed by welders who have been qualified under the provisions of Section IX for the welding position and type of joint used. Such attachments shall conform to the rules for welded connections in UW-15 and UW-16.

UB-20 NOZZLES

(a) Nozzles may be integral or attached to the vessel by any of the methods provided for in UG-43.

(b) For nozzle fittings having a bolting flange and an integral flange for brazing, the thickness of the flange attached to the pressure vessel shall not be less than the thickness of the neck of the fitting.

UB-21 BRAZED CONNECTIONS

Connections, such as saddle type fittings and fittings inserted into openings formed by outward flanging of the vessel wall, in sizes not exceeding NPS 3 (DN 80), may be attached to pressure vessels by lap joints of brazed construction. Sufficient brazing shall be provided on either side of the line through the center of the opening parallel to the longitudinal axis of the shell to develop the strength of the reinforcement as prescribed in UG-41 through shear in the brazing.

UB-22 LOW TEMPERATURE OPERATION

Impact tests shall be made of the brazed joints in pressure vessels and parts thereof fabricated from materials for which impact tests are required in Subsection C. The tests shall be made in accordance with UG-84 except that terms referring to welding shall be interpreted as referring to brazing.

FABRICATION

UB-30 GENERAL

(a) The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and parts thereof that are fabricated by brazing and shall be used in conjunction with the requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

(b) Each manufacturer or contractor shall be responsible for the quality of the brazing done by his organization and shall conduct tests not only of the brazing procedure to determine its suitability to ensure brazes which will meet the required tests, but also of the brazers and brazing operators to determine their ability to apply the procedure properly.

(c) No production work shall be undertaken until both the brazing procedure and the brazers or brazing operators have been qualified.

(d) Brazers not in the employ of the Manufacturer (Certificate of Authorization Holder) may be used to fabricate pressure vessels constructed in accordance with this Division, provided all the following conditions are met.

(1) All Code construction shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer.

(2) All brazing shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's Brazing Procedure Specifications which have been qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX.

(3) All brazers shall be qualified by the Manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Section IX.

(4) The Manufacturer's Quality Control System shall include as a minimum:

(a) a requirement for complete and exclusive administrative and technical supervision of all brazers by the Manufacturer;

(b) evidence of the Manufacturer's authority to assign and remove brazers at his discretion without the involvement of any other organization;

(c) a requirement for assignment of brazer identification symbols;

(d) evidence that this program has been accepted by the Manufacturer's Authorized Inspection Agency which provides the inspection service.

(5) The Manufacturer shall be responsible for Code compliance of the vessel or part, including Code Symbol stamping and providing completed Data Report Forms.

UB-31 QUALIFICATION OF BRAZING PROCEDURE

(a) Each procedure of brazing that is to be followed in construction shall be recorded in detail by the Manufacturer. Each brazing procedure shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX and when necessary determined

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

by design temperature, with the additional requirements of this Section.

(b) The procedure used in brazing pressure parts and in joining load-carrying nonpressure parts, such as all permanent or temporary clips and lugs, to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

(c) The procedure used in brazing nonpressure-bearing attachments which have essentially no load-carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation support pins, etc.) to pressure parts shall meet the following requirements.

(1) When the brazing process is manual, machine, or semiautomatic, procedure qualification is required in accordance with Section IX.

(2) When the brazing is any automatic brazing process performed in accordance with a Brazing Procedure Specification (in compliance with Section IX as far as applicable), procedure qualification testing is not required.

(d) Brazing of all test coupons shall be conducted by the Manufacturer. Testing of all test coupons shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer. Qualification of a brazing procedure by one Manufacturer shall not qualify that procedure for any other Manufacturer, except as provided in QW-201 of Section IX.

UB-32 QUALIFICATION OF BRAZERS AND BRAZING OPERATORS

(a) The brazers and brazing operators used in brazing pressure parts and in joining load-carrying nonpressure parts (attachments) to pressure parts shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

(1) The qualification test for brazing operators of machine brazing equipment shall be performed on a separate test plate prior to the start of brazing or on the first work piece.

(b) The brazers and brazing operators used in brazing nonpressure-bearing attachments, which have essentially no load-carrying function (such as extended heat transfer surfaces, insulation support pins, etc.), to pressure parts shall comply with the following.

(1) When the brazing process is manual, machine, or semiautomatic, qualification in accordance with Section IX is required.

(2) When brazing is done by any automatic brazing process, performance qualification testing is not required.

(c) Each brazer or brazing operator shall be assigned an identifying number, letter, or symbol by the Manufacturer which shall be used to identify the work of that brazer or brazing operator in accordance with UW-37(f).

(d) The Manufacturer shall maintain a record of the brazers and brazing operators showing the date and result of tests and the identification mark assigned to each. These records shall be certified by the Manufacturer and be accessible to the Inspector.

(e) Brazing of all test coupons shall be conducted by the Manufacturer. Testing of all test coupons shall be the responsibility of the Manufacturer. A performance qualification test conducted by one Manufacturer shall not qualify a brazer or brazing operator to do work for any other Manufacturer.

UB-33 BUTTSTRAPS

(a) Buttstraps shall be formed to the curvature of the shell with which they are to be used.

(b) When the buttstraps of a longitudinal joint do not extend the full length of a shell section, the abutting edges of the shell plate may be welded provided the length of the weld between the end of the buttstraps and the edge of the head or adjoining shell plate is not greater than four times the shell plate thickness. When so constructed, the restrictive stamping provisions of UG-116 shall not apply provided the welding is performed by welders who have been qualified under the provisions of Section IX for the welding position and type of joint used. The welds shall be completed before brazing is begun.

UB-34 CLEANING OF SURFACES TO BE BRAZED

The surfaces to be brazed shall be clean and free from grease, paint, oxides, scale and foreign matter of any kind. Any chemical or mechanical cleaning method may be used that will provide a surface suitable for brazing.

UB-35 CLEARANCE BETWEEN SURFACES TO BE BRAZED

The clearances between surfaces to be brazed shall be maintained within the tolerances provided for by the joint design and used in the qualifying procedure. If greater tolerances are to be used in production, the joint must be requalified for those greater tolerances. The control of tolerances required may be obtained by using spot welding, crimping, or other means which will not interfere with the quality of the braze. If such means are employed in production, they must also be employed in qualification of procedure, brazer, and operator.

UB-36 POSTBRAZING OPERATIONS

Brazed joints shall be thoroughly cleaned of flux residue by any suitable means after brazing and prior to

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

inspection.[1] Other postbrazing operations such as thermal treatments shall be performed in accordance with the qualified procedure.

UB-37 REPAIR OF DEFECTIVE BRAZING

Brazed joints which have been found to be defective may be rebrazed, where feasible, after thorough cleaning, and by employing the same brazing procedure used for the original braze. See UB-44. If a different brazing procedure is employed, i.e., torch repair of furnace brazed parts, a repair brazing procedure shall be established and qualified.

When a repair brazing procedure is established, it shall meet Section IX and other conditions set forth in this Section.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UB-40 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and parts thereof that are fabricated by brazing and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection A and with the specific requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection C that pertain to the class of material used.

UB-41 INSPECTION DURING FABRICATION

The Manufacturer shall submit the vessel or other pressure parts for inspection at such stages of the work as may be designated by the Inspector.

UB-42 PROCEDURE

The Inspector shall assure himself that the brazing procedure for each type of joint being produced is qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section IX and when necessary the additional requirements of this Section. He shall satisfy himself that each joint has been fabricated in accordance with the procedure. Where there is evidence of consistent poor quality, the Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the brazing procedure.

[1] Flux residues can be extremely corrosive as well as interfering with visual inspection.

UB-43 BRAZER AND BRAZING OPERATOR

(a) The manufacturer shall certify that the brazing on a vessel or part thereof has been done by brazers or brazing operators who are qualified under the requirements of Section IX and the Inspector shall assure himself that only qualified brazers or brazing operators have been used.

(b) The manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector a certified copy of the record of the qualification tests of each brazer and brazing operator. The Inspector shall have the right at any time to call for and witness tests of the ability of a brazer or brazing operator.

UB-44 VISUAL EXAMINATION

(a) Where possible, the Inspector shall visually inspect both sides of each brazed joint after flux residue removal. Where it is not possible to inspect one side of a brazed joint (blind joint), the Inspector shall check the design to determine that the proper joint factor has been employed, unless he can assure himself that the brazing filler metal has been preplaced in such a manner that it satisfies UB-15(b) and (c).

(b) There shall be evidence that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the joint. In a butt braze there shall be no concavity. The braze may be repaired or rebrazed.

(c) The presence of a crack in the brazing filler metal shall be cause for rejection. Dye penetrant inspection may be used if desired. The braze may be repaired or rebrazed. See UB-37.

(d) The presence of a crack in the base metal adjacent to a braze shall be cause for rejection even if the crack is filled with brazing alloy. Such cracking shall not be repaired.

(e) Pinholes or open defects in the braze shall be cause for rejection. The joint may be rebrazed.

(f) Rough fillets, particularly those with a convex appearance, are cause for rejection. Such joints may be repaired or rebrazed.

UB-50 EXEMPTIONS

Certain brazed joints regardless of their service temperatures may be exempt from the additional mechanical testing of this Section providing that the design application does not assume any benefit from the brazed joint strength. It shall, however, meet the requirements of those qualification tests required by Section IX of the Code.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MARKING AND REPORTS

UB-55 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports given in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply without supplement to brazed pressure vessels and parts thereof.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UB-60 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relieving devices given in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to brazed pressure vessels.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

SUBSECTION C
REQUIREMENTS PERTAINING TO CLASSES OF MATERIALS

PART UCS
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS[1]

GENERAL

UCS-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UCS are applicable to pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of carbon and low alloy steels and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

MATERIALS

UCS-5 GENERAL

(a) All carbon and low alloy steel material subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the Specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Table UCS-23 except as otherwise provided in UG-10 and UG-11.

(b) Carbon or low alloy steel having a carbon content of more than 0.35% by heat analysis shall not be used in welded construction or be shaped by oxygen cutting (except as provided elsewhere in this Division).

(c) Small parts used under the provisions of UG-11(a)(2) in welded construction shall be of good weldable quality.

UCS-6 STEEL PLATES

(a) Approved specifications for carbon and low alloy steel plates are given in Table UCS-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures are given in Table 1A of Section II, Part D (see UG-5).

(b) Steel plates conforming to SA-36, SA/CSA-G40.21 38W, and SA-283 Grades A, B, C, and D may be used for pressure parts in pressure vessels provided all of the following requirements are met.

(1) The vessels are not used to contain lethal substances, either liquid or gaseous.

(2) The material is not used in the construction of unfired steam boilers [see U-1(g)].

(3) With the exception of flanges, flat bolted covers, and stiffening rings, the thickness of plates on which strength welding is applied does not exceed $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm).

UCS-7 STEEL FORGINGS

Approved specifications for forgings of carbon and low alloy steel are given in Table UCS-23. A tabulation of

[1] Low alloy steels — those alloy steels listed in Table UCS-23.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-23
CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEEL

Spec. No.	Type/Grade	Spec. No.	Type/Grade	Spec. No.	Type/Grade
SA-36	. . .	SA-302	A, B, C, D	SA-516	55, 60, 65, 70
SA-53	E/A, E/B, S/A, S/B	SA-307	B	SA-524	I, II
SA-105	. . .	SA-320	L7, L7A, L7M, L43	SA-533	A Cl. 1 & 2, B Cl. 1 & 2, C Cl. 1 & 2, D Cl. 2
SA-106	A, B, C				
		SA-325	1	SA-537	Cl.1, 2, & 3
SA-135	A, B			SA-540	B21, B22, B23, B24, B24V
		SA-333	1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9		
SA-178	A, C	SA-334	1, 3, 6, 7, 9	SA-541	1, 1A, 2 Cl. 1, 2 Cl. 2, 3 Cl. 1, 3 Cl. 2, 3V, 22 Cl. 3, 22V
SA-179	. . .	SA-335	P1, P2, P5, P5b, P5c, P9, P11, P12, P15, P21, P22, P91		
SA-181	. . .			SA-542	B Cl. 4, C Cl. 4a, D Cl. 4a
SA-182	FR, F1, F2, F3V, F5, F5a, F9, F11 Cl. 1 & 2, F12 Cl. 1 & 2, F21, F22 Cl. 1 & 3, F22V, F91	SA-336	F1, F3V, F5, F5A, F9, F11 Cl. 2 & 3, F12, F21 Cl.1 & 3, F22 Cl. 1 & 3, F22V, F91		
				SA-556	A2, B2, C2
				SA-557	A2, B2, C2
				SA-562	. . .
		SA-350	LF1, LF2, LF3, LF5, LF9		
SA-192	. . .			SA-574	4037, 4042, 4140, 4340, 5137M, 51B37M
SA-193	B5, B7, B7M, B16	SA-352	LCB, LC1, LC2, LC3		
		SA-354	BC, BD		
SA-202	A, B			SA-587	. . .
SA-203	A, B, D, E, F	SA-369	FP1, FP2, FP5, FP9, FP11, FP12, FP21, FP22		
SA-204	A, B, C			SA-612	. . .
SA-209	T1, T1a, T1b				
SA-210	A-1, C			SA-662	A, B, C
		SA-372	A, B, C, D, E Cl.65 & 70, F Cl. 70, G Cl.70, H Cl.70, J Cl.65, 70, & 110, L, M Cl. A & B		
SA-213	T2, T5, T5b, T5c, T9, T11, T12, T17, T21, T22, T91			SA-675	45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70
				SA-695	B/35, B/40
SA-214	. . .				
SA-216	WCA, WCB, WCC	SA-387	2, 5, 11, 12, 21, 22, 91	SA-727	. . .
SA-217	C12, C5, WC1, WC4, WC5, WC6, WC9	SA-414	A, B, C, D, E, F, G	SA-737	B, C
				SA-738	A, B, C
SA-225	C	SA-420	WPL 3, WPL 6, WPL 9	SA-739	B11, B22
SA-234	WPB, WPC, WPR, WP1, WP5, WP9, WP11 Cl. 1, WP12 Cl. 1, WP22 Cl. 1	SA-423	1, 2	SA-765	I, II, III, IV
		SA-437	B4B, B4C		
				SA-832	21V, 22V
		SA-449	. . .		
SA-250	T1, T1a, T1b			SA-836	. . .
		SA-455	. . .		
SA-266	1, 2, 3, 4			SA-1008	CS-A, CS-B
		SA-487	1 Cl. A & B, 2 Cl. A & B, 4 Cl. A, 8 Cl. A		
SA-283	A, B, C, D			SA/AS 1548	7-430, 7-460, 7-490
SA-285	A, B, C				
		SA-508	1, 1A, 2 Cl. 1, 2 Cl. 2, 3 Cl. 1, 3 Cl. 2, 3V, 4N Cl. 3, 22 Cl. 3	SA/CSA-G40.21	38W
SA-299	. . .				
				SA/EN 10028-2	P295GH
		SA-515	60, 65, 70	SA/EN 10028-3	P275NH

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

allowable stress values at different temperatures are given in Table 1A of Section II, Part D (see UG-6).

UCS-8 STEEL CASTINGS

Approved specifications for castings of carbon and low alloy steel are given in Table UCS-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures are given in Table 1A of Section II, Part D. These stress values are to be multiplied by the casting quality factors of UG-24. Castings that are to be welded shall be of weldable grade.

UCS-9 STEEL PIPE AND TUBES

Approved specifications for pipe and tubes of carbon and low alloy steel are given in Table UCS-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values of the materials from which the pipe or tubes are manufactured are given in Table 1A of Section II, Part D. Net allowable stress values for pipe or tubes of welded manufacture are given in Table 1A of Section II, Part D.

UCS-10 BOLT MATERIALS

(a) Approved specifications for bolt materials of carbon steel and low alloy steel are given in Table UCS-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures (see UG-12) are given in Table 3 of Section II, Part D.

(b) Nonferrous and high alloy steel bolts, studs, and nuts may be used provided they are suitable for the application. They shall conform to the requirements of Part UNF or UHA, as applicable.

UCS-11 NUTS AND WASHERS

(a) Except as otherwise provided in (b)(4) below, materials for nuts shall conform to SA-194, SA-563, or to the requirements for nuts in the specification for the bolting material with which they are to be used. Nuts of special design, such as wing nuts, may be made of any suitable wrought material listed in Table UCS-23 or Table UHA-23 and shall be either: hot or cold forged; or machined from hot-forged, hot-rolled, or cold-drawn bars. Washers may be made from any suitable material listed in Table UCS-23 and Table UHA-23.

(b) Materials for nuts and washers shall be selected as follows.

(1) Carbon steel nuts and carbon steel washers may be used with carbon steel bolts or studs.

(2) Carbon or alloy steel nuts and carbon or alloy steel washers of approximately the same hardness as the nuts may be used with alloy steel bolts or studs for metal temperatures not exceeding 900°F (480°C).

(3) Alloy steel nuts shall be used with alloy steel studs or bolts for metal temperatures exceeding 900°F (480°C). Washers, if used, shall be of alloy steel equivalent to the nut material.

(4) Nonferrous nuts and washers may be used with ferrous bolts and studs provided they are suitable for the application. Consideration shall be given to the differences in thermal expansion and possible corrosion resulting from the combination of dissimilar metals. Nonferrous nuts and washers shall conform to the requirements of UNF-13.

(c) Nuts shall be semifinished, chamfered, and trimmed. Nuts shall be threaded to Class 2B or finer tolerances according to ASME B1.1. For use with flanges conforming to the standards listed in UG-44, nuts shall conform at least to the dimensions given in ASME/ANSI B18.2.2 for Heavy Series Nuts. For use with connections designed in accordance with the rules in Appendix 2, nuts may be of the ANSI Heavy Series, or they may be of other dimensions as permitted in (d) below.

(d) Nuts of special design or of dimensions other than ANSI Heavy Series may be used provided their strength is equal to that of the bolting, giving due consideration to bolt hole clearance, bearing area, thread form and class of fit, thread shear, and radial thrust from threads [see U-2(g)].

UCS-12 BARS AND SHAPES

(a) Approved specifications for bar and shape materials of carbon steel are given in Table UCS-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures are given in Table 1A of Section II, Part D.

(b) Bolt materials as described in UCS-10 may be used as bar materials.

(c) Parts made from bars, on which welding is done, shall be of material for which a P-Number for procedure qualification is given in Section IX, QW-422 (see UW-5).

DESIGN

UCS-16 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of carbon and low alloy steel and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A and with the specific requirements

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

for *Design* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UCS-19 WELDED JOINTS

When radiographic examination is required for butt welded joints by UCS-57, joints of Categories A and B (see UW-3) shall be of Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12.

UCS-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

Tables 3 (for bolting) and 1A (other materials) in Section II, Part D give the maximum allowable stress values at the temperature indicated for materials conforming to the specifications listed therein.[2] Values may be interpolated for intermediate temperatures. (See UG-23.) For vessels designed to operate at a temperature below −20°F (−29°C), the allowable stress values to be used in design shall not exceed those given in Table 3 or 1A in Section II, Part D for 100°F (40°C).

UCS-27 SHELLS MADE FROM PIPE

(a) Shells of pressure vessels may be made from seamless pipe or tubing listed in Table 1A of Section II, Part D provided the material of the pipe is manufactured by the open-hearth, basic oxygen, or electric-furnace process.

(b) Shells of pressure vessels may be made from electric resistance welded pipe or tubing listed in Table 1A of Section II, Part D in nominal diameters up to 30 in. (750 mm) provided the material is manufactured by the open-hearth, basic oxygen, or electric-furnace process [see UG-16(d)].

UCS-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28, using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and the temperature limits of UG-20(c).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of the charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

(c) Corrugated shells subject to external pressure may be used in pressure vessels in accordance with PFT-19 of Section I.

UCS-29 STIFFENING RINGS FOR SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Rules covering the design of stiffening rings are given in UG-29. An example illustrating the use of these rules is given in Appendix L.

UCS-30 ATTACHMENT OF STIFFENING RINGS TO SHELL

Rules covering the attachment of stiffening rings are given in UG-30.

UCS-33 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, and conical heads having pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall be designed by the rules of UG-33, using Fig. CS-1 or Fig. CS-2 of Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D. Examples illustrating the application of this paragraph are given in Appendix L.

UCS-56 REQUIREMENTS FOR POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) Before applying the detailed requirements and exemptions in these paragraphs, satisfactory weld procedure qualifications of the procedures to be used shall be performed in accordance with all the essential variables of Section IX including conditions of postweld heat treatment or lack of postweld heat treatment and including other restrictions listed below.

Except as otherwise specifically provided in the notes to Table UCS-56 and Table UCS-56.1, all welds in pressure vessels or pressure vessel parts shall be given a postweld heat treatment at a temperature not less than specified in those Tables when the nominal thickness, as defined in UW-40(f), including corrosion allowance, exceeds the limits in those Tables. The exemptions provided in Table UCS-56 or Table UCS-56.1 are not permitted when postweld heat treatment is a service requirement as set forth in UCS-68, when welding ferritic materials greater than $^1/_8$ in. (3 mm) thick with the electron beam welding process, or when welding P-No. 3, P-No. 4, P-Nos. 5A, 5B, and 5C, and P-No. 10 materials of any thickness using the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes. Electroslag welds in ferritic materials over $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) thickness at the joint shall be given a grain refining (austenitizing) heat treatment. Electrogas welds in ferritic materials with any single pass greater than $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) shall be given a grain refining

[2] See Appendix 1 of Section II, Part D for the basis on which the allowable stress values have been established.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 1 Gr. Nos. 1, 2, 3	1200 (650)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)
Gr. No. 4	NA	None	None	None

NOTES:

(1) When it is impractical to postweld heat treat at the temperature specified in this Table, it is permissible to carry out the postweld heat treatment at lower temperatures for longer periods of time in accordance with Table UCS-56.1.

(2) Postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:

(a) for welded joints over $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) nominal thickness;

(b) for welded joints over $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. (32 mm) nominal thickness through $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) nominal thickness unless preheat is applied at a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) during welding;

(c) for welded joints of all thicknesses if required by UW-2, except postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the conditions specified below:

(1) for groove welds not over $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) size and fillet welds with a throat not over $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) that attach nozzle connections that have a finished inside diameter not greater than 2 in. (50 mm), provided the connections do not form ligaments that require an increase in shell or head thickness, and preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;

(2) for groove welds not over $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds with a throat thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) or less that attach tubes to a tubesheet when the tube diameter does not exceed 2 in. (50 mm). A preheat of 200°F (95°C) minimum must be applied when the carbon content of the tubesheet exceeds 0.22%.

(3) for groove welds not over $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds with a throat thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) or less used for attaching nonpressure parts to pressure parts provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied when the thickness of the pressure part exceeds $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. (32 mm);

(4) for studs welded to pressure parts provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied when the thickness of the pressure part exceeds $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. (32 mm);

(5) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or for welds attaching corrosion resistant applied lining (see UCL-34) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is maintained during application of the first layer when the thickness of the pressure part exceeds $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. (32 mm).

NA = not applicable

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 3 Gr. Nos. 1, 2, 3	1100 (595)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)

NOTES:

(1) When it is impractical to postweld heat treat at the temperatures specified in this Table, it is permissible to carry out the postweld heat treatment at lower temperatures for longer periods of time in accordance with Table UCS-56.1.

(2) Postweld heat treatment is mandatory on P-No. 3 Gr. No. 3 material in all thicknesses.

(3) Except for the exemptions in Note (4), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:
   (a) on P-No. 3 Gr. No. 1 and P-No. 3 Gr. No. 2 over $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness. For these materials, postweld heat treatment is mandatory on material up to and including $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness unless a welding procedure qualification described in UCS-56(a) has been made in equal or greater thickness than the production weld.
   (b) on material in all thicknesses if required by UW-2.

(4) For welding connections and attachments to pressure parts, postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the conditions specified below:
   (a) for attaching to pressure parts that have a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits) or nonpressure parts with groove welds not over $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds that have a throat thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) or less, provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
   (b) for circumferential butt welds in pipe or tube where the pipe or tube have both a nominal wall thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) or less and a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits);
   (c) for studs welded to pressure parts that have a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
   (d) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or for welds attaching corrosion resistant applied lining (see UCL-34) when welded to pressure parts which have a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is maintained during application of the first layer.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

04

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 4 Gr. Nos. 1, 2	1200 (650)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	1 hr/in. (25 mm)	5 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 5 in. (125 mm)

NOTES:

(1) Except for exemptions in Note (2), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:

(a) on material of SA-202 Grades A and B over $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness. For these materials postweld heat treatment is mandatory up to and including $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness unless a welding procedure qualification described in UCS-56(a) has been made in equal or greater thickness than the production weld.

(b) on material of all thicknesses if required by UW-2

(c) on all other P-No. 4 Gr. Nos. 1 and 2 materials.

(2) Postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the conditions specified below:

(a) for circumferential butt welds in pipe or tube of P-No. 4 materials where the pipe or tubes comply with all of the following conditions:

(1) a maximum nominal outside diameter of 4 in. (100mm) (DN 100);

(2) a maximum nominal thickness of $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm);

(3) a maximum specified carbon content of not more than 0.15% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits);

(4) a minimum preheat of 250°F (120°C).

(b) for P-No. 4 pipe or tube materials meeting the requirements of (2)(a)(1), (2)(a)(2), and (2)(a)(3) above, having nonpressure attachments fillet welded to them provided:

(1) the fillet welds have a maximum throat thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm);

(2) a minimum preheat temperature of 250°F (120°C) is applied.

(c) for P-No. 4 pipe or tube materials meeting the requirements of (2)(a)(1), (2)(a)(2), and (2)(a)(3) above, having studs welded to them, a minimum preheat temperature of 250°F (120°C) is applied.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-Nos. 5A, 5B Gr. No. 1, and 5C Gr. No. 1	1250 (675)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	1 hr/in. (25 mm)	5 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 5B Gr. No. 2	1300 (705)			

NOTES:

(1) Except for exemptions in Note (2), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under all conditions.

(2) Postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the following conditions:

(a) for circumferential butt welds in pipe or tube where the pipe or tubes comply with all of the following conditions:

(1) a maximum specified chromium content of 3.00%;

(2) a maximum nominal outside diameter of 4 in. (100 mm) (DN 100);

(3) a maximum nominal thickness of $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm);

(4) a maximum specified carbon content of not more than 0.15% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits);

(5) a minimum preheat of 300°F (150°C) is applied.

(b) for pipe or tube materials meeting the requirements of (2)(a)(1), (2)(a)(2), (2)(a)(3), and (2)(a)(4) having nonpressure attachments fillet welded to them provided:

(1) the fillet welds have a maximum throat thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm);

(2) a minimum preheat temperature of 300°F (150°C) is applied.

(c) for pipe or tube materials meeting the requirements of (2)(a)(1), (2)(a)(2), (2)(a)(3), and (2)(a)(4) having studs welded to them provided a minimum preheat temperature of 300°F (150°C) is applied.

(3) When it is impractical to postweld heat P-Nos. 5A, 5B Gr. No. 1, and 5C Gr. No. 1 materials at the temperature specified in this Table, it is permissible to perform the postweld heat treatment at 1200°F (650°C) minimum provided that, for material up to 2 in. (50 mm) nominal thickness, the holding time is increased to the greater of 4 hr minimum or 4 hr/in. (25 mm) of thickness; for thickness over 2 in. (50 mm), the specified holding times are multiplied by 4. The requirements of UCS-85 must be accommodated in this reduction in postweld heat treatment.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]
P-No. 9A Gr. No. 1	1100 (595)	1 hr minimum, plus 15 min/in. (25 mm) for thickness over 1 in. (25 mm)

NOTES:

(1) When it is impractical to postweld heat treat at the temperature specified in this Table, it is permissible to carry out the postweld heat treatment at lower temperatures [1000°F (540°C) minimum] for longer periods of time in accordance with Table UCS-56.1.

(2) Except for exemptions in Note (3), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:
- (a) on material over 5/8 in. (16 mm) nominal thickness. For material up to and including 5/8 in. (16 mm) nominal thickness, postweld heat treatment is mandatory unless a welding procedure qualification described in UCS-56(a) has been made in equal or greater thickness than the production weld.
- (b) on material of all thicknesses if required by UW-2.

(3) Postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under conditions specified below:
- (a) for circumferential butt welds in pipe or tubes where the pipe or tubes comply with all the following conditions:
  - (1) a maximum nominal outside diameter of 4 in. (100 mm) (DN 100);
  - (2) a maximum thickness of 1/2 in. (13 mm);
  - (3) a maximum specified carbon content of not more than 0.15% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits);
  - (4) a minimum preheat of 250°F (120°C).
- (b) for pipe or tube materials meeting the requirements of (3)(a)(1), (3)(a)(2), and (3)(a)(3) above, having attachments fillet welded to them, provided:
  - (1) the fillet welds have a throat thickness of 1/2 in. (13 mm) or less;
  - (2) the material is preheated to 250°F (120°C) minimum. A lower preheating temperature may be used provided specifically controlled procedures necessary to produce sound welded joints are used. Such procedures shall include but shall not be limited to the following:
    - (a) The throat thickness of fillet welds shall be 1/2 in. (13 mm) or less.
    - (b) The maximum continuous length of fillet welds shall be not over 4 in. (100 mm).
    - (c) The thickness of the test plate used in making the welding procedure qualification of Section IX shall not be less than that of the material to be welded.
- (c) for attaching nonpressure parts to pressure parts with groove welds not over 1/2 in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds that have a throat thickness of 1/2 in. (13 mm) or less, provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
- (d) for studs welded to pressure parts provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
- (e) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or for welds attaching corrosion resistant applied lining (see UCL-34) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is maintained during application of the first layer.

(4) When the heating rate is less than 50°F (28°C)/hr between 800°F (425°C) and the holding temperature, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required. Additionally, where the manufacturer can provide evidence that the minimum temperature has been achieved throughout the thickness, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]
P-No. 9B Gr. No. 1	1100 (595)	1 hr minimum, plus 15 min/in. (25 mm) for thickness over 1 in. (25 mm)

NOTES:

(1) When it is impractical to postweld heat treat at the temperatures specified in this Table, it is permissible to carry out the postweld heat treatment at lower temperatures [1000°F (540°C) minimum] for longer periods of time in accordance with Table UCS-56.1.

(2) The holding temperature for postweld heat treatment shall not exceed 1175°F (635°C).

(3) Except for exemptions in Note (4), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:
  (a) on material over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness. For material up to and including $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness, postweld heat treatment is mandatory unless a welding procedure qualification described in UCS-56(a) has been made in equal or greater thickness than the production weld.
  (b) on material of all thicknesses if required by UW-2.

(4) Postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the conditions specified below:
  (a) for attaching nonpressure parts to pressure parts with groove welds not over $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds that have a throat thickness of $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) or less, provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
  (b) for studs welded to pressure parts provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
  (c) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or for welds attaching corrosion resistant applied lining (see UCL-34) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is maintained during application of the first layer.

(5) When the heating rate is less than 50°F (28°C)/hr between 800°F (425°C) and the holding temperature, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required. Additionally, where the manufacturer can provide evidence that the minimum temperature has been achieved throughout the thickness, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required.

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]
P-No. 10A Gr. No. 1	1100 (595)	1 hr minimum, plus 15 min/in. (25 mm) for thickness over 1 in. (25 mm)

NOTES:

(1) (a) When it is impractical to postweld heat treat at the temperature specified in this Table, it is permissible to carry out the postweld heat treatment at lower temperatures for longer periods of time in accordance with Table UCS-56.1.
  (b) Consideration should be given for possible embrittlement of materials containing up to 0.15% vanadium when postweld heat treating at the minimum temperature and at lower temperature for longer holding times.

(2) Except for exemptions in Note (3), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:
  (a) on all thicknesses of SA-487 Class 1Q material;
  (b) on all other P-No. 10A materials over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness. For these materials up to and including $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) nominal thickness, postweld heat treatment is mandatory unless a welding procedure qualification described in UCS-56(a) has been made in equal or greater thickness than the production weld.
  (c) on material of all thicknesses if required by UW-2.

(3) Postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the conditions specified below:
  (a) for attaching to pressure parts that have a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits) or nonpressure parts with groove weld not over $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds having a throat thickness of $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) or less, provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
  (b) for circumferential butt welds in pipes or tube where the pipe or tube has both a nominal wall thickness of $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) or less and a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by purchaser to a value within the specification limits) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
  (c) for studs welded to pressure parts that have a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by purchaser to a value within the specification limits) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
  (d) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or for welds attaching corrosion resistant applied lining (see UCL-34) when welded to pressure parts that have a specified maximum carbon content of not more than 0.25% (SA material specification carbon content, except when further limited by the purchaser to a value within the specification limits) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is maintained during application of the first layer.

(4) When the heating rate is less than 50°F (10°C)/hr between 800°F (425°C) and the holding temperature, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required. Additionally, where the manufacturer can provide evidence that the minimum temperature has been achieved throughout the thickness, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

04

TABLE UCS-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]
P-No. 10B Gr. No. 1	1200 (650)	1 hr minimum, plus 15 min/in. (25 mm) for thickness over 1 in. (25 mm)

NOTES:
(1) Postweld heat treatment is mandatory for P-No. 10B materials for all thicknesses.
(2) When the heating rate is less than 50°F (28°C)/hr between 800°F (425°C) and the holding temperature, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required. Additionally, where the manufacturer can provide evidence that the minimum temperature has been achieved throughout the thickness, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required.

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]
P-No. 10C Gr. No. 1	1000 (540)	1 hr minimum, plus 15 min/in. (25 mm) for thickness over 1 in. (25 mm)

NOTES:
(1) When it is impractical to postweld heat treat at the temperatures specified in this Table, it is permissible to carry out the postweld heat treatment at lower temperatures for longer periods of time in accordance with Table UCS-56.1.
(2) Except for exemptions in Note (3), postweld heat treatment is mandatory under the following conditions:
(a) for material over 1½ in. (38 mm) nominal thickness. Postweld heat treatment is mandatory on materials over 1¼ in. (32 mm) nominal thickness through 1½ in. (38 mm) nominal thickness unless preheat is applied at a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) during welding.
(b) on material of all thicknesses if required by UW-2.
(3) Postweld heat treatment is not mandatory under the conditions specified below:
(a) for groove welds not over ½ in. (13 mm) in size and fillet welds with throat not over ½ in. (13 mm) that attach nozzle connections that have a finished inside diameter not greater than 2 in. (50 mm) provided the connections do not form ligaments that require an increase in shell or head thickness and preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied;
(b) for groove welds not over ½ in. (13 mm) in size or fillet welds having throat thickness of ½ in. (13 mm) or less used for attaching nonpressure parts to pressure parts and preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied when the thickness of the pressure part exceeds 1¼ in. (32 mm);
(c) for studs welded to pressure parts provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is applied when the thickness of the pressure part exceeds 1¼ in. (32 mm);
(d) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or for welds attaching corrosion resistant applied lining (see UCL-34) provided preheat to a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) is maintained during application of the first layer when the thickness of the pressure part exceeds 1¼ in. (32 mm).
(4) When the heating rate is less than 50°F (28°C)/hr between 800°F (425°C) and the holding temperature, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required. Additionally, where the manufacturer can provide evidence that the minimum temperature has been achieved throughout the thickness, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required.

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UW-40(f)]
P-No. 10F Gr. No. 1	1000 (540)	1 hr minimum, plus 15 min/in. (25 mm) for thickness over 1 in. (25 mm)

NOTES:
(1) Postweld heat treatment is mandatory for P-No. 10F materials for all thicknesses.
(2) When the heating rate is less than 50°F (28°C)/hr between 800°F (425°C) and the holding temperature, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required. Additionally, where the manufacturer can provide evidence that the minimum temperature has been achieved throughout the thickness, the additional 15 min/in. (25 mm) holding time is not required.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-56.1
ALTERNATIVE POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR CARBON AND LOW ALLOY STEELS
Applicable Only When Permitted in Table UCS-56

Decrease in Temperature Below Minimum Specified Temperature, °F (°C)	Minimum Holding Time [Note (1)] at Decreased Temperature, hr	Notes
50 (28)	2	. . .
100 (56)	4	. . .
150 (83)	10	(2)
200 (111)	20	(2)

NOTES:
(1) Minimum holding time for 1 in. (25 mm) thickness or less. Add 15 minutes per inch (25 mm) of thickness for thicknesses greater than 1 in. (25 mm).
(2) These lower postweld heat treatment temperatures permitted only for P-No. 1 Gr. Nos. 1 and 2 materials.

(austenitizing) heat treatment. For P-No. 1 materials only, the heating and cooling rate restrictions of (d)(2) and (d)(5) below do not apply when the heat treatment following welding is in the austenitizing range.

The materials in Table UCS-56 are listed in accordance with Section IX P-Number material groupings of QW-422 and also listed in Table UCS-23.

(b) Except where prohibited in Table UCS-56, holding temperatures and/or holding times in excess of the minimum values given in Table UCS-56 may be used. Intermediate postweld heat treatments need not conform to the requirements of Table UCS-56. The holding time at temperature as specified in Table UCS-56 need not be continuous. It may be an accumulation of time of multiple postweld heat treatment cycles.

(c) When pressure parts of two different P-Number groups are joined by welding, the postweld heat treatment shall be that specified in either of Tables UCS-56 or UHA-32, with applicable notes, for the material requiring the higher postweld temperature. When nonpressure parts are welded to pressure parts, the postweld heat treatment temperature of the pressure part shall control.

(d) The operation of postweld heat treatment shall be carried out by one of the procedures given in UW-40 in accordance with the following requirements.

(1) The temperature of the furnace shall not exceed 800°F (425°C) at the time the vessel or part is placed in it.

(2) Above 800°F (425°C), the rate[3] of heating shall be not more than 400°F/hr (222°C/hr) divided by the maximum metal thickness of the shell or head plate in inches, but in no case more than 400°F/hr (222°C/hr). During the heating period there shall not be a greater variation in temperature throughout the portion of the vessel being heated than 250°F (139°C) within any 15 ft (4.6 m) interval of length.

(3) The vessel or vessel part shall be held at or above the temperature specified in Table UCS-56 or Table UCS-56.1 for the period of time specified in the Tables. During the holding period, there shall not be a greater difference than 150°F (83°C) between the highest and lowest temperature throughout the portion of the vessel being heated, except where the range is further limited in Table UCS-56.

(4) During the heating and holding periods, the furnace atmosphere shall be so controlled as to avoid excessive oxidation of the surface of the vessel. The furnace shall be of such design as to prevent direct impingement of the flame on the vessel.

(5) Above 800°F (425°C), cooling shall be done in a closed furnace or cooling chamber at a rate[3] not greater than 500°F/hr (278°C) divided by the maximum metal thickness of the shell or head plate in inches, but in no case more than 500°F/hr (278°C). From 800°F (425°C) the vessel may be cooled in still air.

(e) Except as permitted in (f) below, vessels or parts of vessels that have been postweld heat treated in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph shall again be postweld heat treated after welded repairs have been made.

(f) Weld repairs to P-No. 1 Group Nos. 1, 2, and 3 materials and to P-No. 3 Group Nos. 1, 2, and 3 materials and to the weld metals used to join these materials may be made after the final PWHT but prior to the final hydrostatic test, without additional PWHT, provided that PWHT is not required as a service requirement in accordance with UW-2(a), except for the exemptions in Table UCS-56, or as a service requirement in accordance with UCS-68. The welded repairs shall meet the requirements of (1) through (6) below. These requirements do not apply when the welded repairs are minor restorations of the material surface, such as those required after removal of construction fixtures, and provided that the surface is not exposed to the vessel contents.

(1) The Manufacturer shall give prior notification of the repair to the user or to his designated agent and

[3] The rates of heating and cooling need not be less than 100°F/hr (38°C). However, in all cases consideration of closed chambers and complex structures may indicate reduced rates of heating and cooling to avoid structural damage due to excessive thermal gradients.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

shall not proceed until acceptance has been obtained. Such repairs shall be recorded on the Data Report.

(2) The total repair depth shall not exceed $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) for P-No. 1 Group Nos. 1, 2, and 3 materials and $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) for P-No. 3 Group Nos. 1, 2, and 3 materials. The total depth of a weld repair shall be taken as the sum of the depths for repairs made from both sides of a weld at a given location.

(3) After removal of the defect, the groove shall be examined, using either the magnetic particle or the liquid penetrant examination methods, in accordance with Appendix 6 for MT and Appendix 8 for PT.

(4) In addition to the requirements of Section IX for qualification of Welding Procedure Specifications for groove welds, the following requirements shall apply.

(a) The weld metal shall be deposited by the manual shielded metal arc process using low hydrogen electrodes. The electrodes shall be properly conditioned in accordance with Section II, Part C, SFA-5.5, Appendix A5.6. The maximum bead width shall be four times the electrode core diameter.

(b) For P-No. 1 Group Nos. 1, 2, and 3 materials, the repair area shall be preheated and maintained at a minimum temperature of 200°F (95°C) during welding.

(c) For P-No. 3 Group Nos. 1, 2, and 3 materials, the repair weld method shall be limited to the half bead weld repair and weld temper bead reinforcement technique. The repair area shall be preheated and maintained at a minimum temperature of 350°F (175°C) during welding. The maximum interpass temperature shall be 450°F (230°C). The initial layer of weld metal shall be deposited over the entire area using $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) maximum diameter electrodes. Approximately one-half the thickness of this layer shall be removed by grinding before depositing subsequent layers. The subsequent weld layers shall be deposited using $\frac{5}{32}$ in. (4 mm) maximum diameter electrodes in such a manner as to assure tempering of the prior weld beads and their heat affected zones. A final temper bead weld shall be applied to a level above the surface being repaired without contacting the base material but close enough to the edge of the underlying weld bead to assure tempering of the base material heat affected zone. After completing all welding, the repair area shall be maintained at a temperature of 400°F–500°F (205°C–260°C) for a minimum period of 4 hr. The final temper bead reinforcement layer shall be removed substantially flush with the surface of the base material.

(5) After the finished repair weld has reached ambient temperature, it shall be inspected using the same nondestructive examination that was used in (f)(3) above, except that for P-No. 3, Group No. 3 materials, the examination shall be made after the material has been at ambient temperature for a minimum period of 48 hr to determine the presence of possible delayed cracking of the weld. If the examination is by the magnetic particle method, only the alternating current yoke type is acceptable. In addition, welded repairs greater than $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) deep in materials and in welds that are required to be radiographed by the rules of this Division, shall be radiographically examined to the requirements of UW-51.

(6) The vessel shall be hydrostatically tested after making the welded repair.

TABLE UCS-57
THICKNESS ABOVE WHICH FULL RADIOGRAPHIC EXAMINATION OF BUTT WELDED JOINTS IS MANDATORY

P-No. & Gr. No. Classification of Material	Nominal Thickness Above Which Butt Welded Joints Shall Be Fully Radiographed, in. (mm)
1 Gr. 1, 2, 3	$1\frac{1}{4}$ (32)
3 Gr. 1, 2, 3	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)
4 Gr. 1, 2	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
5A, 5B Gr. 1	0 (0)
9A Gr. 1	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
9B Gr. 1	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
10A Gr. 1	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)
10B Gr. 2	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
10C Gr. 1	$\frac{5}{8}$ (16)
10F Gr. 6	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)

UCS-57 RADIOGRAPHIC EXAMINATION

In addition to the requirements of UW-11, complete radiographic examination is required for each butt welded joint at which the thinner of the plate or vessel wall thicknesses at the welded joint exceeds the thickness limit above which full radiography is required in Table UCS-57.

LOW TEMPERATURE OPERATION

UCS-65 SCOPE

The following paragraphs contain requirements for vessels and vessel parts constructed of carbon and low alloy steels with respect to minimum design metal temperatures.

UCS-66 MATERIALS

(a) Figure UCS-66 shall be used to establish impact testing exemptions for steels listed in Part UCS. Unless otherwise exempted by the rules of this Division, impact

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

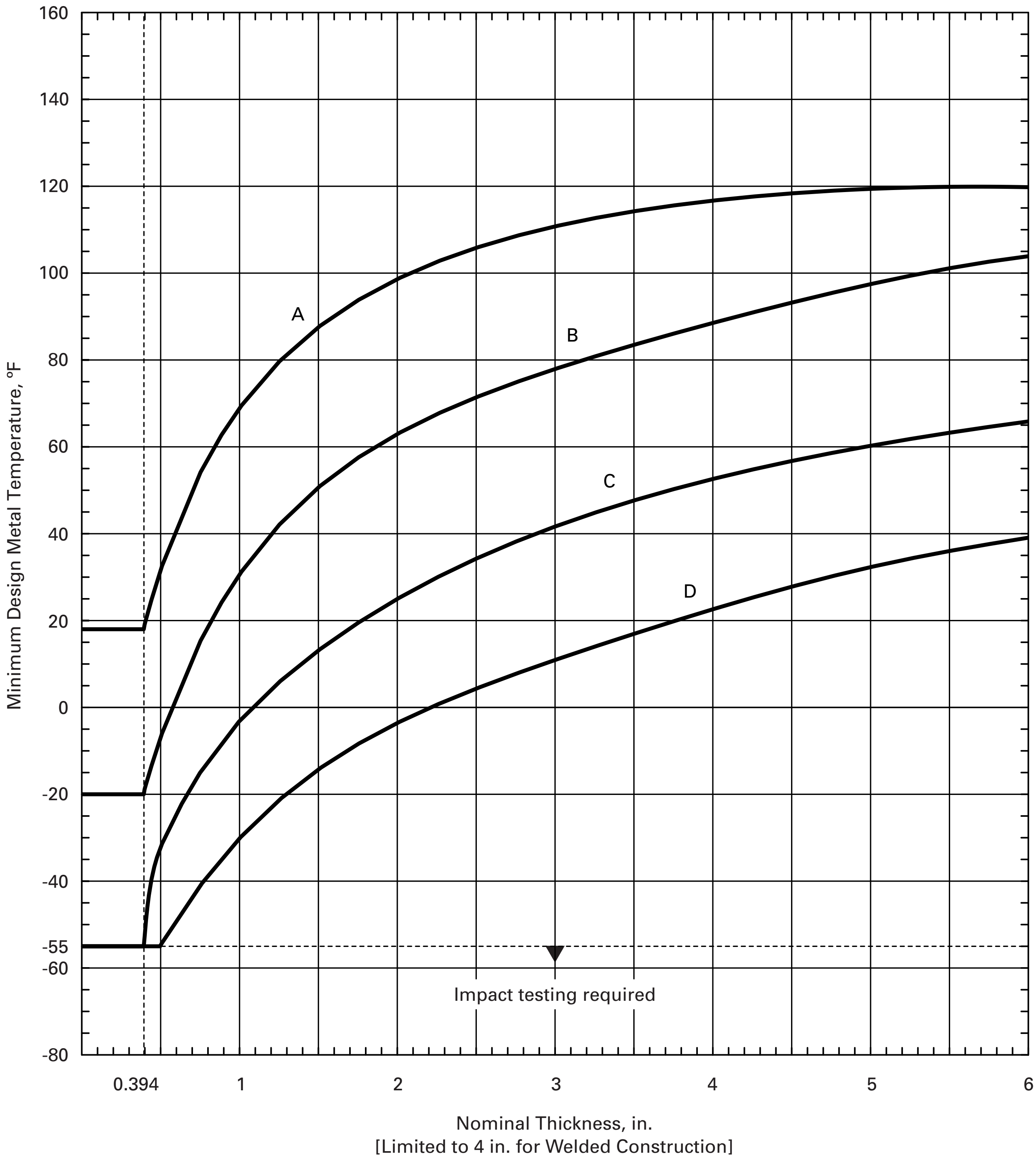


FIG. UCS-66 IMPACT TEST EXEMPTION CURVES [SEE NOTES (1) AND (2)] [SEE UCS-66(a)]

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

GENERAL NOTES ON ASSIGNMENT OF MATERIALS TO CURVES:

(a) Curve A applies to:
  (1) all carbon and all low alloy steel plates, structural shapes, and bars not listed in Curves B, C, and D below;
  (2) SA-216 Grades WCB and WCC if normalized and tempered or water-quenched and tempered; SA-217 Grade WC6 if normalized and tempered or water-quenched and tempered.

(b) Curve B applies to:
  (1) SA-216 Grade WCA if normalized and tempered or water-quenched and tempered
  SA-216 Grades WCB and WCC for thicknesses not exceeding 2 in. (50 mm), if produced to fine grain practice and water-quenched and tempered
  SA-217 Grade WC9 if normalized and tempered
  SA-285 Grades A and B
  SA-414 Grade A
  SA-515 Grade 60
  SA-516 Grades 65 and 70 if not normalized
  SA-612 if not normalized
  SA-662 Grade B if not normalized
  SA/EN 10028-2 P295GH as-rolled;
  (2) except for cast steels, all materials of Curve A if produced to fine grain practice and normalized which are not listed in Curves C and D below;
  (3) all pipe, fittings, forgings and tubing not listed for Curves C and D below;
  (4) parts permitted under UG-11 shall be included in Curve B even when fabricated from plate that otherwise would be assigned to a different curve.

(c) Curve C
  (1) SA-182 Grades 21 and 22 if normalized and tempered
  SA-302 Grades C and D
  SA-336 F21 and F22 if normalized and tempered
  SA-387 Grades 21 and 22 if normalized and tempered
  SA-516 Grades 55 and 60 if not normalized
  SA-533 Grades B and C
  SA-662 Grade A;
  (2) all material of Curve B if produced to fine grain practice and normalized and not listed for Curve D below.

(d) Curve D
  SA-203
  SA-508 Grade 1
  SA-516 if normalized
  SA-524 Classes 1 and 2
  SA-537 Classes 1, 2, and 3
  SA-612 if normalized
  SA-662 if normalized
  SA-738 Grade A
  SA-738 Grade A with Cb and V deliberately added in accordance with the provisions of the material specification, not colder than −20°F (−29°C)
  SA-738 Grade B not colder than −20°F (−29°C)
  SA/AS 1548 Grades 7-430, 7-460, and 7-490 if normalized
  SA/EN 10028-2 P295GH if normalized [see Note (g)(3)]
  SA/EN 10028-3 P275NH

General Notes and Notes continue on next page

FIG. UCS-66 IMPACT TEST EXEMPTION CURVES [SEE NOTES (1) AND (2)] [SEE UCS-66(a)] (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

GENERAL NOTES ON ASSIGNMENT OF MATERIALS TO CURVES (CONT'D):

(e) For bolting and nuts, the following impact test exemption temperature shall apply:

Bolting

Spec. No.	Grade	Diameter, in. (mm)	Impact Test Exemption Temperature, °F (°C)
SA-193	B5	Up to 4 (100 mm), incl.	−20 (−30)
	B7	Up to 2½ in. (64 mm), incl.	−55 (−48)
		Over 2½ (64 mm) to 7 (175 mm), incl.	−40 (−40)
	B7M	Up to 2½ (64 mm), incl.	−55 (−48)
	B16	Up to 7 (175 mm), incl.	−20 (−30)
SA-307	B	All	−20 (−30)
SA-320	L7, L7A,	Up to 2½ (64 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
	L7M,	Up to 2½ (64 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
	L43	Up to 1 (25 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-325	1	½ (13 mm) to 1½ (38 mm)	−20 (−30)
SA-354	BC	Up to 4 (100 mm), incl.	0 (−18)
SA-354	BD	Up to 4 (100 mm), incl.	+20 (−7)
SA-437	B4B, B4C	All diameters	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-449	. . .	Up to 3 (75 mm), incl.	−20 (−30)
SA-540	B21 Cl. All	All	Impact test required
SA-540	B22 Cl. 3	Up to 4 (100 mm), incl.	Impact test required
SA-540	B23 Cl. 1, 2	All	Impact test required
SA-540	B23 Cl. 3, 4	Up to 6 (150 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-540	B23 Cl. 3, 4	Over 6 (150 mm) to 9½ (240 mm), incl.	Impact test required
SA-540	B23 Cl. 5	Up to 8 (200 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-540	B24 Cl. 5	Over 8 (200 mm) to 9½ (240 mm), incl.	Impact test required
SA-540	B24 Cl. 1	Up to 6 (150 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-540	B24 Cl. 1	Over 6 (150 mm) to 8 (200 mm), incl.	Impact test required
SA-540	B24 Cl. 2	Up to 7 (175 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-540	B24 Cl. 2	Over 7 (175 mm) to 9½ (240 mm), incl.	Impact test required
SA-540	B24 Cl. 3, 4	Up to 8 (200 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-540	B24 Cl. 3, 4	Over 8 (200 mm) to 9½ (240 mm), incl.	Impact test required
SA-540	B24 Cl. 5	Up to 9½ (240 mm), incl.	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1
SA-540	B24V Cl. 3	All	See General Note (c) of Fig. UG-84.1

Nuts

Spec. No.	Grade	Impact Test Exemption Temperature, °F (°C)
SA-194	2, 2H, 2HM, 3, 4, 7, 7M, and 16	−55 (−48)
SA-540	B21/B22/B23/B24/B24V	−55 (−48)

(f) When no class or grade is shown, all classes or grades are included.

(g) The following shall apply to all material assignment notes.

(1) Cooling rates faster than those obtained by cooling in air, followed by tempering, as permitted by the material specification, are considered to be equivalent to normalizing or normalizing and tempering heat treatments.

(2) Fine grain practice is defined as the procedure necessary to obtain a fine austenitic grain size as described in SA-20.

(3) Normalized rolling condition is not considered as being equivalent to normalizing.

NOTES:

(1) Tabular values for this Figure are provided in Table UCS-66.

(2) Castings not listed in General Notes (a) and (b) above shall be impact tested.

FIG. UCS-66 IMPACT TEST EXEMPTION CURVES [SEE NOTES (1) AND (2)] [SEE UCS-66(a)] (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

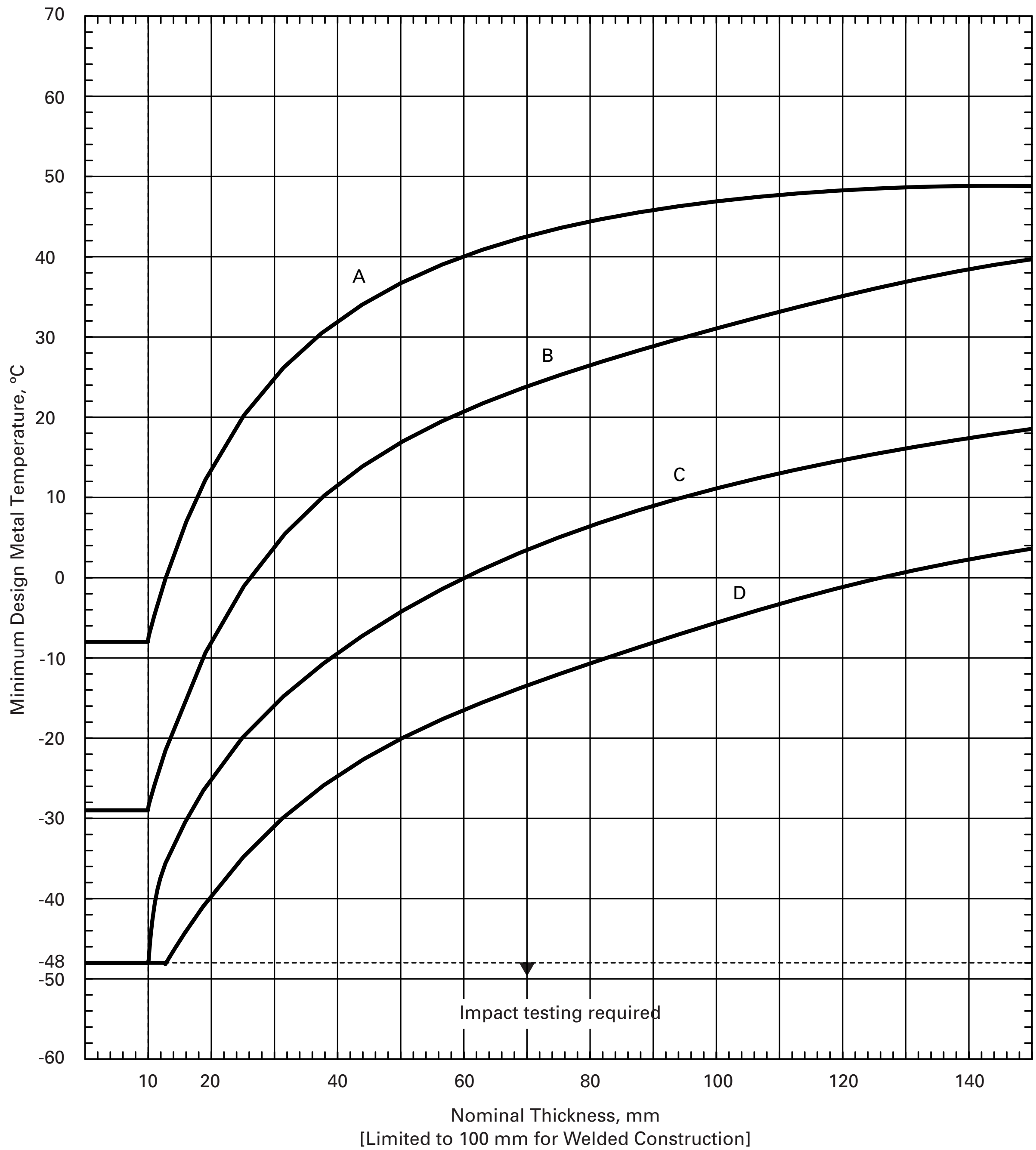


FIG. UCS-66M IMPACT TEST EXEMPTION CURVES [SEE NOTES (1) AND (2)] [SEE UCS-66(a)]

testing is required for a combination of minimum design metal temperature (see UG-20) and thickness (as defined below) which is below the curve assigned to the subject material. If a minimum design metal temperature and thickness combination is on or above the curve, impact testing is not required by the rules of this Division, except as required by (j) below and UCS-67(a)(2) for weld metal.

Components, such as shells, heads, nozzles, manways, reinforcing pads, flanges, tubesheets, flat cover plates, backing strips which remain in place, and attachments which are essential to the structural integrity of the vessel when welded to pressure retaining components, shall be treated as separate components. Each component shall be evaluated for impact test requirements based on its

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

individual material classification, thickness as defined in (1), (2), or (3) below, and the minimum design metal temperature.

The following thickness limitations apply when using Fig. UCS-66.

(1) Excluding castings, the governing thickness t_g of a welded part is as follows:

(a) for butt joints except those in flat heads and tubesheets, the nominal thickness of the thickest welded joint [see Fig. UCS-66.3 sketch (a)];

(b) for corner, fillet, or lap welded joints, including attachments as defined above, the thinner of the two parts joined;

(c) for flat heads or tubesheets, the larger of (b) above or the flat component thickness divided by 4;

(d) for welded assemblies comprised of more than two components (e.g., nozzle-to-shell joint with reinforcing pad), the governing thickness and permissible minimum design metal temperature of each of the individual welded joints of the assembly shall be determined, and the warmest of the minimum design metal temperatures shall be used as the permissible minimum design metal temperature of the welded assembly. [See Fig. UCS-66.3 sketch (b), L-9.3.1, and L-9.5.2.]

If the governing thickness at any welded joint exceeds 4 in. and the minimum design metal temperature is colder than 120°F (50°C), impact tested material shall be used.

(2) The governing thickness of a casting shall be its largest nominal thickness.

(3) The governing thickness of flat nonwelded parts, such as bolted flanges, tubesheets, and flat heads, is the flat component thickness divided by 4.

(4) The governing thickness of a nonwelded dished head [see Fig. 1-6 sketch (c)] is the greater of the flat flange thickness divided by 4 or the minimum thickness of the dished portion.

(5) If the governing thickness of the nonwelded part exceeds 6 in. (150 mm) and the minimum design metal temperature is colder than 120°F (50°C), impact tested material shall be used.

Examples of the governing thickness for some typical vessel details are shown in Fig. UCS-66.3.

NOTE: The use of provisions in UCS-66 which waive the requirements for impact testing does not provide assurance that all test results for these materials would satisfy the impact energy requirements of UG-84 if tested.

(b) When the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is less than one, Fig. UCS-66.1 provides a basis for the use of components made of Part UCS materials to have a colder MDMT than that derived from (a) above without impact testing.

(1)(a) For such components, and for a MDMT of −55°F (−48°C) and warmer, the MDMT without impact testing determined in (a) above for the given material and thickness may be reduced as determined from Fig. UCS-66.2. If the resulting temperature is colder than the required MDMT, impact testing of the material is not required.

(b) Figure UCS-66.1 may also be used for components not stressed in general primary membrane tensile stress, such as flat heads, covers, tubesheets, and flanges (including bolts and nuts). The MDMT of these components without impact testing as determined in UCS-66(a) or (c) may be reduced as determined from Fig. UCS-66.2. The ratio used in Step 3 of Fig. UCS-66.2 shall be the ratio of maximum design pressure at the MDMT to the maximum allowable pressure (MAP) of the component at the MDMT. If the resulting temperature is colder than the required MDMT, impact testing of the material is not required, provided the MDMT is not colder than −55°F (−48°C).

(c) In lieu of using (b)(1)(b) above, the MDMT determined in UCS-66(a) or (c) may be reduced for a flange attached by welding, by the same reduction as determined in (b)(1)(a) above for the neck or shell which the flange is attached.

NOTE: The bolt-up condition need not be considered when determining the temperature reduction for flanges.

(2) For minimum design temperatures colder than −55°F (−48°C), impact testing is required for all materials, except as allowed in (b)(3) below and in UCS-68(c).

(3) When the minimum design metal temperature is colder than −55°F (−48°C) and no colder than −155°F (−105°C), and the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is less than or equal to 0.35, impact testing is not required.

(c) No impact testing is required for the following flanges when used at minimum design metal temperatures no colder than −20°F (−29°C):

(1) ASME B16.5 flanges of ferritic steel;

(2) ASME B16.47 flanges of ferritic steel;

(3) split loose flanges of SA-216 GR WCB when the outside diameter and bolting dimensions are either ASME B16.5 Class 150 or Class 300, and the flange thicknesses are not greater than that of either ASME B16.5 Class 150 or Class 300, respectively.

(4) Carbon and Low Alloy Steel Long Weld Neck Flanges. Long weld neck flanges are defined as forged nozzles that meet the dimensional requirements of a flanged fitting given in ASME B16.5 but having a straight hub/neck. The neck inside diameter shall not be less than the nominal size of the flange and the outside diameter

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of the neck and any nozzle reinforcement shall not exceed the diameter of the hub as specified in ASME B16.5.

(d) No impact testing is required for UCS materials 0.10 in. (2.5 mm) in thickness and thinner, but such exempted UCS materials shall not be used at design metal temperatures colder than −55°F (−48°C). For vessels or components made from NPS 4 (DN 100) or smaller tubes or pipe of P-No. 1 materials, the following exemptions from impact testing are also permitted as a function of the material specified minimum yield strength (SMYS) for metal temperatures of −155°F (−105°C) and warmer:

SMYS, ksi (MPa)	Thickness, in. (mm)
20 to 35 (140 to 240)	0.237 (6.0)
36 to 45 (250 to 310)	0.125 (3.2)
46 (320) and higher	0.10 (2.5)

(e) The material manufacturer's identification marking required by the material specification shall not be stamped on plate material less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) in thickness unless the following requirements are met.

(1) The materials shall be limited to P-No. 1 Gr. Nos. 1 and 2.

(2) The minimum nominal plate thickness shall be $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm), or the minimum nominal pipe wall thickness shall be 0.154 in. (3.91 mm).

(3) The minimum design metal temperature shall be no colder than −20°F (−29°C).

(f) Unless specifically exempted in Fig. UCS-66, materials having a specified minimum yield strength greater than 65 ksi (450 MPa) must be impact tested.

(g) Materials produced and impact tested in accordance with the requirements of the specifications listed in Fig. UG-84.1, General Note (c), are exempt from impact testing by the rules of this Division at minimum design metal temperatures not more than 5°F (3°C) colder than the test temperature required by the specification.

(h) No impact testing is required for metal backing strips which remain in place made of materials assigned to Curve A of Fig. UCS-66 in thicknesses not exceeding $\frac{1}{4}$ in.(6 mm) when the minimum design metal temperature is −20°F (−29°C) or warmer.

(i) For components made of Part UCS materials that are impact tested, Fig. UCS-66.1 provides a basis for the use of these components at MDMT colder than the impact test temperature, provided the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is less than one, and the MDMT is not colder than −155°F (−105°C).

(1) For such components, the MDMT shall not be colder than the impact test temperature less the allowable temperature reduction as determined from Fig. UCS-66.2.

(2) Figure UCS-66.1 may also be used for components not stressed in general primary membrane tensile stress, such as flat heads, covers, tubesheets, and flanges (including bolts and nuts). The MDMT shall not be colder than the impact test temperature less the allowable temperature reduction as determined from Fig. UCS-66.2. The ratio used in Step 3 of Fig. UCS-66.2 shall be the ratio of maximum design pressure at the MDMT to the maximum allowable pressure (MAP) of the component at the MDMT.

(3) In lieu of using (i)(2) above, the MDMT for a flange attached by welding shall not be colder than the impact test temperature less the allowable temperature reduction as determined in (i)(1) above for the neck or shell to which the flange is attached.

(j) When the base metal is exempt from impact testing by (g) above or by Fig. UCS-66 Curves C or D, −20°F (−29°C) is the coldest MDMT to be assigned for welded components that do not meet the requirements of UCS-67(a)(2).

UCS-67 IMPACT TESTS OF WELDING PROCEDURES

Except as exempted in UG-20(f), the Welding Procedure Qualification shall include impact tests of welds and heat affected zones (HAZ) made in accordance with UG-84 when required by the following provisions. The MDMT used below shall be the MDMT stamped on the nameplate or the exemption temperature of the welded component before applying the temperature reduction permitted by UCS-66(b) or UCS-68(c).

UCS-67(a) Welds made with filler metal shall be impact tested in accordance with UG-84 when any of the following apply:

UCS-67(a)(1) when either base metal is required to be impact tested by the rules of this Division; or

UCS-67(a)(2) when joining base metals exempt from impact testing by UCS-66(g) or Fig. UCS-66 Curve C or D and the minimum design metal temperature is colder than −20°F (−29°C) but not colder than −55°F (−48°C), unless welding consumables which have been classified by impact tests at a temperature not warmer than the MDMT by the applicable SFA specification are used; or

UCS-67(a)(3) when joining base metals exempt from impact testing by UCS-66(g) when the minimum design metal temperature is colder than −55°F (−48°C).

UCS-67(b) Welds in UCS materials made without the use of filler metal shall be impact tested when the thickness at the weld exceeds $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) for all minimum design metal temperatures or when the thickness at the weld exceeds $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) and the minimum design metal temperature is colder than 50°F (10°C). This requirement does not apply to welds made as part of the material specification.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-66
TABULAR VALUES FOR FIG. UCS-66

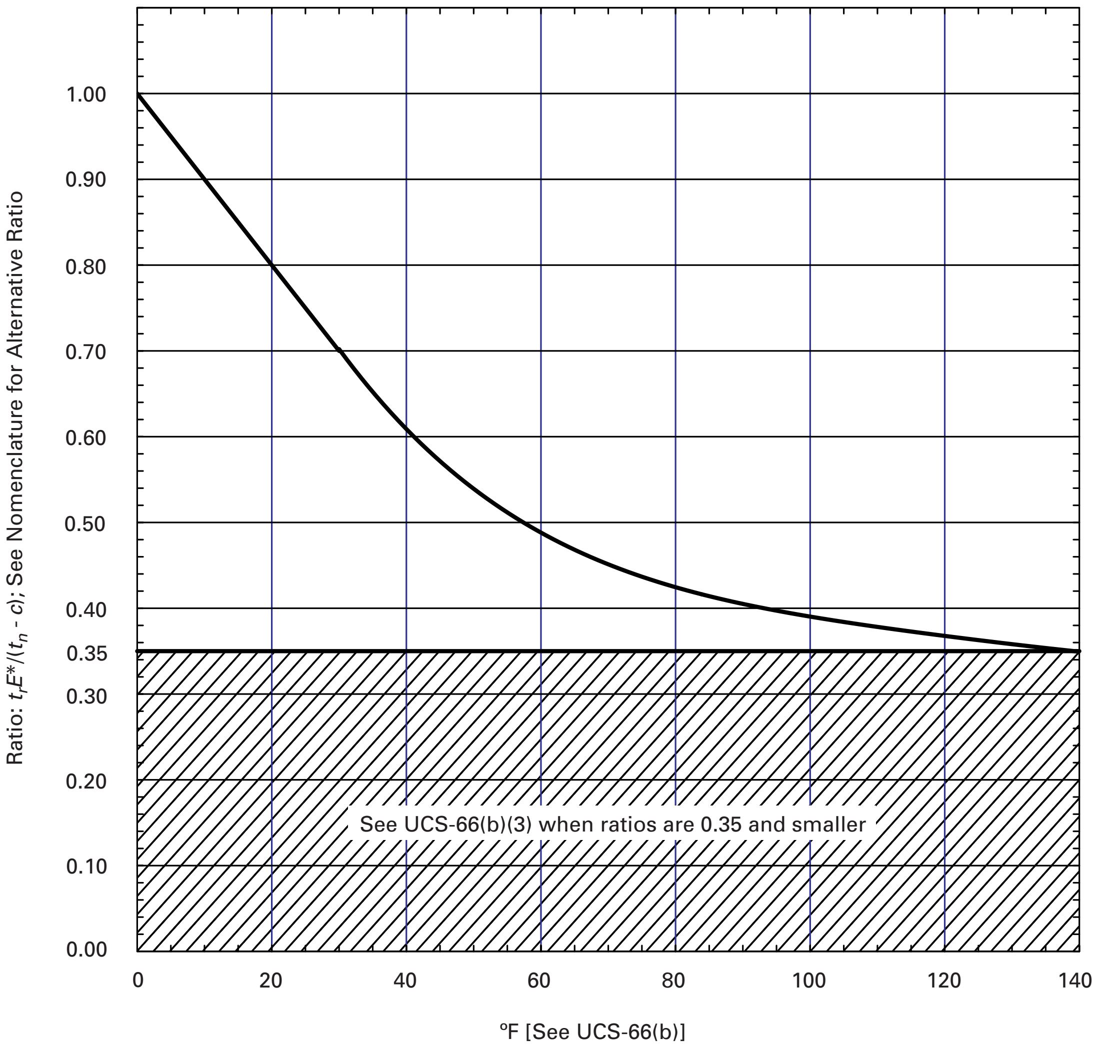
Customary Units					SI Units				
Thickness, in.	Curve A, °F	Curve B, °F	Curve C, °F	Curve D, °F	Thickness, mm	Curve A, °C	Curve B, °C	Curve C, °C	Curve D, °C
0.25	18	−20	−55	−55	6.4	−8	−29	−48	−48
0.3125	18	−20	−55	−55	7.9	−8	−29	−48	−48
0.375	18	−20	−55	−55	9.5	−8	−29	−48	−48
0.4375	25	−13	−40	−55	11.1	−4	−25	−40	−48
0.5	32	−7	−34	−55	12.7	0	−22	−37	−48
0.5625	37	−1	−26	−51	14.3	3	−18	−32	−46
0.625	43	5	−22	−48	15.9	6	−15	−30	−44
0.6875	48	10	−18	−45	17.5	9	−12	−28	−43
0.75	53	15	−15	−42	19.1	12	−9	−26	−41
0.8125	57	19	−12	−38	20.6	14	−7	−24	−39
0.875	61	23	−9	−36	22.2	16	−5	−23	−38
0.9375	65	27	−6	−33	23.8	18	−3	−21	−36
1.0	68	31	−3	−30	25.4	20	−1	−19	−35
1.0625	72	34	−1	−28	27.0	22	1	−18	−33
1.125	75	37	2	−26	28.6	24	3	−17	−32
1.1875	77	40	2	−23	30.2	25	4	−17	−31
1.25	80	43	6	−21	31.8	27	6	−14	−30
1.3125	82	45	8	−19	33.3	28	7	−13	−28
1.375	84	47	10	−18	34.9	29	8	−12	−28
1.4375	86	49	12	−16	36.5	30	9	−11	−27
1.5	88	51	14	−14	38.1	31	11	−10	−26
1.5625	90	53	16	−13	39.7	32	12	−9	−25
1.625	92	55	17	−11	41.3	33	13	−8	−24
1.6875	93	57	19	−10	42.9	34	14	−7	−23
1.75	94	58	20	−8	44.5	34	14	−7	−22
1.8125	96	59	22	−7	46.0	36	15	−6	−22
1.875	97	61	23	−6	47.6	36	16	−5	−21
1.9375	98	62	24	−5	49.2	37	17	−4	−21
2.0	99	63	26	−4	50.8	37	17	−3	−20
2.0625	100	64	27	−3	52.4	38	18	−3	−19
2.125	101	65	28	−2	54.0	38	18	−2	−19
2.1875	102	66	29	−1	55.6	39	19	−2	−18
2.25	102	67	30	0	57.2	39	19	−1	−18
2.3125	103	68	31	1	58.7	39	20	−1	−17
2.375	104	69	32	2	60.3	40	21	0	−17
2.4375	105	70	33	3	61.9	41	21	1	−16
2.5	105	71	34	4	63.5	41	22	1	−16
2.5625	106	71	35	5	65.1	41	22	2	−15
2.625	107	73	36	6	66.7	42	23	2	−14
2.6875	107	73	37	7	68.3	42	23	3	−14
2.75	108	74	38	8	69.9	42	23	3	−13
2.8125	108	75	39	8	71.4	42	24	4	−13
2.875	109	76	40	9	73.0	43	24	4	−13
2.9375	109	77	40	10	74.6	43	25	5	−12
3.0	110	77	41	11	76.2	43	26	5	−12

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UCS-66
TABULAR VALUES FOR FIG. UCS-66 (CONT'D)

Customary Units					SI Units				
Thickness, in.	Curve A, °F	Curve B, °F	Curve C, °F	Curve D, °F	Thickness, mm	Curve A, °C	Curve B, °C	Curve C, °C	Curve D, °C
3.0625	111	78	42	12	77.8	44	26	6	−11
3.125	111	79	43	12	79.4	44	26	6	−11
3.1875	112	80	44	13	81.0	44	27	7	−11
3.25	112	80	44	14	82.6	44	27	7	−10
3.3125	113	81	45	15	84.1	45	27	7	−9
3.375	113	82	46	15	85.7	45	28	8	−9
3.4375	114	83	46	16	87.3	46	28	8	−9
3.5	114	83	47	17	88.9	46	28	8	−8
3.5625	114	84	48	17	90.5	46	29	9	−8
3.625	115	85	49	18	92.1	46	29	9	−7
3.6875	115	85	49	19	93.7	46	29	9	−7
3.75	116	86	50	20	95.3	47	30	10	−7
3.8125	116	87	51	21	96.8	47	31	11	−6
3.875	116	88	51	21	98.4	47	31	11	−6
3.9375	117	88	52	22	100.0	47	32	11	−6
4.0	117	89	52	23	101.6	47	32	11	−5
4.0625	117	90	53	23	103.0	47	32	12	−5
4.125	118	90	54	24	105.0	48	32	12	−4
4.1875	118	91	54	25	106.0	48	33	12	−4
4.25	118	91	55	25	108.0	48	33	12	−4
4.3125	118	92	55	26	110.0	48	33	12	−3
4.375	119	93	56	27	111.0	49	34	13	−3
4.4375	119	93	56	27	113.0	49	34	13	−3
4.5	119	94	57	28	114.0	49	34	13	−2
4.5625	119	94	57	29	115.0	49	34	13	−2
4.625	119	95	58	29	117.0	49	35	14	−2
4.6875	119	95	58	30	118.0	49	35	14	−1
4.75	119	96	59	30	119.0	49	35	14	−1
4.8125	119	96	59	31	120.0	49	35	14	−1
4.875	119	97	60	31	121.0	49	36	15	−1
4.9375	119	97	60	32	122.0	49	36	15	0
5	119	97	60	32	123.0	49	36	15	0
5.0625	119	98	61	33	124.0	49	36	15	0
5.125	119	98	61	33	125.0	49	36	15	0
5.1875	119	98	62	34	126.0	49	36	16	1
5.25	119	99	62	34	127.0	49	37	16	1
5.3125	119	99	62	35	128.0	49	37	16	1
5.375	119	100	63	35	129.0	49	37	16	1
5.4375	119	100	63	36	130.0	49	37	16	2
5.5	119	100	63	36	131.0	49	37	16	2
5.5625	119	101	64	36	132.0	49	38	17	2
5.625	119	101	64	37	133.0	49	38	17	2
5.6875	119	102	64	37	134.0	49	38	17	2
5.75	120	102	65	38	135.0	50	38	17	3
5.8125	120	103	65	38	136.0	50	39	17	3
5.875	120	103	66	38	137.0	50	39	18	3
5.9375	120	104	66	39	138.0	50	39	18	3
6.0	120	104	66	39	139.0	50	39	18	3

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



Nomenclature (Note reference to General Notes of Fig. UCS-66-2.)

t_r = required thickness of the component under consideration in the corroded condition for all applicable loadings [General Note (2)], based on the applicable joint efficiency E [General Note (3)], in. (mm)

t_n = nominal thickness of the component under consideration before corrosion allowance is deducted, in. (mm)

c = corrosion allowance, in. (mm)

E^* = as defined in General Note (3)

Alternative Ratio = $S^* E^*$ divided by the product of the maximum allowable stress value from Table UCS-23 times E, where S^* is the applied general primary membrane tensile stress and E and E^* are as defined in General Note (3)

FIG. UCS-66.1 REDUCTION IN MINIMUM DESIGN METAL TEMPERATURE WITHOUT IMPACT TESTING

UCS-67(c) Weld heat affected zones produced with or without the addition of filler metal shall be impact tested whenever any of the following apply:

UCS-67(c)(1) when the base metal is required to be impact tested by the rules of this Division; or

UCS-67(c)(2) when the welds have any individual weld pass exceeding $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) in thickness, and the minimum design metal temperature is colder than 70°F (21°C); or

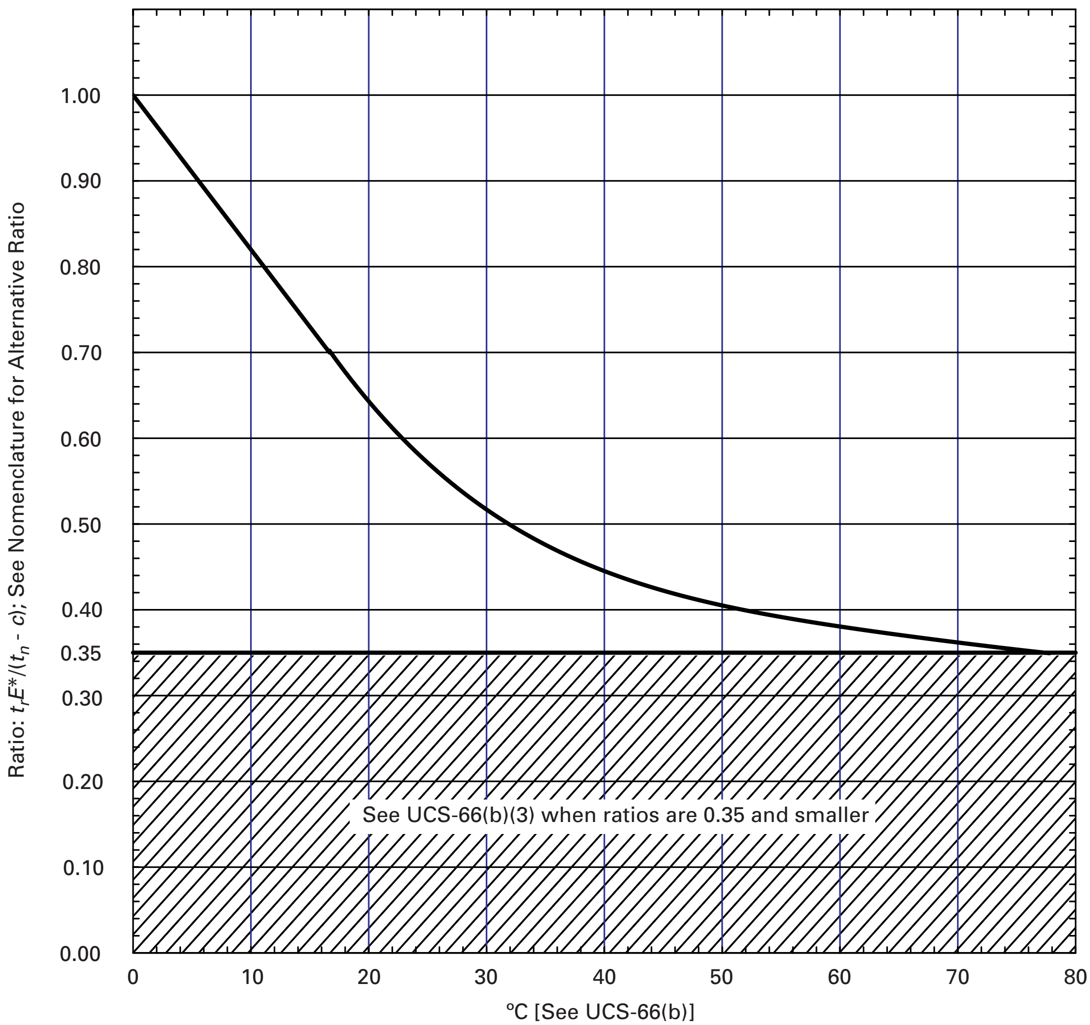
UCS-67(c)(3) when joining base metals exempt from impact testing by UCS-66(g) when the minimum design metal temperature is colder than −55°F (−48°C).

UCS-67(d) Vessel (production) impact tests in accordance with UG-84(i) may be waived for any of the following:

UCS-67(d)(1) weld metals joining steels exempted from impact testing by UCS-66 for minimum design metal temperatures of −20°F (−29°C) and warmer; or

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Nomenclature (Note reference to General Notes of Fig. UCS-66-2.)

t_r = required thickness of the component under consideration in the corroded condition for all applicable loadings [General Note (2)], based on the applicable joint efficiency E [General Note (3)], mm

t_n = nominal thickness of the component under consideration before corrosion allowance is deducted, mm

c = corrosion allowance, mm

E^* = as defined in General Note (3)

Alternative Ratio = S^*E^* divided by the product of the maximum allowable stress value from Table UCS-23 times E, where S^* is the applied general primary membrane tensile stress and E and E^* are as defined in General Note (3)

FIG. UCS-66.1M REDUCTION IN MINIMUM DESIGN METAL TEMPERATURE WITHOUT IMPACT TESTING

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Step 1

Establish nominal thickness [General Note (1)] of welded parts, nonwelded parts, and attachments under consideration both before and after corrosion allowance is deducted (t_n and $t_n - c$, respectively), and other pertinent data applicable to the nominal thickness such as:

All applicable loadings [General Note (2)] and coincident minimum design metal temperature (MDMT)
Materials of construction
E = joint efficiency [General Note (3)]
t_n = nominal noncorroded thickness [General Note (1)], in. (mm)
t_r = required thickness in corroded condition for all applicable loadings [General Note (2)], based on the applicable joint efficiency [General Note (3)], in. (mm)
Applicable curve(s) of Fig. UCS-66
c = corrosion allowance, in. (mm)

Step 2

Select MDMT from Fig. UCS-66 [General Note (4)] for each nominal noncorroded governing thickness [General Note (5)].

Step 3

Determine Ratio: $\dfrac{t_r E^*}{t_n - c}$

[General Notes (3), (6), (7), and (8)]

Step 4

Using Ratio from Step 3 to enter ordinate of Fig. UCS-66.1, determine reduction in Step 2 MDMT [General Note (9)].

Step 5

Determine adjusted MDMT for governing thickness under consideration.

Step 6

Repeat for all governing thicknesses [General Note (5)] and take *warmest* value as the lowest allowable MDMT to be marked on nameplate for the zone under consideration [General Note (10)]. See UG-116.
See UG-99(h) for coldest recommended metal temperature during hydrostatic test [General Note (6)].
See UG-100(c) for coldest metal temperature permitted during pneumatic test [General Note (6)].

Legend

Requirement (solid box) | Optional (dashed box)

General Notes follow on next page

04 FIG. UCS-66.2 DIAGRAM OF UCS-66 RULES FOR DETERMINING LOWEST MINIMUM DESIGN METAL TEMPERATURE (MDMT) WITHOUT IMPACT TESTING

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

GENERAL NOTES:

(1) For pipe where a mill undertolerance is allowed by the material specification, the thickness after mill undertolerance has been deducted shall be taken as the noncorroded nominal thickness t_n for determination of the MDMT to be stamped on the nameplate. Likewise, for formed heads, the minimum specified thickness after forming shall be used as t_n.

(2) Loadings, including those listed in UG-22, which result in general primary membrane tensile stress at the coincident MDMT.

(3) E is the joint efficiency (Table UW-12) used in the calculation of t_r; E^* has a value equal to E except that E^* shall not be less than 0.80. For castings, use quality factor or joint efficiency E whichever governs design.

(4) The construction of Fig. UCS-66 is such that the MDMT so selected is considered to occur coincidentally with an applied general primary membrane tensile stress at the maximum allowable stress value in tension from Table 1A of Section II Part D, Tabular values for Fig. UCS-66 are shown in Table UCS-66.

(5) See UCS-66(a)(1), (2), and (3) for definitions of governing thickness.

(6) If the basis for calculated test pressure is greater than the design pressure [UG-99(c) test], a Ratio based on the t_r determined from the basis for calculated test pressure and associated appropriate value of $t_n - c$ shall be used to determine the recommended coldest metal temperature during hydrostatic test and the coldest metal temperature permitted during the pneumatic test. See UG-99(h) and UG-100(c).

(7) Alternatively, a Ratio of $S^* E^*$ divided by the product of the maximum allowable stress value in tension from Table 1A of Section II Part D times E may be used, where S^* is the applied general primary membrane tensile stress and E and E^* are as defined in General Note (3).

(8) For UCS-66(b)(1)(b) and (i)(2), a ratio of the maximum design pressure at the MDMT to the maximum allowable pressure (MAP) at the MDMT shall be used. The MAP is defined as the highest permissible pressure as determined by the design formulas for a component using the nominal thickness less corrosion allowance and the maximum allowable stress value from the Table 1A of Section II, Part D at the MDMT. For ferritic steel flanges defined in UCS-66(c), the flange rating at the warmer of the MDMT or 100°F (38°C) may be used as the MAP.

(9) For reductions in MDMT up to and including 40°F (4°C), the reduction can be determined by: reduction in MDMT = (1 − Ratio) 100°F (38°C).

(10) A colder MDMT may be obtained by selective use of impact tested materials as appropriate to the need (see UG-84). See also UCS-68(c).

FIG. UCS-66.2 DIAGRAM OF UCS-66 RULES FOR DETERMINING LOWEST MINIMUM DESIGN METAL TEMPERATURE (MDMT) WITHOUT IMPACT TESTING (CONT'D)

UCS-67(d)(2) weld metals defined in (a)(2) above; or

UCS-67(d)(3) heat affected zones (HAZ) in steels exempted from impact testing by UCS-66, except when (c)(3) above applies.

UCS-68 DESIGN[4]

UCS-68(a) Welded joints shall comply with UW-2(b) when the minimum design metal temperature is colder than −55°F (−48°C), unless the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is less than 0.35.

UCS-68(b) Welded joints shall be postweld heat treated in accordance with the requirements of UW-40 when required by other rules of this Division. When the minimum design metal temperature is colder than −55°F (−48°C), and the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is 0.35 or greater, postweld heat treatment is required, except that this requirement does not apply to the following welded joints, in vessels or vessel parts fabricated of P-No. 1 materials that are impact tested at the MDMT or colder in accordance with UG-84. The minimum average energy requirement for base metals and weldments shall be 25 ft-lb (34 J) instead of the values shown in Fig. UG-84.1:

(1) Type 1 Category A and B joints, not including cone-to-cylinder junctions, which have been 100% radiographed. Category A and B joints attaching sections of unequal thickness shall have a transition with a slope not exceeding 3:1;

(2) fillet welds having leg dimensions not exceeding $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) attaching lightly loaded attachments, provided the attachment material and the attachment weld meet requirements of UCS-66 and UCS-67. "Lightly loaded attachment," for this application, is defined as an attachment for which the stress in the attachment weld does not exceed 25% of the allowable stress. All such welds shall be examined by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination in accordance with Appendix 6 or Appendix 8.

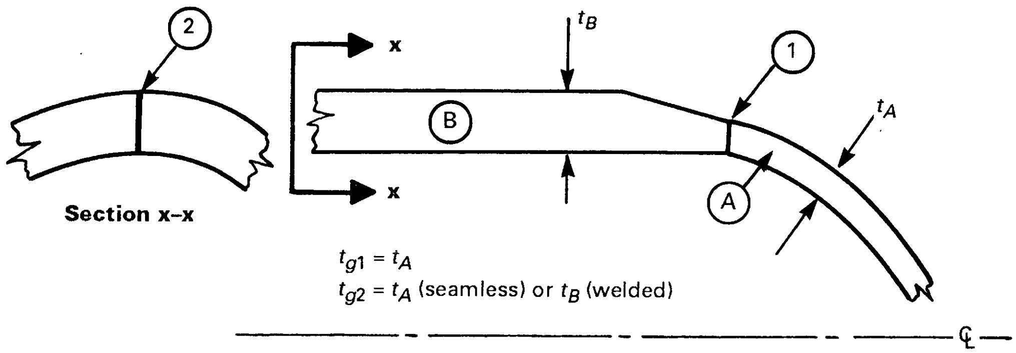
UCS-68(c) If postweld heat treating is performed when it is not otherwise a requirement of this Division, a 30°F (17°C) reduction in impact testing exemption temperature may be given to the minimum permissible temperature from Fig. UCS-66 for P-No. 1 materials. The resulting exemption temperature may be colder than −55°F (−48°C).

UCS-68(d) The allowable stress values to be used in design at the minimum design metal temperature shall not exceed those given in Section II, Part D, Tables 3 for bolting and 1A for other materials for temperatures of 100°F (38°C).

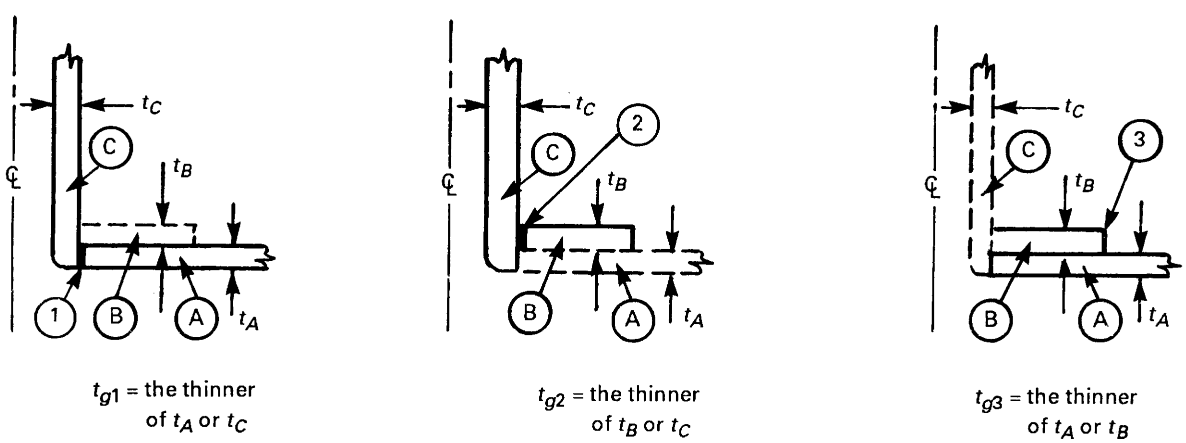
[4] No provisions of this paragraph waive other requirements of this Division, such as UW-2(a), UW-2(d), UW-10, and UCS-56.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



(a) Butt Welded Components

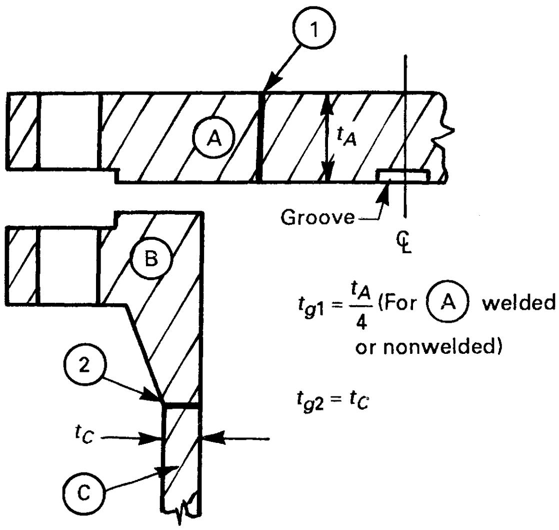


NOTE: Using t_{g1}, t_{g2}, and t_{g3}, determine the warmest MDMT and use that as the permissible MDMT for the welded assembly.

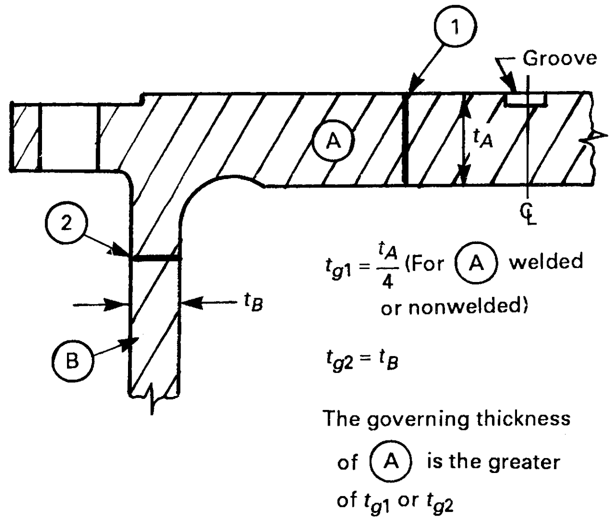
(b) Welded Connection with Reinforcement Plate Added

FIG. UCS-66.3 SOME TYPICAL VESSEL DETAILS SHOWING THE GOVERNING THICKNESSES AS DEFINED IN UCS-66

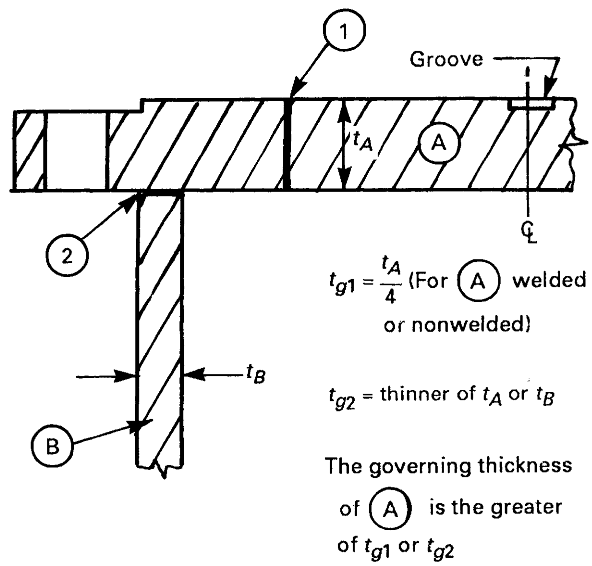
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(c) Bolted Flat Head or Tubesheet and Flange



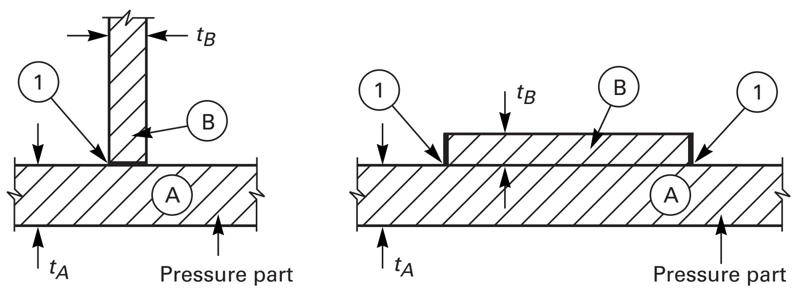
(d) Integral Flat Head or Tubesheet



(e) Flat Head or Tubesheet With a Corner Joint

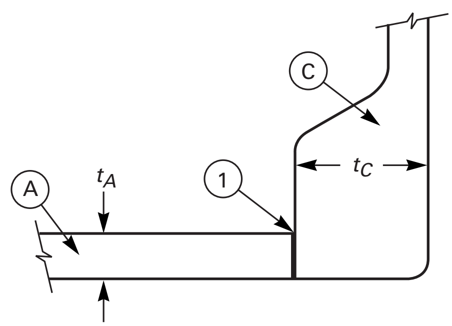
FIG. UCS-66.3 SOME TYPICAL VESSEL DETAILS SHOWING THE GOVERNING THICKNESSES AS DEFINED IN UCS-66 (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



t_{g1} = thinner if t_A or t_B

(f) Welded Attachments as Defined in UCS-66(a)



t_{g1} = thinner if t_A or t_C

(g) Integrally Reinforced Welded Connection

NOTE: t_g = governing thickness of the welded joint as defined in UCS-66.

FIG. UCS-66.3 SOME TYPICAL VESSEL DETAILS SHOWING THE GOVERNING THICKNESSES AS DEFINED IN UCS-66 (CONT'D)

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

FABRICATION

UCS-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of carbon and low alloy steel and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

04 UCS-79 FORMING SHELL SECTIONS AND HEADS

(a) The following provisions shall apply in addition to the general rules for forming given in UG-79.

(b) Carbon and low alloy steel plates shall not be formed cold by blows.

(c) Carbon and low alloy steel plates may be formed by blows at a forging temperature provided the blows do not objectionably deform the plate and it is subsequently postweld heat treated.

(d) Vessel shell sections, heads, and other pressure boundary parts of carbon and low alloy steel plates fabricated by cold forming shall be heat treated subsequently (see UCS-56) when the resulting extreme fiber elongation is more than 5% from the as-rolled condition and any of the following conditions exist.

(1) The vessel will contain lethal substances either liquid or gaseous (see UW-2).

(2) The material requires impact testing.

(3) The thickness of the part before cold forming exceeds $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm).

(4) The reduction by cold forming from the as-rolled thickness is more than 10% at any location where the extreme fiber elongation exceeds 5%.

(5) The temperature of the material during forming is in the range of 250°F to 900°F (120°C to 480°C).

For P-No. 1 Group Nos. 1 and 2 materials the extreme fiber elongation may be as great as 40% when none of the conditions listed above in (1) through (5) exist.

The extreme fiber elongation shall be determined by the following formulas:

For double curvature (for example, heads),

$$\%\ \text{extreme fiber elongation} = \frac{75t}{R_f}\left(1 - \frac{R_f}{R_o}\right)$$

For single curvature (for example, cylinders),

$$\%\ \text{extreme fiber elongation} = \frac{50t}{R_f}\left(1 - \frac{R_f}{R_o}\right)$$

where

t = plate thickness, in. (mm)
R_f = final center line radius, in. (mm)
R_o = original center line radius (equals infinity for flat plate), in. (mm)

UCS-85 HEAT TREATMENT OF TEST SPECIMENS

UCS-85(a) The following provisions shall apply in addition to, or as exceptions to the general rules for heat treatment given in UG-85.

UCS-85(b) Heat treatment as used in this section shall include all thermal treatments of the material during fabrication exceeding 900°F (480°C), except as exempted below.

UCS-85(c) The material used in the vessel shall be represented by test specimens which have been subjected to the same heat treatments above the lower transformation temperature and postweld heat treatment except as provided in (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) below. The kind and number of tests and test results shall be as required by the material specification. The vessel Manufacturer shall specify the temperature, time, and cooling rates to which the material will be subjected during fabrication, except as permitted in (h) below. Material from which the specimens are prepared shall be heated at the specified temperature within reasonable tolerances such as are normal in actual fabrication. The total time at temperature shall be at least 80% of the total time at temperature during actual heat treatment of the product and may be performed in a single cycle.

UCS-85(d) Thermal treatment of material is not intended to include such local heating as thermal cutting, preheating, welding, or heating below the lower transformation temperature of tubing and pipe for bending or sizing.

UCS-85(e) An exception to the requirements of (c) above and UG-85 shall apply to standard items such as described in UG-11(a). These may be subject to postweld heat treatment with the vessel or vessel part without the same treatment being required of the test specimens. This exception shall not apply to specially designed cast or wrought fittings.

UCS-85(f) Materials conforming to one of the specifications listed in P-No. 1 Group Nos. 1 and 2 of QW-422 and all carbon and low alloy steels used in the annealed condition as permitted by the material specification are exempt from the requirements of (c) above when the heat treatment during fabrication is limited to postweld heat treatment at temperatures below the lower transformation temperature of the steel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UCS-85(g) Materials listed in QW-422 as P-No. 1 Group No. 3 and P-No. 3 Group Nos. 1 and 2 that are certified in accordance with (c) above from test specimens subjected to the PWHT requirements of Table UCS-56 need not be recertified if subjected to the alternate PWHT conditions permitted by Table UCS-56.1.

UCS-85(h) The simulation of cooling rates for test specimens from nonimpact tested materials 3 in. and under in thickness is not required for heat treatments below the lower transformation temperature.

UCS-85(i) All thermal treatments which precede a thermal treatment that fully austenitizes the material need not be accounted for by the specimen heat treatments, provided the austenitizing temperature is at least as high as any of the preceding thermal treatments.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UCS-90 GENERAL

The provisions for inspection and testing in Subsections A and B shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of carbon and low alloy steels.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UCS-115 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply without supplement to pressure vessels constructed of carbon and low alloy steels.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UCS-125 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to pressure vessels constructed of carbon and low alloy steels.

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX CS

UCS-150 GENERAL

See Appendix A, A-100, of Section II, Part D.

UCS-151 CREEP-RUPTURE PROPERTIES OF CARBON STEELS

See Appendix A, A-200, of Section II, Part D.

UCS-160 VESSELS OPERATING AT TEMPERATURES COLDER THAN THE MDMT STAMPED ON THE NAMEPLATE

(a) Vessels or components may be operated at temperatures colder than the MDMT stamped on the nameplate, provided the provisions of UCS-66, UCS-67 and UCS-68 are met when using the reduced (colder) operating temperature as the MDMT, but in no case shall the operating temperature be colder than −155°F (−105°C).

(b) As an alternative to (a) above, for vessels or components whose thicknesses are based on pressure loading only, the coincident operating temperature may be as cold as the MDMT stamped on the nameplate less the allowable temperature reduction as determined from Fig. UCS-66.2. The ratio used in Step 3 of Fig. UCS-66.2 shall be the ratio of maximum pressure at the coincident operating temperature to the MAWP of the vessel at the stamped MDMT, but in no case shall the operating temperature be colder than −155°F (−105°C).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART UNF
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF NONFERROUS MATERIALS

GENERAL

UNF-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UNF are applicable to pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of nonferrous materials and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UNF-3 USES

Some of the uses of nonferrous materials are to resist corrosion, to facilitate cleaning of vessels for processing foods, to provide strength or scaling-resistance at high temperatures, and to provide notch toughness at low temperatures.

UNF-4 CONDITIONS OF SERVICE

Specific chemical compositions, heat-treatment procedures, fabrication requirements, and supplementary tests may be required to assure that the vessel will be in its most favorable condition for the intended service. This is particularly true for vessels subject to severe corrosion. These rules do not indicate the selection of nonferrous material suitable for the intended service or the amount of the corrosion allowance to be provided. It is recommended that users assure themselves by appropriate tests, or otherwise, that the nonferrous material selected will be suitable for the intended service both with respect to corrosion and to retention of satisfactory mechanical properties during the desired service life, taking into account any heating or heat treatment that might be performed during fabrication. See also Appendix A, A-400, of Section II, Part D.

MATERIALS

UNF-5 GENERAL

(a) All nonferrous materials subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5 except as otherwise provided in UG-10 and UG-11.

(b) Appendix NF of this Division of Section VIII and the paragraph entitled *Basis of Purchase* and the appendix of the applicable material specification contain information relative to the fabricating characteristics of the material. They are intended to help the manufacturer in ordering the correct material, and in fabricating it, and to help the producer to select the material best able to fulfill the requirements of the fabricating procedures to be used.

UNF-6 NONFERROUS PLATE

Approved specifications for nonferrous plates are given in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures is given in Table 1B of Section II, Part D (see UG-5).

UNF-7 FORGINGS

Approved specifications for nonferrous forgings are given in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures is given in Table 1B of Section II, Part D (see UG-6).

UNF-8 CASTINGS

Approved specifications for nonferrous castings are given in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures is given in Table 1B of Section II, Part D. These stress values are to be multiplied by the casting quality factors of UG-24. Castings that are to be welded shall be of a weldable grade.

UNF-12 BOLT MATERIALS

(a) Approved specifications for bolt materials are given in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures is given in Table 3 of Section II, Part D.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(b) When bolts are machined from heat treated, hot rolled, or cold worked material and are not subsequently hot worked or annealed, the allowable stress values in Table 3 to be used in design shall be based on the condition of the material selected.

(c) When bolts are fabricated by hot-heading, the allowable stress values for annealed material in Table 3 shall apply unless the manufacturer can furnish adequate control data to show that the tensile properties of hot rolled bars or hot finished forgings are being met, in which case the allowable stress values for the material in the hot finished condition may be used.

(d) When bolts are fabricated by cold heading, the allowable stress values for annealed material in Table 3 shall apply unless the manufacturer can furnish adequate control data to show that higher design stresses, as agreed upon, may be used. In no case shall such stresses exceed the allowable stress values given in Table 3 for cold worked bar stock.

(e) Ferrous bolts, studs, and nuts may be used provided they are suitable for the application. They shall conform to the requirements of UCS-10 and 11.

UNF-13 NUTS AND WASHERS

Nuts and washers may be made from any suitable material listed in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5. Nuts may be of any dimension or shape provided their strength is equal to that of the bolting, giving due consideration to bolt hole clearance, bearing area, thread form and class of fit, thread shear, and radial thrust from threads [see U-2(g)].

UNF-14 RODS, BARS, AND SHAPES

Rods, bars and shapes shall conform to one of the specifications in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5.

UNF-15 OTHER MATERIALS

(a) Other materials, either ferrous or nonferrous, may be used for parts of vessels provided that they are suitable for the purpose intended.

(b) The user shall satisfy himself that the coupling of dissimilar metals will have no harmful effect on the corrosion rate or service life of the vessel for the service intended.

(c) Other materials used in conjunction with nonferrous metals shall meet the requirements given for those materials in other parts of this Division.

DESIGN

UNF-16 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and vessel parts of nonferrous materials and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Design* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UNF-19 WELDED JOINTS 04

(a) For vessels constructed of titanium or zirconium and their alloys, all joints of Categories A and B shall be of Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12.

(b) Titanium or zirconium and their alloys shall not be welded to other materials.

(c) For vessels constructed of UNS N06625, all joints of Categories A and B shall be Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12. All joints of Categories C and D shall be Type No. (1) or No. (2) of Table UW-12 when the design temperature is 1000°F (540°C) or higher.

(d) For vessels constructed of UNS N12160, the nominal thickness of the base material at the weld shall not exceed 0.5 in. (12.7 mm). When welding is performed with filler metal of the same nominal composition as the base metal, only GMAW or GTAW processes are allowed and the nominal weld deposit thickness shall not exceed 0.5 in. (12.7 mm).

(e) For vessels constructed of UNS N06230 and when welding is performed with filler metal of the same nominal composition as the base metal, only GMAW or GTAW processes are allowed.

(f) For vessels constructed of UNS R31233 during weld procedure qualification testing, when using a matching filler metal composition, the minimum specified tensile strength of the weld metal shall be 120 ksi (828 MPa). Longitudinal bend tests are permitted per Section IX, QW-160.

UNF-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Tables 3 (for bolting) and 1B (other materials) in Section II, Part D give the maximum allowable stress values at the temperatures indicated for materials conforming to the specifications listed therein. Values may be interpolated for intermediate temperatures [see UG-23 and UG-31(a)]. For vessels designed to operate at a temperature colder than −20°F (−29°C), the allowable stress values to be used in design shall not exceed those given for temperatures of −20°F to 100°F (−29°C to 38°C).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UNF-23.1
NONFERROUS METALS — ALUMINUM AND ALUMINUM ALLOY PRODUCTS

Spec. No.	Alloy Designation/UNS No.	Spec. No.	Alloy Designation/UNS No.
SB-26	A02040, A03560, A24430	SB-221	A91060, A91100, A92024, A93003, A95083, A95086, A95154, A95454, A95456, A96061, A96063
SB-108	A02040, A03560	SB-234	Alclad 3003; A91060, A93003, A95052, A95454, A96061
SB-209	Alclad 3003, 3004, 6061; A91060, A91100, A93003, A93004, A95052, A95083, A95086, A95154, A95254, A95454, A95456, A95652, A96061	SB-241	Alclad 3003; A91060, A91100, A93003, A95052, A95083, A95086, A95454,A95456, A96061, A96063
SB-210	Alclad 3003; A91060, A93003, A95052, A95154, A96061, A96063	SB-247	A92014, A93003, A95083, A96061
SB-211	A92014, A92024, A96061	SB-308	A96061

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

(b) Shells of pressure vessels may be made from welded pipe or tubing listed in Tables UNF-23.1, UNF-23.2, UNF-23.3, UNF-23.4, and UNF-23.5.

(c) When welding or brazing is to be done on material having increased tensile strength produced by hot or cold working, the allowable stress value for the material in the annealed condition shall be used for joint design. One-piece heads and seamless shells may be designed on the basis of the actual temper of the material.

(d) When welding or brazing is to be done on material having increased tensile strength produced by heat treatment, the allowable stress value for the material in the annealed condition shall be used for the joint design unless the stress values for welded construction are given in Table 1B or 3 in Section II, Part D or unless the finished construction is subjected to the same heat treatment as that which produced the temper in the "as-received" material, provided the welded joint and the base metal are similarly affected by the heat treatment.

UNF-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28, using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and the temperature limits of UG-20(c).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of the charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

UNF-30 STIFFENING RINGS

Rules covering the design and attachment of stiffening rings are given in UG-29 and UG-30.

UNF-33 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, and conical heads having pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall be designed by the rules of UG-33, using figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D having NFA, NFC, NFN, NFT, and NFZ designators. Examples illustrating the application of this paragraph are given in Appendix L.

UNF-56 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) Postweld heat treatment of nonferrous materials is not normally necessary nor desirable.

(b) Except as in (c), (d), and (e) below, no postweld heat treatment shall be performed except by agreement between the user and the Manufacturer. The temperature, time and method of heat treatment shall be covered by agreement.

(c) If welded, castings of SB-148, Alloy CDA 954 shall be heat treated after all welding at 1150°F–1200°F (620°C–650°C) for $1\frac{1}{2}$ hr at temperature for the first inch of cross section thickness plus $\frac{1}{2}$ hr for each additional inch of section thickness. Material shall then be air cooled.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UNF-23.2
NONFERROUS METALS — COPPER AND COPPER ALLOYS

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Spec. No.	UNS No.
SB-42	C10200, C12000, C12200	SB-171	C36500, C44300, C44400, C44500, C46400, C46500, C61400, C63000, C70600, C71500
SB-43	C23000	SB-187	C10200, C11000
SB-61	C92200	SB-271	C95200
SB-62	C83600	SB-283	C37700, C64200
SB-75	C10200, C12000, C12200, C14200	SB-315	C65500
SB-96	C65500	SB-359	C70600
SB-98	C65100, C65500, C66100	SB-395	C10200, C12000, C12200, C14200, C19200, C23000, C44300, C44400, C44500, C60800, C68700, C70600, C71000, C71500
SB-111	C10200,C12000, C12200, C14200, C19200, C23000, C28000, C44300, C44400, C44500, C60800, C68700, C70400, C70600, C71000, C71500, C72200	SB-466	C70600, C71000, C71500
SB-135	C23000	SB-467	C70600
SB-148	C95200, C95400	SB-543	C12200, C19400, C23000, C44300, C44400, C44500, C68700, C70400, C70600, C71500
SB-150	C61400, C62300, C63000, C64200	SB-584	C92200, C93700, C97600
SB-152	C10200, C10400, C10500, C10700, C11000, C12200, C12300		
SB-169	C61400		

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

(d) Within 14 days after welding, all products of zirconium Grade R60705 shall be heat treated at 1,000°F–1,100°F (540°C–595°C) for a minimum of 1 hr for thicknesses up to 1 in. (25 mm) plus $\frac{1}{2}$ hr for each additional inch of thickness. Above 800°F (425°C), cooling shall be done in a closed furnace or cooling chamber at a rate not greater than 500°F/hr (278°C/hr) divided by the maximum metal thickness of the shell or head plate in inches but in no case more than 500°F/hr (278°C/hr). From 800°F (425°C), the vessel may be cooled in still air.

(e) Postweld Heat Treatment of UNS Nos. N08800, N08810, and N08811 Alloys

(1) Pressure boundary welds and welds to pressure boundaries in vessels with design temperatures above 1000°F fabricated from UNS No. N08800 (Alloy 800), UNS No. N08810 (Alloy 800H), and UNS No. N08811 (Alloy 800HT) shall be postweld heat treated. The postweld heat treatment shall consist of heating to a minimum temperature of 1,625°F (885°C) for $1\frac{1}{2}$ hr for thicknesses up to 1 in. (25 mm), and for $1\frac{1}{2}$ hr + 1 hr/in. of thickness for thicknesses in excess of 1 in. (25 mm). Cooling and heating rates shall be by agreement between the purchaser and fabricator. As an alternative, solution annealing in accordance with the material specification is acceptable. Postweld heat treatment of tube-to-tubesheet and expansion bellows attachment welds is neither required nor prohibited.

(2) Except as permitted in (3) below, vessels or parts of vessels that have been postweld heat treated in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph shall again be postweld heat treated after welded repairs have been made.

(3) Weld repairs to the weld metal and heat affected zone in welds joining these materials may be made after the final PWHT, but prior to the final hydrostatic test, without additional PWHT. The weld repairs shall meet the requirements of (e)(3)(a) through (e)(3)(d) below.

(a) The Manufacturer shall give prior notification of the repair to the user or to his designated agent and shall not proceed until acceptance has been obtained.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UNF-23.3 NONFERROUS METALS — NICKEL, COBALT, AND HIGH NICKEL ALLOYS

04

Spec. No.	UNS No.
SA-351	J94651
SA-494	N26022, N30002, N30012
SB-127	N04400
SB-160	N02200, N02201
SB-161	N02200, N02201
SB-162	N02200, N02201
SB-163	N02200, N02201, N04400, N06600, N08800, N08810, N08811, N08825
SB-164	N04400, N04405
SB-165	N04400
SB-166	N06045, N06600, N06617, N06690
SB-167	N06045, N06600, N06617, N06690
SB-168	N06045, N06600, N06617, N06690
SB-333	N10001, N10629, N10665, N10675
SB-335	N10001, N10629, N10665, N10675
SB-366	N02200, N02201, N04400, N06002, N06007, N06022, N06030, N06045, N06059, N06200, N06230, N06455, N06600, N06625, N06985, N08020, N08031, N08330, N08367, N08800, N08825, N10001, N10003, N10276, N10629, N10665, N10675, N12160, R20033
SB-407	N08800, N08810, N08811
SB-408	N08800, N08810, N08811
SB-409	N08800, N08810, N08811
SB-423	N08825
SB-424	N08825
SB-425	N08825
SB-434	N10003
SB-435	N06002, N06230, R30556
SB-443	N06625
SB-444	N06625
SB-446	N06625
SB-462	N06022, N06030, N06200, N08020, N08367, N10276, N10665, N10675
SB-463	N08020, N08024, N08026
SB-464	N08020, N08024, N08026
SB-468	N08020, N08024, N08026
SB-473	N08020
SB-511	N08330
SB-514	N08800, N08810
SB-515	N08800, N08810, N08811
SB-516	N06045, N06600
SB-517	N06045, N06600
SB-525	N08330
SB-536	N08330
SB-564	N04400, N06022, N06045, N06059, N06200, N06230, N06600, N06617, N06625, N06686, N08031, N08367, N08800, N08810, N08811, N08825, N10276, N10629, N10675, N12160, R20033
SB-572	N06002, N06230, N12160, R30556
SB-573	N10003
SB-574	N06022, N06030, N06059, N06200, N06455, N06686, N10276
SB-575	N06022, N06059, N06200, N06455, N06686, N10276
SB-581	N06007, N06030, N06975, N06985, N08031
SB-582	N06007, N06030, N06975, N06985
SB-599	N08700
SB-619	N06002, N06007, N06022, N06030, N06059, N06200, N06230, N06455, N06686, N06975, N06985, N08031, N08320, N10001, N10276, N10629, N10665, N10675, R20033, R30556
SB-620	N08320
SB-621	N08320
SB-622	N06002, N06007, N06022, N06030, N06059, N06200, N06230 N06455, N06686, N06975, N06985, N08031, N08320, N10001, N10276, N10629, N10665, N10675, R20033, R30556

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE UNF-23.3 (CONT'D)
NONFERROUS METALS — NICKEL, COBALT, AND HIGH NICKEL ALLOYS

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Spec. No.	UNS No.
SB-625	N08031, N08904, N08925, R20033	SB-677	N08904, N08925
SB-626	N06002, N06007, N06022, N06030, N06059, N06200, N06230, N06455, N06975, N06985, N08031, N08320, N10001, N10276, N10629, N10665, N10675, N12160, R20033, R30556	SB-688	N08367
		SB-690	N08367
		SB-691	N08367
SB-637	N07718, N07750	SB-704	N06625, N08825
SB-649	N08904, N08925, R20033	SB-705	N06625, N08825
SB-668	N08028	SB-709	N08028
SB-672	N08700	SB-710	N08330
SB-673	N08904, N08925	SB-729	N08020
SB-674	N08904, N08925	SB-804	N08367
SB-675	N08367	SB-815	R31233
SB-676	N08367	SB-818	R31233

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

TABLE UNF-23.4
NONFERROUS METALS — TITANIUM AND TITANIUM ALLOYS

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Spec. No.	UNS No.
SB-265	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52250, R52252, R52254, R52400, R52402, R52404, R53400, R56320	SB-381	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52400, R52402, R52404, R53400
SB-338	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52400, R52402, R52404, R53400, R56320	SB-861	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52400, R52404, R53400, R56320
SB-348	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52400, R52402, R52404, R53400	SB-862	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52400, R52404, R53400, R56320
SB-363	R50250, R50400, R50550, R52400, R52404, R53400		

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

(b) The total repair depth shall not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) or 30% of the material thickness, whichever is less. The total depth of a weld repair shall be taken as the sum of the depths for repairs made from both sides of a weld at a given location.

(c) After removal of the defect, the groove shall be examined. The weld repair area must also be examined. The liquid penetrant examination method, in accordance with Appendix 8, shall be used.

(d) The vessel shall be hydrostatically tested after making the welded repair.

(f) Postweld heat treatment of UNS R31233 is required prior to cold forming when the cold forming bend radius at the weld is less than four(4) times the thickness of the component. Postweld treatment shall consist of annealing at 2,050°F (1 121°C) immediately followed by water quenching. 04

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UNF-23.5
NONFERROUS METALS — ZIRCONIUM

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Spec. No.	UNS No.
SB-493	R60702, R60705	SB-551	R60702, R60705
SB-523	R60702, R60705	SB-658	R60702, R60705
SB-550	R60702, R60705		

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

UNF-57 RADIOGRAPHIC EXAMINATION

(a) Vessels or parts of vessels constructed of nonferrous materials shall be radiographed in accordance with the requirements of UW-11.

(b) In addition, for vessels constructed of titanium or zirconium and their alloys, all joints of Categories A and B shall be fully radiographed in accordance with UW-51.

(c) Welded butt joints in vessels constructed of materials listed in Table UNF-23.3, with the exception of alloys 200 (UNS No. N02200), 201 (UNS No. N02201), 400 (UNS No. N04400), 401 (UNS No. N04401), and 600 (UNS No. N06600), shall be examined radiographically for their full length as prescribed in UW-51 when the thinner of the plate or vessel wall thicknesses at the welded joint exceeds $^3\!/_8$ in. (10 mm).

(d) Where a defect is removed and welding repair is not necessary, care shall be taken to contour notches or corners. The contoured surface shall then be reinspected by the same means originally used for locating the defect to be sure it has been completely removed.

UNF-58 LIQUID PENETRANT EXAMINATION

(a) All welds, both groove and fillet, in vessels constructed of materials covered by UNS N06625 (for Grade 2 only in SB-443, SB-444, and SB-446), UNS N10001, and UNS N10665 shall be examined for the detection of cracks by the liquid penetrant method. This examination shall be made following heat treatment if heat treatment is performed. All cracks shall be removed by grinding, or grinding and filing. Where a defect is removed and welding repair is not necessary, care shall be taken to contour notches or corners. The contoured surface shall then be reinspected by the same means originally used for locating the defect to be sure it has been completely removed.

(b) All joints in vessels constructed of titanium or zirconium and their alloys shall be examined by the liquid penetrant method of Appendix 8.

(c) Welded joints in vessels or parts of vessels, constructed of materials listed in Table UNF-23.3, with the exception of alloys 200 (UNS No. N02200), 201 (UNS No. N02201), 400 (UNS No. N04400), 405 (UNS No. N04405), and 600 (UNS No. N06600), shall be examined by the liquid penetrant method when they are not required to be fully radiographed.

(d) Laser and resistance welded lap joints are exempt from liquid penetrant examination requirements of (a), (b), and (c) above.

UNF-65 LOW TEMPERATURE OPERATION

The materials listed in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5, together with deposited weld metal within the range of composition for material in that Table, do not undergo a marked drop in impact resistance at subzero temperature. Therefore, no additional requirements are specified for wrought aluminum alloys when they are used at temperatures down to −452°F (−269°C); for copper and copper alloys, nickel and nickel alloys, and cast aluminum alloys when they are used at temperatures down to −325°F (−198°C); and for titanium or zirconium and their alloys used at temperatures down to −75°F (−59°C). The materials listed in Tables UNF-23.1 through UNF-23.5 may be used at lower temperatures than those specified herein and for other weld metal compositions provided the user satisfies himself by suitable test results such as determinations of tensile elongation and sharp-notch tensile strength (compared to unnotched tensile strength) that the material has suitable ductility at the design temperature.

FABRICATION

UNF-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of nonferrous materials and shall be used

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UNF-77 FORMING SHELL SECTIONS AND HEADS

(a) The following provisions shall apply in addition to the general rules for forming given in UG-79.

(b) The selected thickness of material shall be such that the forming processes will not reduce the thickness of the material at any point below the minimum value required by the design computation.

(c) Relatively small local bulges and buckles may be removed from formed parts for shells and heads by hammering or by local heating and hammering. For limiting temperatures see Appendix NF.

(d) A shell section that has been formed by rolling may be brought true-to-round for its entire length by pressing, rolling, or hammering.

UNF-78 WELDING

Welding of titanium or zirconium and their alloys is to be by the gas-shielded tungsten arc process, the gas-shielded metal arc (consumable-electrode) process, the plasma arc welding process, the electron beam process, or the laser beam process, meeting the requirements of Section IX. In addition, dimpled or embossed assemblies may be welded using the resistance welding process in accordance with Appendix 17 of this Division.

UNF-79 REQUIREMENTS FOR POSTFABRICATION HEAT TREATMENT DUE TO STRAINING

UNF-79(a) The following rules shall apply in addition to general rules for forming given in UNF-77.

UNF-79(a)(1) If the following conditions prevail, the cold formed areas of pressure-retaining components manufactured of austenitic alloys shall be solution annealed by heating at the temperatures given in Table UNF-79 for 20 min/in. (20 min/25 mm) of thickness or 10 min, whichever is greater, followed by rapid cooling:

(a) the finishing-forming temperature is below the minimum heat-treating temperature given in Table UNF-79; and

(b) the design metal temperature and the forming strains exceed the limits shown in Table UNF-79.

UNF-79(a)(2) Forming strains shall be calculated as follows:

(a) cylinders formed from plate:

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{50t}{R_f}\left(1 - \frac{R_f}{R_o}\right)$$

(b) spherical or dished heads formed from plate:

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{75t}{R_f}\left(1 - \frac{R_f}{R_o}\right)$$

(c) tube and pipe bends: the larger of

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{100r}{R}$$

or

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \left(\frac{t_A - t_B}{t_A}\right)100$$

(d) tube or pipe flares, swages, or upsets (see Fig. UNF-79); the largest of the outside diameter hoop strain, inside diameter hoop strain, axial strain, or radial strain. The absolute value of the largest strain is to be used as the basis for evaluation:

(1) outside diameter hoop strain:

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{(D - D_f)}{D}100$$

(2) inside diameter hoop strain:

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{(d - d_f)}{d}100$$

(3) axial strain:

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{(L - L_f)}{L}100$$

(4) radial strain:

$$\%\ \text{strain} = \frac{(t - t_f)}{t}100$$

where

D = original outside diameter of the pipe or tube
D_f = outside diameter of the pipe or tube after forming
d = original inside diameter of the pipe or tube
d_f = inside diameter of the pipe or tube after forming
L = original length of the "constant volume process zone" for the tube or pipe in flaring, swaging, or upsetting forming operations
L_f = final length of the "constant volume process zone" for the tube or pipe in flaring, swaging, or upsetting forming operations
R = nominal bending radius to center line of pipe or tube
R_f = mean radius after forming
R_o = original radius (equal to infinity for a flat plate)
r = nominal outside radius of pipe or tube

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UNF-79
POSTFABRICATION STRAIN LIMITS AND REQUIRED HEAT TREATMENT

Grade	UNS Number	Limitation in Lower Temperature Range: For Design Temperature, °F (°C) Exceeding	Limitation in Lower Temperature Range: For Design Temperature, °F (°C) But Less Than or Equal To	Limitation in Lower Temperature Range: And Forming Strains Exceeding, %	Limitations in Higher Temperature Range: For Design Temperature, °F (°C), Exceeding	Limitations in Higher Temperature Range: And Forming Strain Exceeding, %	Minimum Heat Treatment Temperature, °F (°C), When Design Temperature and Forming Strain Limits are Exceeded [Note (1)]
617	N06617	1000 (540)	1250 (675)	15	1250 (675)	10	2100 (1150)
800	N08800	1100 (595)	1250 (675)	15	1250 (675)	10	1800 (980)
800H	N08810	1100 (595)	1250 (675)	15	1250 (675)	10	2050 (1120)
...	N08811	1100 (595)	1250 (675)	15	1250 (675)	10	2050 (1120)

GENERAL NOTES:

(a) The limits shown are for cylinders formed from plates, spherical or dished heads formed from plate, and tube and pipe bends.

(b) For flares, swages, and upsets, the forming strain limits shall be half those tabulated in this Table. When the forming strains cannot be calculated as shown in UNF-79(a), the forming strain limits shall be half those tabulated in this Table [see UNF-79(b)].

NOTE:

(1) Rate of cooling from heat-treatment temperature is not subject to specific control limits.

t = nominal thickness of the plate, pipe, or tube before forming

t_A = measured average wall thickness of pipe or tube

t_B = measured minimum wall thickness of the extrados of the bend

t_f = nominal thickness of the cylindrical portion after forming

V = volume of the cylindrical process zone prior to forming

$= (\pi/4)(D^2 - d^2)$

$V = V_f$, i.e., forming is a constant volume process

V_f = volume of the cylindrical process zone after forming

$= (\pi/4)(D_f^2 - d_f^2)$

UNF-79(b) When forming strains cannot be calculated as shown in (a) above, the manufacturer shall have the responsibility to determine the maximum forming strain. In such instances, the forming limits for flares, swages, or upsets in Table UNF-79 shall apply.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UNF-90 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of nonferrous materials and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Inspection Tests* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UNF-91 REQUIREMENTS FOR PENETRAMETER

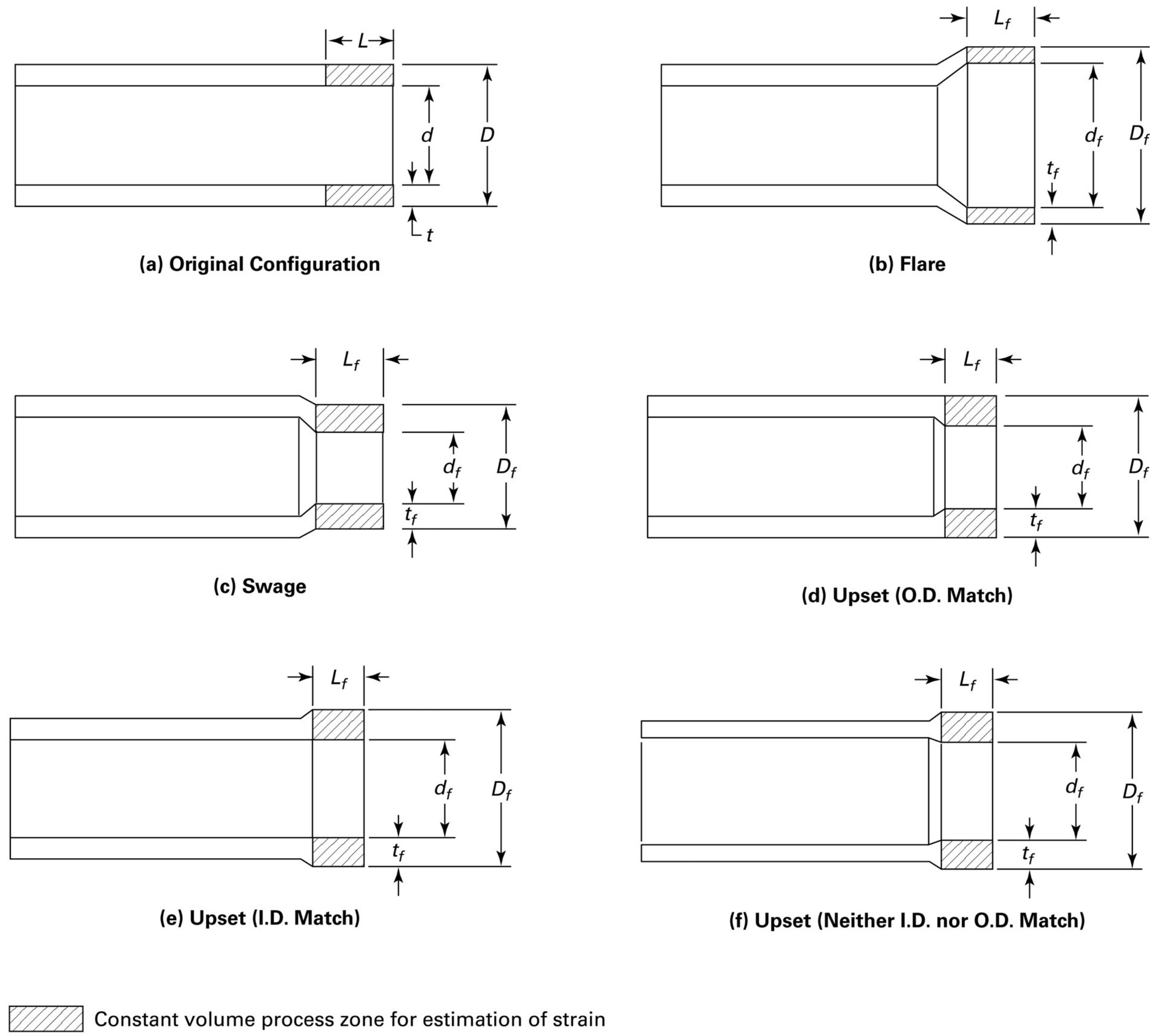
If the filler metal is radiographically similar[1] to the base metal, the penetrameter may be placed adjacent to the weld; otherwise it shall be placed on the deposited weld metal.

UNF-95 WELDING TEST PLATES

If a vessel of welded titanium or zirconium and their alloys construction incorporates joints of Category A or B as described in UW-3, a production test plate of the same specification, grade, and thickness shall be made of sufficient size to provide at least one face and one root bend specimen or two side bend specimens dependent upon plate thickness. Where longitudinal joints are involved, the test plate shall be attached to one end of the longitudinal joint and welded continuously with the joint. Where circumferential joints only are involved, the test plate need not be attached but shall be welded along with the joint and each welder or welding operator shall deposit weld metal in the test plate at the location and proportional to that deposited in the production weld. Test plates shall represent each welding process or combination of processes or a change from machine to manual or vice versa. At least one test plate is required for each vessel provided not over 100 ft of Category A or B joints are involved. An additional test plate, meeting the same requirements as outlined above, shall be made for each

[1] This is defined in Section V, SE-142, 4.1.1 and Appendix A1.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: $V = V_f$

FIG. UNF-79 ILLUSTRATION OF COLD FORMING OPERATIONS FOR FLARING, SWAGING, AND UPSETTING OF TUBING
The Above Illustrations Are Diagrammatic Only

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

additional 100 ft of Category A or B joints involved. The bend specimens shall be prepared and tested in accordance with Section IX, QW-160. Failure of either bend specimen constitutes rejection of the weld.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UNF-115 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply without supplement to pressure vessels constructed of nonferrous materials.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UNF-125 GENERAL VESSELS

The provisions for pressure relief devices in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to pressure vessels constructed of nonferrous materials.

APPENDIX NF CHARACTERISTICS OF THE NONFERROUS MATERIALS (INFORMATIVE AND NONMANDATORY)

NF-1 PURPOSE

This Appendix summarizes the major properties and fabricating techniques suitable for the nonferrous materials.

NF-2 GENERAL

The nonferrous materials can be formed and fabricated into a variety of types of assemblies with the same types of fabricating equipment as are used for steel. The details of some fabricating procedures vary among the several nonferrous materials and differ from those used for steel because of differences in the inherent mechanical properties of these materials. Detailed information regarding procedures best suited to the several metals may be obtained from the literature of the material producers, and from other reliable sources such as the latest editions of handbooks issued by the American Welding Society and the American Society for Metals.

NF-3 PROPERTIES

The specified mechanical properties, as listed in Tables 1B and 3 of Section II, Part D, show a wide range of strengths. The maximum allowable stress values show a correspondingly wide range and a variable relationship to service temperature. The maximum temperature listed for any material is the temperature above which that material is not customarily used. Section II, Part D, Table NF-1 gives additional mechanical properties, while physical properties are given in Section II, Part D, Table NF-2.

NF-4 MAGNETIC PROPERTIES

See Appendix A, A-410, of Section II, Part D.

NF-5 ELEVATED TEMPERATURE EFFECTS

See Appendix A, A-420, of Section II, Part D.

NF-6 LOW TEMPERATURE BEHAVIOR

See Appendix A, A-430, of Section II, Part D.

NF-7 THERMAL CUTTING

In general, nonferrous materials cannot be cut by the conventional oxyacetylene cutting equipment commonly used for steel. They may be melted and cut by oxyacetylene, powder cutting carbon arc, oxygen arc, and other means. When such thermal means for cutting are employed a shallow contaminated area adjacent to the cut results. This contamination should be removed by grinding, machining, or other mechanical means after thermal cutting and prior to use or further fabrication by welding.

NF-8 MACHINING

The nonferrous materials can be machined with properly sharpened tools of high-speed steel or cemented-carbide tools. A coolant is necessary and should be used copiously. In general, the tools should have more side and top rake than required for cutting steel and the edges should be keen and smooth. Comparatively high speeds and fine feeds give best results. Information can be obtained from the material producers and the Metals Handbook for conditions to give optimum results.

NF-9 GAS WELDING

The commonly used gas processes for welding aluminum-base materials employ oxyhydrogen or oxyacetylene

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

flames whereas only the latter produces sufficient heat for welding the copper-base and nickel-base alloys. For the aluminum, nickel and cupro-nickel alloys a neutral to slightly reducing flame should be used, whereas for copper base materials the flame should be neutral to slightly oxidizing. A suitable flux, applied to the welding rod and the work, shall be used except that no flux is required for nickel. Boron-free and phosphorus-free fluxes are required for nickel–copper alloy and for nickel–chromium–iron alloy. Residual deposits of flux shall be removed.

NF-10 METAL ARC WELDING

Metal arc welds can be made with standard dc equipment using reversed polarity (electrode-positive) and coated electrodes. A slightly greater included angle in butt welds for adequate manipulation of the electrode is required.

NF-11 INERT GAS METAL ARC WELDING

Both the consumable and nonconsumable electrode processes are particularly advantageous for use with the nonferrous materials. Best results are obtained through the use of special filler metals.

NF-12 RESISTANCE WELDING

Electric resistance welding, which includes spot, line or seam, and butt or flash welding, can be used with the nonferrous materials. Proper equipment and technique are required for making satisfactory welds.

NF-13 CORROSION

See Appendix A, A-440, of Section II, Part D.

NF-14 SPECIAL COMMENTS

Aluminum

See Appendix A, A-451, of Section II, Part D.

Nickel

See Appendix A, A-452, of Section II, Part D.

Titanium or Zirconium

See Appendix A, A-453, of Section II, Part D.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

PART UHA
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF HIGH ALLOY STEEL

GENERAL

UHA-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UHA are applicable to pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of high alloy steel and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UHA-5 USES

Some of the uses of high alloy steel are to resist corrosion, to avoid contamination of contents with iron, to facilitate cleaning of vessels for processing foods, to provide strength or scaling resistance at high temperatures, and to provide impact resistance at low temperatures.

UHA-6 CONDITIONS OF SERVICE

Specific chemical compositions, heat treatment procedures, fabrication requirements, and supplementary tests may be required to assure that the vessel will be in its most favorable condition for the intended service. This is particularly true for vessels subject to severe corrosion. These rules do not indicate the selection of an alloy suitable for the intended service or the amount of the corrosion allowance to be provided.

It is recommended that users assure themselves by appropriate tests, or otherwise, that the high alloy steel selected and its heat treatment during fabrication will be suitable for the intended service both with respect to corrosion resistance and to retention of satisfactory mechanical properties during the desired service life. (See Appendix HA, Suggestions on the Selection and Treatment of Austenitic Chromium–Nickel Steels.)

UHA-8 MATERIAL

(a) Approved specifications for castings of high alloy steel are given in Table UHA-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures is given in Section II, Part D, Table 3 (for bolting) and Table 1A (for other materials). These stress values are to be multiplied by the casting quality factors of UG-24. Castings that are to be welded shall be of weldable grade.

(b) Cast high alloy steel flanges and fittings complying with ASME/ANSI B16.5 shall be used within the ratings assigned in these standards.

MATERIALS

UHA-11 GENERAL

(a) All materials subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II, and shall be limited to those listed in Table UHA-23 except as otherwise provided in (b) and UG-4.

(b) The specifications listed in Tables 1A and 3 of Section II, Part D do not use a uniform system for designating the Grade number of materials that have approximately the same range of chemical composition. To provide a uniform system of reference, these tables include a column of UNS (Unified Numbering System) numbers assigned to identify the various alloy compositions. When these particular UNS numbers were assigned, the familiar AISI type numbers for stainless steels were incorporated into the designation. These type numbers are used in the rules of Part UHA whenever reference is made to materials of approximately the same chemical composition that are furnished under more than one approved specification or in more than one product form.

UHA-12 BOLT MATERIALS

(a) Approved specifications for bolt materials of carbon steel and low alloy steel are listed in Table UCS-23 and of high alloy steel in Table UHA-23. A tabulation of allowable stress values at different temperatures (see UG-12) is given in Table 3 of Section II, Part D.

(b) Nonferrous bolts, studs, and nuts may be used provided they are suitable for the application. They shall conform to the requirements of Part UNF.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE UHA-23
HIGH ALLOY STEEL

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Type/Grade
SA-182	S20910	FXM-19
	S21904	FXM-11
	S30400	F304
	S30403	F304L
	S30409	F304H
	S30815	F45
	S31000	F310
	S31254	F44
	S31600	F316
	S31603	F316L
	S31609	F316H
	S31700	F317
	S31703	F317L
	S31803	F51
	S32100	F321
	S32109	F321H
	S34700	F347
	S34709	F347H
	S34800	F348
	S34809	F348H
	S41000	F6a Cl. 1 & 2
	S44627	FXM-27Cb
SA-193	S21800	B8S, B8SA
	S30400	B8 Cl. 1 & 2
	S30451	B8NA Cl. 1A
	S30500	B8P Cl. 1 & 2
	S31600	B8M Cl. 1 & 2, B8M2 Cl. 2
	S31651	B8MNA Cl. 1A
	S32100	B8T Cl. 1 & 2
	S34700	B8C Cl. 1 & 2
	S41000	B6
SA-213	S20910	XM-19
	S30400	TP304
	S30403	TP304L
	S30409	TP304H
	S30451	TP304N
	S30815	. . .
	S30908	TP309S
	S30909	TP309H
	S30940	TP309Cb
	S31008	TP310S
	S31009	TP310H
	S31040	TP310Cb
	S31050	TP310MoLN
	S31600	TP316
	S31603	TP316L
	S31609	TP316H
	S31651	TP316N
	S31725	. . .
	S32100	TP321
	S32109	TP321H
	S34700	TP347
	S34709	TP347H
	S34800	TP348
	S34809	TP348H
	S38100	XM-15
SA-217	J91150	CA15
SA-240	S20100	201-1, 201-2
	S20153	201LN
	S20400	204
	S20910	XM-19
	S24000	XM-29
	S30200	302
	S30400	304
	S30403	304L
	S30409	304H
	S30451	304N
	S30815	. . .
	S30908	309S
	S30909	309H
	S30940	309Cb
	S31008	310S
	S31009	310H
	S31040	310Cb
	S31050	310MoLN
	S31200	. . .
	S31254	. . .
	S31260	. . .
	S31600	316
	S31603	316L
	S31609	316H
	S31635	316Ti
	S31640	316Cb
	S31651	316N
	S31700	317
	S31703	317L
	S31725	. . .
	S31803	. . .
	S32100	321
	S32109	321H
	S32304	. . .
	S32550	. . .
	S32900	329
	S32950	. . .
	S34700	347
	S34709	347H
	S34800	348
	S38100	XM-15
	S40500	405
	S40910	. . .
	S40920	. . .
	S40930	. . .
	S41000	410
	S41008	410S
	S42900	429
	S43000	430
	S44000	. . .
	S44626	XM-33
	S44627	XM-27
	S44635	. . .
	S44660	26-3-3
	S44700	. . .
	S44800	. . .
SA-249	S20910	TPXM-19
	S24000	TPXM-29
	S30400	TP304
	S30403	TP304L
	S30409	TP304H
	S30451	TP304N
	S30815	. . .
	S30908	TP309S
	S30909	TP309H
	S30940	TP309Cb
	S31008	TP310S
	S31009	TP310H
	S31040	TP310Cb
	S31050	TP310MoLN
	S31254	. . .
	S31600	TP316
	S31603	TP316L
	S31609	TP316H
	S31651	TP316N
	S31700	TP317
	S31703	TP317L
	S31725	. . .
	S32100	TP321
	S32109	TP321H
	S34700	TP347
	S34709	TP347H
	S34800	TP348
	S34809	TP348H
	S38100	TPXM-15
SA-268	S40500	TP405
	S40800	. . .
	S40900	TP409
	S41000	TP410
	S42900	TP429
	S43000	TP430
	S43035	TP439
	S44400	. . .
	S44600	TP446-1, TP446-2
	S44626	XM-33
	S44627	XM-27
	S44635	. . .
	S44660	26-3-3
	S44700	29-4
	S44735	. . .
	S44800	29-4-2
SA-312	S20910	TPXM-19
	S21904	TPXM-11
	S24000	TPXM-29
	S30400	TP304
	S30403	TP304L

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UHA-23 HIGH ALLOY STEEL (CONT'D)

04

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Type/Grade
	S30409	TP304H
	S30451	TP304N
	S30815	. . .
	S30908	TP309S
	S30909	TP309H
	S30940	TP309Cb
	S31008	TP310S
	S31009	TP310H
	S31040	TP310Cb
	S31050	TP310MoLN
	S31254	. . .
	S31600	TP316
	S31603	TP316L
	S31609	TP316H
	S31651	TP316N
	S31700	TP317
	S31703	TP317L
	S31725	. . .
	S32100	TP321
	S32109	TP321H
	S34700	TP347
	S34709	TP347H
	S34800	TP348
	S34809	TP348H
	S38100	TPXM-15
SA-320	S30323	B8F Cl. 1, B8FA Cl. 1A
	S30400	B8 Cl. 1 & 2, B8A Cl. 1A
	S31600	B8M Cl. 1 & 2, B8MA Cl. 1A
	S32100	B8T Cl. 1 & 2
	S34700	B8C Cl. 1 & 2, B8CA Cl. 1A
SA-336	S21904	FXM-11
	S30400	F304
	S30403	F304L
	S30409	F304H
	S30451	F304N
	S31000	F310
	S31600	F316
	S31603	F316L
	S31609	F316H
	S31651	F316N
	S32100	F321
	S32109	F321H
	S34700	F347
	S34709	F347H
	S34800	F348
	S34809	F348H
SA-351	J92500	CF3, CF3A
	J92590	CF10
	J92600	CF8, CF8A
	J92710	CF8C
	J92800	CF3M
	J92900	CF8M
	J93000	CG8M
	J93254	CK3MCuN
	J93400	CH8
	J93402	CH20
	J93790	CG6MMN
	J94202	CK20
	. . .	CT15C
	J94651	CN-3MN
	J95150	CN7M
SA-358	S31254	. . .
	S31725	. . .
SA-376	S30400	TP304
	S30409	TP304H
	S30451	TP304N
	S31600	TP316
	S31609	TP316H
	S31651	TP316N
	S31725	. . .
	S32100	TP321
	S32109	TP321H
	S34700	TP347
	S34709	TP347H
	S34800	TP348
SA-403	S20910	XM-19
	S30400	304
	S30403	304L
	S30409	304H
	S30451	304N
	S30900	309
	S31000	310
	S31600	316
	S31603	316L
	S31609	316H
	S31651	316N
	S31700	317
	S31703	317L
	S32100	321
	S32109	321H
	S34700	347
	S34709	347H
	S34800	348
	S34809	348H
SA-409	S31725	. . .
SA-430	S30400	FP304
	S30409	FP304H
	S30451	FP304N
	S31600	FP316
	S31609	FP316H
	S31651	FP316N
	S32100	FP321
	S32109	FP321H
	S34700	FP347
	S34709	FP347H
SA-453	S63198	651 Cl. A & B
	S66286	660 Cl. A & B
SA-479	S20910	XM-19
	S24000	XM-29
	S30200	302
	S30400	304
	S30403	304L
	S30409	304H
	S30815	. . .
	S30908	309S
	S30909	309H
	S30940	309Cb
	S31008	310S
	S31009	310H
	S31040	310Cb
	S31600	316
	S31603	316L
	S31725	. . .
	S32109	321H
	S31803	. . .
	S32100	321
	S32550	. . .
	S34700	347
	S34800	348
	S40500	405
	S41000	410
	S43000	430
	S43035	439
	S44627	XM-27
	S44700	. . .
	S44800	. . .
SA-564	S17400	630
SA-638	S66286	660
SA-666	S20100	201-1, 201-2
	S21904	XM-11
SA-688	S24000	TPXM-29
	S30400	TP304
	S30403	TP304L
	S30451	TP304N
	S31600	TP316
	S31603	TP316L
SA-705	S17400	630

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE UHA-23
HIGH ALLOY STEEL (CONT'D)

Spec. No.	UNS No.	Type/Grade	Spec. No.	UNS No.	Type/Grade	Spec. No.	UNS No.	Type/Grade
SA-731	S44626	TPXM-33	SA-790	S31260	...	SA-813	S30908	TP309S
	S44627	TPXM-27		S31500	...		S30940	TP309Cb
				S31803	...		S31008	TP310S
SA-747	J92180	CB7Cu-1		S32304	...		S31040	TP310Cb
				S32550	...			
SA-789	S31260	...		S32750	...	SA-814	S30908	TP309S
	S31500	...		S32900	...		S30940	TP309Cb
	S31803	...		S32950	...		S31008	TP310S
	S32304	...					S31040	TP310Cb
	S32550	...	SA-803	S43035	TP439			
	S32750	...		S44660	26-3-3	SA-815	S31803	...
	S32900	...						
	S32950	...				SA-995	J93345	2A

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

UHA-13 NUTS AND WASHERS

Nuts and washers shall conform to the requirements in UCS-11.

DESIGN

UHA-20 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of high alloy steel and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Design* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UHA-21 WELDED JOINTS

When radiographic examination is required for butt welded joints by UHA-33, joints of Categories A and B (see UW-3) shall be of Type Nos. (1) and (2) of Table UW-12.

UHA-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Tables 3 (for bolting) and 1A (for other materials) of Section II, Part D give the maximum allowable stress values at the temperatures indicated for the materials conforming to the specifications listed therein. Values may be interpolated for intermediate temperatures [see UG-23 and UG-31(a)].

(b) Shells of pressure vessels may be made from welded pipe or tubing listed in Table UHA-23.

(c) For vessels designed to operate at a temperature below −20°F (−30°C), the allowable stress values to be used in design shall not exceed those given in Table 1A or 3 of Section II, Part D for temperatures of −20°F to 100°F (−30°C to 40°C).

UHA-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28, using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and the temperature limits of UG-20(c).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of the charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

UHA-29 STIFFENING RINGS FOR SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Rules covering the design of stiffening rings are given in UG-29. An example illustrating the use of these rules is given in Appendix L.

UHA-30 ATTACHMENT OF STIFFENING RINGS TO SHELL

Rules covering the attachment of stiffening rings are given in UG-30.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHA-31 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

Ellipsoidal, torispherical, hemispherical, and conical heads, having pressure on the convex side (minus heads), shall be designed by the rules of UG-33, using the figures for high alloy steels or Fig. CS-2 in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D. Examples illustrating the application of this paragraph are given in Appendix L.

UHA-32 REQUIREMENTS FOR POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) Before applying the detailed requirements and exemptions in these paragraphs, satisfactory weld procedure qualifications of the procedures to be used shall be performed in accordance with all the essential variables of Section IX including conditions of postweld heat treatment or lack of postweld heat treatment and including other restrictions listed below. Welds in pressure vessels or pressure vessel parts shall be given a postweld heat treatment at a temperature not less than specified in Table UHA-32 when the nominal thickness, as defined in UW-40(f), including corrosion allowance, exceeds the limits in the Notes to Table UHA-32. The exemptions provided for in the Notes to Table UHA-32 are not permitted when postweld heat treatment is a service requirement as set forth in UHA-51 and UW-2, when welding ferritic materials greater than $^1/_8$ in. (3 mm) thick with the electron beam welding process, or when welding P-Nos. 6 and 7 (except for Type 405 and Type 410S) materials of any thickness using the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes. The materials in Table UHA-32 are listed in accordance with the Section IX P-Number material groupings of QW-432 and are also listed in Table UHA-23.

(b) Holding temperatures and/or holding times in excess of the minimum values given in Table UHA-32 may be used. The holding time at temperature as specified in Table UHA-32 need not be continuous. It may be an accumulation of time of multiple postweld heat treat cycles. Long time exposure to postweld heat treatment temperatures may cause sigma phase formation (see UHA-104).

(c) When pressure parts of two different P-Number groups are joined by welding, the postweld heat treatment shall be that specified in either of Tables UHA-32 or UCS-56, with applicable notes, for the material requiring the higher postweld temperature. When nonpressure parts are welded to pressure parts, the postweld heat treatment temperature of the pressure part shall control. Ferritic steel parts, when used in conjunction with austenitic chromium–nickel stainless steel parts or austenitic/ferritic duplex steel, shall not be subjected to the solution heat treatment described in UHA-105(b).

(d) The operation of postweld heat treatment shall be carried out by one of the procedures given in UW-40 in accordance with the requirements of UCS-56(d) except as modified by the Notes to Table UHA-32.

(e) Vessels or parts of vessels that have been postweld heat treated in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph shall again be postweld heat treated after repairs have been made.

UHA-33 RADIOGRAPHIC EXAMINATION

(a) The requirements for radiographing prescribed in UW-11, UW-51, and UW-52 shall apply in high alloy vessels, except as provided in (b) below. (See UHA-21.)

(b) Butt welded joints in vessels constructed of materials conforming to Type 405 welded with straight chromium electrodes, and to Types 410, 429, and 430 welded with any electrode, shall be radiographed in all thicknesses. The final radiographs of all straight chromium ferritic welds including major repairs to these welds shall be made after postweld heat treatment has been performed.

(c) Butt welded joints in vessels constructed of austenitic chromium–nickel stainless steels which are radiographed because of the thickness requirements of UW-11, or for lesser thicknesses where the joint efficiency reflects the credit for radiographic examination of Table UW-12, shall be radiographed following post heating if such is performed.

UHA-34 LIQUID PENETRANT EXAMINATION

All austenitic chromium–nickel alloy steel and austenitic/ferritic duplex steel welds, both groove and fillet, which exceed a nominal size of $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm), as defined in UW-40(f), shall be examined for the detection of cracks by the liquid penetrant method. This examination shall be made following heat treatment if heat treatment is performed. All cracks shall be eliminated.

FABRICATION

UHA-40 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of high alloy steel and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UHA-32
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR HIGH ALLOY STEELS

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See TF-720(d)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 6 Gr. Nos. 1, 2, 3	1250 (675)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)

NOTES:
(1) Postweld heat treatment is not required for vessels constructed of Type 410 material for SA-182 Grade F6a, SA-240, SA-268, and SA-479 with carbon content not to exceed 0.08% and welded with electrodes that produce an austenitic chromium–nickel weld deposit or a non-air-hardening nickel–chromium–iron weld deposit, provided the plate thickness at the welded joint does not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm), and for thicknesses over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) to $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) provided a preheat of 450°F (230°C) is maintained during welding and that the joints are completely radiographed.
(2) Postweld heat treatment shall be performed as prescribed in UW-40 and UCS-56(e).

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UHA-32(d)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 7 Gr. Nos. 1, 2	1350 (730)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)	2 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch (25 mm) over 2 in. (50 mm)

NOTES:
(1) Postweld heat treatment is not required for vessels constructed of Type 405 or Type 410S materials for SA-240 and SA-268 with carbon content not to exceed 0.08%, welded with electrodes that produce an austenitic–chromium–nickel weld deposit or a non-air-hardening nickel–chromium–iron weld deposit, provided the plate thickness at the welded joint does not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) and for thicknesses over $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) to $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) provided a preheat of 450°F (230°C) is maintained during welding and that the joints are completely radiographed.
(2) Postweld heat treatment shall be performed as prescribed in UW-40 and UCS-56(e) except that the cooling rate shall be a maximum of 100°F (56°C)/hr in the range above 1200°F (650°C) after which the cooling rate shall be sufficiently rapid to prevent embrittlement.
(3) Postweld heat treatment is not required for vessels constructed of Grade TP XM-8 material for SA-268 and SA-479 or of Grade TP 18Cr–2Mo for SA-240 and SA-268.

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UHA-32(d)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 8 Gr. Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4	. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .

NOTE:
(1) Postweld heat treatment is neither required nor prohibited for joints between austenitic stainless steels of the P-No. 8 group. See nonmandatory Appendix HA, UHA-100 to UHA-108, inclusive.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

TABLE UHA-32
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR HIGH ALLOY STEELS (CONT'D)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UHA-32(d)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 10H Gr. No. 1	...	...	...	...

NOTE:
(1) For the austenitic-ferritic wrought or cast duplex stainless steels listed below, postweld heat treatment is neither required nor prohibited, but any heat treatment applied shall be performed as listed below and followed by liquid quenching or rapid cooling by other means:

Alloy	Postweld Heat Treatment Temperature, °F (°C)	
S32550	1900–2050	(1040–1120)
S31260 and S31803	1870–2010	(1020–1100)
S32900 (0.08 max. C)	1725–1750	(940–955)
S31200	1900–2000	(1040–1095)
S31500	1785–1875	(975–1025)
S32304	1740–1920	(950–1050)
J93345	2050 minimum	(1120 minimum)
S32750	1800–2060	(980–1130)
S32950	1825–1875	(1000–1025)

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UHA-32(d)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 10I Gr. No. 1	1350 (730)	1 hr/in. (25 mm), 15 min minimum	1 hr/in. (25 mm)	1 hr/in. (25 mm)

NOTES:
(1) Postweld heat treatment shall be performed as prescribed in UW-40 and UCS-56(e) except that the cooling rate shall be a maximum of 100°F (56°C)/hr in the range above 1200°F (650°C) after which the cooling rate shall be rapid to prevent embrittlement.
(2) Postweld heat treatment is neither required nor prohibited for a thickness of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) or less.
(3) For Alloy S44635, the rules for ferritic chromium stainless steel shall apply, except that postweld heat treatment is neither prohibited nor required. If heat treatment is performed after forming or welding, it shall be performed at 1850°F (1010°C) minimum followed by rapid cooling to below 800°F (430°C).

Material	Normal Holding Temperature, °F (°C), Minimum	Minimum Holding Time at Normal Temperature for Nominal Thickness [See UHA-32(d)]		
		Up to 2 in. (50 mm)	Over 2 in. to 5 in. (50 mm to 125 mm)	Over 5 in. (125 mm)
P-No. 10K Gr. No. 1	...	...	...	...

NOTE:
(1) For Alloy S44660, the rules for ferritic chromium stainless steel shall apply, except that postweld heat treatment is neither required nor prohibited. If heat treatment is performed after forming or welding, it shall be performed at 1500°F to 1950°F (816°C to 1066°C) for a period not to exceed 10 min followed by rapid cooling.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

for *Fabrication* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UHA-42 WELD METAL COMPOSITION

Welds that are exposed to the corrosive action of the contents of the vessel should have a resistance to corrosion that is not substantially less than that of the base metal. The use of filler metal that will deposit weld metal with practically the same composition as the material joined is recommended. When the manufacturer is of the opinion that a physically better joint can be made by departure from these limits, filler metal of a different composition may be used provided the strength of the weld metal at the operating temperature is not appreciably less than that of the high alloy material to be welded, and the user is satisfied that its resistance to corrosion is satisfactory for the intended service. The columbium content of weld metal shall not exceed 1.00%, except that ENiCrMo-3, ERNiCrMo-3, and ENiCrMo-12 weld filler metal made to SFA-5.11 and SFA-5.14 may be used to weld S31254, S31603, S31703, S31725, and S31726 to a maximum design temperature of 900°F (482°C).

UHA-44 REQUIREMENTS FOR POSTFABRICATION HEAT TREATMENT DUE TO STRAINING

UHA-44(a) The following rules shall apply in addition to general rules for forming given in UHA-40.

UHA-44(a)(1) If the following conditions prevail, the cold formed areas of pressure-retaining components manufactured of austenitic alloys shall be solution annealed by heating at the temperatures given in Table UHA-44 for 20 min/in. (20 min/25 mm) of thickness or 10 min, whichever is greater, followed by rapid cooling:

(a) the finishing-forming temperature is below the minimum heat-treating temperature given in Table UHA-44; and

(b) the design metal temperature and the forming strains exceed the limits shown in Table UHA-44.

UHA-44(a)(2) Forming strains shall be calculated as follows:

(a) cylinders formed from plate:

$$\%strain = \frac{50t}{R_f}\left(1 - \frac{R_f}{R_o}\right)$$

(b) spherical or dished heads formed from plate:

$$\%strain = \frac{75t}{R_f}\left(1 - \frac{R_f}{R_o}\right)$$

(c) tube and pipe bends: the larger of

$$\%strain = \frac{100r}{R}$$

or

$$\%strain = \left(\frac{t_A - t_B}{t_A}\right)100$$

(d) tube or pipe flares, swages, or upsets (see Fig. UHA-44); the largest of the outside diameter hoop strain, inside diameter hoop strain, axial strain, or radial strain. The absolute value of the largest strain is to be used as the basis for evaluation:

(1) outside diameter hoop strain:

$$\%strain = \frac{(D - D_f)}{D}100$$

(2) inside diameter hoop strain:

$$\%strain = \frac{(d - d_f)}{d}100$$

(3) axial strain:

$$\%strain = \frac{(L - L_f)}{L}100$$

(4) radial strain:

$$\%strain = \frac{(t - t_f)}{t}100$$

where

D = original outside diameter of the pipe or tube
D_f = outside diameter of the pipe or tube after forming
d = original inside diameter of the pipe or tube
d_f = inside diameter of the pipe or tube after forming
L = original length of the "constant volume process zone" for the tube or pipe in flaring, swaging, or upsetting forming operations
L_f = final length of the "constant volume process zone" for the tube or pipe in flaring, swaging, or upsetting forming operations
R = nominal bending radius to center line of pipe or tube
R_f = mean radius after forming
R_o = original radius (equal to infinity for a flat plate)
r = nominal outside radius of pipe or tube
t = nominal thickness of the plate, pipe, or tube before forming
t_A = measured average wall thickness of pipe or tube
t_B = measured minimum wall thickness of the extrados of the bend
t_f = nominal thickness of the cylindrical portion after forming

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

V = volume of the cylindrical process zone prior to forming
$= (\pi/4)(D^2 - d^2)$
$V = V_f$, i.e., forming is a constant volume process
V_f = volume of the cylindrical process zone after forming
$= (\pi/4)(D_f^2 - d_f^2)$

UHA-44(b) When forming strains cannot be calculated as shown in (a) above, the manufacturer shall have the responsibility to determine the maximum forming strain. In such instances, the forming limits for flares, swages, or upsets in Table UHA-44 shall apply.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UHA-50 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of high alloy steel and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UHA-51 IMPACT TESTS

Impact tests, as prescribed in UHA-51(a), shall be performed on materials listed in Table UHA-23 for all combinations of materials and minimum design metal temperatures (MDMT's) except as exempted in UHA-51(d), (e), (f), or (g). Impact tests are not required where the maximum obtainable Charpy specimen has a width along the notch less than 0.099 in. (2.5 mm).

UHA-51(a) Required Impact Testing of Base Metal, Heat-Affected Zones, and Weld Metal

UHA-51(a)(1) Impact test shall be made from sets of three specimens. A set shall be tested from the base metal, a set shall be tested from the heat affected zone, and a set shall be tested from the weld metal. Specimens shall be subjected to the same thermal treatments[1] as the part or vessel which the specimens represent. Test procedures, size, location, and orientation of the specimens shall be the same as required in UG-84.

UHA-51(a)(2) Each of the three specimens tested in each set shall have a lateral expansion opposite the notch not less than 0.015 in. (0.38 mm) for MDMT's of −320°F (−196°C) and warmer.

UHA-51(a)(3) When the MDMT is −320°F (−196°C) and warmer, and the value of lateral expansion for one specimen of a set is less than 0.015 in. (0.38 mm) but not less than 0.010 in. (0.25 mm), a retest of three additional specimens may be made, each of which must equal or exceed 0.015 in. (0.38 mm). Such a retest shall be permitted only when the average value of the three specimens equals or exceeds 0.015 in. (0.38 mm). If the required values are not obtained in the retest or if the values in the initial test are less than minimum required for retest, the material may be reheat treated. After reheat treatment, new sets of specimens shall be made and retested; all specimens must meet the lateral expansion value of 0.015 in. minimum.

UHA-51(a)(4) When the MDMT is colder than −320°F (−196°C), production welding processes shall be limited to shielded metal arc welding (SMAW), gas metal arc welding (GMAW), and gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW). Notch toughness testing shall be performed as specified in (a) or (b) below, as appropriate.

(a) If using Type 316L weld filler metal:

(1) each heat of filler metal used in production shall have a Ferrite Number (FN) not greater than 5, as determined by applying the chemical composition from the test weld to Fig. ULT-82; and

(2) notch toughness testing of the base metal, weld metal, and heat affected zone (HAZ) shall be conducted using a test temperature of −320°F (−196°C); and

(3) each of the three specimens from each test set shall have a lateral expansion opposite the notch not less than 0.021 in. (0.53 mm).

(b) If using filler metals other than Type 316L; or when the base metal, weld metal, or filler metal are unable to meet the requirements of (a) above:

(1) notch toughness testing shall be conducted at a test temperature not warmer than MDMT, using the ASTM E 1820 J_{IC} method;

(2) a set of two specimens shall be tested in the TL orientation with a resulting K_{IC} (J) of not less than 120 ksi$\sqrt{\text{in.}}$ (130 ksi$\sqrt{\text{m}}$);

(3) each heat or lot of filler metal used in production shall have a FN not greater than the FN determined for the test weld.

UHA-51(b) Required Impact Testing for Welding Procedure Qualifications. For welded construction the Welding Procedure Qualification shall include impact tests of welds and heat affected zones (HAZ's) made in accordance with UG-84(h) and with the requirements of UHA-51(a), when any of the components[2] of the welded

[1] Thermal treatments of materials are not intended to include warming to temperatures not exceeding 600°F (315°C), thermal cutting, or welding.

[2] Either base metal or weld metal.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

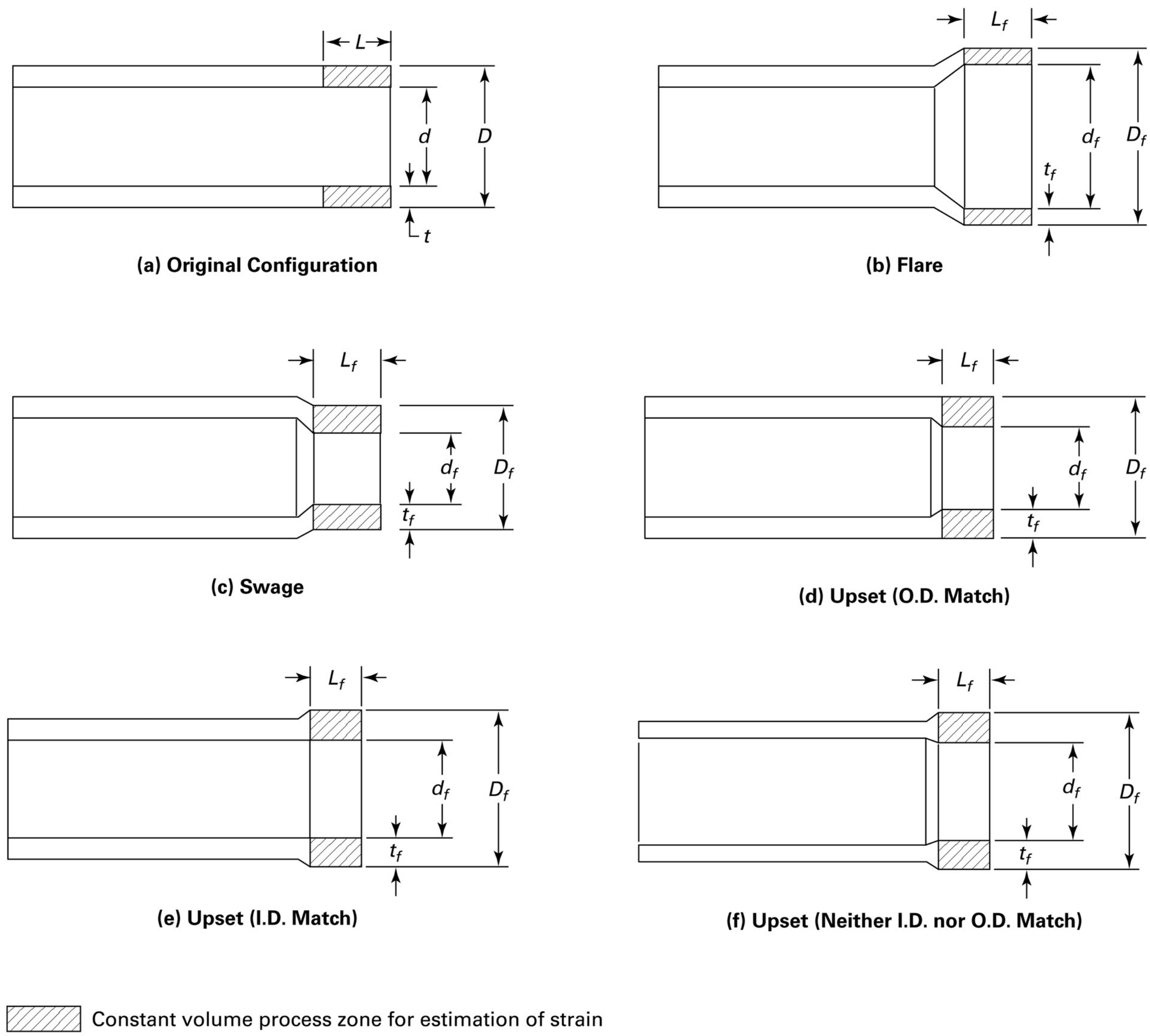
TABLE UHA-44
POSTFABRICATION STRAIN LIMITS AND REQUIRED HEAT TREATMENT

Grade	UNS Number	Limitations in Lower Temperature Range: For Design Temperature, °F (°C): Exceeding	Limitations in Lower Temperature Range: For Design Temperature, °F (°C): But Less Than or Equal to	Limitations in Lower Temperature Range: And Forming Strains Exceeding, %	Limitations in Higher Temperature Range: For Design Temperature, °F (°C), Exceeding	Limitations in Higher Temperature Range: And Forming Strains Exceeding, %	Minimum Heat-Treatment Temperature, °F (°C), When Design Temperature and Forming Strain Limits Are Exceeded [Notes (1) and (2)]
201LN	S20153 heads	All	All	All	All	All	1,950 (1 065)
201LN	S20153 all others	All	All	4	All	4	1,950 (1 065)
304	S30400	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
304H	S30409	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
304N	S30451	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	15	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
309S	S30908	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	2,000 (1 090)
310H	S31009	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	2,000 (1 090)
310S	S31008	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	2,000 (1 090)
316	S31600	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
316H	S31609	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	20	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
316N	S31651	1,075 (580)	1,250 (675)	15	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
321	S32100	1,000 (590)	1,250 (675)	15 [Note (3)]	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
321H	S32109	1,000 (590)	1,250 (675)	15 [Note (3)]	1,250 (675)	10	2,000 (1 090)
347	S34700	1,000 (590)	1,250 (675)	15	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
347H	S34709	1,000 (590)	1,250 (675)	15	1,250 (675)	10	2,000 (1 090)
348	S34800	1,000 (590)	1,250 (675)	15	1,250 (675)	10	1,900 (1 040)
348H	S34809	1,000 (590)	1,250 (675)	15	1,250 (675)	10	2,000 (1 090)

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) The limits shown are for cylinders formed from plates, spherical or dished heads formed from plate, and tube and pipe bends.
(b) For flares, swages, and upsets, the forming strain limits shall be half those tabulated in this Table. When the forming strains cannot be calculated as shown in UHA-44(a), the forming strain limits shall be half those tabulated in this Table [see UHA-44(b)].

NOTES:
(1) Rate of cooling from heat-treatment temperature is not subject to specific control limits.
(2) While minimum heat-treatment temperatures are specified, it is recommended that the heat-treatment temperature range be limited to 150°F (83°C) above that minimum [250°F (139°C) temperature range for 347, 347H, 348, and 348H].
(3) For simple bends of tubes or pipes whose outside diameter is less than 3.5 in. (88 mm), this limit is 20%.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: $V = V_f$

FIG. UHA-44 ILLUSTRATION OF COLD FORMING OPERATIONS FOR FLARING, SWAGING, AND UPSETTING OF TUBING

The Above Illustrations Are Diagrammatic Only

joint are required to be impact tested by the rules of this Division.

UHA-51(c) Required Impact Testing When Thermal Treatments Are Peformed. Impact tests are required at the colder of 70°F (20°C) or the MDMT, whenever thermal treatments[1] within the temperature ranges listed for the following materials are applied:

UHA-51(c)(1) austenitic stainless steels thermally treated at temperatures between 900°F (480°C) and 1650°F (900°C); however, Types 304, 304L, 316, and 316L that are thermally treated at temperatures between 900°F (480°C) and 1300°F (705°C) are exempt from impact testing provided the MDMT is −20°F (−29°C) or warmer and vessel (production) impact tests of the thermally treated weld metal are performed for Category A and B joints;

UHA-51(c)(2) austenitic-ferritic duplex stainless steels thermally treated at temperatures between 600°F (315°C) and 1750°F (955°C);

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UHA-51(c)(3) ferritic chromium stainless steels thermally treated at temperatures between 800°F (425°C) and 1,350°F (730°C);

UHA-51(c)(4) martensitic chromium stainless steels thermally treated at temperatures between 800°F (425°C) and 1,350°F (730°C).

UHA-51(d) Exemptions from Impact Testing for Base Metals and Heat Affected Zones. Impact testing is not required for Table UHA-23 base metals for the following combinations of base metals and heat affected zones (if welded) and MDMT's, except as modified in UHA-51(c):

UHA-51(d)(1) for austenitic chromium–nickel stainless steels as follows:

(a) Types 304, 304L, 316, 316L, 321 and 347 at MDMT's of −320°F (−196°C) and warmer;

(b) those types not listed in (d)(1)(a) above and having a carbon content not exceeding 0.10% at MDMT's of −320°F (−196°C) and warmer;

(c) having carbon content exceeding 0.10% at MDMT's of −55°F (−48°C) and warmer;

(d) for castings at MDMT's of −20°F (−29°C) and warmer;

UHA-51(d)(2) for austenitic chromium–manganese–nickel stainless steels (200 series) as follows:

(a) having a carbon content not exceeding 0.10% at MDMT's of −320°F (−196°C) and warmer;

(b) having a carbon content exceeding 0.10% at MDMT's of −55°F (−48°C) and warmer;

(c) for castings at MDMT's of −20°F (−29°C) and warmer;

UHA-51(d)(3) for the following steels in all product forms at MDMT's of −20°F (−29°C) and warmer:

(a) austenitic ferritic duplex steels with a nominal material thickness of $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) and thinner;

(b) ferritic chromium stainless steels with a nominal material thickness of $^1/_8$ in. (3 mm) and thinner;

(c) martensitic chromium stainless steels with a nominal material thickness of $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) and thinner.

Carbon content as used in (d)(1) and (d)(2) above is as specified by the purchaser and must be within the limits of the material specification.

UHA-51(e) Exemptions from Impact Testing for Welding Procedure Qualifications. For Welding Procedure Qualifications, impact testing is not required for the following combinations of weld metals and MDMT's except as modified in UHA-51(c):

UHA-51(e)(1) for austenitic-chromium–nickel stainless steel base materials having a carbon content not exceeding 0.10% welded without the addition of filler metal, at MDMT's of −155°F (−104°C) and warmer;

UHA-51(e)(2) for austenitic weld metal:

(a) having a carbon content not exceeding 0.10% and produced with filler metals conforming to SFA-5.4, SFA-5.9, SFA-5.11, SFA-5.14, and SFA-5.22 at MDMT's of −155°F (−104°C) and warmer;

(b) having a carbon content exceeding 0.10% and produced with filler metals conforming to SFA-5.4, SFA-5.9, SFA-5.11, SFA-5.14 and SFA-5.22 at MDMT's of −55°F (−48°C) and warmer;

UHA-51(e)(3) for the following weld metal, when the base metal of similar chemistry is exempt as stated in UHA-51(d)(3), then the weld metal shall also be exempt at MDMT's of −20°F (−29°C) and warmer:

(a) austenitic ferritic duplex steels;

(b) ferritic chromium stainless steels;

(c) martensitic chromuim stainless steels.

Carbon content as used in (e)(2) above is for weld metal produced with the addition of filler metal.

UHA-51(f) Required Impact Testing for Vessel (Production) Plates. For welded construction, vessel (production) impact tests in accordance with UG-84(i) are required when the MDMT is −320°F (−196°C) and warmer, if the Weld Procedure Qualification requires impact testing; unless otherwise exempted by the rules of this Division. When the MDMT is colder than −320°F (−196°C), vessel (production) impact tests or ASTM E 1820 J_{IC} tests shall be conducted in accordance with UHA-51(a)(4).

Vessel (production) impact tests are not required for welds joining austenitic chromiun–nickel or austenitic chromium–manganese–nickel stainless steels at MDMT's not colder than −320°F (−196°C) where all of the following conditions are satisfied.

UHA-51(f)(1) The welding processes are limited to shielded metal arc, submerged arc, gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, and plasma arc.

UHA-51(f)(2) The applicable Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS's) are supported by Procedure Qualification Record's (PQR's) with impact testing in accordance with the requirements of UHA-51(a) at the MDMT or colder, or when the applicable PQR is exempted from impact testing by other provisions of this Division.

UHA-51(f)(3) The weld metal (produced with or without the addition of filler metal) has a carbon content not exceeding 0.10%.

UHA-51(f)(4) The weld metal is produced by filler metal conforming to SFA-5.4, SFA-5.9, SFA-5.11, SFA-5.14 and SFA-5.22 as modified below.

(a) Each heat and/or lot of welding consumables to be used in production welding with the shieldedmetal arc (SMAW), and gas metal arc (GMAW) processes shall be qualified by conducting impact tests at or

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

below the MDMT except as exempted by UHA-51(e)(2) in accordance with Section II, Part C, SFA-5.4, A9.12. Acceptance criteria shall conform with UHA-51(a).

(b) Each heat of welding consumables to be used in production welding with the submerged arc (SAW) process shall be qualified by conducting impact tests with each lot and/or batch of flux at or below the MDMT except as exempted by UHA-51(e)(2) in accordance with Section II, Part C, SFA-5.4, A9.12. Acceptance criteria shall conform with UHA-51(a).

(c) Combining more than one welding process or more than one heat, lot, and/or batch of welding material into a single test coupon is unacceptable. Testing at or below the MDMT, except as exempted by UHA-51(e)(2), may be conducted by the welding consumable manufacturer provided certified mill test reports are furnished with the consumables.

(d) The following filler metals may be used without impact testing of each heat and/or lot provided that procedure qualification impact testing in accordance with UG-84(h) at the MDMT or colder is performed using the same manufacturer brand and type filler metal: ENiCrFe-2, ENiCrFe-3, ENiCrMo-3, ENiCrMo-4, ENiCrMo-6, ERNiCr-3, ERNiCrMo-3, ERNiCrMo-4, SFA-5.4 E310-15 or 16.

(e) The following filler metals may be used without impact testing of each heat and/or lot provided that procedure qualification impact testing in accordance with UG-84(h) at the MDMT or colder is performed: ER308L, ER316L, and ER310 used with GMAW, GTAW, or PAW processes.

UHA-51(g) Exemption From Impact Testing Because of Low Stress. Impact testing of materials listed in Table UHA-23 is not required, except as modified by UHA-51(c), for vessels when the coincident ratio of design stress[3] in tension to allowable tensile stress is less than 0.35.

UHA-52 WELDED TEST PLATES

(a) For welded vessels constructed of Type 405 material which are not postweld heat treated, welded test plates shall be made to include material from each melt of plate steel used in the vessel. Plates from two different melts may be welded together and be represented by a single test plate.

(b) From each welded test plate there shall be taken two face-bend test specimens as prescribed in QW-461.2 of Section IX; these shall meet the requirements of QW-160, Section IX.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UHA-60 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of high alloy steels.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UHA-65 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices given in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of high alloy steels.

APPENDIX HA SUGGESTIONS ON THE SELECTION AND TREATMENT OF AUSTENITIC CHROMIUM–NICKEL AND FERRITIC AND MARTENSITIC HIGH CHROMIUM STEELS (INFORMATIVE AND NONMANDATORY)

UHA-100 GENERAL

The selection of the proper metal composition to resist a given corrosive medium and the choice of the proper heat treatment and surface preparation of the material selected are not within the scope of this Division. Appendix A, A-310 to A-360, of Section II, Part D discusses some of the factors that should be considered in arriving at a proper selection.

UHA-101 STRUCTURE

See Appendix A, A-310, of Section II, Part D.

UHA-102 INTERGRANULAR CORROSION

See Appendix A, A-320, of Section II, Part D.

UHA-103 STRESS CORROSION CRACKING

See Appendix A, A-330, of Section II, Part D.

UHA-104 SIGMA PHASE EMBRITTLEMENT

See Appendix A, A-340, of Section II, Part D.

[3] Calculated stress from pressure and nonpressure loadings, including those listed in UG-22 which result in general primary membrane tensile stress.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UHA-105 HEAT TREATMENT OF AUSTENITIC CHROMIUM–NICKEL STEELS

See Appendix A, A-350, of Section II, Part D.

UHA-107 DISSIMILAR WELD METAL

The difference between the coefficients of expansion of the base material and the weld should receive careful consideration before undertaking the welding of ferritic type stainless steels with austenitic electrodes for services involving severe temperature conditions, particularly those of a cyclic nature.

UHA-108 FABRICATION

It is recommended that the user of austenitic chromium–nickel steel vessels in corrosive service consider the following additional fabrication test.

A welded guided-bend test specimen should be made as prescribed in QW-161.2 of Section IX from one of the heats of material used in the shell. The test plate should be welded by the procedure used in the longitudinal joints of the vessel and should be heat treated using the same temperature cycle as used for the vessel. The operations on the test plate should be such as to duplicate as closely as possible the physical conditions of the material in the vessel itself.

Grind and polish the specimen and immerse it for not less than 72 hr in a boiling solution consisting of 47 ml concentrated sulfuric acid and 13 g of crystalline copper sulfate ($CuSO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$) per liter of water. Then bend the specimen so as to produce an elongation of not less than 20% at a section in the base metal $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) from the edge of the weld. The metal shall show no sign of disintegration after bending.

UHA-109 885°F (475°C) EMBRITTLEMENT

See Appendix A, A-360, of Section II, Part D.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART UCI
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF CAST IRON

GENERAL

UCI-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UCI are applicable to pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of cast iron, cast nodular iron having an elongation of less than 15% in 2 in. (50 mm), or of cast dual metal (see UCI-23 and UCI-29) except standard pressure parts covered by UG-11(b), and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast material.

UCI-2 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

Cast iron vessels shall not be used for services as follows:

(a) to contain lethal[1] or flammable substances, either liquid or gaseous;

(b) for unfired steam boilers as defined in U-1(g);

(c) for direct firing [see UW-2(d)].

UCI-3 PRESSURE–TEMPERATURE LIMITATIONS

(a) The design pressure for vessels and vessel parts constructed of any of the classes of cast iron listed in Table UCI-23 shall not exceed the following values except as provided in (b) and (c) below:

(1) 160 psi (1.1 MPa) at temperatures not greater than 450°F (230°C) for vessels containing gases, steam, or other vapors;

(2) 160 psi (1.1 MPa) at temperatures not greater than 375°F (190°C) for vessels containing liquids;

(3) 250 psi (1.7 MPa) for liquids at temperatures less than their boiling point at design pressure, but in no case at temperatures exceeding 120°F (50°C);

(4) 300 psi (2 MPa) at temperatures not greater than 450°F (230°C) for bolted heads, covers, or closures that do not form a major component of the pressure vessel.

(b) Vessels and vessel parts constructed of stress relieved material conforming to Classes 40 through 60 of SA-278 may be used for design pressures up to 250 psi (1.7 MPa) at temperatures up to 650°F (345°C), provided the distribution of metal in the pressure containing walls of the casting is shown to be approximately uniform.

(c) Vessels and vessel parts constructed of stress relieved material conforming to SA-476 may be used for design pressures up to 250 psi (1.7 MPa) at temperatures up to 450°F (232°C).

(d) Cast iron flanges and flanged fittings conforming to ASME/ANSI B16.1, Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 125 and 250 may be used in whole or in part of a pressure vessel for pressures not exceeding the American National Standard ratings at temperatures not exceeding 450°F (230°C).

MATERIALS

UCI-5 GENERAL

All cast iron material subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Table UCI-23 except as otherwise provided in UG-11.

UCI-12 BOLT MATERIALS

The requirements for bolts, nuts, and washers shall be the same as for carbon and low alloy steels in UCS-10 and UCS-11.

[1] By "lethal substances" are meant poisonous gases or liquids of such a nature that a very small amount of the gas or of the vapor of the liquid mixed or unmixed with air is dangerous to life, when inhaled. For purposes of this Division, this class includes substances of this nature which are stored under pressure or may generate a pressure if stored in a closed vessel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UCI-23
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR CAST IRON

Spec. No.	Class	Specified Min. Tensile Strength, ksi (MPa)	Maximum Allowable Stress, ksi (MPa), for Metal Temperature Not Exceeding 450°F (230°C) and Colder	650°F (345°C)	Ext. Press. Chart Fig. No. [Note (1)]
SA-667	. . .	20 (138)	2.0 (13.8)	. . .	CI-1
SA-278	20	20 (138)	2.0 (13.8)	. . .	CI-1
SA-278	25	25 (172)	2.5 (17.2)	. . .	CI-1
SA-278	30	30 (207)	3.0 (20.7)	. . .	CI-1
SA-278	35	35 (241)	3.5 (24.1)	. . .	CI-1
SA-278	40	40 (276)	4.0 (27.6)	4.0 (27.6)	CI-1
SA-278	45	45 (310)	4.5 (31.0)	4.5 (31.0)	CI-1
SA-278	50	50 (345)	5.0 (34.5)	5.0 (34.5)	CI-1
SA-47	(Grade 3-2510)	50 (345)	5.0 (34.5)	5.0 (34.5)	CI-1
SA-278	55	55 (379)	5.5 (37.9)	5.5 (37.9)	CI-1
SA-278	60	60 (414)	6.0 (41.4)	6.0 (41.4)	CI-1
SA-476	. . .	80 (552)	8.0 (55.2)	. . .	CI-1
SA-748	20	16 (110)	1.6 (11.0)	. . .	CI-1
SA-748	25	20 (138)	2.0 (13.8)	. . .	CI-1
SA-748	30	24 (165)	2.4 (16.5)	. . .	CI-1
SA-748	35	28 (193)	2.8 (19.3)	. . .	CI-1

NOTE:
(1) Figure CI-1 is contained in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D.

DESIGN

UCI-16 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts of cast iron and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A, insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast materials.

For components for which the Code provides no design rules, the provisions of UG-19(b) and (c) apply. If a proof test is performed, the rules of UCI-101 apply.

UCI-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Table UCI-23 gives the maximum allowable stress values in tension at the temperatures indicated for castings conforming to the specifications listed therein. For dual metal cylinders conforming to SA-667 or SA-748, the maximum calculated stress, including all applicable loadings of UG-22, shall not exceed the allowable stress given in Table UCI-23 computed on the basis of the gray cast iron thickness of the cylinder.

(b) The maximum allowable stress value in bending shall be $1\frac{1}{2}$ times that permitted in tension, and the maximum allowable stress value in compression shall be two times that permitted in tension.

UCI-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28, using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and the temperature limits of UG-20(c).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of the charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

UCI-29 DUAL METAL CYLINDERS

The minimum wall thickness of dual metal cylinders conforming to SA-667 or SA-748 shall be 5 in. (125 mm), and the outside diameter of such cylinders shall not exceed 36 in. (900 mm).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UCI-32 HEADS WITH PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

Heads with pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be designed in accordance with the formulas in UG-32 using the maximum allowable stress value in tension.

UCI-33 HEADS WITH PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

The thickness of heads with pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall not be less than the thickness required in UCI-32 for plus heads under the same pressure nor less than 0.01 times the inside diameter of the head skirt.

UCI-35 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS (HEADS)

(a) Circular cast iron spherically shaped heads with bolting flanges, similar to Fig. 1-6 sketches (b), (c), and (d), shall be designed in accordance with the provisions in 1-6, except that corners and fillets shall comply with the requirements of UCI-37.

(b) Circular cast iron spherically shaped heads with bolting flanges other than those described in (a) above shall be designed in accordance with the following requirements.

(1) The head thickness shall be determined in accordance with the requirements in UG-32.

(2) The spherical and knuckle radii shall conform to the requirements in UG-32.

(3) Cast iron flanges and flanged fittings conforming to ASME/ANSI B16.1, Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 125 and 250 may be used in whole or in part of a pressure vessel for pressures not exceeding American National Standard ratings at temperatures not exceeding 450°F (230°C). Other flanges may be designed in accordance with the provisions of Appendix 2 using the allowable stress values in bending.

UCI-36 OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS

(a) The dimensional requirements in UG-36 through UG-46 are applicable to cast iron and shall be used in the design of openings and reinforcements in pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts which are cast integrally with the vessel or vessel part. In no case shall the thickness of the reinforcement, including the nominal thickness of the vessel wall, exceed twice the nominal thickness of the vessel wall.

(b) Cast iron flanges, nozzles, and openings shall not be attached to steel or nonferrous pressure vessels or pressure parts by welding or brazing, nor shall they be considered to contribute strength to the vessel or part.

UCI-37 CORNERS AND FILLETS

A liberal radius shall be provided at projecting edges and in reentrant corners in accordance with good foundry practice. Abrupt changes in surface contour and in wall thickness at junctures shall be avoided. Fillets shall conform to the following.

(a) Fillets forming the transition between the pressure containing walls and integral attachments, such as brackets, lugs, supports, nozzles, flanges, and bosses, shall have a radius not less than one-half the thickness of the pressure containing wall adjacent to the attachment.

FABRICATION

UCI-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts of cast iron and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast materials.

UCI-78 REPAIRS IN CAST IRON MATERIALS

(a) Imperfections which permit leakage in cast iron materials may be repaired by using threaded plugs provided:

(1) the vessel or vessel parts are to operate within the limits of UCI-3(a) or (b);

(2) no welding is performed;

(3) the diameter of the plug shall not exceed the diameter of a standard NPS 2 pipe plug;

(4) the plugs, where practical, shall conform in all dimensions to standard NPS pipe plugs, and in addition they shall have full thread engagement corresponding to the thickness of the repaired section. (See Table UCI-78.1.) Where a tapered plug is impractical because of excess wall thickness in terms of plug diameter and coincident thread engagement, other types of plugs may be used provided both full thread engagement and effective sealing against pressure are obtained. Where possible, the ends of the plug should be ground smooth after installation to conform to the inside and outside contours of the walls of the pressure vessel or pressure part;

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UCI-78.1

NPS Plug or Equivalent	Minimum Thickness of Repaired Section, in. (mm)
$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{11}{32}$ (9)
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{7}{16}$ (11)
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$ (13)
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{21}{32}$ (17)
$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$ (19)
1	$\frac{13}{16}$ (21)
$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{7}{8}$ (22)
$1\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{15}{16}$ (24)
2	1 (25)

TABLE UCI-78.2

NPS Plug or Equivalent	Minimum Radius of Curvature of Cylinder or Cone, in. (mm)
$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{9}{16}$ (14)
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{11}{16}$ (17)
$\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$ (27)
$\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$ (32)
$\frac{3}{4}$	2 (50)
1	$2\frac{1}{2}$ (64)
$1\frac{1}{4}$	4 (100)
$1\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{4}$ (134)
2	$8\frac{1}{8}$ (207)

(5) the material from which the plug is manufactured shall conform in all respects to the material specification which applies to the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part;

(6) the machined surface of the drilled or bored hole before tapping shall be free from visible defects and the adjacent metal shown to be sound by radiographic examination;

(7) the thickness of any repaired section in relation to the size of plug used shall not be less than that given in Table UCI-78.1;

(8) the minimum radius of curvature of repaired sections of cylinders or cones in relation to the size of plug used shall not be less than that given in Table UCI-78.2;

(9) the ligament efficiency between any two adjacent plugs shall not be less than 80% where

$$E = \frac{p - \left(\dfrac{d_1 + d_2}{2}\right)}{p}$$

and

E = ligament efficiency
p = distance between plug centers
d_1, d_2 = respective diameters of the two plugs under consideration

(10) the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part meets the standard hydrostatic test prescribed in UCI-99.

(b) Surface imperfections, such as undue roughness, which do not permit leakage in cast iron materials may be repaired using driven plugs provided:

(1) the vessel or vessel parts operate within the limits of UCI-3(a)(1), (2), or (4);

(2) no welding is performed;

(3) the material from which the plug is manufactured conforms in all respects to the material specification which applies to the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part;

(4) the depth of the plug is not greater than 20% of the thickness of the section and its diameter is not greater than the larger of $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm) or 20% of the thickness of the section;

(5) the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part meets the standard hydrostatic test prescribed in UCI-99.

(c) Surface imperfections, such as undue roughness, which do not permit leakage in cast iron vessels that are to operate under the limits of UCI-3(a)(3) may be repaired under (a) or (b) above or by welding. Where welding is used, the weld and the metal adjacent to it shall be examined by either the magnetic particle or liquid penetrant method and shown to be free of linear indications.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UCI-90 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and vessel parts of cast iron and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast material.

UCI-99 STANDARD HYDROSTATIC TEST

Cast iron pressure vessels shall be hydrostatically tested by the method prescribed in UG-99 except that the test pressure shall be two times the maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the vessel for maximum allowable working pressures greater than 30 psi (200 kPa) and $2\frac{1}{2}$ times the maximum allowable working pressure but not to exceed 60 psi (400 kPa) for maximum allowable working pressure under 30 psi (200 kPa).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UCI-101 HYDROSTATIC TEST TO DESTRUCTION

(a) The maximum allowable working pressure of identical cast iron vessels or vessel parts, based on testing one of them to destruction, limited to the service conditions specified in UCI-3 and in accordance with UG-101(m) shall be

$$P_R = \frac{P_B}{6.67} \times \frac{\text{(Specified minimum tensile strength)}}{\text{(avg. tensile strength of test specimens)}}$$

where

P_R = maximum allowable working pressure at operating temperatures listed in Table UCI-23
P_B = destruction test pressure

The principle of UG-101(c) shall be followed.

NOTE: It is assumed that failure will occur in bending.

(b) The value of the average tensile strength of test specimens in the foregoing equation shall be determined from the test results of three test bars from the same ladle of iron as used in the part, or from three test specimens cut from the part.

(c) All vessels or vessel parts of the same material, design, and construction, whose maximum allowable working pressure is based on a test to destruction of a sample vessel in accordance with (a) above, shall be considered to have a design pressure equal to the maximum allowable working pressure thus determined, except as limited by the rules of UCI-3, and shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure in conformity with the rules of UCI-99.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UCI-115 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of cast iron.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UCI-125 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of cast iron.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

PART UCL
REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDED PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF MATERIAL WITH CORROSION RESISTANT INTEGRAL CLADDING, WELD METAL OVERLAY CLADDING, OR WITH APPLIED LININGS

GENERAL

UCL-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UCL are applicable to pressure vessels or vessel parts that are constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and to vessels and vessel parts that are fully or partially lined inside or outside with corrosion resistant plate, sheet, or strip, attached by welding to the base plates before or after forming or to the shell, heads, and other parts during or after assembly into the completed vessel.[1] These rules shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A and with the specific requirements in the applicable Parts of Subsection B.

UCL-2 METHODS OF FABRICATION

Vessels and vessel parts of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding construction shall be fabricated by welding. Corrosion resistant linings may be attached by welding to vessels fabricated by any method of construction permitted under the rules of this section.

UCL-3 CONDITIONS OF SERVICE

Specific chemical compositions, heat treatment procedures, fabrication requirements, and supplementary tests may be required to assure that the vessel will be suitable for the intended service. This is particularly true for vessels subject to severe corrosive conditions, and also those vessels operating in a cyclic temperature service. These rules do not indicate the selection of an alloy suitable for the intended service or the amount of the corrosion allowance to be provided. See also informative and nonmandatory guidance regarding metallurgical phenomena in Appendix A of Section II, Part D.

It is recommended that users assure themselves by appropriate tests, or otherwise, that the alloy material selected and its heat treatment during fabrication will be suitable for the intended service.

NOTE: Attention is called to the difficulties that have been experienced in welding materials differing greatly in chemical composition. Mixtures of uncertain chemical composition and physical properties are produced at the line of fusion. Some of these mixtures are brittle and may give rise to cracks during solidification or afterward. To avoid weld embrittlement, special care is required in the selection of lining material and welding electrodes, and in the application of controls over the welding process and other fabrication procedures.

MATERIALS

UCL-10 GENERAL

The base materials used in the construction of clad vessels and of those having applied corrosion linings shall comply with the requirements for materials given in UCS-5, UF-5, UHT-5, or ULW-5.

UCL-11 INTEGRAL AND WELD METAL OVERLAY CLAD MATERIAL

(a) Clad material used in constructions in which the design calculations are based on the total thickness including cladding [see UCL-23(c)] shall conform to one of the following specifications:

SA-263, Corrosion-Resisting Chromium–Steel Clad Plate, Sheet and Strip

SA-264, Corrosion-Resisting Chromium–Nickel Steel Clad Plate, Sheet and Strip

[1] See 3-2, Definition of Terms.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SA-265, Nickel and Nickel–Base Alloy Clad Steel Plate.

In addition to the above, weld metal overlay cladding may be used as defined in this Part.

(b) Base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding used in constructions in which the design calculations are based on the base material thickness, exclusive of the thickness of the cladding material, may consist of any base material satisfying the requirements of UCL-10 and any metallic corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding material of weldable quality that in the judgment of the user is suitable for the intended service.

(c) Base material with corrosion resistant integral cladding in which any part of the cladding is included in the design calculations, as permitted in UCL-23(c), shall show a minimum shear strength of 20,000 psi (140 MPa) when tested in the manner described in the clad plate specification. One shear test shall be made on each such clad plate as rolled, and the results shall be reported on the certified material test report.

When the composite thickness of the clad material is $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) or less, and/or when the cladding metal thickness is nominally 0.075 in. (1.9 mm) or less, the "Bond Strength" test, as described in SA-263, SA-264, or SA-265, may be used in lieu of the bond "Shear Strength" test to fulfill the criteria for acceptable minimum shear strength, except that the bend test specimen shall be $1^1/_2$ in. (38 mm) wide by not more than $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) in thickness and shall be bent, at room temperature, through an angle of 180 deg to the bend diameter provided for in the material specifications applicable to the backing metal. The results of the "Bond Strength" test shall be reported on the certified material test report.

(d) A shear or bond strength test is not required for weld metal overlay cladding.

(e) When any part of the cladding thickness is specified as an allowance for corrosion, such added thickness shall be removed before mill tension tests are made. When corrosion of the cladding is not expected, no part of the cladding need be removed before testing, even though excess thickness seems to have been provided or is available as corrosion allowance.

UCL-12 LINING

Material used for applied corrosion resistant lining may be any metallic material of weldable quality that in the judgment of the user is suitable for the intended purpose.

DESIGN

UCL-20 GENERAL

(a) The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to pressure vessels and vessel parts constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those having applied corrosion resistant linings and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Design* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

(b) Minimum Thickness of Shells and Heads. The minimum thickness specified in UG-16(b) shall be the total thickness for clad material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and the base-material thickness for applied-lining construction.

UCL-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Applied Corrosion Resistant Linings. The thickness of material used for applied lining shall not be included in the computation for the required thickness of any lined vessel. The maximum allowable stress value shall be that given for the base material in Table UCS-23, or UNF-23.

(b) Integrally Clad Material Without Credit for Full Cladding Thickness. Except as permitted in (c) below, design calculations shall be based on the total thickness of the clad material less the specified nominal minimum thickness of cladding. A reasonable excess thickness either of the actual cladding or of the same thickness of corrosion resistant weld metal may be included in the design calculations as an equal thickness of base material. The maximum allowable stress value shall be that given for the base material referenced in Table UCS-23, UF-6, or UHT-23 and listed in Table 1A of Section II, Part D.

(c) Base Material with Corrosion Resistant Integral or Weld Metal Overlay Cladding With Credit for Cladding Thickness. When the base material with corrosion resistant integral cladding conforms to one of the specifications listed in UCL-11(a), or consists of an acceptable base material with corrosion resistant weld metal overlay and the joints are completed by depositing corrosion resisting weld metal over the weld in the base material to restore the cladding, the design calculations may be based on a thickness equal to the nominal thickness of the base material plus S_c/S_b times the nominal thickness of the cladding after any allowance provided for corrosion has been deducted, where

S_c = maximum allowable stress value for the integral cladding at the design temperature, or for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding, that

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of the wrought material whose chemistry most closely approximates that of the cladding, at the design temperature

S_b = maximum allowable stress value for the base material at the design temperature

Where S_c is greater than S_b, the multiplier S_c/S_b shall be taken equal to unity. The maximum allowable stress value shall be that given for the base material referenced in Table UCS-23, UF-6, or UHT-23 and listed in Table 1A of Section II, Part D. Vessels in which the cladding is included in the computation of required thickness shall not be constructed for internal pressure under the provisions of Table UW-12, column (c).

The thickness of the corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding deposited by manual processes shall be verified by electrical or mechanical means. One examination shall be made for every head, shell course, or any other pressure retaining component for each welding process used. The location of examinations shall be chosen by the Inspector except that, when the Inspector has been duly notified in advance and cannot be present or otherwise make the selection, the fabricator may exercise his own judgment in selecting the locations.

UCL-24 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WORKING TEMPERATURE

(a) When the design calculations are based on the thickness of base material exclusive of lining or cladding thickness, the maximum service metal temperature of the vessel shall be that allowed for the base material.

(b) When the design calculations are based on the full thickness of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding as permitted in UCL-23(c), the maximum service metal temperature shall be the lower of the values allowed for the base material referenced in Table UCS-23, UF-6, or UHT-23 and listed in Table 1A of Section II, Part D, or refer to UCL-23(c) for corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding and the cladding material referenced in Table UHA-23 or UNF-23.

(c) The use of corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding or lining material of chromium-alloy stainless steel with a chromium content of over 14% is not recommended for service metal temperatures above 800°F (425°C).

UCL-25 CORROSION OF CLADDING OR LINING MATERIAL

(a) When corrosion or erosion of the cladding or lining material is expected, the cladding or lining thickness shall be increased by an amount that in the judgment of the user will provide the desired service life.

(b) Telltale Holes. The requirements of UG-25(e) and UG-46(b) shall apply when telltale holes are used in clad or lined vessels, except that such holes may extend to the cladding or lining.

UCL-26 THICKNESS OF SHELLS AND HEADS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

The thickness of shells or heads under external pressure shall satisfy the requirements of the Part of Subsection C applicable to the base material. The cladding may be included in the design calculations for clad material to the extent provided in UCL-23(b) and (c).

UCL-27 LOW TEMPERATURE OPERATIONS

The base materials used in the construction of vessels shall satisfy the requirements of UCS-66, UCS-67, UCS-68, Part UF, or UHT-5.

FABRICATION

UCL-30 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to pressure vessels and vessel parts constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those having applied corrosion resistant linings, and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UCL-31 JOINTS IN INTEGRAL OR WELD METAL OVERLAY CLADDING AND APPLIED LININGS

(a) The types of joints and welding procedure used shall be such as to minimize the formation of brittle weld composition by the mixture of metals of corrosion resistant alloy and the base material.

(b) When a shell, head, or other pressure part is welded to form a corner joint, as in Fig. UW-13.2, the weld shall be made between the base materials either by removing the clad material prior to welding the joint or by using weld procedures that will assure the base materials are

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

fused. The corrosion resistance of the joint may be provided by using corrosion resistant and compatible weld filler material or may be restored by any other appropriate means.

NOTE: Because of the different thermal coefficients of expansion of dissimilar metals, caution should be exercised in design and construction under the provisions of these paragraphs in order to avoid difficulties in service under extreme temperature conditions, or with unusual restraint of parts such as may occur at points of stress concentration.

UCL-32 WELD METAL COMPOSITION

Welds that are exposed to the corrosive action of the contents of the vessel should have a resistance to corrosion that is not substantially less than that of the corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding or lining. The use of filler metal that will deposit weld metal with practically the same composition as the material joined is recommended. Weld metal of different composition may be used provided it has better mechanical properties in the opinion of the manufacturer, and the user is satisfied that its resistance to corrosion is satisfactory for the intended service. The columbium content of columbium-stabilized austenitic stainless steel weld metal shall not exceed 1.00%, except when a higher columbium content is permitted in the material being welded.

UCL-33 INSERTED STRIPS IN CLAD MATERIAL

The thickness of inserted strips used to restore cladding at joints shall be equal to that of the nominal minimum thickness of cladding specified for the material backed, if necessary, with corrosion resistant weld metal deposited in the groove to bring the insert flush with the surface of the adjacent cladding.

UCL-34 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

CAUTION: Postweld heat treatment may be in the carbide-precipitation range for unstabilized austenitic chromium–nickel steels, as well as within the range where a sigma phase may form, and if used indiscriminately could result in material of inferior physical properties and inferior corrosion resistance, which ultimately could result in failure of the vessel.

(a) Vessels or parts of vessels constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding or applied corrosion resistant lining material shall be postweld heat treated when the base material is required to be postweld heat treated. In applying these rules, the determining thickness shall be the total thickness of the base material.

When the thickness of the base material requires postweld heat treatment, it shall be performed after the application of corrosion resistant weld metal overlay cladding or applied corrosion resistant lining unless exempted by the Notes of Table UCS-56.

(b) Vessels or parts of vessels constructed of chromium stainless steel integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those lined with chromium stainless steel applied linings shall be postweld heat treated in all thicknesses, except vessels that are integrally clad or lined with Type 405 or Type 410S and welded with an austenitic electrode or non-air-hardening nickel–chromium–iron electrode need not be postweld heat treated unless required by (a) above.

UCL-35 RADIOGRAPHIC EXAMINATION 04

(a) General. Vessels or parts of vessels constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those having applied corrosion resistant linings shall be radiographed when required by the rules in UW-11, UCS-57, UHT-57, and UCL-36. The material thickness specified under these rules shall be the total material thickness for clad construction and the base material thickness for applied-lining construction, except as provided in (c) below.

(b) Base Material Weld Protected by a Strip Covering. When the base material weld in clad or lined construction is protected by a covering strip or sheet of corrosion resistant material applied over the weld in the base material to complete the cladding or lining, any radiographic examination required by the rules of UW-11, UHT-57, and UCS-57 may be made on the completed weld in the base material before the covering is attached.

(c) Base Material Weld Protected by an Alloy Weld. The radiographic examination required by the rules in UW-11, UHT-57, and UCS-57 shall be made after the joint, including the corrosion resistant layer, is complete, except that the radiographic examination may be made on the weld in the base material before the alloy cover weld is deposited, provided the following requirements are met.

(1) The thickness of the base material at the welded joint is not less than required by the design calculation.

(2) The corrosion resistant alloy weld deposit is non-air-hardening.

(3) The completed alloy weld deposit is spot examined by any method that will detect cracks.

(4) The thickness of the base material shall be used in determining the radiography requirement in (a) above.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UCL-36 EXAMINATION OF CHROMIUM STAINLESS STEEL CLADDING OR LINING

The alloy weld joints between the edges of adjacent chromium stainless steel cladding layers or liner sheets shall be examined for cracks as follows.

(a) Joints welded with straight chromium stainless steel filler metal shall be examined throughout their full length. The examination shall be by radiographic methods when the chromium stainless steel welds are in continuous contact with the welds in the base metal. Liner welds that are attached to the base metal, but merely cross the seams in the base metal, may be examined by any method that will disclose surface cracks.

(b) Joints welded with austenitic chromium–nickel steel filler metal or non-air-hardening nickel–chromium–iron filler metal shall be given a radiographic spot examination in accordance with UW-52. For lined construction, at least one spot examination shall include a portion of the liner weld that contacts weld metal in the base material.

UCL-40 WELDING PROCEDURES

Welding procedures for corrosion resistant weld overlay, composite (clad) metals, and attachment of applied linings shall be prepared and qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section IX.

UCL-42 ALLOY WELDS IN BASE METAL

Groove joints in base material and parts may be made with corrosion resistant alloy-steel filler metal, or groove joints may be made between corrosion resistant alloy steel and carbon or low alloy steel, provided the welding procedure and the welders have been qualified in accordance with the requirements of Section IX for the combination of materials used. Some applications of this rule are base metal welded with alloy-steel electrodes, and alloy nozzles welded to steel shells.

UCL-46 FILLET WELDS

Fillet welds of corrosion resistant metal deposited in contact with two materials of dissimilar composition may be used for shell joints under the limitations of UW-12, for connection attachments under the limitations of UW-15 and UW-16, and for any other uses permitted by this Division. The qualification of the welding procedures and welders to be used on fillet welds for a given combination of materials and alloy weld metal shall be made in accordance with the rules prescribed in Section IX.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UCL-50 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and vessel parts constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those having applied corrosion resistant linings, and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements for *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection B that pertain to the method of fabrication used.

UCL-51 TIGHTNESS OF APPLIED LINING

A test for tightness of the applied lining that will be appropriate for the intended service is recommended, but the details of the test shall be a matter for agreement between the user and the manufacturer. The test should be such as to assure freedom from damage to the load carrying base material. When rapid corrosion of the base material is to be expected from contact with the contents of the vessel, particular care should be taken in devising and executing the tightness test.

Following the hydrostatic pressure test, the interior of the vessel shall be inspected to determine if there is any seepage of the test fluid through the lining. Seepage of the test fluid behind the applied lining may cause serious damage to the liner when the vessel is put in service. When seepage occurs, F-4 of Appendix F shall be considered and the lining shall be repaired by welding. Repetition of the radiography, and heat treatment, or the hydrostatic test of the vessel after lining repairs is not required except when there is reason to suspect that the repair welds may have defects that penetrate into the base material, in which case the Inspector shall decide which one or more shall be repeated.

UCL-52 HYDROSTATIC TEST

The requirements for standard hydrostatic test in UG-99 shall apply to pressure vessels fabricated in accordance with the rules of Part UCL.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MARKING AND REPORTS

UCL-55 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply to vessels that are constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those having applied corrosion resistant linings, with the following supplements to the Data Reports.

(a) Include specification and type of lining material.

(b) Include applicable paragraph in UCL-23 under which the shell and heads were designed.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UCL-60 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices given in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to welded vessels that are constructed of base material with corrosion resistant integral or weld metal overlay cladding and those having applied corrosion resistant linings.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART UCD
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF CAST DUCTILE IRON

GENERAL

UCD-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UCD are applicable to pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts that are constructed of cast ductile iron,[1] and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast material.

UCD-2 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

Cast ductile iron pressure vessels shall not be used for services as follows:

(a) to contain lethal[2] substances, either liquid or gaseous;

(b) for unfired steam boilers as defined in U-1(g);

(c) for direct firing [see UW-2(d)].

UCD-3 PRESSURE–TEMPERATURE LIMITATIONS

(a) The maximum design temperature shall not be higher than 650°F (345°C). The minimum design temperature shall not be less than −20°F (−29°C), and the design pressure shall not exceed 1,000 psi (7 MPa) unless the requirements in UG-24 for a casting quality factor of 90% are met, and the vessel contains liquids only.

(b) Cast ductile iron flanges and fittings covered by ASME/ANSI B16.42 may be used in whole or as a part of a pressure vessel at the pressure–temperature ratings listed in that standard.

NOTE: Cast ductile iron flanges and fittings conforming in dimension to the Class 125 and 250 American National Standard for cast iron flanges and fittings may be used in whole or as a part of a pressure vessel at the pressure–temperature ratings listed in ASME/ANSI B16.42, except that NPS $3\frac{1}{2}$ and smaller screwed and tapped flanges conforming in dimensions to the Class 125 ASME/ANSI B16.1 for cast iron flanged fittings shall have identical ratings specified in ASME/ANSI B16.1.

(c) Cast ductile iron flanges and fittings, Class 400 and higher, conforming in dimension to the carbon steel pipe flanges and flanged fittings in ASME/ANSI B16.5 may be used in whole or as a part of a pressure vessel at the pressure–temperature ratings for carbon steel, material category 1.4, in that standard provided the temperature is not less than −20°F (−29°C) nor greater than 650°F (345°C) and provided that the pressure does not exceed 1,000 psi (7 MPa).

MATERIALS

UCD-5 GENERAL

All cast ductile iron material subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Table UCD-23 except as otherwise provided in UG-11.

UCD-12 BOLT MATERIALS

The requirements for bolt materials, nuts, and washers shall be the same as for carbon and low alloy steels in UCS-10 and UCS-11.

DESIGN

UCD-16 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts of cast ductile iron and shall be used in conjunction

[1] It is the intent that cast ductile irons with an elongation of less than 15% in 2 in. (50 mm) be treated as cast iron and that vessels or pressure parts of such material be designed and fabricated in accordance with the rules in Part UCI.

[2] By *lethal substances* are meant poisonous gases or liquids of such a nature that a very small amount of the gas or of the vapor of the liquid mixed or unmixed with air is dangerous to life when inhaled. For purposes of this Division, this class includes substances of this nature which are stored under pressure or may generate a pressure if stored in a closed vessel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE UCD-23
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR CAST DUCTILE IRON, ksi (MPa)

Spec. No.	Class	Note	Specified Min. Tensile Strength [Note (1)]	For Metal Temp., °F (°C) Not Exceeding −20 (−29) to 650 (345)	Ext. Pressure Chart Fig. No. [Note (2)]
SA-395	...	(1)	60 (414)	12.0 (82.7)	CD-1

GENERAL NOTE: To these stress values, a quality factor as specified in UG-24 shall be applied.

NOTES:
(1) The yield stresses in compression and tension for cast ductile iron are not sufficiently different to justify an increase in the allowable stress for bending except as permitted in 2-8(a).
(2) Refer to Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D.

with the general requirements for *Design* in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast materials.

For components for which the Code provides no design rules, the provisions of UG-19(b) and (c) apply. If a proof test is performed, the rules of UCD-101 apply.

UCD-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

Table UCD-23 gives the maximum allowable stress values at the temperatures indicated for castings conforming to the Specification listed therein. These stress values shall be limited to the stress values in Table UCD-23 multiplied by the applicable casting quality factor given in UG-24.

UCD-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28, using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and the temperature limits of UG-20(c).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

UCD-32 HEADS WITH PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

Heads with pressure on the concave side (plus heads) shall be designed in accordance with the formulas in UG-32.

UCD-33 HEADS WITH PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

The thickness of heads with pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall not be less than the thickness required in UG-33.

UCD-35 SPHERICALLY SHAPED COVERS (HEADS)

(a) Circular cast ductile iron spherically shaped heads with bolting flanges, similar to Fig. 1-6 sketches (b), (c), and (d) shall be designed in accordance with the provisions in 1-6, except that corners and fillets shall comply with the requirements of UCD-37.

(b) Circular cast ductile iron spherically shaped heads with bolting flanges other than those described in (a) above shall be designed in accordance with the following requirements.

(1) The head thickness shall be determined in accordance with the requirements in UG-32.

(2) The spherical and knuckle radii shall conform to the requirements in UG-32.

(3) Flanges made of cast ductile iron in compliance with SA-395 and conforming in dimensions to American National Standard for carbon steel given in ASME/ ANSI B16.5 may be used at pressures not exceeding 80% of the pressures permitted in those standards at their listed temperatures provided the temperature is not less than −20°F (−29°C) nor greater than 650°F (345°C) and provided that the adjusted service pressure does not exceed 1,000 psi (7 MPa).

NOTE: Cast ductile iron flanges conforming in dimension to the 125 and 250 lb American National Standard for cast iron flanges may be used for pressures not exceeding 80% of the American National Standard pressure ratings for 150 lb and 300 lb carbon steel flanges, respectively, at their listed temperatures provided the temperature is not less than −20°F (−29°C) nor greater than 650°F (345°C), except as in Note to UCD-3(b).

UCD-36 OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS

(a) The dimensional requirements in UG-36 through UG-46 are applicable to cast ductile iron and shall be used in the design of openings and reinforcements in pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts which are cast integrally with the vessel or vessel part. In no case shall the thickness of the reinforcement, including the nominal thickness of the vessel wall, exceed twice the nominal thickness of the vessel wall.

(b) Cast ductile iron flanges, nozzles, and openings shall not be attached to steel or nonferrous pressure vessels or pressure parts by welding or brazing, nor shall

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

they be considered to contribute strength to the vessel or part.

UCD-37 CORNERS AND FILLETS

A liberal radius shall be provided at projecting edges and in reentrant corners in accordance with good foundry practice. Abrupt changes in surface contour and in wall thickness at junctures shall be avoided. Fillets shall conform to the following.

(1) Fillets forming the transition between the pressure containing walls and integral attachments, such as brackets, lugs, supports, nozzles, flanges, and bosses, shall have a radius not less than one-half the thickness of the pressure containing wall adjacent to the attachment.

(2) Transitions between pressure containing walls of different contours shall have a radius not less than three times the thickness of the thinner wall.

FABRICATION

UCD-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts of cast ductile iron and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for *Fabrication* in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast materials.

UCD-78 REPAIRS IN CAST DUCTILE IRON MATERIAL

(a) Imperfections which permit leakage in cast ductile iron materials may be repaired by using threaded plugs provided:

(1) the vessel or vessel parts operate within the temperature limits of UCD-3(a), and the design pressure does not exceed 1,000 psi (7 MPa);

(2) no welding is performed;

(3) the diameter of the plug shall not exceed the diameter of a standard NPS 2 pipe plug;

(4) the plugs, where practical, shall conform in all dimensions to standard NPS pipe plugs, and in addition they shall have full thread engagement corresponding to the thickness of the repaired section. (See Table UCD-78.1.) Where a tapered plug is impractical because of excess wall thickness in terms of plug diameter and coincident thread engagement, other types of plugs may be used provided both full thread engagement and effective sealing against pressure are obtained. Where possible, the ends of the plug should be ground smooth after installation to conform to the inside and outside contours of the walls of the pressure vessel or pressure part;

TABLE UCD-78.1

NPS Plug or Equivalent	Minimum Thickness of Repaired Section, in. (mm)
1/8	11/32 (9)
1/4	7/16 (11)
3/8	1/2 (13)
1/2	21/32 (17)
3/4	3/4 (19)
1	13/16 (21)
1 1/4	7/8 (22)
1 1/2	15/16 (24)
2	1 (25)

TABLE UCD-78.2

NPS Plug or Equivalent	Minimum Radius of Curvature of Cylinder or Cone, in. (mm)
1/8	9/16 (14)
1/4	11/16 (17)
3/8	1 1/16 (27)
1/2	1 1/4 (32)
3/4	2 (50)
1	2 1/2 (64)
1 1/4	4 (100)
1 1/2	5 1/4 (134)
2	8 1/8 (207)

(5) the material from which the plug is manufactured shall conform in all respects to the material specification which applies to the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part;

(6) the machined surface of the drilled or bored hole before tapping shall be free from visible defects and the adjacent metal shown to be sound by radiographic examination;

(7) the thickness of any repaired section in relation to the size of plug used shall not be less than that given in Table UCD-78.1;

(8) the minimum radius of curvature of repaired sections of cylinders or cones in relation to the size of plug used shall not be less than that given in Table UCD-78.2;

(9) the ligament efficiency between any two adjacent plugs shall not be less than 80% where

$$E = \frac{p - \left(\frac{d_1 + d_2}{2}\right)}{p}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

and

E = ligament efficiency
p = distance between plug centers
d_1, d_2 = respective diameters of the two plugs under consideration

(10) the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part meets the standard hydrostatic test prescribed in UCD-99.

(b) Surface imperfections, such as undue roughness, which do not permit leakage in cast ductile iron materials may be repaired using driven plugs provided:

(1) the vessel or vessel parts are to operate within the limits of UCD-3(a);

(2) no welding is performed;

(3) the material from which the plug is manufactured shall conform in all respects to the material specification which applies to the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part;

(4) the depth of the plug is not greater than 20% of the thickness of the section and its diameter is not greater than its engaged length;

(5) the pressure vessel or pressure vessel part meets the standard hydrostatic test prescribed in UCD-99.

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UCD-90 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the inspection and testing of pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts of cast ductile iron and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements of *Inspection and Tests* in Subsection A insofar as these requirements are applicable to cast material.

UCD-99 STANDARD HYDROSTATIC TEST

Cast ductile iron pressure vessels and pressure vessel parts shall be hydrostatically tested by the method prescribed in UG-99 except that the test pressure shall be two times the maximum allowable working pressure.

UCD-101 HYDROSTATIC TEST TO DESTRUCTION

(a) The maximum allowable working pressure of identical cast ductile iron vessels, based on testing one of them to destruction in accordance with UG-101(m), shall be

$$P_R = \left(\frac{P_B f}{5}\right)\left(\frac{\text{Specified min. tensile strength}}{\text{Avg. tensile strength of test specimens}}\right)$$

where

f = casting quality factor as defined in UG-24, which applies only to identical cast ductile iron vessels put into service
P_B = destruction test pressure
P_R = maximum allowable working pressure of identical cast ductile iron vessels

The principle of UG-101(c) shall be followed.

(b) The value of the average tensile strength of test specimens in the foregoing equation shall be determined from the test results of three test bars from the same ladle of iron as used in the part, or from three test specimens cut from the part.

(c) All pressure vessels or pressure vessel parts of the same material, design, and construction, whose maximum allowable working pressure is based on the destruction test of a sample vessel or part, shall be subjected to a hydrostatic test pressure of not less than twice the maximum allowable working pressure determined by the application of the rules in (a).

MARKING AND REPORTS

UCD-115 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and preparing reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of cast ductile iron.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UCD-125 GENERAL

The provisions for the application of pressure relief devices in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to vessels constructed of cast ductile iron.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART UHT
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF FERRITIC STEELS WITH TENSILE PROPERTIES ENHANCED BY HEAT TREATMENT

GENERAL

UHT-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part UHT are applicable to pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of ferritic steels suitable for welding, whose tensile properties have been enhanced by heat treatment, and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements in Subsection A, and with the specific requirements in Part UW of Subsection B. The heat treatment may be applied to the individual parts of a vessel prior to assembly by welding, to partially fabricated components, or to an entire vessel after completion of welding. This part is not intended to apply to those steels approved for use under the rules of Part UCS but which are furnished in such thicknesses that heat treatment involving the use of accelerated cooling, including liquid quenching, is used to attain structures comparable to those attained by normalizing thinner sections. Integrally forged vessels, quenched and tempered, which do not contain welded seams, are not intended to be covered by the rules of this Part.

MATERIALS

UHT-5 GENERAL

(a) Steels covered by this Part subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Table UHT-23.

The thickness limitations of the material specifications shall not be exceeded.

(b) Except when specifically prohibited by this Part [such as in UHT-18 and UHT-28], steels listed in Table UHT-23 may be used for the entire vessel or for individual components which are joined to other Grades listed in that Table or to other steels conforming to specifications listed in Parts UCS or UHA of this Division.

(c) All steels listed in Table UHT-23 shall be tested for notch ductility, as required by UHT-6. These tests shall be conducted at a temperature not warmer than the minimum design metal temperature (see UG-20) but not warmer than +32°F (0°C). Materials may be used at temperatures colder than the minimum design metal temperature as limited in (1) and (2) below.

(1) When the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is 0.35 or less, the corresponding minimum design metal temperature shall not be colder than −155°F (−104°C).

(2) When the coincident ratio defined in Fig. UCS-66.1 is greater than 0.35, the corresponding minimum design metal temperature shall not be colder than the impact test temperature less the allowable temperature reduction permitted in Fig. UCS-66.1 and shall in no case be colder than −155°F (−104°C).

(d) All test specimens shall be prepared from the material in its final heat treated condition or from full-thickness samples of the same heat similarly and simultaneously treated. Test samples shall be of such size that the prepared test specimens are free from any change in properties due to edge effects. When the material is clad or weld deposit overlayed by the producer or fabricator prior to quench and temper treatments, the full thickness samples shall be clad or weld deposit overlayed before such heat treatments.

(e) Where the vessel or vessel parts are to be hot formed or postweld heat treated (stress relieved), this identical heat treatment shall be applied to the test specimens required by the material specifications including the cooling rate specified by the fabricator which shall in no case be slower than that specified in the applicable material specification.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

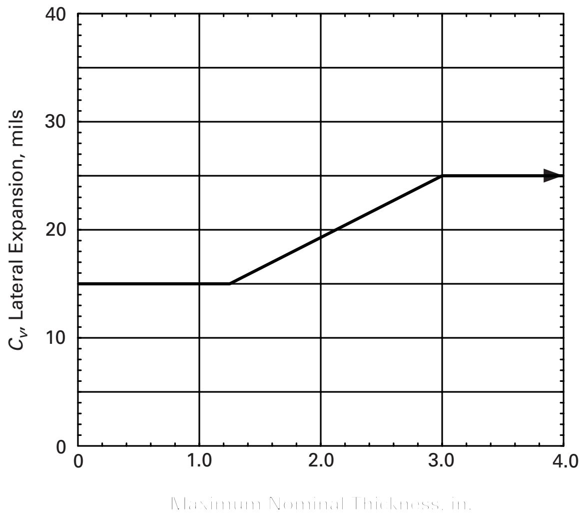


FIG. UHT-6.1 CHARPY V-NOTCH IMPACT TEST REQUIREMENTS
For Table UCS-23 Materials Having a Specified Minimum Tensile Strength of 95,000 psi or Greater, and for Table UHT-23 Materials

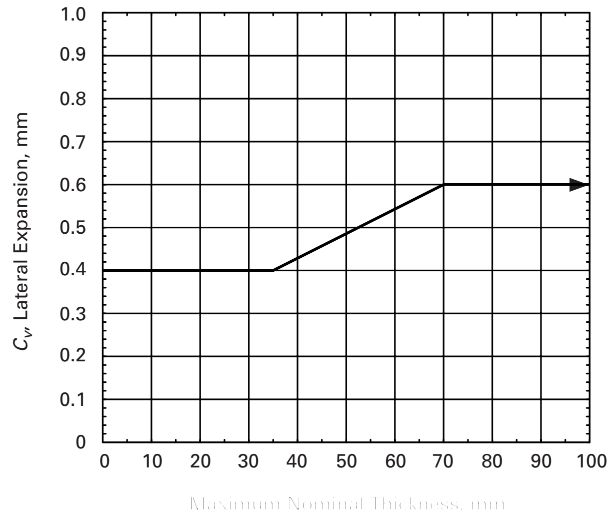


FIG. UHT-6.1M CHARPY V-NOTCH IMPACT TEST REQUIREMENTS
For Table UCS-23 Materials Having a Specified Minimum Tensile Strength of 655 MPa or Greater, and for Table UHT-23 Materials

(f) All material shall be heat treated in accordance with the applicable material specifications.

UHT-6 TEST REQUIREMENTS

(a)(1) One Charpy V-notch test (three specimens) shall be made from each plate as heat treated, and from each heat of bars, pipe, tube, rolled sections, forged parts, or castings included in any one heat treatment lot.

(2) The test procedures, and size, location and orientation of the specimens shall be the same as required by UG-84 except that for plates the specimens shall be oriented transverse to the final direction of rolling and for circular forgings the specimens shall be oriented tangential to the circumference.

(3) Each of the three specimens tested shall have a lateral expansion opposite the notch not less than the requirements shown in Fig. UHT-6.1.

(4) If the value of lateral expansion for one specimen is less than that required in Fig. UHT-6.1 but not less than $\frac{2}{3}$ of the required value, a retest of three additional specimens may be made, each of which must be equal to or greater than the required value in Fig. UHT-6.1. Such a retest shall be permitted only when the average value of the three specimens is equal to or greater than the required value in Fig. UHT-6.1. If the values required are not obtained in the retest or if the values in the initial test are less than the values required for retest, the material may be reheat treated. After reheat treatment, a set of three specimens shall be made, each of which must be equal to or greater than the required value in Fig. UHT-6.1.

(b) Materials conforming to SA-353 and SA-553 for use at minimum design metal temperatures colder than −320°F (−196°C), materials conforming to SA-508, SA-517, SA-543, and SA-592 for use at minimum design metal temperatures colder than −20°F (−29°C), and materials conforming to SA-645 for use at minimum design metal temperatures colder than −275°F (−171°C) shall have, in addition to the Charpy tests required under UHT-6(a), drop-weight tests as defined by ASTM E 208, Conducting Drop-Weight Tests to Determine Nil Ductility Transition Temperatures of Ferritic Steels, made as follows.

(1) For plates $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) thick and over, one drop-weight test (two specimens) shall be made for each plate as heat treated.

(2) For forgings and castings of all thicknesses, one drop-weight test (two specimens) shall be made for each heat in any one heat treatment lot using the procedure in SA-350 for forgings and in SA-352 for castings.

(3) Each of the two test specimens shall meet the "no-break" criterion, as defined by ASTM E 208, at test temperature.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

DESIGN

UHT-16 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of heat treated steels covered by this Part and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for Design in Subsection A and in Subsection B, Part UW.

UHT-17 WELDED JOINTS

(a) In vessels or vessel parts constructed of heat treated steels covered by this Part *except as permitted in (b) below,* all joints of Categories A, B, and C, as defined in UW-3, and all other welded joints between parts of the pressure containing enclosure which are not defined by the category designation, shall be in accordance with Type No. (1) of Table UW-12. All joints of Category D shall be in accordance with Type No. (1) of Table UW-12 and Fig. UHT-18.1 when the shell plate thickness is 2 in. (50 mm) or less. When the thickness exceeds 2 in. (50 mm), the weld detail may be as permitted for nozzles in Fig. UHT-18.1 and Fig. UHT-18.2.

(b) For materials SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334 Grade 8, SA-353, SA-522, SA-553, and SA-645, the joints of various Categories (see UW-3) shall be as follows.

(1) All joints of Category A shall be Type No. (1) of Table UW-12.

(2) All joints of Category B shall be Type No. (1) or (2) of Table UW-12.

(3) All joints of Category C shall be full penetration welds extending through the entire section at the joint.

(4) All joints of Category D attaching a nozzle neck to the vessel wall and to a reinforcing pad, if used, shall be full penetration groove welds.

UHT-18 NOZZLES

(a) All openings regardless of size shall meet the requirements for reinforcing, nozzle geometry, and nozzle attachments and shall conform to details shown in Fig. UHT-18.1 or as shown in Fig. UHT-18.2 or sketch (y-l) or (z-l) in Fig. UW-16.1 when permitted by the provisions of UHT-17(a), or as shown in Fig. UW-16.1 when permitted by the provisions of UHT-17(b).

(b) Except for nozzles covered in (c) below, all nozzles and reinforcement pads shall be made of material with a specified minimum yield strength within ±20% of that of the shell to which they are attached; however, pipe flanges, pipe, or communicating chambers may be of carbon, low, or high alloy steel welded to nozzle necks of the required material provided:

(1) the joint is a circumferential butt weld located not less than $\sqrt{Rt_n}$ which, except for the nozzle type shown in Fig. UHT-18.1 sketch (f), is measured from the limit of reinforcement as defined in UG-40. For Fig. UHT-18.1 sketch (f), the $\sqrt{Rt_n}$ is measured as shown on that Figure. In these equations,

R = inside radius of the nozzle neck except for Fig. UHT-18.1 sketch (f) where it is the inside radius of the vessel opening as shown in that Figure

t_n = nominal thickness of the nozzle

(2) the design of the nozzle neck at the joint is made on the basis of the allowable stress value of the weaker material;

(3) the slope of the nozzle neck does not exceed three to one for at least a distance of $1.5t_n$ from the center of the joint;

(4) the diameter of the nozzle neck does not exceed the limits given in 1-7 for openings designed to UG-36 through UG-44.

(c) Nozzles of nonhardenable austenitic-type stainless steel may be used in vessels constructed of steels conforming to SA-353, SA-553 Types I and II, or SA-645 provided the construction meets all of the following conditions.

(1) The nozzles are nonhardenable austenitic-type stainless steel conforming to one of the following specifications: SA-182, SA-213, SA-240, SA-312, SA-336, SA-403, SA-430, or SA-479.

(2) The maximum nozzle size is limited to NPS 4.

(3) None of the nozzles is located in a Category A or B joint.

(4) The nozzles are located so that the reinforcement area of one nozzle does not overlap the reinforcement area of an adjacent nozzle.

UHT-19 CONICAL SECTIONS

Conical sections shall be provided with a skirt having a length not less than $0.50\sqrt{rt}$ (where r is the inside radius of the adjacent cylinder and t is the thickness of the cone), or $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm) whichever is larger. A knuckle shall be provided at both ends of the conical section; the knuckle radius shall not be less than 10% of the outside diameter of the skirt, but in no case less than three times the cone thickness.

UHT-20 JOINT ALIGNMENT

The requirements of UW-33 shall be met except that the following maximum permissible offset values shall be used in place of those given in UW-33(a):

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

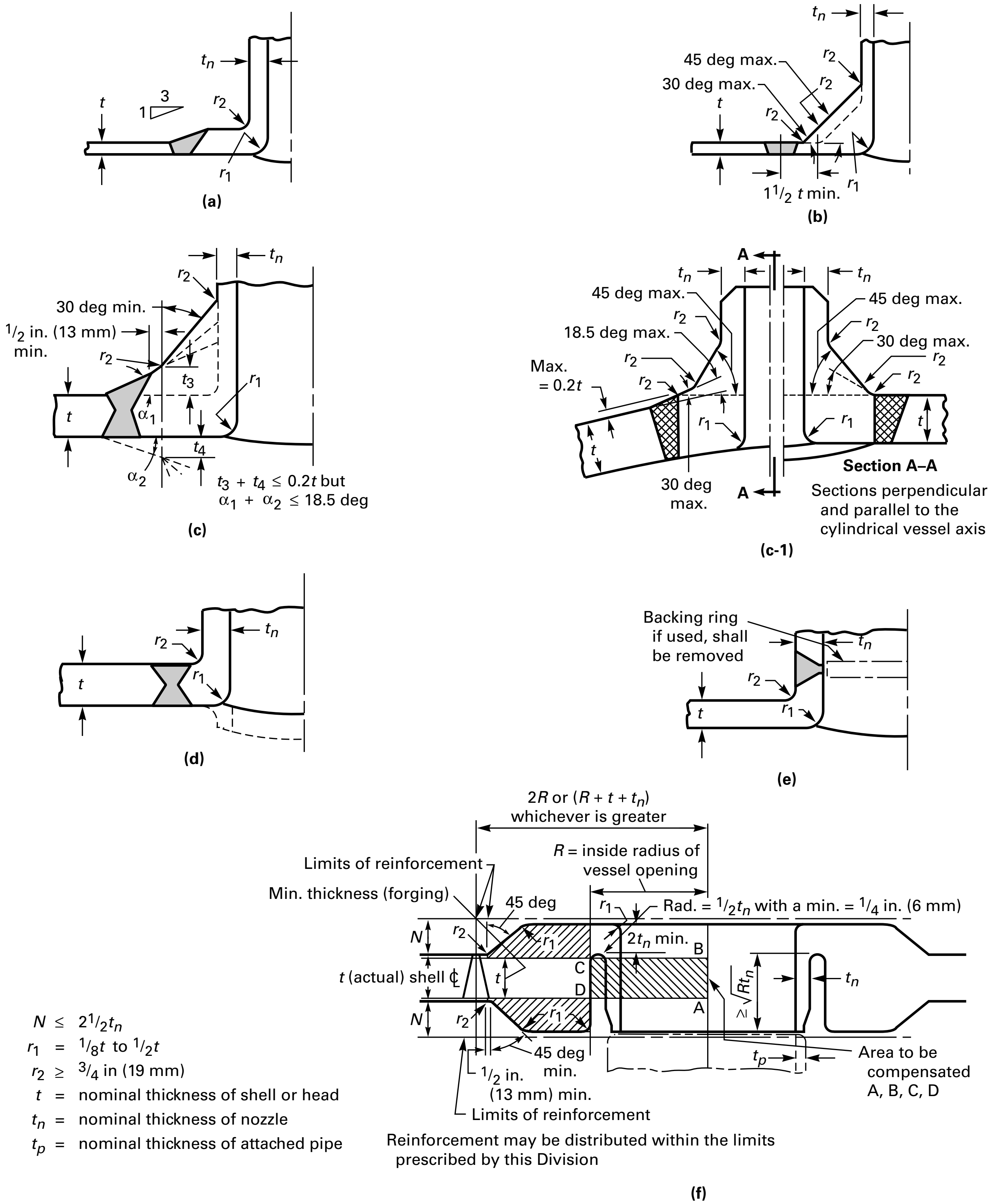
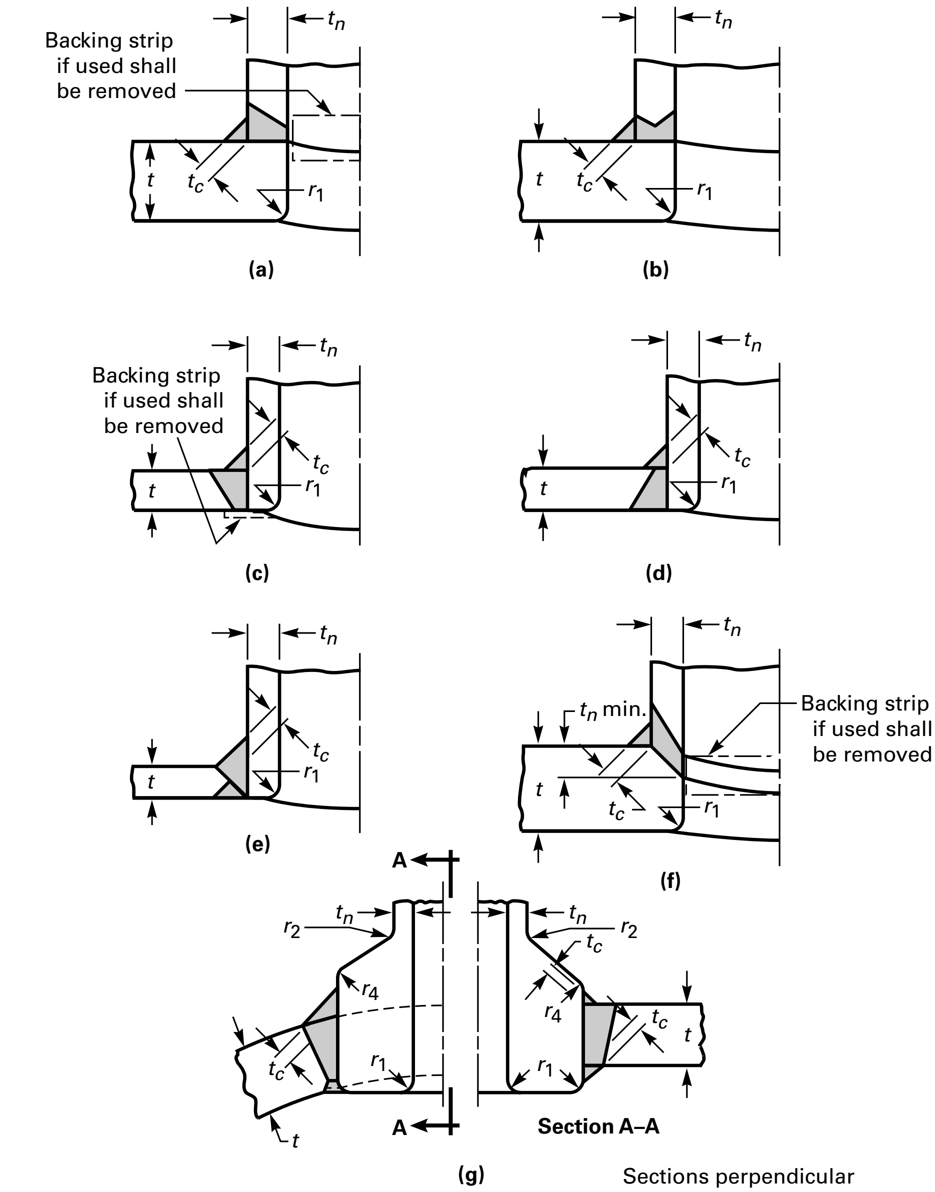


FIG. UHT-18.1 ACCEPTABLE WELDED NOZZLE ATTACHMENT READILY RADIOGRAPHED TO CODE STANDARDS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



r_1 = $^1/_8 t$ to $^1/_2 t$
$r_2 \geq$ $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm)
$r_4 \geq$ $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm)
t = nominal thickness of shell or head
$t_c \geq$ $0.7t_n$ or $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm), whichever is less
t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle

FIG. UHT-18.2 ACCEPTABLE FULL PENETRATION WELDED NOZZLE ATTACHMENTS RADIOGRAPHABLE WITH DIFFICULTY AND GENERALLY REQUIRING SPECIAL TECHNIQUES INCLUDING MULTIPLE EXPOSURES TO TAKE CARE OF THICKNESS VARIATIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UHT-23
FERRITIC STEELS WITH PROPERTIES ENHANCED BY HEAT TREATMENT

Spec. No.	Type/Grade	Spec. No.	Type/Grade
SA-333	8	SA-522	I
SA-334	8	SA-533	B Cl. 3, D Cl. 3
SA-353	. . .	SA-543	B, C
SA-420	WPL8	SA-553	I, II
SA-487	4 Cl. B & E, CA6NM Cl. A	SA-592	A, E, F
SA-508	4N Cls. 1, 2	SA-645	. . .
SA-517	A, B, E, F, J, P	SA-724	A, B, C

GENERAL NOTE: Maximum allowable stress values in tension for the materials listed in the above table are contained in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UG-23).

Section Thickness, in. (mm)	Joint Direction	
	Longitudinal	Circumferential
Up to $\frac{1}{2}$ (13), incl.	$0.2t$	$0.2t$
Over $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{15}{16}$ (13 to 24), incl.	$\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm)	$0.2t$
Over $\frac{15}{16}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ (24 to 38), incl.	$\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm)	$\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm)
Over $1\frac{1}{2}$ (38)	$\frac{3}{32}$ in. (2.5 mm)	Lesser of $\frac{1}{8}t$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)

UHT-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

(a) Table 1A of Section II, Part D gives the maximum allowable stress values at the temperatures indicated for materials conforming to the specifications listed therein. Values may be interpolated for intermediate temperatures (see UG-23). For vessels designed to operate at a temperature colder than −20°F (−29°C), the allowable stress values to be used in design shall not exceed those given for temperatures of −20°F (−29°C) to 100°F (38°C).

(b) Shells of pressure vessels may be made from welded pipe or tubing listed in Table 1A.

UHT-25 CORROSION ALLOWANCE

Provision for possible deterioration due to the environment in which the vessel operates is the responsibility of the designer.

UHT-27 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28, using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D and the temperature limits of UG-20(c).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of the charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

UHT-28 STRUCTURAL ATTACHMENTS AND STIFFENING RINGS

(a) Except as permitted in (b) below, all structural attachments and stiffening rings which are welded directly to pressure parts shall be made of materials of specified minimum yield strength within ±20% of that of the material to which they are attached.

(b) All permanent structural attachments welded directly to shells or heads constructed of materials conforming to SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334 Grade 8, SA-353, SA-522, SA-553, and SA-645 shall be of the material covered by these specifications or austenitic stainless steel of the type which cannot be hardened by heat treatment. If suitable austenitic stainless steel is used for permanent attachments, consideration should be given to the greater coefficient of expansion of the austenitic stainless steel.

UHT-29 STIFFENING RINGS FOR SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Rules covering the design of stiffening rings are given in UG-29. The design shall be based on the appropriate

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

figure in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material used in the ring.

UHT-30 ATTACHMENT OF STIFFENING RINGS TO SHELLS

Rules covering the attachment of stiffening rings are given in UG-30. Attachments shall be made using a welding procedure qualified to Section IX for vessels constructed to Part UHT.

UHT-32 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONCAVE SIDE

Except as provided in UG-32(e) and 1-4(c) and (d), formed heads shall be limited to ellipsoidal and/or hemispherical heads designed in accordance with UG-32(d) or (f).

UHT-33 FORMED HEADS, PRESSURE ON CONVEX SIDE

Ellipsoidal, hemispherical, and conical heads having pressure on the convex side (minus heads) shall be designed by the rules of UG-33, using the applicable external pressure charts referenced in Table 1A of Section II, Part D and given in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D.

UHT-34 HEMISPHERICAL HEADS

When hemispherical heads are used, the head-to-shell transition of Fig. UW-13.1 sketch (l) or Fig. UW-13.1 sketch (n) shall be used. When the weld is in or adjacent to the tapered section, it shall be finished in a manner that will maintain the required uniform slope for the full length of the tapered section.

UHT-40 MATERIALS HAVING DIFFERENT COEFFICIENTS OF EXPANSION

When welding materials with austenitic electrodes, the differences between the coefficients of expansion and the strengths of the base material and the weld metal should be carefully considered, particularly for applications involving cyclic stresses.

UHT-56 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) Before applying the detailed requirements and exemptions in these paragraphs, satisfactory weld procedure qualifications of the procedures to be used shall be performed in accordance with all of the variables in Section IX including conditions of postweld heat treatment or lack of postweld heat treatment and including restrictions listed below. When determining the thickness requiring postweld treatment in Table UHT-56 for clad or weld deposit overlayed vessels or parts of vessels, the total thickness of the material, including the clad and weld deposit overlay, shall be employed.

(b) Vessels or vessel parts constructed of steels listed in Table UHT-23 shall be postweld heat treated when required in Table UHT-56, except that postweld heat treatment shall be required for all thicknesses when joining the materials with the inertia and continuous drive friction welding processes.

(c) Postweld heat treatment shall be performed in accordance with UCS-56 as modified by the requirements of Table UHT-56. In no case shall the PWHT temperature exceed the tempering temperature. PWHT and tempering may be accomplished concurrently. The maximum cooling rate established in UCS-56(e)(5) need not apply. Where accelerated cooling from the tempering temperature is required by the material specification, the same minimum cooling rate shall apply to PWHT.

(d) All welding of connections and attachments shall be postweld heat treated whenever required by Table UHT-56 based on the greatest thickness of material at the point of attachment of the head or shell [see UHT-56(b) and (c)].

(e) When material of SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334 Grade 8, SA-353, SA-522, SA-553, and SA-645 are postweld heat treated, the complete vessel or vessel component being so heat treated shall be maintained within the permissible temperature range defined in Table UHT-56.

UHT-57 EXAMINATION

(a) Radiography. Radiographic examination for the complete length of weld in accordance with the requirements of UW-51 is required for all welded joints of Type No. (1) of Table UW-12. The required radiographic examination shall be made after any corrosion-resistant alloy cover weld has been deposited.

(b) Nozzle Attachment Welds. Nozzle attachment welds as provided for in UHT-18, Figs. UHT-18.1 and UHT-18.2 shall be radiographically examined in accordance with the requirements of UW-51, except that Fig. UHT-18.2 type nozzles having an inside diameter of 2 in. (51 mm) or less shall be examined by a magnetic particle or liquid penetrant method. For nozzle attachments illustrated as sketches (a), (b), and (f) of Fig. UHT-18.2, the exposed cross section of the vessel wall at the opening shall be included in the examination.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UHT-56
POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR MATERIALS IN TABLE UHT-23

Spec. No.	Grade or Type	P-No./ Gr. No.	Nominal Thickness Requiring PWHT, in. (mm)		Notes	PWHT Temp., °F (°C)	Holding Time hr/in. (25 mm)	Holding Time Minimum, hr
Plate Steels								
SA-353	9Ni	11A/1	Over 2	(50)	...	1,025–1,085 (550–585)	1	2
SA-517	Grade A	11B/1	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-517	Grade B	11B/4	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-517	Grade E	11B/2	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-517	Grade F	11B/3	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-517	Grade J	11B/6	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-517	Grade P	11B/8	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-533	Types B, D, Cl. 3	11A/4	Over 0.58	(15)	...	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1/2	1/2
SA-543	Types B, C, Cl. 1	11A/5	...	...	(1)	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1
SA-543	Types B, C, Cl. 2	11B/10	...	...	(1)	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1
SA-543	Types B, C, Cl. 3	11A/5	...	...	(1)	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1
SA-553	Types I, II	11A/1	Over 2	(50)	...	1,025–1,085 (550–585)	1	2
SA-645	5Ni–1/4Mo	11A/2	Over 2	(50)	...	1,025–1,085 (550–585)	1	2
SA-724	Grade A, B	1/4	None		...	NA	NA	NA
SA-724	Grade C	1/4	Over 1 1/2	(38)	...	1,050–1,150 (565–620)	1	1/2
Castings								
SA-487	Class 4B	11A/3	Over 0.58	(15)	...	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1/4
SA-487	Class 4E	11A/3	Over 0.58	(15)	...	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1/4
SA-487	Class CA 6NM	6/4	Over 0.58	(15)	...	1,050–1,150 (565–620)	1	1/4
Pipes and Tubes								
SA-333	Grade 8	11A/1	Over 2	(50)	...	1,025–1,085 (550–585)	1	2
SA-334	Grade 8	11A/1	Over 2	(50)	...	1,025–1,085 (550–585)	1	2
Forgings								
SA-508	Grade 4N Cl. 1	11A/5	...	...	(1)	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1
SA-508	Grade 4N Cl. 2	11A/5	...	...	(1)	1,000–1,050 (540–565)	1	1
SA-522	Type I	11A/1	Over 2	(50)	...	1,025–1,085 (550–585)	1	2
SA-592	Grade A	11B/1	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-592	Grade E	11B/2	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4
SA-592	Grade F	11B/3	Over 0.58	(15)	(2)	1,000–1,100 (540–595)	1	1/4

GENERAL NOTE: NA = not applicable.

NOTES:
(1) PWHT is neither required nor prohibited. Consideration should be given to the possibility of temper embrittlement. The cooling rate from PWHT, when used, shall not be slower than that obtained by cooling in still air.
(2) See UHT-82(f).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(c) All corrosion resistant overlay weld deposits shall be examined by the liquid penetrant method.

(d) Magnetic Particle Method. All welds, including welds for attaching nonpressure parts to heat treated steels covered by this Part, shall be examined by the magnetic particle method after the hydrostatic test, except that those surfaces not accessible after the hydrostatic test shall be examined by the magnetic particle method at the last feasible stage of vessel fabrication. A magnetization method shall be used that will avoid arc strikes. Cracks shall be repaired or removed.

(e) Liquid Penetrant Method. As an acceptable alternative to magnetic particle examination or when magnetic particle methods are not feasible because of the nonmagnetic character of the weld deposits, a liquid penetrant method shall be used. For vessels constructed of SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334 Grade 8, SA-353, SA-522, SA-553 Grades A and B, and SA-645 materials, welds not examined radiographically shall be examined by the liquid penetrant method either before or after the hydrotest. Cracks are unacceptable and shall be repaired or removed. Relevant indications are those which result from imperfections. Linear indications are those indications in which the length is more than three times the width. Any relevant linear indications greater than $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) shall be repaired or removed.

FABRICATION

UHT-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of heat treated steels covered by this Part and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for fabrication in Subsection A, and, when applicable, with the specific requirements for fabrication in Subsection B, Part UW.

UHT-79 FORMING SHELL SECTIONS AND HEADS

(a) The selected thickness of material shall be such that the forming processes will not reduce the thickness of the material at any point below the minimum value required by the rules.

(1) Pieces that are formed after heat treatment at a temperature lower than the final tempering shall be heat treated in accordance with Table UHT-56 when the extreme fiber elongation from forming exceeds 5% as determined by the formulas in UCS-79(d).

(2) Pieces that are formed at temperatures equal to or higher than the original tempering shall be reheat treated in accordance with the applicable material specification, either before or after welding into the vessel.

UHT-80 HEAT TREATMENT

(a) Heating Furnace. Furnaces for heating, for quenching, for normalizing, and for tempering shall be provided with suitable equipment for the automatic recording of temperatures. The temperature of the vessel or vessel part during the holding period shall be recorded and shall be controlled within ±25°F (±15°C).

(b) Liquid quenching of flat plates and individual parts shall be done as required by the applicable material specifications.

(c) Formed plates for shell sections and heads may be quenched by sprays or immersion.

(d) Entire vessels, after completion of all welding operations, may be quenched by sprays or immersion.

(e) The design and operation of spray equipment and the size of tanks and provision for forced circulation shall be such as to produce a severity of quench in the quenched item sufficient to meet, in representative test specimens after tempering, the requirements of the materials specifications.

UHT-81 HEAT TREATMENT VERIFICATION TESTS

(a) Tests shall be made to verify that the heat treatments, and subsequent thermal treatments, performed by the fabricator have produced the required properties.

(b) One or more test coupons representative of the material and the welding in each vessel or vessel component shall be heat treated with the vessel or vessel component.

The requirements of (c) and (d) below are to be taken as minimum steps toward these objectives.

(c)(1) One or more test coupons from each lot of material in each vessel [see UHT-81(d)] shall be quenched with the vessel or vessel component. A lot is defined as material from the same melt, quenched or normalized simultaneously and whose thicknesses are within plus or minus 20% or $^1/_2$ in. (13 mm) of nominal thickness, whichever is smaller. The test coupons shall be so proportionated that tensile and impact tests may be taken from the same locations relative to thickness as are required by the applicable material specifications. Weld metal tests shall be taken from the same locations relative to thickness as are required by the materials specifications for plates used in the component to be treated. The gage length of tensile specimens and the middle third of the length of impact specimens must be located at a minimum

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

distance of 1 × t from the quenched edge and/or end of the test coupon, where t is the thickness of the material which the test coupon represents. If desired, the effect of this distance may be achieved by temporary attachment of suitable thermal buffers. The effectiveness of such buffers shall be demonstrated by tests.

(2) In cases where the test coupon is not attached to the part being treated, it shall be quenched from the same heat treatment charge and under the conditions as the part which it represents. It shall be so proportioned that test specimens may be taken from the locations prescribed in (1) above.

(d) Tempering

(1) Attached Test Coupons. The coupons shall remain attached to the vessel or vessel component during tempering, except that any thermal buffers may be removed after quenching. After the tempering operation and after removal from the component, the coupon shall be subjected to the same thermal treatment(s), if any, to which the vessel or vessel component will be later subjected. The holding time at temperature shall not be less than that applied to the vessel or vessel component (except that the total time at each temperature may be applied in one heating cycle) and the cooling rate shall be no faster.

(2) Separate Test Coupons. Test coupons which are quenched separately as described in (c)(2) above shall be tempered similarly and simultaneously with the vessel or component which they represent. The conditions for subjecting the test coupons to subsequent thermal treatment(s) shall be as described in (c)(1) above.

(e) Number of Tests. One tensile test and one impact test shall be made on material from coupons representing each lot of material in each vessel or vessel component heat treated. A lot is defined as material from the same melt quenched simultaneously and whose thicknesses are within plus or minus 20%, or ½ in. (13 mm), of nominal thickness, whichever is smaller.

(1) Coupons not containing welds shall meet the complete tensile requirements of the material specification and impact requirements of this part.

(2) Coupons containing weld metal shall be tested across the weld and shall meet the ultimate tensile strength requirements of the material specifications; in addition, the minimum impact requirements shall be met by samples with notches in the weld metal. The form and dimension of the tensile test specimen shall conform to QW-462.1(d) of Section IX. Yield strength and elongation are not a requirement of this test. Charpy impact testing shall be in accordance with the requirements of UHT-6.

UHT-82 WELDING

UHT-82(a) The qualification of the welding procedure and the welders shall conform to the requirements of Section IX, and such qualification tests shall be performed on postweld heat treated specimens when a postweld heat treatment is used.

UHT-82(b) Filler metal containing more than 0.06% vanadium shall not be used for weldments subject to postweld heat treatment.

UHT-82(c) For welded vessels in which the welds are not subject to quenching and tempering, the deposited weld metal and the heat affected zone shall meet the impact test requirements of UG-84, except that the Charpy V-notch tests and requirements of UHT-6(a) shall apply.

UHT-82(d) The following materials are exempt from production impact tests of the weld metal in accordance with UG-84 under the conditions given in (1) through (5) below:

Specification No.	UNS No.	P-No./Group No.
SA-353	K81340	11A/1
SA-522 Type I	K81340	11A/1
SA-553 Type I	K81340	11A/1
SA-553 Type II	K71340	11A/1
SA-645	K41583	11A/2

UHT-82(d)(1) One of the following high nickel alloy filler metals is used:

Specification No.	Classification	F-No.
SFA-5.11	ENiCrMo-3	43
SFA-5.11	ENiCrMo-6	43
SFA-5.11	ENiCrFe-2	43
SFA-5.11	ENiCrFe-3	43
SFA-5.14	ERNiCr-3	43
SFA-5.14	ERNiCrFe-6	43
SFA-5.14	ERNiCrMo-3	43
SFA-5.14	ERNiCrMo-4	44

UHT-82(d)(2) All required impact tests shall be performed as part of the procedure qualification tests as specified in UG-84.

UHT-82(d)(3) Production impact tests of the heat affected zone are performed in accordance with UG-84(i).

UHT-82(d)(4) The welding processes are limited to gas metal arc, shielded metal arc, and gas tungsten arc.

UHT-82(d)(5) The minimum allowable temperature of the vessel shall be not less than −320°F (−195°C).

UHT-82(e) For materials SA-508 and SA-543, the following, in addition to the variables in Section IX, QW-250, shall be considered as essential variables requiring requalification of the welding procedure:

UHT-82(e)(1) a change in filler metal SFA classification or to weld metal not covered by an SFA specification;

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHT-82(e)(2) an increase in the maximum interpass temperature or a decrease in the minimum specified preheat temperature. The specified range between the preheat and interpass temperatures shall not exceed 150°F (85°C).

UHT-82(e)(3) a change in the heat treatment (Procedure qualification tests shall be subjected to heat treatment essentially equivalent to that encountered in fabrication of the vessel or vessel parts including the maximum total aggregate time at temperature or temperatures and cooling rates.)

UHT-82(e)(4) a change in the type of current (AC or DC), polarity, or a change in the specified range for amp, volt, or travel speed;

UHT-82(e)(5) a change in the thickness T of the welding procedure qualification test plate as follows:

(a) for welded joints which are quenched and tempered after welding, any increase in thickness [the minimum thickness qualified in all cases is $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)];

(b) for welded joints which are not quenched and tempered after welding, any change as follows:

T less than $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm)	Any decrease in thickness (the maximum thickness qualified is $2T$)
$\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) and over	Any departure from the range of $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) to $2T$

UHT-82(e)(6) consumables control, drying, storage, and exposure requirements shall be in accordance with the following:

(a) due consideration shall be given to protection of electrodes and fluxes for all welding processes in order to minimize moisture absorption and surface contamination;

(b) electrodes for shielded metal arc welding shall be low-hydrogen type conforming to SFA-5.5. Electrodes shall be purchased or conditioned so as to have a coating moisture content not greater than 0.2% by weight. Once opened, electrode storage and handling must be controlled so as to minimize absorption of moisture from the ambient atmosphere. Practices used for controlling the moisture content shall be developed by the vessel manufacturer or those recommended by the electrode manufacturer.

UHT-82(e)(7) preheat shall be 100°F (38°C) minimum for material thickness up to and including $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm); 200°F (95°C) minimum for material above $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) to and including $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm); 300°F (150°C) minimum above $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. (38 mm). Preheat temperature shall be maintained for a minimum of 2 hr after completion of the weld joint.

UHT-82(f) For SA-517 and SA-592 materials the requirements of (e)(1), (2), (3), (4), and (6), in addition to the variables in Section IX, QW-250, shall be considered as essential variables requiring requalification of the welding procedure.

UHT-82(g) The PWHT as required by Table UHT-56 may be waived for SA-517 and SA-592 materials with a nominal thickness over 0.58 in. to $1\frac{1}{4}$ in. (15 mm to 32 mm), inclusive, provided the following conditions are met:

UHT-82(g)(1) a minimum preheat of 200°F (95°C) and a maximum interpass of 400°F (205°C) is used;

UHT-82(g)(2) after completion of welding and without allowing the weldment to cool below the minimum preheat temperature, the temperature of the weldment is raised to a minimum of 400°F (205°C) and maintained at that temperature for at least 4 hr; and

UHT-82(g)(3) all welds are examined by nondestructive examination in accordance with the provisions of this Part.

UHT-83 METHODS OF METAL REMOVAL

(a) Plate edges, welding bevels, chamfering and other operations involving the removal of metal shall be by machining, chipping, or grinding except as provided in (b) below.

(b) When metal removal is accomplished by methods involving melting, such as gas cutting or arc-air gouging, etc., it shall be done with due precautions to avoid cracking. Where the cut surfaces are not to be subsequently eliminated by fusion with weld deposits, they shall be removed by machining or grinding to a depth of at least $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) followed by inspection by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods.

CAUTIONARY NOTE: The properties of the base metal may be adversely affected by excessive local heat inputs.

UHT-84 WELD FINISH

The requirements of UW-35(a) and UW-51(b) shall be met except that for SA-517 material the maximum weld reinforcement shall not exceed 10% of the plate thickness or $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3.0 mm), whichever is less. The edge of the weld deposits shall merge smoothly into the base metal without undercuts or abrupt transitions; this requirement shall apply to fillet and groove welds as well as to butt welds.

UHT-85 STRUCTURAL AND TEMPORARY WELDS

(a) Welds for pads, lifting lugs and other nonpressure parts, as well as temporary lugs for alignment, shall be

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

made by qualified welders in full compliance with a qualified welding procedure.

(b) Temporary welds shall be removed and the metal surface shall be restored to a smooth contour. The area shall be inspected by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant method for the detection and elimination of cracks. If repair welding is required, it shall be in accordance with qualified procedures, and the finished weld surface shall be inspected as required in UHT-57(b) or (c). Temporary welds and repair welds shall be considered the same as all other welds so far as requirements for qualified operators and procedures and for heat treatment are concerned.

UHT-86 MARKING ON PLATES AND OTHER MATERIALS

Any steel stamping shall be done with "low stress" stamps as commercially available. Steel stamping of all types may be omitted on material below $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) in thickness. For the use of other markings in lieu of stamping, see UG-77(b).

INSPECTION AND TESTS

UHT-90 GENERAL

The provisions for inspection and testing in Subsections A and B shall apply to vessels and vessel parts constructed of steels covered by this Part.

MARKING AND REPORTS

UHT-115 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply to pressure vessels constructed in whole or in part of steels covered by this Part, except that the use of nameplates is mandatory for shell thicknesses below $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm). Nameplates are preferred on vessels constructed of steels covered by this Part in all thicknesses in preference to stamping. In addition to the required marking, the letters UHT shall be applied below the U Symbol.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

UHT-125 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices in UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply without supplement to pressure vessels constructed in whole or in part of steels covered by this Part.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART ULW
REQUIREMENTS FOR PRESSURE VESSELS FABRICATED BY LAYERED CONSTRUCTION

INTRODUCTION

The rules in Section VIII, Divisions 1 and 2 to cover the construction of layered vessels have been developed to parallel each other as far as can be done within the parameters of each Division. The design criteria may influence the selection of the Division. There are several manufacturing techniques used to fabricate layered vessels, and these rules have been developed to cover most techniques used today for which there is extensive documented construction and operational data. Some acceptable layered shell types are shown in Fig. ULW-2.1. Some acceptable layered head types are shown in Fig. ULW-2.2.

ULW-1 SCOPE

The rules in Part ULW are applicable to pressure vessels or parts thereof fabricated by layered construction as defined in 3-2 and ULW-2. These rules shall be used in conjunction with the requirements of Subsections A, B, and C, except for directly fired vessels described in UW-2(d) in Subsection B and except for Parts UCI and UCD in Subsection C, or except as otherwise required in this Part. The requirements for vessels that are to contain lethal substances, UW-2(a), apply only to the inner shell and the inner heads. Brazing of layered parts is not permitted except for the inner shell, inner head, and special solid wall fittings. The Manufacturer's Quality Control System as required by U-2(h) and Appendix 10 shall include the construction procedure that will outline the sequence and method of application of layers and measurement of layer gaps.

ULW-2 NOMENCLATURE

The following terms are used in Part ULW relative to layered vessels.

(a) Layered Vessel. A vessel having a shell and/or heads made up of two or more separate layers;

(b) Inner Shell. The inner cylinder which forms the pressure tight membrane;

(c) Inner Head. The inner head which forms the pressure tight membrane;

(d) Shell Layer. Layers may be cylinders formed from plate, sheet, or forging, or the equivalent formed by coiling, or by helically wound interlocking strips. (This does not include wire winding.)

(e) Head Layer. Any one of the head layers of a layered vessel except the inner head;

(f) Overwraps. Layers added to the basic shell or head thickness for the purpose of building up the thickness of a layered vessel for reinforcing shell or head openings, or making a transition to thicker sections of the layered vessel;

(g) Dummy Layer. A layer used as a filler between the inner shell (or inner head) and other layers, and not considered as part of the required total thickness.

MATERIAL

ULW-5 GENERAL

Material used for pressure parts shall conform to one of the specifications permitted in the applicable Parts of Subsections A, B, and C, except for 5%, 8%, and 9% nickel steel materials which are permitted only for inner shells and inner heads. For helically wound interlocking strip vessels where the mechanical properties of the material are enhanced by heat treatment during the fabrication process, the test specimens shall be taken from prolongations of the strip material after winding and after heat treatment. See Appendix 29.

DESIGN

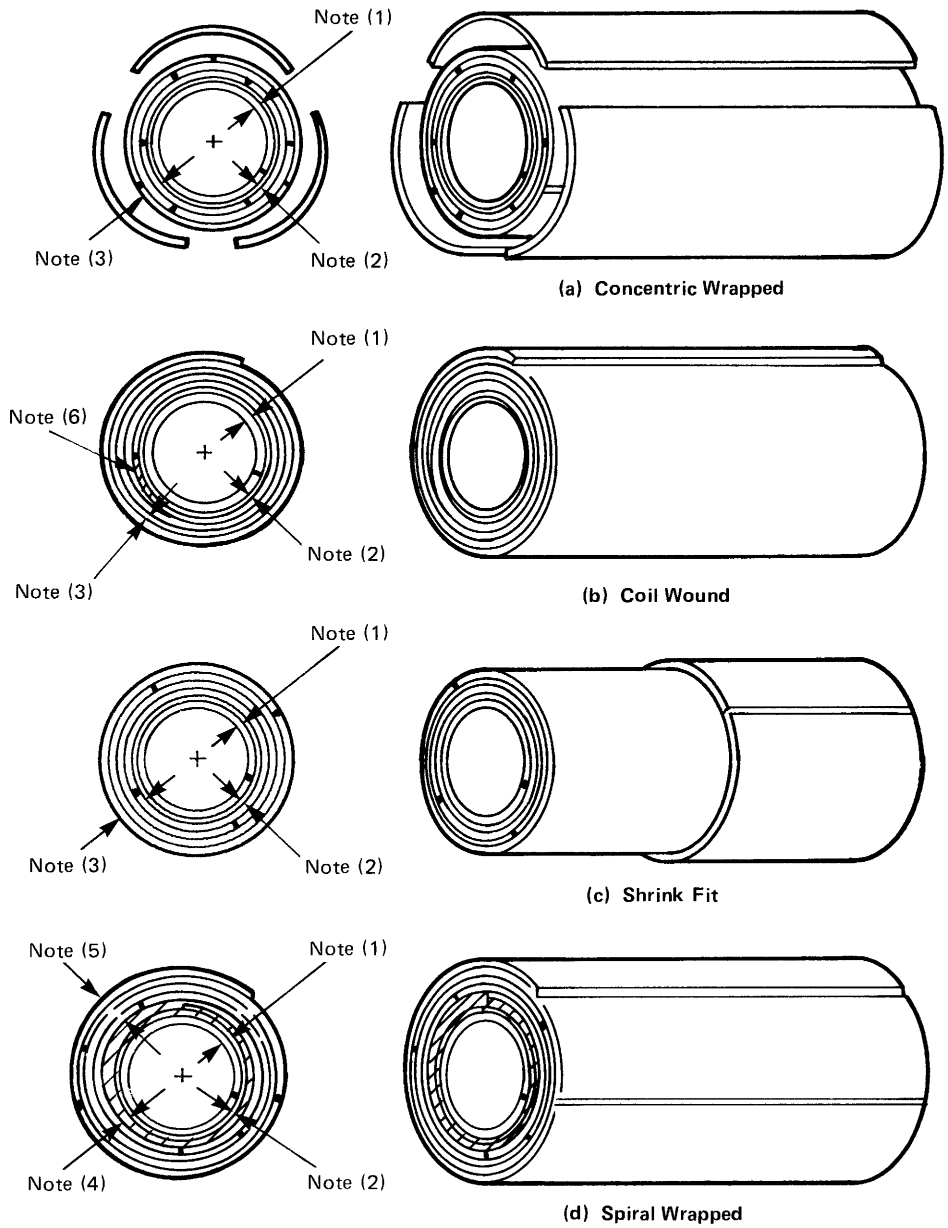
ULW-16 GENERAL

(a) The design of layered pressure vessels shall conform to the design requirements given in UG-16 through UG-46 except that:

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

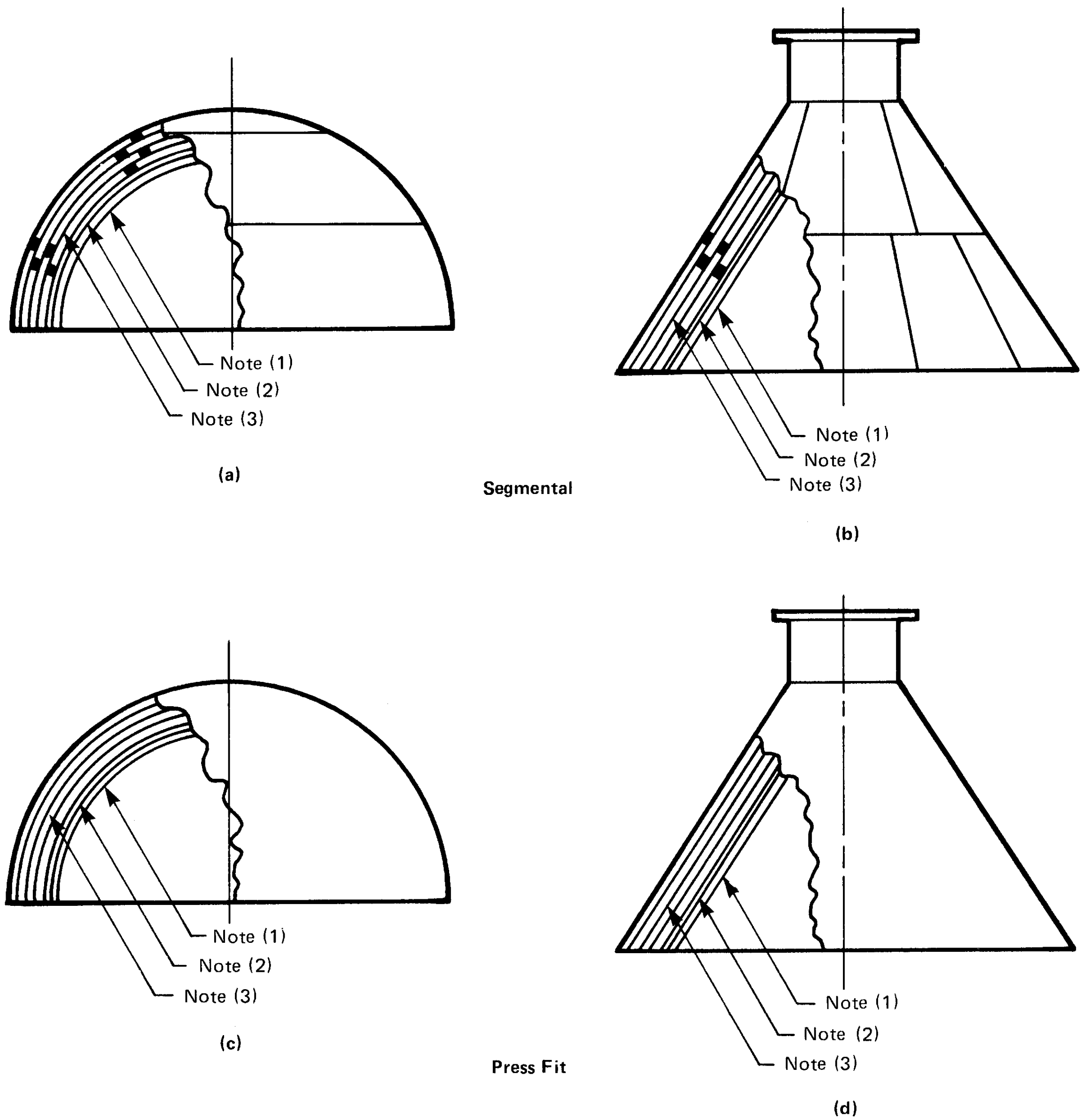
Not for Resale



NOTES:
(1) Inner Shell
(2) Dummy layer (if used)
(3) Layers
(4) Shell layer (tapered)
(5) Balance of layers
(6) Gap

FIG. ULW-2.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE LAYERED SHELL TYPES **04**

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTES:
(1) Inner head
(2) Dummy layer (if used)
(3) Head layers

FIG. ULW-2.2 SOME ACCEPTABLE LAYERED HEAD TYPES

(1) reinforcement of openings is required as illustrated in Fig. ULW-18.1;

(2) in calculating the requirements for vacuum per UG-28, only the inner shell or inner head thickness shall be used;

(3) layered shells under axial compression shall be calculated using UG-23, and utilizing the total shell thickness.

(b) The inner shell or inner head material which has a lower allowable design stress than the layer materials may only be included as credit for part of the total wall thickness if S_1 is not less than $0.50S_L$ by considering its effective thickness to be

$$t_{\text{eff}} = t_{\text{act}} \frac{S_1}{S_L}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

where

t_{eff} = effective thickness of inner shell or inner head
t_{act} = nominal thickness of inner shell or inner head
S_1 = design stress of inner shell or inner head
S_L = design stress of layers

(c) Layers in which the maximum allowable stress value of the materials is within 20% of the other layers may be used by prorating the maximum allowable stress of the layers in the thickness formula, provided the materials are compatible in modulus of elasticity and coefficient of thermal expansion.

(d) The minimum thickness of any layer shall not be less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm).

(e) Torispherical layered heads are not permitted.

04 ULW-17 DESIGN OF WELDED JOINTS

(a) Categories A and B joints of inner shells and inner heads of layered sections shall be as follows.

(1) Category A joints shall be Type No. (1) of Table UW-12.

(2) Category B joints shall be Type No. (1) or (2) of Table UW-12.

(b) Category A joints of layered sections shall be as follows.

(1) Category A joints of layers over $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm). in thickness shall be Type No. (1) of Table UW-12.

(2) Category A joints of layers $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) or less in thickness shall be of Type No. (1) or (2) of Table UW-12, except the final outside weld joint of spiral wrapped layered shells may be a single lap weld.

(c) Category B joints of layered shell sections to layered shell sections, or layered shell sections to solid shell sections, shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12.

(1) Category B joints of layered sections to layered sections of unequal thickness shall have transitions as shown in Fig. ULW-17.1 sketch (a) or (b).

(2) Category B joints of layered sections to solid sections of unequal thickness shall have transitions as shown in Fig. ULW-17.1 sketch (c), (d), (e), or (f).

(3) Category B joints of layered sections to layered sections of equal thickness shall be as shown in Fig. ULW-17.6 sketch (b), (c), (f), or (g).

(4) Category B joints of layered sections to solid sections of equal thickness shall be as shown in Fig. ULW-17.6 sketch (a) or (e).

(d) Category A joints of solid hemispherical heads to layered shell sections shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12.

(1) Transitions shall be as shown in Fig. ULW-17.2 sketch (a), (b-1), (b-2), or (b-3) when the hemispherical head thickness is less than the thickness of the layered shell section and the transition is made in the layered shell section.

(2) Transitions shall be as shown in Fig. ULW-17.2 sketches (c), (d-1), or (e) when the hemispherical head thickness is greater than the thickness of the layered shell section and transition is made in the layered shell section.

(3) Transition shall be as shown in Fig. ULW-17.2 sketch (f) when the hemispherical head thickness is less than the thickness of the layered shell section and the transition is made in the hemispherical head section.

(e) Category B joints of solid elliptical, torispherical, or conical heads to layered shell sections shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12. Transitions shall be as shown in Fig. ULW-17.2 sketch (c), (d-1), (d-2), (e), or (f).

(f) Category C joints of solid flat heads and tubesheets to layered shell sections shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12 as indicated in Fig. ULW-17.3. Transitions, if applicable, shall be used as shown in Fig. ULW-17.1 sketch (c), (d), (e), or (f).

(g) Category C joints attaching solid flanges to layered shell sections and layered flanges to layered shell sections shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12 as indicated in Fig. ULW-17.4.

(h) Category A joints of layered hemispherical heads to layered shell sections shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12 with a transition as shown in Fig. ULW-17.5 sketch (a-1) or (a-2).

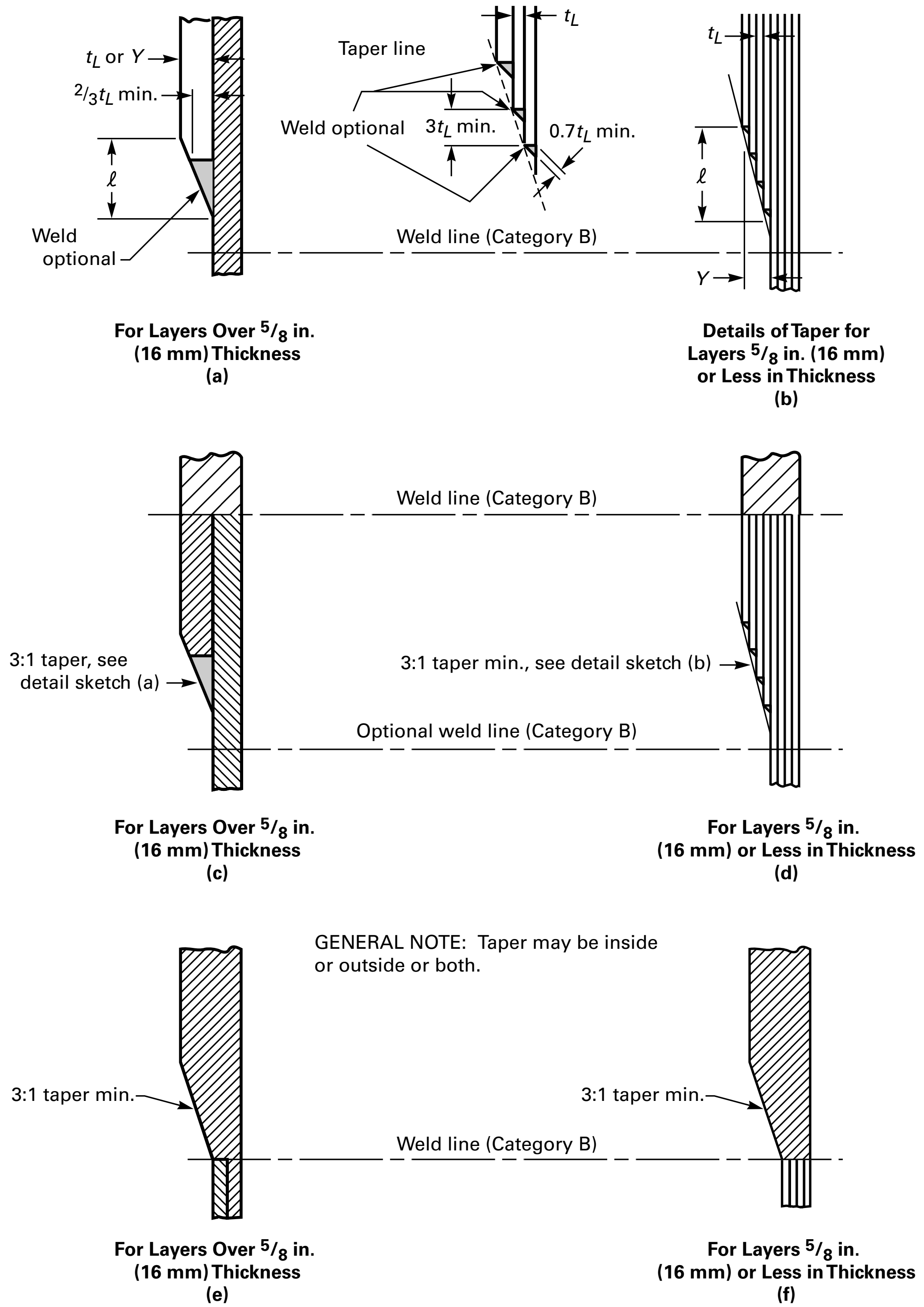
(i) Category B joints of layered conical heads to layered shell sections shall be of Type (1) or (2) of Table UW-12 with transitions as shown in Fig. ULW-17.5 sketch (b-1).

(j) Category B joints of layered shells to layered shell sections or layered shell sections to solid heads or shells may be butt joints as shown in Fig. ULW-17.6 sketches (c), (d), and (e), or step welds as shown in Fig. ULW-17.6 sketches (a), (b), (f), and (g).

(k) Category D joints of solid nozzles, manholes, and other connections to layered shell or layered head sections shall be full penetration welds as shown in Fig. ULW-18.1 except as permitted in sketch (i), (j), (k), or (l). Category D joints between layered nozzles and shells or heads are not permitted.

(l) When layers of Category A joints as shown in Fig. ULW-17.2 sketches (a), (b-1), (b-2), and (b-3) and Fig. ULW-17.5 sketches (a-1) and (a-2) are welded with fillet welds having a taper less than 3:1, the longitudinal load resisted by the weld shall not exceed the allowable load as defined in UW-18(d). No resistance due to friction shall be used in determining the longitudinal load at the welds. The longitudinal load resisted by the weld shall consider the load transferred from the remaining outer layers.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: $\ell \geq 3Y$, where ℓ is required length of taper and Y is the offset. t_L is the thickness of one layer. The length of required taper may include the width of the weld. The transition may be on either or both sides.

FIG. ULW-17.1 TRANSITIONS OF LAYERED SHELL SECTIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

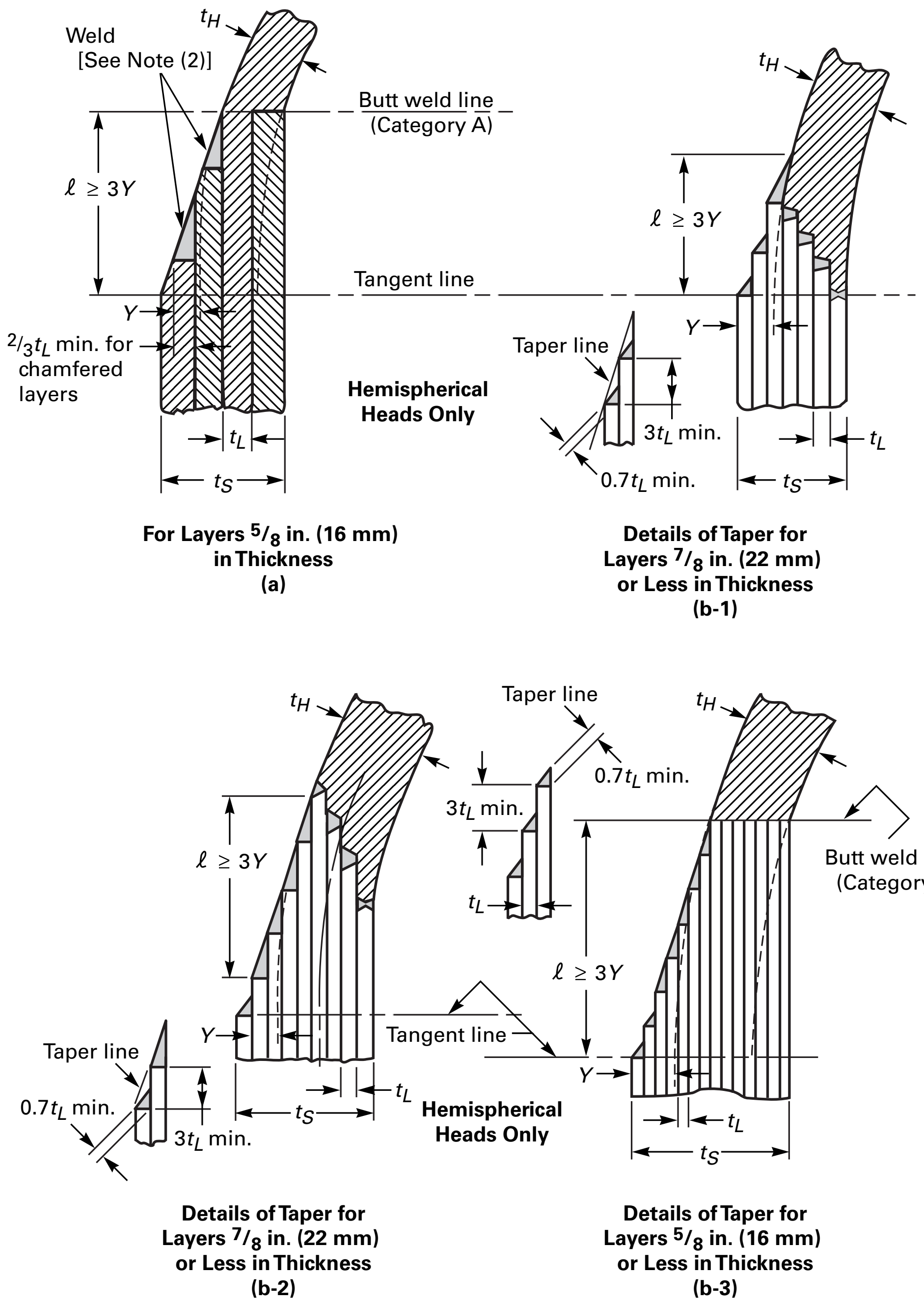
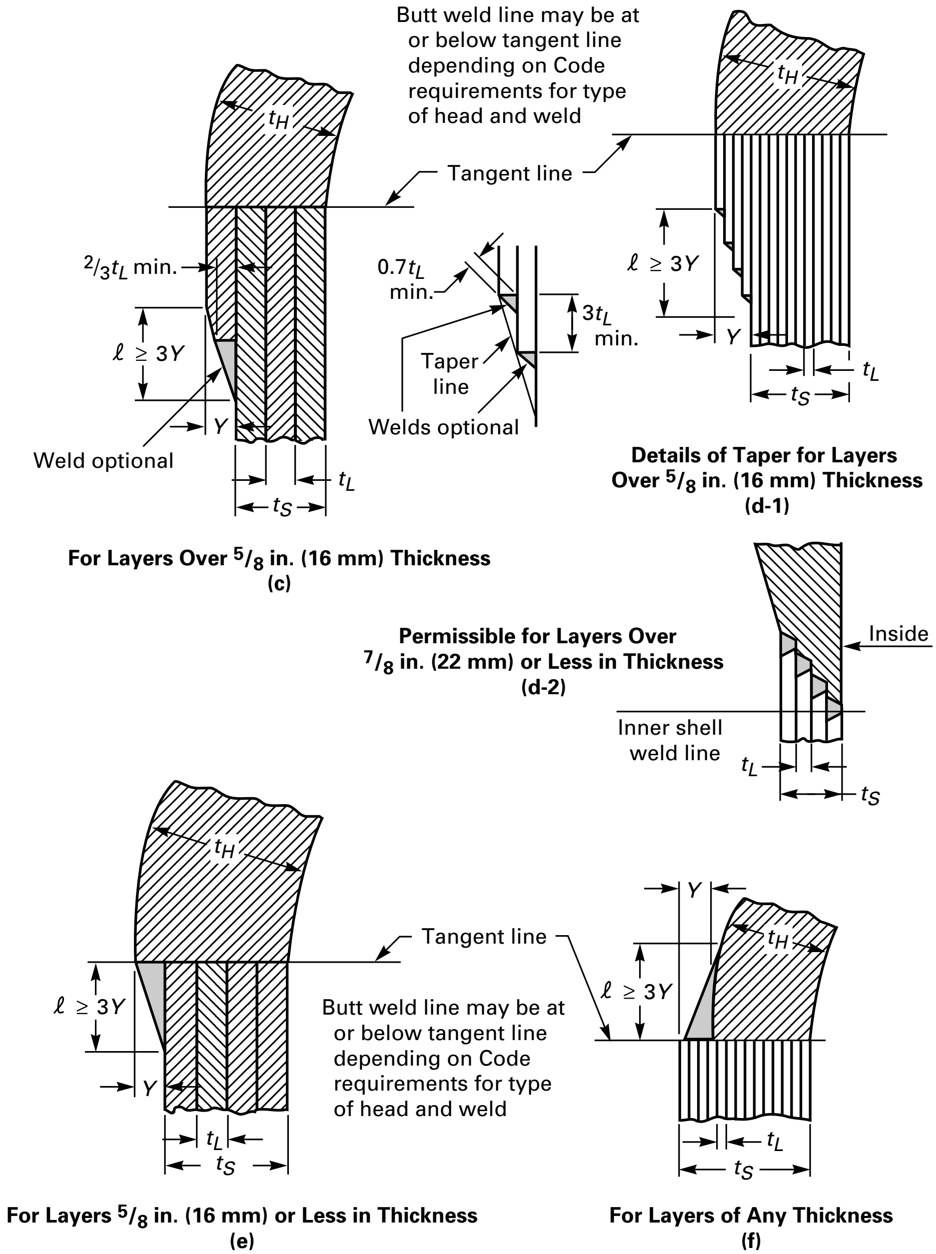


FIG. ULW-17.2 SOME ACCEPTABLE SOLID HEAD ATTACHMENTS TO LAYERED SHELL SECTIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



For Layers Over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) Thickness
(c)

Details of Taper for Layers Over $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) Thickness
(d-1)

Permissible for Layers Over $^7/_8$ in. (22 mm) or Less in Thickness
(d-2)

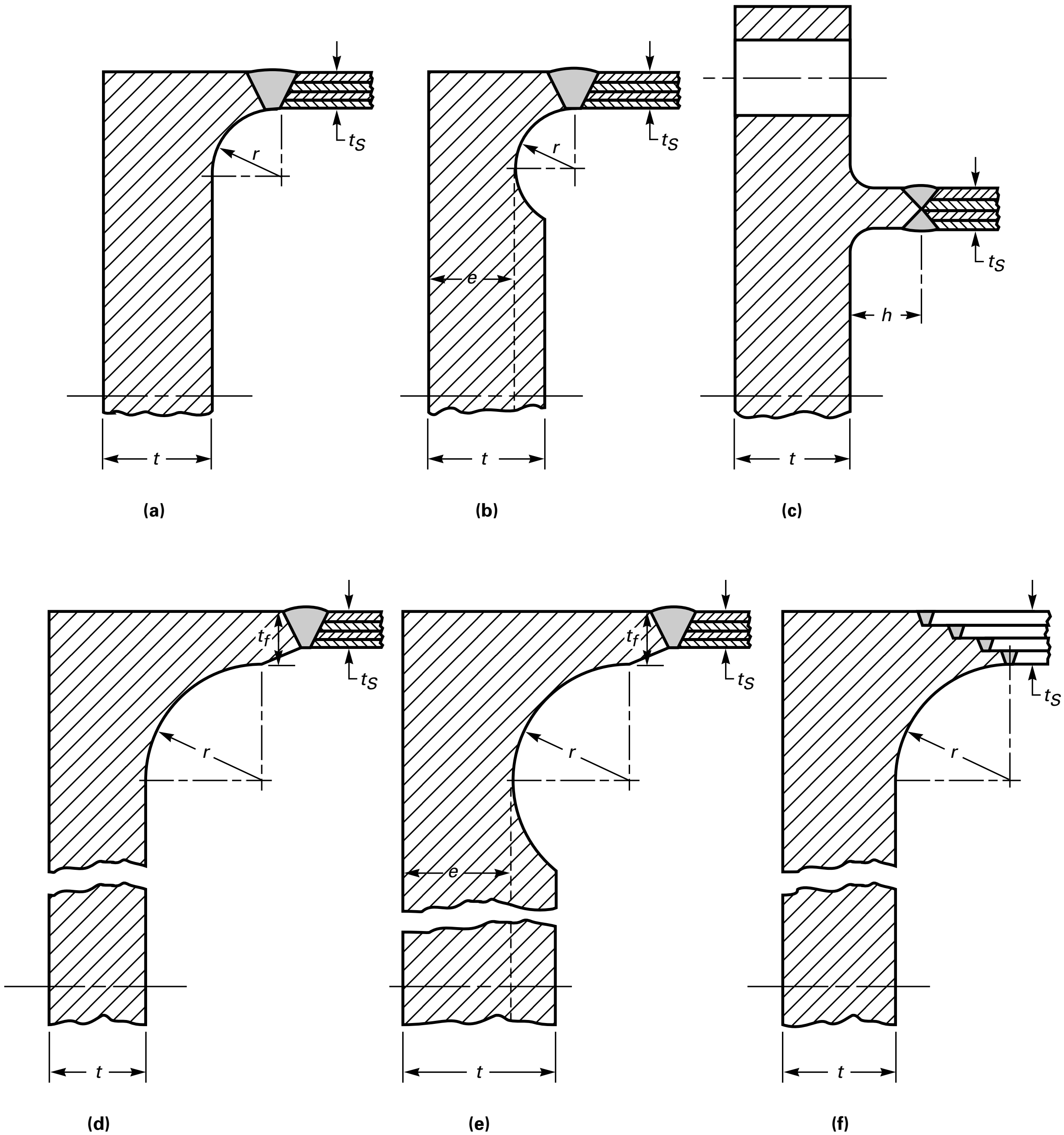
For Layers $^5/_8$ in. (16 mm) or Less in Thickness
(e)

For Layers of Any Thickness
(f)

NOTES:
(1) t_H = thickness of head at joint
t_L = thicknes of one layer
t_S = thickness of layered shell
Y = offset
(2) Actual thickness shall not be less than theoretical head thickness.
(3) In sketch (e), Y shall not be larger than t_L. In sketch (f), Y shall not be larger than $^1/_2 t_S$. In all cases ℓ shall not be less than 3 times Y. The shell center line may be on either side of the head center line by a maximum of $^1/_2(t_S - t_H)$. The length of required taper may include the width of the weld.

FIG. ULW-17.2 SOME ACCEPTABLE SOLID HEAD ATTACHMENTS TO LAYERED SHELL SECTIONS (CONT'D)

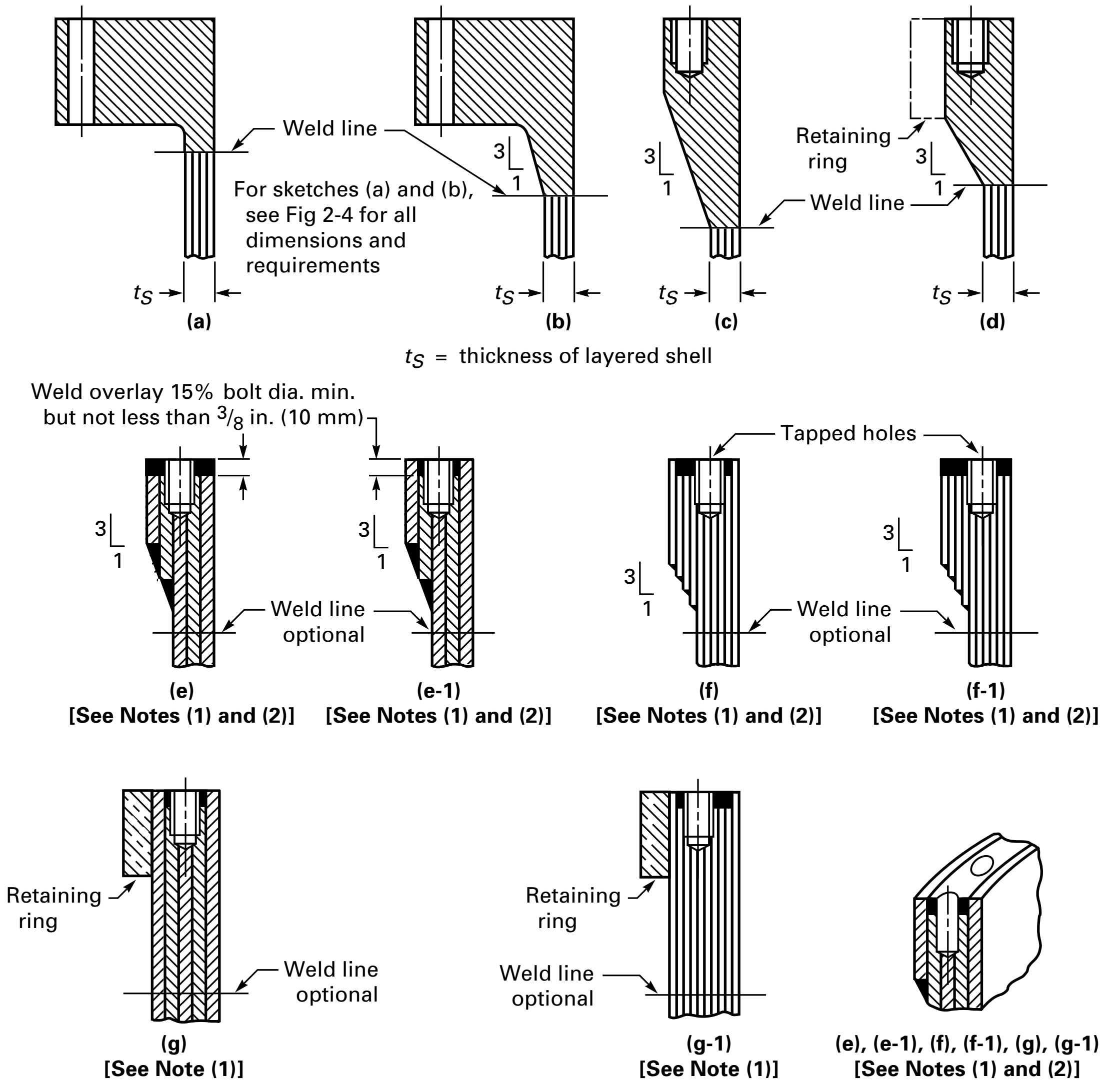
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTE:
t_s = thickness of layered shell [see ULW-17 (f)]
t = thickness of flat head or tubesheet [see UG-34]
For all other dimensions, see Fig. UW-13.3.

FIG. ULW-17.3 SOME ACCEPTABLE FLAT HEADS AND TUBESHEETS WITH HUBS JOINING LAYERED SHELL SECTIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTES

(1) The following limitations apply to sketches (e), (e-1), (f), (f-1), (g), (g-1):
(a) the weld overlay shall tie the overlay, the overwraps, and layers together; and
(b) the bolt circle shall not exceed the outside diameter of the shell.

(2) For sketches (e), (e-1), (f), and (f-1), the angle of transition and size of fillet welds are optional. The bolt circle diameter shall be less than the outside diameter of the layered shell

04 FIG. ULW-17.4 SOME ACCEPTABLE FLANGES FOR LAYERED SHELLS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

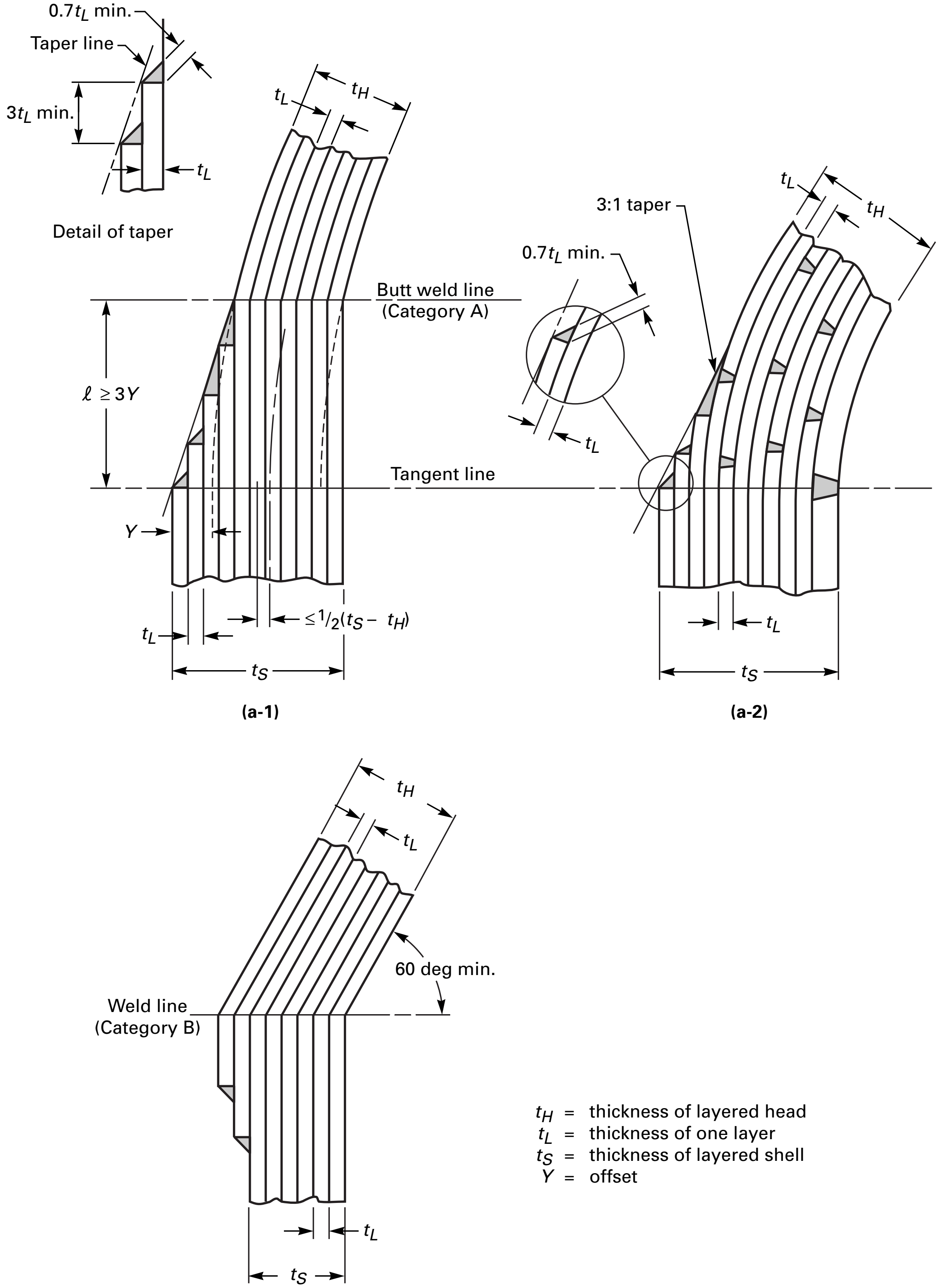


FIG. ULW-17.5 SOME ACCEPTABLE LAYERED HEAD ATTACHMENTS TO LAYERED SHELLS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

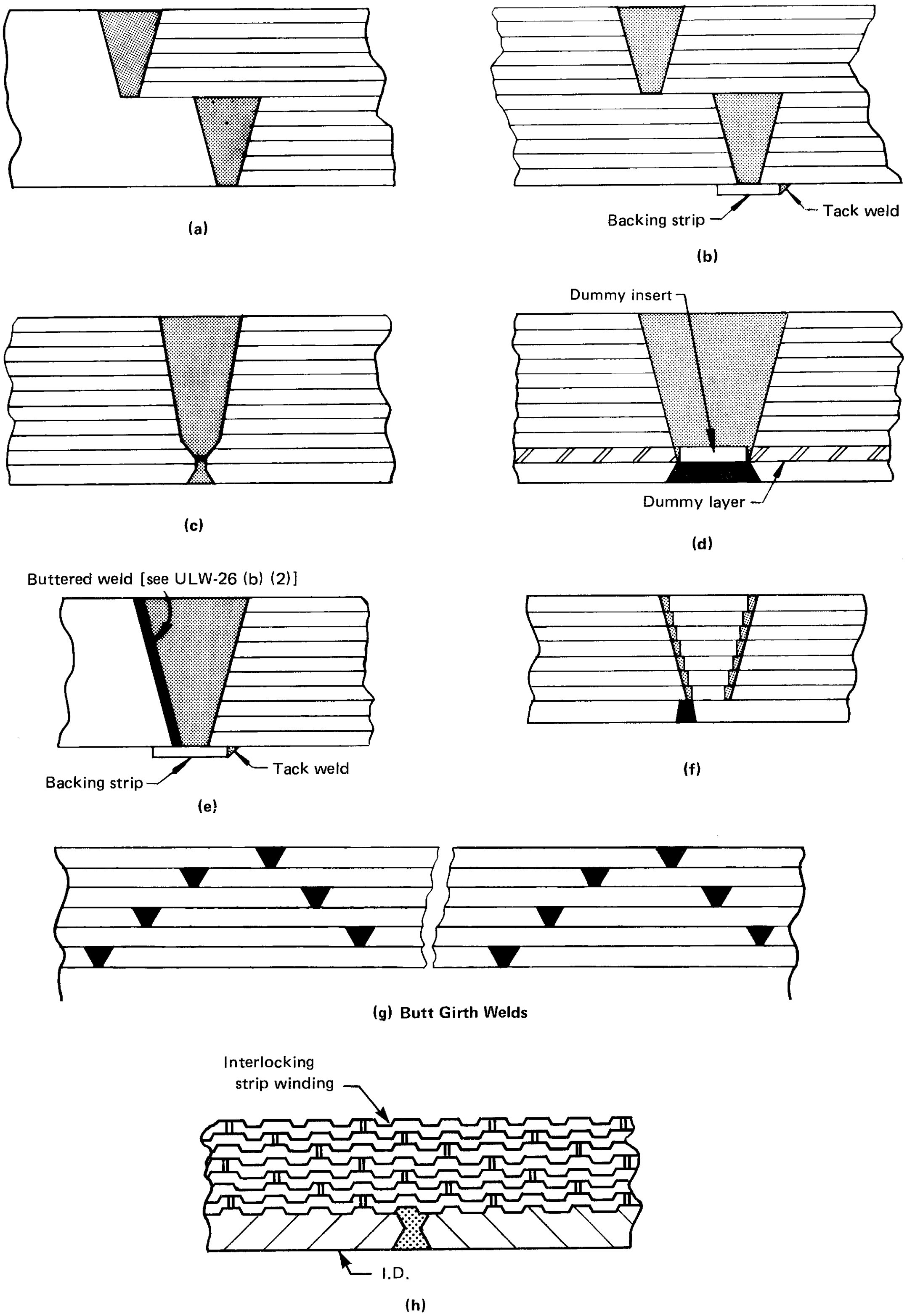


FIG. ULW-17.6 SOME ACCEPTABLE WELDED JOINTS OF LAYERED-TO-LAYERED AND LAYERED-TO-SOLID SECTIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ULW-18 NOZZLE ATTACHMENTS AND OPENING REINFORCEMENT

(a) All openings, except as provided in (b) below, shall meet the requirements for reinforcing per UG-36 through UG-46. All reinforcements required for openings shall be integral with the nozzle or provided in the layered section or both. Additional layers may be included for required reinforcement. Some acceptable nozzle geometries and attachments are shown in Fig. ULW-18.1. Openings are not permitted in the shell sections of helically wound interlocking strip construction.

(b) Openings, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, need not be reinforced when installed in layered construction, but shall be welded on the inside as shown in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketch (j). The nozzle nominal wall thickness shall not be less than Schedule 80 pipe as fabricated, in addition to meeting the requirements of UG-45.

(c) Openings up to and including 6 in. (150 mm) nominal pipe size may be constructed as shown in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketches (k) and (l). Such partial penetration weld attachments may only be used for instrumentation openings, inspection openings, etc., on which there are no external mechanical loadings provided the following requirements are met.

(1) The requirements for reinforcing specified in (a) above apply except that the diameter of the finished openings in the wall shall be d' as specified in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketches (k) and (l), and the thickness t_r is the required thickness of the layered shells computed by the design requirements.

(2) Additional reinforcement, attached to the inside surface of the inner shell, may be included after the corrosion allowance is deducted from all exposed surfaces. The attachment welds shall comply with UW-15, UW-16, and Fig. ULW-18.1 sketch (k) or (l).

(3) Metal in the nozzle neck available for reinforcement shall be limited by the boundaries specified in UG-40(c), except that the inner layer shall be considered the shell.

(d) Openings greater than NPS 2 may be constructed as shown in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketch (i). The requirements for reinforcing specified in (a) above apply except that:

(1) the diameter of the finished openings in the wall shall be d' as specified in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketch (i); and the thickness t_r is the required thickness of the layered shells computed by the design requirements;

(2) additional reinforcement may be included in the solid hub section as shown in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketch (i);

(3) metal in the nozzle neck available for reinforcement shall be limited by the boundaries specified in UG-40(c), except that the inner layer shall be considered the shell.

(e) The bolt circle in a layered flange shall not exceed the outside diameter of the shell. Weld overlay as shown in Fig. ULW-17.4 sketches (e), (e-1), (f), (f-1), (g), and (g-1) shall be provided to tie the overwraps and layers together.

ULW-20 WELDED JOINT EFFICIENCY

When the nondestructive examinations outlined in ULW-50 through ULW-57 have been complied with, the weld joint efficiency for design purposes shall be 100%.

ULW-22 ATTACHMENTS

Attachments to a single layer of a layered vessel shall be given consideration in meeting the requirements of UG-22. Outside layers are especially critical when support lugs, skirts, or jacket closures are welded to them. Only the thickness of the layer to which the attachment is welded shall be considered in calculating the stress near the attachment, except where provisions are made to transfer the load to other layers. For some acceptable supports, see Fig. ULW-22. Jacketed closures shall be designed in accordance with Appendix 9 except that:

(1) partial jackets as shown in Fig. 9-7 are not permitted on layered sections;

(2) provisions shall be made for extending layer vents through the jacket (see ULW-76).

ULW-26 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) When required, pressure parts shall be postweld heat treated in accordance with the rules prescribed in UCS-56, UG-85, UW-10, UW-40, and UHT-56; however, layered vessels or layered vessel sections need not be postweld heat treated provided the requirements of (b) below are met.

(b) Unless required by UW-2, layered vessels or layered vessel sections need not be postweld heat treated when welded joints connect a layered section to a layered section, or a layered section to a solid wall, provided all of the following conditions are met.

(1) The thickness referred to in UCS-56 and UHT-56 is the thickness of one layer. Should more than one thickness of layer be used, the thickness of the thickest layer shall govern.

(2) The finished joint preparation of a solid section which is required to be postweld heat treated under the provisions of UCS-56 or UHT-56, shall be provided with a buttered[1] layer of at least $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) thick welding

[1] Buttered means buildup overlay welding.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

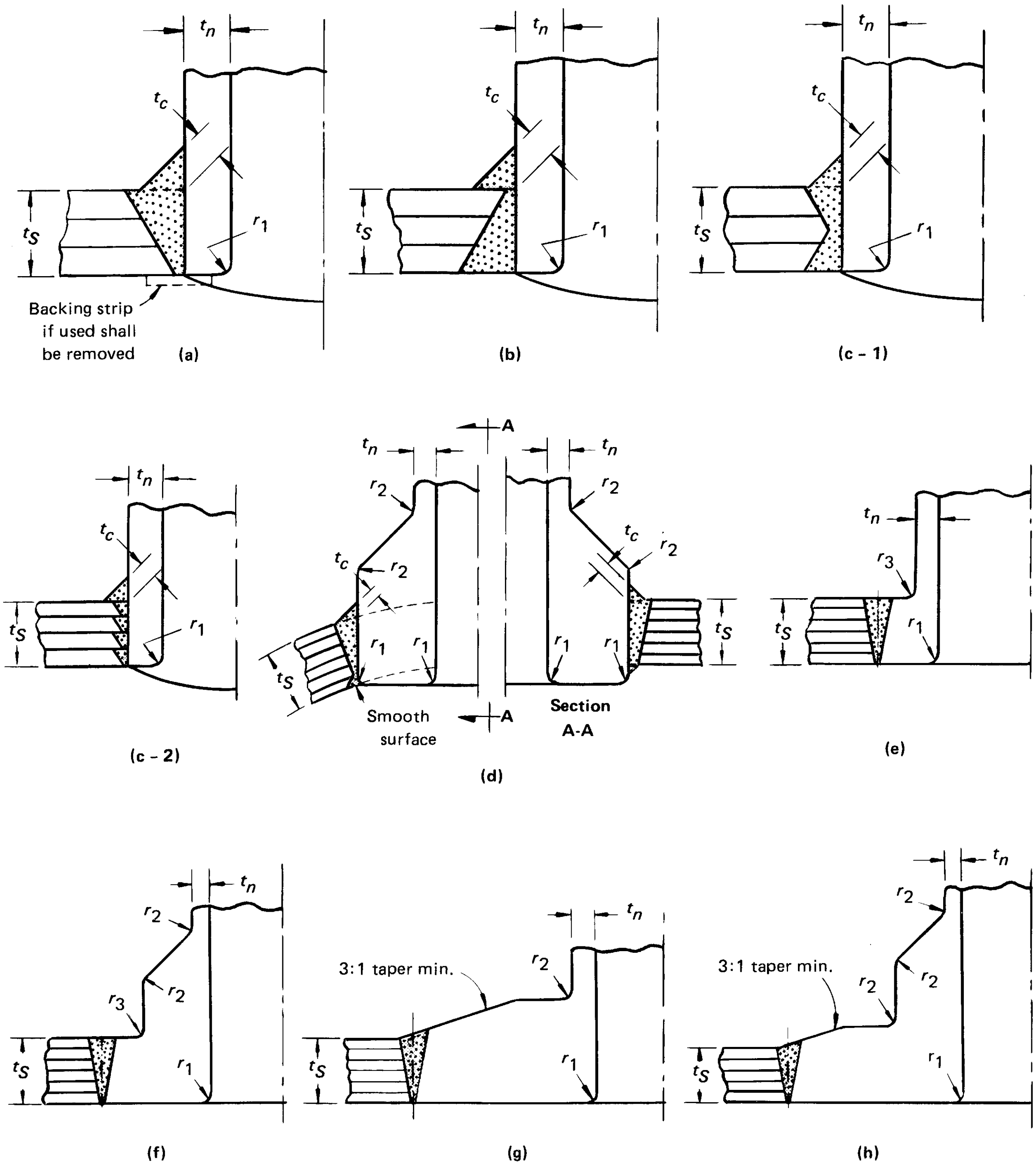
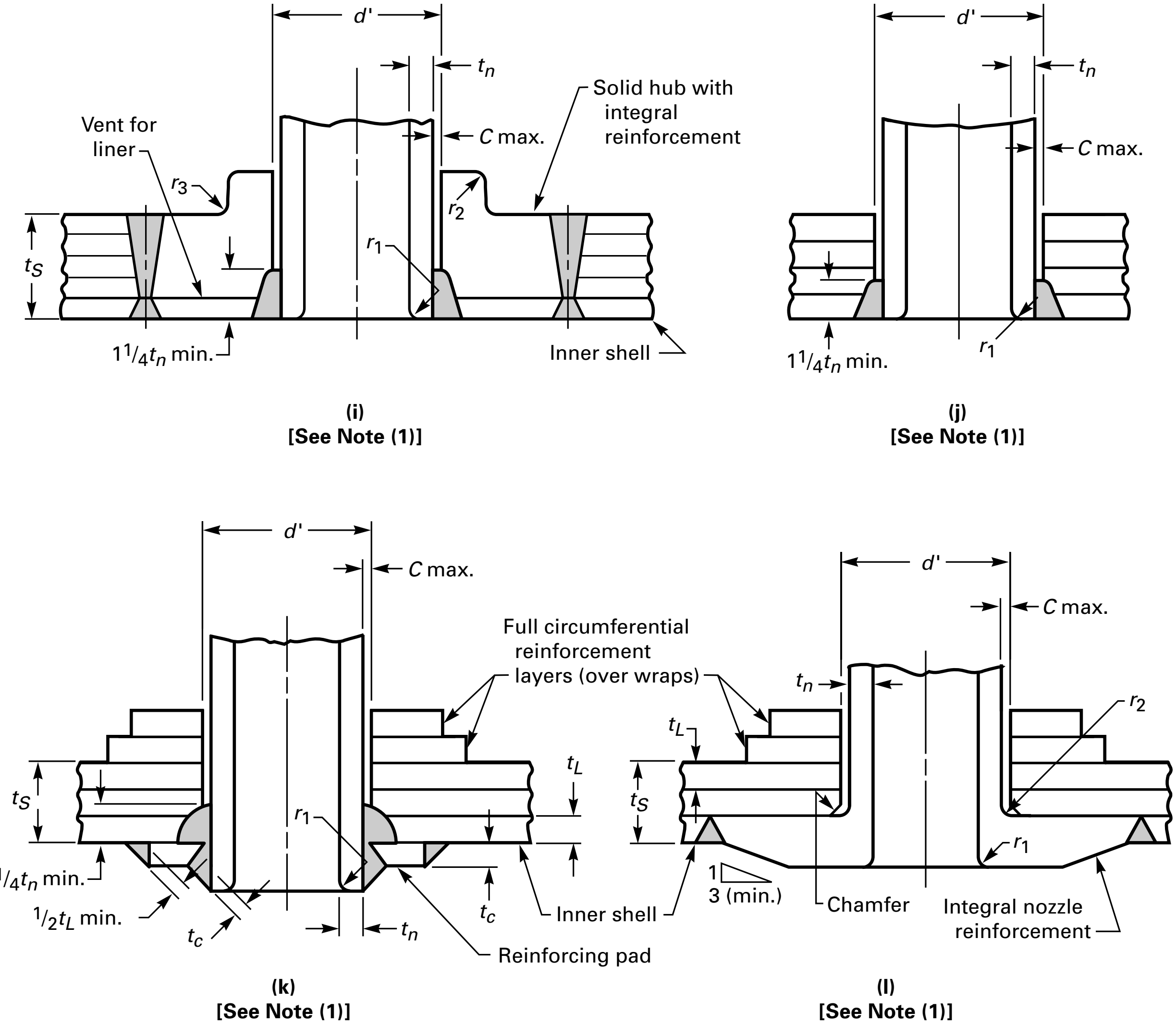


FIG. ULW-18.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE NOZZLE ATTACHMENTS IN LAYERED SHELL SECTIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



C max. = $^1/_8$ in (3 mm) radial clearance between nozzle neck and vessel opening

d' = finished opening in the wall (refer fo ULW-18 for max. permissible diameter)

r_1 min. = $^1/_4$ t_n or $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) whichever is less

r_2 = $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) minimum

r_3 min. = r_1 minimum

t_c = not less than $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) or 0.7 of the smaller of $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) or t_n

t_L = thickness of one layer

t min. = the smaller of $^3/_4$ in. (19 mm) or t_n

t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle wall

t_S = thickness of layered shell

NOTE:

(1) Provide means, other than by seal welding, to prevent entry of external foreign matter into the annulus between the layers and the nozzle neck O.D. for sketches (i), (j), (k), (l).

FIG. ULW-18.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE NOZZLE ATTACHMENTS IN LAYERED SHELL SECTIONS (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

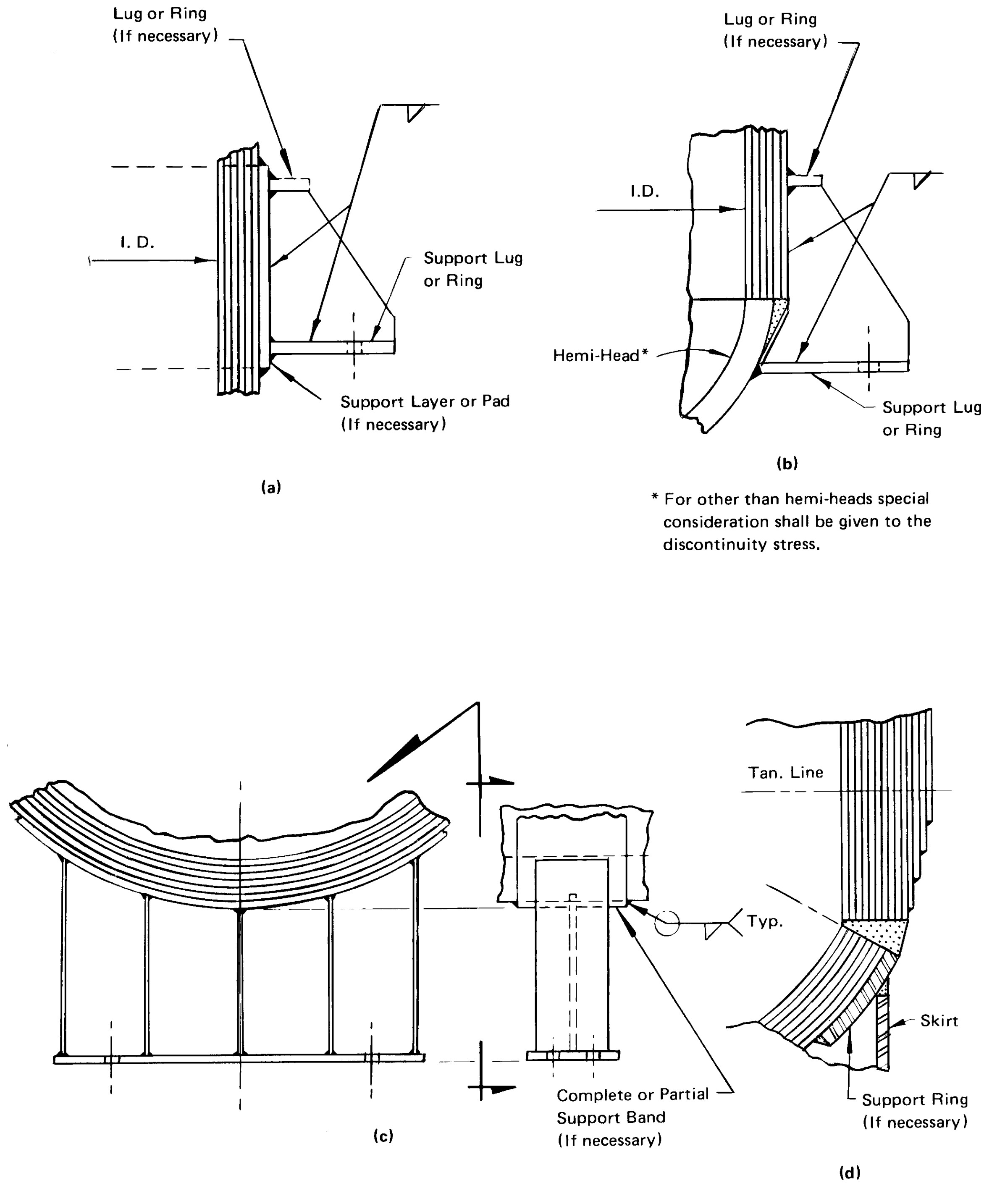


FIG. ULW-22 SOME ACCEPTABLE SUPPORTS FOR LAYERED VESSELS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

material not requiring postweld heat treatment. Solid sections of P-No. 1 materials need not have this buttered layer. Postweld heat treatment of the buttered solid section shall then be performed prior to attaching to the layered sections. Postweld heat treatment following attachment to the layered section is not required unless the layered section is required to be postweld heat treated.

(3) Multipass welding is used and the weld layer thickness is limited to $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) maximum. When materials listed in Part UHT are used, the last pass shall be given a temper bead welding technique[2] treatment except for 5%, 8%, and 9% nickel steels.

(4) For lethal service [UW-2(a)], see ULW-1 Scope.

WELDING

ULW-31 WELDED JOINTS

The design of welded joints of layered vessels shall be in accordance with ULW-17. Welded joints of Table UW-12, Type Nos. (3), (4), (5), and (6) are not permitted in layered vessels, except as provided for in ULW-17(b)(2).

ULW-32 WELDING PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION

Welding procedure qualifications shall be in accordance with Section IX except as modified herein.

(a) The minimum and maximum thicknesses qualified by procedure qualification test plates shall be as shown in Table QW-451 of Section IX except that:

(1) for the longitudinal joints of the layer section of the shell, the qualification shall be based upon the thickness of the thickest individual layer, exclusive of the inner shell or inner head;

(2) for circumferential joint procedure qualification, the thickness of the layered test plate need not exceed 3 in. (75 mm), shall consist of at least 2 layers, but shall not be less than 2 in. (50 mm) in thickness;

(3) for circumferential weld joints made individually for single layers and spaced at least one layer thickness apart, the procedure qualification for the longitudinal joint applies.

(b) The longitudinal weld joint of the inner shell or inner head and the longitudinal weld joint of layer shell or layer head shall be qualified separately except if of the same P-Number material. The weld gap of the longitudinal layer weld joint shall be the minimum width used in the procedure qualification for layers $^7/_8$ in. (22 mm) and less in thickness.

(c) The circumferential weld joint of the layered to layered sections shall be qualified with a simulated layer test plate as shown in Fig. ULW-32.1 for layer thicknesses $^7/_8$ in. (22 mm) and under. A special type of joint tensile specimen shall be made from the layer test coupon as shown in Fig. ULW-32.2. (See also Fig. ULW-32.4.) Face and root bend specimens shall be made of both the inner and outer weld to the thickness of the layer by cutting the weld to the layer thickness.

(d) The circumferential weld joint of the layer shell for layer thicknesses $^7/_8$ in. (22 mm) and under to the solid head, flange, or end closure shall be qualified with a simulated layer test coupon as shown in Fig. ULW-32.1 wherein the one side of the test coupon is solid throughout its entire thickness. A special type of joint tensile specimen shall be made from the test coupon as shown in Fig. ULW-32.3. (See also Fig. ULW-32.4.) Face and root bend specimens shall be made of both the inner and outer weld to the thickness of the layer by slicing the weld and solid portion to the layer thickness.

ULW-33 PERFORMANCE QUALIFICATION

Welding shall be performed only by welders and welding operators who have been qualified as given in Section IX. The minimum and maximum thicknesses qualified by any welder test plate shall be as shown on Table QW-452 of Section IX.

NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION OF WELDED JOINTS

ULW-50 GENERAL

The rules of the following paragraphs apply specifically to the nondestructive examination of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are fabricated using layered construction.

ULW-51 INNER SHELLS AND INNER HEADS

Category A and B joints in the inner shells of layered shell sections, and in the inner heads of layered heads before application of the layers, shall be examined throughout their entire length by radiography and meet the requirements of UW-51.

ULW-52 LAYERS — WELDED JOINTS

(a) Category A joints in layers $^1/_8$ in. (3 mm) through $^5/_{16}$ in. (8 mm) in thickness welded to the previous surface

[2] Temper bead welding technique is done when the final beads of welding are made over-flush, deposited only on previous beads of welding for tempering purposes without making contact with the base metal, and then removing these final beads.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

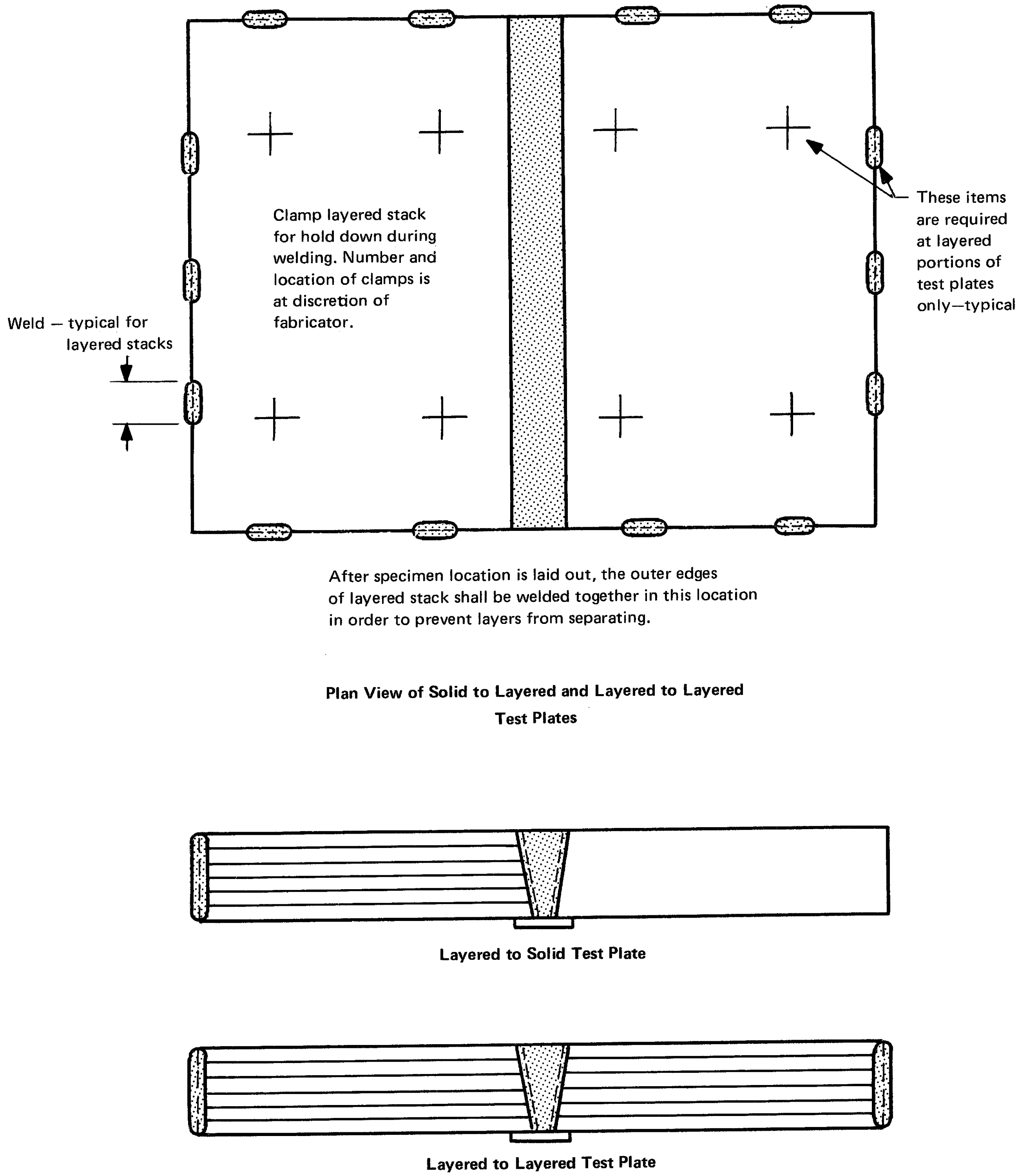


FIG. ULW-32.1 SOLID-TO-LAYERED AND LAYERED-TO-LAYERED TEST PLATES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

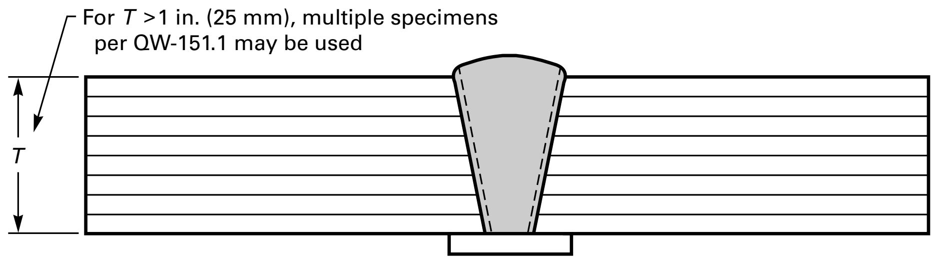


FIG. ULW-32.2

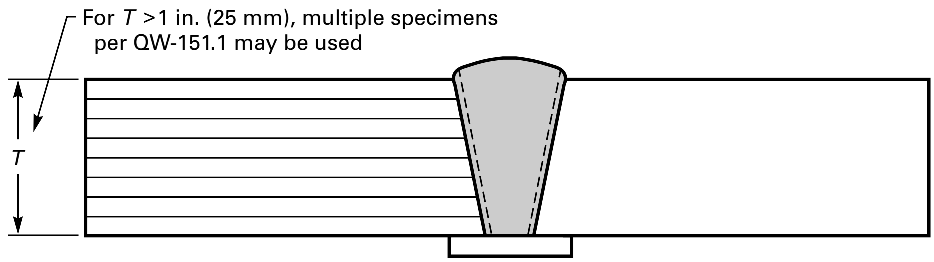
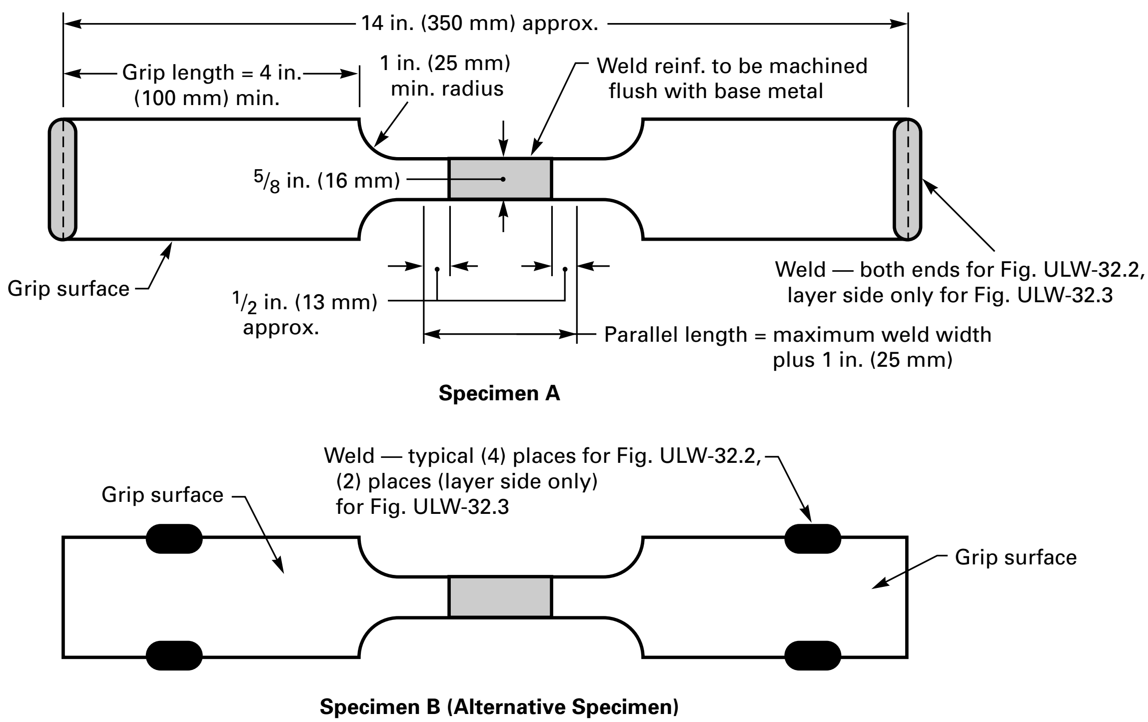


FIG. ULW-32.3



GENERAL NOTE:
Specimens A and B are plan views of Figs. ULW-32.2 and ULW-32.3 and are identical except for locations of grip surfaces and welds. All grip surfaces are to be be machined flat.

FIG. ULW-32.4

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

shall be examined for 100% of their length in accordance with Appendix 6 by the magnetic particle method using direct current.

(b) Category A joints in layers over $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) through $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) in thickness welded to the previous surface shall be examined for 100% of their length in accordance with Appendix 6 by the magnetic particle method using direct current. In addition, these joints shall be examined for 10% of their length at random in accordance with Appendix 12 ultrasonic method except that for the bottom 10% of the weld thickness the distance amplitude correction curve or reference level may be raised by 6 dB. The random spot examination shall be performed as specified in ULW-57.

(c) Category A joints in layers over $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) through $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) in thickness welded to the previous surface shall be examined for 100% of their length in accordance with Appendix 12 ultrasonic method except that for the bottom 10% of the weld thickness the distance amplitude correction curve or reference level may be raised by 6 dB.

(d) Category A joints in layers not welded to the previous surface shall be examined before assembly for 100% of their length by radiography and meet the requirements of UW-51.

(e) Joints in interlocking strips of helically wound construction joined by welding prior to wrapping shall be ground flush and examined 100% of their length by the magnetic particle method in accordance with Appendix 6.

(f) Welds in spirally wound strip construction with a winding or spiral angle of 75 deg. or less measured from the vessel axial center line shall be classified as Category A joints and examined accordingly.

ULW-53 LAYERS — STEP WELDED GIRTH JOINTS

(a) Category B joints in layers $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) through $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) in thickness shall be examined for 10% of their length in accordance with Appendix 6 by the magnetic particle method using direct current. The random spot examination shall be performed as specified in ULW-57.

(b) Category B joints in layers over $\frac{5}{16}$ in. (8 mm) through $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) in thickness shall be examined for 100% of their length in accordance with Appendix 6 by the magnetic particle method, using direct current.

(c) Category B joints in layers over $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm) through $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) in thickness shall be examined for 100% of their length in accordance with Appendix 6 by the magnetic particle method using direct current. In addition these joints shall be examined for 10% of their length in accordance with Appendix 12 ultrasonic examination, except that for the bottom 10% of the weld thickness the distance amplitude correction curve or reference level may be raised by 6 dB. The random spot examination shall be performed as specified in ULW-57.

(d) Category B joints in layers over $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) in thickness shall be examined for 100% of their length in accordance with Appendix 12 ultrasonic method except that for the bottom 10% of the weld thickness the distance amplitude correction curve or reference level may be raised by 6 dB.

ULW-54 BUTT JOINTS

(a) Full Thickness Welding of Solid Section to Layered Sections. Category A, B, and D joints attaching a solid section to a layered section of any of the layered thicknesses given in ULW-52 shall be examined by radiography for their entire length in accordance with UW-51.

It is recognized that layer wash[3] or acceptable gaps (see ULW-77) may show as indications difficult to distinguish from slag on the radiographic film. Acceptance shall be based on reference to the weld geometry as shown in Fig. ULW-54.1. As an alternative, an angle radiographic technique, as shown in Fig. ULW-54.2, may be used to locate individual gaps in order to determine the acceptability of the indication.

(b) Full Thickness Welding of Layered Section to Layered Section. Category A and B joints attaching a layered section to a layered section need not be radiographed after being fully welded when the Category A hemispherical head and Category B welded joints of the inner shell or inner head made after application of the layers have been radiographed in accordance with UW-51. The inner shell or inner head thicknesses need not be radiographed in thicknesses over $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm) if the completed joint is radiographed. Weld joints in the inner shell or inner head welded after application of the layers of the inner shell or inner head weld joints shall be radiographed throughout their entire length and meet the requirements of UW-51.

ULW-55 FLAT HEAD AND TUBESHEET WELD JOINTS

Category C joints attaching layered shells or layered heads to flat heads and tubesheets as shown in Fig. ULW-17.3 shall be examined to the same requirements as specified in ULW-53 and ULW-54(a) for Category B joints.

[3] Layer wash is defined as the indications resulting from slight weld penetration at the layer interfaces.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

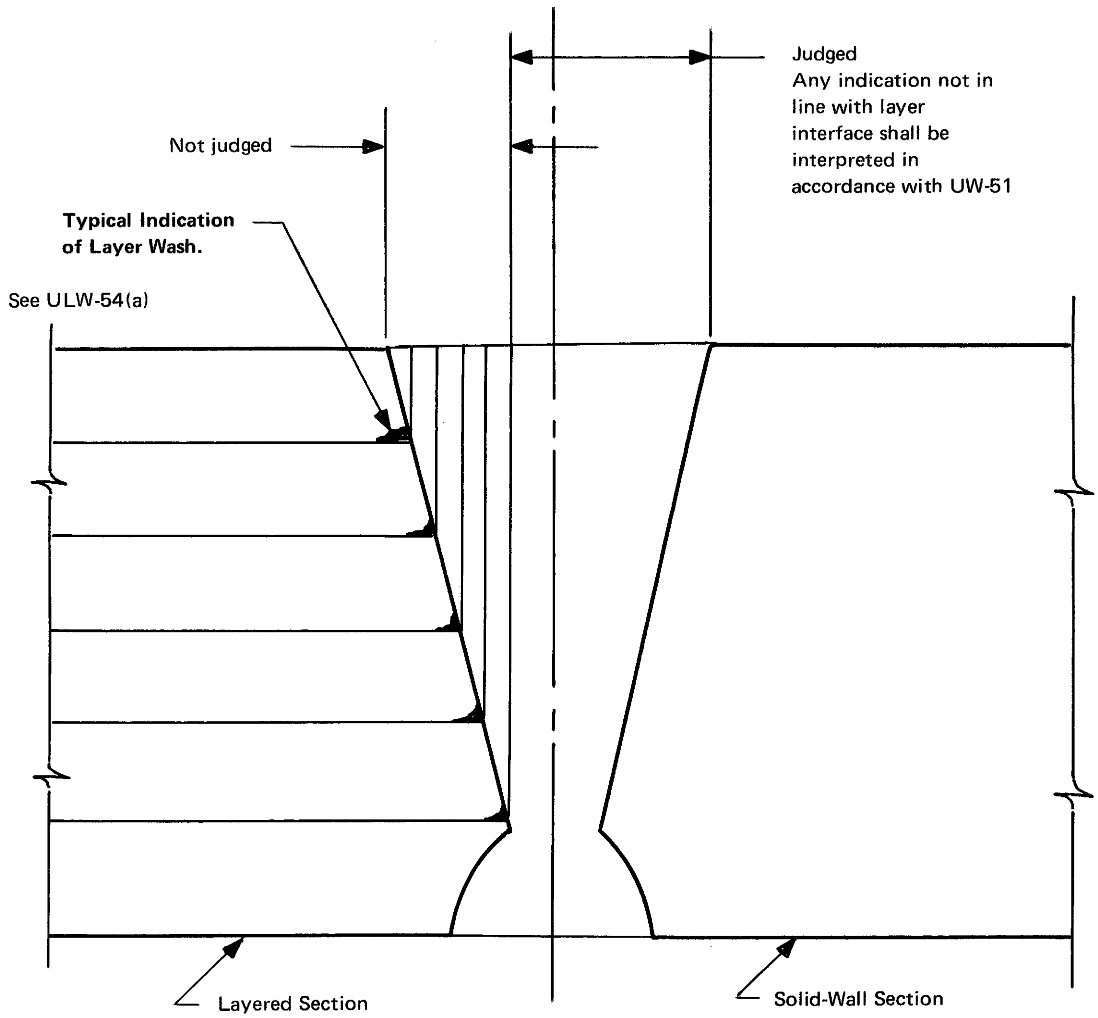


FIG. ULW-54.1

ULW-56 NOZZLE AND COMMUNICATING CHAMBERS WELD JOINTS

Category D joints in layered shells or layered heads not requiring radiographic examination shall be examined by the magnetic particle method in accordance with Appendix 6. The partial penetration weld joining liner type nozzle as shown in Fig. ULW-18.1 sketches (i), (j), (k), and (l) to layered vessel shells or layered heads shall be examined by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant. Acceptance standards shall meet the requirements of Appendix 6 or 8, respectively, for magnetic particle and liquid penetrant examination.

ULW-57 RANDOM SPOT EXAMINATION AND REPAIRS OF WELD

The random ultrasonic examination of ULW-52(b) and ULW-53(c) and random magnetic particle examination of ULW-53(a) shall be performed as follows.

(1) The location of the random spot shall be chosen by the Inspector except that when the Inspector has been duly notified in advance and cannot be present or otherwise make the selection, the fabricator may exercise his own judgment in selecting the random spot or spots. The minimum length of a spot shall be 6 in. (150 mm).

(2) When any random spot examination discloses welding which does not comply with the minimum quality requirements of ULW-52(b), ULW-53(a), and ULW-53(c), two additional spots of equal length shall be examined in the same weld unit at locations away from the original spot. The locations of these additional spots shall be determined by the Inspector or fabricator as provided for the original spot examination.

(3) If either of the two additional spots examined shows welding which does not comply with the minimum quality requirements of ULW-52(b), ULW-53(a), and

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

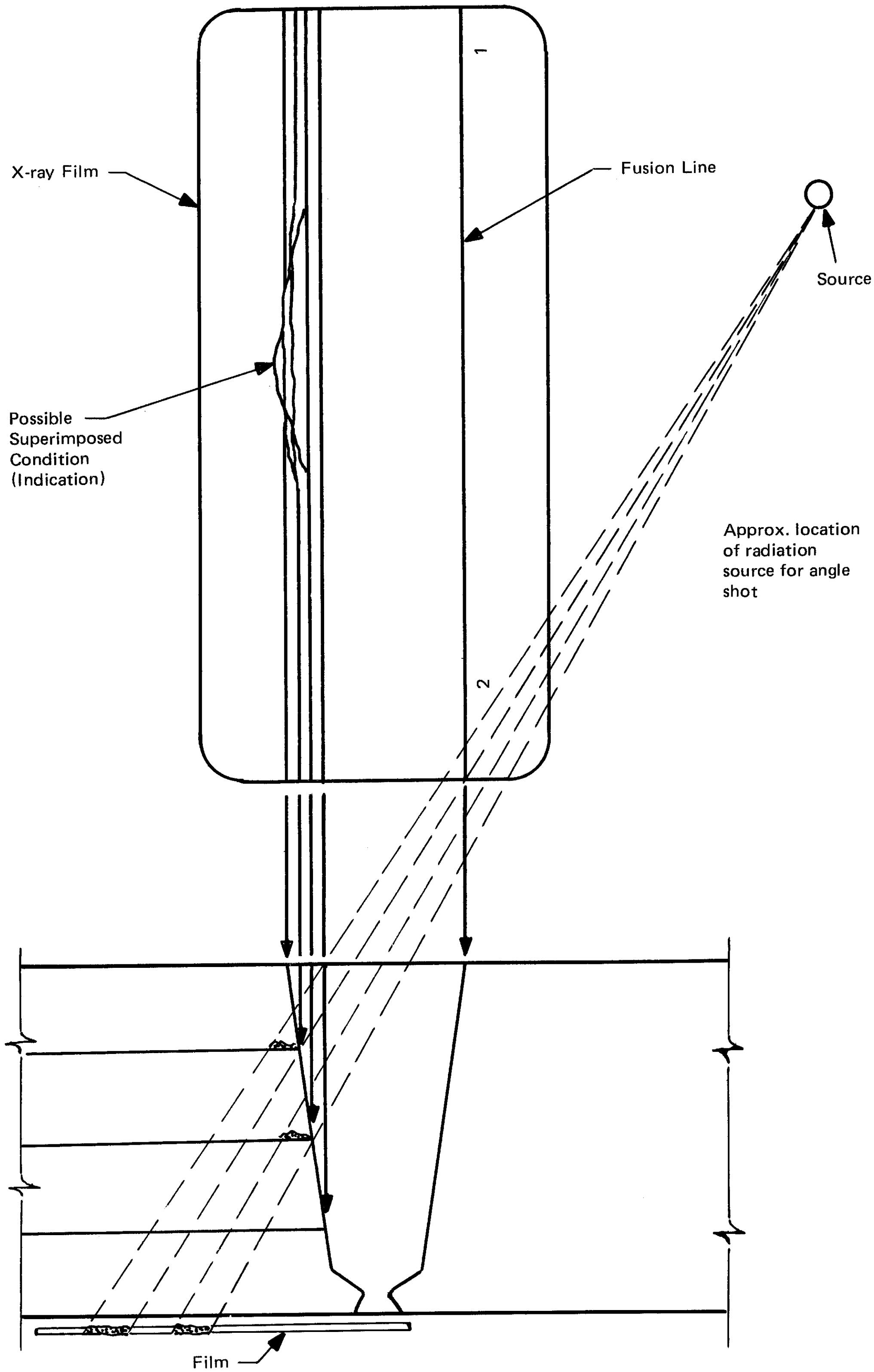


FIG. ULW-54.2

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ULW-53(c), the entire unit of weld represented shall be rejected. The entire rejected weld shall be removed and the joint shall be rewelded or, at the fabricator's option, the entire unit of weld represented shall be completely examined and defects only need be corrected.

(4) Repair welding shall be performed using a qualified procedure and in a manner acceptable to the Inspector. The rewelded joint or the weld repaired areas shall be random spot examined at one location in accordance with the foregoing requirements of ULW-52(b), ULW-53(a), and ULW-53(c).

FABRICATION

ULW-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply to layered shells, layered heads, and layered transition sections that are fabricated by welding and shall be used in conjunction with the general requirements for fabrication in Subsection A, UG-75 through UG-85, with the exception of UG-83. For layered vessels, the minimum thickness permitted for layers is $^1/_8$ in. (3 mm).

04 **ULW-76 VENT HOLES**

Vent holes shall be provided to detect leakage of the inner shell and to prevent buildup of pressure within the layers as follows.

(a) In each shell course or head segment a layer may be made up of one or more plates. Each layer plate shall have at least two vent holes $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) minimum diameter. Holes may be drilled radially through the multiple layers or may be staggered in individual layer plates.

(b) For continuous coil wrapped layers, each layered section shall have at least four vent holes $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) minimum diameter. Two of these vent holes shall be located near each end of the section and spaced approximately 180 deg. apart.

(c) The minimum requirement for spirally wound strip layered construction shall be $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) minimum diameter vent holes drilled near both edges of the strip. They shall be spaced for the full length of the strip and shall be located a distance of approximately $\pi R \tan\theta$ from each other where

R = the mean radius of the shell
θ = the acute angle of spiral wrap measured from longitudinal center line, deg.

If a strip weld covers a vent hole, partially or totally, an additional vent hole shall be drilled on each side of the obstructed hole.

In lieu of the above, holes may be drilled radially through the multiple layers.

(d) Vent holes shall not be obstructed. If a monitoring system is used, it shall be designed to prevent buildup of pressure within the layers.

ULW-77 CONTACT BETWEEN LAYERS

(a) Category A weld joints shall be ground to ensure contact between the weld area and the succeeding layer, before application of the layer.

(b) Category A weld joints of layered shell sections shall be in an offset pattern so that the centers of the welded longitudinal joints of adjacent layers are separated circumferentially by a distance of at least five times the layer thickness.

(c) Category A weld joints in layered heads may be in an offset pattern; if offset, the joints of adjacent layers shall be separated by a distance of at least five times the layer thickness.

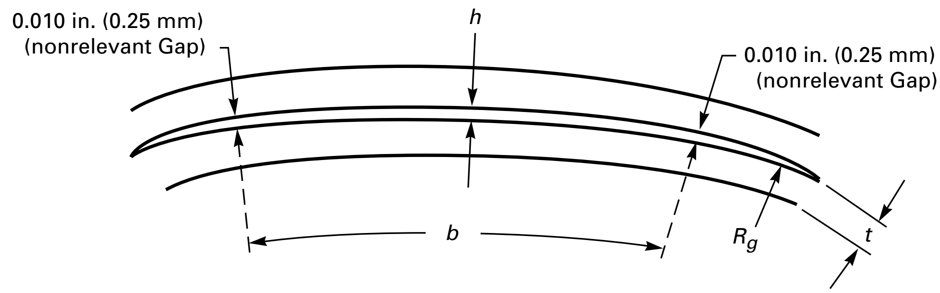
(d) After weld preparation and before welding circumferential seams, the height of the radial gaps between any two adjacent layers shall be measured at the ends of the layered shell section or layered head section at right angles to the vessel axis, and also the length of the relevant radial gap in inches shall be measured [neglecting radial gaps of less than 0.010 in. (0.25 mm) as nonrelevant]. An approximation of the area of the gap shall be calculated as indicated in Fig. ULW-77.

The gap area A_g shall not exceed the thickness of a layer expressed in square inches. The maximum length of any gap shall not exceed the inside diameter of the vessel. Where more than one gap exists between any two adjacent layers, the sum of the gap lengths shall not exceed the inside diameter of the vessel. The maximum height of any gap shall not exceed $^3/_{16}$ in. (5 mm).

It is recognized that there may be vessels of dimensions wherein it would be desirable to calculate a maximum permissible gap area. This procedure is provided for in Section VIII, Division 2 rules for layered vessels in lieu of the maximum gap area empirically given above, except that the maximum allowable stress S given in Section II, Part D, Tables 1A and 1B shall be used instead of the stress intensity S_m given in Tables 2A and 2B.

(e) In the case of layered spheres or layered heads, if the gaps cannot be measured as required in (d) above, measurement of gap heights shall be taken through vent holes in each layer course to assure that the height of layer gaps between any two layers does not exceed the gap permitted in (d) above. The spacing of the vent holes shall be such that gap lengths can be determined. In the event an excessive gap height is measured through a vent

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



A_g = area of gap (approx.) = $2/3h\, b$
R_g = radius of vessel at gap
b = arc length of relevant radial gap
h = radial gap
t = layer thickness

FIG. ULW-77

hole, additional vent holes shall be drilled as required to determine the gap length. There shall be at least one vent hole per layer segment.

(f) The requirements in (a) through (e) above do not apply to helically wound interlocking strip construction. See ULW-78(d).

ULW-78 ALTERNATIVE TO MEASURING CONTACT BETWEEN LAYERS DURING CONSTRUCTION

As an alternative to ULW-77, the following measurements shall be taken at the time of the hydrostatic test to check on the contact between successive layers, and the effect of gaps which may or may not be present between layers.

(a) The circumference shall be measured at the midpoint between adjacent circumferential joints, or between a circumferential joint and any nozzle in a shell course. Measurements shall be taken at zero pressure, and following application of hydrostatic test pressure, at the design pressure. The difference in measurements shall be averaged for each course in the vessel and the results recorded as average middle circumferential expansion e_m in inches (millimeters).

(b) The theoretical circumferential expansion of a solid vessel of the same dimensions and materials as the layered vessel shall be calculated from the following formula:

$$e_{th} = \frac{1.7\pi P(2R - t_s)^2(2R + t_s)}{8ERt_s}$$

where

e_{th} = theoretical circumferential expansion
R = mean radius
= outside radius − $t_s/2$
P = internal design pressure
t_s = wall thickness
E = modulus of elasticity [use 30×10^6 psi (200×10^6 kPa) for carbon steel]

(c) Acceptance criteria for circumferential expansion at the design pressure shall be as follows: e_m shall not be less than 0.5 e_{th}.

(d) For helically wound interlocking strip vessels, two hydrostatic tests shall be performed. The requirements for determining the maximum permissible elongation are as follows.

(1) During the first test, the longitudinal expansion shall be measured at design pressure, at test pressure, and again after the test pressure is reduced to design pressure. The difference in the measured lengths at design pressure shall not exceed 0.1% of the original length at design pressure.

(2) During the second test, the length of the vessel shall be measured at the test pressure and after the pressure has been completely released. The longitudinal contraction ϵ_L shall not exceed the tangential contraction ϵ_T of a solid wall vessel of the same dimensions, where

$$\epsilon_L = \frac{L_1 - L}{L}$$

and

$$\epsilon_T = \frac{1.7P}{E\,(y^2 - 1)}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

where

ϵ_L = longitudinal contraction
ϵ_T = tangential contraction
L_1 = measured length of vessel at second test pressure
L = final length of vessel at atmospheric pressure after the second test
P = test pressure
E = modulus of elasticity
y = diameter ratio (O.D./I.D.)

INSPECTION AND TESTING

ULW-90 GENERAL

The inspection and testing of layered pressure vessels to be marked with the Code U Symbol shall be in accordance with UG-90 through UG-103.

MARKING AND REPORTS

ULW-115 GENERAL

(a) The rules for marking and reports of layered pressure vessels built under Part ULW shall meet the requirements given in UG-115 through UG-120.

(b) In addition, a description of the layered shell and/or layered heads shall be given on the Data Report describing the number of layers, their thickness or thicknesses, and type of construction. See W-2 and Table W-3 for the use of Form U-4 Manufacturer's Data Report Supplementary Sheet. An example of the use of Form U-4 illustrating the minimum required data for layered construction is given in Fig. W-3.1.

(c) In addition, the stamping below the Code symbol prescribed in UG-116(c) shall be the letters WL to designate layered construction.

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

ULW-125 GENERAL

The provisions for pressure relief devices in UG-125 through UG-134 shall apply without supplement to pressure vessels fabricated in whole or in part of layered construction.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

PART ULT
ALTERNATIVE RULES FOR PRESSURE VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF MATERIALS HAVING HIGHER ALLOWABLE STRESSES AT LOW TEMPERATURE

GENERAL

ULT-1 SCOPE

The alternative rules in Part ULT are applicable to pressure vessels or vessel parts that are constructed of materials for which increased design stress values have been established for low temperature applications. When applied, these rules shall be used in conjunction with the requirements in Subsection A and Part UW of Subsection B. The requirements of Subsection C do not apply except when referenced in Part ULT.

ULT-2 CONDITIONS OF SERVICE

(a) Measures shall be taken to avoid stresses at any temperature that are in excess of the maximum allowable stress applicable to that temperature. For example, the membrane stress at the maximum allowable working pressure at 100°F (38°C) shall never exceed the maximum allowable stress for 100°F (38°C). See ULT-27.

(b) Vessel use shall be restricted to fluids specifically considered for the design of the vessel. The physical characteristics of the contained fluid shall be such that a maximum operating temperature can be determined for the liquid phase at the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel. The safety relief valve setting thus controls the maximum operating temperature of the vessel for the specific fluid.

(c) The allowable stress at 100°F (38°C) shall be used for the design of vessel parts that are exposed to the static head of cryogenic fluid but are not actually contacted by the fluid, such as, as in a dead-end cylinder connected to the bottom of a vessel that contains a gas cushion.

(d) Insulation shall be applied external to the pressure vessel.

ULT-5 GENERAL

(a) Materials covered by this Part subject to stress due to pressure shall conform to one of the specifications given in Section II and shall be limited to those listed in Table ULT-23. The allowable stress values of Table ULT-23 are limited to those materials which will be in contact with the cold liquid when subject to liquid head.

(b) Materials not covered by Part ULT may be used for vessel parts, provided such materials shall conform to one of the specifications in Section II and shall be limited to those materials permitted by another Part of Subsection C. The maximum allowable stress for such parts shall be determined at 100°F (38°C). All applicable requirements of that Part of Subsection C shall be met including any required impact tests.

(c) The 5%, 8%, and 9% nickel steels listed in Table ULT-23 shall be tested for notch ductility as required by UHT-5(d) and (e) and UHT-6. These ductility tests shall be conducted at the lowest temperature at which pressure will be applied to the vessel or the minimum allowable temperature to be marked on the vessel, whichever is lower.

(d) For 5083 aluminum the provisions and requirements of UNF-65 for low temperature operation apply.

(e) For 5%, 8%, and 9% nickel steel vessels, all structural attachments and stiffening rings which are welded directly to pressure parts shall be made of materials of specified minimum strength equal to or greater than that of the material to which they are attached.

(f) The weldments of Type 304 stainless steel shall be Charpy impact tested as required by UG-84(h), except that the exemptions fo UHA-51 do not apply. These impact tests shall be conducted at the lowest temperature at which pressure will be applied to the vessel or the minimum allowable temperature to be marked on the vessel, whichever is lower. The applicable minimum lateral expansion opposite the notch for all specimen sizes shall be as required in UHT-6(a)(3) and (a)(4). All

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

requirements of UHT-6(a)(3) and (a)(4) shall apply.

(g) For Type 304 stainless steel vessels, all structural attachments and stiffening rings that are welded directly to pressure parts shall be made of the same material as the pressure part to which they are attached.

DESIGN

ULT-16 GENERAL

(a) The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the design of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed of materials listed in Table ULT-23 and shall be used in conjunction with the requirements for Design in Subsection A and Part UW of Subsection B.

(1) The thermal stresses resulting from the differences between the base metal and the weld metal shall be considered in the design.

(2) For vessels made of 5%, 8%, and 9% nickel steels, the minimum thickness after forming of a section subject to pressure shall be $^3/_{16}$ in. (5 mm) and the maximum thickness of the base metal at welds shall be 2 in. (51 mm).

ULT-17 WELDED JOINTS

(a) All Category A, B, C, and D joints (UW-3) shall be full penetration welds.

(b) The alignment of longitudinal joints in adjacent cylindrical sections or heads shall be displaced at least five times the thickness of the thicker material.

(c) In vessels of 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steels, all Category D joints shall be in accordance with Fig. UHT-18.1 or UHT-18.2 when the nominal shell thickness at the opening exceeds 1 in. (25 mm).

(1) All joints of Category D attaching a nozzle neck to the vessel wall, and to a reinforcing pad if used, shall be full penetration groove weld conforming to Fig. UHT-18.1 or Fig. UHT-18.2 or any of the sketches in Fig. UW-16 having full penetration welds.

(2) All joints of Category A shall be Type No. (1) of Table UW-12.

(3) All joints of Category B shall be Type No. (1) or (2) of Table UW-12.

(4) All joints of Category C shall be full penetration welds extending through the entire section at the joint.

(5) Joint alignment requirements of UHT-20 shall be met.

(d) Butt welds with one plate edge offset [Fig. UW-13.1 sketch (k)] are prohibited anywhere in the vessel.

ULT-18 NOZZLES AND OTHER CONNECTIONS

(a) Nozzles shall not be located in Category A or B joints. When adjacent to Category A or B joints, the nearest edge of the nozzle-to-shell weld shall be at least five times the nominal thickness of the shell from the nearest edge of the Category A or B joint.

(b) The attachment of pipe and nozzle necks to vessel walls shall be by welded construction only.

ULT-23 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

Table ULT-23 gives the maximum allowable stress values at the temperatures indicated for materials conforming to the specifications listed therein. Values may be interpolated for intermediate temperatures (see UG-23).

ULT-27 THICKNESS OF SHELLS

The minimum thickness of any vessel part shall be the greater of the following:

(a) the thickness based on the MAWP at the top of the vessel in its normal operating position plus any other loadings per UG-22, including the static head of the most dense cryogenic liquid to be contained. The permissible stress value shall be determined for the applicable material in Table ULT-23 at the operating temperature corresponding to the saturation temperature at MAWP of the warmest cryogenic fluid contained. The maximum allowable compressive stress shall be determined in accordance with UG-23(b) at 100°F (38°C) and the requirements of UG-23(c) shall be met.

(b) the thickness determined by using the permissible stress value at 100°F (38°C) based on the MAWP at the top of the vessel in its normal operating position plus any other loadings per UG-22, except that no static head need be included.

ULT-28 THICKNESS OF SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) Cylindrical and spherical shells under external pressure shall be designed by the rules in UG-28 using the applicable figures in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D at 100°F (38°C).

(b) Examples illustrating the use of the charts in the figures for the design of vessels under external pressure are given in Appendix L.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE ULT-23
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR 5%, 8%, AND 9% NICKEL STEELS, TYPE 304 STAINLESS STEEL, AND 5083-0 ALUMINUM ALLOY AT CRYOGENIC TEMPERATURES FOR WELDED AND NONWELDED CONSTRUCTION

5% Nickel Steels, Customary Units				8% and 9% Nickel Steels, Customary Units			
Plates: SA-645[2]				Plates:[2] SA-353, SA-553 Type I, and SA-553 Type II Seamless Pipes and Tubes: SA-333 Grade 8 and SA-334 Grade 8 Forgings: SA-522			
		Welded Construction[3,4]				Welded Construction[3,4]	
Temperature,[1] °F	Nonwelded Construction, ksi	UTS 100 ksi	UTS 95 ksi	Temperature,[1] °F	Nonwelded Construction, ksi	UTS 100 ksi	UTS 95 ksi
−320	43.1	38.9	36.9	−320	43.9	38.9	36.9
−300	39.4	37.9	36.1	−300	42.6	37.9	36.1
−250	37.0	36.3	34.6	−250	39.8	36.3	34.6
−200	36.0	35.0	33.3	−200	37.3	35.0	33.3
−150	34.5	33.5	31.8	−150	35.1	33.5	31.8
−100	32.9	32.1	30.5	−100	33.2	32.1	30.5
−50	31.3	31.0	29.5	−50	31.6	31.0	29.5
0	27.1	27.1	27.1	0	28.6	28.6	27.1
100	27.1	27.1	27.1	100	28.6	28.6	27.1

Type 304 Stainless Steel, Customary Units

		Specified Minimum Strengths at Room Temperature		Maximum Allowable Stress, ksi, for Temperatures,[1] °F, Not Exceeding								
Spec. No.	Grade	Tensile, ksi	Yield, ksi	−320	−300	−250	−200	−150	−100	−50	0	100
SA-240 nonwelded construction	304	75.0	30.0	35.5	35.0	33.4	31.7	29.7	27.5	25.3	20.0	20.0
SA-240 welded construction	304	75.0	30.0	23.6	23.4	23.1	22.8	22.4	22.1	21.8	20.0	20.0

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE ULT-23
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR 5%, 8%, AND 9% NICKEL STEELS, TYPE 304 STAINLESS STEEL, AND 5083-0 ALUMINUM ALLOY AT CRYOGENIC TEMPERATURES FOR WELDED AND NONWELDED CONSTRUCTION (CONT'D)

5083-0 Aluminum Alloy, Customary Units

				Specified Minimum Strengths at Room Temperature		Maximum Allowable Stress, ksi, for Metal Temperature,[1] °F, Not Exceeding								
Spec. No.	Alloy	Temper	Thickness, in.	Tensile, ksi	Yield, ksi	–320	–300	–250	–200	–150	–100	–50	0	100
Sheet and Plate														
SB-209	5083	0	0.051–1.500	40	18	15.6	15.3	14.5	13.8	13.1	12.5	12.1	11.4	11.4
			1.501–3.000	39	17	14.7	14.4	13.7	13.0	12.4	11.8	11.5	11.1	11.1
			3.001–5.000	38	16	13.9	13.6	12.9	12.2	11.6	11.1	10.8	10.7	10.7
			5.001–7.000	37	15	13.0	12.7	12.1	11.5	10.9	10.4	10.1	10.0	10.0
			7.001–8.000	36	14	12.1	11.9	11.3	10.7	10.2	9.7	9.4	9.3	9.3
Rods, Bars, and Shapes														
SB-221	5083	0	Up thru 5.000	39	16	13.9	13.6	12.9	12.2	11.6	11.1	10.8	10.7	10.7
Seamless Extruded Tube														
SB-241	5083	0	Up thru 5.000	39	16	13.9	13.6	12.9	12.2	11.6	11.1	10.8	10.7	10.7

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE ULT-23
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR 5%, 8%, AND 9% NICKEL STEELS, TYPE 304 STAINLESS STEEL, AND 5083-0 ALUMINUM ALLOY AT CRYOGENIC TEMPERATURES FOR WELDED AND NONWELDED CONSTRUCTION (CONT'D)

5% Nickel Steels, SI Units				8% and 9% Nickel Steels, SI Units			
Plates: SA-645[2]				Plates:[2] SA-353, SA-553 Type I, and SA-553 Type II Seamless Pipes and Tubes: SA-333 Grade 8 and SA-334 Grade 8 Forgings: SA-522			
		Welded Construction[3,4]				Welded Construction[3,4]	
Temperature,[1] °C	Nonwelded Construction, MPa	UTS 690 MPa	UTS 655 MPa	Temperature,[1] °C	Nonwelded Construction, MPa	UTS 690 MPa	UTS 655 MPa
−195	296	268	254	−195	302	268	254
−170	257	255	243	−170	283	255	243
−145	253	247	235	−145	267	247	235
−120	245	238	226	−120	252	238	226
−95	235	229	217	−95	239	229	217
−70	226	221	210	−70	228	220	210
−45	215	213	203	−45	218	214	203
−20	187	187	187	−40	197	197	187
40	187	187	187	40	197	197	187

Type 304 Stainless Steel, SI Units

		Specified Minimum Strengths at Room Temperature		Maximum Allowable Stress, MPa, for Temperatures,[1] °C, Not Exceeding								
Spec. No.	Grade	Tensile, MPa	Yield, MPa	−195	−170	−145	−120	−95	−70	−45	−20	40
SA-240 nonwelded construction	304	515	205	243	234	223	212	199	187	173	137	137
SA-240 welded construction	304	515	205	161	159	157	155	153	151	149	137	137

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE ULT-23
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES IN TENSION FOR 5%, 8%, AND 9% NICKEL STEELS, TYPE 304 STAINLESS STEEL, AND 5083-0 ALUMINUM ALLOY AT CRYOGENIC TEMPERATURES FOR WELDED AND NONWELDED CONSTRUCTION (CONT'D)

5083-0 Aluminum Alloy, SI Units

Spec. No.	Alloy	Temper	Thickness, mm	Specified Minimum Strengths at Room Temperature: Tensile, MPa	Yield, MPa	Maximum Allowable Stress, MPa, for Metal Temperature,[1] °C, Not Exceeding: −195	−170	−145	−120	−95	−70	−45	−20	40
Sheet and Plate														
SB-209	5083	0	1.30–38.10	276	124	107	103	97.9	93.6	89.3	85.8	83.4	78.8	78.8
			38.13–76.20	269	117	101	96.8	92.4	88.3	84.5	81.0	79.3	76.8	76.8
			76.23–127.00	262	110	95.7	91.2	86.9	82.7	79.1	76.2	74.4	73.5	73.5
			127.03–177.80	255	103	89.5	85.3	81.7	77.9	74.3	71.4	69.6	69.0	69.0
			199.83–203.20	248	97	83.4	80.0	76.1	72.6	69.5	66.5	64.8	64.4	64.4
Rods, Bars, and Shapes														
SB-221	5083	0	Up thru 127.00	269	110	95.7	91.2	86.9	82.7	79.1	76.2	74.4	73.5	73.5
Seamless Extruded Tube														
SB-241	5083	0	Up thru 127.00	269	110	95.7	91.2	86.9	82.7	79.1	76.2	74.4	73.5	73.5

NOTES:

(1) Stress values at intermediate temperatures may be interpolated.

(2) Minimum thickness after forming any section subject to pressure shall be $^{3}/_{16}$ in. (5 mm), and maximum thickness of the base metal at welds shall be 2 in. (51 mm).

(3) The minimum tensile strength of the reduced tension specimen in accordance with QW-462.1 shall not be less than 100 ksi (690 MPa) or 95 ksi (655 MPa), respectively, at room temperature. Choice of UTS depends on welding process and filler metal used in the construction.

(4) Welded construction allowable stresses apply only to butt joints.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ULT-29 STIFFENING RINGS FOR SHELLS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Rules covering the design of stiffening rings are given in UG-29. The design shall be based on the appropriate chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material used in the ring at 100°F (38°C).

ULT-30 STRUCTURAL ATTACHMENTS

(a) See ULT-5(g) for limitations on material used in permanent structural attachments in 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steel vessels. See ULT-5(g) for limitations on material used in permanent structural attachments in Type 304 stainless steel vessels.

(b) The structural details of supporting lugs, rings, saddles, straps, and other types of supports shall be given special design consideration to minimize local stresses in attachment areas.

(c) Attachments to 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steel vessels shall be made using a weld procedure qualified to Section IX.

(d) Attachments to Type 304 stainless steel vessels shall be made using a weld procedure meeting ULT-82.

ULT-56 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

(a) For 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steels, the provisions of UHT-56, UHT-80, and UHT-81 apply.

(b) For 5083 aluminum, the provisions of UNF-56 apply.

(c) For Type 304 stainless steel vessels, the provisions of UHA-32 apply

ULT-57 EXAMINATION

(a) All butt joints shall be examined by 100% radiography, except as permitted in UW-11(a)(7).

(b) All attachment welds, and all welded joints subject to pressure not examined by radiography or ultrasonic testing, shall be given a liquid penetrant examination either before or after hydrotest. Relevant indications are those which result from imperfections. Any relevant linear indication greater than $^{1}/_{16}$ in. (1.6 mm) shall be repaired or removed.

When a pneumatic test is conducted in accordance with ULT-100, these liquid penetrant examinations shall be performed prior to the pneumatic test.

(c) For 5083 aluminum, the requirements of UNF-91 apply.

FABRICATION

ULT-75 GENERAL

The rules in the following paragraphs apply specifically to the fabrication of pressure vessels and vessel parts that are constructed to this Part and shall be used in conjunction with the requirements for fabrication in Subsection A and Part UW of Subsection B.

ULT-79 FORMING SHELL SECTIONS AND HEADS

The requirements and limitations of UNF-77 apply for 5083 aluminum, and of UHT-79 for 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steel.

ULT-82 WELDING

(a) A separate welding procedure qualification shall be made, as prescribed in Section IX, Part QW, except that the procedure qualification tests on tension specimens conforming to QW-462.1 and prescribed in QW-451 shall be four in number, two of which when tested at room temperature shall meet the minimum tensile strength requirements for room temperature as listed in Table ULT-82 and two of which when tested at or below the vessel minimum allowable temperature shall meet the minimum tensile strength requirements for that test temperature as listed in the applicable table, except that the requirements for the two tests at vessel minimum allowable temperature shall not be applied to procedure qualification for 5083 aluminum welded with 5183 aluminum filler metal.

(b) For 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steels, the provisions of UHT-82, UHT-83, UHT-84, and UHT-85 apply.

(c) For Type 304 stainless steel vessels, the following provisions apply.

(1) The welding processes that may be used are limited to gas metal arc, gas tungsten arc, and submerged arc.

(2) Filler metal is limited to SFA-5.9, AWS Classifications ER308L and ER308L(Si). The filler metal shall conform to the SFA specified percentage composition limits.

(3) A determination of delta ferrite of each lot of filler metal shall be made by the use of the chemical analysis from (c)(2) above, in conjunction with Fig. ULT-82. Additionally, for submerged arc welds, a determination of delta ferrite shall be made in conjunction with Fig. ULT-82, by the use of the chemical analysis of lots of electrode and flux used for production welds. The acceptable delta ferrite shall not be less than 6 FN nor greater than 14 FN.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE ULT-82
MINIMUM TENSILE STRENGTH REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDING PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION TESTS ON TENSION SPECIMENS CONFORMING TO QW-462.1

Temp.,[1] °F	SA-645, Customary Units — Welded Construction		SA-353, SA-553 Types I and II, SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334, SA-522, Customary Units — Welded Construction	
	UTS 100 ksi	UTS 95 ksi	UTS 100 ksi	UTS 95 ksi
−320	136	129	136	129
−300	133	126	133	126
−250	125	121	125	121
−200	122	116	122	116
−150	117	111	117	111
−100	112	107	112	107
− 50	108	103	108	103
0	95	95	100	95
100	95	95	100	95

5083-0 Aluminum Alloy, Customary Units

Spec. No.	Thickness, in.	Minimum Tensile Strength, ksi, for Metal Temperature,[1] °F, Not Exceeding								
		−320	−300	−250	−200	−150	−100	−50	0	100
Sheet and Plate										
SB-209	0.051–1.500	55.2	53.3	48.2	43.8	41.4	40.4	40	40	40
	1.501–3.000	53.8	52	47	42.7	40.4	39.4	39.1	39	39
	3.001–5.000	52.5	50.7	45.8	41.6	39.4	38.4	38.1	38	38
	5.001–7.000	51.1	49.3	44.6	40.5	38.3	37.4	37.1	37	37
	7.001–8.000	49.7	48	43.4	39.4	37.3	36.4	36.1	36	36
Rods, Bars, and Shapes										
SB-221	Up thru 5.000	53.8	52	47	42.7	40.4	39.4	39.1	39	39
Seamless Extruded Tube										
SB-241	Up thru 5.000	53.8	52	47	42.7	40.4	39.4	39.1	39	39

Type 304 Stainless Steel, Customary Units

Spec. No.	Minimum Tensile Strength, ksi, for Metal Temperature,[1] °F, Not Exceeding								
	−320	−300	−250	−200	−150	−100	−50	0	100
SA-240	82.7	82.1	80.9	79.7	78.5	77.4	76.2	75.0	75.0

Table continues on following page

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE ULT-82
MINIMUM TENSILE STRENGTH REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDING PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION TESTS ON TENSION SPECIMENS CONFORMING TO QW-462.1 (CONT'D)

Temp.,[1] °C	SA-645, SI Units — Welded Construction UTS 689 MPa	SA-645, SI Units — Welded Construction UTS 655 MPa	SA-353, SA-553 Types I and II, SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334, SA-522, SI Units — Welded Construction UTS 689 MPa	SA-353, SA-553 Types I and II, SA-333 Grade 8, SA-334, SA-522, SI Units — Welded Construction UTS 655 MPa
−196	938	889	938	889
−184	917	869	917	869
−156	862	834	862	834
−129	841	800	841	800
−101	807	765	807	765
−73	772	738	772	738
−46	745	710	745	710
−18	655	655	689	655
38	655	655	689	655

5083-0 Aluminum Alloy, SI Units

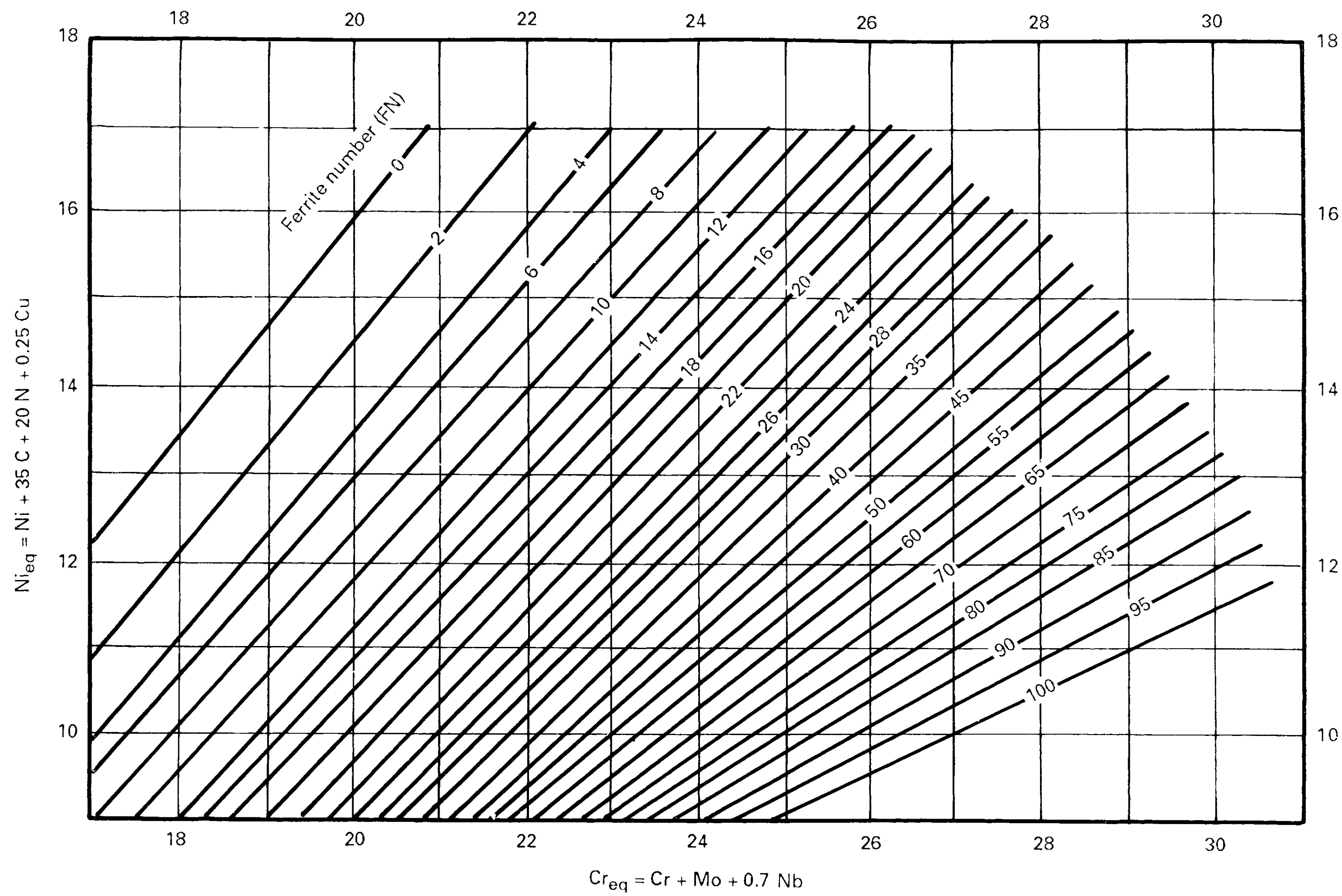
Spec. No.	Thickness, mm	Minimum Tensile Strength, MPa, for Metal Temperature,[1] °C, Not Exceeding −196	−184	−156	−129	−101	−73	−46	−18	38
Sheet and Plate										
SB-209	1.30–38.10	381	368	332	302	285	279	276	276	276
	38.13–76.20	371	359	324	294	279	272	270	269	269
	76.23–127.00	362	350	316	287	272	265	263	262	262
	127.03–177.80	352	340	308	279	264	258	256	255	255
	177.83–203.20	343	331	299	272	257	251	249	248	248
Rods, Bars, and Shapes										
SB-221	Up thru 127.00	371	358	324	294	279	272	270	269	269
Seamless Extruded Tube										
SB-241	Up thru 127.00	371	358	324	294	279	272	270	269	269

Type 304 Stainless Steel, SI Units

Spec. No.	Minimum Tensile Strength, MPa, for Metal Temperature,[1] °C, Not Exceeding −196	−184	−156	−129	−101	−73	−46	−18	38
SA-240	570	566	558	550	541	534	525	517	517

NOTE:
(1) Strength values at intermediate temperatures may be interpolated.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:

(a) The actual nitrogen content is preferred. If this is not available, the following applicable nitrogen value shall be used:

(1) GMAW welds - 0.08%, except that when self shielding flux cored electrodes are used - 0.12%.

(2) Welds made using other processes - 0.06%.

(b) This diagram is identical to the WRC-1992 Diagram, except that the solidification mode lines have been removed for ease of use.

FIG. ULT-82 WELD METAL DELTA FERRITE CONTENT

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ULT-86 MARKING ON PLATE AND OTHER MATERIALS

For 5%, 8%, or 9% nickel steel the requirements of UHT-86 apply. For the use of other markings in lieu of stamping, see UG-77(b).

INSPECTION AND TESTS

ULT-90 GENERAL

The provisions for inspection and testing in Subsections A and B shall apply to vessels and vessel parts constructed of materials covered by this Part, except as modified herein.

ULT-99 HYDROSTATIC TEST

The vessel shall be hydrostatically pressure tested at ambient temperature in the operating position for a minimum of 15 min, using the following requirements of (a) or (b), whichever is applicable.

(a) Except for vessels covered by (b) below, a hydrostatic test shall be performed in accordance with UG-99, except that the ratio of stresses is not applied, and the test pressure shall be at least 1.4 times the design pressure at 100°F (38°C).

(b) When the test procedure in (a) above will cause a nominal membrane stress greater than 95% of specified minimum yield strength or 50% of specified minimum tensile strength of the material in any part of the vessel, the hydrostatic test may be conducted at a pressure that limits the nominal membrane stress at such part to the lesser of those values. When these conditions limit the hydrostatic test pressure to a value less than 110% of the maximum allowable working pressure at 100°F (38°C), a pneumatic test in accordance with ULT-100 shall also be conducted.

(c) Vessels which are to be installed in the vertical position may be tested in the horizontal position provided all components of the vessel are hydrostatically tested for a minimum of 15 min at a pressure not less than 1.4 times the design pressure at 100°F (38°C) plus the equivalent of the head of the test liquid in the operating position.

ULT-100 PNEUMATIC TEST

(a) A pneumatic test prescribed in this paragraph may be used in lieu of the hydrostatic test prescribed in ULT-99 for vessels that are either:

(1) so designed and/or supported that they cannot safely be filled with water, or

(2) are not readily dried, and will be used in services where traces of testing liquid cannot be tolerated.

(b) The vessel shall be tested at ambient temperature for a minimum of 15 min.

(c) The pneumatic test shall be performed in accordance with UG-100, except that the ratio of stresses is not applied, and the test pressure shall be at least 1.2 times the internal pressure at 100°F (38°C). In no case shall the pneumatic test pressure exceed 1.2 times the basis for calculated test pressure as defined in Appendix 3, para. 3-2.

MARKING AND REPORTS

ULT-115 GENERAL

The provisions for marking and reports in UG-115 through UG-120 shall apply to vessels constructed to this Part, with the following supplements to the marking and Manufacturer's Data Reports:

(a) The vessel markings shall be in accordance with UG-116 except:

(1) the letters ULT shall be applied below the U Symbol;

(2) the following markings shall be used instead of those in UG-116(a)(3) and UG-116(b)(1)(a):

Maximum Allowable Working Pressure: ____psi at 100°F
Minimum Allowable Temperature: Minus ____°F

Service Restricted to the Following	Operating Temperature
Liquid __________	Minus ____°F
Liquid __________	Minus ____°F
Liquid __________	Minus ____°F
Liquid __________	Minus ____°F

NOTES APPLICABLE TO MARKINGS:

(1) Minimum allowable temperature is the temperature of the coldest cryogenic liquid which will be admitted to or stored within the vessel.

(2) Operating temperature for the cryogenic liquid is its saturation temperature at MAWP. All liquids that may be contained in the vessel shall be listed.

(b) On the Manufacturer's Data Report, under Remarks, show the additional marking notations from (a) above.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(c) Unless the requirements of (c)(1) and (2) below are met, for 5%, 8%, and 9% nickel steels, the use of nameplates is mandatory for shell thicknesses below $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm); nameplates are preferred in all thicknesses.

(1) The materials shall be limited to aluminum as follows: SB-209 Alloys 3003, 5083, 5454, and 6061; SB-241 Alloys 3003, 5083, 5086, 5454, 6061, and 6063; and SB-247 Alloys 3003, 5083, and 6061.

(2) The minimum nominal plate thickness shall be 0.249 in. (6.32 mm), or the minimum nominal pipe thickness shall be 0.133 in. (3.38 mm).

PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

ULT-125 GENERAL

The provisions of UG-125 through UG-136 shall apply to vessels constructed to this Part; the vessel shall be equipped with a safety relief valve suitable for low temperature service and installed to remain at ambient temperature except when relieving.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

04

PART UHX
RULES FOR SHELL-AND-TUBE HEAT EXCHANGERS

UHX-1 SCOPE

The rules in UHX cover the minimum requirements for design, fabrication and inspection of shell-and-tube heat exchangers.

UHX-2 MATERIALS AND METHODS OF FABRICATION

Materials and methods of fabrication of heat exchangers shall be in accordance with Subsections A, B, and C.

UHX-3 TERMINOLOGY

UHX-3.1 U-Tube Heat Exchanger. Heat exchanger with one stationary tubesheet attached to the shell and channel. The heat exchanger contains a bundle of U-tubes attached to the tubesheet [see Fig. UHX-3, sketch (a)].

UHX-3.2 Fixed Tubesheet Heat Exchanger. Heat exchanger with two stationary tubesheets, each attached to the shell and channel. The heat exchanger contains a bundle of straight tubes connecting both tubesheets [see Fig. UHX-3, sketch (b)].

UHX-3.3 Floating Tubesheet Heat Exchanger. Heat exchanger with one stationary tubesheet attached to the shell and channel, and one floating tubesheet that can move axially. The heat exchanger contains a bundle of straight tubes connecting both tubesheets [see Fig. UHX-3, sketch (c)].

UHX-4 DESIGN

UHX-4(a) The design of all components shall be in accordance with the applicable rules of Subsection A, Mandatory Appendices, and this Part.

UHX-4(b) The design of a bolted flat cover where the cover bears against a gasket at the pass partition shall consider the effects of deflection.

UHX-4(c) The design of flanges shall consider the effects of pass partition gasketing in determining the minimum required bolt loads, W_{m1} and W_{m2}, of Appendix 2. When the tubesheet is gasketed between the shell and channel flanges, the shell and channel flange bolt loads are identical and shall be treated as flange pairs in accordance with Appendix 2.

UHX-4(d) Distribution and vapor belts where the shell is not continuous across the belt shall be designed in accordance with UHX-17.

UHX-4(e) Requirements for tubes shall be as follows.

UHX-4(e)(1) The allowable axial tube stresses in fixed and floating tubesheet heat exchangers given in this Part (UHX-13 and UHX-14) supersede the requirements of UG-23.

UHX-4(e)(2) The thickness of U-tubes after forming shall not be less than the design thickness.

UHX-4(f) Rules for U-tube heat exchangers are covered in UHX-12.

UHX-4(g) Rules for fixed tubesheet heat exchangers are covered in UHX-13.

UHX-4(h) Rules for floating tubesheet heat exchangers are covered in UHX-14.

UHX-10 GENERAL CONDITIONS OF APPLICABILITY FOR TUBESHEETS

UHX-10(a) The tubesheet shall be flat, circular, and of uniform thickness. The tubesheet shall be uniformly perforated over a nominally circular area, in either equilateral triangular or square patterns. However, untubed lanes for pass partitions are permitted.

UHX-10(b) The tube side and shell side pressures are assumed to be uniform. These rules do not cover weight loadings or pressure drop.

When these conditions of applicability are not satisfied, see U-2(g).

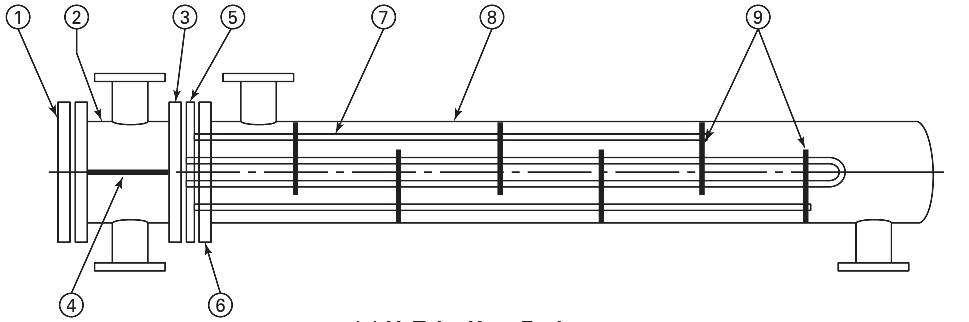
UHX-11 TUBESHEET CHARACTERISTICS

UHX-11.1 Scope. These rules cover the determination of the ligament efficiencies, effective depth of the tube side pass partition groove, and effective elastic constants to be used in the calculation of U-tube, fixed, and floating tubesheets.

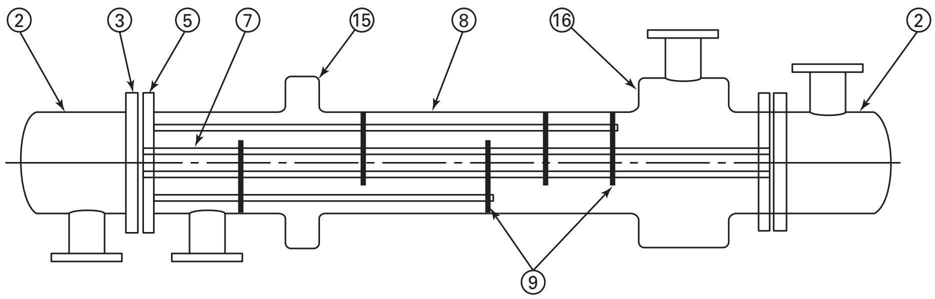
--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

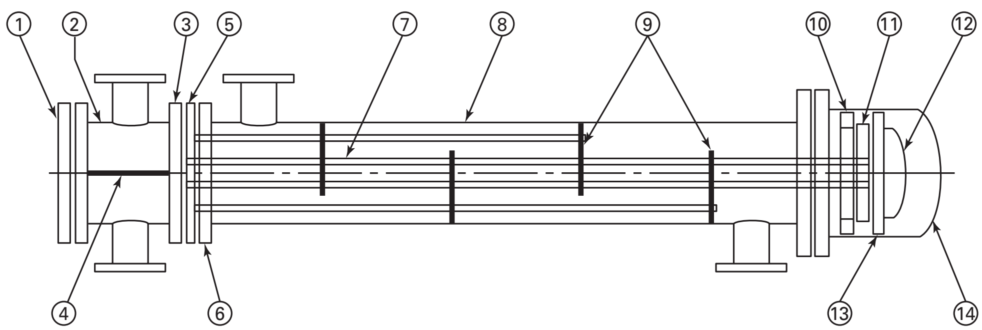
Not for Resale



(a) U–Tube Heat Exchanger



(b) Fixed Tubesheet Heat Exchanger

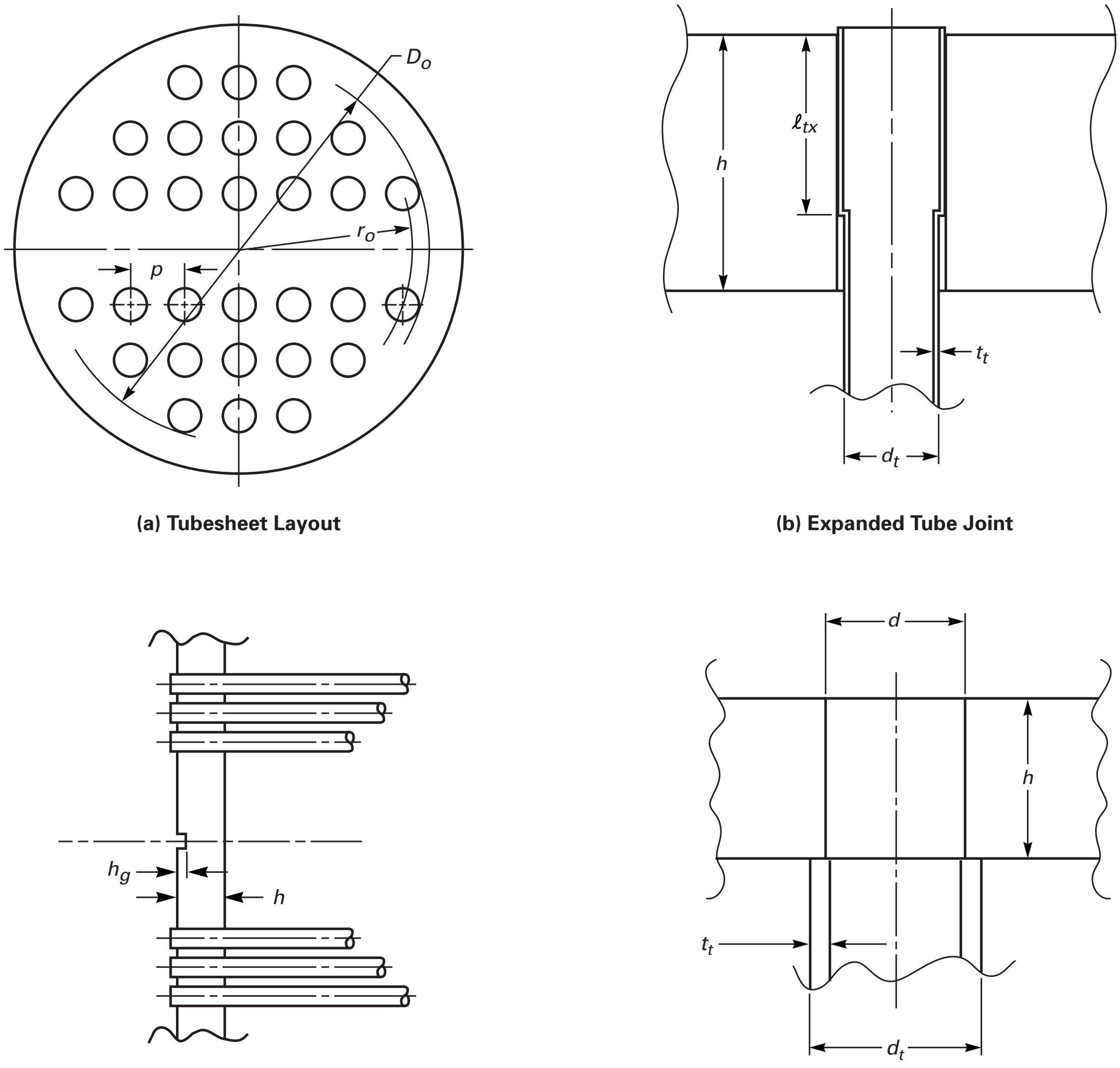


(c) Floating Tubesheet Heat Exchanger

1 Channel cover (bolted flat cover)
2 Channel
3 Channel flange
4 Pass partition
5 Stationary tubesheet
6 Shell flange
7 Tubes
8 Shell
9 Baffles or support plates
10 Floating head backing device
11 Floating tubesheet
12 Floating head
13 Floating head flange
14 Shell cover
15 Expansion bellows
16 Distribution or vapor belt

FIG. UHX-3 TERMINOLOGY OF HEAT EXCHANGER COMPONENTS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Tubesheet Layout

(b) Expanded Tube Joint

(c) Tube Side Pass Partition Groove Depth

(d) Tubes Welded to Backside of Tubesheet

NOTE: $d_t - 2t_t \leq d < d_t$

FIG. UHX-11.1 TUBESHEET GEOMETRY

UHX-11.2 Conditions of Applicability. The general conditions of applicability given UHX-10 apply.

UHX-11.3 Nomenclature. The symbols described below are used for determining the effective elastic constants.

A_L = total area of untubed lanes
= $U_{L1}L_{L1} + U_{L2}L_{L2} + ...$ (limited to $4D_op$)

c_t = tubesheet corrosion allowance on the tube side; $c_t = 0$ in the uncorroded condition

D_o = equivalent diameter of outer tube limit circle [see Fig. UHX-11.1(a)]

d = diameter of tube hole

d_t = nominal outside diameter of tubes

d^* = effective tube hole diameter

E = modulus of elasticity for tubesheet material at tubesheet design temperature

E_t = modulus of elasticity for tube material at tubesheet design temperature

E^* = effective modulus of elasticity of tubesheet in perforated region

NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

h = tubesheet thickness
h_g = tube side pass partition groove depth [see Fig. UHX-11.1(c)]
h'_g = effective tube side pass partition groove depth
L_{L1}, L_{L2}... = length(s) of untubed lane(s) (see Fig. UHX-11.2)
ℓ_{tx} = expanded length of tube in tubesheet ($0 \leq \ell_{tx} \leq h$) [see Fig. UHX-11.1(b)]. An expanded tube-to-tubesheet joint is produced by applying pressure inside the tube such that contact is established between the tube and tubesheet. In selecting an appropriate value of expanded length, the designer shall consider the degree of initial expansion, differences in thermal expansion, or other factors that could result in loosening of the tubes within the tubesheet.
MAX [(a),(b),(c),...] = greatest of *a, b, c, ...*
MIN [(a),(b),(c),...] = smallest of *a, b, c...*
p = tube pitch
p^* = effective tube pitch
r_o = radius to outermost tube hole center [see Fig. UHX-11.1(a)]
S = allowable stress for tubesheet material at tubesheet design temperature (see UG-23)
S_t = allowable stress for tube material at tubesheet design temperature (see UG-23)

NOTE: For a welded tube or pipe, use the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product. When the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product is not available, divide the allowable stress of the welded product by 0.85.

t_t = nominal tube wall thickness
U_{L1}, U_{L2}... = center-to-center distance(s) between adjacent tube rows of untubed lane(s), but not to exceed $4p$ (see Fig. UHX-11.2)
μ = basic ligament efficiency for shear
μ^* = effective ligament efficiency for bending
v^* = effective Poisson's ratio in perforated region of tubesheet
ρ = tube expansion depth ratio = ℓ_{tx}/h, ($0 \leq \rho \leq 1$)

UHX-11.4 Design Considerations

UHX-11.4(a) Elastic moduli and allowable stresses shall be taken at the design temperatures. However, for cases involving thermal loading, it is permitted to use the operating temperatures instead of the design temperatures.

UHX-11.4(b) When the values calculated in this section are to be used for fixed tubesheets, they shall be determined in both the corroded and uncorroded conditions.

UHX-11.4(c) ρ may be either calculated or chosen as a constant.

UHX-11.5 Calculation Procedure

UHX-11.5.1 Determination of Effective Dimensions and Ligament Efficiencies. From the geometry (see Fig. UHX-11.1 and Fig. UHX-11.2) and material properties of the exchanger, calculate the required parameters in accordance with (a) or (b) below.

UHX-11.5.1(a) For geometries where the tubes extend through the tubesheet [see Fig. UHX-11.1(b)], calculate D_o, μ, d^*, p^*, μ^*, and h'_g.

$$D_o = 2r_o + d_t$$

$$\mu = \frac{p - d_t}{p}$$

$$d^* = \text{MAX}\left\{\left[d_t - 2t_t\left(\frac{E_t}{E}\right)\left(\frac{S_t}{S}\right)\rho\right], \left[d_t - 2t_t\right]\right\}$$

$$p^* = \frac{p}{\left(1 - \dfrac{4\,\text{MIN}\left[(A_L),(4D_o p)\right]}{\pi D_o^2}\right)^{1/2}}$$

$$\mu^* = \frac{p^* - d^*}{p^*}$$

$$h'_g = \text{MAX}\left[(h_g - c_t),(0)\right]$$

UHX-11.5.1(b) For tubes welded to the backside of the tubesheet [see Fig. UHX-11.1(d)], calculate D_o, μ, p^*, μ^*, and h'_g.

$$D_o = 2r_o + d$$

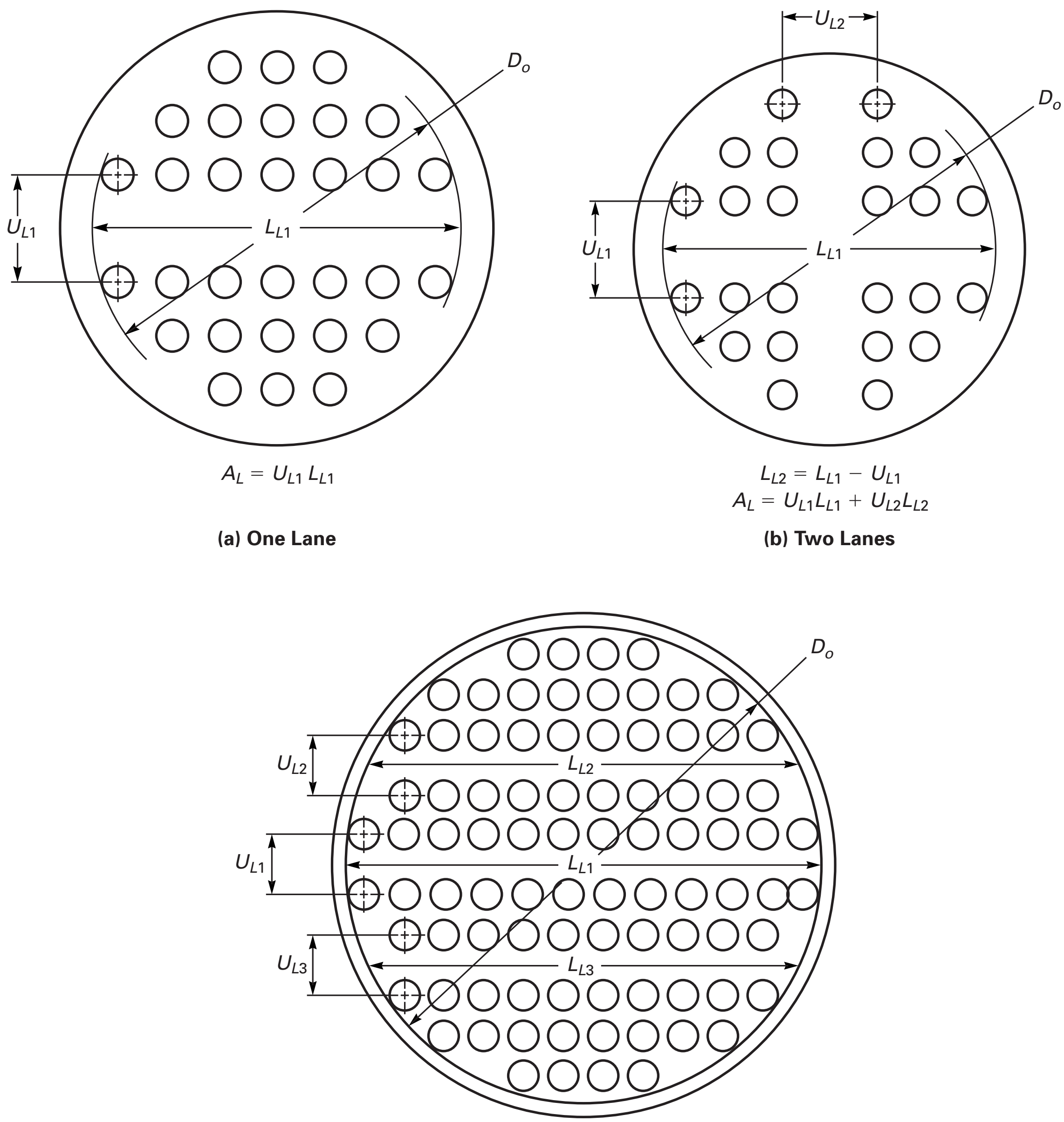
$$\mu = \frac{p - d}{p}$$

$$p^* = \frac{p}{\left(1 - \dfrac{4\,\text{MIN}\left[(A_L),(4D_o p)\right]}{\pi D_o^2}\right)^{1/2}}$$

$$\mu^* = \frac{p^* - d}{p^*}$$

$$h'_g = \text{MAX}\left[(h_g - c_t), (0)\right]$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



$A_L = U_{L1}\,L_{L1}$

(a) One Lane

$L_{L2} = L_{L1} - U_{L1}$

$A_L = U_{L1}L_{L1} + U_{L2}L_{L2}$

(b) Two Lanes

$A_L = U_{L1}L_{L1} + U_{L2}L_{L2} + U_{L3}L_{L3}$

(c) Three Lanes

FIG. UHX-11.2 TYPICAL UNTUBED LANE CONFIGURATIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UHX-11.5.2 Determination of Effective Elastic Properties. Determine the values for E^*/E and ν^* relative to h/p using either Fig. UHX-11.3 (equilateral triangular pattern) or Fig. UHX-11.4 (square pattern).

UHX-12 RULES FOR THE DESIGN OF U-TUBE TUBESHEETS

UHX-12.1 Scope. These rules cover the design of tubesheets for U-tube heat exchangers. The tubesheet may have one of the six configurations shown in Fig. UHX-12.1:

UHX-12.1(a) Configuration a: tubesheet integral with shell and channel;

UHX-12.1(b) Configuration b: tubesheet integral with shell and gasketed with channel, extended as a flange;

UHX-12.1(c) Configuration c: tubesheet integral with shell and gasketed with channel, not extended as a flange;

UHX-12.1(d) Configuration d: tubesheet gasketed with shell and channel;

UHX-12.1(e) Configuration e: tubesheet gasketed with shell and integral with channel, extended as a flange;

UHX-12.1(f) Configuration f: tubesheet gasketed with shell and integral with channel, not extended as a flange.

UHX-12.2 Conditions of Applicability. The general conditions of applicability given in UHX-10 apply.

UHX-12.3 Nomenclature. The symbols described below are used for the design of the tubesheet. Symbols D_o, E^*, h'_g, μ, μ^*, and ν^* are defined in UHX-11.

A = outside diameter of tubesheet

C = bolt circle diameter (see Appendix 2)

D_c = inside channel diameter

D_s = inside shell diameter

E = modulus of elasticity for tubesheet material at design temperature

E_c = modulus of elasticity for channel material at design temperature

E_s = modulus of elasticity for shell material at design temperature

NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

G_1 = midpoint of contact between flange and tubesheet

G_c = diameter of channel gasket load reaction (see Appendix 2)

G_s = diameter of shell gasket load reaction (see Appendix 2)

h = tubesheet thickness

MAX [(a),(b),(c),...] = greatest of *a, b, c,...*

P_s = shell side internal design pressure (see UG-21). For shell side vacuum use a negative value for P_s.

P_t = tube side internal design pressure (see UG-21). For tube side vacuum use a negative value for P_t.

S = allowable stress for tubesheet material at tubesheet design temperature (see UG-23)

S_c = allowable stress for channel material at design temperature

S_s = allowable stress for shell material at design temperature

NOTE: For a welded tube or pipe, use the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product. When the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product is not available, divide the allowable stress of the welded product by 0.85.

$S_{y,c}$ = yield strength for channel material at design temperature.

$S_{y,s}$ = yield strength for shell material at design temperature.

NOTE: The yield strength shall be taken from Table Y-1 in Section II, Part D. When a yield strength value is not listed in Table Y-1, one may be obtained by using the procedure in UG-28(c)(2) Step 3.

$S_{PS,c}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for channel material at design temperature per UG-23(e)

$S_{PS,s}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for shell material at design temperature per UG-23(e)

t_c = channel thickness

t_s = shell thickness

W_c = channel flange design bolt load for the gasket seating condition. Use Formula 4 of 2-5(e) and see UHX-4(c).

W_s = shell flange design bolt load for the gasket seating condition. Use Formula 4 of 2-5(e) and see UHX-4(c).

W_{max} = maximum flange design bolt load = MAX [(W_c), (W_s)]

ν_c = Poisson's ratio of channel material

ν_s = Poisson's ratio of shell material

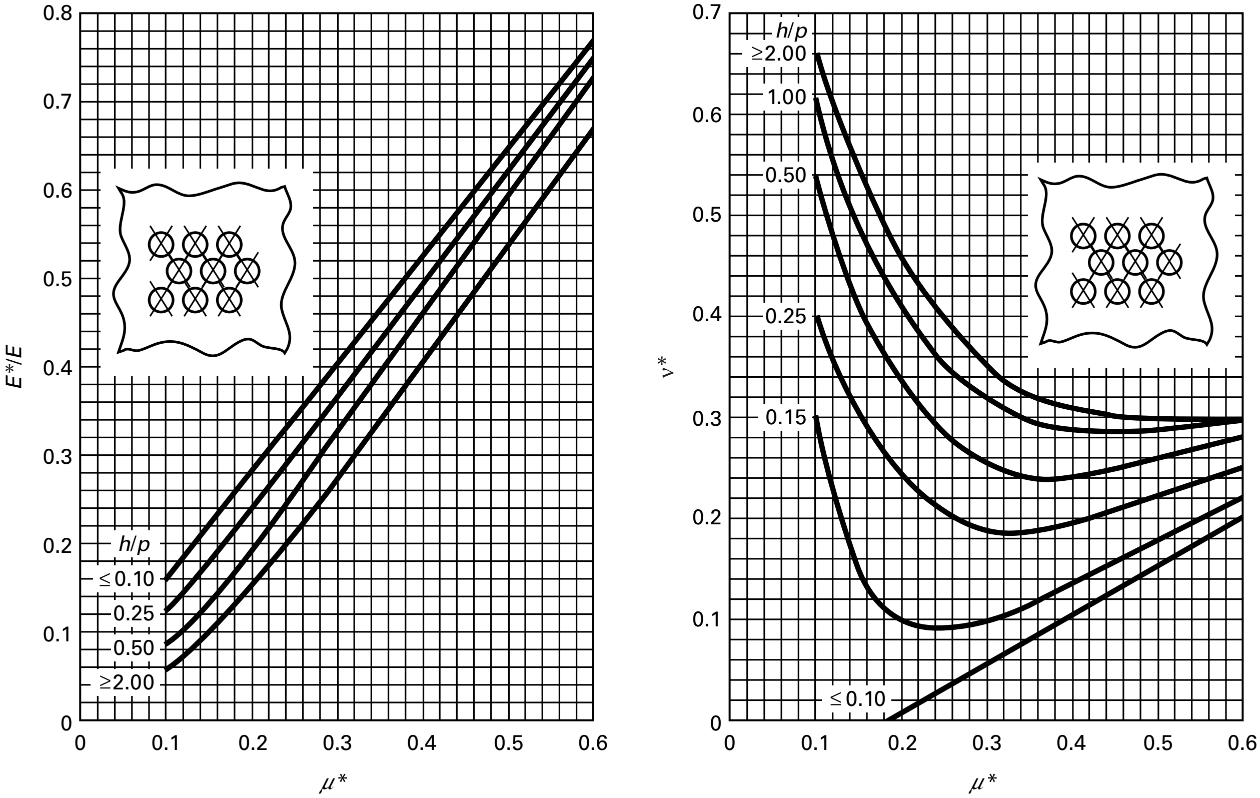
UHX-12.4 Design Considerations

UHX-12.4(a) The various loading conditions to be considered shall include the normal operating conditions, the startup conditions, the shutdown conditions, and the upset conditions, which may govern the design of the tubesheet.

For each of these conditions, the following loading cases shall be considered:

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



(a) E^*/E (Equilateral Triangular Pattern)

(b) ν^* (Equilateral Triangular Pattern)

(a) **Equilateral Triangular Pattern:** $E^*/E = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1\mu^* + \alpha_2\mu^{*2} + \alpha_3\mu^{*3} + \alpha_4\mu^{*4}$

h/p	α_0	α_1	α_2	α_3	α_4
0.10	0.0353	1.2502	−0.0491	0.3604	−0.6100
0.25	0.0135	0.9910	1.0080	−1.0498	0.0184
0.50	0.0054	0.5279	3.0461	−4.3657	1.9435
2.00	−0.0029	0.2126	3.9906	−6.1730	3.4307

(b) **Equilateral Triangular Pattern:** $\nu^* = \beta_0 + \beta_1\mu^* + \beta_2\mu^{*2} + \beta_3\mu^{*3} + \beta_4\mu^{*4}$

h/p	β_0	β_1	β_2	β_3	β_4
0.10	−0.0958	0.6209	−0.8683	2.1099	−1.6831
0.15	0.8897	−9.0855	36.1435	−59.5425	35.8223
0.25	0.7439	−4.4989	12.5779	−14.2092	5.7822
0.50	0.9100	−4.8901	12.4325	−12.7039	4.4298
1.00	0.9923	−4.8759	12.3572	−13.7214	5.7629
2.0	0.9966	−4.1978	9.0478	−7.9955	2.2398

GENERAL NOTES:

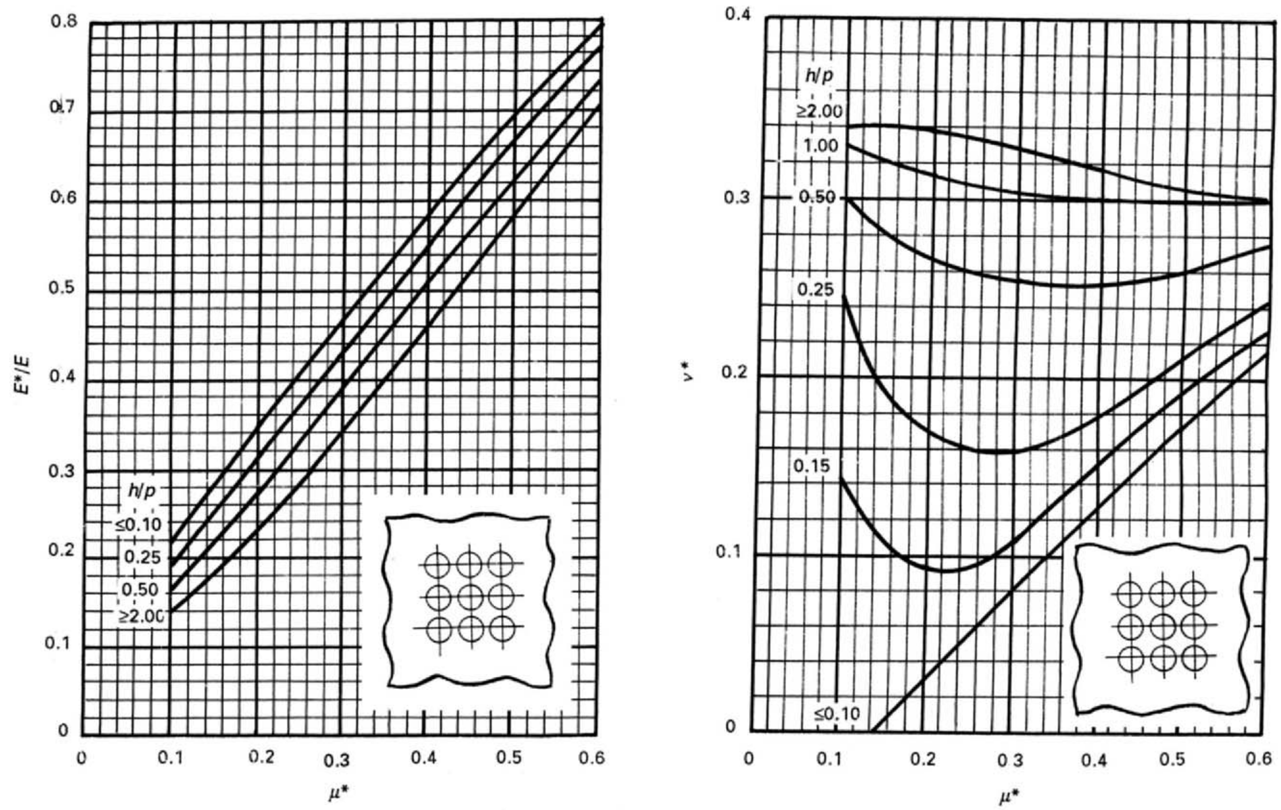
(a) The polynomial equations given in the tabular part of this Figure can be used in lieu of the curves.

(b) For both parts (a) and (b) in the tabular part of this Figure, these coefficients are only valid for $0.1 \le \mu^* \le 0.6$.

(c) For both parts (a) and (b) in the tabular part of this Figure: for values of *h/p* lower than 0.1, use *h/p* = 0.1; for values of *h/p* higher than 2.0, use *h/p* = 2.0.

FIG. UHX-11.3 CURVES FOR THE DETERMINATION OF E^*/E AND ν^* (EQUILATERAL TRIANGULAR PATTERN)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) E^*/E (Square Pattern)

(b) ν^* (Square Pattern)

(a) Square Pattern: $E^*/E = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1\mu^* + \alpha_2\mu^{*2} + \alpha_3\mu^{*3} + \alpha_4\mu^{*4}$

h/p	α_0	α_1	α_2	α_3	α_4
0.10	0.0676	1.5756	−1.2119	1.7715	−1.2628
0.25	0.0250	1.9251	−3.5230	6.9830	−5.0017
0.50	0.0394	1.3024	−1.1041	2.8714	−2.3994
2.00	0.0372	1.0314	−0.6402	2.6201	−2.1929

(b) Square Pattern: $\nu^* = \beta_0 + \beta_1\mu^* + \beta_2\mu^{*2} + \beta_3\mu^{*3} + \beta_4\mu^{*4}$

h/p	β_0	β_1	β_2	β_3	β_4
0.10	−0.0791	0.6008	−0.3468	0.4858	−0.3606
0.15	0.3345	−2.8420	10.9709	−15.8994	8.3516
0.25	0.4296	−2.6350	8.6864	−11.5227	5.8544
0.50	0.3636	−0.8057	2.0463	−2.2902	1.1862
1.00	0.3527	−0.2842	0.4354	−0.0901	−0.1590
2.00	0.3341	0.1260	−0.6920	0.6877	−0.0600

GENERAL NOTES:
(a) The polynomial equations given in the tabular part of this Figure can be used in lieu of the curves.
(b) For both parts (a) and (b) in the tabular part of this Figure, these coefficients are only valid for $0.1 \le \mu^* \le 0.6$.
(c) For both parts (a) and (b) in the tabular part of this Figure: for values of h/p lower than 0.1, use $h/p = 0.1$; for values of h/p higher than 2.0, use $h/p = 2.0$.

FIG. UHX-11.4 CURVES FOR THE DETERMINATION OF E^*/E AND ν^* (SQUARE PATTERN)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

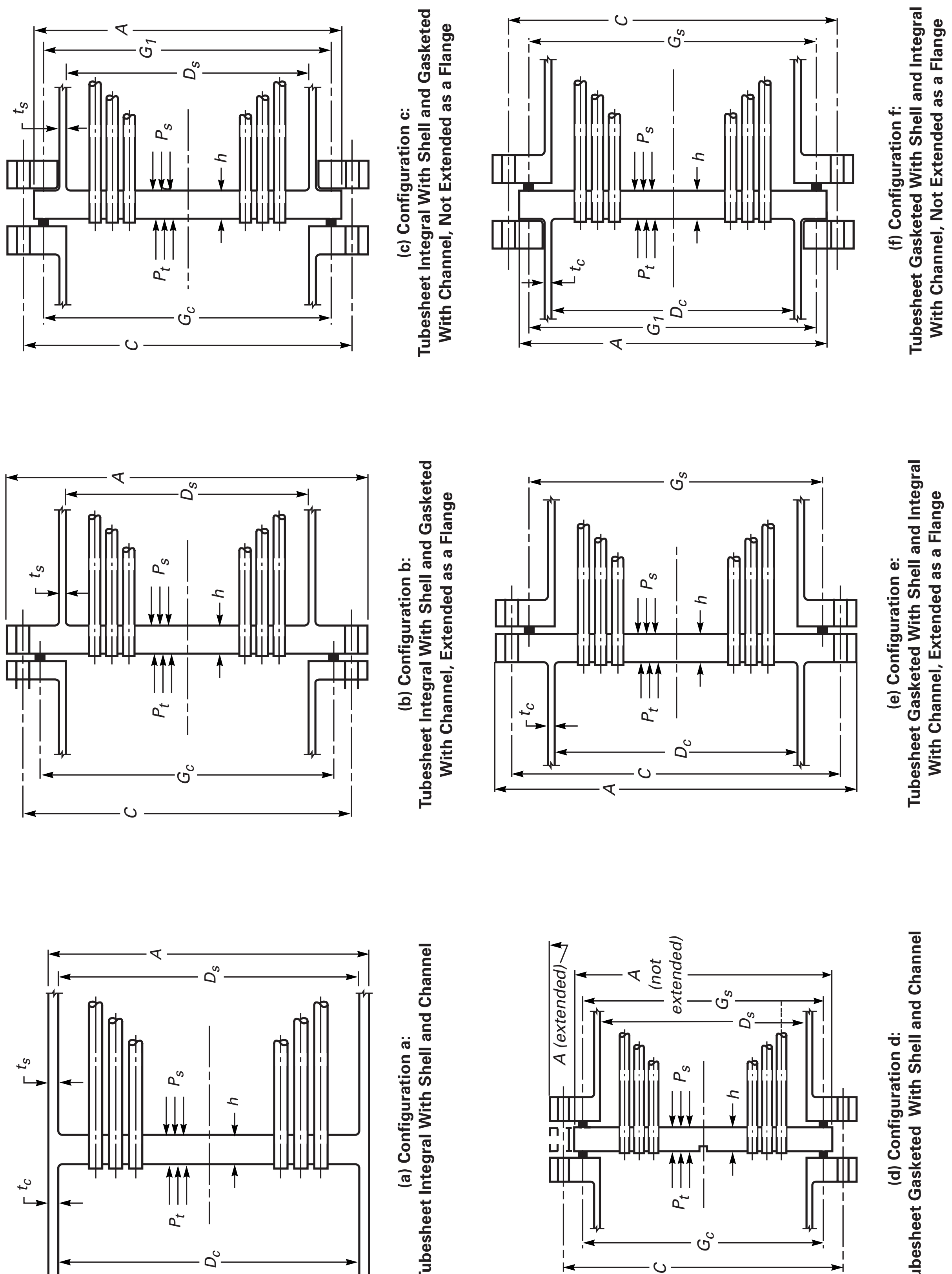


FIG. UHX-12.1 U-TUBE TUBESHEET CONFIGURATIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UHX-12.4(a)(1) Loading Case 1: Tube side pressure P_t acting only ($P_s = 0$).

UHX-12.4(a)(2) Loading Case 2: Shell side pressure P_s acting only ($P_t = 0$).

UHX-12.4(a)(3) Loading Case 3: Tube side pressure P_t and shell side pressure P_s acting simultaneously.

When vacuum exists, each loading case shall be considered with and without the vacuum.

When differential design pressure is specified by the user, the design shall be based only on loading case 3, as provided by UG-21.

The designer should take appropriate consideration of the stresses resulting from the pressure test required by UG-99 or UG-100 [see UG-99(d)].

UHX-12.4(b) As the calculation procedure is iterative, a value h shall be assumed for the tubesheet thickness to calculate and check that the maximum stresses in tubesheet, shell, and channel are within the maximum permissible stress limits. An initial assumed tubesheet thickness not less than that given by the following formula is recommended.

$$h = \left(\frac{1}{4\mu}\right)\left(\frac{D_o}{0.8S}\right)|P_s - P_t|$$

UHX-12.4(c) The designer shall consider the effect of deflections in the tubesheet design, especially when the tubesheet thickness h is less than the tube diameter.

UHX-12.5 Calculation Procedure. The procedure for the design of a tubesheet for a U-tube heat exchanger is as follows.

UHX-12.5.1 Step 1. Determine D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

UHX-12.5.2 Step 2. Calculate diameter ratios ρ_s and ρ_c.

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$\rho_s = \frac{D_s}{D_o}$$

Configurations d, e, and f:

$$\rho_s = \frac{G_s}{D_o}$$

Configurations a, e, and f:

$$\rho_c = \frac{D_c}{D_o}$$

Configurations b, c, and d:

$$\rho_c = \frac{G_c}{D_o}$$

For each loading case, calculate moment M_{TS} due to pressures P_s and P_t acting on the unperforated tubesheet rim.

$$M_{TS} = \frac{D_o^{\ 2}}{16}\left[(\rho_s - 1)(\rho_s^2 + 1)P_s - (\rho_c - 1)(\rho_c^2 + 1)P_t\right]$$

UHX-12.5.3 Step 3. Calculate h/p. If ρ changes, recalculate d^* and μ^* from UHX-11.5.1.

Determine E^*/E and ν^* relative to h/p from UHX-11.5.2.

Configurations a, b, c, e, and f: Proceed to Step 4.

Configuration d: Proceed to Step 5.

UHX-12.5.4 Step 4. Configurations a, b, and c: Calculate shell coefficients β_s, k_s, λ_s, δ_s, and ω_s.

$$\beta_s = \frac{\sqrt[4]{12(1 - \nu_s^2)}}{\sqrt{(D_s + t_s)t_s}}$$

$$k_s = \beta_s \frac{E_s t_s^3}{6(1 - \nu_s^2)}$$

$$\lambda_s = \frac{6\ D_s}{h^3} k_s \left(1 + h\beta_s + \frac{h^2\beta_s^2}{2}\right)$$

$$\delta_s = \frac{D_s^2}{4E_s\, t_s}\left(1 - \frac{\nu_s}{2}\right)$$

$$\omega_s = \rho_s\, k_s\, \beta_s\, \delta_s \left(1 + h\ \beta_s\right)$$

Configurations a, e, and f: Calculate channel coefficients β_c, k_c, λ_c, δ_c, and ω_c.

$$\beta_c = \frac{\sqrt[4]{12(1 - \nu_c^2)}}{\sqrt{(D_c + t_c)t_c}}$$

$$k_c = \beta_c \frac{E_c t_c^3}{6(1 - \nu_c^2)}$$

$$\lambda_c = \frac{6\ D_c}{h^3} k_c \left(1 + h\beta_c + \frac{h^2\beta_c^2}{2}\right)$$

$$\delta_c = \frac{D_c^2}{4E_c\, t_c}\left(1 - \frac{\nu_c}{2}\right)$$

$$\omega_c = \rho_c\, k_c\, \beta_c\, \delta_c \left(1 + h\ \beta_c\right)$$

UHX-12.5.5 Step 5. Calculate diameter ratio K.

$$K = \frac{A}{D_o}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Calculate coefficient F.

Configuration a:

$$F = \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*}(\lambda_s + \lambda_c + E \ln K)$$

Configurations b and c:

$$F = \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*}(\lambda_s + E \ln K)$$

Configuration d:

$$F = \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*}(E \ln K)$$

Configurations e and f:

$$F = \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*}(\lambda_c + E \ln K)$$

UHX-12.5.6 Step 6. For each loading case, calculate moment M^* acting on the unperforated tubesheet rim.

Configuration a:

$$M^* = M_{TS} + \omega_c P_t - \omega_s P_s$$

Configuration b:

$$M^* = M_{TS} - \omega_s P_s - \frac{(C - G_c)}{2\pi D_o} W_c$$

Configuration c:

$$M^* = M_{TS} - \omega_s P_s - \frac{(G_1 - G_c)}{2\pi D_o} W_c$$

Configuration d:

$$M^* = M_{TS} + \frac{(G_c - G_s)}{2\pi D_o} W_{\max}$$

Configuration e:

$$M^* = M_{TS} + \omega_c P_t + \frac{(C - G_s)}{2\pi D_o} W_s$$

Configuration f:

$$M^* = M_{TS} + \omega_c P_t + \frac{(G_1 - G_s)}{2\pi D_o} W_s$$

UHX-12.5.7 Step 7. For each loading case, calculate the maximum bending moments acting on the tubesheet at the periphery M_p and at the center M_o.

$$M_p = \frac{M^* - \frac{D_o{}^2}{32} F (P_s - P_t)}{1 + F}$$

$$M_o = M_p + \frac{D_o{}^2}{64}(3 + \nu^*)(P_s - P_t)$$

For each loading case, determine the maximum bending moment M acting on the tubesheet.

$$M = \mathrm{MAX}\left[|M_p|,\ |M_o|\right]$$

UHX-12.5.8 Step 8. For each loading case, calculate the tubesheet bending stress σ.

$$\sigma = \frac{6M}{\mu^*(h - h'_g)^2}$$

If $\sigma \leq 2S$, the assumed tubesheet thickness is acceptable for bending. Otherwise, increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

UHX-12.5.9 Step 9. For each loading case, calculate the average shear stress in the tubesheet at the outer edge of the perforated region.

$$\tau = \left(\frac{1}{4\mu}\right)\left(\frac{D_o}{h}\right)|P_s - P_t|$$

If $\tau \leq 0.8S$, the assumed tubesheet thickness is acceptable for shear. Otherwise, increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

Configurations a, b, c, e, and f: Proceed to Step 10.

Configuration d: The calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-12.5.10 Step 10. For each loading case, calculate the stresses in the shell and/or channel integral with the tubesheet.

Configurations a, b, and c: The shell shall have a uniform thickness of t_s for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_s t_s}$ adjacent to the tubesheet. Calculate the axial membrane stress $\sigma_{s,m}$, axial bending stress $\sigma_{s,b}$, and total axial stress σ_s, in the shell at its junction to the tubesheet.

$$\sigma_{s,m} = \frac{D_s^2}{4t_s(D_s + t_s)} P_s$$

$$\sigma_{s,b} = \frac{6}{t_s^2} k_s \left[\beta_s \delta_s P_s + 6 \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*} \frac{D_o}{h^3} \left(1 + \frac{h\beta_s}{2}\right) \times \left(M_p + \frac{D_o^2}{32}(P_s - P_t)\right) \right]$$

$$\sigma_s = |\sigma_{s,m}| + |\sigma_{s,b}|$$

Configurations a, e, and f: The channel shall have a uniform thickness of t_c for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_c t_c}$ adjacent to the tubesheet. Calculate the axial membrane stress $\sigma_{c,m}$, axial bending stress $\sigma_{c,b}$, and total axial stress σ_c, in the channel at its junction to the tubesheet .

$$\sigma_{c,m} = \frac{D_c^2}{4t_c(D_c + t_c)} P_t$$

$$\sigma_{c,b} = \frac{6}{t_c^2} k_c \left[\beta_c \delta_c P_t - 6 \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*} \frac{D_o}{h^3} \left(1 + \frac{h\beta_c}{2}\right) \times \left(M_p + \frac{D_o^2}{32}(P_s - P_t)\right) \right]$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$\sigma_c = |\sigma_{c,m}| + |\sigma_{c,b}|$$

Configuration a: If $\sigma_s \leq 1.5S_s$ and $\sigma_c \leq 1.5S_c$, the shell and channel designs are acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to Step 11.

Configurations b and c: If $\sigma_s \leq 1.5S_s$, the shell design is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to Step 11.

Configurations e and f: If $\sigma_c \leq 1.5S_c$, the channel design is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to Step 11.

UHX-12.5.11 Step 11. The design shall be reconsidered. One or a combination of the following three options may be used.

Option 1. Increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

Option 2. Increase the integral shell and/or channel thickness as follows:

Configurations a, b, and c: If $\sigma_s > 1.5S_s$, increase the shell thickness t_s.

Configurations a, e, and f: If $\sigma_c > 1.5S_c$ increase the channel thickness t_c.

If it is necessary to adjust D_s or D_c, return to Step 2; otherwise, return to Step 4.

Option 3. Perform a simplified elastic-plastic calculation for each applicable loading case by using a reduced effective modulus for the integral shell and/or channel to reflect the anticipated load shift resulting from plastic action at the integral shell and/or channel-to-tubesheet junction. This may result in a higher tubesheet bending stress σ. This option shall not be used at temperatures where the time-dependent properties govern the allowable stress.

Configuration a: This option may only be used when $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s}$ and $\sigma_c \leq S_{PS,c}$. In Step 4, if $\sigma_s > 1.5\ S_s$, replace E_s with $E_s^* = E_s\sqrt{1.5S_s/\sigma_s}$ and recalculate k_s and λ_s. If $\sigma_c > 1.5\ S_c$, replace E_c with $E_c^* = E_c\sqrt{1.5S_c/\sigma_c}$ and recalculate k_c and λ_c.

Configurations b and c: This option may only be used when $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s}$. In Step 4, replace E_s with $E_s^* = E_s\sqrt{1.5S_s/\sigma_s}$ and recalculate k_s and λ_s.

Configurations e and f: This option may only be used when $\sigma_c \leq S_{PS,c}$. In Step 4, replace E_c with $E_c^* = E_c\sqrt{1.5S_c/\sigma_c}$ and recalculate k_c and λ_c.

Configurations a, b, c, e, and f: Perform Steps 5 and 7, and recalculate the tubesheet bending stress σ given in Step 8.

If $\sigma \leq 2S$, the assumed tubesheet thickness h is acceptable and the design is complete. Otherwise, the design shall be reconsidered by using Option 1 or 2.

UHX-13 RULES FOR THE DESIGN OF FIXED TUBESHEETS

UHX-13.1 Scope. These rules cover the design of tubesheets for fixed tubesheet heat exchangers. The tubesheets may have one of the four configurations shown in Fig. UHX-13.1:

UHX-13.1(a) Configuration a: tubesheet integral with shell and channel;

UHX-13.1(b) Configuration b: tubesheet integral with shell and gasketed with channel, extended as a flange;

UHX-13.1(c) Configuration c: tubesheet integral with shell and gasketed with channel, not extended as a flange;

UHX-13.1(d) Configuration d: tubesheet gasketed with shell and channel.

UHX-13.2 Conditions of Applicability. The two tubesheets shall have the same thickness, material and edge conditions.

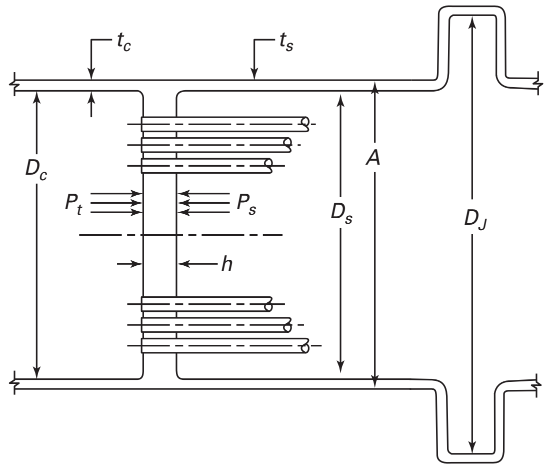
UHX-13.3 Nomenclature. The symbols described below are used for the design of the tubesheets. Symbols D_o , E^*, h'_g , μ, μ^* and ν^* are defined in UHX-11.

A = outside diameter of tubesheet
a_c = radial channel dimension
Configuration a: $a_c = D_c/2$
Configurations b, c, and d: $a_c = G_c/2$
a_o = equivalent radius of outer tube limit circle
a_s = radial shell dimension
Configurations a, b, and c: $a_s = D_s / 2$
Configuration d: $a_s = G_s / 2$
C = bolt circle diameter (see Appendix 2)
D_c = inside channel diameter
D_J = inside diameter of the expansion joint at its convolution height
D_s = inside shell diameter
d_t = nominal outside diameter of tubes
E = modulus of elasticity for tubesheet material at T
E_c = modulus of elasticity for channel material at T_c
E_s = modulus of elasticity for shell material at T_s
E_t = modulus of elasticity for tube material at T_t

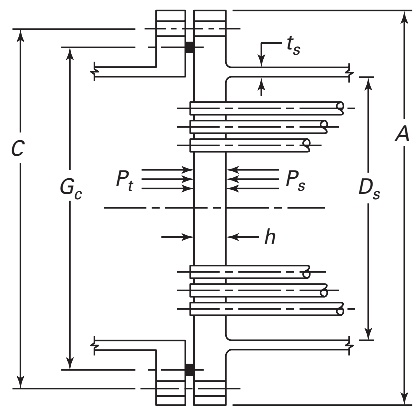
NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

G_1 = midpoint of contact between flange and tubesheet
G_c = diameter of channel gasket load reaction (see Appendix 2)
G_s = diameter of shell gasket load reaction (see Appendix 2)
h = tubesheet thickness
J = ratio of expansion bellows to shell axial rigidity ($J = 1.0$ if no bellows)

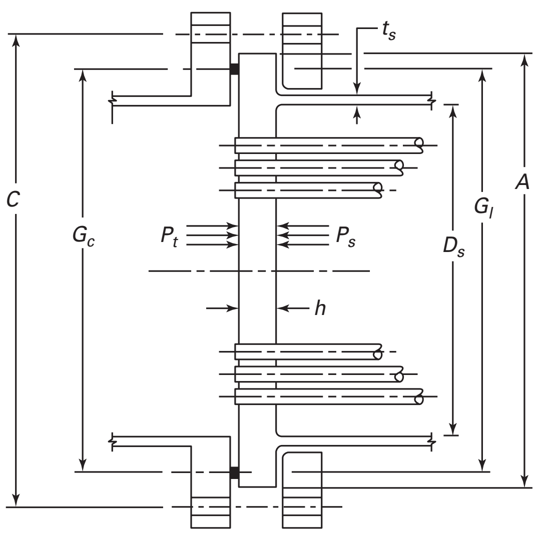
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



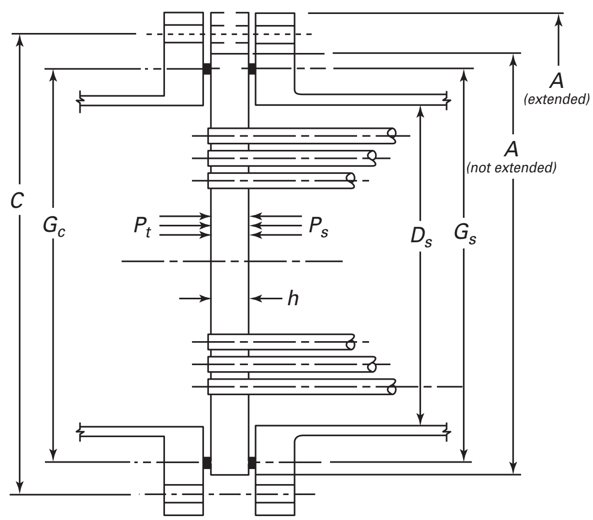
(a) Configuration a:
Tubesheet Integral With Shell and Channel



(b) Configuration b:
Tubesheet Integral With Shell and Gasketed With Channel, Extended as a Flange



(c) Configuration c:
Tubesheet Integral With Shell and Gasketed With Channel, Not Extended as a Flange



(d) Configuration d:
Tubesheet Gasketed With Shell and Channel

GENERAL NOTE: The expansion joint detail in Configuration a applies to thin-walled and thick-walled expansion joints for Configurations a, b, c, and d.

FIG. UHX-13.1 FIXED TUBESHEET CONFIGURATIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

K_J = axial rigidity of expansion bellows, total force/elongation

k = constant accounting for the method of support for the unsupported tube span under consideration
= 0.6 for unsupported spans between two tubesheets,
= 0.8 for unsupported spans between a tubesheet and a tube support,
= 1.0 for unsupported spans between two tube supports.

L = tube length between inner tubesheet faces
= $L_t - 2h$

L_t = tube length between outer tubesheet faces

ℓ = unsupported tube span under consideration

MAX [(a),(b),(c),...] = greatest of *a, b, c,...*

N_t = number of tubes

P_e = effective pressure acting on tubesheet

P_s = shell side internal design pressure (see UG-21). For shell side vacuum use a negative value for P_s.

P_t = tube side internal design pressure (see UG-21). For tube side vacuum use a negative value for P_t.

S = allowable stress for tubesheet material at T

S_c = allowable stress for channel material at T_c

S_s = allowable stress for shell material at T_s

S_t = allowable stress for tube material at T_t

NOTE: For a welded tube or pipe, use the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product. When the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product is not available, divide the allowable stress of the welded product by 0.85.

S_y = yield strength for tubesheet material at T

$S_{y,c}$ = yield strength for channel material at T_c

$S_{y,s}$ = yield strength for shell material at T_s

$S_{y,t}$ = yield strength for tube material at T_t

NOTE: The yield strength shall be taken from Table Y-1 in Section II, Part D. When a yield strength value is not listed in Table Y-1, one may be obtained by using the procedure in UG-28(c)(2) Step 3.

S_{PS} = allowable primary plus secondary stress for tubesheet material at T per UG-23(e)

$S_{PS,c}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for channel material at T_c per UG-23(e)

$S_{PS,s}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for shell material at T_s per UG-23(e)

T = tubesheet design temperature

T_a = ambient temperature, 70°F(20°C)

T_c = channel design temperature

T_s = shell design temperature

T_t = tube design temperature

$T_{s,m}$ = mean shell metal temperature along shell length

$T_{t,m}$ = mean tube metal temperature along tube length

t_c = channel thickness

t_s = shell thickness

t_t = nominal tube wall thickness

W = channel flange design bolt load for the gasket seating condition. Use Formula 4 of 2-5(e) and see UHX-4(c).

$\alpha_{s,m}$ = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of shell material at $T_{s,m}$

$\alpha_{t,m}$ = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of tube material at $T_{t,m}$

γ = axial differential thermal expansion between tubes and shell

ν = Poisson's ratio of tubesheet material

ν_c = Poisson's ratio of channel material

ν_s = Poisson's ratio of shell material

ν_t = Poisson's ratio of tube material

UHX-13.4 Design Considerations

UHX-13.4 (a) It is generally not possible to determine, by observation, the most severe condition of coincident pressure, temperature, and differential thermal expansion. Thus, it is necessary to evaluate all the anticipated loading conditions to ensure that the worst load combination has been considered in the design.

The various loading conditions to be considered shall include the normal operating conditions, the startup conditions, the shutdown conditions, and the upset conditions, which may govern the design of the main components of the heat exchanger (i.e., tubesheets, tubes, shell, channel).

For each of these conditions, the following loading cases shall be considered to determine the effective pressure P_e to be used in the design formulas:

UHX-13.4(a)(1) Loading Case 1: Tube side pressure P_t acting only ($P_s = 0$), without differential thermal expansion.

UHX-13.4(a)(2) Loading Case 2: Shell side pressure P_s acting only ($P_t = 0$), without differential thermal expansion.

UHX-13.4(a)(3) Loading Case 3: Tube side pressure P_t and shell side pressure P_s acting simultaneously, without differential thermal expansion.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-13.4(a)(4) Loading Case 4: Differential thermal expansion [see UHX-13.4(f)] acting only ($P_t = 0$, $P_s = 0$).

UHX-13.4(a)(5) Loading Case 5: Tube side pressure P_t acting only ($P_s = 0$), with differential thermal expansion [see UHX-13.4(f)].

UHX-13.4(a)(6) Loading Case 6: Shell side pressure P_s acting only ($P_t = 0$), with differential thermal expansion [see UHX-13.4(f)].

UHX-13.4(a)(7) Loading Case 7: Tube side pressure P_t and shell side pressure P_s acting simultaneously, with differential thermal expansion [see UHX-13.4(f)].

When vacuum exists, each loading case shall be considered with and without the vacuum.

When differential pressure design is specified by the user, the design shall be based only on loading cases 3, 4, and 7, as provided by UG-21.

The designer should take appropriate consideration of the stresses resulting from the pressure test required by UG-99 or UG-100 [see UG-99(d)].

UHX-13.4(b) Elastic moduli, yield strengths, and allowable stresses shall be taken at design temperatures. However for cases involving thermal loading (loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7), it is permitted to use the operating temperatures instead of the design temperatures (see UG-20).

UHX-13.4(c) As the calculation procedure is iterative, a value h shall be assumed for the tubesheet thickness to calculate and check that the maximum stresses in tubesheet, tubes, shell, and channel are within the maximum permissible stress limits.

Because any increase of tubesheet thickness may lead to overstresses in the tubes, shell, or channel, a final check shall be performed, using in the formulas the nominal thickness of tubesheet, tubes, shell, and channel, in both corroded and uncorroded conditions.

UHX-13.4(d) The designer shall consider the effect of deflections in the tubesheet design, especially when the tubesheet thickness h is less than the tube diameter.

UHX-13.4(e) The designer shall consider:

UHX-13.4(e)(1) the integrity of the tube-to-tubesheet joint (see UHX-15).

UHX-13.4(e)(2) the shell column buckling in accordance with UG-23(b).

UHX-13.4(f) The designer shall consider the effect of radial differential thermal expansion between the tubesheet and integral shell or channel (configurations a, b, and c) in accordance with UHX-13.8, if required by UHX-13.8.1.

UHX-13.5 Calculation Procedure. The procedure for the design of tubesheets for a fixed tubesheet heat exchanger is as follows.

UHX-13.5.1 Step 1. Determine D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

Loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7: $h'_g = 0$

Calculate a_o, ρ_s, ρ_c, x_s, and x_t.

$$a_o = \frac{D_o}{2}$$

$$\rho_s = \frac{a_s}{a_o}$$

$$\rho_c = \frac{a_c}{a_o}$$

$$x_s = 1 - N_t \left(\frac{d_t}{2a_o} \right)^2$$

$$x_t = 1 - N_t \left(\frac{d_t - 2t_t}{2a_o} \right)^2$$

UHX-13.5.2 Step 2. Calculate the shell axial stiffness K_s, tube axial stiffness K_t, and stiffness factors $K_{s,t}$ and J.

$$K_s = \frac{\pi\, t_s (D_s + t_s) E_s}{L}$$

$$K_t = \frac{\pi\, t_t (d_t - t_t) E_t}{L}$$

$$K_{s,t} = \frac{K_s}{N_t K_t}$$

$$J = \frac{1}{1 + \dfrac{K_s}{K_J}}$$

Calculate shell coefficients β_s, k_s, λ_s, and δ_s.

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$\beta_s = \frac{\sqrt[4]{12(1 - \nu_s^2)}}{\sqrt{(D_s + t_s)\, t_s}}$$

$$k_s = \beta_s \frac{E_s\, t_s^3}{6(1 - \nu_s^2)}$$

$$\lambda_s = \frac{6D_s}{h^3} k_s \left(1 + h\beta_s + \frac{h^2 \beta_s^2}{2} \right)$$

$$\delta_s = \frac{D_s^2}{4E_s\, t_s} \left(1 - \frac{\nu_s}{2} \right)$$

Configuration d: $\beta_s = 0$, $k_s = 0$, $\lambda_s = 0$, $\delta_s = 0$

Calculate channel coefficients β_c, k_c, λ_c, and δ_c.

Configuration a:

$$\beta_c = \frac{\sqrt[4]{12(1 - \nu_c^2)}}{\sqrt{(D_c + t_c)\, t_c}}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$k_c = \beta_c \frac{E_c\, t_c^3}{6\left(1 - \nu_c^2\right)}$$

$$\lambda_c = \frac{6D_c}{h^3} k_c \left(1 + h\beta_c + \frac{h^2 \beta_c^2}{2}\right)$$

$$\delta_c = \frac{D_c^2}{4E_c\, t_c}\left(1 - \frac{\nu_c}{2}\right)$$

Configurations b, c, d: $\beta_c = 0$, $k_c = 0$, $\lambda_c = 0$, $\delta_c = 0$

UHX-13.5.3 Step 3. Calculate h/p. If ρ changes, recalculate d^* and μ^* from UHX-11.5.1.

Determine E^*/E and ν^* relative to h/p from UHX-11.5.2.

Calculate X_a.

$$X_a = \left[24\left(1 - \nu^{*2}\right) N_t \frac{E_t\, t_t \left(d_t - t_t\right) a_o^2}{E^*\, L\, h^3}\right]^{1/4}$$

Using the calculated value of X_a, enter either Table UHX-13.1 or Fig. UHX-13.2 to determine Z_d, Z_v, and Z_m.

UHX-13.5.4 Step 4. Calculate diameter ratio K and coefficient F.

$$K = \frac{A}{D_o}$$

$$F = \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*}\left(\lambda_s + \lambda_c + E \ln K\right)$$

Calculate Φ, Q_1, Q_{Z1}, Q_{Z2}, and U.

$$\Phi = \left(1 + \nu^*\right) F$$

$$Q_1 = \frac{\rho_s - 1 - \Phi Z_v}{1 + \Phi Z_m}$$

$$Q_{Z1} = \frac{\left(Z_d + Q_1 Z_v\right) X_a^4}{2}$$

$$Q_{Z2} = \frac{\left(Z_v + Q_1 Z_m\right) X_a^4}{2}$$

$$U = \frac{\left[Z_v + \left(\rho_s - 1\right) Z_m\right] X_a^4}{1 + \Phi Z_m}$$

UHX-13.5.5 Step 5

UHX-13.5.5(a) Calculate γ.

Loading cases 1, 2, and 3: $\gamma = 0$.

Loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7:

$$\gamma = \left[\alpha_{t,m}\left(T_{t,m} - T_a\right) - \alpha_{s,m}\left(T_{s,m} - T_a\right)\right] L$$

UHX-13.5.5(b) Calculate ω_s, ω_s^*, and ω_c, ω_c^*.

$$\omega_s = \rho_s\, k_s\, \beta_s\, \delta_s\, (1 + h\beta_s)$$

$$\omega_s^* = a_o^2 \frac{(\rho_s^2 - 1)(\rho_s - 1)}{4} - \omega_s$$

$$\omega_c = \rho_c\, k_c\, \beta_c\, \delta_c\, (1 + h\beta_c)$$

$$\omega_c^* = a_o^2 \left[\frac{(\rho_c^2 + 1)(\rho_c - 1)}{4} - \frac{(\rho_s - 1)}{2}\right] - \omega_c$$

UHX-13.5.5(c) Calculate γ_b.

Configuration a:

$$\gamma_b = 0$$

Configuration b:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_c - C}{D_o}$$

Configuration c:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_c - G_1}{D_o}$$

Configuration d:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_c - G_s}{D_o}$$

UHX-13.5.6 Step 6. For each loading case, calculate P_s', P_t', P_γ, P_W, P_{rim}, and effective pressure P_e.

$$P_s' = \left(x_s + 2\,(1 - x_s)\,\nu_t + \frac{2}{K_{s,t}}\left(\frac{D_s}{D_o}\right)^2 \nu_s - \frac{\rho_s^2 - 1}{JK_{s,t}} - \frac{(1 - J)}{2JK_{s,t}} \frac{\left[D_J^2 - (2a_s)^2\right]}{D_o^2}\right) P_s$$

$$P_t' = \left(x_t + 2\,(1 - x_t)\,\nu_t + \frac{1}{JK_{s,t}}\right) P_t$$

$$P_\gamma = \frac{N_t K_t}{\pi a_o^2}\,\gamma$$

$$P_W = -\frac{U}{a_o^2}\frac{\gamma_b}{2\pi} W$$

$$P_{\text{rim}} = -\frac{U}{a_o^2}\left(\omega_s^* P_s - \omega_c^* P_t\right)$$

$$P_e = \frac{JK_{s,t}}{1 + JK_{s,t}\left[Q_{Z1} + (\rho_s - 1)\,Q_{Z2}\right]} \times \left(P_s' - P_t' + P\gamma + P_w + P_{\text{rim}}\right)$$

UHX-13.5.7 Step 7. For each loading case, calculate Q_2 and Q_3.

$$Q_2 = \frac{\left(\omega_s^* P_s - \omega_c^* P_t\right) + \frac{\gamma_b}{2\pi} W}{1 + \Phi Z_m}$$

$$Q_3 = Q_1 + \frac{2Q_2}{P_e\, a_o^2}$$

Using X_a and Q_3, determine coefficient F_m for each loading case from either Table UHX-13.1 or Figs. UHX-13.3-1 and UHX-13.3-2.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE UHX-13.1
FORMULAS FOR DETERMINATION OF Z_d, Z_v, Z_m, AND F_m

(1) Calculate Bessel functions of order 0 relative to x, where x varies from 0 to X_a such that $0 < x \le X_a$:

$$\text{ber}\,(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{n=\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(x/2)^{4n}}{[(2n)!]^2} = 1 - \frac{(x/2)^4}{(2!)^2} + \frac{(x/2)^8}{(4!)^2} - \frac{(x/2)^{12}}{(6!)^2} + \ldots$$

$$\text{bei}\,(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{(x/2)^{4n-2}}{[(2n-1)!]^2} = + \frac{(x/2)^2}{(1!)^2} - \frac{(x/2)^6}{(3!)^2} + \frac{(x/2)^{10}}{(5!)^2} - \ldots$$

and their derivatives:

$$\text{ber}'\,(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(2\,n)\,(x/2)^{4n-1}}{[(2n)!)]^2} = - \frac{2\,(x/2)^3}{(2!)^2} + \frac{4\,(x/2)^7}{(4!)^2} - \frac{6\,(x/2)^{11}}{(6!)^2} + \ldots$$

$$\text{bei}'\,(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{n=\infty} (-1)^{n-1} \frac{(2\,n-1)\,(x/2)^{4n-3}}{[(2n-1)!]^2} = \frac{(x/2)^1}{(1!)^2} - \frac{3\,(x/2)^5}{(3!)^2} + \frac{5\,(x/2)^9}{(5!)^2} - \ldots$$

NOTE: At least $n = 4 + x/2$ terms (rounded to the nearest integer) are required to obtain an adequate approximation of the Bessel functions and their derivatives.

(2) Calculate functions $\psi_1\,(x)$, $\psi_2\,(x)$, and $Z(x)$ relative to x:

$$\psi_1\,(x) = \text{bei}\,(x) + \frac{1-\nu^*}{x} \cdot \text{ber}'\,(x)$$

$$\psi_2\,(x) = \text{ber}\,(x) - \frac{1-\nu^*}{x} \cdot \text{bei}'\,(x)$$

(3) Calculate Z_a, Z_d, Z_v, and Z_m relative to X_a:

$$Z_a = \text{bei}'\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_2\,(X_a) - \text{ber}'\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_1\,(X_a)$$

$$Z_d = \frac{\text{ber}\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_2\,(X_a) + \text{bei}\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_1\,(X_a)}{X_a^3 \cdot Z_a}$$

$$Z_v = \frac{\text{ber}'\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_2\,(X_a) + \text{bei}'\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_1\,(X_a)}{X_a^2 \cdot Z_a}$$

$$Z_m = \frac{\text{ber}'^2\,(X_a) + \text{bei}'^2\,(X_a)}{X_a \cdot Z_a}$$

(4) Calculate functions $Q_m\,(x)$, $Q_v\,(x)$, and $F_m\,(x)$ relative to x:

$$Q_m\,(x) = \frac{\text{bei}'\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_2\,(x) - \text{ber}'\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_1\,(x)}{Z_a}$$

$$Q_v\,(x) = \frac{\psi_1\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_2\,(x) - \psi_2\,(X_a) \cdot \psi_1\,(x)}{X_a \cdot Z_a}$$

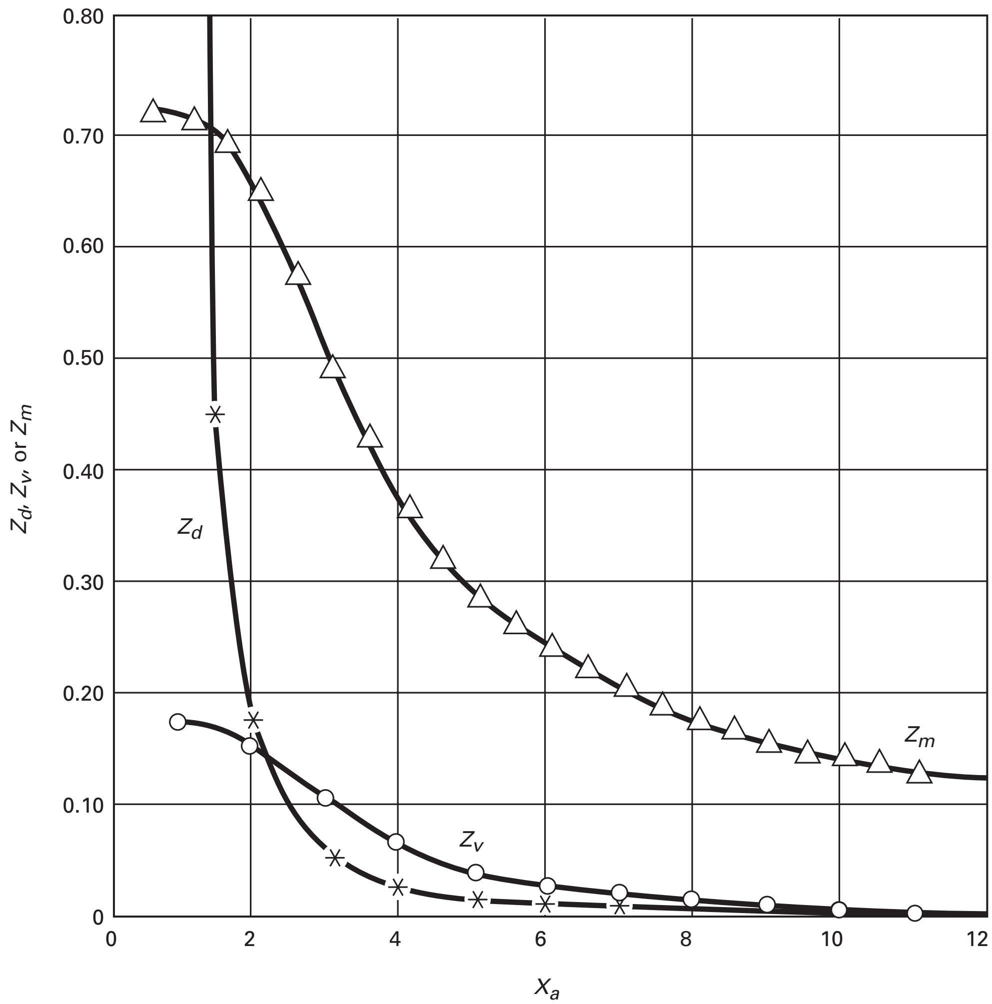
(5) For each loading case, calculate $F_m\,(x)$ relative to x:

$$F_m\,(x) = \frac{Q_v\,(x) + Q_3 \cdot Q_m\,(x)}{2}$$

(6) F_m is the maximum of the absolute value of $F_m(x)$ when x varies from 0 to X_a such that $0 < x \le X_a$:

$$F_m = \text{MAX}\,|F_m\,(x)|$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Curves giving Z_d, Z_v, or Z_m are valid for $\nu^* = 0.4$. They are sufficiently accurate to be used for other values of ν^*.
(b) For $X_a > 12.0$, see Table UHX-13.1.

FIG. UHX-13.2 Z_d, Z_v, and Z_m VERSUS X_a

For each loading case, calculate the bending stress in the tubesheet.

$$\sigma = \left(\frac{1.5\ F_m}{\mu^*}\right)\left(\frac{2a_o}{h - h'_g}\right)^2 P_e$$

For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $|\sigma| \le 1.5S$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $|\sigma| \le S_{PS}$, the assumed tubesheet thickness is acceptable for bending. Otherwise, increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

UHX-13.5.8 Step 8. For each loading case, calculate the average shear stress in the tubesheet at the outer edge of the perforated region.

$$\tau = \left(\frac{1}{2\mu}\right)\left(\frac{a_o}{h}\right)P_e$$

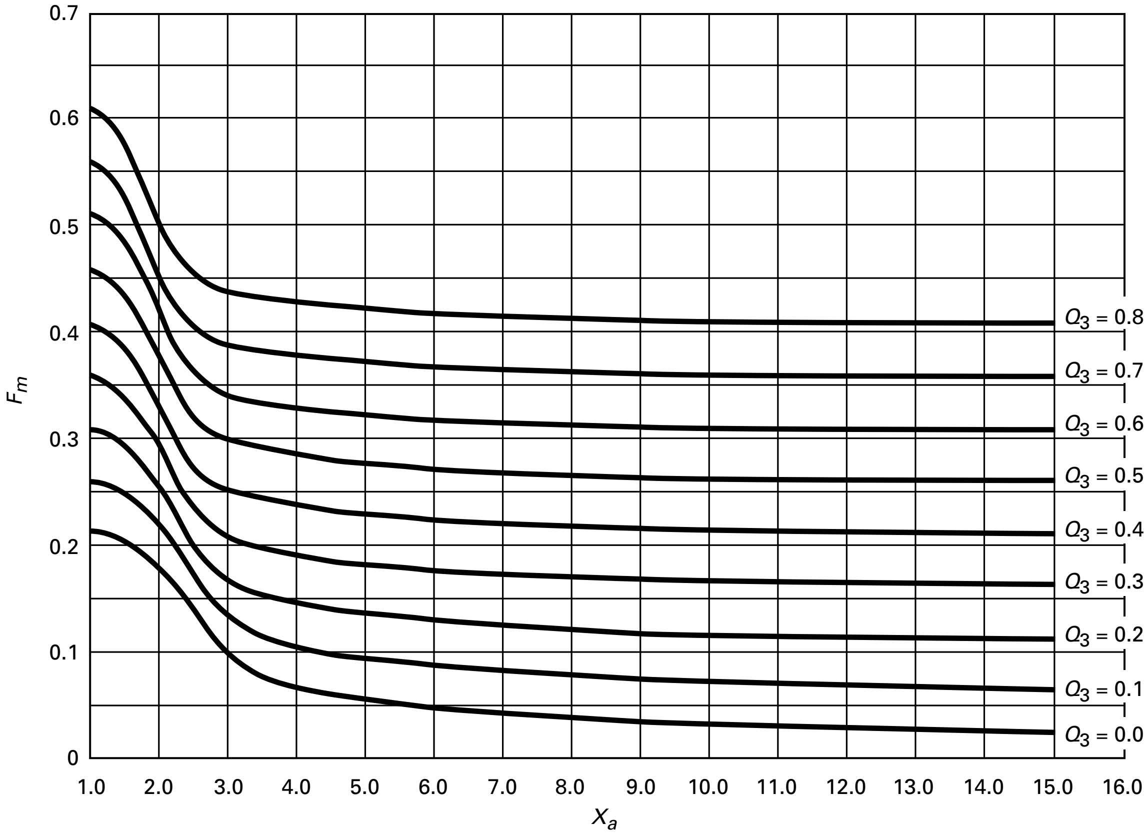
If $|\tau| \le 0.8\ S$, the assumed tubesheet thickness is acceptable for shear. Otherwise, increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

UHX-13.5.9 Step 9. Perform this step for each loading case.

UHX-13.5.9(a) Calculate coefficient F_q and the axial tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ in the outermost tube row.

$$F_q = \frac{(Z_d + Q_3 Z_v)\ X_a^4}{2}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Curves giving F_m are valid for $v^* = 0.4$. They are sufficiently accurate to be used for other values of v^*.
(b) For values of X_a and Q_3 beyond those given by the curves, see Table UHX–13.1.

FIG. UHX-13.3-1 F_m VERSUS X_a ($0.0 \le Q_3 \le 0.8$)

$$\sigma_{t,o} = \frac{(P_s\,x_s - P_t\,x_t) - P_e\,F_q}{x_t - x_s}$$

For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $|\sigma_{t,o}| > S_t$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $|\sigma_{t,o}| > 2S_t$, the tube design shall be reconsidered.

If $\sigma_{t,o}$ is negative, proceed to (b) below. Otherwise, the tube design is acceptable.

Configurations a, b, and c: Proceed to Step 10.

Configuration d: The calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-13.5.9(b) Check the tubes for buckling.

UHX-13.5.9(b)(1) Calculate the largest equivalent unsupported buckling length of the tube ℓ_t considering the unsupported tube spans ℓ and their corresponding method of support k.

$$\ell_t = k\,\ell$$

UHX-13.5.9(b)(2) Calculate r_t, F_t, C_t and determine the factor of safety F_s.

$$r_t = \frac{\sqrt{d_t^2 + (d_t - 2t_t)^2}}{4}$$

$$F_t = \frac{\ell_t}{r_t}$$

$$C_t = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E_t}{S_{y,t}}}$$

$$F_s = \mathrm{MAX}\ [(3.25\text{-}0.5F_q),\ (1.25)]$$

F_s need not be taken greater than 2.0.

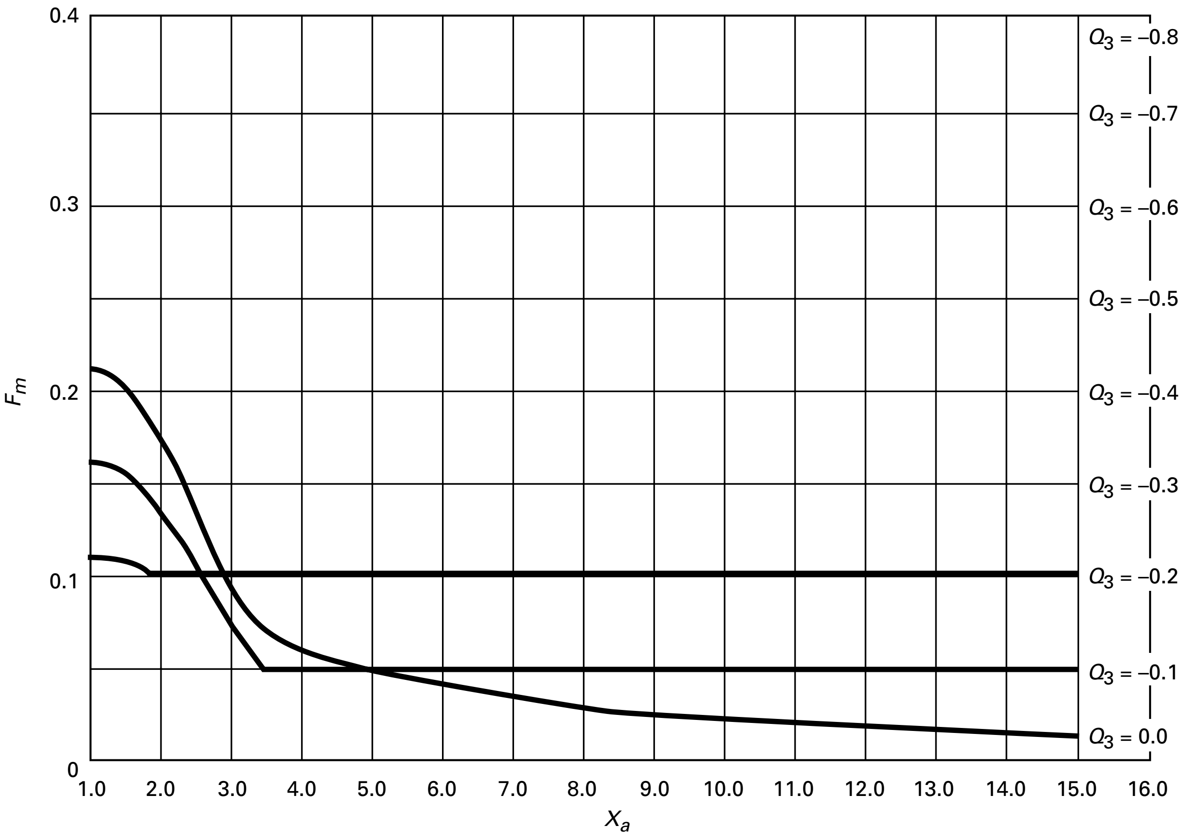
UHX-13.5.9(b)(3) Determine the maximum permissible buckling stress limit S_{tb} for the tubes in accordance with (a) or (b) below:

UHX-13.5.9(b)(3)(a) When $C_t \le F_t$,

$$S_{tb} = \mathrm{MIN}\left\{\left[\frac{1}{F_s}\,\frac{\pi^2\,E_t}{F_t^2}\right], [S_t]\right\}$$

UHX-13.5.9(b)(3)(b) When $C_t > F_t$,

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Curves giving F_m are valid for $\nu^* = 0.4$. They are sufficiently accurate to be used for other values of ν^*.
(b) For values of X_a and Q_3 beyond those given by the curves, see Table UHX-13.1.

FIG. UHX-13.3-2 F_m VERSUS X_a $(-0.8 \le Q_3 \le 0.0)$

$$S_{tb} = \mathrm{MIN}\left\{\left[\frac{S_{y,t}}{F_s}\left(1 - \frac{F_t}{2C_t}\right)\right], [S_t]\right\}$$

If $|\sigma_{t,o}| \le S_{tb}$, the tube design is acceptable. Otherwise, the tube design shall be reconsidered.

Configurations a, b, and c: Proceed to Step 10.

Configuration d: The calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-13.5.10 Step 10. For each loading case, calculate the stresses in the shell and/or channel integral with the tubesheet.

Configurations a, b, and c: The shell shall have a uniform thickness of t_s for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_s t_s}$ adjacent to the tubesheet. Calculate the axial membrane stress $\sigma_{s,m}$, axial bending stress $\sigma_{s,b}$, and total axial stress σ_s, in the shell at its junction to the tubesheet.

$$\sigma_{s,m} = \frac{a_o^2}{2(a_s + t_s)t_s}\left[P_e + (\rho_s^2 - 1)(P_s - P_t)\right] + \frac{a_s^2}{2(a_s + t_s)t_s}P_t$$

$$\sigma_{s,b} = \frac{6}{t_s^2}k_s\left\{\beta_s\left[\boldsymbol{\delta}_s P_s - \nu_s\frac{a_s}{E_s}\sigma_{s,m}\right] + \frac{6(1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*}\left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h\beta_s}{2}\right) \times \left[P_e(Z_v + Z_m Q_1) + \frac{2}{a_o^2}Z_m Q_2\right]\right\}$$

$$\sigma_s = |\sigma_{s,m}| + |\sigma_{s,b}|$$

Configuration a: The channel shall have a uniform thickness of t_c for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_c t_c}$ adjacent to the tubesheet. Calculate the axial membrane stress $\sigma_{c,m}$,

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

axial bending stress $\sigma_{c,b}$, and total axial stress σ_c, in the channel at its junction to the tubesheet.

$$\sigma_{c,m} = \frac{a_c^2}{2(a_c + t_c)t_c} P_t$$

$$\sigma_{c,b} = \frac{6}{t_c^2} k_c \left\{ \beta_c \boldsymbol{\delta}_c P_t - \frac{6(1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*} \left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3}\right) \left(1 + \frac{h\beta_c}{2}\right) \times \left[P_e (Z_v + Z_m Q_1) + \frac{2}{a_o^2} Z_m Q_2 \right] \right\}$$

$$\sigma_c = |\sigma_{c,m}| + |\sigma_{c,b}|$$

Configuration a: For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $\sigma_s \le 1.5\, S_s$ and $\sigma_c \le 1.5\, S_c$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $\sigma_s \le S_{PS,s}$ and $\sigma_c \le S_{PS,c}$, the shell and channel designs are acceptable, and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise proceed to Step 11.

Configurations b and c: For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $\sigma_s \le 1.5\, S_s$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $\sigma_s \le S_{PS,s}$, the shell design is acceptable, and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to Step 11.

UHX-13.5.11 Step 11. The design shall be reconsidered by using one or a combination of the following three options.

Option 1. Increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 2.

Option 2. Increase the integral shell and/or channel thickness as follows and return to Step 1.

Configurations a, b, and c: If $\sigma_s > 1.5\, S_s$, increase the shell thickness t_s. It is permitted to increase the shell thickness adjacent to the tubesheet only. (See UHX-13.6.)

Configuration a: If $\sigma_c > 1.5\, S_c$ increase the channel thickness t_c.

Option 3. Perform the elastic-plastic calculation procedure as defined in UHX-13.7. (See UHX-13.7.2 for limitations.)

Configuration a: This option may only be used when $\sigma_s \le S_{PS,s}$ and $\sigma_c \le S_{PS,c}$ for pressure loading cases 1, 2, and 3.

Configurations b and c: This option may only be used when $\sigma_s \le S_{PS,s}$ for pressure loading cases 1, 2, and 3.

UHX-13.6 Calculation Procedure for Effect of Different Shell Material and Thickness Adjacent to the Tubesheet

UHX-13.6.1 Scope

UHX-13.6.1(a) This procedure describes how to use the rules of UHX-13.5 when the shell has a different thickness and/or a different material adjacent to the tubesheet (see Fig. UHX-13.4).

UHX-13.6.1(b) Use of this procedure may result in a smaller tubesheet thickness and should be considered when optimization of the tubesheet thickness or shell stress is desired.

UHX-13.6.2 Conditions of Applicability. This calculation procedure applies only when the shell is integral with the tubesheet (Configurations a, b, and c).

UHX-13.6.3 Additional Nomenclature

$E_{s,1}$ = modulus of elasticity for shell material adjacent to tubesheets at T_s

ℓ_1, ℓ'_1 = lengths of shell of thickness $t_{s,1}$ adjacent to tubesheets

$t_{s,1}$ = shell thickness adjacent to tubesheets

$S_{s,1}$ = allowable stress for shell material adjacent to tubesheets at T_s

$S_{y,s,1}$ = yield strength for shell material adjacent to tubesheets at T_s. The yield strength shall be taken from Table Y-1 in Section II, Part D. When a yield strength value is not listed in Table Y-1, one may be obtained by using the procedure in UG-28(c)(2) Step 3.

$S_{PS,s,1}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for shell material at T_s per UG-23(e)

$\alpha_{s,m,1}$ = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of shell material adjacent to tubesheets at $T_{s,m}$

UHX-13.6.4 Calculation Procedure. The calculation procedure outlined in UHX-13.5 shall be performed, accounting for the following modifications.

UHX-13.6.4(a) The shell shall have a thickness of $t_{s,1}$ for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_s t_{s,1}}$ adjacent to the tubesheets.

UHX-13.6.4(b) In Step 2, replace the formula for K_s with:

$$K_s^* = \frac{\pi(D_s + t_s)}{\dfrac{L - \ell_1 - \ell'_1}{E_s\, t_s} + \dfrac{\ell_1 + \ell'_1}{E_{s,1}\, t_{s,1}}}$$

Calculate $K_{s,t}$ and J, replacing K_s with K_s^*. Calculate β_s, k_s, and δ_s, replacing t_s with $t_{s,1}$ and E_s with $E_{s,1}$.

UHX-13.6.4(c) In Step 5, replace the formula for γ with:

$$\gamma^* = (T_{t,m} - T_a)\alpha_{t,m} L - (T_{s,m} - T_a) \times \left[\alpha_{s,m} (L - \ell_1 - \ell'_1) + \alpha_{s,m,1}(\ell_1 + \ell'_1) \right]$$

UHX-13.6.4(d) In Step 6, calculate P_γ, replacing γ with γ^*.

UHX-13.6.4(e) In Step 10, calculate $\sigma_{s,m}$ and $\sigma_{s,b}$, replacing t_s with $t_{s,1}$ and E_s with $E_{s,1}$. Replace S_s with $S_{s,1}$ and $S_{PS,s}$ with $S_{PS,s,1}$.

If the elastic-plastic calculation procedure of UHX-13.7 is being performed, replace $S_{y,s}$ with $S_{y,s,1}$,

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

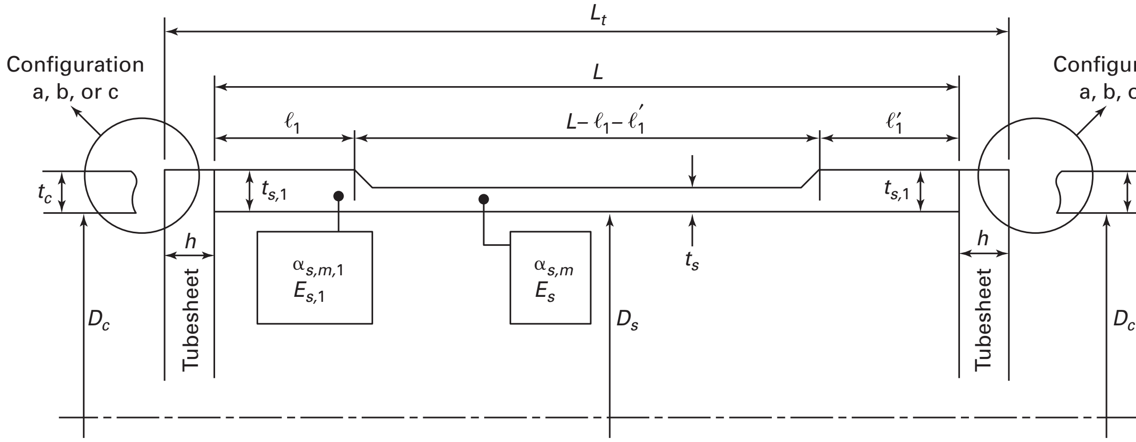


FIG. UHX-13.4 SHELL WITH INCREASED THICKNESS ADJACENT TO THE TUBESHEETS

$S_{PS,s}$ with $S_{PS,s,1}$, and E_s with $E_{s,1}$ in UHX-13.7.

If the radial thermal expansion procedure of UHX-13.8 is being performed, replace t_s with $t_{s,1}$ and E_s with $E_{s,1}$ in UHX-13.8.

UHX-13.7 Calculation Procedure for Effect of Plasticity at Tubesheet/Channel or Shell Joint

UHX-13.7.1 Scope. This procedure describes how to use the rules of UHX-13.5 when the effect of plasticity at the shell-tubesheet and/or channel-tubesheet joint is to be considered.

If the discontinuity stresses at the shell-tubesheet and/or channel-tubesheet joint exceed the allowable stress limits, the thickness of the shell, channel, or tubesheet may be increased to meet the stress limits given in UHX-13.5 above. As an alternative, when the calculated tubesheet stresses are within the allowable stress limits, but either or both of the calculated shell or channel total stresses exceed their allowable stress limits, one additional "elastic-plastic solution" calculation may be performed.

This calculation permits a reduction of the shell and/or channel Young's modulus, where it affects the rotation of the joint, to reflect the anticipated load shift resulting from plastic action at the joint. The reduced effective modulus has the effect of reducing the shell and/or channel stresses in the elastic-plastic calculation; however, due to load shifting this usually leads to an increase in the tubesheet stress. In most cases, an elastic-plastic calculation using the appropriate reduced shell or channel Young's modulus results in a design where the calculated tubesheet stresses are within the allowable stress limits.

UHX-13.7.2 Conditions of Applicability

UHX-13.7.2(a) This procedure shall not be used at temperatures where the time-dependent properties govern the allowable stress.

UHX-13.7.2(b) This procedure applies only for loading cases 1, 2, and 3.

UHX-13.7.2(c) This procedure applies to Configuration a when $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s}$ and $\sigma_c \leq S_{PS,c}$.

UHX-13.7.2(d) This procedure applies to Configurations b and c when $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s}$.

UHX-13.7.2(e) This procedure may only be used once for each iteration of tubesheet, shell, and channel thicknesses and materials.

UHX-13.7.3 Calculation Procedure. After the calculation procedure outlined in UHX-13.5 (Steps 1 through 10) has been performed for the elastic solution, one elastic-plastic calculation using the referenced steps from UHX-13.5 shall be performed in accordance with the following procedure for each applicable loading case. Except for those quantities modified below, the quantities to be used for the elastic-plastic calculation shall be the same as those calculated for the corresponding elastic loading case.

UHX-13.7.3(a) Define the maximum permissible bending stress limit in the shell and channel.

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$S_s^* = \mathrm{MIN}\left[(S_{y,s}), \left(\frac{S_{PS,s}}{2}\right)\right]$$

Configuration a:

$$S_c^* = \mathrm{MIN}\left[(S_{y,c}), \left(\frac{S_{PS,c}}{2}\right)\right]$$

UHX-13.7.3(b) Using bending stresses $\sigma_{s,b}$ and $\sigma_{c,b}$ computed in Step 10 for the elastic solution, determine fact_s and fact_c as follows:

Configurations a, b, and c:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$\text{fact}_s = \text{MIN}\left[\left(1.4 - 0.4\frac{|\sigma_{s,b}|}{S_s^*}\right), (1)\right]$$

Configuration a:

$$\text{fact}_c = \text{MIN}\left[\left(1.4 - 0.4\frac{|\sigma_{c,b}|}{S_c^*}\right), (1)\right]$$

Configuration a: If $\text{fact}_s = 1.0$ and $\text{fact}_c = 1.0$, the design is acceptable, and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to (c) below.

Configurations b and c: If $\text{fact}_s = 1.0$, the design is acceptable, and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to (c) below.

UHX-13.7.3(c) Calculate reduced values of E_s and E_c as follows:

Configurations a, b, and c: $E_s^* = E_s$ (fact_s)

Configuration a: $E_c^* = E_c$ (fact_c)

UHX-13.7.3(d) In Step 2, recalculate k_s, λ_s, k_c, and λ_c replacing E_s by E_s^* and E_c by E_c^*.

UHX-13.7.3(e) In Step 4, recalculate F, Φ, Q_1, Q_{Z1}, Q_{Z2}, and U.

UHX-13.7.3(f) In Step 6, recalculate P_W, P_{rim}, and P_e.

UHX-13.7.3(g) In Step 7, recalculate Q_2, Q_3, F_m, and the tubesheet bending stress σ.

If $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S$, the design is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, the unit geometry shall be reconsidered.

UHX-13.8 Calculation Procedure for Effect of Radial Differential Thermal Expansion Adjacent to the Tubesheet

UHX-13.8.1 Scope

UHX-13.8.1(a) This procedure describes how to use the rules of UHx-13.5 when the effect of radial differential thermal expansion between the tubesheet and integral shell or channel is to be considered.

UHX-13.8.1(b) This procedure shall be used when cyclic or dynamic reactions due to pressure or thermal variations are specified [see UG-22(e)].

UHX-13.8.1(c) This procedure shall be used when specified by the user. The user shall provide the Manufacturer with the data necessary to determine the required tubesheet, channel, and shell metal temperatures.

UHX-13.8.1(d) Optionally, the designer may use this procedure to consider the effect of radial differential thermal expansion even when it is not required by (b) or (c) above.

UHX-13.8.2 Conditions of Applicability. This calculation procedure applies only when the tubesheet is integral with the shell or channel (Configuations a, b, and c).

UHX-13.8.3 Additional Nomenclature

T' = tubesheet metal temperature at the rim

T'_c = channel metal temperature at the tubesheet

T'_s = shell metal temperature at the tubesheet

α' = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of tubesheet material at T'

α'_c = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of channel material at T'_c

α'_s = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of shell material at T'_s

UHX-13.8.4 Calculation Procedure. The calculation procedure outlined in UHX-13.5 and UHX-13.6, if applicable, shall be performed only for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, according to the following modifications.

UHX-13.8.4(a) Determine the average temperature of the unperforated rim T_r.

Configuration a:

$$T_r = \frac{T' + T'_s + T'_c}{3}$$

Configurations b and c:

$$T_r = \frac{T' + T'_s}{2}$$

For conservative values of P_s^* and P_c^*, $T_r = T'$ may be used.

UHX-13.8.4(b) Determine the average temperature of the shell T_s^* and channel T_c^* at their junction to the tubesheet as follows:

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$T_s^* = \frac{T'_s + T_r}{2}$$

Configuration a:

$$T_c^* = \frac{T'_c + T_r}{2}$$

For conservative values of P_s^* and P_c^*, $T_s^* = T'_s$ and $T_c^* = T'_c$ may be used.

UHX-13.8.4(c) Calculate P_s^* and P_c^*.

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$P_s^* = \frac{E_s t_s}{a_s}\left[\alpha'_s(T_s^* - T_a) - \alpha'(T_r - T_a)\right]$$

Configuration a:

$$P_c^* = \frac{E_c t_c}{a_c}\left[\alpha'_c(T_c^* - T_a) - \alpha'(T_r - T_a)\right]$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Configurations b and c:

$$P_c^* = 0$$

UHX-13.8.4(d) Calculate P_ω.

$$P_\omega = \frac{U}{a_o^2}\left(\omega_s\ P_s^* - \omega_c\ P_e^*\right)$$

UHX-13.8.4(e) In Step 6, replace the formula for P_e with:

$$P_e = \frac{JK_{s,t}}{1 + JK_{s,t}\ [\ Q_{Z1} + (\rho_s - 1)]Q_{Z2}} \times (P'_s - P'_t + P_\gamma + P_\omega + P_W + P_{\text{rim}})$$

UHX-13.8.4(f) In Step 7, replace the formula for Q_2 with:

$$Q_2 = \frac{(\omega_s^*\ P_s - \omega_c^* P_t) - (\omega_s P_s^* - \omega_c P_c^*) + \dfrac{\gamma_b}{2\pi}W}{1 + \Phi\ \ Z_m}$$

UHX-13.8.4(g) In Step 10, replace the formulas for $\sigma_{s,b}$ and $\sigma_{c,b}$ with:

$$\sigma_{s,b} = \frac{6}{t_s^2}k_s\left\{\beta_s\left[\delta_s\, P_s + \frac{a_s^2}{E_s t_s}P_s^* - \nu_s\frac{a_s}{E_s}\sigma_{s,m}\right] + \frac{6\,(\,1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*} \times \left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h\beta_s}{2}\right)\left[P_e\left(Z_v + Z_m Q_1\right) + \frac{2}{a_o^2}Z_m Q_2\right]\right\}$$

$$\sigma_{c,b} = \frac{6}{t_c^2}k_c\left\{\beta_c\left[\delta_c\, P_t + \frac{a_c^2}{E_c t_c}P_c^*\right] - \frac{6\,(\,1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*} \times \left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h\beta_c}{2}\right)\left[P_e\left(Z_v + Z_m Q_1\right) + \frac{2}{a_o^2}Z_m Q_2\right]\right\}$$

UHX-14 RULES FOR THE DESIGN OF FLOATING TUBESHEETS

UHX-14.1 Scope

UHX-14.1(a) These rules cover the design of tubesheets for floating tubesheet heat exchangers that have one stationary tubesheet and one floating tubesheet. Three types of floating tubesheet heat exchangers are covered as shown in Fig. UHX-14.1.

UHX-14.1(a)(1) Sketch (a), immersed floating head;

UHX-14.1(a)(2) Sketch (b), externally sealed floating head;

UHX-14.1(a)(3) Sketch (c), internally sealed floating tubesheet.

UHX-14.1(b) Stationary tubesheets may have one of the six configurations shown in Fig. UHX-14.2:

UHX-14.1(b)(1) Configuration a: tubesheet integral with shell and channel;

UHX-14.1(b)(2) Configuration b: tubesheet integral with shell and gasketed with channel, extended as a flange;

UHX-14.1(b)(3) Configuration c: tubesheet integral with shell and gasketed with channel, not extended as a flange;

UHX-14.1(b)(4) Configuration d: tubesheet gasketed with shell and channel;

UHX-14.1(b)(5) Configuration e: tubesheet gasketed with shell and integral with channel, extended as a flange;

UHX-14.1(b)(6) Configuration f: tubesheet gasketed with shell and integral with channel, not extended as a flange.

UHX-14.1(c) Floating tubesheets may have one of the four configurations shown in Fig. UHX-14.3:

UHX-14.1(c)(1) Configuration A: tubesheet integral;

UHX-14.1(c)(2) Configuration B: tubesheet gasketed, extended as a flange;

UHX-14.1(c)(3) Configuration C: tubesheet gasketed, not extended as a flange;

UHX-14.1(c)(4) Configuration D: tubesheet internally sealed.

UHX-14.2 Conditions of Applicability. The two tubesheets shall have the same thickness and material.

UHX-14.3 Nomenclature.

The symbols described below are used for the design of the stationary and floating tubesheets. Symbols D_o, E^*, h'_g, μ, μ^*, and ν^* are defined in UHX-11.

A = outside diameter of tubesheet

a_c = radial channel dimension

Configurations a, e, f, and A: $a_c = D_c / 2$

Configurations b, c, d, B, and C: $a_c = G_c / 2$

Configuration D: $a_c = A / 2$

a_o = equivalent radius of outer tube limit circle

a_s = radial shell dimension

Configurations a, b, and c: $a_s = D_s / 2$

Configurations d, e, and f: $a_s = G_s / 2$

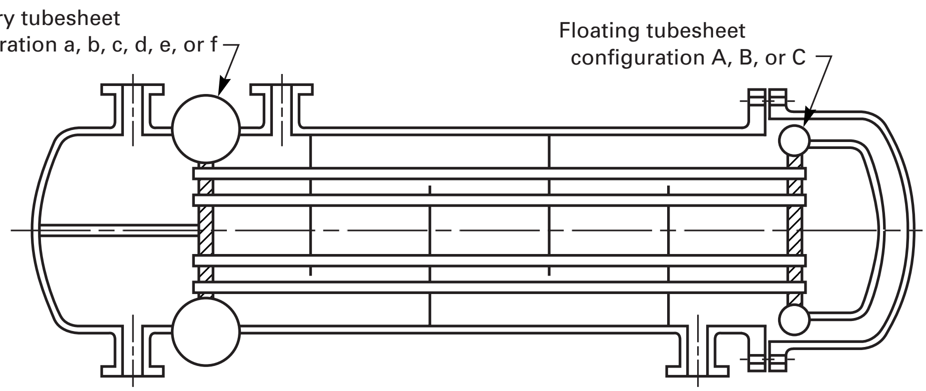
Configurations A, B, C, and D: $a_s = a_c$

C = bolt circle diameter (see Appendix 2)

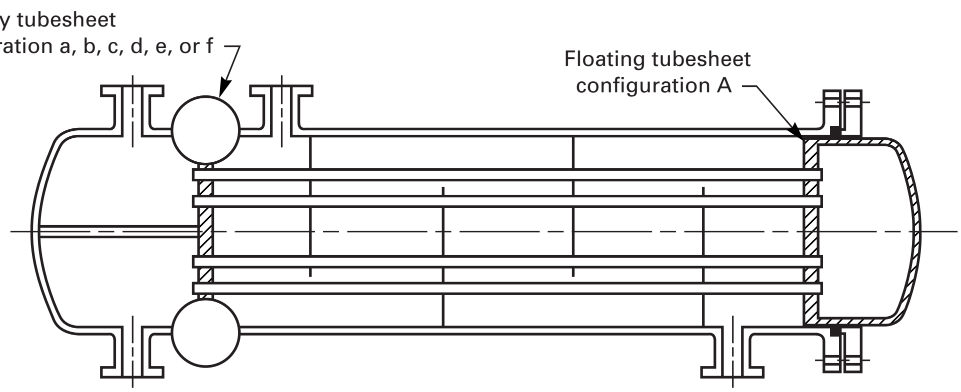
D_c = inside channel diameter

D_s = inside shell diameter

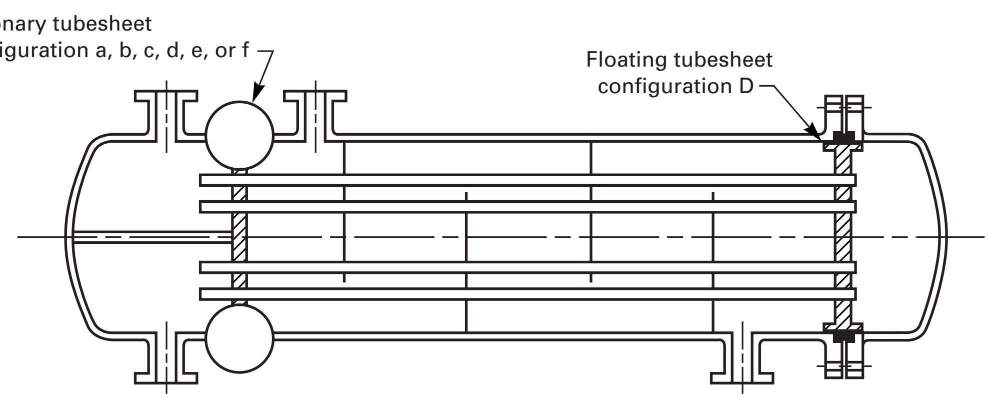
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



(a) Typical Floating Tubesheet Exchanger With an Immersed Floating Head



(b) Typical Floating Tubesheet Exchanger With an Externally Sealed Floating Head



(c) Typical Floating Tubesheet Exchanger With an Internally Sealed Floating Tubesheet

FIG. UHX-14.1 FLOATING TUBESHEET HEAT EXCHANGERS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

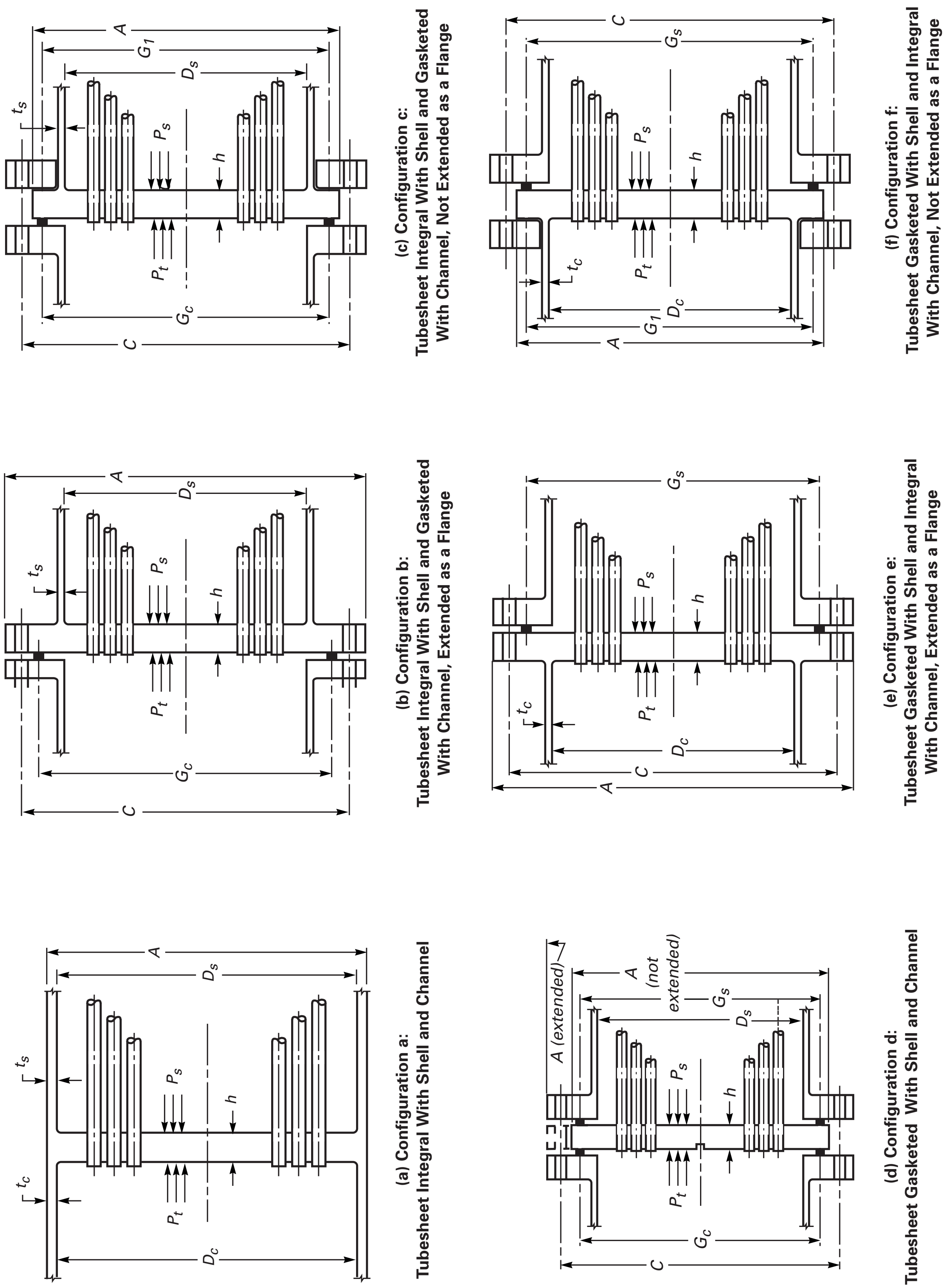


FIG. UHX-14.2 STATIONARY TUBESHEET CONFIGURATIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

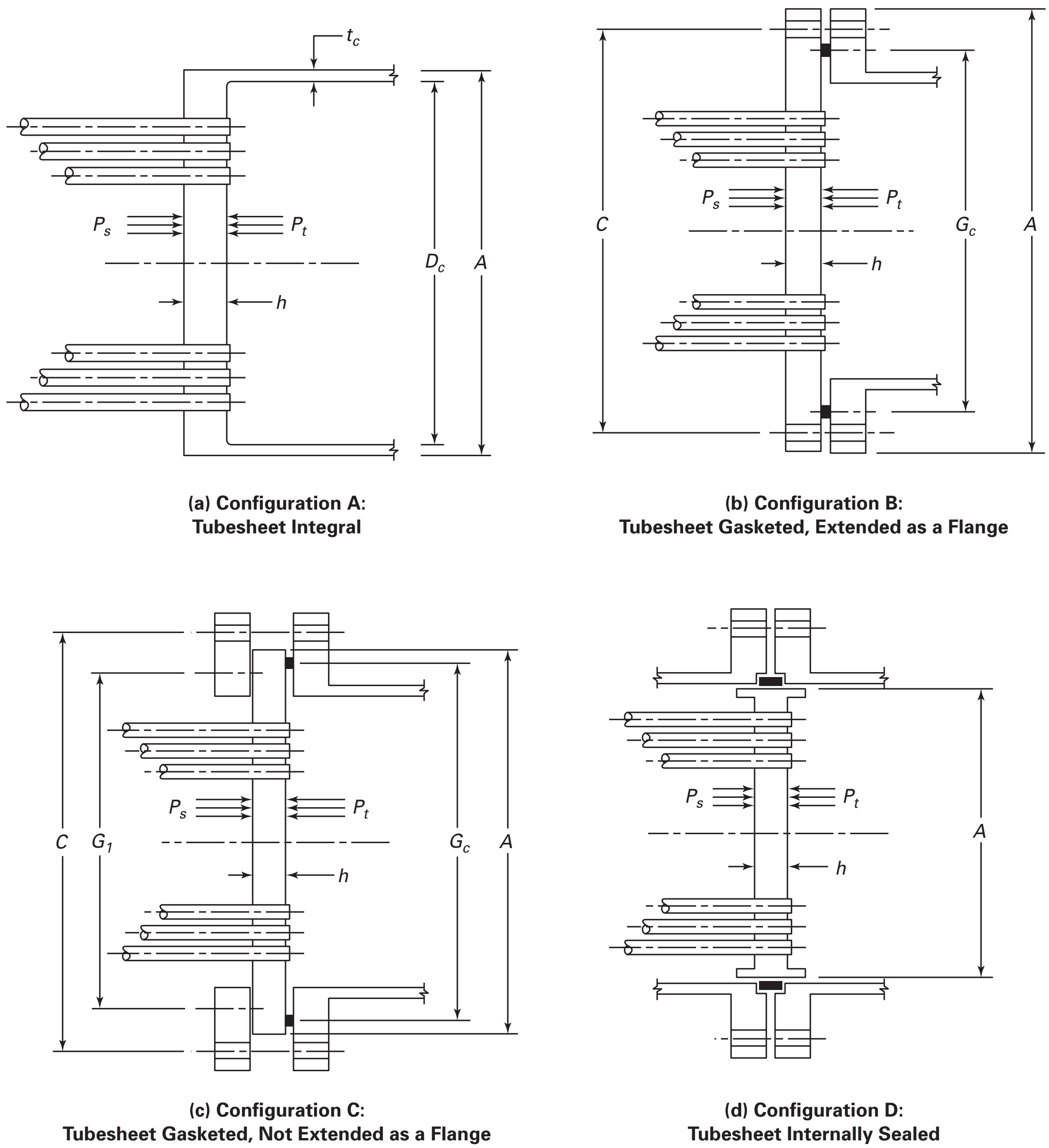


FIG. UHX-14.3 FLOATING TUBESHEET CONFIGURATIONS

d_t = nominal outside diameter of tubes
E = modulus of elasticity for tubesheet material at T
E_c = modulus of elasticity for channel material at T_c
E_s = modulus of elasticity for shell material at T_s
E_t = modulus of elasticity for tube material at T_t

NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

G_1 = midpoint of contact between flange and tubesheet
G_c = diameter of channel gasket load reaction (see Appendix 2)
G_s = diameter of shell gasket load reaction (see Appendix 2)
h = tubesheet thickness

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

k = constant accounting for the method of support for the unsupported tube span under consideration
= 0.6 for unsupported spans between two tubesheets,
= 0.8 for unsupported spans between a tubesheet and a tube support,
= 1.0 for unsupported spans between two tube supports.

L = tube length between inner tubesheet faces
= $L_t - 2h$

L_t = tube length between outer tubesheet faces

ℓ = unsupported tube span under consideration

$MAX\ [(a),(b),(c),...]$ = greatest of $a, b, c, ...$

N_t = number of tubes

P_e = effective pressure acting on tubesheet

P_s = shell side internal design pressure (see UG-21). For shell side vacuum use a negative value for P_s.

P_t = tube side internal design pressure (see UG-21). For tube side vacuum use a negative value for P_t.

S = allowable stress for tubesheet material at T

S_c = allowable stress for channel material at T_c

S_s = allowable stress for shell material at T_s

S_t = allowable stress for tube material at T_t

NOTE: For a welded tube or pipe, use the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product. When the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product is not available, divide the allowable stress of the welded product by 0.85.

S_y = yield strength for tubesheet material at T.

$S_{y,c}$ = yield strength for channel material at T_c.

$S_{y,s}$ = yield strength for shell material at T_s.

$S_{y,t}$ = yield strength for tube material at T_t.

NOTE: The yield strength shall be taken from Table Y-1 in Section II, Part D. When a yield strength value is not listed in Table Y-1, one may be obtained by using the procedure in UG-28(c)(2) Step 3.

S_{PS} = allowable primary plus secondary stress for tubesheet material at T per UG-23(e)

$S_{PS,c}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for channel material at T_c per UG-23(e)

$S_{PS,s}$ = allowable primary plus secondary stress for shell material at T_s per UG-23(e)

T = tubesheet design temperature

T_a = ambient temperature, 70°F (20°C)

T_c = channel design temperature

T_s = shell design temperature

T_t = tube design temperature

t_c = channel thickness

t_s = shell thickness

t_t = nominal tube wall thickness

W = flange design bolt load for gasket seating condition. Use Formula 4 of 2-5(e) and see UHX-4(c).

ν = Poisson's ratio of tubesheet material

ν_c = Poisson's ratio of channel material

ν_s = Poisson's ratio of shell material

ν_t = Poisson's ratio of tube material

UHX-14.4 Design Considerations

UHX-14.4(a) The calculation shall be performed for the stationary end and for the floating end of the exchanger. Since the edge configurations of the stationary and floating tubesheets are different, the values of A, C, D_c, t_c, E_c, G, G_c, G_s, W, and a_c may be different for each set of calculations. For the floating tubesheet calculation, use $a_s = a_c$. However, both tubesheets are required to have the same thickness, and calculations shall be made with both tubesheets having the same thickness.

UHX-14.4(b) It is generally not possible to determine, by observation, the most severe condition of coincident pressure, temperature, and radial differential thermal expansion. Thus, it is necessary to evaluate all the anticipated loading conditions to ensure that the worst load combination has been considered in the design.

The various loading conditions to be considered shall include the normal operating conditions, the startup conditions, the shutdown conditions, and the upset conditions, which may govern the design of the main components of the heat exchanger (i.e., tubesheets, tubes, shell, channel).

For each of these conditions, the following loading cases shall be considered to determine the effective pressure P_e to be used in the design formulas:

UHX-14.4(b)(1) Loading Case 1: Tube side pressure P_t acting only ($P_s = 0$), without radial differential thermal expansion.

UHX-14.4(b)(2) Loading Case 2: Shell side pressure P_s acting only ($P_t = 0$), without radial differential thermal expansion.

UHX-14.4(b)(3) Loading Case 3: Tube side pressure P_t and shell side pressure P_s acting simultaneously, without radial differential thermal expansion.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UHX-14.4(b)(4) Loading Case 4: Radial differential thermal expansion [see UHX-14.4(g)] acting only ($P_t = 0$, $P_s = 0$).

UHX-14.4(b)(5) Loading Case 5: Tube side pressure P_t acting only ($P_s = 0$), with radial differential thermal expansion [see UHX-14.4(g)].

UHX-14.4(b)(6) Loading Case 6: Shell side pressure P_s acting only ($P_t = 0$), with radial differential thermal expansion [see UHX-14.4(g)].

UHX-14.4(b)(7) Loading Case 7: Tube side pressure P_t and shell side pressure P_s acting simultaneously, with radial differential thermal expansion [see UHX-14.4(g)].

Loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7 are only required when the effect of radial differential thermal expansion is to be considered [see UHX-14.4(g)].

When vacuum exists, each loading case shall be considered with and without the vacuum.

When differential pressure design is specified by the user, the design shall be based only on loading cases 3 and 7, as provided by UG-21.

The designer should take appropriate consideration of the stresses resulting from the pressure test required by UG-99 or UG-100 [see UG-99(d)].

UHX-14.4(c) Elastic moduli, yield strengths, and allowable stresses shall be taken at design temperatures. However for cases involving thermal loading (loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7), it is permitted to use the operating temperatures instead of the design temperatures (see UG-20).

UHX-14.4(d) As the calculation procedure is iterative, a value h shall be assumed for the tubesheet thickness to calculate and check that the maximum stresses in tubesheet, tubes, shell, and channel are within the maximum permissible stress limits.

UHX-14.4(e) The designer shall consider the effect of deflections in the tubesheet design, especially when the tubesheet thickness h is less than the tube diameter.

UHX-14.4(f) The designer shall consider the integrity of the tube-to-tubesheet joint (see UHX-15).

UHX-14.4(g) The designer shall consider the effect of radial differential thermal expansion adjacent to the tubesheet in accordance with UHX-14.6, if required by UHX-14.6.1.

UHX-14.5 Calculation Procedure. The procedure for the design of tubesheets for a floating tubesheet heat exchanger is as follows. Calculations shall be performed for both the stationary tubesheet and the floating tubesheet.

UHX-14.5.1 Step 1. Determine D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

Loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7: $h'_g = 0$

Calculate a_o, ρ_s, ρ_c, x_s, and x_t.

$$a_o = \frac{D_o}{2}$$

$$\rho_s = \frac{a_s}{a_o}$$

$$\rho_c = \frac{a_c}{a_o}$$

$$x_s = 1 - N_t\left(\frac{d_t}{2a_o}\right)^2$$

$$x_t = 1 - N_t\left(\frac{d_t - 2t_t}{2a_o}\right)^2$$

UHX-14.5.2 Step 2. Calculate shell coefficients β_s, k_s, λ_s, and δ_s.

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$\beta_s = \frac{\sqrt[4]{12(1 - \nu_s^2)}}{\sqrt{(D_s + t_s)\ t_s}}$$

$$k_s = \beta_s \frac{E_s\, t_s^3}{6(1 - \nu_s^2)}$$

$$\lambda_s = \frac{6D_s}{h^3} k_s \left(1 + h\beta_s + \frac{h^2\beta_s^2}{2}\right)$$

$$\delta_s = \frac{D_s^2}{4E_s t_s}\left(1 - \frac{\nu_s}{2}\right)$$

Configurations d, e, f, A, B, C, and D: $\beta_s = 0$, $k_s = 0$, $\lambda_s = 0$, $\delta_s = 0$

Calculate channel coefficients β_c, k_c, λ_c, and δ_c.

Configurations a, e, f, and A:

$$\beta_c = \frac{\sqrt[4]{12(1 - \nu_c^2)}}{\sqrt{(D_c + t_c)\ t_c}}$$

$$k_c = \beta_c \frac{E_c\, t_c^3}{6(1 - \nu_c^2)}$$

$$\lambda_c = \frac{6D_c}{h^3} k_c \left(1 + h\beta_c + \frac{h^2\beta_c^2}{2}\right)$$

$$\delta_c = \frac{D_c^2}{4E_c t_c}\left(1 - \frac{\nu_c}{2}\right)$$

Configurations b, c, d, B, C, and D: $\beta_c = 0$, $k_c = 0$, $\lambda_c = 0$, $\delta_c = 0$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-14.5.3 Step 3. Calculate h/p. If ρ changes, recalculate d^* and μ^* from UHX-11.5.1.

Determine E^*/E and ν^* relative to h/p from UHX-11.5.2.

Calculate X_a.

$$X_a = \left[24\left(1 - \nu^{*2}\right)N_t \frac{E_t\, t_t \left(d_t - t_t\right) a_o^2}{E^*\, L\, h^3}\right]^{1/4}$$

Using the calculated value of X_a, enter either Table UHX-13.1 or Fig. UHX-13.2 to determine Z_d, Z_v, and Z_m.

UHX-14.5.4 Step 4. Calculate diameter ratio K and coefficient F.

$$K = \frac{A}{D_o}$$

$$F = \frac{1 - \nu^*}{E^*}\left(\lambda_s + \lambda_c + E \ln K\right)$$

Calculate Φ and Q_1.

$$\Phi = \left(1 + \nu^*\right)F$$

$$Q_1 = \frac{\rho_s - 1 - \Phi Z_v}{1 + \Phi Z_m}$$

UHX-14.5.5 Step 5

UHX-14.5.5(a) Calculate ω_s, ω_s^* and ω_c, ω_c^*.

$$\omega_s = \rho_s k_s \beta_s \delta_s \left(1 + h\beta_s\right)$$

$$\omega_s^* = a_o^2 \frac{\left(\rho_o^2 - 1\right)\left(\rho_s - 1\right)}{4} - \omega_s$$

$$\omega_c = \rho_c k_c \beta_c \delta_c \left(1 + h\beta_c\right)$$

$$\omega_c^* = a_o^2 \left[\frac{\left(\rho_c^2 + 1\right)\left(\rho_c - 1\right)}{4} - \frac{\left(\rho_s - 1\right)}{2}\right] - \omega_c$$

UHX-14.5.5(b) Calculate γ_b.

Configurations a, A, and D:

$$\gamma_b = 0$$

Configurations b and B:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_c - C}{D_o}$$

Configurations c and C:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_c - G_1}{D_o}$$

Configuration d:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_c - G_s}{D_o}$$

Configuration e:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{C - G_s}{D_o}$$

Configuration f:

$$\gamma_b = \frac{G_1 - G_s}{D_o}$$

UHX-14.5.6 Step 6. For each loading case, calculate the effective pressure P_e.

For an exchanger with an immersed floating head [Fig. UHX-14.1(a)]: $P_e = P_s - P_t$

For an exchanger with an externally sealed floating head [Fig. UHX-14.1(b)]: $P_e = P_s\left(1 - \rho_s^2\right) - P_t$

For an exchanger with an internally sealed floating tubesheet [Fig. UHX-14.1(c)]: $P_e = (P_s - P_t)(1 - \rho_s^2)$

UHX-14.5.7 Step 7. For each loading case, calculate Q_2.

$$Q_2 = \frac{\left(\omega_s^* P_s - \omega_c^* P_t\right) + \frac{\gamma_b}{2\pi} W}{1 + \Phi Z_m}$$

For each loading case, calculate the bending stress in the tubesheet in accordance with (a) or (b) below.

UHX-14.5.7(a) When $P_e = 0$, calculate the bending stress σ.

$$\sigma = \frac{6Q_2}{\mu^*\left(h - h_g'\right)^2}$$

UHX-14.5.7(b) When $P_e \neq 0$:

UHX-14.5.7(b)(1) Calculate Q_3.

$$Q_3 = Q_1 + \frac{2\, Q_2}{P_e a_o^2}$$

UHX-14.5.7(b)(2) Using X_a and Q_3, determine coefficient F_m for each loading case from either Table UHX-13.1 or Figs. UHX-13.3-1 and UHX-13.3-2.

UHX-14.5.7(b)(3) Calculate the bending stress σ.

$$\sigma = \left(\frac{1.5\, F_m}{\mu^*}\right)\left(\frac{2a_o}{h - h_g'}\right)^2 P_e$$

For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $|\sigma| \leq S_{PS}$, the assumed tubesheet thickness is acceptable for bending. Otherwise, increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

Configurations a, b, c, d, e, and f: Proceed to Step 8.

Configuration A: Proceed to Step 10.

Configurations B, C, and D: The calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-14.5.8 Step 8. For each loading case, calculate the average shear stress τ in the tubesheet at the outer edge of the perforated region.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$\tau = \left(\frac{1}{2\mu}\right)\left(\frac{a_o}{h}\right)P_e$$

If $|\tau| \leq 0.8S$, the assumed tubesheet thickness is acceptable for shear. Otherwise, increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 3.

UHX-14.5.9 Step 9. Perform this step for each loading case.

UHX-14.5.9(a) Calculate the axial tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ in the outermost tube row.

$$\sigma_{t,o} = \frac{2(P_s\, x_s - P_t\, x_t) - X_a^4\left(P_e(Z_d + Z_v Q_1) + \dfrac{2Q_2 Z_v}{a_o^2}\right)}{2(x_t - x_s)}$$

For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $|\sigma_{t,o}| > S_t$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $|\sigma_{t,o}| > 2S_t$, the tube design shall be reconsidered.

If $\sigma_{t,o}$ is negative, proceed to (b) below. Otherwise, the tube design is acceptable.

Configurations a, b, c, e, and f: Proceed to Step 10.

Configuration d: The calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-14.5.9(b) Check the tubes for buckling.

UHX-14.5.9(b)(1) Calculate the largest equivalent unsupported buckling length of the tube ℓ_t considering the unsupported tube spans ℓ and their corresponding method of support k.

$$\ell_t = k\,\ell$$

UHX-14.5.9(b)(2) Calculate r_t, F_t, and C_t.

$$r_t = \frac{\sqrt{d_t^2 + (d_t - 2t_t)^2}}{4}$$

$$F_t = \frac{\ell_t}{r_t}$$

$$C_t = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E_t}{S_{y,t}}}$$

UHX-14.5.9(b)(3) Determine the factor of safety F_s in accordance with (a) or (b) below:

UHX-14.5.9(b)(3)(a) When $P_e \neq 0$,

$$F_s = \text{MAX}\ [(3.25\text{-}0.25\ [Z_d + Q_3 Z_v]\ X_a^4),\ (1.25)]$$

F_s need not be taken greater than 2.0.

UHX-14.5.9(b)(3)(b) When $P_e = 0$, $F_s = 1.25$

UHX-14.5.9(b)(4) Determine the maximum permissible buckling stress limit S_{tb} for the tubes in accordance with (a) or (b) below:

UHX-14.5.9(b)(4)(a) When $C_t \leq F_t$,

$$S_{tb} = \text{MIN}\left\{\left[\frac{1}{F_s}\frac{\pi^2 E_t}{F_t^2}\right], [S_t]\right\}$$

UHX-14.5.9(b)(4)(b) When $C_t > F_t$,

$$S_{tb} = \text{MIN}\left\{\left[\frac{S_{y,t}}{F_s}\left(1 - \frac{F_t}{2\,C_t}\right)\right], [S_t]\right\}$$

If $|\sigma_{t,o}| \leq S_{tb}$, the tube design is acceptable. Otherwise, the tube design shall be reconsidered.

Configurations a, b, c, e, and f: Proceed to Step 10.

Configuration d: The calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-14.5.10 Step 10. For each loading case, calculate the stresses in the shell and/or channel integral with the tubesheet.

Configurations a, b, and c: The shell shall have a uniform thickness of t_s for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_s t_s}$ adjacent to the tubesheet. Calculate the axial membrane stress $\sigma_{s,m}$, axial bending stress $\sigma_{s,b}$, and total axial stress σ_s in the shell at its junction to the tubesheet.

$$\sigma_{s,m} = \frac{a_o^2}{2(a_s + t_s)t_s}\left[P_e + (\rho_s^2 - 1)(P_s - P_t)\right] + \frac{a_s^2}{2(a_s + t_s)\,t_s}P_t$$

$$\sigma_{s,b} = \frac{6}{t_s^2}\,k_s\left\{\beta_s\delta_s P_s + \frac{6(1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*}\left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h\beta_s}{2}\right) \times \left[P_e(Z_v + Z_m\,Q_1) + \frac{2}{a_o^2}\,Z_m\,Q_2\right]\right\}$$

$$\sigma_s = |\sigma_{s,m}| + |\sigma_{s,b}|$$

Configurations a, e, f, and A: The channel shall have a uniform thickness of t_c for a minimum length of $1.8\sqrt{D_c t_c}$ adjacent to the tubesheet. Calculate the axial membrane stress $\sigma_{c,m}$, axial bending stress $\sigma_{c,b}$, and total axial stress σ_c, in the channel at its junction to the tubesheet.

$$\sigma_{c,m} = \frac{a_c^2}{2(a_c + t_c)t_c}P_t$$

$$\sigma_{c,b} = \frac{6}{t_c^2}\,k_c\left\{\beta_c\delta_c P_t - \frac{6(1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*}\left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3}\right)\left(1 + \frac{h\beta_c}{2}\right) \times \left[P_e(Z_v + Z_m\,Q_1) + \frac{2}{a_o^2}\,Z_m\,Q_2\right]\right\}$$

$$\sigma_c = |\sigma_{c,m}| + |\sigma_{c,b}|$$

Configuration a: For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $\sigma_s \leq 1.5S_s$ and $\sigma_c \leq 1.5S_c$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s}$ and $\sigma_c \leq S_{PS,c}$, the shell and channel

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

designs are acceptable, and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise proceed to Step 11.

Configurations b and c: For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $\sigma_s \leq 1.5S_s$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s}$, the shell design is acceptable, and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to Step 11.

Configurations e, f, and A: For loading cases 1, 2, and 3, if $\sigma_c \leq 1.5S_c$, and for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7, if $\sigma_c \leq S_{PS,c}$, the channel design is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete. Otherwise, proceed to Step 11.

UHX-14.5.11 Step 11. The design shall be reconsidered by using one or a combination of the following two options.

Option 1. Increase the assumed tubesheet thickness h and return to Step 2.

Option 2. Increase the integral shell and/or channel thickness as follows and return to Step 1.

Configurations a, b, and c: If $\sigma_s > 1.5S_s$, increase the shell thickness t_s.

Configurations a, e, f, and A: If $\sigma_c > 1.5S_c$, increase the channel thickness t_c.

UHX-14.6 Calculation Procedure for Effect of Radial Thermal Expansion Adjacent to the Tubesheet

UHX-14.6.1 Scope

UHX-14.6.1(a) This procedures describes how to use the rules of UHX-14.5 when the effect of radial differential thermal expansion between the tubesheet and integral shell or channel is to be considered.

UHX-14.6.1(b) This procedure shall be used when cyclic or dynamic reactions due to pressure or thermal variations are specified [see UG-22(e)]

UHX-14.6.1(c) This procedure shall be used when specified by the user. The user shall provide the Manufacturer with the data necessary to determine the required tubesheet, channel, and shell material temperatures.

UHX-14.6.1(d) Optionally, the designer may use this procedure to consider the effect of radial differential thermal expansion even when it is not required by (b) or (c) above.

UHX-14.6.2 Conditions of Applicability. This calculation procedure applies only when the tubesheeet is integral with the shell or channel (Configurations a, b, c, e, f, and A).

UHX-14.6.3 Additional Nomenclature

T' = tubesheet metal temperature at the rim
T'_c = channel metal temperature at the tubesheet
T'_s = shell metal temperature at the tubesheet
α' = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of tubesheet material at T'
α'_c = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of channel material at T'_c
α'_s = mean coefficient of thermal expansion of shell material at T'_s

UHX-14.6.4 Calculation Procedure. The calculation procedure outlined in UHX-14.5 shall be performed for loading cases 4, 5, 6, 7, accounting for the following modifications.

UHX-14.6.4(a) Determine the average temperature of the unperforated rim T_r.

Configuration a:

$$T_r = \frac{T' + T'_s + T'_c}{3}$$

Configurations b and c:

$$T_r = \frac{T' + T'_s}{2}$$

Configurations e, f, and A:

$$T_r = \frac{T' + T'_c}{2}$$

For conservative values of P_s^* and P_c^*, $T_r = T'$ may be used.

UHX-14.6.4(b) Determine the average temperature of the shell T_s^* and channel T_c^* at their junction to the tubeshet as follows:

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$T_s^* = \frac{T'_s + T_r}{2}$$

Configurations a, e, f, and A:

$$T_c^* = \frac{T'_c + T_r}{2}$$

For conservative values of P_s^* and P_c^*, $T_s^* = T'_s$ and $T_c^* = T'_c$ may be used.

UHX-14.6.4(c) Calcualate P_s^* and P_c^*.

Configurations a, b, and c:

$$P_s^* = \frac{E_s t_s}{a_s}\left[\alpha'_s(T_s^* - T_a) - \alpha'(T_r - T_a)\right]$$

Configurations e, f, and A:

$$P_s^* = 0$$

Configurations a, e, f, and A:

$$P_c^* = \frac{E_c t_c}{a_c}\left[\alpha'_c(T_c^* - T_a) - \alpha'(T_r - T_a)\right]$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Configurations b and c:

$$P_c^* = 0$$

UHX-14.6.4(d) In Step 7, replace the formula for Q_2 with:

$$Q_2 = \frac{(\omega_s^* P_s - \omega_c^* P_t) - (\omega_s P_s^* - \omega_c P_c^*) + \frac{\gamma_b}{2\pi} W}{1 + \Phi \; Z_m}$$

UHX-14.6.4(e) In Step 10, replace the formulas for $\sigma_{s,b}$ and $\sigma_{c,b}$ with:

$$\sigma_{s,b} = \frac{6}{t_s^2} k_s \left\{ \beta_s \left[\delta_s P_s + \frac{a_s^2}{E_s t_s} P_s^* \right] + \frac{6(1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*} \left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3} \right) \times \left(1 + \frac{h \beta_s}{2} \right) \left[P_e (Z_v + Z_m Q_1) + \frac{2}{a_o^2} Z_m Q_2 \right] \right\}$$

$$\sigma_{c,b} = \frac{6}{t_c^2} k_c \left\{ \beta_c \left[\delta_c P_t + \frac{a_c^2}{E_c t_c} P_c^* \right] - \frac{6(1 - \nu^{*2})}{E^*} \left(\frac{a_o^3}{h^3} \right) \times \left(1 + \frac{h \beta_c}{2} \right) \left[P_e (Z_v + Z_m Q_1) + \frac{2}{a_o^2} Z_m Q_2 \right] \right\}$$

UHX-15 TUBE-TO-TUBESHEET WELDS

UHX-15.1 Scope. These rules provide a basis for establishing weld sizes and allowable joint loads for full strength and partial strength tube-to-tubesheet welds.

UHX-15.2 Definitions

UHX-15.2(a) Full Strength Weld. A full strength tube-to-tubesheet weld is one in which the design strength is equal to or greater than the maximum allowable axial tube strength. When the weld in a tube-to-tubesheet joint meets the requirements of UHX-15.4, it is a full strength weld and the joint does not require qualification by shear load testing. Such a weld also provides tube joint leak tightness.

UHX-15.2(b) Partial Strength Weld. A partial strength weld is one in which the design strength is based on the mechanical and thermal axial tube loads (in either direction) that are determined from the actual design conditions. The maximum allowable axial load of this weld may be determined in accordance with UHX-15.5, Appendix A, or UW-18(d). When the weld in a tube-to-tubesheet joint meets the requirements of UHX-15.5 or UW-18(d), it is a partial strength weld and the joint does not require qualification by shear load testing. Such a weld also provides tube joint leak tightness.

UHX-15.2(c) Seal Weld. A tube-to-tubesheet seal weld is one used to supplement an expanded tube joint to ensure leak tightness. Its size has not been determined based on axial tube loading.

UHX-15.3 Nomenclature. The symbols described below are used for the design of tube-to-tubesheet welds.

a_c = length of the combined weld legs measured parallel to the longitudinal axis of the tube at its outside diameter
a_f = fillet weld leg
a_g = groove weld leg
a_r = minimum required length of the weld leg(s) under consideration
d_o = tube outside diameter
F_d = design strength, but not greater than F_t
f_d = ratio of the design strength to the tube strength
= 1.0 for full strength welds
= F_d / F_t for partial strength welds
F_f = fillet weld strength, but not greater than F_t
= $0.55\pi a_f(d_o + 0.67a_f) S_w$
f_f = ratio of the fillet weld strength to the design strength
= $[1 - F_g / (f_d F_t)]$
F_g = groove weld strength, but not greater than F_t
= $0.85\pi a_g (d_o + 0.67a_g) S_w$
F_t = tube strength
= $\pi t (d_o - t) S_a$
f_w = weld strength factor
= S_a / S_w
$L_{\max}$ = maximum allowable axial load in either direction on the tube-to-tubesheet joint
t = nominal tube thickness
S = allowable stress value as given in the applicable part of Section II, Part D
S_a = allowable stress in tube (see S, above)
S_t = allowable stress of the material to which the tube is welded (see S, above)
S_w = allowable stress in weld (lesser of S_a or S_t, above)

NOTE: For a welded tube or pipe, use the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product. When the allowable stress for the equivalent seamless product is not available, divide the allowable stress of the welded product by 0.85.

UHX-15.4 Full Strength Welds. Full strength welds shown in Fig. UHX-15.1 shall conform to the following requirements.

UHX-15.4(a) The size of a full strength weld shall be determined in accordance with UHX-15.6.

UHX-15.4(b) The maximum allowable axial load in either direction on a tube-to-tubesheet joint with a full strength weld shall be determined as follows.

UHX-15.4(b)(1) For loads due to pressure-induced axial forces, $L_{\max} = F_t$.

UHX-15.4(b)(2) For loads due to thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces:

UHX-15.4(b)(2)(a) $L_{\max} = F_t$ for welded only tube-to-tubesheet joints, where the thickness through the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

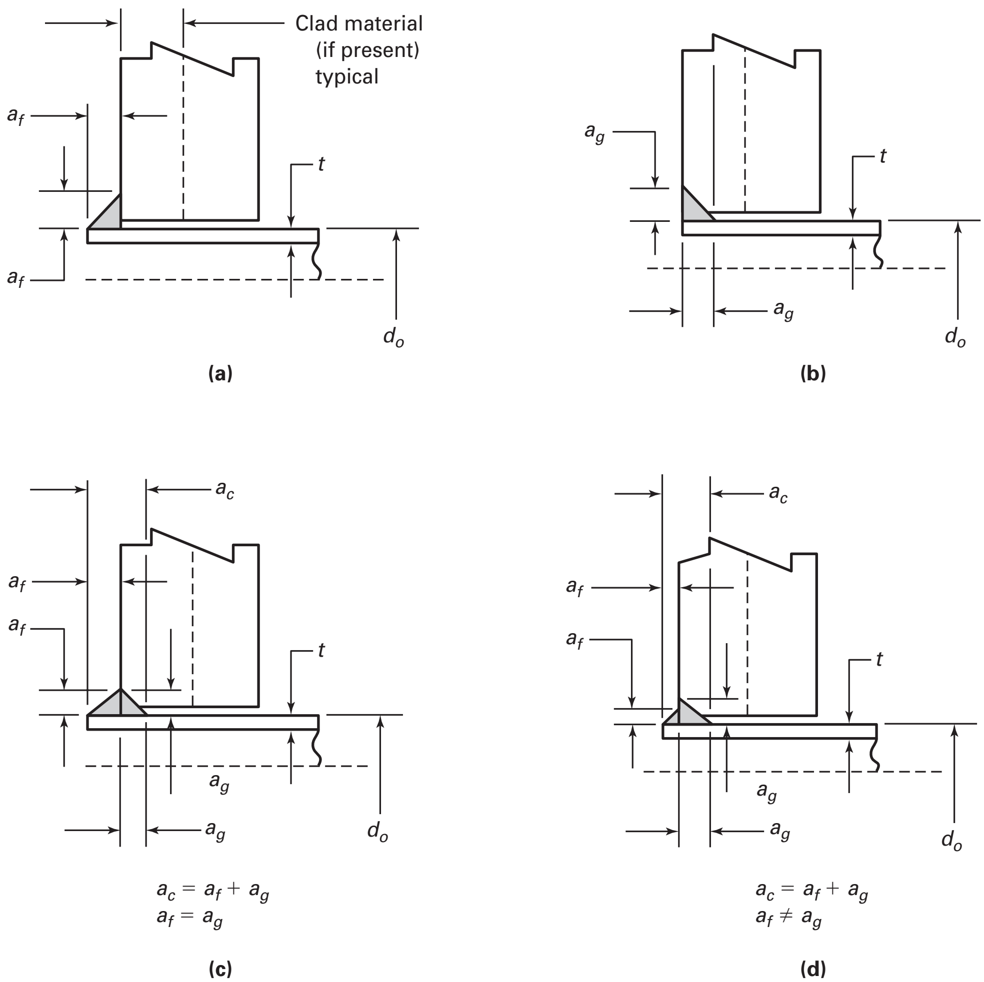


FIG. UHX-15.1 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF TUBE-TO-TUBESHEET STRENGTH WELDS

weld throat is less than the nominal tube thickness t;

UHX-15.4(b)(2)(b) $L_{\max} = 2F_t$ for all other welded tube-to-tubesheet joints.

UHX-15.5 Partial Strength Welds. Partial strength welds shown in Fig. UHX-15.1 shall conform to the following requirements.

UHX-15.5(a) The size of a partial strength weld shall be determined in accordance UHX-15.6.

UHX-15.5(b) The maximum allowable axial load in either direction on a tube-to-tubesheet joint with a partial strength weld shall be determined as follows.

UHX-15.5(b)(1) For loads due to pressure-induced axial forces, $L_{\max} = F_f + F_g$, but not greater than F_t.

UHX-15.5(b)(2) For loads due to thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces:

UHX-15.5(b)(2)(a) $L_{\max} = F_f + F_g$, but not greater than F_t, for welded only tube-to-tubesheet joints, where the thickness through the weld throat is less than the nominal tube thickness t;

UHX-15.5(b)(2)(b) $L_{\max} = 2(F_f + F_g)$, but not greater than $2F_t$, for all other welded tube-to-tubesheet joints.

UHX-15.6 Weld Size Design Formulas. The size of tube-to-tubesheet strength welds shown in Fig. UHX-15.1 shall conform to the following requirements.

UHX-15.6(a) For fillet welds shown in sketch (a),

$$a_r = \sqrt{(0.75d_o)^2 + 2.73t(d_o - t)f_w f_d} - 0.75d_o$$

UHX-15.6(a)(1) For full strength welds, a_f shall not be less than the greater of a_r or t.

UHX-15.6(a)(2) For partial strength welds, a_f shall not be less than a_r.

UHX-15.6(b) For groove welds shown in sketch (b),

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$a_r = \sqrt{(0.75d_o)^2 + 1.76t(d_o - t)f_w f_d} - 0.75d_o$$

UHX-15.6(b)(1) For full strength welds, a_g shall not be less than the greater of a_r or t.

UHX-15.6(b)(2) For partial strength welds, a_g shall not be less than a_r.

UHX-15.6(c) For combined groove and fillet welds shown in sketch (c), where a_f is equal to a_g,

$$a_r = 2\left[\sqrt{(0.75d_o)^2 + 1.07t(d_o - t)f_w f_d} - 0.75d_o\right]$$

UHX-15.6(c)(1) For full strength welds, a_c shall not be less than the greater of a_r or t.

UHX-15.6(c)(2) For partial strength welds, a_c shall not be less than a_r.

Calculate a_f and a_g: $a_f = a_c/2$ and $a_g = a_c/2$.

UHX-15.6(d) For combined groove and fillet welds shown in sketch (d), where a_f is not equal to a_g, a_r shall be determined as follows: Choose a_g. Calculate a_r:

$$a_r = \sqrt{(0.75d_o)^2 + 2.73t(d_o - t)f_w f_d f_f} - 0.75d_o$$

UHX-15.6(d)(1) For full strength welds, a_c shall not be less than the greater of $(a_r + a_g)$ or t.

UHX-15.6(d)(2) For partial strength welds, a_c shall not be less than $(a_r + a_g)$.

Calculate a_f : $a_f = a_c - a_g$

UHX-16 THIN-WALLED EXPANSION JOINTS

Thin-walled expansion joints shall be in accordance with Appendix 26, as applicable. Thin-walled expansion joints not covered by Appendix 26 shall be in accordance with U-2(g).

UHX-17 THICK-WALLED EXPANSION JOINTS

Thick-walled expansion joints shall be in accordance with Appendix 5, as applicable. Thick-walled expansion joints not covered by Appendix 5 shall be in accordance with U-2(g).

UHX-18 PRESSURE TEST REQUIREMENTS

The shell side and the tube side of the heat exchanger shall be subjected to a pressure test in accordance with UG-99 or UG-100.

UHX-19 HEAT EXCHANGER MARKING

UHX-19.1 Required Marking. The marking of heat exchangers shall be in accordance with UG-116 using the specific requirements of UG-116(j) for combination units (multi-chamber vessels). When the markings are grouped in one location in accordance with requirements of UG-116(j)(1) and abbreviations for each chamber are used, they shall be as follows:

UHX-19.1(a) For markings in accordance with UG-116(a)(3) and UG-116(a)(4), the chambers shall be abbreviated as:

(1) SHELL for shell side

(2) TUBES for tube side

This abbreviation shall precede the appropriate design data. For example, use:

(1) SHELL FV&300 psi (FV&2000 kPa) at 500°F (260°C) for the shell side maximum allowable working pressure

(2) TUBES 150 psi (1 000 kPa) at 350°F (175°C) for the tube side maximum allowable working pressure

UHX-19.1(b) When the markings in accordance with UG-116(b)(1), UG-116(c), UG-116(e) and UG-116(f) are different for each chamber, the chambers shall be abbreviated as:

(1) S for shell side

(2) T for tube side

This abbreviation shall follow the appropriate letter designation and shall be separated by a hyphen. For example, use:

(1) L-T for lethal service tube side

(2) RT 1-S for full radiography on the shell side

UHX-19.2 Supplemental Marking. A supplemental tag or marking shall be supplied on the heat exchanger to caution the user if there are any restrictions on the design, testing, or operation of the heat exchanger. Supplemental marking shall be required for, but not limited to, the following:

UHX-19.2.1 Differential Design. The heat exchanger shall be marked "Differential Design" when one or more of its components is designed or tested using the differential design pressure (see UG-21).

UHX-19.2.2 Fixed Tubesheet Heat Exchangers. Fixed tubesheet heat exchangers shall be marked with a caution such as follows:

CAUTION: The Code required pressures and temperatures marked on the heat exchanger relate to the basic design conditions. The heat exchanger design has been evaluated for specific operating conditions and shall be re-evaluated before it is operated at different operating conditions.

UHX-20 EXAMPLES

Examples illustrating the use of the design rules given in this Part are shown as follows. The examples were

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

generated using computer software by performing the entire calculation without rounding off during each step. Accuracy of the final results beyond three significant figures is not intended or required.

UHX-20.1 Examples of UHX-12 for U-Tube Tubesheets

UHX-20.1.1 Example 1: Tubesheet Integral With Shell and Channel

UHX-20.1.1(a) Given. A U-tube heat exchanger With the tubesheet construction in accordance with configuration a as shown in Fig UHX-12.1, sketch (a).

UHX-20.1.1(a)(1) The shell side design conditions are −10 and 60 psi at 500°F.

UHX-20.1.1(a)(2) The tube side design conditions are −15 and 140 psi at 500°F.

UHX-20.1.1(a)(3) The tube material is SA-249 S31600 (Stainless Steel 316). The tubes are 0.75 in. outside diameter and 0.065 in. thick and are to be full-strength welded with no credit taken for expansion.

UHX-20.1.1(a)(4) The tubesheet material is SA-240 S31600 (Stainless Steel 316) with no corrosion allowance on the tube side and no pass partition grooves. The tubesheet outside diameter is 12.939 in. The tubesheet has 76 tube holes on a 1.0 in. square pattern with one centerline pass lane. The largest center-to-center distance between adjacent tube rows is 2.25 in., and the radius to the outermost tube hole center is 5.438 in.

UHX-20.1.1(a)(5) The shell material is SA-312 S31600 (Stainless Steel 316) welded pipe. The shell inside diameter is 12.39 in. and the shell thickness is 0.18 in.

UHX-20.1.1(a)(6) The channel material is SA-240 S31600 (Stainless Steel 316). The channel inside diameter is 12.313 in. and the channel thickness is 0.313 in.

UHX-20.1.1(b) Data Summary. The data summary consists of those variables from the nomenclature (UHX-11.3 and UHX-12.3) that are applicable to this configuration.

UHX-20.1.1(b)(1) The data for UHX-11.3 is:

c_t = 0 in.
d_t = 0.75 in.
E = 25.8 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
E_t = 25.8 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
h_g = 0 in.
p = 1.0 in.
r_o = 5.438 in.
S = 18,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F
S_t = 18,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F (for seamless tube, SA-213)
t_t = 0.065 in.
U_{L1} = 2.25 in.
ρ = 0 for no tube expansion

UHX-20.1.1(b)(2) The data for UHX-12.3 is:

A = 12.939 in.
D_c = 12.313 in.
D_s = 12.39 in.
E = 25.8 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
E_c = 25.8 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
E_s = 25.8 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
P_s = 60 psi and −10 psi
P_t = 140 psi and −15 psi
S = 18,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F
S_c = 18,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F
S_s = 18,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F (for seamless pipe, SA-312)
t_c = 0.313 in.
t_s = 0.18 in.
ν_s = 0.3
ν_c = 0.3

UHX-20.1.1(c) Calculation Results. The calculation results are shown for loading case 3 where $P_s = -10$ psi and $P_t = 140$ psi since this case yields the greatest value of σ.

UHX-20.1.1(c)(1) Step 1. Calculate D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

D_o = 11.6 in.
L_{L1} = 11.6 in.
A_L = 22.6 in.^{2}
μ = 0.25
d^* = 0.75 in.
p^* = 1.15 in.
μ^* = 0.349
h'_g = 0 in.

UHX-20.1.1(c)(2) Step 2. Calculate ρ_s, ρ_c, and M_{TS} for configuration a.

ρ_s = 1.07
ρ_c = 1.06
M_{TS} = −160 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.1(c)(3) Step 3. Assume a value for h. Calculate h/p. Determine E^*/E and ν^* from UHX-11.5.2. Calculate E^*.

h = 0.521 in.
h/p = 0.521
E^*/E = 0.445

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$\nu^* = 0.254$
$E^* = 11.5 \times 10^6$ psi

UHX-20.1.1(c)(4) Step 4. For configuration a, calculate β_s, k_s, λ_s, δ_s', and ω_s for the shell and β_c, k_c, λ_c, δ_c', and ω_c for the channel.

$\beta_s = 1.21$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_s = 33{,}300$ lb
$\lambda_s = 32.0 \times 10^6$ psi
$\delta_s = 7.02 \times 10^{-6}$ in.^{3}/lb
$\omega_s = 0.491$ in.^{2}
$\beta_c = 0.914$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_c = 132{,}000$ lb
$\lambda_c = 110 \times 10^6$ psi
$\delta_c = 3.99 \times 10^{-6}$ in.^{3}/lb
$\omega_c = 0.756$ in.^{2}

UHX-20.1.1(c)(5) Step 5. Calculate K and F for configuration a.

$K = 1.11$
$F = 9.41$

UHX-20.1.1(c)(6) Step 6. Calculate M^* for configuration a.

$M^* = -49.4$ in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.1(c)(7) Step 7. Calculate M_p, M_o, and M.

$M_p = 568$ in.-lb/in.
$M_o = -463$ in.-lb/in.
$M = 568$ in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.1(c)(8) Step 8. Calculate σ.

$\sigma = 36{,}000 \text{ psi} \le 2S = 36{,}000$ psi

UHX-20.1.1(c)(9) Step 9. Calculate τ.

$\tau = 3350 \text{ psi} \le 0.8S = 14{,}400$ psi

UHX-20.1.1(c)(10) Step 10. For configuration a, calculate $\sigma_{s,m}$, $\sigma_{s,b}$, and σ_s for the shell and $\sigma_{c,m}$, $\sigma_{c,b}$, and σ_c for the channel. The shell thickness shall be 0.18 in. for a minimum length of 2.69 in. adjacent to the tubesheet and the channel thickness shall be 0.313 in. for a minimum length of 3.53 in. adjacent to the tubesheet.

$\sigma_{s,m} = -170$ psi
$\sigma_{s,b} = -17{,}600$ psi
$\sigma_s = 17{,}700 \text{ psi} \le 1.5S_s = 27{,}000$ psi
$\sigma_{c,m} = 1{,}340$ psi
$\sigma_{c,b} = 25{,}300$ psi
$\sigma_c = 26{,}600 \text{ psi} \le 1.5S_c = 27{,}000$ psi

The assumed value for h is acceptable and the shell and channel stresses are within the allowable stresses; therefore, the calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-20.1.2 Example 2: Tubesheet Gasketed with Shell and Channel

UHX-20.1.2(a) Given. A U-tube heat exchanger with the tubesheet construction in accordance with configuration d as shown in Fig UHX-12.1, sketch (d).

UHX-20.1.2(a)(1) The shell side design conditions are −15 and 10 psi at 300°F.

UHX-20.1.2(a)(2) The tube side design condition is 135 psi at 300°F.

UHX-20.1.2(a)(3) The tube material is SB-111 C44300 (Admiralty). The tubes are 0.625 in. outside diameter and 0.065 in. thick and are to be expanded for the full thickness of the tubesheet.

UHX-20.1.2(a)(4) The tubesheet material is SA-285, Grade C (K02801) with a 0.125 in. corrosion allowance on the tube side and no pass partition grooves. The tubesheet outside diameter is 20.0 in. The tubesheet has 386 tube holes on a 0.75 in. equilateral triangular pattern with one centerline pass lane. The largest center-to-center distance between adjacent tube rows is 1.75 in., and the radius to the outermost tube hole center is 8.094 in.

UHX-20.1.2(a)(5) The diameter of the shell gasket load reaction is 19.0 in. and the shell flange design bolt load is 147,000 lb.

UHX-20.1.2(a)(6) The diameter of the channel gasket load reaction is 19.0 in. and the channel flange design bolt load is 162,000 lb.

UHX-20.1.2(b) Data Summary. The data summary consists of those variables from the nomenclature (UHX-11.3 and UHX-12.3) that are applicable to this configuration.

UHX-20.1.2(b)(1) The data for UHX-11.3 is:

$c_t = 0.125$ in.
$d_t = 0.625$ in.
$E = 28.3 \times 10^6$ psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 300°F
$E_t = 15.4 \times 10^6$ psi from Table TM-3 of Section II, Part D at 300°F
$h_g = 0$ in.
$p = 0.75$ in.
$r_o = 8.094$ in.
$S = 15{,}700$ psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 300°F
$S_t = 10{,}000$ psi from Table 1B of Section II, Part D at 300°F
$t_t = 0.065$ in.
$U_{L1} = 1.75$ in.
$\rho = 1.0$ for a full length tube expansion

UHX-20.1.2(b)(2) The data for UHX-12.3 is:

$A = 20.0$ in.
$E = 28.3 \times 10^6$ psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 300°F

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

G_c = 19.0 in.
G_s = 19.0 in.
P_s = 10 psi and −15 psi
P_t = 135 psi
S = 15,700 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 300°F
W_c = 162,000 lb
W_s = 147,000 lb
W_{max} = 162,000 lb

UHX-20.1.2(c) Calculation Results. The calculation results are shown for loading case 3 where $P_s = -15$ psi and $P_t = 135$ psi since this case yields the greatest value of σ.

UHX-20.1.2(c)(1) Step 1. Calculate D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

D_o = 16.8 in.
L_{L1} = 16.8 in.
A_L = 29.4 in.^{2}
μ = 0.167
d^* = 0.580 in.
p^* = 0.805 in.
μ^* = 0.280
h'_g = 0 in.

UHX-20.1.2(c)(2) Step 2. Calculate ρ_s, ρ_c, and M_{TS} for configuration d.

ρ_s = 1.13
ρ_c = 1.13
M_{TS} = −785 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.2(c)(3) Step 3. Assume a value for h. Calculate h/p. Determine E^*/E and v^* from UHX-11.5.2. Calculate E^*.

h = 1.28 in.
h/p = 1.71
E^*/E = 0.265
v^* = 0.358
E^* = 7.50 × 10^6 psi

UHX-20.1.2(c)(4) Step 4. For configuration d, skip Step 4 and proceed to Step 5.

UHX-20.1.2(c)(5) Step 5. Calculate K and F for configuration d.

K = 1.19
F = 0.420

UHX-20.1.2(c)(6) Step 6. Calculate M^* for configuration d.

M^* = −785 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.2(c)(7) Step 7. Calculate M_p, M_o, and M.

M_p = −160 in.-lb/in.
M_o = −2,380 in.-lb/in.
M = 2,380 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.2(c)(8) Step 8. Calculate σ.

σ = 31,200 psi ≤ 2S = 31,400 psi

UHX-20.1.2(c)(9) Step 9. Calculate τ.

τ = =2960 psi ≤ 0.8S = 12,600 psi

The assumed value for h is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-20.1.3 Example 3: Tubesheet Gasketed with Shell and Channel

UHX-20.1.3(a) Given. A U-tube heat exchanger with the tubesheet construction in accordance with configuration d as shown in Fig UHX-12.1, sketch (d).

UHX-20.1.3(a)(1) The shell side design condition is 375 psi at 500°F.

UHX-20.1.3(a)(2) The tube side design condition is 75 psi at 500°F.

UHX-20.1.3(a)(3) The tube material is SB-111 C70600 (90/10 Copper-Nickel). The tubes are 0.75 in. outside diameter and 0.049 in. thick and are to be expanded for one-half of the tubesheet thickness.

UHX-20.1.3(a)(4) The tubesheet material is SA-516, Grade 70 (K02700) with a 0.125 in. corrosion allowance on the tube side and a 0.1875 in. deep pass partition groove. The tubesheet outside diameter is 48.88 in. The tubesheet has 1,534 tube holes on a 0.9375 in. equilateral triangular pattern with one centerline pass lane. The largest center-to-center distance between adjacent tube rows is 2.25 in., and the radius to the outermost tube hole center is 20.5 in.

UHX-20.1.3(a)(5) The diameter of the shell gasket load reaction is 43.5 in. and the shell flange design bolt load is 675,000 lb.

UHX-20.1.3(a)(6) The diameter of the channel gasket load reaction is 44.88 in. and the channel flange design bolt load is 584,000 lb.

UHX-20.1.3(a)(7) The tubesheet shall be designed for the differential design pressure.

UHX-20.1.3(b) Data Summary. The data summary consists of those variables from the nomenclature (UHX-11.3 and UHX-12.3) that are applicable to this configuration.

UHX-20.1.3(b)(1) The data for UHX-11.3 is:

c_t = 0.125 in.
d_t = 0.75 in.
E = 27.1 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
E_t = 16.6 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-3 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
h_g = 0.1875 in.
p = 0.9375 in.
r_o = 20.5 in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

S = 20,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F
S_t = 8,000 psi from Table 1B of Section II, Part D at 500°F
t_t = 0.049 in.
U_{L1} = 2.25 in.
ρ = 0.5 for tubes expanded for one-half the tubesheet thickness

UHX-20.1.3(b)(2) The data for UHX-12.3 is:

A = 48.88 in.
E = 27.1 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 500°F
G_c = 44.88 in.
G_s = 43.5 in.
P_s = 375 psi
P_t = 75 psi
S = 20,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 500°F
W_c = 584,000 lb
W_s = 675,000 lb
W_{max} = 675,000 lb

UHX-20.1.3(c) Calculation Results. Since differential pressure design is specified, the calculation results are shown for loading case 3.

UHX-20.1.3(c)(1) Step 1. Calculate D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

D_o = 41.8 in.
L_{L1} = 41.8 in.
A_L = 93.9 in.^{2}
μ = 0.2
d^* = 0.738 in.
p^* = 0.971 in.
μ^* = 0.240
h'_g = 0.0625 in.

UHX-20.1.3(c)(2) Step 2. Calculate ρ_s, ρ_c, and M_{TS} for configuration d.

ρ_s = 1.04
ρ_c = 1.07
M_{TS} = 2,250 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.3(c)(3) Step 3. Assume a value for h. Calculate h/p. Determine E^*/E and v^* from UHX-11.5.2. Calculate E^*.

h = 4.15 in.
h/p = 4.43
E^*/E = 0.204
v^* = 0.407
E^* = 5.54 × 10^6 psi

UHX-20.1.3(c)(4) Step 4. For configuration d, skip Step 4 and proceed to Step 5.

UHX-20.1.3(c)(5) Step 5. Calculate K and F for configuration d.

K = 1.17
F = 0.458

UHX-20.1.3(c)(6) Step 6. Calculate M^* for configuration d.

M^* = 5800 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.3(c)(7) Step 7. Calculate M_p, M_o, and M.

M_p = −1150 in.-lb/in.
M_o = 26,700 in.-lb/in.
M = 26,700 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.3(c)(8) Step 8. Calculate σ.

$\sigma = 39{,}900 \text{ psi} \le 2S = 40{,}000 \text{ psi}$

UHX-20.1.3(c)(9) Step 9. Calculate τ.

$\tau = 3{,}770 \text{ psi} \le 0.8S = 16{,}000 \text{ psi}$

The assumed value for h is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-20.1.4 Example 4: Tubesheet Gasketed With Shell and Integral With Channel, Extended as a Flange

UHX-20.1.4(a) Given. A U-tube heat exchanger with the tubesheet construction in accordance with configuration e as shown in Fig UHX-12.1, sketch (e).

UHX-20.1.4(a)(1) The shell side design condition is 650 psi at 400°F.

UHX-20.1.4(a)(2) The tube side design condition is 650 psi at 400°F.

UHX-20.1.4(a)(3) The tube material is SA-179 (K10200). The tubes are 0.75 in. outside diameter and 0.085 in. thick and are to be expanded for the full thickness of the tubesheet.

UHX-20.1.4(a)(4) The tubesheet material is SA-516, Grade 70 (K02700) with a 0.125 in. corrosion allowance on the tube side and no pass partition grooves. The tubesheet outside diameter is 37.25 in. The tubesheet has 496 tube holes on a 1.0 in. square pattern with one centerline pass lane. The largest center-to-center distance between adjacent tube rows is 1.375 in., and the radius to the outermost tube hole center is 12.75 in.

UHX-20.1.4(a)(5) The diameter of the shell gasket load reaction is 32.375 in., the shell flange bolt circle is 35 in., and the shell flange design bolt load is 656,000 lb.

UHX-20.1.4(a)(6) The channel material is SA-516, Grade 70 (K02700). The channel inside diameter is 31 in. and the channel thickness 0.625 in.

UHX-20.1.4(b) Data Summary. The data summary consists of those variables from the nomenclature (UHX-11.3 and UHX-12.3) that are applicable to this configuration.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-20.1.4(b)(1) The data for UHX-11.3 is:

c_t = 0.125 in.
d_t = 0.75 in.
E = 27.7 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 400°F
E_t = 27.7 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 400°F
h_g = 0 in.
p = 1.0 in.
r_o = 12.75 in.
S = 20,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 400°F
S_t = 13,400 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 400°F
t_t = 0.085 in.
U_{L1} = 1.375 in.
ρ = 1.0 for full length tube expansion

UHX-20.1.4(b)(2) The data for UHX-12.3 is:

A = 37.25 in.
C = 35 in.
D_c = 31 in.
E = 27.7 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 400°F
E_c = 27.7 × 10^6 psi from Table TM-1 of Section II, Part D at 400°F
G_s = 32.375 in.
P_s = 650 psi
P_t = 650 psi
S = 20,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 400°F
S_c = 20,000 psi from Table 1A of Section II, Part D at 400°F
$S_{y,c}$ = 32,500 psi from Table Y-1 of Section II, Part D at 400°F
$S_{PS,c}$ = 65,000 psi {either $2S_{y,c}$ or $3S_c$ [2(32,500) = 65,000 or 3(20,000) = 60,000]}
t_c = 0.625 in.
W_s = 656,000 lb
ν_c = 0.3

UHX-20.1.4(c) Calculation Results. The calculation results are shown for loading case 2 where $P_s = 650$ psi and $P_t = 0$ psi since this case yields the greatest value of σ.

UHX-20.1.4(c)(1) Step 1. Calculate D_o, μ, μ^*, and h'_g from UHX-11.5.1.

D_o = 26.3 in.
L_{L1} = 26.3 in.
A_L = 36.1 in.^{2}
μ = 0.25
d^* = 0.636 in.
p^* = 1.04 in.
μ^* = 0.385
h'_g = 0 in.

UHX-20.1.4(c)(2) Step 2. Calculate ρ_s, ρ_c, and M_{TS} for configuration e.

ρ_s = 1.23
ρ_c = 1.18
M_{TS} = 16,500 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.4(c)(3) Step 3. Assume a value for h. Calculate h/p. Determine E^*/E and ν^* from UHX-11.5.2. Calculate E^*.

h = 3.50 in.
h/p = 3.50
E^*/E = 0.441
ν^* = 0.318
E^* = 12.2 × 10^6 psi

UHX-20.1.4(c)(4) Step 4. For configuration e, calculate β_c, k_c, λ_c, δ_c, and ω_c for the channel.

β_c = 0.409 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 506,000 lb
λ_c = 7.59 × 10^6 psi
δ_c = 1.18 × 10^{-5} in.^{3}/lb
ω_c = 7.01 in.^{2}

UHX-20.1.4(c)(5) Step 5. Calculate K and F for configuration e.

K = 1.42
F = 0.964

UHX-20.1.4(c)(6) Step 6. Calculate M^* for configuration e.

M^* = 26,900 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.4(c)(7) Step 7. Calculate M_p, M_o, and M.

M_p = 6830 in.-lb/in.
M_o = 30,000 in.-lb/in.
M = 30,000 in.-lb/in.

UHX-20.1.4(c)(8) Step 8. Calculate σ.

$\sigma = 38,200 \text{ psi} \leq 2S = 40,000 \text{ psi}$

UHX-20.1.4(c)(9) Step 9. Calculate τ.

$\tau = \ =4880 \text{ psi} \leq 0.8S = 16,000 \text{ psi}$

UHX-20.1.4(c)(10) Step 10. For configuration e, calculate $\sigma_{c,m}$, $\sigma_{c,b}$, and σ_c for the channel. The channel thickness shall be 0.625 in. for a minimum length of 7.92 in. adjacent to the tubesheet.

$\sigma_{c,m}$ = 0 psi
$\sigma_{c,b}$ = −57,000 psi
$\sigma_c = 57,000 \text{ psi} > 1.5S_c = 30,000 \text{ psi}$

UHX-20.1.4(c)(11) Step 11. Since the channel stress exceeds the allowable stress, the design must be reconsidered using one of three options.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Option 1 requires that the tubesheet thickness be increased until the channel stresses calculated in Step 9 are within the allowable stress for each loading case.

Option 2 requires that the shell and/or channel thickness be increased until their respective stresses calculated in Step 9 are within the allowable stress for each loading case.

Option 3 permits *one* elastic-plastic calculation for each design. If the tubesheet stress is still within the allowable stress given is Step 8, the design is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete. If the tubesheet stress is greater than the allowable stress, the design shall be reconsidered by using Option 1 or 2.

Choose Option 3, configuration e.

Since $\sigma_c \leq S_{PS,c} = 65{,}000$ psi for all loading cases, this option may be used. The calculations for this option are only required for each loading case where $\sigma_c > 1.5S_c = 30{,}000$ psi.

Calculate E_c^* for each loading case where $\sigma_c > 30{,}000$ psi. For this example, E_c^* and the calculations for loading case 2 are shown.

$$E_c^* = 20.1 \times 10^6 \text{ psi}$$

Recalculate k_c and λ_c given in Step 4 using the applicable reduced effective modulus E_c.

$$k_c = 368{,}000 \text{ lb}$$
$$\lambda_c = 5.51 \times 10^6 \text{ psi}$$

Recalculate F given in Step 5.

$$F = 0.848$$

Recalculate M_p, M_o, and M given in Step 7.

$$M_p = 8{,}130 \text{ in.-lb/in.}$$
$$M_o = 31{,}400 \text{ in.-lb/in.}$$
$$M = 31{,}400 \text{ in.-lb/in.}$$

Recalculate σ given in Step 8.

$$\sigma = 39{,}800 \text{ psi} \leq 2S = 40{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

The assumed value for h is acceptable and the calculation procedure is complete.

UHX-20.2 Examples of UHX-13 for Fixed Tubesheets

UHX-20.2.1 Example 1: Tubesheet Integral With Shell and Gasketed With Channel, Extended as a Flange

UHX-20.2.1(a) Given. A fixed tubesheet heat exchanger with the tubesheet construction in accordance with Configuration b as shown in Fig. UHX-13.1, sketch (b). The shell adjacent to the tubesheet is thicker than the shell remote from the tubesheet in accordance with Fig. UHX-13.4. There is no allowance for corrosion.

UHX-20.2.1(b) Data Summary

UHX-20.2.1(b)(1) Tubesheet data summary:

The tube layout pattern is triangular with no pass lanes.

$$A = 42.625 \text{ in.}$$
$$h = 1.75 \text{ in.}$$
$$N_t = 649$$
$$p = 1.25 \text{ in.}$$
$$r_o = 16.59 \text{ in.}$$
$$h_g = 0 \text{ in.}$$
$$c_t = 0 \text{ in.}$$
$$C = 41 \text{ in.}$$
$$T = 750°\text{F}$$
$$E = 24.5 \times 10^6 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$\nu = 0.3$$
$$\alpha' = 9.76 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in./°F at } 550°\text{F}$$
$$S = 17{,}700 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$S_y = 20{,}000 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$S_{PS} = 53{,}100 \text{ psi } \{\text{either } 2S_y \text{ or } 3S\ [2(20{,}000) = 40{,}000 \text{ or } 3(17{,}700) = 53{,}100]\}$$

UHX-20.2.1(b)(2) Shell data summary:

$$D_s = 34.75 \text{ in.}$$
$$t_s = 0.25 \text{ in.}$$
$$T_s = 750°\text{F}$$
$$E_s = 24.9 \times 10^6 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$\nu_s = 0.3$$
$$\alpha_{s,m} = 7.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in./°F at } 550°\text{F}$$

UHX-20.2.1(b)(3) Shell adjacent to tubesheet data summary:

$$t_{s,1} = 1.188 \text{ in.}$$
$$a_s = 17.4 \text{ in.}$$
$$\ell_1 = 12 \text{ in.}$$
$$\ell_1' = 12 \text{ in.}$$
$$E_{s,1} = 24.9 \times 10^6 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$\alpha_{s,m,1} = 7.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in./°F at } 550°\text{F}$$
$$\alpha_s' = 7.5 \times 10^{-6} \text{ in./in./°F at } 555°\text{F}$$
$$S_{s,1} = 20{,}500 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$S_{y,s,1} = 26{,}500 \text{ psi at } 750°\text{F}$$
$$S_{PS,s,1} = 61{,}500 \text{ psi } \{\text{either } 2S_{y,s,1} \text{ or } 3S_{s,1}\ [2(26{,}500) = 53{,}000 \text{ or } 3(20{,}500) = 61{,}500]\}$$

UHX-20.2.1(b)(4) Expansion joint data summary:

$$D_J = 38.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$K_J = 11{,}388 \text{ lb/in.}$$

UHX-20.2.1(b)(5) Channel flange data summary:

$$G_c = 39.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$a_c = 19.8 \text{ in.}$$

UHX-20.2.1(b)(6) Tube data summary:

$$d_t = 1 \text{ in.}$$
$$t_t = 0.083 \text{ in.}$$
$$L_t = 168 \text{ in.}$$
$$L = 164.5 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ℓ_t = 59 in.
ρ = 0.95
T_t = 750°F
E_t = 24.5 × 10^6 psi at 750°F
v_t = 0.3
$\alpha_{t,m}$ = 9.76 × 10^{-6} in./in./°F at 560°F
S_t = 15,000 psi at 750°F
$S_{y,t}$ = 20,000 psi at 750°F

UHX-20.2.1(b)(7) Load summary:

P_s = 150 psi
P_t = 400 psi
W = 277,868 lb
$T_{s,m}$ = 550°F
$T_{t,m}$ = 560°F
T' = 550°F
T'_s = 555°F

UHX-20.2.1(c) Calculation Results

UHX-20.2.1(c)(1) Step 1

D_o = 34.18 in.
A_L = 0 in.^{2}
μ = 0.2
μ^* = 0.307
h'_g = 0 in. for all loading cases
a_o = 17.09 in.
ρ_s = 1.02
ρ_c = 1.16
x_s = 0.444
x_t = 0.614

UHX-20.2.1(c)(2) Step 2

K_s^* = 4.70 × 10^6 lb/in.
K_t = 35,600 lb/in.
$K_{s,t}$ = 0.203
J = 2.42 × 10^{-3}
β_s = 0.278 in.$^{-1}$
k_s = 2.13 × 10^6 lb
λ_s = 1.33 × 10^8 psi
δ_s = 8.67 × 10^{-6} in.^{3}/lb
β_c = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 0 lb
λ_c = 0 psi
δ_c = 0 in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.2.1(c)(3) Step 3

h/p = 1.4
E^*/E = 0.312
v^* = 0.328
X_a = 5.79
Z_d = 7.79 × 10^{-3}
Z_v = 3.04 × 10^{-2}
Z_m = 0.252

UHX-20.2.1(c)(4) Step 4

K = 1.25
F = 12.1
Φ = 16.1
Q_1 = −9.34 × 10^{-2}
Q_{Z1} = 2.78
Q_{Z2} = 3.83
U = 7.66

UHX-20.2.1(c)(5) Step 5

ω_s = 7.76 in.^{2}
ω_s^* = −7.72 in.^{2}
ω_c = 0 in.^{2}
ω_c^* = 24.1 in.^{2}
γ_b = −4.39 × 10^{-2}
T_r = 553°F
T_s^* = 554°F
P_c^* = 0 psi

Case	P_s, psi	P_t, psi	γ^*, in.	P_s^*, psi
1	0	400	0	0
2	150	0	0	0
3	150	400	0	0
4	0	0	0.195	-1,840
5	0	400	0.195	-1,840
6	150	0	0.195	-1,840
7	150	400	0.195	-1,840

UHX-20.2.1(c)(6) Step 6

Case	P'_s, psi	P'_t, psi	P_γ, psi	P_ω, psi	P_W, psi	P_{rim}, psi	P_e, psi
1	0	814,000	0	0	50.9	253	−399
2	−45,500	0	0	0	50.9	30.4	−22.3
3	−45,500	814,000	0	0	50.9	283	−422
4	0	0	4,900	−375	50.9	0	2.25
5	0	814,000	4,900	−375	50.9	253	−397
6	−45,500	0	4,900	−375	50.9	30.4	−20.1
7	−45,500	814,000	4,900	−375	50.9	283	−420

Case	Q_2	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi	σ Allowable, psi
1	−2,290	−0.0542	0.0271	20,200	26,550
2	−612	0.0946	0.0782	3,250	26,550
3	−2,520	−0.0525	0.0266	20,900	26,550
4	2,440	7.34	3.69	15,400	53,100
5	533	−0.103	0.0513	38,000	53,100
6	2,210	−0.847	0.424	15,800	53,100
7	305	-0.0984	0.0492	38,500	53,100

For all loading cases the tubesheet bending stress $\lvert\sigma\rvert$ ≤ the allowable stress and is therefore acceptable.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-20.2.1(c)(8) Step 8

Case	$\lvert\tau\rvert$, psi	τ Allowable, psi
1	9,750	14,160
2	544	14,160
3	10,300	14,160
4	54.8	14,160
5	9,700	14,160
6	490	14,160
7	10,200	14,160

For all loading cases the tubesheet shear stress $\lvert\tau\rvert \leq$ the allowable stress and is therefore acceptable.

UHX-20.2.1(c)(9) Step 9

$$r_t = 0.326 \text{ in.}$$
$$F_t = 181$$
$$C_t = 156$$

Case	F_q	F_s	$\sigma_{t,o}$, psi	$\sigma_{t,o}$ Allowable, psi	S_{tb}, psi
1	3.45	. . .	6,690	15,000	. . .
2	5.98	. . .	1,180	15,000	. . .
3	3.48	. . .	7,610	15,000	. . .
4	129	1.25	-1,720	30,000	5,889
5	2.62	. . .	4,710	30,000	. . .
6	-10.1	2	-799	30,000	3,681
7	2.70	. . .	5,630	30,000	. . .

For all loading cases the tube stress $\lvert\sigma_{t,o}\rvert \leq$ the allowable stress. For loading cases 4 and 6 the tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ is compressive and its absolute value $\leq$ the maximum permissible buckling stress limit S_{tb}. Therefore the tube design is acceptable.

UHX-20.2.1(c)(10) Step 10

Case	$\sigma_{s,m}$, psi	$\sigma_{s,b}$, psi	σ_s, psi	σ_s Allowable, psi
1	3.59	−48,900	48,900	30,750
2	−114	−5,520	5,630	30,750
3	−111	−49,600	49,700	30,750
4	14.9	−16,300	16,300	61,500
5	18.3	−60,400	60,400	61,500
6	−99.4	−17,000	17,100	61,500
7	−96.0	−61,100	61,200	61,500

For loading case 2 the total axial stress in the shell $\sigma_s \leq 1.5S_{s,1}$ and is therefore acceptable. For loading cases 4 through 7 the total axial stress in the shell $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s,1}$ and is therefore acceptable. For loading cases 1 and 3 the total axial stress in the shell is greater than $1.5S_{s,1}$ and plastic deformation of the joint will occur.

UHX-20.2.1(c)(11) Step 11. Since the total axial stress in the shell σ_s is between $1.5S_{s,1}$ and $S_{PS,s,1}$ for loading cases 1 and 3, the procedure of UHX 13.7 may be performed to determine if the tubesheet stresses are acceptable when the plasticity of the shell joint occurs.

UHX-20.2.1(c)(12) Elastic Plastic Calculation

$$S_s^* = 26{,}500 \text{ psi}$$

Case	1	3
$fact_s$	0.662	0.652
E_s^*, psi	16.5×10^6	16.2×10^6
k_s	1.41×10^6	1.39×10^6
λ_s	8.79×10^7	8.66×10^7
F	8.19	8.07
Φ	10.9	10.7
Q_1	-0.0838	-0.0834
Q_{Z1}	2.94	2.95
Q_{Z2}	5.18	5.24
U	10.4	10.5
P_w, psi	68.9	69.6
P_{rim}, psi	342	387
P_e, psi	-399	-422
Q_2	-3,090	-3,440
Q_3	-0.0308	-0.0276
F_m	0.0325	0.0334
$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi	24,200	26,300

For both loading cases the tubesheet bending stress $\lvert\sigma\rvert \leq 1.5S = 26{,}550$ psi and is therefore acceptable.

The calculation procedure is complete and the unit geometry is acceptable for the given design conditions.

UHX-20.2.1(d) Results Commentary. This example shows the benefit of thickening the shell adjacent to the tubesheet. If the shell adjacent to the tubesheet is not thickened and the entire shell is 0.25 in. thick, the tubesheet can be thickened to reduce the shell stresses. However, the required tubesheet thickness would be approximately 7 in.

UHX-20.2.2 Example 2: Tubesheet Integral With Shell and Gasketed With Channel, Extended as a Flange

UHX-20.2.2(a) Given. A fixed tubesheet heat exchanger with the tubesheet construction in accordance with Configuration b as shown in Fig. UHX-13.1, sketch (b). The shell material adjacent to the tubesheet is different than the shell material remote from the tubesheet in accordance with Fig. UHX-13.4.

UHX-20.2.2(b) Data Summary

UHX-20.2.2(b)(1) Tubesheet data summary:

The tube layout pattern is triangular with one centerline pass lane.

The tubesheet channel side corrosion allowance is 0.031 in.

$$A = 29.875 \text{ in.}$$
$$h = 4 \text{ in.}$$
$$N_t = 376$$
$$p = 0.938 \text{ in.}$$
$$r_o = 10.578 \text{ in.}$$
$$U_{L1} = 1.5 \text{ in.}$$
$$h_g = 0.188 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

c_t = 0.031 in.
C = 27.375 in.
T = 750°F
E = 26.8 × 10^6 psi at 750°F
v = 0.3
α' = 6.8 × 10^{-6} in./in./°F at 135°F
S = 23,500 psi at 750°F
S_y = 26,100 psi at 750°F
S_{PS} = 70,500 psi {either $2S_y$ or $3S$ [2(26,100) = 52,200 or 3(23,500) = 70,500]}

UHX-20.2.2(b)(2) Shell data summary:
The shell corrosion allowance is 0.063 in.

D_s = 22.5 in.
t_s = 0.75 in.
T_s = 750°F
E_s = 24.85 × 10^6 psi at 750°F
v_s = 0.31
$\alpha_{s,m}$ = 7.3 × 10^{-6} in./in./°F at 550°F

UHX-20.2.2(b)(3) Shell adjacent to tubesheet data summary:
The shell band corrosion allowance is 0.063 in.

$t_{s,1}$ = 0.75 in.
ℓ_1 = 10 in.
ℓ'_1 = 10 in.
$E_{s,1}$ = 26.8 × 10^6 psi at 750°F
$\alpha_{s,m,1}$ = 7.0 × 10^{-6} in./in./°F at 550°F
α'_s = 7.0 × 10^{-6} in./in./°F at 550°F
$S_{s,1}$ = 23,500 psi at 750°F
$S_{y,s,1}$ = 29,800 psi at 750°F
$S_{PS,s,1}$ = 70,500 psi {either $2S_{y,s,1}$ or $3S_{s,1}$ [2(29,800) = 59,600 or 3(23,500) = 70,500]}

UHX-20.2.2(b)(4) Expansion joint data summary:

D_J = 28.072 in.
K_J = 33,867 lb/in. for the new condition and for the corroded condition

UHX-20.2.2(b)(5) Channel flange data summary:

G_c = 24.876 in.
a_c = 12.438 in.

UHX-20.2.2(b)(6) Tube data summary:

d_t = 0.75 in.
t_t = 0.083 in.
L_t = 144 in.
ℓ_t = 34 in.
ρ = 0.85
T_t = 750°F
E_t = 26.8 × 10^6 psi at 750°F
v_t = 0.3
$\alpha_{t,m}$ = 6.067 × 10^{-6} in./in./°F at 90°F
S_t = 23,530 psi at 750°F
$S_{y,t}$ = 26,100 psi at 750°F

UHX-20.2.2(b)(7) Load summary:

P_s = 735 psi
P_t = 1,040 psi
W = 714,451 lb
$T_{s,m}$ = 550°F
$T_{t,m}$ = 90°F
T' = 135°F
T'_s = 550°F

UHX-20.2.2(c) Calculation Results. The calculation must be done for both the new and the corroded conditions. For this particular example the corroded condition produces the highest stresses. Only the calculations for the corroded conditions will be presented, but calculations for the new condition are still required. The input variables as modified for the corroded condition are:

h = 3.906 in.
D_s = 22.626 in.
t_s = 0.687 in.
$t_{s,1}$ = 0.687 in.
a_s = 11.31 in.
L_t = 143.938 in.
L = 136.126 in.
ρ = 0.863

UHX-20.2.2(c)(1) Step 1

D_o = 21.9 in.
L_{L1} = 21.9 in.
A_L = 32.9 in.^{2}
μ = 0.200
μ^* = 0.382
h'_g = 0.157 in. for loading cases 1, 2, and 3
h'_g = 0 in. for loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7
a_o = 11.0 in.
ρ_s = 1.03
ρ_c = 1.14
x_s = 0.559
x_t = 0.733

UHX-20.2.2(c)(2) Step 2

K_s^* = 9.28 × 10^6 lb/in.
K_t = 34,200 lb/in.
$K_{s,t}$ = 0.721
J = 3.63 × 10^{-3}
β_s = 0.453 in.$^{-1}$
k_s = 7.27 × 10^5 lb
λ_s = 7.18 × 10^6 psi
δ_s = 5.87 × 10^{-6} in.^{3}/lb
β_c = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 0 lb
λ_c = 0 psi
δ_c = 0 in.^{3}/lb

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-20.2.2(c)(3) Step 3

$h/p = 4.16$
$E^*/E = 0.390$
$v^* = 0.315$
$X_a = 2.03$
$Z_d = 0.166$
$Z_y = 0.162$
$Z_m = 0.675$

UHX-20.2.2(c)(4) Step 4

$K = 1.36$
$F = 1.02$
$\Phi = 1.34$
$Q_1 = -9.64 \times 10^{-2}$
$Q_{Z1} = 1.28$
$Q_{Z2} = 0.826$
$U = 1.65$

UHX-20.2.2(c)(5) Step 5

$\omega_s = 5.54 \text{ in.}^2$
$\omega_s^* = -5.47 \text{ in.}^2$
$\omega_c = 0 \text{ in.}^2$
$\omega_c^* = 7.34 \text{ in.}^2$
$\gamma_b = -0.114$
$T_r = 343°F$
$T_s^* = 446°F$

Case	P_s, psi	P_t, psi	γ^*, in.	P_s^*, psi	P_c^*, psi
1	0	1,040	0	0	0
2	735	0	0	0	0
3	735	1,040	0	0	0
4	0	0	−0.458	1,270	0
5	0	1,040	−0.458	1,270	0
6	735	0	−0.458	1,270	0
7	735	1,040	−0.458	1,270	0

UHX-20.2.2(c)(6) Step 6

Case	P'_s, psi	P'_t, psi	P_γ, psi	P_ω, psi	P_W, psi	P_{rim}, psi	P_e, psi
1	0	398,000	0	0	179	105	−1,040
2	−97,800	0	0	0	179	55.4	−255
3	−97,800	398,000	0	0	179	160	−1,290
4	0	0	−15,600	96.9	179	0	−40.1
5	0	398,000	−15,600	96.9	179	105	−1,080
6	−97,800	0	−15,600	96.9	179	55.4	−296
7	−97,800	398,000	−15,600	96.9	179	160	−1,330

UHX-20.2.2(c)(7) Step 7

Case	Q_2	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi	σ Allowable, psi
1	−10,800	0.0776	0.192	26,700	35,250
2	−8,940	0.488	0.346	11,800	35,250
3	−12,900	0.0705	0.189	32,800	35,250
4	−10,500	4.28	2.17	10,700	70,500
5	−14,500	0.128	0.211	28,100	70,500
6	−12,600	0.616	0.398	14,500	70,500
7	−16,600	0.112	0.205	33,700	70,500

For all loading cases, the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma|$ ≤ the allowable stress and is therefore acceptable.

UHX-20.2.2(c)(8) Step 8

Case	$\lvert\tau\rvert$, psi	τ Allowable, psi
1	7,260	18,800
2	1,780	18,800
3	9,050	18,800
4	281	18,800
5	7,550	18,800
6	2,070	18,800
7	9,330	18,800

For all loading cases the tubesheet shear stress $|\tau|$ ≤ the allowable stress and is therefore acceptable.

UHX-20.2.2(c)(9) Step 9

Case	F_q	$\sigma_{t,o}$, psi	$\sigma_{t,o}$ Allowable, psi
1	1.52	4,710	23,530
2	2.09	5,440	23,530
3	1.51	9,240	23,530
4	7.32	1,690	47,060
5	1.59	5,500	47,060
6	2.27	6,230	47,060
7	1.57	10,000	47,060

For all loading cases the tube stress $|\sigma_{t,o}|$ ≤ the allowable stress. Since the tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ is tensile for all loading cases, the tubes do not need to be checked for buckling. Therefore the tube design is acceptable.

UHX-20.2.2(c)(10) Step 10

Case	$\sigma_{s,m}$, psi	$\sigma_{s,b}$, psi	σ_s, psi	σ_s Allowable, psi
1	13.6	−44,200	44,200	35,250
2	−1,500	−5,970	7,470	35,250
3	−1,490	−34,900	36,400	35,250
4	−292	12,900	13,200	70,500
5	−282	−16,100	16,300	70,500
6	−1,790	22,100	23,900	70,500
7	−1,780	−6,800	8,580	70,500

For loading case 2, the total axial stress in the shell $\sigma_s \leq 1.5S_{s,1}$ and is therefore acceptable. For loading cases 4 through 7 the total axial stress in the shell $\sigma_s \leq S_{PS,s,1}$ and is therefore acceptable. For loading cases 1 and 3, the total axial stress in the shell is greater than $1.5S_{s,1}$ and plastic deformation of the joint will occur.

UHX-20.2.2(c)(11) Step 11. Since the total axial stress in the shell σ_s is between $1.5S_{s,1}$ and $S_{PS,s,1}$ for loading cases 1 and 3, the procedure of UHX 13.7 may be performed to determine if the tubesheet stresses are acceptable when the plasticity of the shell joint occurs.

UHX-20.2.2(c)(12) Elastic Plastic Calculation

$S_s^* = 29{,}800$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Case	1	3
$fact_s$	0.807	0.932
E_s^*, psi	21.6×10^6	25.0×10^6
k_s	5.86×10^5	6.77×10^5
λ_s	5.80×10^6	6.69×10^6
F	0.925	0.984
Φ	1.22	1.29
Q_1	−0.0900	−0.0942
Q_{Z1}	1.29	1.28
Q_{Z2}	0.862	0.838
U	1.72	1.68
P_w, psi	186	181
P_{rim}, psi	110	163
P_e, psi	−1,040	−1,290
Q_2	−11,300	−13,100
Q_3	0.0917	0.0752
F_m	0.197	0.191
$\|\sigma\|$, psi	27,500	33,200

For both loading cases the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S = 35{,}250$ psi and is therefore acceptable.

The calculation procedure is complete and the unit geometry is acceptable for the given design conditions.

UHX-20.3 Examples of UHX-14 for Floating Tubesheets

UHX-20.3.1 Example 1: Stationary Tubesheet Gasketed With Shell and Channel; Floating Tubesheet Gasketed, Not Extended as a Flange

UHX-20.3.1(a) Given. A floating tubesheet exchanger with an immersed floating head as shown in Fig. UHX-14.1, sketch (a). The stationary tubesheet is gasketed with the shell and channel in accordance with Configuration d as shown in Fig. UHX-14.2, sketch (d). The floating tubesheet is not extended as a flange in accordance with Configuration C as shown in Fig. UHX-14.3, sketch (c). There is no allowance for corrosion.

UHX-20.3.1(b) Data Summary

UHX-20.3.1(b)(1) Summary of data common to both tubesheets:

UHX-20.3.1(b)(1)(a) Load data summary:

$P_s = 250$ psi
$P_t = 150$ psi

UHX-20.3.1(b)(1)(b) Tubesheet data summary: The tube layout pattern is triangular with one centerline pass lane.

$N_t = 466$
$p = 1$ in.
$r_o = 12.5$ in.
$\rho = 0.8$
$U_{L1} = 2.5$ in.
$c_t = 0$ in.
$\nu = 0.31$
$E = 27.0\times10^6$ psi
$S = 19{,}000$ psi

UHX-20.3.1(b)(1)(c) Tube data summary:

$d_t = 0.75$ in.
$t_t = 0.083$ in.
$L_t = 256$ in.
$\ell_t = 15.375$ in.
$\nu_t = 0.31$
$E_t = 27.0\times10^6$ psi
$S_t = 13{,}350$ psi
$S_{y,t} = 20{,}550$ psi

UHX-20.3.1(b)(2) Stationary tubesheet data summary:

$W = 211{,}426$ lb
$A = 33.071$ in.
$h = 1.75$ in.
$G_s = 29.375$ in.
$a_s = 14.7$ in.
$G_c = 29.375$ in.
$a_c = 14.7$ in.
$C = 31.417$ in.
$h_g = 0.197$ in.

UHX-20.3.1(b)(3) Floating tubesheet data summary:

$W = 26{,}225$ lb
$A = 26.89$ in.
$h = 1.75$ in.
$G_1 = 26.496$ in.
$G_c = 26.496$ in.
$a_c = 13.2$ in.
$a_s = 13.2$ in.
$C = 27.992$ in.
$h_g = 0$ in.

UHX-20.3.1(c) Stationary tubesheet calculation results:

UHX-20.3.1(c)(1) Step 1

$D_o = 25.8$ in.
$L_{L1} = 25.8$ in.
$A_L = 64.4$ in.^{2}
$\mu = 0.250$
$\mu^* = 0.385$
$h'_g = 0.197$ in.
$a_o = 12.9$ in.
$\rho_s = 1.14$
$\rho_c = 1.14$
$x_s = 0.605$
$x_t = 0.760$

UHX-20.3.1(c)(2) Step 2

$\beta_s = 0$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_s = 0$ lb
$\lambda_s = 0$ psi
$\delta_s = 0$ in.^{3}/lb

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$\beta_c = 0$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_c = 0$ lb
$\lambda_c = 0$ psi
$\delta_c = 0$ in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.3.1(c)(3) Step 3

$h/p = 1.75$
$E^*/E = 0.404$
$\nu^* = 0.308$
$X_a = 3.61$
$Z_d = 0.0328$
$Z_v = 0.0787$
$Z_m = 0.421$

UHX-20.3.1(c)(4) Step 4

$K = 1.28$
$F = 0.429$
$\phi = 0.561$
$Q_1 = 0.0782$

UHX-20.3.1(c)(5) Step 5

$\omega_s = 0$ in.^{2}
$\omega_s^* = 1.758$ in.^{2}
$\omega_c = 0$ in.^{2}
$\omega_c^* = 1.758$ in.^{2}
$\gamma_b = 0$
$P_s^* = 0$ psi
$P_c^* = 0$ psi

UHX-20.3.1(c)(6) Step 6

$P_e = -150$ psi, 250 psi, and 100 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively

UHX-20.3.1(c)(7) Step 7

Case	Q_2, in.-lb/in.	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi
1	–213	0.0953	0.102	16,400
2	356	0.0953	0.102	27,400
3	142	0.0953	0.102	10,900

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S = 28{,}500$ psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.1(c)(8) Step 8

$|\tau| = 2{,}210$ psi, 3,680 psi, and 1,470 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet shear stress $|\tau| \leq 0.8S = 15{,}200$ psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.1(c)(9) Step 9

$r_t = 0.238$ in.
$F_t = 64.7$
$C_t = 161$

Case	F_s	$\sigma_{t,o}$, psi	S_{tb}, psi
1	. . .	2,560	. . .
2	1.54	–4,520	10,700
3	1.54	–1,960	10,700

For all loading cases the tube stress $|\sigma_{t,o}|$ < the allowable stress $S_t = 13{,}350$ psi. For loading cases 2 and 3 the tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ is compressive and its absolute value < the maximum permissible buckling stress limit S_{tb}. Therefore the tube design is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.1(d) Floating tubesheet calculation results:

UHX-20.3.1(d)(1) Step 1

$D_o = 25.8$ in.
$L_{L1} = 25.8$ in.
$A_L = 64.4$ in.^{2}
$\mu = 0.250$
$\mu^* = 0.385$
$h'_g = 0$ in.
$a_o = 12.9$ in.
$\rho_s = 1.03$
$\rho_c = 1.03$
$x_s = 0.605$
$x_t = 0.760$

UHX-20.3.1(d)(2) Step 2

$\beta_s = 0$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_s = 0$ lb
$\lambda_s = 0$ psi
$\delta_s = 0$ in.^{3}/lb
$\beta_c = 0$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_c = 0$ lb
$\lambda_c = 0$ psi
$\delta_c = 0$ in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.3.1(d)(3) Step 3

$h/p = 1.75$
$E^*/E = 0.404$
$\nu^* = 0.308$
$X_a = 3.61$
$Z_d = 0.0328$
$Z_v = 0.0787$
$Z_m = 0.421$

UHX-20.3.1(d)(4) Step 4

$K = 1.04$
$F = 0.0742$
$\Phi = 0.0971$
$Q_1 = 0.0205$

UHX-20.3.1(d)(5) Step 5

$\omega_s = 0$ in.^{2}
$\omega_s^* = 7.06 \times 10^{-2}$ in.^{2}
$\omega_c = 0$ in.^{2}
$\omega_c^* = 7.06 \times 10^{-2}$ in.^{2}
$\gamma_b = 0$
$P_s^* = 0$ psi
$P_c^* = 0$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-20.3.1(d)(6) Step 6.

P_e = −150 psi, 250 psi, and 100 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively

UHX-20.3.1(d)(7) Step 7.

Case	Q_2, in.-lb/in.	Q_3	F_m	$\|\sigma\|$, psi
1	−10.2	0.0213	0.0751	9,500
2	16.9	0.0213	0.0751	15,800
3	6.78	0.0213	0.0751	6,330

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| < 1.5S$ = 28,500 psi and is acceptable.

The calculation procedure is complete and the unit geometry is acceptable for the given design conditions.

UHX-20.3.2 Example 2: Stationary Tubesheet Gasketed With Shell and Channel; Floating Tubesheet Integral

UHX-20.3.2(a) Given. A floating tubesheet exchanger with an externally sealed (packed) floating head as shown in Fig. UHX-14.1, sketch (b). The stationary tubesheet is gasketed with the shell and channel in accordance with Configuration d as shown in Fig. UHX-14.2, sketch (d). The floating tubesheet is integral with the head in accordance with Configuration A as shown in Fig. UHX-14.3, sketch (a). There is no allowance for corrosion.

UHX-20.3.2(b) Data Summary

UHX-20.3.2(b)(1) Summary of data common to both tubesheets:

UHX-20.3.2(b)(1)(a) Load data summary:

P_s = 150 psi
P_t = 30 psi

UHX-20.3.2(b)(1)(b) Tubesheet data summary:
The tube layout pattern is triangular with no pass lanes.

N_t = 1189
p = 1.25 in.
r_o = 22.605 in.
ρ = 0.958
h_g = 0 in.
c_t = 0 in.
ν = 0.32
E = 14.8×10^6 psi
S = 11,300 psi
S_y = 31,600 psi
S_{PS} = 33,900 psi (use $3S$, because the minimum yield strength/minimum tensile strength > 0.7)

UHX-20.3.2(b)(1)(c) Tube data summary:

d_t = 1.0 in.
t_t = 0.049 in.
L_t = 144 in.
ℓ_t = 16 in.
ν_t = 0.32
E_t = 14.8×10^6 psi
S_t = 11,300 psi
$S_{y,t}$ = 31,600 psi

UHX-20.3.2(b)(2) Stationary tubesheet data summary:

W = 288,910 lb
A = 51 in.
h = 1.375 in.
G_s = 49.71 in.
a_s = 24.9 in.
G_c = 49.616 in.
a_c = 24.8 in.
C = 49.5 in.

UHX-20.3.2(b)(3) Floating tubesheet data summary:

W = 0 lb
T' = 200°F
T'_c = 235°F
A = 47.625 in.
h = 1.375 in.
α' = 4.8×10^{-6} in./in./°F
D_c = 47 in.
a_c = 23.5 in.
a_s = 23.5 in.
t_c = 0.3125 in.
ν_c = 0.32
E_c = 14.8×10^6 psi
S_c = 11,300 psi
$S_{y,c}$ = 31,600 psi
$S_{PS,c}$ = 33,900 psi (use $3S_c$, because the minimum yield strength/minimum tensile strength > 0.7)
α'_c = 4.8×10^{-6} in./in./°F

UHX-20.3.2(c) Stationary Tubesheet Calculation Results

UHX-20.3.2(c)(1) Step 1

D_o = 46.2 in.
A_L = 0 in.^{2}
μ = 0.200
μ^* = 0.275
h'_g = 0 in.
a_o = 23.1 in.
ρ_s = 1.08
ρ_c = 1.07
x_s = 0.443
x_t = 0.547

UHX-20.3.2(c)(2) Step 2

β_s = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_s = 0 lb
λ_s = 0 psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

δ_s = 0 in.^{3}/lb
β_c = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 0 lb
λ_c = 0 psi
δ_c = 0 in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.3.2(c)(3) Step 3

h/p = 1.10
E^*/E = 0.280
v^* = 0.337
X_a = 8.84
Z_d = 0.00214
Z_v = 0.0130
Z_m = 0.163

UHX-20.3.2(c)(4) Step 4

K = 1.10
F = 0.233
Φ = 0.312
Q_1 = 0.0682

UHX-20.3.2(c)(5) Step 5

ω_s = 0 in.^{2}
ω_s^* = 1.59 in.^{2}
ω_c = 0 in.^{2}
ω_c^* = 0.961 in.^{2}
γ_b = -2.03×10^{-3}
P_s^* = 0 psi
P_c^* = 0 psi

UHX-20.3.2(c)(6) Step 6

P_e = −30 psi, −23.6 psi, and −53.6 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively

UHX-20.3.2(c)(7) Step 7

Case	Q_2, in.-lb/in.	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi
1	−116	0.0828	0.0594	11,000
2	138	0.0463	0.0442	6,420
3	110	0.0605	0.0499	16,500

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S$ = 16,950 psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.2(c)(8) Step 8

$|\tau|$ = 1,260 psi, 991 psi, and 2,250 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3, respectively

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet shear stress $|\tau| \leq 0.8S$ = 9,040 psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.2(c)(9) Step 9

$\sigma_{t,o}$ = 2,680 psi, 2,550 psi, and 5,100 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3, respectively

For all loading cases the tube stress $|\sigma_{t,o}|$ < the allowable stress S_t = 11,300 psi. Since the tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ is tensile for all loading cases, the tubes do not need to be checked for buckling. Therefore the tube design is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.2(d) Floating tubesheet calculation results:

UHX-20.3.2(d)(1) Step 1

D_o = 46.2 in.
A_L = 0 in.^{2}
μ = 0.200
μ^* = 0.275
h'_g = 0 in.
a_o = 23.1 in.
ρ_s = 1.02
ρ_c = 1.02
x_s = 0.443
x_t = 0.547

UHX-20.3.2(d)(2) Step 2

β_s = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_s = 0 lb
λ_s = 0 psi
δ_s = 0 in.^{3}/lb
β_c = 0.471 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 39,500 lb
λ_c = 7.96×10^6 psi
δ_c = 1.00×10^{-4} in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.3.2(d)(3) Step 3

h/p = 1.1
E^*/E = 0.280
v^* = 0.337
X_a = 8.84
Z_d = 0.00214
Z_v = 0.0130
Z_m = 0.163

UHX-20.3.2(d)(4) Step 4

K = 1.03
F = 1.34
Φ = 1.80
Q_1 = -4.83×10^{-3}

UHX-20.3.2(d)(5) Step 5

ω_s = 0 in.^{2}
ω_s^* = 7.87×10^{-2} in.^{2}
ω_c = 3.13 in.^{2}
ω_c^* = −3.05 in.^{2}
γ_b = 0
T_r = 218°F
T_c^* = 226°F
P_s^* = 0 psi
P_c^* = 8.27 psi

UHX-20.3.2(d)(6) Step 6

P_e = −30 psi, −5.17 psi, −35.2 psi, 0 psi, −30.0 psi, −5.17 psi, and −35.2 psi for loading cases 1 through 7, respectively.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UHX-20.3.2(d)(7) Step 7

Case	Q_2, in.-lb/in.	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi
1	70.8	–0.0137	0.0228	4,210
2	9.12	–0.0114	0.0235	748
3	79.9	–0.0133	0.0229	4,950
4	20.0	. . .	. . .	231
5	90.8	–0.0162	0.0220	4,070
6	29.1	–0.0259	0.0193	615
7	99.9	–0.0155	0.0222	4,810

For loading cases 1, 2, and 3 the absolute value of the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \le 1.5S = 16{,}950$ psi and is acceptable. For loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7 the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \le S_{PS} = 33{,}900$ psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.2(d)(10) Step 10

Case	$\sigma_{c,m}$, psi	$\sigma_{c,b}$, psi	σ_c, psi
1	1,110	9,750	10,900
2	0	1,120	1,120
3	1,110	10,900	12,000
4	0	890	890
5	1,110	10,600	11,800
6	0	2.010	2,010
7	1,110	11,800	12,900

For loading cases 1, 2, and 3 the channel stress $\sigma_c \le 1.5S_c = 16{,}950$ psi and is acceptable. For loading cases 4, 5, 6, and 7 the channel stress $\sigma_c \le S_{PS,c} = 33{,}900$ psi and is acceptable.

The calculation procedure is complete and the unit geometry is acceptable for the given design conditions.

UHX-20.3.3 Example 3: Stationary Tubesheet Gasketed With Shell and Channel; Floating Tubesheet Internally Sealed

UHX-20.3.3(a) Given. A floating tubesheet exchanger with an internally sealed floating head as shown in Fig. UHX-14.1, sketch (c). The stationary tubesheet is gasketed with the shell and channel in accordance with Configuration d as shown in Fig. UHX-14.2, sketch (d). The floating tubesheet is packed and sealed on its edge in accordance with Configuration D as shown in Fig. UHX-14.3, sketch (d). There is no allowance for corrosion.

UHX-20.3.3(b) Data Summary

UHX-20.3.3(b)(1) Summary of data common to both tubesheets:

UHX-20.3.3(b)(1)(a) Load data summary:

$P_s = 150$ psi
$P_t = 175$ psi

UHX-20.3.3(b)(1)(b) Tubesheet data summary:
The tube layout pattern is triangular with no pass lanes.

$N_t = 1066$
$p = 0.9375$ in.
$r_o = 15.563$ in.
$\rho = 0.88$
$h_g = 0$ in.
$c_t = 0$ in.
$\nu = 0.31$
$E = 26.5 \times 10^6$ psi
$S = 15{,}800$ psi

UHX-20.3.3(b)(1)(c) Tube data summary:

$d_t = 0.75$ in.
$t_t = 0.065$ in.
$L_t = 155.875$ in.
$\ell_t = 20.75$ in.
$\nu_t = 0.31$
$E_t = 26.5 \times 10^6$ psi
$S_t = 15{,}800$ psi
$S_{y,t} = 17{,}500$ psi

UHX-20.3.3(b)(2) Stationary tubesheet data summary:

$W = 290{,}720$ lb
$A = 39.875$ in.
$h = 1.188$ in.
$G_s = 39.441$ in.
$a_s = 19.7$ in.
$G_c = 39.441$ in.
$a_c = 19.7$ in.
$C = 41.625$ in.

UHX-20.3.3(b)(3) Floating tubesheet data summary:

$W = 0$ lb
$A = 36.875$ in.
$a_c = 18.4$ in.
$a_s = 18.4$ in.
$h = 1.188$ in.

UHX-20.3.3(c) Stationary Tubesheet Calculation Results

UHX-20.3.3(c)(1) Step 1

$D_o = 31.9$ in.
$A_L = 0$ in.^{2}
$\mu = 0.200$
$\mu^* = 0.322$
$h'_g = 0$ in.
$a_o = 15.9$ in.
$\rho_s = 1.24$
$\rho_c = 1.24$
$x_s = 0.410$
$x_t = 0.597$

UHX-20.3.3(c)(2) Step 2

$\beta_s = 0$ in.$^{-1}$
$k_s = 0$ lb
$\lambda_s = 0$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

δ_s = 0 in.^{3}/lb
β_c = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 0 lb
λ_c = 0 psi
δ_c = 0 in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.3.3(c)(3) Step 3

h/p = 1.27
E^*/E = 0.338
ν^* = 0.316
X_a = 7.40
Z_d = 0.00369
Z_v = 0.0186
Z_m = 0.197

UHX-20.3.3(c)(4) Step 4

K = 1.25
F = 0.454
Φ = 0.597
Q_1 = 0.202

UHX-20.3.3(c)(5) Step 5

ω_s = 0 in.^{2}
ω_s^* = 8.00 in.^{2}
ω_c = 0 in.^{2}
ω_c^* = 8.00 in.^{2}
γ_b = 0
P_s^* = 0 psi
P_c^* = 0 psi

UHX-20.3.3(c)(6) Step 6

P_e = 92.9 psi, −79.6 psi, and 13.3 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively.

UHX-20.3.3(c)(7) Step 7

Case	Q_2, in.-lb/in.	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi
1	−1,250	0.0962	0.0702	21,900
2	1,070	0.0962	0.0702	18,800
3	−179	0.0962	0.0702	3,130

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S = 23{,}700$ psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.3(c)(8) Step 8

$|\tau|$ = 3,120 psi, 2,670 psi, and 445 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet shear stress $|\tau| \leq 0.8S = 12{,}640$ psi and is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.3(c)(9) Step 9

r_t = 0.243 in.
F_t = 85.3
C_t = 173

Case	F_s	$\sigma_{t,o}$, psi	S_{tb}, psi
1	1.25	−4,650	10,550
2	. . .	3,830	. . .
3	1.25	−814	10,550

For all loading cases the tube stress $|\sigma_{t,o}|$ < the allowable stress S_t = 15,800 psi. For loading cases 1 and 3 the tube stress $\sigma_{t,o}$ is compressive and its absolute value < the maximum permissible buckling stress limit S_{tb}. Therefore the tube design is acceptable.

UHX-20.3.3(d) Floating Tubesheet Calculation Results

UHX-20.3.3(d)(1) Step 1

D_o = 31.9 in.
A_L = 0 in.^{2}
μ = 0.200
μ^* = 0.322
h'_g = 0 in.
a_o = 15.9 in.
ρ_s = 1.16
ρ_c = 1.16
x_s = 0.410
x_t = 0.597

UHX-20.3.3(d)(2) Step 2

β_s = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_s = 0 lb
λ_s = 0 psi
δ_s = 0 in.^{3}/lb
β_c = 0 in.$^{-1}$
k_c = 0 lb
λ_c = 0 psi
δ_c = 0 in.^{3}/lb

UHX-20.3.3(d)(3) Step 3

h/p = 1.27
E^*/E = 0.338
ν^* = 0.316
X_a = 7.40
Z_d = 0.00369
Z_v = 0.0186
Z_m = 0.197

UHX-20.3.3(d)(4) Step 4

K = 1.16
F = 0.295
Φ = 0.388
Q_1 = 0.139

UHX-20.3.3(d)(5) Step 5

ω_s = 0 in.^{2}
ω_s^* = 3.37 in.^{2}
ω_c = 0 in.^{2}

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$\omega_c^* = 3.37$ in.^{2}
$\gamma_b = 0$
$P_s^* = 0$ psi
$P_c^* = 0$ psi

UHX-20.3.3(d)(6) Step 6

$P_e = 59.2$ psi, -50.7 psi, and 8.46 psi for loading cases 1, 2, and 3 respectively

UHX-20.3.3(d)(7) Step 7

Case	Q_2, in.-lb/in.	Q_3	F_m	$\lvert\sigma\rvert$, psi
1	−548	0.0661	0.0575	11,400
2	469	0.0661	0.0575	9,780
3	−78.2	0.0661	0.0575	1,630

For all loading cases the absolute value of the tubesheet bending stress $|\sigma| \leq 1.5S = 23{,}700$ psi and is acceptable.

The calculation procedure is complete and the unit geometry is acceptable for the given design conditions.

UHX-20.4 Examples of UHX-15 for Full Strength Welds. The following examples provide the procedure required by UHX-15.4 to determine the size and allowable axial load of full strength tube-to-tubesheet welds for each of the joint types shown in Fig UHX-15.1.

UHX-20.4.1 Given. A tube-to-tubesheet joint that shall meet the requirements for a full strength weld.

UHX-20.4.1(a) The tube-to-tubesheet joint design temperature is 600°F.

UHX-20.4.1(b) The tube material is titanium SB-338 Grade 3 (R50550) seamless. The tubes are 1.0 in. outside diameter and 0.065 in. thick.

UHX-20.4.1(c) The tubesheet material is titanium SB-265 Grade 2 (R50400).

UHX-20.4.2 Data Summary. The data summary consists of those variables from the nomenclature (UHX-15.3) that are applicable to full strength welds.

$d_o = 1.0$ in.
$t = 0.065$ in.
$S_a = 7{,}400$ psi from Table 1B of Section II, Part D at 600°F
$S_t = 6{,}500$ psi from Table 1B of Section II, Part D at 600°F
$S_w =$ lesser of S_a or $S_t = 6{,}500$ psi
$f_w = S_a/S_w = 1.14$
$f_d = 1.0$ for full strength welds

UHX-20.4.3 Calculation Results for Fillet Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (a)

UHX-20.4.3(a) Determine the fillet weld size a_f as required by UHX-15.4(a).

UHX-20.4.3(a)(1) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the fillet weld leg using the equation from UHX-15.6(a).

$a_r = 0.117$ in.

UHX-20.4.3(a)(2) Determine the fillet weld leg a_f in accordance with UHX-15.6(a)(1).

$a_f \geq = \text{MAX}(a_r, t) = \text{MAX}(0.117, 0.065) = 0.117$ in.

Choose $a_f = 0.117$ in.

UHX-20.4.3(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.4(b).

UHX-20.4.3(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(1).

$$L_{max} = F_t = 1{,}410 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.4.3(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.4(b)(2). For a fillet weld, the weld throat is $0.707a_f = 0.707(0.117) = 0.0827$. Since the weld throat is not less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(2)(b).

$$L_{max} = 2F_t = 2{,}820 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.4.4 Calculation Results for Groove Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (b)

UHX-20.4.4(a) Determine the groove weld size a_g as required by UHX-15.4(a).

UHX-20.4.4(a)(1) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the groove weld leg using the equation from UHX-15.6(b).

$a_r = 0.0772$ in.

UHX-20.4.4(a)(2) Determine the groove weld leg a_g in accordance with UHX-15.6(b)(1).

$a_g \geq = \text{MAX}(a_r, t) = \text{MAX}(0.0772, 0.065) = 0.0772$ in.

Choose $a_g = 0.078$ in.

UHX-20.4.4(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.4(b).

UHX-20.4.4(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(1).

$$L_{max} = F_t = 1{,}410 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.4.4(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.4(b)(2). For a groove weld, the weld throat is $a_g = 0.078$. Since the weld throat is not less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(2)(b).

$$L_{max} = 2F_t = 2{,}820 \text{ lb}$$

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UHX-20.4.5 Calculation Results for Combined Groove and Fillet Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (c) Where a_f is Equal to a_g.

UHX-20.4.5(a) Determine the groove weld size a_g and the fillet weld size a_f as required by UHX-15.4(a).

UHX-20.4.5(a)(1) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the combined weld legs using the equation from UHX-15.6(c).

$$a_r = 0.0957 \text{ in.}$$

UHX-20.4.5(a)(2) Determine the combined weld leg a_c in accordance with UHX-15.6(c)(1).

$$a_c \geq = \text{MAX}(a_r, t) = \text{MAX}(0.0957, 0.065) = 0.0957 \text{ in.}$$

Choose $a_c = 0.096$ in.

UHX-20.4.5(a)(3) Calculate a_f and a_g.

$$a_f = a_c/2 = 0.048 \text{ in.}$$
$$a_g = a_c/2 = 0.048 \text{ in.}$$

UHX-20.4.5(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.4(b).

UHX-20.4.5(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(1).

$$L_{max} = F_t = 1{,}410 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.4.5(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.4(b)(2). The fillet weld throat is $0.707a_f = 0.707(0.048) = 0.0339$ and the groove weld throat is $a_g = 0.048$. Since the combined weld throat $(0.0339+0.048 = 0.0819)$ is not less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(2)(b).

$$L_{max} = 2F_t = 2{,}820 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.4.6 Calculation Results for Combined Groove and Fillet Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, sketch (d) Where a_f is Not Equal to a_g

UHX-20.4.6(a) Determine groove weld size a_g and the fillet weld size a_f as required by UHX-15.4(a).

UHX-20.4.6(a)(1) Choose a_g, and then calculate F_g, F_t, and f_f.

$$a_g = 0.03 \text{ in.}$$
$$F_g = 531 \text{ lb}$$
$$F_t = 1410 \text{ lb}$$
$$f_f = 0.624$$

UHX-20.4.6(a)(2) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the fillet weld leg using the equation from UHX-15.6(d).

$$a_r = 0.0748$$

UHX-20.4.6(a)(3) Determine the combined weld leg a_c in accordance with UHX-15.6(d)(1).

$$\begin{aligned} a_c &\geq \text{MAX}\big[(a_r + a_g), (t)\big] \\ &= \text{MAX}\big[(0.0748 + 0.03), (0.065)\big] \\ &= 0.105 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

Choose $a_c = 0.105$ in.

UHX-20.4.6(a)(4) Calculate a_f.

$$a_f = a_c - a_g = 0.105 - 0.03 = 0.075 \text{ in.}$$

UHX-20.4.6(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.4(b).

UHX-20.4.6(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(1).

$$L_{max} = F_t = 1{,}410 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.4.6(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.4(b)(2). The fillet weld throat is $0.707a_f = 0.707(0.075) = 0.053$ and the groove weld throat is $a_g = 0.03$. Since the combined weld throat $(0.053+0.03 = 0.083)$ is not less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.4(b)(2)(b).

$$L_{max} = 2F_t = 2{,}820 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.5 Examples of UHX-15 for Partial Strength Welds. The following examples provide the procedure required by UHX-15.5 to determine the size and allowable axial load of partial strength tube-to-tubesheet welds for each of the joint types shown in Fig UHX-15.1.

UHX-20.5.1 *Given.* A tube-to-tubesheet joint that shall meet the requirements for a partial strength weld.

UHX-20.5.1(a) The tube-to-tubesheet joint design temperature is 600°F.

UHX-20.5.1(b) The tube material is titanium SB-338 Grade 3 (R50550) seamless. The tubes are 1.0 in. outside diameter and 0.065 in. thick.

UHX-20.5.1(c) The tubesheet material is titanium SB-265 Grade 2 (R50400).

UHX-20.5.2 *Data Summary.* The data summary consists of those variables from the nomenclature (UHX-15.3) that are applicable to full strength welds.

d_o = 1.0 in.
t = 0.065 in.
S_a = 7,400 psi from Table 1B of Section II, Part D at 600°F
S_t = 6,500 psi from Table 1B of Section II, Part D at 600°F
S_w = lesser of S_a or S_t = 6,500 psi
$f_w = S_a/S_w = 1.14$
F_d = 800 lb
F_t = 1,410 lb

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$f_d = F_d/F_t = 0.567$

UHX-20.5.3 Calculation Results for Fillet Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (a)

UHX-20.5.3(a) Determine the fillet weld size a_f as required by UHX-15.5(a).

UHX-20.5.3(a)(1) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the fillet weld leg using the equation from UHX-15.6(a).

$a_r = 0.0682$ in.

UHX-20.5.3(a)(2) Determine the fillet weld leg a_f in accordance with UHX-15.6(a)(2).

$$a_f \geq a_r = 0.0682 \text{ in.}$$

Choose $a_f = 0.0682$ in.

UHX-20.5.3(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.5(b).

UHX-20.5.3(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(1).

$F_f = 801$ lb
$F_g = 0$ lb for no groove weld
$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 801$ lb

UHX-20.5.3(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.5(b)(2). For a fillet weld, the weld throat is $0.707a_f = 0.707(0.0682) = 0.0482$. Since the weld throat is less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(2)(a).

$$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 801 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.5.4 Calculation Results for Groove Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (b)

UHX-20.5.4(a) Determine the groove weld size a_g as required by UHX-15.5(a).

UHX-20.5.4(a)(1) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the groove weld leg using the equation from UHX-15.6(b).

$a_r = 0.0447$ in.

UHX-20.5.4(a)(2) Determine the groove weld leg a_g in accordance with UHX-15.6(b)(2).

$$a_g \geq a_r = 0.0447 \text{ in.}$$

Choose $a_g = 0.05$ in.

UHX-20.5.4(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.5(b).

UHX-20.5.4(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(1).

$F_f = 0$ lb for no fillet weld
$F_g = 896$ lb
$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 896$ lb

UHX-20.5.4(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.5(b)(2). For a groove weld, the weld throat is $a_g = 0.05$. Since the weld throat is less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(2)(a).

$$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 896 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.5.5 Calculation Results for Combined Groove and Fillet Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (c) Where a_f is Equal to a_g

UHX-20.5.5(a) Determine the groove weld size a_g and the fillet weld size a_f as required by UHX-15.5(a).

UHX-20.5.5(a)(1) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the combined weld legs using the equation from UHX-15.6(c).

$a_r = 0.0549$ in.

UHX-20.5.5(a)(2) Determine the combined weld leg a_c in accordance with UHX-15.6(c)(1).

$$a_c \geq a_r = 0.0549 \text{ in.}$$

Choose $a_c = 0.056$ in.

UHX-20.5.5(a)(3) Calculate a_f and a_g.

$a_f = a_c/2 = 0.028$ in.
$a_g = a_c/2 = 0.028$ in.

UHX-20.5.5(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.5(b).

UHX-20.5.5(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(1).

$F_f = 320$ lb
$F_g = 495$ lb
$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 815$ lb

UHX-20.5.5(b)(2) For thermally-induced or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, use UHX-15.5(b)(2). The fillet weld throat is $0.707a_f = 0.707(0.028) = 0.0198$ and the groove weld throat is $a_g = 0.028$. Since the combined weld throat $(0.0198 + 0.028 = 0.0478)$ is less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(2)(a).

$$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 815 \text{ lb}$$

UHX-20.5.6 Calculation Results for Combined Groove and Fillet Welds Shown in Fig. UHX-15.1, Sketch (d) Where a_f is Not Equal to a_g

UHX-20.5.6(a) Determine groove weld size a_g and the fillet weld size a_f as required by UHX-15.5(a).

UHX-20.5.6(a)(1) Choose a_g, and then calculate F_g and f_f.

$a_g = 0.03$ in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$F_g = 531$ lb
$f_f = 0.336$

UHX-20.5.6(a)(2) Calculate the minimum required length a_r of the fillet weld leg using the equation from UHX-15.6(d).

$a_r = 0.0236$

UHX-20.5.6(a)(3) Determine the combined weld leg a_c in accordance with UHX-15.6(d)(1).

$$a_c \geq a_r + a_g = 0.0236 + 0.03 = 0.0536 \text{ in.}$$

Choose $a_c = 0.0536$ in.

UHX-20.5.6(a)(4) Calculate a_f.

$$a_f = a_c - a_g = 0.0536 - 0.03 = 0.0236 \text{ in.}$$

UHX-20.5.6(b) Determine the maximum allowable axial load L_{max} as required by UHX-15.5(b).

UHX-20.5.6(b)(1) For pressure induced axial forces, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(1).

$F_f = 269$ lb
$F_g = 531$ lb
$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 800$ lb

UHX-20.5.6(b)(2) For thermally induced or pressure plus thermally induced axial forces, use UHX-15.5(b)(2). The fillet weld throat is $0.707a_f = 0.707(0.0236) = 0.0167$ and the groove weld throat is $a_g = 0.03$. Since the combined weld throat $(0.0167 + 0.03 = 0.0467)$ is less than $t = 0.065$, calculate L_{max} in accordance with UHX-15.5(b)(2)(a).

$$L_{max} = F_f + F_g = 800 \text{ lb}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDICES

MANDATORY APPENDIX 1
SUPPLEMENTARY DESIGN FORMULAS

1-1 THICKNESS OF CYLINDRICAL AND SPHERICAL SHELLS

(a) The following formulas, in terms of the outside radius, are equivalent to and may be used instead of those given in UG-27(c) and (d).

(1) For cylindrical shells (circumferential stress),

$$t = \frac{PR_o}{SE + 0.4P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{SEt}{R_o - 0.4t} \qquad (1)$$

where

R_o = outside radius of the shell course under consideration

(2) For spherical shells,

$$t = \frac{PR_o}{2SE + 0.8P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt}{R_o - 0.8t} \qquad (2)$$

Other symbols are as defined in UG-27.

1-2 THICK CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

(a)(1) Circumferential Stress (Longitudinal Joints). When the thickness of the cylindrical shell under internal design pressure exceeds one-half of the inside radius, or when P exceeds $0.385SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

When P is known and t is desired,

$$t = R(Z^{1/2} - 1) = R_o \frac{(Z^{1/2} - 1)}{Z^{1/2}} \qquad (1)$$

where

$$Z = \frac{SE + P}{SE - P}$$

Where t is known and P is desired,

$$P = SE\left(\frac{Z - 1}{Z + 1}\right) \qquad (2)$$

where

$$Z = \left(\frac{R + t}{R}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{R_o}{R}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{R_o}{R_o - t}\right)^2$$

(2) Longitudinal Stress (Circumferential Joints). When the thickness of the cylindrical shell under internal design pressure exceeds one-half of the inside radius, or when P exceeds $1.25SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

When P is known and t is desired,

$$t = R\,(Z^{1/2} - 1) = R_o\left(\frac{Z^{1/2} - 1}{Z^{1/2}}\right) \qquad (3)$$

where

$$Z = \left(\frac{P}{SE} + 1\right)$$

When t is known and P is desired,

$$P = SE(Z - 1) \qquad (4)$$

where

$$Z = \left(\frac{R + t}{R}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{R_o}{R}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{R_o}{R_o - t}\right)^2$$

Symbols are as defined in UG-27 and 1-1.

1-3 THICK SPHERICAL SHELLS

When the thickness of the shell of a wholly spherical vessel or of a hemispherical head under internal design

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

pressure exceeds $0.356R$, or when P exceeds $0.665SE$, the following formulas shall apply:

When P is known and t is desired,

$$t = R(Y^{1/3} - 1) = R_o\left(\frac{Y^{1/3} - 1}{Y^{1/3}}\right) \qquad (1)$$

where

$$Y = \frac{2(SE + P)}{2SE - P}$$

When t is known and P is desired,

$$P = 2SE\left(\frac{Y - 1}{Y + 2}\right) \qquad (2)$$

where

$$Y = \left(\frac{R + t}{R}\right)^3 = \left(\frac{R_o}{R_o - t}\right)^3$$

Symbols are as defined in UG-27 and 1-1.

1-4 FORMULAS FOR THE DESIGN OF FORMED HEADS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) The formulas of this paragraph provide for the design of formed heads of proportions other than those given in UG-32, in terms of inside and outside diameter.

The formulas in 1-4(c) and (d) given below shall be used for $t/L \geq 0.002$. For $t/L < 0.002$, the rules of 1-4(f) shall also be met.

(b) The symbols defined below are used in the formulas of this paragraph (see Fig. 1-4):

t = minimum required thickness of head after forming

P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)

D = inside diameter of the head skirt; or inside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or inside diameter of a cone head at the point under consideration measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis

D_o = outside diameter of the head skirt; or outside length of the major axis of an ellipsoidal head; or outside diameter of a cone head at the point under consideration measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis

S = maximum allowable working stress, as given in Subsection C except as limited by footnote 1 to 1-4(c) and (d), UG-24, UG-32(e), and UW-12.

E = lowest efficiency of any Category A joint in the head (for hemispherical heads this includes head-to-shell joint). For welded vessels, use the efficiency specified in UW-12.

r = inside knuckle radius

L = inside spherical or crown radius for torispherical and hemispherical heads

L = K_1D for ellipsoidal heads in which K_1 is obtained from Table UG-37

L_o = outside spherical or crown radius

L/r = ratio of the inside crown radius to the inside knuckle radius, used in Table 1-4.2

M = a factor in the formulas for torispherical heads depending on the head proportion L/r

h = one-half of the length of the minor axis of the ellipsoidal head, or the inside depth of the ellipsoidal head measured from the tangent line (head-bend line)

K = a factor in the formulas for ellipsoidal heads depending on the head proportion $D/2h$

$D/2h$ = ratio of the major to the minor axis of ellipsoidal heads, which equals the inside diameter of the skirt of the head divided by twice the inside height of the head, and is used in Table 1-4.1

α = one-half of the included (apex) angle of the cone at the center line of the head

E_T = modulus of elasticity at maximum design temperature, psi. The value of E_T shall be taken from applicable Table TM, Section II, Part D

S_y = yield strength at maximum design temperature, psi. The value of S_y shall be taken from application Table Y-1, Section II, Part D

(c) Ellipsoidal Heads[1]

$$t = \frac{PDK}{2SE - 0.2P} \text{ or } P = \frac{2SEt}{KD + 0.2t} \qquad (1)$$

$$t = \frac{PD_oK}{2SE + 2P(K - 0.1)}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{KD_o - 2t(K - 0.1)} \qquad (2)$$

[1] Ellipsoidal heads designed under $K > 1.0$ and all torispherical heads made of materials having a specified minimum tensile strength exceeding 70,000 psi (482 MPa) shall be designed using a value of S equal to 20,000 psi (138 MPa) at room temperature and reduced in proportion to the reduction in maximum allowable stress values at temperature for the material as shown in the appropriate table (see UG-23).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

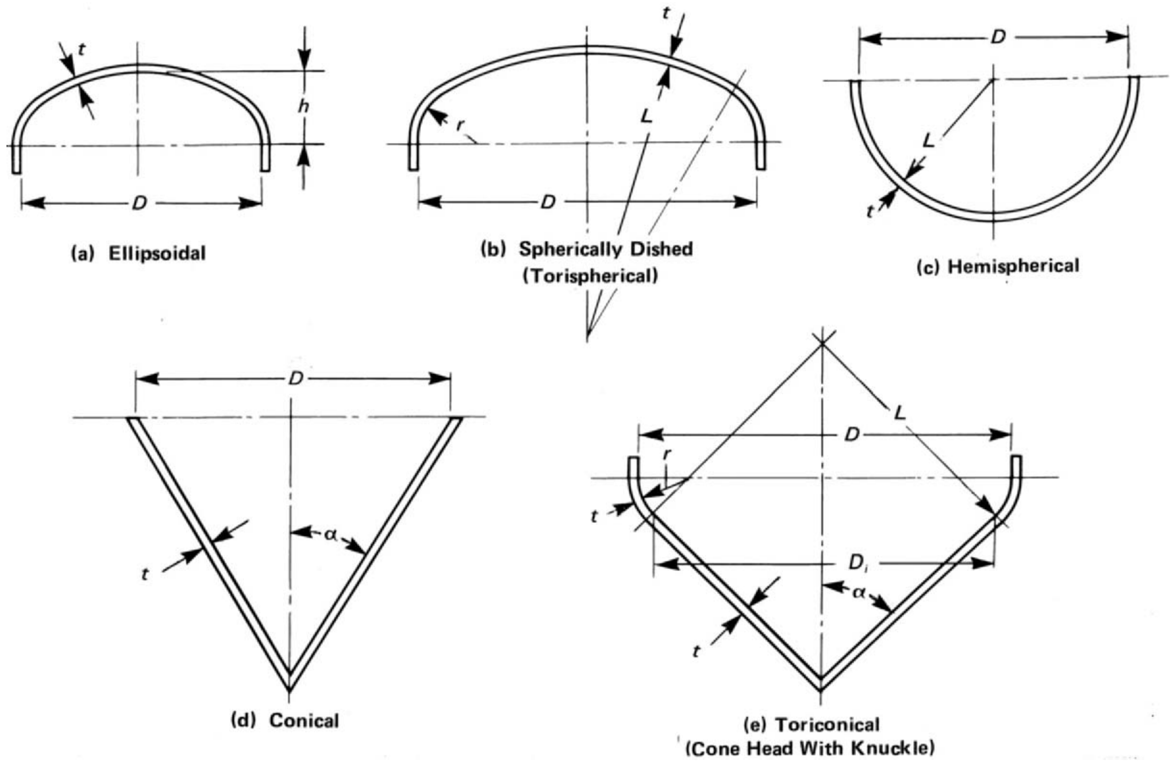


FIG. 1-4 PRINCIPAL DIMENSIONS OF TYPICAL HEADS

TABLE 1-4.1
VALUES OF FACTOR *K*
(Use Nearest Value of *D*/2*h*; Interpolation Unnecessary)

$D/2h$	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.3	2.2	2.1	2.0
K	1.83	1.73	1.64	1.55	1.46	1.37	1.29	1.21	1.14	1.07	1.00
$D/2h$	1.9	1.8	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.1	1.0	. . .
K	0.93	0.87	0.81	0.76	0.71	0.66	0.61	0.57	0.53	0.50	. . .

where

$$K = \frac{1}{6}\left[2 + \left(\frac{D}{2h}\right)^2\right]$$

Numerical values of the factor K are given in Table 1-4.1.

Example 1.[2] Determine the required thickness t of a seamless ellipsoidal head, exclusive of provision for corrosion for the following conditions:

D = 40 in; h = 9 in; P = 200 psi; S = 13,750 psi; E = 1.00.

$$\frac{D}{2h} = \frac{40}{18} = 2.22$$

From Table 1-4.1, K = 1.14. Substituting in Eq. (1),

$$t = \frac{200 \times 40 \times 1.14}{[2 \times 13{,}750 \times (1.00) - (0.2 \times 200)]} = 0.33 \text{ in.}$$

Example 2.[2] Determine the maximum allowable working pressure P of a seamless ellipsoidal head for the following conditions:

D = 30 in.; h = 7.5 in.; total thickness = $\frac{1}{2}$ in. with no allowance for corrosion; maximum operating temperature = 800°F; E = 1.00.

From the appropriate table given in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D, S = 10,200 psi.

[2] This calculation is intended only to illustrate the use of the formula herein. Other paragraphs in this Division may have to be satisfied to permit use of the full tabular stress value.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 1-4.2
VALUES OF FACTOR M
(Use Nearest Value of L/r; Interpolation Unnecessary)

L/r	1.0	1.25	1.50	1.75	2.00	2.25	2.50	2.75	3.00	3.25	3.50
M	1.00	1.03	1.06	1.08	1.10	1.13	1.15	1.17	1.18	1.20	1.22
L/r	4.0	4.5	5.0	5.5	6.0	6.5	7.0	7.5	8.0	8.5	9.0
M	1.25	1.28	1.31	1.34	1.36	1.39	1.41	1.44	1.46	1.48	1.50
L/r	9.5	10.00	10.5	11.0	11.5	12.0	13.0	14.0	15.0	16.0	$16\frac{2}{3}$ (1)
M	1.52	1.54	1.56	1.58	1.60	1.62	1.65	1.69	1.72	1.75	1.77

NOTE:
(1) Maximum ratio allowed by UG-32(j) when L equals the outside diameter of the skirt of the head.

$$\frac{D}{2h} = \frac{30}{15} = 2.0$$

From Table 1-4.1, $K = 1.0$. Substituting in Eq. (1),

$$P = \frac{2 \times 10{,}200 \times 1.0 \times 0.5}{[1 \times 30 + (0.2 \times 0.5)]} = 339 \text{ psi}$$

(d) Torispherical Heads[1]

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P} \quad \text{or} \quad P = \frac{2SEt}{LM + 0.2t} \qquad (3)$$

$$t = \frac{PL_oM}{2SE + P(M - 0.2)}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt}{ML_o - t(M - 0.2)} \qquad (4)$$

where

$$M = \tfrac{1}{4}\left(3 + \sqrt{\frac{L}{r}}\right)$$

Numerical values of the factor M are given in Table 1-4.2.

Example 1.[2] Determine the required thickness t, exclusive of allowance for corrosion, of a torispherical head for the following conditions:

$D = 40$ in.; $L = 40$ in.; $r = 4$ in.; $P = 200$ psi; $S = 13{,}750$ psi; $E = 1.00$ (seamless head).

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{40}{4} = 10$$

and from Table 1-4.2, $M = 1.54$. Substituting in Eq. (3),

$$t = \frac{200 \times 40 \times 1.54}{[2 \times 13{,}750 \times (1.00) - (0.2 \times 200)]} = 0.45 \text{ in.}$$

Example 2.[2] Determine the maximum allowable working pressure P of a torispherical head for the following conditions:

$D = 30$ in.; $L = 24$ in.; $r = 2.00$ in.; $E = 1.00$ (seamless head); total thickness $= 0.5$ in. with no allowance for corrosion; material conforms to SA-515 Grade 70; maximum operating temperature $= 900°$F.

From the appropriate table given in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D, $S = 6500$ psi.

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{24}{2.00} = 12.0$$

From Table 1-4.2, $M = 1.62$. Substituting in Eq. (3),

$$P = \frac{2 \times 6500 \times 1.0 \times 0.5}{24 \times 1.62 + 0.2 \times 0.5} = 167 \text{ psi}$$

(e) Conical Heads

$$t = \frac{PD}{2 \cos \alpha \, (SE - 0.6P)}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt \cos \alpha}{D + 1.2t \cos \alpha} \qquad (5)$$

$$t = \frac{PD_o}{2 \cos \alpha \, (SE + 0.4P)}$$

or

$$P = \frac{2SEt \cos \alpha}{D_o - 0.8t \cos \alpha} \qquad (6)$$

(f) Design of Heads With $t/L < 0.002$. The following rules shall be used when the maximum design temperature is less than or equal to the temperature limit given in Table 1-4.3. See U-2(g) for maximum design temperature exceeding the temperature limit given in Table 1-4.3 04

(1) Torispherical Heads With $t/L < 0.002$. The minimum required thickness of a torispherical head having $0.0005 \le t/L < 0.002$ shall be larger of the thickness calculated by the formulas in UG-32(e), 1-4(d), or by the formulas given below.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 1-4.3 MAXIMUM METAL TEMPERATURE

Table in Which Material is Listed	Temperature, °F
UCS-23	700
UNF-23.1	300
UNF-23.2	150
UNF-23.3	900
UNF-23.4	600
UNF-23.5	600
UHA-23	800
UHT-23	700

TABLE 1-4.4 VALUES OF KNUCKLE RADIUS, "r"

$D/2h$	r/D
3.0	0.10
2.8	0.11
2.6	0.12
2.4	0.13
2.2	0.15
2.0	0.17
1.8	0.20
1.6	0.24
1.4	0.29
1.2	0.37
1.0	0.50

GENERAL NOTE: Interpolation permitted for intermediate values.

(a) Calculate a coefficient, C_1.

$$C_1 = 9.31 r/D - 0.086, \text{ for } r/D \leq 0.08$$

$$C_1 = 0.692 r/D + 0.605, \text{ for } r/D > 0.08$$

(b) Calculate the elastic buckling stess, S_e.

$$S_e = C_1 E_T (t/r)$$

(c) Calculate a coefficient, C_2.

$$C_2 = 1.25, \text{ for } r/D \leq 0.08$$

$$C_2 = 1.46 - 2.6 r/D, \text{ for } r/D > 0.08$$

(d) Calculate values of constants a, b, β, and φ.

$$a = 0.5D - r$$

$$b = L - r$$

$$\beta = \text{arc cos } (a/b), \text{ radians}$$

$$\varphi = \left(\sqrt{Lt}\right)/r$$

(e) Calculate values of c and R_e.

If φ is less than β, then

$$c = a/\left[\cos\,(\beta - \varphi)\right]$$

If φ is equal to or greater than β, then

$$c = a$$

$$R_e = c + r$$

(f) Calculate the value of internal pressure expected to produce elastic buckling, P_e.

$$P_e = \frac{S_e t}{C_2 R_e\left[(0.5R_e/r) - 1\right]}$$

(g) Calculate the value of internal pressure expected to result in yield stress at the point of maximum stress, P_y.

$$P_y = \frac{S_y t}{C_2 R_e\left[(0.5R_e/r) - 1\right]}$$

(h) Calculate the value of internal pressure expected to result in knuckle failure, P_{ck}.

$$P_{ck} = 0.6P_e, \text{ for } P_e/P_y \leq 1.0$$

$$P_{ck} = 0.408P_y + 0.192P_e, \text{ for } 1.0 < P_e/P_y \leq 8.29$$

$$P_{ck} = 2.0P_y, \text{ for } P_e/P_y > 8.29$$

(i) Calculate the value $P_{ck}/1.5$. If $P_{ck}/1.5$ is equal to or greater than the required internal design pressure P, then the design is complete. If $P_{ck}/1.5$ is less than the required internal design pressure P, then increase the thickness and repeat the calculations.

(2) Design of Ellipsoidal Heads With $t/L < 0.002$. The minimum required thickness of an ellipsoidal head having $0.0005 \leq t/L < 0.002$ shall be larger of the thicknesses calculated by the formulas in UG-32(d), 1-4(c), or by the formulas in 1-4(f)(1). In using 1-4(f)(1) formulas, the value of L is to be obtained from Table UG-37 and the value of r is to be obtained from Table 1-4.4.

1-5 RULES FOR CONICAL REDUCER SECTIONS AND CONICAL HEADS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) The formulas of (d) and (e) below provide for the design of reinforcement, if needed, at the cone-to-cylinder junctions for conical reducer sections and conical heads where all the elements have a common axis and the half-apex angle $\alpha \leq 30$ deg. Subparagraph (g) below provides for special analysis in the design of cone-to-cylinder intersections with or without reinforcing rings where α is greater than 30 deg.

In the design of reinforcement for a cone-to-cylinder juncture, the requirements of UG-41 shall be met.

(b) Nomenclature

A_{rL} = required area of reinforcement at large end of cone

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

A_{rs} = required area of reinforcement at small end of cone
A_{eL} = effective area of reinforcement at large end intersection
A_{es} = effective area of reinforcement at small end intersection
E_s = modulus of elasticity of cylinder material
E_c = modulus of elasticity of cone material
E_r = modulus of elasticity of reinforcing ring material

NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

E_1 = efficiency of longitudinal joint in cylinder. For compression (such as at large end of cone), $E_1 = 1.0$ for butt welds.
E_2 = efficiency of longitudinal joint in cone. For compression, $E_2 = 1.0$ for butt welds.
f_1 = axial load per unit circumference at large end due to wind, dead load, etc., excluding pressure
f_2 = axial load per unit circumference at small end due to wind, dead load, etc., excluding pressure
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
Q_L = algebraical sum of $PR_L/2$ and f_1
Q_s = algebraical sum of $PR_s/2$ and f_2
R_s = inside radius of small cylinder at small end of cone
R_L = inside radius of large cylinder at large end of cone
S_s = allowable stress of cylinder material at design temperature
S_c = allowable stress of cone material at design temperature
S_r = allowable stress of reinforcing ring material at design temperature
t = minimum required thickness of cylinder at cone-to-cylinder junction
t_c = nominal thickness of cone at cone-to-cylinder junction
t_r = minimum required thickness of cone at cone-to-cylinder junction
t_s = nominal thickness of cylinder at cone-to-cylinder junction
α = half-apex angle of cone or conical section, deg.
Δ = angle indicating need for reinforcement at cone-to-cylinder junction having a half-apex angle $\alpha \leq 30$ deg. When $\Delta \geq \alpha$, no reinforcement is required at the junction (see Tables 1-5.1 and 1-5.2), deg.
y = cone-to-cylinder factor
= S_sE_s for reinforcing ring on shell
= S_cE_c for reinforcing ring on cone

TABLE 1-5.1
VALUES OF Δ FOR JUNCTIONS AT THE LARGE CYLINDER FOR $\alpha \leq 30$ deg

P/S_sE_1	0.001	0.002	0.003	0.004	0.005
Δ, deg	11	15	18	21	23
P/S_sE_1	0.006	0.007	0.008	0.009 [1]	. . .
Δ, deg	25	27	28.5	30	. . .

NOTE:
(1) $\Delta = 30$ deg for greater values of P/S_sE_1.

TABLE 1-5.2
VALUES OF Δ FOR JUNCTIONS AT THE SMALL CYLINDER FOR $\alpha \leq 30$ deg

P/S_sE_1	0.002	0.005	0.010	0.02
Δ, deg	4	6	9	12.5
P/S_sE_1	0.04	0.08	0.10	0.125 [1]
Δ, deg	17.5	24	27	30

NOTE:
(1) $\Delta = 30$ deg for greater values of P/S_sE_1.

(c) For a cone-to-cylinder junction, the following values shall be determined at large end and again at the small end in order that both the large end and the small end can be examined:

Determine P/S_sE_1 and then determine Δ at the large end and at the small end, as appropriate, from Tables 1-5.1 and 1-5.2.

Determine k:

k = 1 when additional area of reinforcement is not required
= y/S_rE_r when a stiffening ring is required, but k is not less than 1.0

(d) Reinforcement shall be provided at the junction of the cone with the large cylinder for conical heads and reducers without knuckles when the value of Δ obtained from Table 1-5.1, using the appropriate ratio P/S_sE_1, is less than α. Interpolation may be made in the Table.

The required area of reinforcement shall be at least equal to that indicated by the following formula when Q_L is in tension:

$$A_{rL} = \frac{kQ_LR_L}{S_sE_1}\left(1 - \frac{\Delta}{\alpha}\right)\tan\alpha \qquad (1)$$

At the large end of the cone-to-cylinder juncture, the $PR_L/2$ term is in tension. When f_1 is in compression and the quantity is larger than the $PR_L/2$ term, the design shall be in accordance with U-2(g). The calculated localized stresses at the discontinuity shall not

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

exceed the stress values specified in 1-5(g)(1) and (2).

The effective area of reinforcement can be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A_{eL} = (t_s - t) \sqrt{R_L t_s} + (t_c - t_r) \sqrt{R_L t_c / \cos \alpha} \quad (2)$$

Any additional area of reinforcement which is required shall be situated within a distance of $\sqrt{R_L t_s}$ from the junction of the reducer and the cylinder. The centroid of the added area shall be within a distance of 0.25 × $\sqrt{R_L t_s}$ from the junction.

(e) Reinforcement shall be provided at the junction of the conical shell of a reducer without a flare and the small cylinder when the value of Δ obtained from Table 1-5.2, using the appropriate ratio $P/S_s E_1$, is less than α.

The required area of reinforcement shall be at least equal to that indicated by the following formula when Q_s is in tension:

$$A_{rs} = \frac{k Q_s R_s}{S_s E_1} \left(1 - \frac{\Delta}{\alpha} \right) \tan \alpha \quad (3)$$

At the small end of the cone-to-cylinder juncture, the $PR_s/2$ term is in tension. When f_2 is in compression and the quantity is larger than the $PR_s/2$ term, the design shall be in accordance with U-2(g). The calculated localized stresses at the discontinuity shall not exceed the stress values specified in 1-5(g)(1) and (2).

The effective area of reinforcement can be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A_{es} = 0.78 \sqrt{R_s t_s} [(t_s - t) + (t_c - t_r)/\cos \alpha] \quad (4)$$

Any additional area of reinforcement which is required shall be situated within a distance of $\sqrt{R_s t_s}$ from the junction, and the centroid of the added area shall be within a distance of 0.25 $\sqrt{R_s t_s}$ from the junction.

(f) Reducers not described in UG-36(e)(5), such as those made up of two or more conical frustums having different slopes, may be designed in accordance with (g).

(g) When the half-apex angle α is greater than 30 deg (0.52 rad), cone-to-cylinder junctions without a knuckle may be used, with or without reinforcing rings, if the design is based on special analysis, such as the beam-on-elastic-foundation analysis of Timoshenko, Hetenyi, or Watts and Lang. See U-2(g). When such an analysis is made, the calculated localized stresses at the discontinuity shall not exceed the following values.

(1) (Membrane hoop stress) + (average discontinuity hoop stress) shall not be greater than 1.5S, where the "average discontinuity hoop stress" is the average hoop stress across the wall thickness due to the discontinuity at the junction, disregarding the effect of Poisson's ratio times the longitudinal stress at the surfaces.

(2) (Membrane longitudinal stress) + (discontinuity longitudinal stress due to bending) shall not be greater than S_{PS} [see UG-23(e)].

The angle joint (see 3-2) between the cone and cylinder shall be designed equivalent to a double butt-welded joint, and because of the high bending stress, there shall be no weak zones around the angle joint. The thickness of the cylinder may have to be increased to limit the difference in thickness so that the angle joint has a smooth contour.

1-6 SPHERICALLY DISHED COVERS (BOLTED HEADS)

(a) Circular spherical dished heads with bolting flanges, both concave and convex to the pressure and conforming to the several types illustrated in Fig. 1-6, shall be designed in accordance with the formulas which follow.

(b) The symbols used in the formulas of this paragraph are defined as follows:

t = minimum required thickness of head plate after forming

L = inside spherical or crown radius

r = inside knuckle radius

P = internal pressure (see UG-21) for the pressure on concave side, and external pressure for the pressure on convex side [see UG-28(f)]

S = maximum allowable stress value (see UG-23)

T = flange thickness

M_o = the total moment determined as in 2-6 for heads concave to pressure and 2-11 for heads convex to pressure; except that for heads of the type shown in Fig. 1-6 sketch (d), H_D and h_D shall be as defined below, and an additional moment $H_r h_r$ (which may add or subtract) shall be included where

- H_r = radial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment acting at the intersection of the inside of the flange ring with the center line of the dished cover thickness
  = $H_D \cot \beta_1$
- h_r = lever arm of force H_r about centroid of flange ring
- H_D = axial component of the membrane load in the spherical segment acting at the inside of the flange ring
  = $0.785 B^2 P$
- h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle to the inside of the flange ring

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

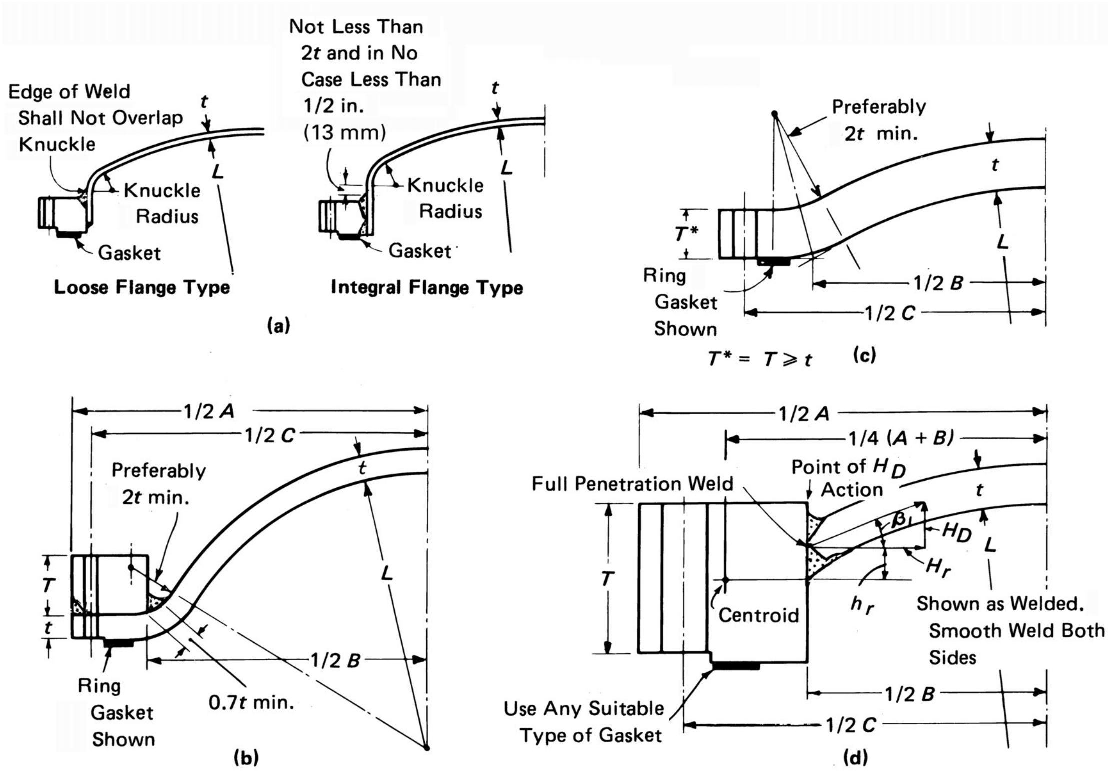


FIG. 1-6 SPHERICALLY DISHED COVERS WITH BOLTING FLANGES

β_1 = angle formed by the tangent to the center line of the dished cover thickness at its point of intersection with the flange ring, and a line perpendicular to the axis of the dished cover

$$= \text{arc sin}\left(\frac{B}{2L + t}\right)$$

NOTE: Since $H_r h_r$ in some cases will subtract from the total moment, the moment in the flange ring when the internal pressure is zero may be the determining loading for flange design.

A = outside diameter of flange
B = inside diameter of flange
C = bolt circle, diameter

(c) It is important to note that the actual value of the total moment M_o may calculate to be either plus or minus for both the heads concave to pressure and the heads convex to pressure. However, for use in all of the formulas which follow, the absolute values for both P and M_o are used.

(d) Heads of the type shown in Fig. 1-6 sketch (a):

(1) the thickness of the head t shall be determined by the appropriate formula in UG-32 for pressure on concave side, and UG-33(a)(1) for pressure on convex side;

(2) the head radius L or the knuckle radius r shall comply with the limitations given in UG-32;

(3) the flange shall comply at least with the requirements of Fig. 2-4 and shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of 2-1 through 2-7 for pressure on concave side, and 2-11 for pressure on convex side. (Within the range of flange standards listed in Table U-3, the flange and drillings may conform to the standards, and the thickness specified therein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.)

(e) Heads of the type shown in Fig. 1-6 sketch (b) (no joint efficiency factor is required):

(1) head thickness

(a) for pressure on concave side,

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S} \tag{1}$$

(b) for pressure on convex side, the head thickness shall be determined based on UG-33(c) using the outside radius of the spherical head segment;

(2) flange thickness for ring gasket

$$T = \sqrt{\frac{M_o}{SB}\left[\frac{A + B}{A - B}\right]} \tag{2}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(3) flange thickness for full face gasket

$$T = 0.6 \sqrt{\frac{P}{S}\left[\frac{B(A+B)(C-B)}{A-B}\right]} \tag{3}$$

NOTE: The radial components of the membrane load in the spherical segment are assumed to be resisted by its flange.

(Within the range of flange standards listed in Table U-3, the flange and drillings may conform to the standards, and the thickness specified therein shall be considered as a minimum requirement.)

(f) Heads of the type shown in Fig. 1-6 sketch (c) (no joint efficiency factor is required):

(1) head thickness

(a) for pressure on concave side,

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S} \tag{4}$$

(b) for pressure on convex side, the head thickness shall be determined based on UG-33(c) using the outside radius of the spherical head segment;

(2) flange thickness for ring gasket for heads with round bolting holes

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C+B)}{SB(7C-5B)}} \tag{5}$$

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left(\frac{C+B}{7C-5B}\right)$$

(3) flange thickness for ring gasket for heads with bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head

$$T = Q + \sqrt{\frac{1.875M_o(C+B)}{SB(3C-B)}} \tag{6}$$

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left(\frac{C+B}{3C-B}\right)$$

(4) flange thickness for full-face gasket for heads with round bolting holes

$$T = Q + \sqrt{Q^2 + \frac{3BQ(C-B)}{L}} \tag{7}$$

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left(\frac{C+B}{7C-5B}\right)$$

(5) flange thickness for full-face gasket for heads with bolting holes slotted through the edge of the head

$$T = Q + \sqrt{Q^2 + \frac{3BQ(C-B)}{L}} \tag{8}$$

where

$$Q = \frac{PL}{4S}\left(\frac{C+B}{3C-B}\right)$$

(6) the required flange thickness shall be T as calculated in (2), (3), (4), or (5) above, but in no case less than the value of t calculated in (1) above.

(g) Heads of the type shown in Fig. 1-6 sketch (d) (no joint efficiency factor is required):

(1) head thickness

(a) for pressure on concave side,

$$t = \frac{5PL}{6S} \tag{9}$$

(b) for pressure on convex side, the head thickness shall be determined based on UG-33(c) using the outside radius of the spherical head segment;

(2) flange thickness

$$T = F + \sqrt{F^2 + J} \tag{10}$$

where

$$F = \frac{PB\sqrt{4L^2 - B^2}}{8S(A-B)}$$

and

$$J = \left(\frac{M_o}{SB}\right)\left(\frac{A+B}{A-B}\right)$$

(h) These formulas are approximate in that they do not take into account continuity between the flange ring and the dished head. A more exact method of analysis which takes this into account may be used if it meets the requirements of U-2.

1-7 LARGE OPENINGS IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

1-7(a) Openings exceeding the dimensional limits given in UG-36(b)(1) shall be provided with reinforcement that complies with the following rules. Two-thirds of the required reinforcement shall be within the following limits:

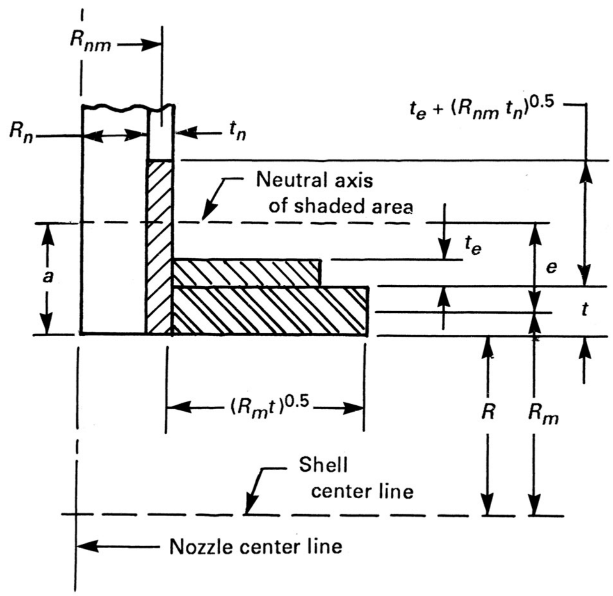
1-7(a)(1) parallel to vessel wall: the larger of three-fourths times the limit in UG-40(b)(1), or equal to the limit in UG-40(b)(2);

1-7(a)(2) normal to vessel wall: the smaller of the limit in UG-40(c)(1), or in UG-40(c)(2).

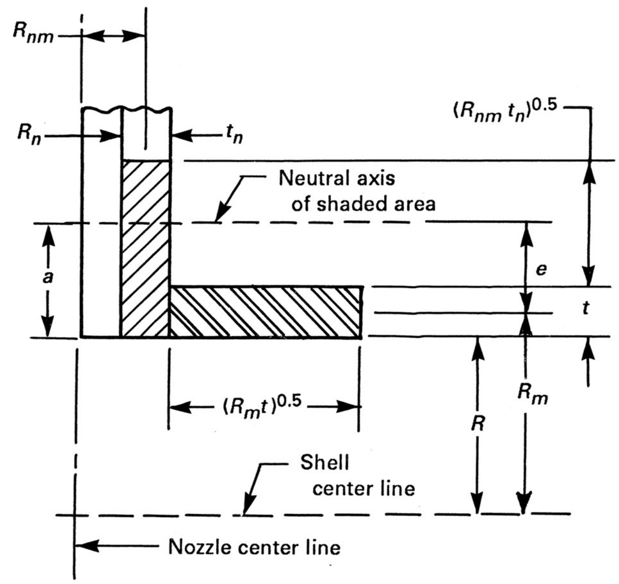
1-7(b) Openings for radial nozzles that exceed the limits in UG-36(b)(1)

1-7(b)(1) and which also are within the range defined by the following limits shall meet the requirements in (b)(2), (3), and (4) below:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



Case A Nozzle With
Reinforcing Pad



Case B Nozzle With Integral
Type Reinforcement

FIG. 1-7-1

(a) vessel diameters greater than 60 in. (mm) I.D.;

(b) nozzle diameters which exceed 40 in. (mm) I.D. and also exceed $3.4\sqrt{Rt}$; the terms R and t are defined in Figs. 1-7-1 and 1-7-2;

(c) the ratio R_n/R does *not* exceed 0.7; for nozzle openings with R_n/R exceeding 0.7, refer to (c) below and/or U-2(g).

The rules are limited to radial nozzles in cylindrical shells that do not have internal projections, and do not include any analysis for stresses resulting from externally applied mechanical loads. For such cases U-2(g) shall apply.

1-7(b)(2) The membrane stress S_m as calculated by Eq. (1) or (2) below shall not exceed S, as defined in UG-37 for the applicable materials at design conditions. The maximum combined membrane stress S_m and bending stress S_b shall not exceed $1.5S$ at design conditions. S_b shall be calculated by Eq. (5) below.

1-7(b)(3) Evaluation of combined stresses from internal pressure and external loads shall be made in accordance with U-2(g).

1-7(b)(4) For membrane stress calculations, use the limits defined in Fig. 1-7-1, and comply with the strength of reinforcement requirements of UG-41. For bending stress calculation, the greater of the limits defined in Fig. 1-7-1 or Fig. 1-7-2 may be used. The strength reduction ratio requirements of UG-41 need not be applied, provided that the allowable stress ratio of the material in the nozzle neck, nozzle forging, reinforcing plate, and/or nozzle flange divided by the shell material allowable stress is at least 0.80.

NOTE: The bending stress S_b calculated by Eq. (5) is valid and applicable only at the nozzle neck-shell junction. It is a primary bending stress because it is a measure of the stiffness required to maintain equilibrium at the longitudinal axis junction of the nozzle-shell intersection due to the bending moment calculated by Eq. (3).

Case A (See Fig. 1-7-1)

$$S_m = P\left(\frac{R(R_n + t_n + \sqrt{R_m t}) + R_n(t + t_e + \sqrt{R_{nm} t_n})}{A_s}\right) \quad (1)$$

Case B (See Fig. 1-7-1)

$$S_m = P\left(\frac{R(R_n + t_n + \sqrt{R_m t}) + R_n(t + \sqrt{R_{nm} t_n})}{A_s}\right) \quad (2)$$

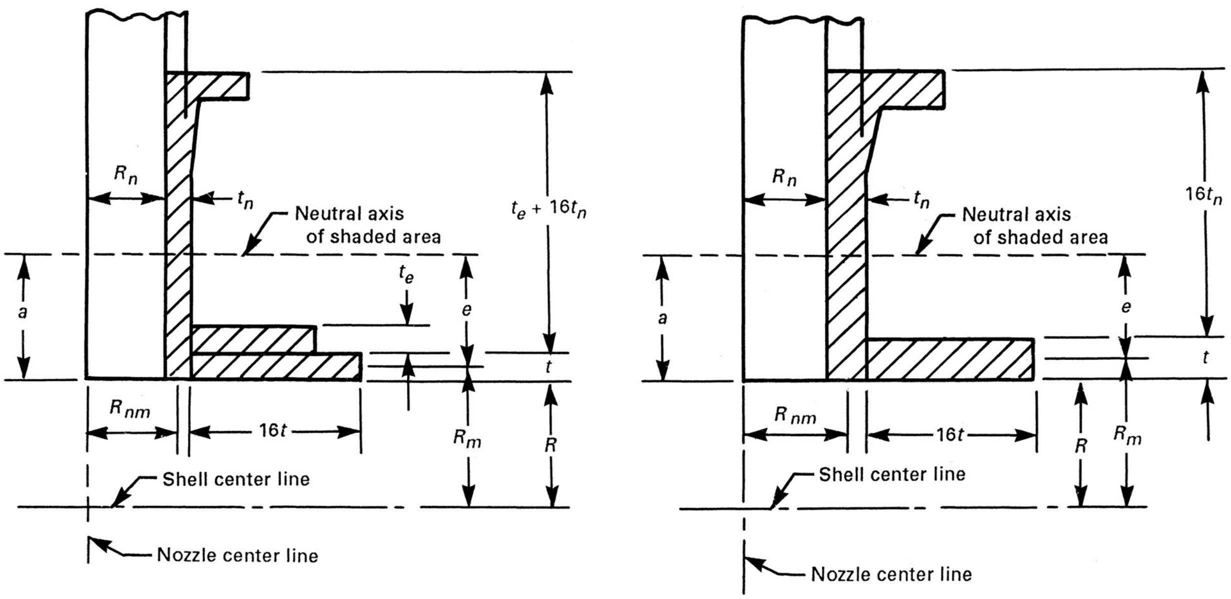
Cases A and B (See Fig. 1-7-1 or Fig. 1-7-2)

$$M = \left(\frac{R_n^3}{6} + R\,R_n e\right) P \quad (3)$$

$$a = e + t/2 \quad (4)$$

$$S_b = \frac{Ma}{I} \quad (5)$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Case A Nozzle With Reinforcing Pad

Case B Nozzle With Integral Type Reinforcement

GENERAL NOTE:
When any part of a flange is located within the greater of the $\sqrt{R_{nm}\,t_n} + t_e$ or $16t_n + t_e$ limit as indicated in Fig. 1-7-1 or Fig. 1-7-2 Case A, or the greater of $\sqrt{R_{nm}\,t_n}$ or $16t_n$ for Fig. 1-7-1 or Fig. 1-7-2 Case B, the flange may be included as part of the section which resists bending moment.

FIG. 1-7-2

1-7(b)(5) Nomenclature. Symbols used in Figs. 1-7-1 and 1-7-2 are as defined in UG-37(a) and as follows:

A_s = shaded (cross-hatched) area in Fig. 1-7-1, Case A or Case B

I = moment of inertia of the larger of the shaded areas in Fig. 1-7-1 or Fig. 1-7-2 about neutral axis

a = distance between neutral axis of the shaded area in Fig. 1-7-1 or Fig. 1-7-2 and the inside of vessel wall

R_m = mean radius of shell

R_{nm} = mean radius of nozzle neck

e = distance between neutral axis of the shaded area and midwall of the shell

S_m = membrane stress calculated by Eq. (1) or (2)

S_b = bending stress at the intersection of inside of the nozzle neck and inside of the vessel shell along the vessel shell longitudinal axis

S_y = yield strength of the material at test temperature, see Table Y-1 in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D

1-7(c) It is recommended that special consideration be given to the fabrication details used and inspection employed on large openings; reinforcement often may be advantageously obtained by use of heavier shell plate for a vessel course or inserted locally around the opening; welds may be ground to concave contour and the inside corners of the opening rounded to a generous radius to reduce stress concentrations. When radiographic examination of welds is not practicable, liquid penetrant examination may be used with nonmagnetic materials and either liquid penetrant or magnetic particle inspection with ferromagnetic materials. If magnetic particle inspection is employed, the prod method is preferred. The degree to which such measures should be used depends on the particular application and the severity of the intended service. Appropriate proof

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

testing may be advisable in extreme cases of large openings approaching full vessel diameter, openings of unusual shape, etc.

1-8 RULES FOR REINFORCEMENT OF CONE-TO-CYLINDER JUNCTION UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

(a) The formulas of (b) and (c) below provide for the design of reinforcement, if needed, at the cone-to-cylinder junctions for reducer sections and conical heads where all the elements have a common axis and the half-apex angle $\alpha \leq 60$ deg. Subparagraph (e) below provides for special analysis in the design of cone-to-cylinder intersections with or without reinforcing rings where α is greater than 60 deg.

In the design of reinforcement for a cone-to-cylinder juncture, the requirements of UG-41 shall be met.

The nomenclature given below is used in the formulas of the following subparagraphs:

A = factor determined from Fig. G and used to enter the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D

A_{eL} = effective area of reinforcement at large end intersection

A_{es} = effective area of reinforcement at small end intersection

A_{rL} = required area of reinforcement at large end of cone

A_{rs} = required area of reinforcement at small end of cone

A_s = cross-sectional area of the stiffening ring

A_T = equivalent area of cylinder, cone, and stiffening ring, where

$$A_{TL} = \frac{L_L t_s}{2} + \frac{L_c t_c}{2} + A_s \text{ for large end}$$

$$A_{TS} = \frac{L_s t_s}{2} + \frac{L_c t_c}{2} + A_s \text{ for small end}$$

B = factor determined from the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for maximum design metal temperature [see UG-20(c)]

D_L = outside diameter of large end of conical section under consideration

D_o = outside diameter of cylindrical shell (In conical shell calculations, the value of D_s and D_L should be used in calculations in place of D_o depending on whether the small end D_s, or large end D_L, is being examined.)

D_s = outside diameter at small end of conical section under consideration

E_1 = efficiency of longitudinal joint in cylinder. For compression (such as at small end of cone), $E_1 = 1.0$ for butt welds.

E_2 = efficiency of longitudinal joint in cone. For compression, $E_2 = 1.0$ for butt welds.

E_c = modulus of elasticity of cone material

E_r = modulus of elasticity of stiffening ring material

E_s = modulus of elasticity of shell material

E_x = E_c, E_r, or E_s

NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

f_1 = axial load per unit circumference at large end due to wind, dead load, etc., excluding pressure

f_2 = axial load per unit circumference at small end due to wind, dead load, etc., excluding pressure

I = available moment of inertia of the stiffening ring cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell

I' = available moment of inertia of combined shell-cone or ring-shell-cone cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell. The nominal shell thickness t_s shall be used, and the width of the shell which is taken as contributing to the moment of inertia of the combined section shall not be greater than $1.10\sqrt{Dt_s}$ and shall be taken as lying one-half on each side of the cone-to-cylinder junction or of the centroid of the ring. Portions of the shell plate shall not be considered as contributing area to more than one stiffening ring.

CAUTIONARY NOTE: Stiffening rings may be subject to lateral buckling. This should be considered in addition to the requirements for I_s and I'_s [see U-2(g)].

I_s = required moment of inertia of the stiffening ring cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell

I'_s = required moment of inertia of the combined shell-cone or ring-shell-cone cross section about its neutral axis parallel to the axis of the shell

If the stiffeners should be so located that the maximum permissible effective shell sections overlap on either or both sides of a stiffener, the effective shell section for that stiffener shall be shortened by one-half of each overlap.

k = 1 when additional area of reinforcement is not required

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$= y/S_rE_r$ when a stiffening ring is required, but k is not less than 1.0

L = axial length of cone

L_c = length of cone between stiffening rings measured along surface of cone, in. (mm). For cones without intermediate stiffeners,

$$L_c = \sqrt{L^2 + (R_L - R_s)^2}$$

L_L = design length of a vessel section taken as the largest of the following:

(a) the center-to-center distance between the cone-to-large-shell junction and an adjacent stiffening ring on the large shell;

(b) the distance between the cone-to-large-shell junction and one-third the depth of head on the other end of the large shell if no other stiffening rings are used.

L_s = design length of a vessel section taken as the largest of the following:

(a) the center-to-center distance between the cone-to-small-shell junction and adjacent stiffening ring on the small shell;

(b) the distance between the cone-to-small-shell junction and one-third the depth of head on the other end of the small shell if no other stiffening rings are used.

P = external design pressure

Q_L = algebraical sum of $PR_L/2$ and f_1

Q_s = algebraical sum of $PR_s/2$ and f_2

R_L = outside radius of large cylinder

R_s = outside radius of small cylinder

S_c = allowable stress of cone material at design temperature

S_r = allowable stress of stiffening ring material at design temperature

S_s = allowable stress of cylinder material at design temperature

t = minimum required thickness of cylinder at cone-to-cylinder junction [see UG-28(c)]

t_c = nominal thickness of cone at cone-to-cylinder junction

t_r = minimum required thickness of cone at cone-to-cylinder junction

t_s = nominal thickness of cylinder at cone-to-cylinder junction

y = cone-to-cylinder factor

$= S_sE_s$ for stiffening ring on shell

$= S_cE_c$ for stiffening ring on cone

α = one-half the included (apex) angle of the cone at the center line of the head

Δ = value to indicate need for reinforcement at cone-to-cylinder intersection having a half-apex angle $\alpha \le 60$ deg. When $\Delta \ge \alpha$, no reinforcement is required at the junction (see Table 1-8.1).

TABLE 1-8.1
VALUES OF Δ FOR JUNCTIONS AT THE LARGE CYLINDER FOR $\alpha \le 60$ deg

P/S_sE_1	0	0.002	0.005	0.010	0.02
Δ, deg	0	5	7	10	15
P/S_sE_1	0.04	0.08	0.10	0.125	0.15
Δ, deg	21	29	33	37	40
P/S_sE_1	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	Note (1)
Δ, deg	47	52	57	60	

NOTE:
(1) Δ = 60 deg for greater values of P/SE.

(b) Reinforcement shall be provided at the junction of the cone with the large cylinder for conical heads and reducers without knuckles when the value of Δ obtained from Table 1-8.1 using the appropriate ratio P/S_sE_1 is less than α. Interpolation may be made in the Table.

The required area of reinforcement shall be at least equal to that indicated by the following formula when Q_L is in compression:

$$A_{rL} = \frac{kQ_LR_L \tan \alpha}{S_sE_1}\left[1 - \tfrac{1}{4}\left(\frac{PR_L - Q_L}{Q_L}\right)\frac{\Delta}{\alpha}\right] \tag{1}$$

At the large end of the cone-to-cylinder juncture, the $PR_L/2$ term is in compression. When f_1 is in tension and the quantity is larger than the $PR_L/2$ term, the design shall be in accordance with U-2(g). The calculated localized stresses at the discontinuity shall not exceed the stress values specified in 1-5(g)(1) and (2).

The effective area of reinforcement can be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A_{eL} = 0.55\sqrt{D_Lt_s}(t_s + t_c\ /\cos \alpha) \tag{2}$$

Any additional area of stiffening which is required shall be situated within a distance of $\sqrt{R_Lt_s}$ from the junction of the reducer and the cylinder. The centroid of the added area shall be within a distance of 0.25 × $\sqrt{R_Lt_s}$ from the junction.

When the cone-to-cylinder or knuckle-to-cylinder juncture is a line of support, the moment of inertia for a stiffening ring at the large end shall be determined by the following procedure.

Step 1. Assuming that the shell has been designed and D_L, L_L, and t are known, select a member to be used for the stiffening ring and determine cross-sectional area A_{TL}. Then calculate factor B using the following

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

formula. If F_L is a negative number, the design shall be in accordance with U-2(g):

$$B = \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{F_L D_L}{A_{TL}}\right)$$

where

$$F_L = PM + f_1 \tan \alpha$$

$$M = \frac{-R_L \tan \alpha}{2} + \frac{L_L}{2} + \frac{R_L{}^2 - R_s{}^2}{3R_L \tan \alpha}$$

Step 2. Enter the right-hand side of the applicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration at the value of B determined by Step 1. If different materials are used for the shell and stiffening ring, use the material chart resulting in the larger value of A in Step 4 below.

Step 3. Move horizontally to the left to the material / temperature line for the design metal temperature. For values of B falling below the left end of the material / temperature line, see Step 5 below.

Step 4. Move vertically to the bottom of the chart and read the value of A.

Step 5. For value of B falling below the left end of the material / temperature line for the design temperature, the value of A can be calculated using the formula $A = 2B/E_x$. For value of B above the material/temperature line for the design temperature, the design shall be either per U-2(g) or by changing the cone or cylinder configuration, stiffening ring location on the shell, and/or reducing the axial compressive force to reduce the B value to below or at the material/temperature line for the design temperature. For values of B having multiple values of A, such as when B falls on a horizontal portion of the curve, the smallest value of A shall be used.

Step 6. Compute the value of the required moment of inertia from the formulas for I_s or I'_s. For the circumferential stiffening ring only,

$$I_s = \frac{AD_L{}^2 A_{TL}}{14.0}$$

For the shell-cone or ring-shell-cone section,

$$I'_s = \frac{AD_L{}^2 A_{TL}}{10.9}$$

Step 7. Determine the available moment of inertia of the ring only I or the shell-cone or ring-shell-cone I'.

Step 8. When the ring only is used,

$$I \geq I_s$$

and when the shell-cone or ring-shell-cone is used,

$$I' \geq I'_s$$

If the equation is not satisfied, a new section with a larger moment of inertia must be selected, and the calculation shall be done again until the equation is met.

The requirements of UG-29(b), (c), (d), (e), and (f) and UG-30 are to be met in attaching stiffening rings to the shell.

(c) Reinforcement shall be provided at the junction of the conical shell of a reducer without a flare and the small cylinder. The required area of reinforcement shall be at least equal to that indicated by the following formula when Q_s is in compression:

$$A_{rs} = \frac{kQ_s R_s \tan \alpha}{S_s E_1} \qquad (3)$$

At the small end of the cone-to-cylinder juncture, the $PR_s/2$ term is in compression. When f_2 is in tension and the quantity is larger than the $PR_s/2$ term, the design shall be in accordance with U-2(g). The calculated localized stresses at the discontinuity shall not exceed the stress values specified in 1-5(g)(1) and (2).

The effective area of reinforcement can be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A_{es} = 0.55\sqrt{D_s t_s}[(t_s - t) + (t_c - t_r)/\cos \alpha] \qquad (4)$$

Any additional area of stiffener which is required shall be situated within a distance of $\sqrt{R_s t_s}$ from the junction, and the centroid of the added area shall be within a distance of 0.25 $\sqrt{R_s t_s}$ from the junction.

When the cone-to-cylinder or knuckle-to-cylinder juncture is a line of support, the moment of inertia for a stiffening ring at the small end shall be determined by the following procedure.

Step 1. Assuming that the shell has been designed and D_s, L_s, and t are known, select a member to be used for the stiffening ring and determine cross-sectional area A_{TS}. Then calculate factor B using the following formula. If F_s is a negative number, the design shall be in accordance with U-2(g):

$$B = \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{F_s D_s}{A_{TS}}\right)$$

where

$$F_s = PN + f_2 \tan \alpha$$

$$N = \frac{R_s \tan \alpha}{2} + \frac{L_s}{2} + \frac{R_L{}^2 - R_s{}^2}{6R_s \tan \alpha}$$

Step 2. Enter the right-hand side of theapplicable material chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material under consideration at the value of B determined by Step 1. If different materials are used

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

for the shell and stiffening ring, use the material chart resulting in the larger value of A in Step 4 below.

Step 3. Move horizontally to the left to the material / temperature line for the design metal temperature. For values of B falling below the left end of the material / temperature line, see Step 5 below.

Step 4. Move vertically to the bottom of the chart and read the value of A.

Step 5. For values of B falling below the left end of the material / temperature line for the design temperature, the value of A can be calculated using the formula $A = 2B/E_x$. For value of B above the material/temperature line for the design temperature, the design shall be either per U-2(g) or by changing the cone or cylinder configuration, stiffening ring location on the shell, and/or reducing the axial compressive force to reduce the B value to below or at the material/temperature line for the design temperature. For values of B having multiple values of A, such as when B falls on a horizontal portion of the curve, the smallest value of A shall be used.

Step 6. Compute the value of the required moment of inertia from the formulas for I_s or I'_s.

For the circumferential stiffening ring only,

$$I_s = \frac{AD_s^2 A_{TS}}{14.0}$$

For the shell-cone or ring-shell-cone section,

$$I'_s = \frac{AD_s^2 A_{TS}}{10.9}$$

Step 7. Determine the available moment of inertia of the ring only I or the shell-cone or ring-shell-cone I'.

Step 8. When the ring only is used,

$$I \geq I_s$$

and when the shell-cone or ring-shell-cone is used:

$$I' \geq I'_s$$

If the equation is not satisfied, a new section with a larger moment of inertia must be selected, and the calculation shall be done again until the equation is met.

The requirements of UG-29(b), (c), (d), (e), and (f) and UG-30 are to be met in attaching stiffening rings to the shell.

(d) Reducers not described in UG-36(e)(5), such as those made up of two or more conical frustums having different slopes, may be designed in accordance with (e).

(e) When the half-apex angle α is greater than 60 deg. (1.1 rad), cone-to-cylinder junctions without a knuckle may be used, with or without reinforcing rings, if the design is based on special analysis, such as the beam-on-elastic-foundation analysis of Timoshenko, Hetenyi, or Watts and Lang. See U-2(g). The effect of shell and cone buckling on the required area and moment of inertia at the joint is to be taken into consideration in the analysis. When such an analysis is made, the calculated localized stresses at the discontinuity shall not exceed the following values.

(1) (Membrane hoop stress) + (average discontinuity hoop stress) shall not be greater than $1.5S$.

(2) (Membrane longitudinal stress) + (discontinuity longitudinal stress due to bending) shall not be greater than S_{PS} [see UG-23(e)], where the "average discontinuity hoop stress" is the average hoop stress across the wall thickness due to the discontinuity at the junction, disregarding the effect of Poisson's ratio times the longitudinal stress at the surfaces.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 2
RULES FOR BOLTED FLANGE CONNECTIONS WITH RING TYPE GASKETS

GENERAL

2-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in Appendix 2 apply specifically to the design of bolted flange connections with gaskets that are entirely within the circle enclosed by the bolt holes and with no contact outside this circle, and are to be used in conjunction with the applicable requirements in Subsections A, B, and C of this Division. These rules are not to be used for the determination of the thickness of supported or unsupported tubesheets integral with a bolting flange as illustrated in Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (h) through (l) or Fig. UW-13.3 sketch (c). Appendix S provides discussion on Design Considerations for Bolted Flanged Connections.

These rules provide only for hydrostatic end loads and gasket seating. The flange design methods outlined in 2-4 through 2-8 are applicable to circular flanges under internal pressure. Modifications of these methods are outlined in 2-9 and 2-10 for the design of split and noncircular flanges. See 2-11 for flanges with ring type gaskets subject to external pressure, 2-12 for flanges with nut-stops, and 2-13 for reverse flanges. Proper allowance shall be made if connections are subject to external loads other than external pressure.

(b) The design of a flange involves the selection of the gasket (material, type, and dimensions), flange facing, bolting, hub proportions, flange width, and flange thickness. See Note 1, 2-5(c)(1). Flange dimensions shall be such that the stresses in the flange, calculated in accordance with 2-7, do not exceed the allowable flange stresses specified in 2-8. All calculations shall be made on dimensions in the corroded condition.

(c) It is recommended that bolted flange connections conforming to the standards listed in UG-44 be used for connections to external piping. These standards may be used for other bolted flange connections within the limits of size in the standards and the pressure–temperature ratings permitted in UG-44. The ratings in these standards are based on the hub dimensions given or on the minimum specified thickness of flanged fittings of integral construction. Flanges fabricated from rings may be used in place of the hub flanges in these standards provided that their strength, calculated by the rules in this Appendix, is not less than that calculated for the corresponding size of hub flange.

(d) Except as otherwise provided in (c) above, bolted flange connections for unfired pressure vessels shall satisfy the requirements in this Appendix.

(e) The rules of this Appendix should not be construed to prohibit the use of other types of flanged connections provided they are designed in accordance with good engineering practice and method of design is acceptable to the Inspector. Some examples of flanged connections which might fall in this category are as follows:

(1) flanged covers as shown in Fig. 1-6;

(2) bolted flanges using full-face gaskets;

(3) flanges using means other than bolting to restrain the flange assembly against pressure and other applied loads.

2-2 MATERIALS

(a) Materials used in the construction of bolted flange connections shall comply with the requirements given in UG-4 through UG-14.

(b) Flanges made from ferritic steel and designed in accordance with this Appendix shall be full-annealed, normalized, normalized and tempered, or quenched and tempered when the thickness of the flange section exceeds 3 in. (75 mm).

(c) Material on which welding is to be performed shall be proved of good weldable quality. Satisfactory qualification of the welding procedure under Section IX is considered as proof. Welding shall not be performed on steel that has a carbon content greater than 0.35%. All welding on flange connections shall comply with the requirements for postweld heat treatment given in this Division.

(d) Fabricated hubbed flanges shall be in accordance with the following.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(1) Hubbed flanges may be machined from a hot rolled or forged billet or forged bar. The axis of the finished flange shall be parallel to the long axis of the original billet or bar. (This is not intended to imply that the axis of the finished flange and the original billet must be concentric.)

(2) Hubbed flanges [except as permitted in (1) above] shall not be machined from plate or bar stock material unless the material has been formed into a ring, and further provided that:

(a) in a ring formed from plate, the original plate surfaces are parallel to the axis of the finished flange. (This is not intended to imply that the original plate surface be present in the finished flange.)

(b) the joints in the ring are welded butt joints that conform to the requirements of this Division. Thickness to be used to determine postweld heat treatment and radiography requirements shall be the lesser of

$$t \text{ or } \frac{(A - B)}{2}$$

where these symbols are as defined in 2-3.

(c) the back of the flange and the outer surface of the hub are examined by either the magnetic particle method as per Appendix 6 or the liquid penetrant method as per Appendix 8.

(e) Bolts, studs, nuts, and washers shall comply with the requirements in this Division. It is recommended that bolts and studs have a nominal diameter of not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) If bolts or studs smaller than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) are used, ferrous bolting material shall be of alloy steel. Precautions shall be taken to avoid over-stressing small-diameter bolts.

2-3 NOTATION

The symbols described below are used in the formulas for the design of flanges (see also Fig. 2-4):

A = outside diameter of flange or, where slotted holes extend to the outside of the flange, the diameter to the bottom of the slots

A_b = cross-sectional area of the bolts using the root diameter of the thread or least diameter of unthreaded position, if less

A_m = total required cross-sectional area of bolts, taken as the greater of A_{m1} and A_{m2}

A_{m1} = total cross-sectional area of bolts at root of thread or section of least diameter under stress, required for the operating conditions
= W_{m1} / S_b

A_{m2} = total cross-sectional area of bolts at root of thread or section of least diameter under stress, required for gasket seating
= W_{m2} / S_a

B = inside diameter of flange. When B is less than $20g_1$, it will be optional for the designer to substitute B_1 for B in the formula for longitudinal stress S_H.

B_1 = $B + g_1$ for loose type flanges and for integral type flanges that have calculated values h / h_o and g_1 / g_o which would indicate an f value of less than 1.0, although the minimum value of f permitted is 1.0.

B_1 = $B + g_o$ for integral type flanges when f is equal to or greater than one

b = effective gasket or joint-contact-surface seating width [see Note 1, 2-5(c)(1)]

b_o = basic gasket seating width (from Table 2-5.2)

C = bolt-circle diameter

C_b = conversion factor
= 0.5 for U.S. Customary calculations; 2.5 for SI calculations

c = basic dimension used for the minimum sizing of welds equal to t_n or t_x, whichever is less

d = factor

$$d = \frac{U}{V} h_o g_o^{\,2} \text{ for integral type flanges}$$

$$d = \frac{U}{V_L} h_o g_o^{\,2} \text{ for loose type flanges}$$

e = factor

$$e = \frac{F}{h_o} \text{ for integral type flanges}$$

$$e = \frac{F_L}{h_o} \text{ for loose type flanges}$$

F = factor for integral type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.2)

F_L = factor for loose type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.4)

f = hub stress correction factor for integral flanges from Fig. 2-7.6 (When greater than one, this is the ratio of the stress in the small end of hub to the stress in the large end.) (For values below limit of figure, use $f = 1$.)

G = diameter at location of gasket load reaction. Except as noted in sketch (1) of Fig. 2-4, G is defined as follows (see Table 2-5.2):

When $b_o \leq \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), G = mean diameter of gasket contact face

When $b_o > \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), G = outside diameter of gasket contact face less $2b$,

g_o = thickness of hub at small end

g_1 = thickness of hub at back of flange

H = total hydrostatic end force
= $0.785G^2P$

H_D = hydrostatic end force on area inside of flange
= $0.785B^2P$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

H_G = gasket load (difference between flange design bolt load and total hydrostatic end force)
= $W-H$

H_p = total joint-contact surface compression load
= $2b \times 3.14\ GmP$

H_T = difference between total hydrostatic end force and the hydrostatic end force on area inside of flange
= $H-H_D$

h = hub length

h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle, to the circle on which H_D acts, as prescribed in Table 2-6

h_G = radial distance from gasket load reaction to the bolt circle
= $(C - G)/2$

h_o = factor
= $\sqrt{Bg_o}$

h_T = radial distance from the bolt circle to the circle on which H_T acts as prescribed in Table 2-6

K = ratio of outside diameter of flange to inside diameter of flange
= A/B

L = factor
= $\dfrac{te + 1}{T} + \dfrac{t^3}{d}$

M_D = component of moment due to H_D,
= $H_D h_D$

M_G = component of moment due to H_G,
= $H_G h_G$

M_0 = total moment acting upon the flange, for the operating conditions or gasket seating as may apply (see 2-6)

M_T = component of moment due to H_T
= $H_T h_T$

m = gasket factor, obtain from Table 2-5.1 [see Note 1, 2-5(c)(1)]

N = width used to determine the basic gasket seating with b_o, based upon the possible contact width of the gasket (see Table 2-5.2)

P = internal design pressure (see UG-21). For flanges subject to external design pressure, see 2-11.

R = radial distance from bolt circle to point of intersection of hub and back of flange. For integral and hub flanges,

$$R = \frac{C - B}{2} - g_1$$

S_a = allowable bolt stress at atmospheric temperature (see UG-23)

S_b = allowable bolt stress at design temperature (see UG-23)

S_f = allowable design stress for material of flange at design temperature (operating condition) or atmospheric temperature (gasket seating), as may apply (see UG-23)

S_n = allowable design stress for material of nozzle neck, vessel or pipe wall, at design temperature (operating condition) or atmospheric temperature (gasket seating), as may apply (see UG-23)

S_H = calculated longitudinal stress in hub

S_R = calculated radial stress in flange

S_T = calculated tangential stress in flange

T = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

t = flange thickness

t_n = nominal thickness of shell or nozzle wall to which flange or lap is attached

t_x = two times the thickness g_0, when the design is calculated as an integral flange or two times the thickness of shell nozzle wall required for internal pressure, when the design is calculated as a loose flange, but not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)

U = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

V = factor for integral type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.3)

V_L = factor for loose type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.5)

W = flange design bolt load, for the operating conditions or gasket seating, as may apply [see 2-5(e)]

W_{m1} = minimum required bolt load for the operating conditions [see 2-5(c)]. For flange pairs used to contain a tubesheet for a floating head for a U-tube type of heat exchangers, or for any other similar design, W_{m1} shall be the larger of the values as individually calculated for each flange, and that value shall be used for both flanges.

W_{m2} = minimum required bolt load for gasket seating [see 2-5(c)]

w = width used to determine the basic gasket seating width b_0, based upon the contact width between the flange facing and the gasket (see Table 2-5.2)

Y = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

y = gasket or joint-contact-surface unit seating load, [see Note 1, 2-5(c)]

Z = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

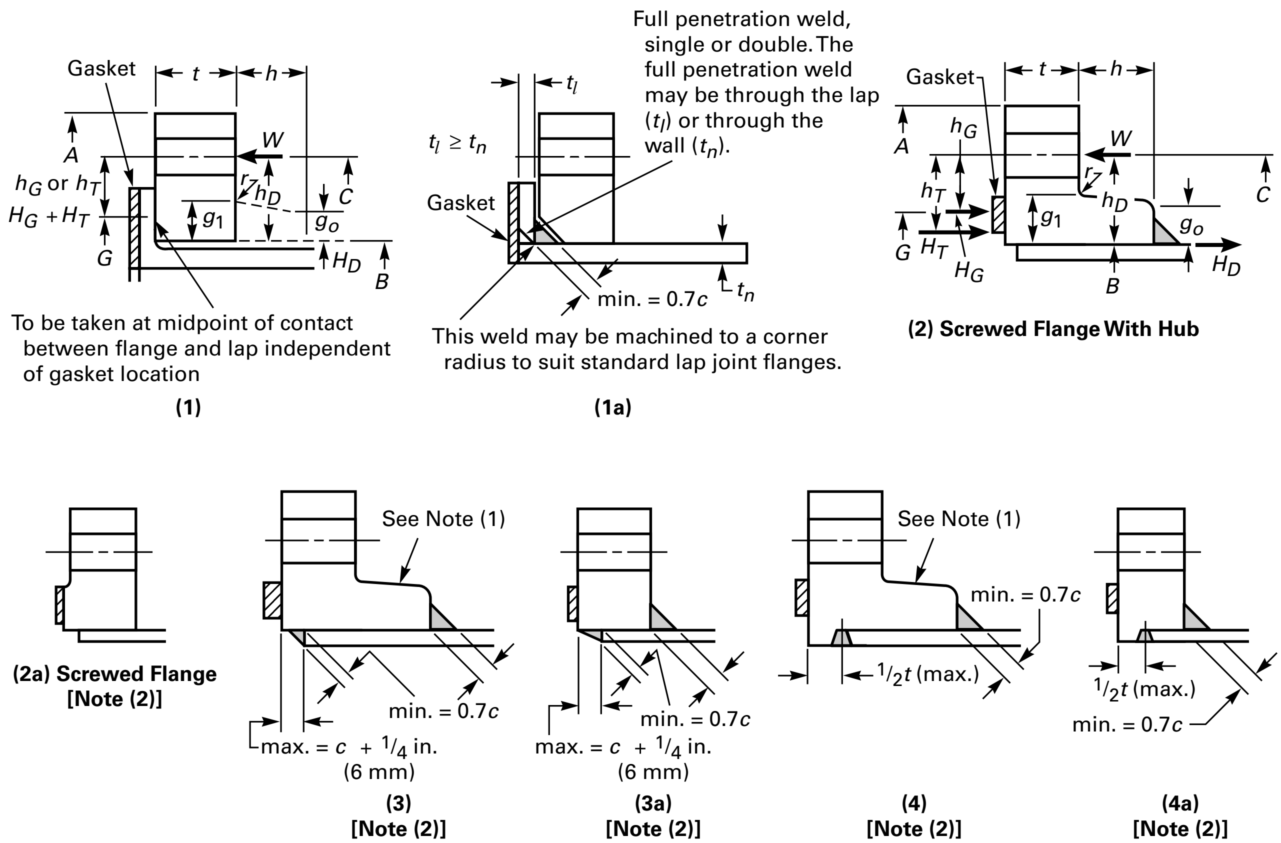
2-4 CIRCULAR FLANGE TYPES

(a) For purposes of computation, there are three types:

(1) Loose Type Flanges. This type covers those designs in which the flange has no direct connection to the nozzle neck, vessel, or pipe wall, and designs where the method of attachment is not considered to give the mechanical strength equivalent of integral attachment. See Fig. 2-4 sketches (1), (1a), (2), (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a) for typical loose type flanges and the location of the loads and moments. Welds and other details of construction shall satisfy the dimensional requirements

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



NOTES (Loose Type Flanges):

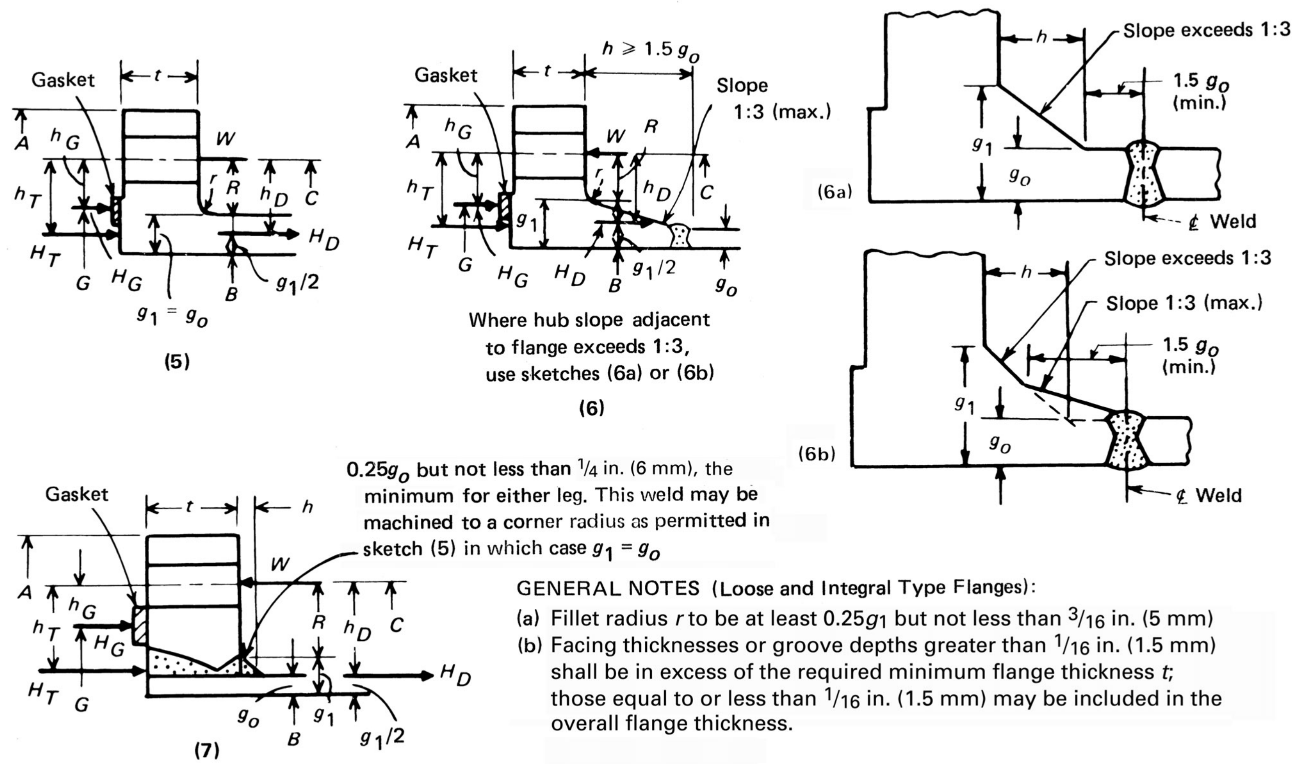
(1) For hub tapers 6 deg or less, use $g_o = g_1$.

(2) Loading and dimensions for sketches (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a) not shown are the same as for sketch (2).

Loose Type Flanges

FIG. 2-4 TYPES OF FLANGES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES (Loose and Integral Type Flanges):

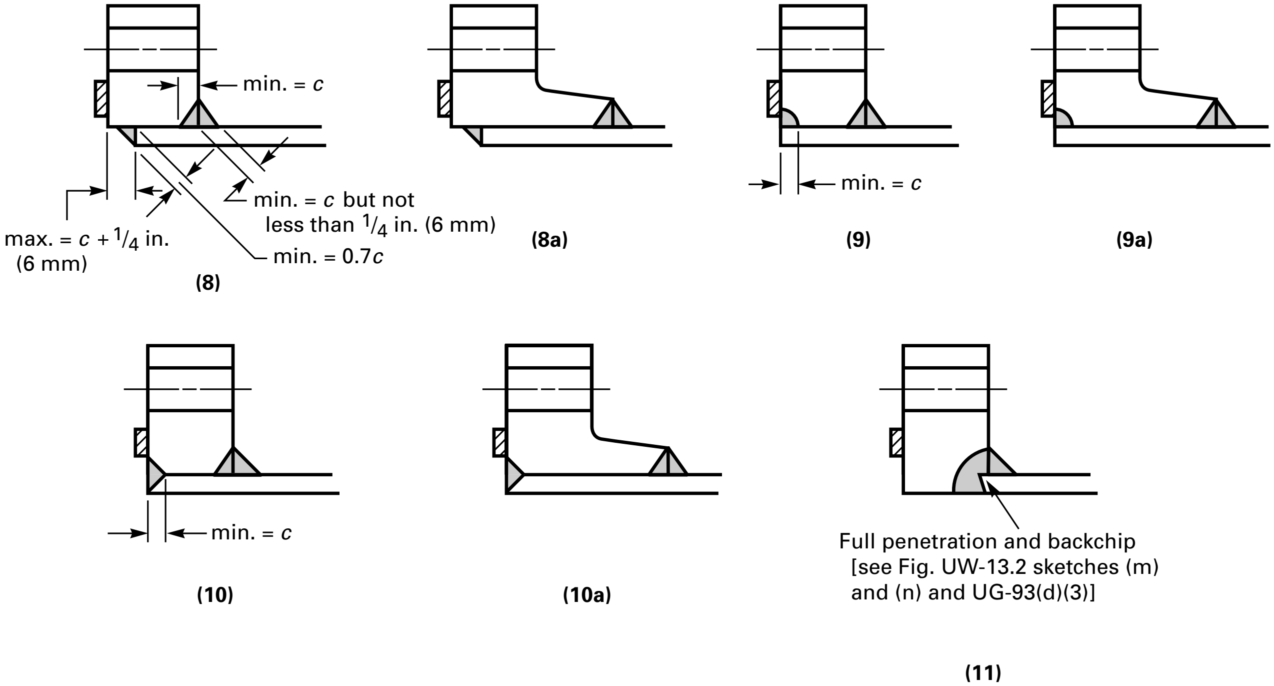
(a) Fillet radius r to be at least $0.25g_1$ but not less than 3/16 in. (5 mm)

(b) Facing thicknesses or groove depths greater than 1/16 in. (1.5 mm) shall be in excess of the required minimum flange thickness t; those equal to or less than 1/16 in. (1.5 mm) may be included in the overall flange thickness.

Integral Type Flanges

FIG. 2-4 TYPES OF FLANGES (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



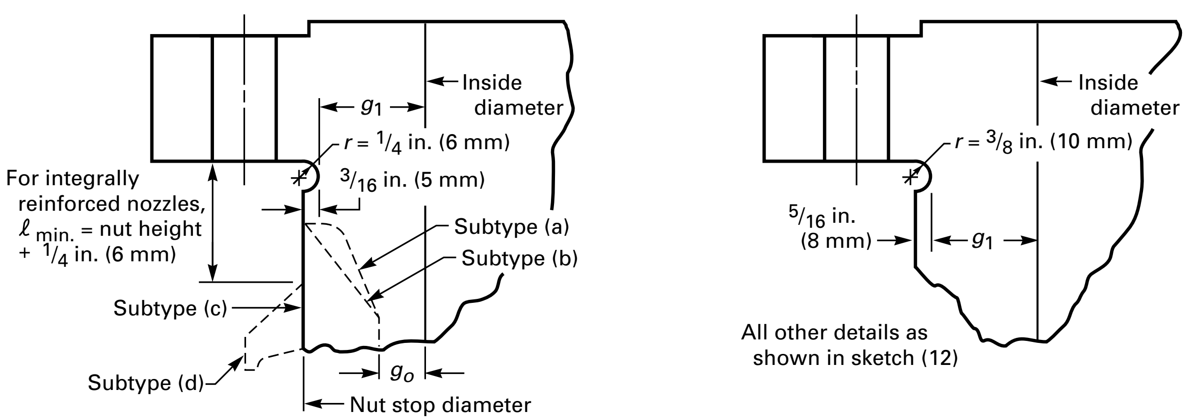
GENERAL NOTES: (Optional Type Flanges):

(a) Optional type flanges may be calculated as either loose or integral type. See 2-4.

(b) Loadings and dimensions not shown in sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), and (10a) are the same as shown in sketch (2) when the flange is calculated as a loose type flange and as shown in sketch (7) when the flange is calculated as an integral type flange.

(c) The groove and fillet welds between the flange back face and the shell given in sketch (8) also apply to sketches (8a), (9), (9a), (10), and (10a).

Optional Type Flanges



(12) For Flanged Nozzles 18 in. (460 mm) and Smaller Nominal Size

(12a) For Flanged Nozzles Over 18 in. (460 mm) Nominal Size

GENERAL NOTES: (Flanges With Nut Stops):
For subtypes (a) and (b), g_o is the thickness of the hub at the small end. For subtypes (c) and (d), $g_o = g_1$.

Flanges With Nut Stops

FIG. 2-4 TYPES OF FLANGES (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

given in Fig. 2-4 sketches (1), (1a), (2), (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a).

(2) Integral Type Flanges. This type covers designs where the flange is cast or forged integrally with the nozzle neck, vessel or pipe wall, butt welded thereto, or attached by other forms of arc or gas welding of such a nature that the flange and nozzle neck, vessel or pipe wall is considered to be the equivalent of an integral structure. In welded construction, the nozzle neck, vessel, or pipe wall is considered to act as a hub. See Fig. 2-4 sketches (5), (6), (6a), (6b), and (7) for typical integral type flanges and the location of the loads and moments. Welds and other details of construction shall satisfy the dimensional requirements given in Fig. 2-4 sketches (5), (6), (6a), (6b), and (7).

(3) Optional Type Flanges. This type covers designs where the attachment of the flange to the nozzle neck, vessel or pipe wall is such that the assembly is considered to act as a unit, which shall be calculated as an integral flange, except that for simplicity the designer may calculate the construction as a loose type flange provided none of the following values is exceeded:

$$g_0 = 5/8 \text{ in. (16 mm)}$$

$$B/g_0 = 300$$

$$P = 300 \text{ psi (2 MPa)}$$

$$\text{operating temperature} = 700°\text{F (370°C)}$$

See Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11) for typical optional type flanges. Welds and other details of construction shall satisfy the dimensional requirements given in Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11).

2-5 BOLT LOADS

(a) General Requirements

(1) In the design of a bolted flange connection, calculations shall be made for each of the two design conditions of operating and gasket seating, and the more severe shall control.

(2) In the design of flange pairs used to contain a tubesheet of a heat exchanger or any similar design where the flanges and/or gaskets may not be the same, loads must be determined for the most severe condition of operating and/or gasket seating loads applied to each side at the same time. This most severe condition may be gasket seating on one flange with operating on the other, gasket seating on each flange at the same time, or operating on each flange at the same time. Although no specific rules are given for the design of the flange pairs, after the loads for the most severe conditions are determined, calculations shall be made for each flange following the rules of Appendix 2.

(b) Design Conditions

(1) Operating Conditions. The conditions required to resist the hydrostatic end force of the design pressure tending to part the joint, and to maintain on the gasket or joint-contact surface sufficient compression to assure a tight joint, all at the design temperature. The minimum load is a function of the design pressure, the gasket material, and the effective gasket or contact area to be kept tight under pressure, per Formula (1) in (c)(1) below, and determines one of the two requirements for the amount of the bolting A_{m1}. This load is also used for the design of the flange, per Formula (3) in (d) below.

(2) Gasket Seating. The conditions existing when the gasket or joint-contact surface is seated by applying an initial load with the bolts when assembling the joint, at atmospheric temperature and pressure. The minimum initial load considered to be adequate for proper seating is a function of the gasket material, and the effective gasket or contact area to be seated, per Formula (2) in (c)(2) below, and determines the other of the two requirements for the amount of bolting A_{m2}. For the design of the flange, this load is modified per Formula (4) in (d) below to take account of the operating conditions, when these govern the amount of bolting required A_m, as well as the amount of bolting actually provided A_b.

(c) Required Bolt Loads. The flange bolt loads used in calculating the required cross-sectional area of bolts shall be determined as follows.

(1) The required bolt load for the operating conditions W_{m1} shall be sufficient to resist the hydrostatic end force H exerted by the maximum allowable working pressure on the area bounded by the diameter of gasket reaction, and, in addition, to maintain on the gasket or joint-contact surface a compression load H_p, which experience has shown to be sufficient to assure a tight joint. (This compression load is expressed as a multiple m of the internal pressure. Its value is a function of the gasket material and construction. See Note 1.)

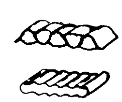
NOTE 1: Tables 2-5.1 and 2-5.2 give a list of many commonly used gasket materials and contact facings, with suggested values of m, b, and y that have proved satisfactory in actual service. These values are suggested only and are not mandatory. Values that are too low may result in leakage at the joint without affecting the safety of the design. The primary proof that the values are adequate is the hydrostatic test.

The required bolt load for the operating conditions W_{m1} is determined in accordance with Formula (1).

$$\begin{aligned} W_{m1} &= H + H_p \qquad (1) \\ &= 0.785G^2P + (2b \times 3.14GmP) \end{aligned}$$

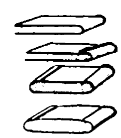
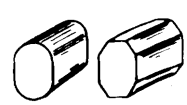
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 2-5.1
GASKET MATERIALS AND CONTACT FACINGS[1]
Gasket Factors *m* for Operating Conditions and Minimum Design Seating Stress *y*

Gasket Material	Gasket Factor m	Min. Design Seating Stress y, psi (MPa)	Sketches	Facing Sketch and Column in Table 2-5.2
Self-energizing types (O rings, metallic, elastomer, other gasket types considered as self-sealing)	0	0 (0)	. . .	. . .
Elastomers without fabric or high percent of asbestos fiber:				
Below 75A Shore Durometer	0.50	0 (0)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (4),(5); Column II
75A or higher Shore Durometer	1.00	200 (1.4)		
Asbestos with suitable binder for operating conditions:				
1/8 in. (3.2 mm) thick	2.00	1,600 (11)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (4),(5); Column II
1/16 in. (1.6 mm) thick	2.75	3,700 (26)		
1/32 in. (0.8 mm) thick	3.50	6,500 (45)		
Elastomers with cotton fabric insertion	1.25	400 (2.8)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (4),(5); Column II
Elastomers with asbestos fabric insertion (with or without wire reinforcement):				
3-ply	2.25	2,200 (15)		
2-ply	2.50	2,900 (20)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (4),(5); Column II
1-ply	2.75	3,700 (26)		
Vegetable fiber	1.75	1,100 (7.6)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (4)(5); Column II
Spiral-wound metal, asbestos filled:				
Carbon	2.50	10,000 (69)		
Stainless, Monel, and nickel-base alloys	3.00	10,000 (69)		(1a),(1b); Column II
Corrugated metal, asbestos inserted, or corrugated metal, jacketed asbestos filled:				
Soft aluminum	2.50	2,900 (20)		
Soft copper or brass	2.75	3,700 (26)		
Iron or soft steel	3.00	4,500 (31)		(1a),(1b); Column II
Monel or 4%–6% chrome	3.25	5,500 (38)		
Stainless steels and nickel-base alloys	3.50	6,500 (45)		

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 2-5.1
GASKET MATERIALS AND CONTACT FACINGS[1] (CONT'D)
Gasket Factors *m* for Operating Conditions and Minimum Design Seating Stress *y*

Gasket Material	Gasket Factor *m*	Min. Design Seating Stress *y*, psi (MPa)	Sketches	Facing Sketch and Column in Table 2-5.2
Corrugated metal:				
Soft aluminum	2.75	3,700 (26)		
Soft copper or brass	3.00	4,500 (31)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d); Column II
Iron or soft steel	3.25	5,500 (38)		
Monel or 4%–6% chrome	3.50	6,500 (45)		
Stainless steels and nickel-base alloys	3.75	7,600 (52)		
Flat metal, jacketed asbestos filled:				
Soft aluminum	3.25	5,500 (38)		
Soft copper or brass	3.50	6,500 (45)		(1a),(1b),(1c),[2] (1d)[2];(2)[2]; Column II
Iron or soft steel	3.75	7,600 (52)		
Monel	3.50	8,000 (55)		
4%–6% chrome	3.75	9,000 (62)		
Stainless steels and nickel-base alloys	3.75	9,000 (62)		
Grooved metal:				
Soft aluminum	3.25	5,500 (38)		
Soft copper or brass	3.50	6,500 (45)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (2),(3); Column II
Iron or soft metal	3.75	7,600 (52)		
Monel or 4%–6% chrome	3.75	9,000 (62)		
Stainless steels and nickel-base alloys	4.25	10,100 (70)		
Solid flat metal:				
Soft aluminum	4.00	8,800 (61)		
Soft copper or brass	4.75	13,000 (90)		(1a),(1b),(1c),(1d), (2),(3),(4),(5); Column I
Iron or soft steel	5.50	18,000 (124)		
Monel or 4%–6% chrome	6.00	21,800 (150)		
Stainless steels and nickel-base alloys	6.50	26,000 (180)		
Ring joint:				
Iron or soft steel	5.50	18,000 (124)		
Monel or 4%–6% chrome	6.00	21,800 (150)		(6); Column I
Stainless steels and nickel-base alloys	6.50	26,000 (180)		

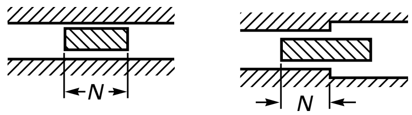
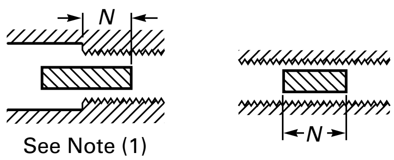
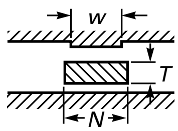
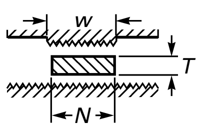
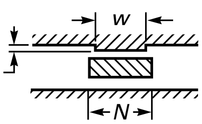
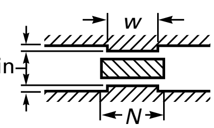
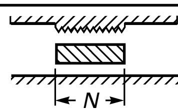
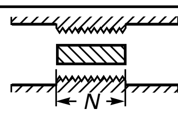
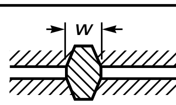
NOTES:

(1) This Table gives a list of many commonly used gasket materials and contact facings with suggested design values of *m* and *y* that have generally proved satisfactory in actual service when using effective gasket seating width *b* given in Table 2-5.2. The design values and other details given in this Table are suggested only and are not mandatory.

(2) The surface of a gasket having a lap should not be against the nubbin.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

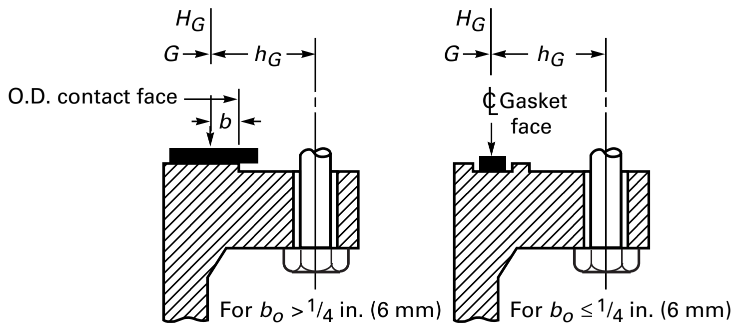
TABLE 2-5.2
EFFECTIVE GASKET WIDTH[2]

Facing Sketch (Exaggerated)	Basic Gasket Seating Width b_o Column I	Column II
(1a)  (1b)  See Note (1)	$\frac{N}{2}$	$\frac{N}{2}$
(1c)  $w \le N$ (1d)  See Note (1) $w \le N$	$\frac{w+T}{2}; \left(\frac{w+N}{4}\text{ max}\right)$	$\frac{w+T}{2}; \left(\frac{w+N}{4}\text{ max}\right)$
(2) $^{1}/_{64}$ in. (0.4 mm) nubbin  $w \le N/2$	$\frac{w+N}{4}$	$\frac{w+3N}{8}$
(3) $^{1}/_{64}$ in. (0.4 mm) nubbin  $w \le N/2$	$\frac{N}{4}$	$\frac{3N}{8}$
(4)  See Note (1)	$\frac{3N}{8}$	$\frac{7N}{16}$
(5)  See Note (1)	$\frac{N}{4}$	$\frac{3N}{8}$
(6) 	$\frac{w}{8}$	. . .

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 2-5.2
EFFECTIVE GASKET WIDTH[2] (CONT'D)

Effective Gasket Seating Width, b
$b = b_o$, when $b_o \leq \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm); $b = C_b\sqrt{b_o}$, when $b_o > \frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)
Location of Gasket Load Reaction



NOTES:
(1) Where serrations do not exceed $\frac{1}{64}$ in. (0.4 mm) depth and $\frac{1}{32}$ in. (0.8 mm) width spacing, sketches (1b) and (1d) shall be used.
(2) The gasket factors listed only apply to flanged joints in which the gasket is contained entirely within the inner edges of the bolt holes.

(2) Before a tight joint can be obtained, it is necessary to seat the gasket or joint-contact surface properly by applying a minimum initial load (under atmospheric temperature conditions without the presence of internal pressure), which is a function of the gasket material and the effective gasket area to be seated. The minimum initial bolt load required for this purpose W_{m2} shall be determined in accordance with Formula (2).

$$W_{m2} = 3.14bGy \tag{2}$$

For flange pairs used to contain a tubesheet for a floating head for a U-tube type of heat exchanger, or for any other similar design, and where the flanges and/or gaskets are not the same, W_{m2} shall be the larger of the values obtained from Formula (2) as individually calculated for each flange and gasket, and that value shall be used for both flanges.

The need for providing sufficient bolt load to seat the gasket or joint-contact surfaces in accordance with Formula (2) will prevail on many low-pressure designs and with facings and materials that require a high seating load, and where the bolt load computed by Formula (1) for the operating conditions is insufficient to seat the joint. Accordingly, it is necessary to furnish bolting and to pretighten the bolts to provide a bolt load sufficient to satisfy both of these requirements, each one being individually investigated. When Formula (2) governs, flange proportions will be a function of the bolting instead of internal pressure.

(3) Bolt loads for flanges using gaskets of the self-energizing type differ from those shown above.

(a) The required bolt load for the operating conditions W_{m1} shall be sufficient to resist the hydrostatic end force H exerted by the maximum allowable working pressure on the area bounded by the outside diameter of the gasket. H_p is to be considered as 0 for all self-energizing gaskets except certain seal configurations which generate axial loads which must be considered.

(b) $W_{m2} = 0$.

Self-energizing gaskets may be considered to require an inconsequential amount of bolting force to produce a seal. Bolting, however, must be pretightened to provide a bolt load sufficient to withstand the hydrostatic end force H.

(d) Total Required and Actual Bolt Areas, A_m and A_b. The total cross-sectional area of bolts A_m required for both the operating conditions and gasket seating is the greater of the values for A_{m1} and A_{m2} where $A_{m1} = W_{m1}/S_b$ and $A_{m2} = W_{m2}/S_a$. A selection of bolts to be used shall be made such that the actual total cross-sectional area of bolts A_b will not be less than A_m.

(e) Flange Design Bolt Load W. The bolt loads used in the design of the flange shall be the values obtained from Formulas (3) and (4). For operating conditions,

$$W = W_{m1} \tag{3}$$

For gasket seating,

$$W = \frac{(A_m + A_b)S_a}{2} \tag{4}$$

S_a used in Formula (4) shall be not less than that tabulated in the stress tables (see UG-23). In addition to the minimum requirements for safety, Formula (4) provides a

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

margin against abuse of the flange from overbolting. Since the margin against such abuse is needed primarily for the initial, bolting-up operation which is done at atmospheric temperature and before application of internal pressure, the flange design is required to satisfy this loading only under such conditions (see Note 2).

NOTE 2: Where additional safety against abuse is desired, or where it is necessary that the flange be suitable to withstand the full available bolt load $A_b S_a$, the flange may be designed on the basis of this latter quantity.

2-6 FLANGE MOMENTS

In the calculation of flange stress, the moment of a load acting on the flange is the product of the load and its moment arm. The moment arm is determined by the relative position of the bolt circle with respect to that of the load producing the moment (see Fig. 2-4). No consideration shall be given to any possible reduction in moment arm due to cupping of the flanges or due to inward shifting of the line of action of the bolts as a result thereof.

For the operating conditions, the total flange moment M_o is the sum of the three individual moments M_D, M_T, and M_G, as defined in 2-3 and based on the flange design load of Formula (3) with moment arms as given in Table 2-6.

For gasket seating, the total flange moment M_o is based on the flange design bolt load of Formula (4), which is opposed only by the gasket load, in which case

$$M_o = W \frac{(C - G)}{2} \tag{5}$$

2-7 CALCULATION OF FLANGE STRESSES

The stresses in the flange shall be determined for both the operating conditions and gasket seating condition, whichever controls, in accordance with the following formulas:

(a) for integral type flanges [Fig. 2-4 sketches (5), (6), (6a), (6b), and (7)]; for optional type flanges calculated as integral type [Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11)]; and for loose type flanges with a hub which is considered [Fig. 2-4 sketches (1), (1a), (2), (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a)]:

Longitudinal hub stress

$$S_H = \frac{fM_o}{Lg_1^2 B} \tag{6}$$

TABLE 2-6
MOMENT ARMS FOR FLANGE LOADS UNDER OPERATING CONDITIONS

	h_D	h_T	h_G
Integral type flanges [see Fig. 2–4 sketches (5), (6), (6a), (6b), and (7)]; and optional type flanges calculated as integral type [see Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11)]	$R + 0.5g_1$	$\frac{R + g_1 + h_G}{2}$	$\frac{C - G}{2}$
Loose type, except lap-joint flanges [see Fig. 2-4 sketches (2), (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a)]; and optional type flanges calculated as loose type [see Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11)]	$\frac{C - B}{2}$	$\frac{h_D + h_G}{2}$	$\frac{C - G}{2}$
Lap-type flanges [see Fig. 2-4 sketches (1) and (1a)]	$\frac{C - B}{2}$	$\frac{C - G}{2}$	$\frac{C - G}{2}$

Radial flange stress

$$S_R = \frac{(1.33te + 1)M_o}{Lt^2 B} \tag{7}$$

Tangential flange stress

$$S_T = \frac{YM_o}{t^2 B} - ZS_R \tag{8}$$

(b) for loose type flanges without hubs and loose type flanges with hubs which the designer chooses to calculate without considering the hub [Fig. 2-4 sketches (1), (1a), (2), (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a)] and optional type flanges calculated as loose type [Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11)]:

$$S_T = \frac{YM_o}{t^2 B} \tag{9}$$

$$S_R = 0 \qquad S_H = 0$$

2-8 ALLOWABLE FLANGE DESIGN STRESSES

(a) The flange stresses calculated by the formulas in 2-7 shall not exceed the following values:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

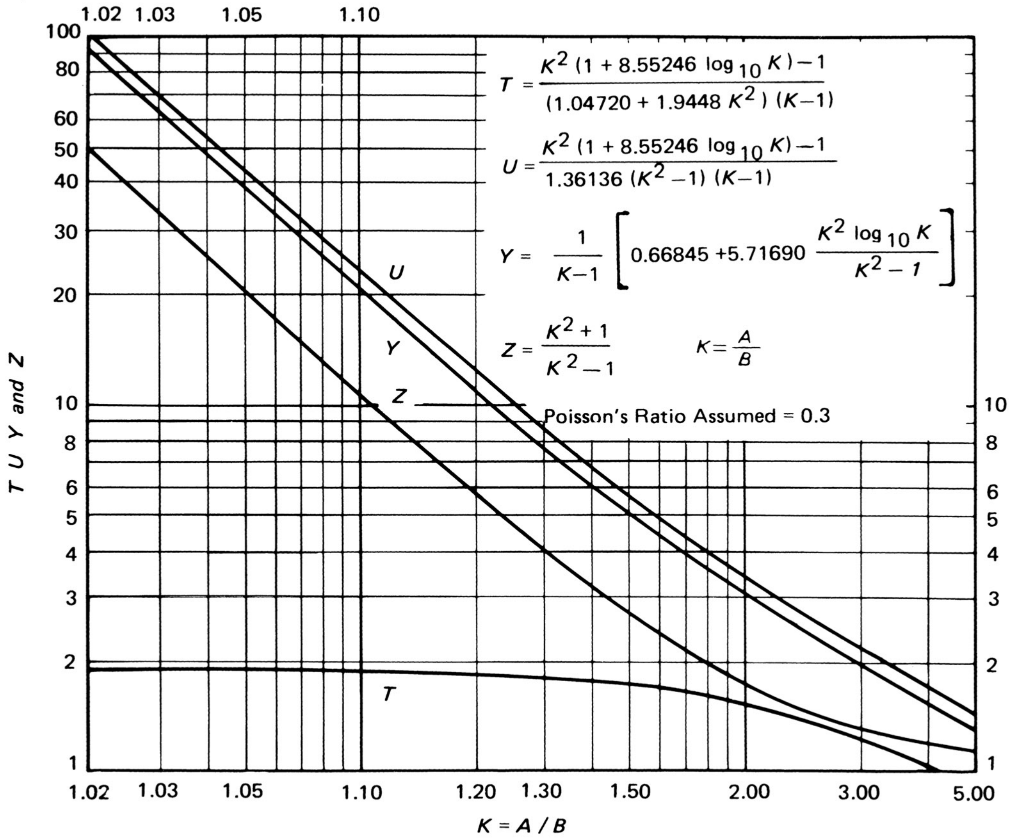


FIG. 2-7.1 VALUES OF *T, U, Y,* AND *Z*
(Terms Involving K)

(1) longitudinal hub stress S_H not greater than S_f for cast iron[1] and, except as otherwise limited by (1)(a) and (1)(b) below, not greater than 1.5 S_f for materials other than cast iron:

(a) longitudinal hub stress S_H not greater than the smaller of $1.5S_f$ or $1.5S_n$ for optional type flanges designed as integral [Fig. 2-4 sketches (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), (10a), and (11)], also integral type [Fig. 2-4 sketch (7)] where the neck material constitutes the hub of the flange;

(b) longitudinal hub stress S_H not greater than the smaller of $1.5S_f$ or $2.5S_n$ for integral type flanges with hub welded to the neck, pipe or vessel wall [Fig. 2-4 sketches (6), (6a), and (6b)].

(2) radial flange stress S_R not greater than S_f;

(3) tangential flange stress S_T not greater than S_f;

(4) also $(S_H + S_R)/2$ not greater than S_f and $(S_H + S_T)/2$ not greater than S_f.

(b) For hub flanges attached as shown in Fig. 2-4 sketches (2), (2a), (3), (3a), (4), and (4a), the nozzle neck, vessel or pipe wall shall not be considered to have any value as a hub.

(c) In the case of loose type flanges with laps, as shown in Fig. 2-4 sketches (1) and (1a), where the gasket is so located that the lap is subjected to shear, the shearing stress shall not exceed 0.8 S_n for the material of the lap, as defined in 2-3. In the case of welded flanges, shown in Fig. 2-4 sketches (3), (3a), (4), (4a), (7), (8), (8a), (9), (9a), (10), and (10a) where the nozzle neck, vessel, or pipe wall extends near to the flange face and may form the gasket contact face, the shearing stress carried by the welds shall not exceed 0.8 S_n. The shearing stress shall be calculated on the basis of W_{m1} or W_{m2} as defined in 2-3, whichever is greater. Similar cases where flange parts are subjected to shearing stress shall be governed by the same requirements.

[1] When the flange material is cast iron, particular care should be taken when tightening the bolts to avoid excessive stress that may break the flange. The longitudinal hub stress has been limited to S_f in order to minimize any cracking of flanges. An attempt should be made to apply no greater torque than is needed to assure tightness during the hydrostatic test.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

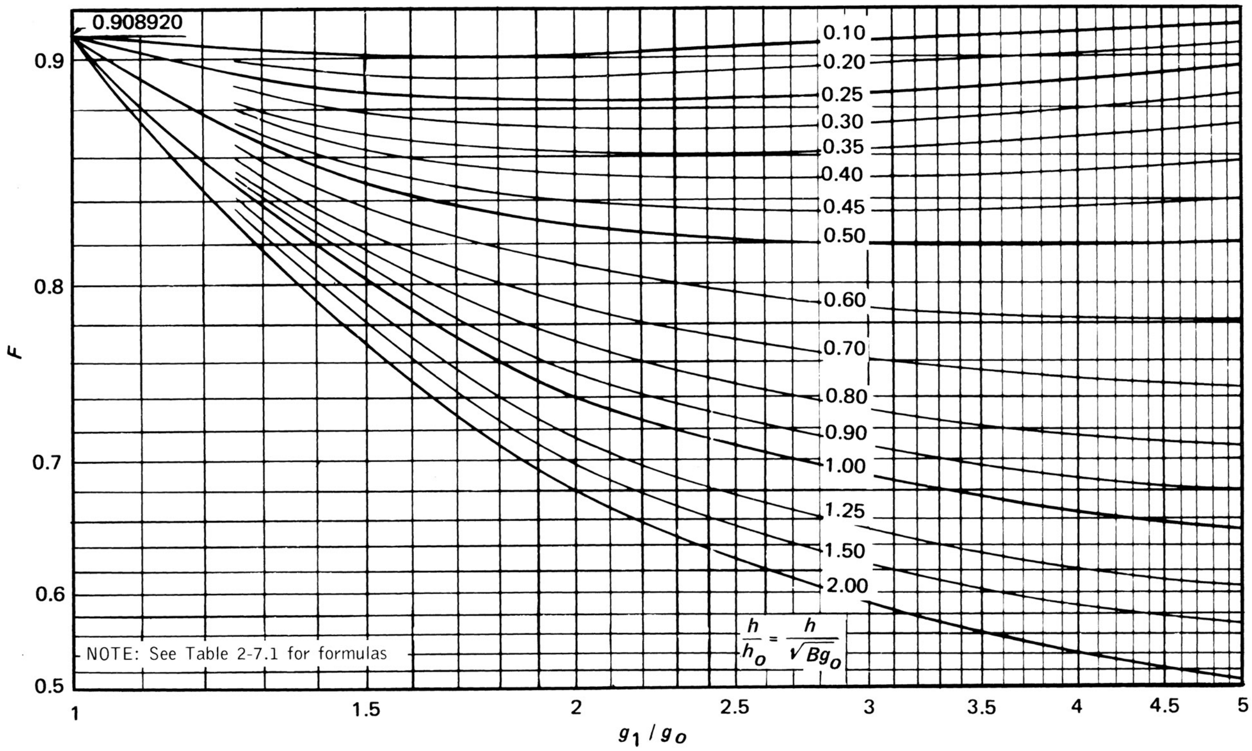


FIG. 2-7.2 VALUES OF F
(Integral Flange Factors)

2-9 SPLIT LOOSE FLANGES[2]

Loose flanges split across a diameter and designed under the rules given in this Appendix may be used under the following provisions.

(a) When the flange consists of a single split flange or flange ring, it shall be designed as if it were a solid flange (without splits), using 200% of the total moment M_o as defined in 2-6.

(b) When the flange consists of two split rings each ring shall be designed as if it were a solid flange (without splits), using 75% of the total moment M_o as defined in 2-6. The pair of rings shall be assembled so that the splits in one ring shall be 90 deg. from the splits in the other ring.

(c) The splits should preferably be midway between bolt holes.

2-10 NONCIRCULAR SHAPED FLANGES WITH CIRCULAR BORE

The outside diameter A for a noncircular flange with a circular bore shall be taken as the diameter of the largest circle, concentric with the bore, inscribed entirely within the outside edges of the flange. Bolt loads and moments, as well as stresses, are then calculated as for circular flanges, using a bolt circle drawn through the centers of the outermost bolt holes.

2-11 FLANGES SUBJECT TO EXTERNAL PRESSURES

(a) The design of flanges for external pressure only [see UG-99(f)][3] shall be based on the formulas given in 2-7 for internal pressure except that for operating conditions:

$$M_o = H_D(h_D - h_G) + H_T(h_T - h_G) \tag{10}$$

For gasket seating,

$$M_o = Wh_G \tag{11}$$

where

$$W = \frac{A_{m2} + A_b}{2} S_a \tag{11a}$$

[2] Loose flanges of the type shown in Fig. 2-4 sketch (1) are of the split design when it is necessary to install them after heat treatment of a stainless steel vessel, or when for any reason it is desired to have them completely removable from the nozzle neck or vessel.

[3] When internal pressure occurs only during the required pressure test, the design may be based on external pressure, and auxiliary devices such as clamps may be used during the application of the required test pressure.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

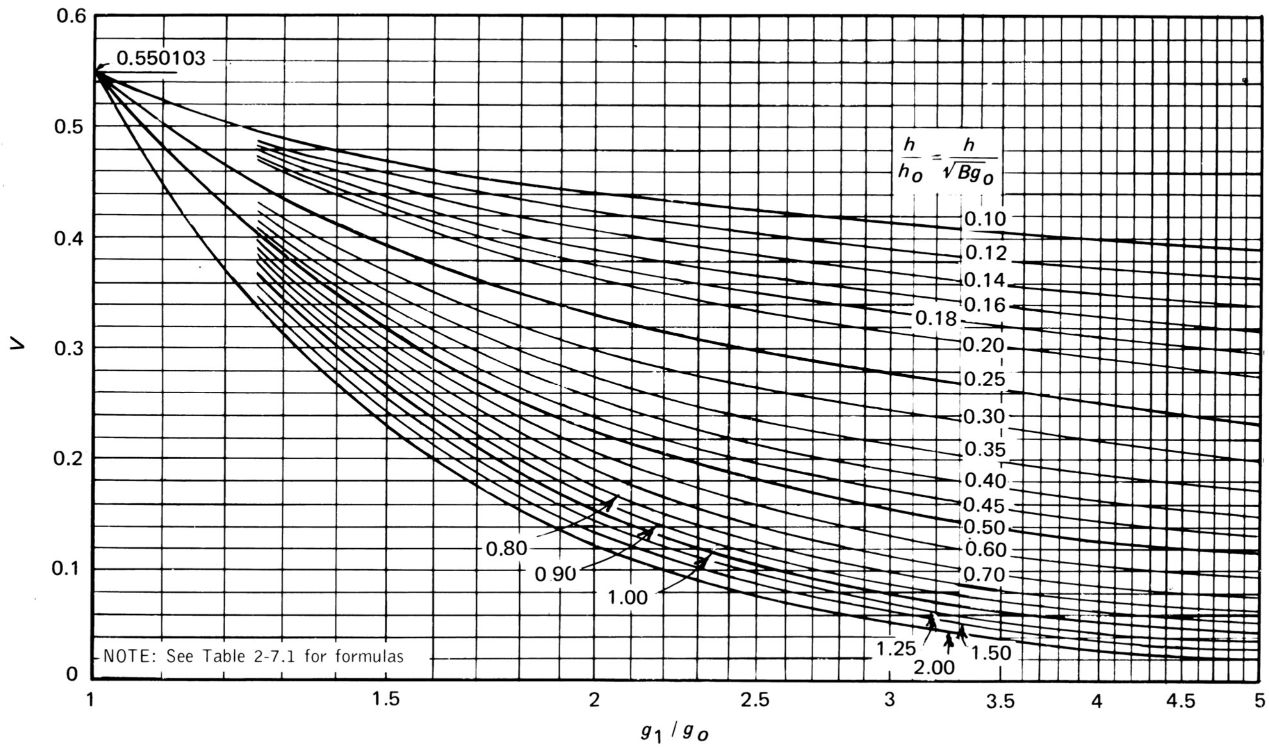


FIG. 2-7.3 VALUES OF V
(Integral Flange Factors)

$$H_D = 0.785B^2P_e \tag{11b}$$

$$H_T = H - H_D \tag{11c}$$

$$H = 0.785G^2P_e \tag{11d}$$

P_e = external design pressure

See 2-3 for definitions of other symbols. S_a used in Formula (11a) shall be not less than that tabulated in the stress tables (see UG-23).

(b) When flanges are subject at different times during operation to external or internal pressure, the design shall satisfy the external pressure design requirements given in (a) above and the internal pressure design requirements given elsewhere in this Appendix.

NOTE: The combined force of external pressure and bolt loading may plastically deform certain gaskets to result in loss of gasket contact pressure when the connection is depressurized. To maintain a tight joint when the unit is repressurized, consideration should be given to gasket and facing details so that excessive deformation of the gasket will not occur. Joints subject to pressure reversals, such as in heat exchanger floating heads, are in this type of service.

2-12 FLANGES WITH NUT-STOPS

(a) When flanges are designed per this Appendix, or are fabricated to the dimensions of ASME/ANSI B16.5 or other acceptable standards [see UG-44(a)], except that the dimension R is decreased to provide a nut-stop, the fillet radius relief shall be as shown in Fig. 2-4 sketches (12) and (12a) except that:

(1) for flanges designed to this Appendix, the dimension g_1 must be the lesser of $2t$ (t from UG-27) or $4r$, but in no case less than $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm), where

r = the radius of the undercut

(2) for ASME/ANSI B16.5 or other standard flanges, the dimension of the hub g_o shall be increased as necessary to provide a nut-stop.

2-13 REVERSE FLANGES

(a) Flanges with the configuration as indicated in Fig. 2-13.1 shall be designed as integral reverse flanges and those in Fig. 2-13.2 shall be designed as loose ring type reverse flanges. These flanges shall be designed in conformance with the rules in 2-3 through 2-8, but with the modifications as described in the following. Mandatory use of these rules is limited to $K \leq 2$. When $K > 2$, results become increasingly conservative and U-2(g) may be used.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

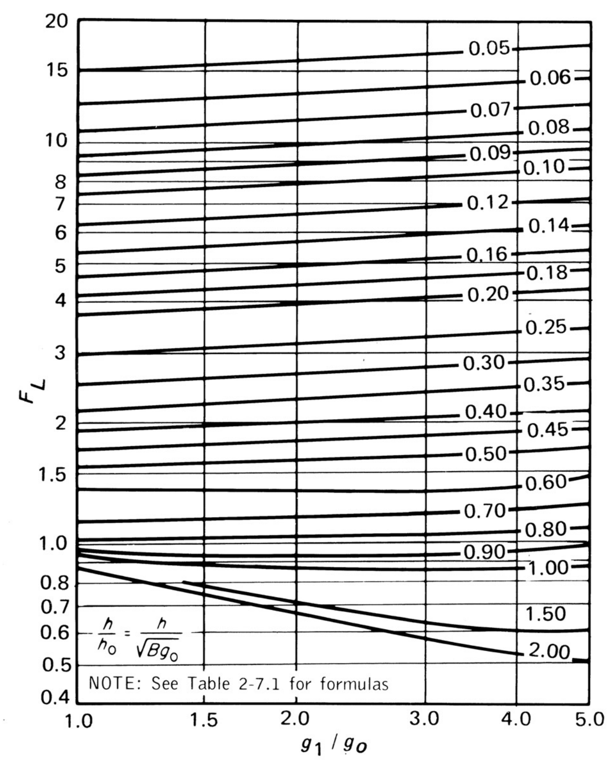


FIG. 2-7.4 VALUES OF F_L
(Loose Hub Flange Factors)

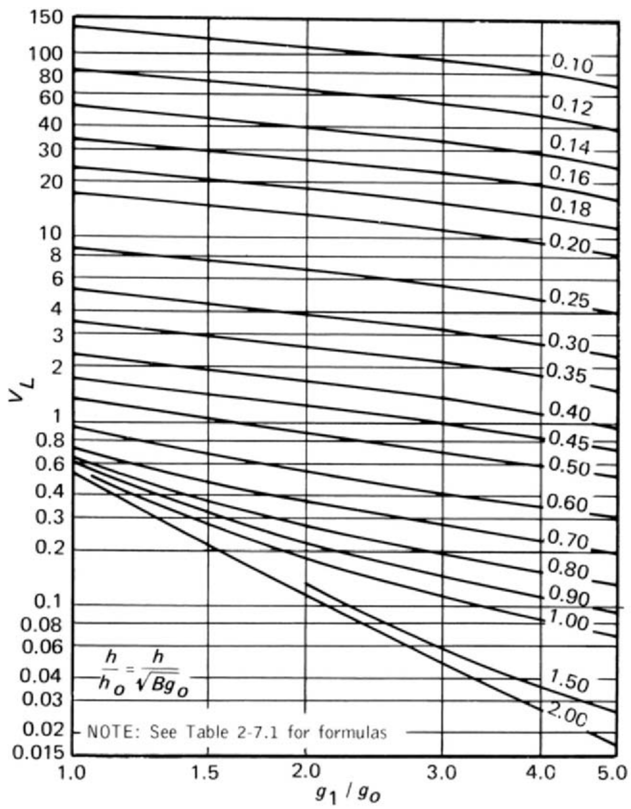


FIG. 2-7.5 VALUES OF V_L
(Loose Hub Flange Factors)

(1) Integral Type Reverse Flange. The shell-to-flange attachment of integral type reverse flanges may be attached as shown in Fig. 2-4 sketches (5) through (11), as well as Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (a) and (b). The requirements of 2-4(a)(3) apply to Fig. 2-4 sketches (8) through (11) as well as Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (a) and (b).

(2) Loose Ring Type Reverse Flange. The shell-to-flange attachment of loose ring type reverse flanges may be attached as shown in Fig. 2-4 sketches (3a), (4a), (8), (9), (10), and (11) as well as Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (c) and (d). When Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (c) and (d) are used, the maximum wall thickness of the shell shall not exceed $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm), and the maximum design metal temperature shall not exceed 650°F (340°C).

The symbols and definitions in this paragraph pertain specifically to reverse flanges. Except as noted in (b) below, the symbols used in the equations of this paragraph are defined in 2-3.

The formulas for S_H, S_R, and S_{T1} correspond, respectively, to Formulas (6), (7), and (8) in 2-7, in direction, but are located at the flange *outside* diameter. The sole stress at the flange inside diameter is a tangential stress and is given by the formula for S_{T2}.

(b) Notation

B = inside diameter of shell
B' = inside diameter of reverse flange
d_r = $U_r h_{or} g_o{}^2 / V$
e_r = F / h_{or}
F = factor (use h_{or} for h_o in Fig. 2-7.2)
f = factor (use h_{or} for h_o in Fig. 2-7.6)
H = total hydrostatic end force on attached component
= $0.785 G^2 P$
H_D = hydrostatic end force on area inside of flange
= $0.785 B^2 P$
H_T = difference between hydrostatic end force on attached component and hydrostatic end force on area inside of flange
= $H - H_D$
h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle to the circle on which H_D acts
= $(C + g_1 - 2g_o - B)/2$ for integral type reverse flanges
= $(C - B)/2$ for loose ring type reverse flanges
h_{or} = factor
= $\sqrt{A g_o}$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

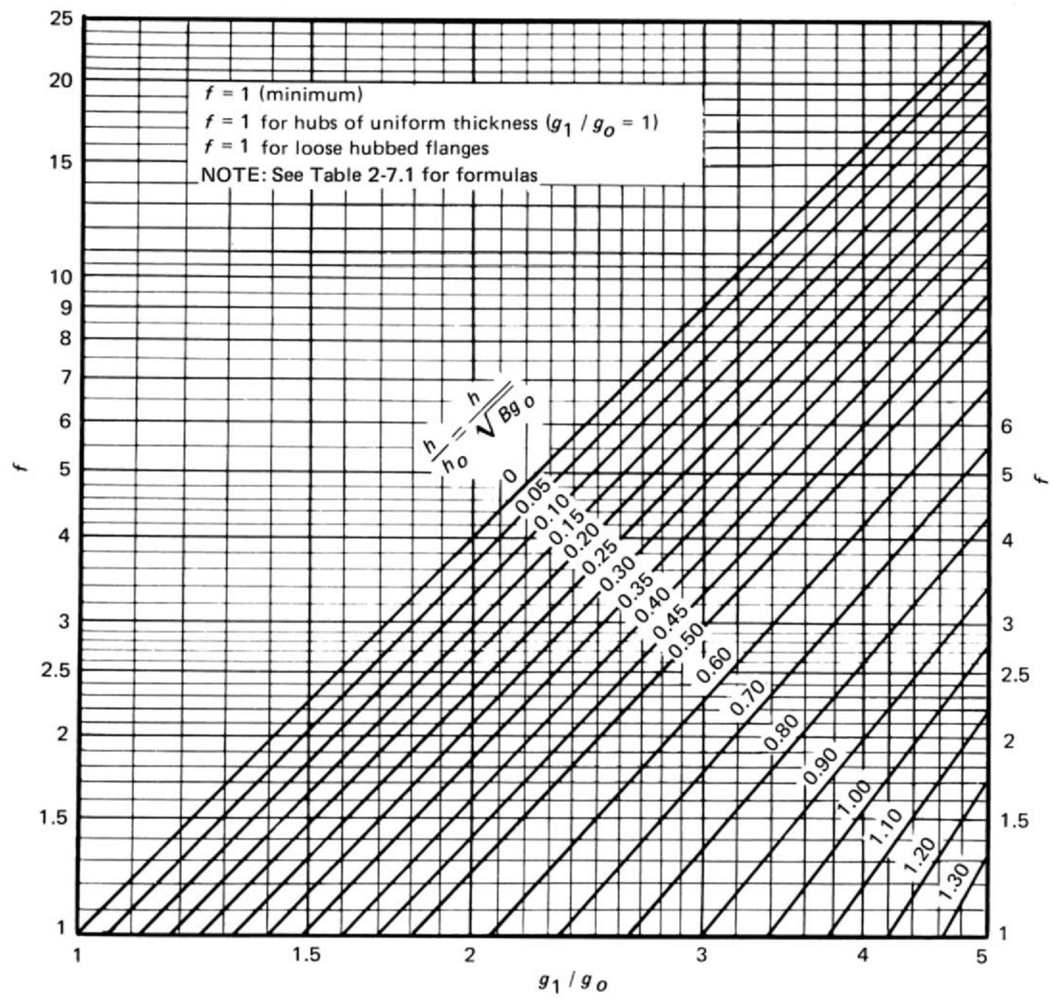


FIG. 2-7.6 VALUES OF f
(Hub Stress Correction Factor)

h_T = radial distance from the bolt circle, to the circle on which H_T acts

$= \frac{1}{2}\left(C - \dfrac{B+G}{2}\right)$

K = ratio of outside diameter of flange to inside diameter of flange

$= A/B'$

L_r = factor

$= \dfrac{te_r + 1}{T_r} + \dfrac{t^3}{d_r}$

M_o = total moment acting on the flange, for the operating conditions or gasket seating as may apply

= algebraic sum of M_D, M_T, and M_G. Values of load H_T and moment arm h_D are negative; value of moment arm h_T may be positive as in Fig. 2-13, or negative. If M_o is negative, use its absolute value in calculating stresses to obtain positive stresses for comparison with allowable stresses.

$T_r = \left(\dfrac{Z + 0.3}{Z - 0.3}\right)\alpha_r T$

$U_r = \alpha_r U$

V = factor (use h_{or} for h_o in Fig. 2-7.3)

$Y_r = \alpha_r Y$

$\alpha_r = \left[1 + \dfrac{0.668\ (K+1)}{Y}\right] / K^2$

(c) For Integral Type Reverse Flanges

(1) Stresses at the Outside Diameter

$$S_H = fM_o / L_r g_1{}^2 B'$$

$$S_R = (1.33te_r + 1)M_o / L_r t^2 B'$$

$$S_{T1} = (Y_r M_o / t^2 B') - ZS_R(0.67te_r + 1)/(1.33te_r + 1)$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 2-7.1
FLANGE FACTORS IN FORMULA FORM

Integral Flange

Factor F per Fig. 2-7.2 is then solved by

$$F = -\frac{E_6}{\left(\frac{C}{2.73}\right)^{1/4}\frac{(1+A)^3}{C}}$$

Factor V per Fig. 2-7.3 is then solved by

$$V = \frac{E_4}{\left(\frac{2.73}{C}\right)^{1/4}(1+A)^3}$$

Factor f per Fig. 2-7.6 is then solved by

$$f = C_{36}/(1 + A)$$

The values used in the above equations are solved using Eqs. (1) through (45) below based on the values g_1, g_o, h, and h_o as defined by 2-3. When $g_i = g_o$, $F = 0.908920$, $V = 0.550103$, and $f = 1$; thus Eqs. (1) through (45) need not be solved.

Loose Hub Flange

Factor F_L per Fig. 2-7.4 is solved by

$$F_L = -\frac{C_{18}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{A}{6}\right) + C_{21}\left(\frac{1}{4}+\frac{11A}{84}\right) + C_{24}\left(\frac{1}{70}+\frac{A}{105}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{40}+\frac{A}{72}\right)}{\left(\frac{C}{2.73}\right)^{1/4}\frac{(1+A)^3}{C}}$$

Factor V_L per Fig. 2-7.5 is solved by

$$V_L = \frac{\frac{1}{4} - \frac{C_{24}}{5} - \frac{3C_{21}}{2} - C_{18}}{\left(\frac{2.73}{C}\right)^{1/4}(1+A)^3}$$

Factor f per Fig. 2-7.6 is set equal to 1.

$$f = 1$$

The values used in the above equations are solved using Eqs. (1) through (5), (7), (9), (10), (12), (14), (16), (18), (20), (23), and (26) below based on the values of g_1, g_o, h, and h_o as defined by 2-3.

Equations

(1) $A = (g_1/g_o) - 1$

(2) $C = 43.68(h/h_o)^4$

(3) $C_1 = 1/3 + A/12$

(4) $C_2 = 5/42 + 17A/336$

(5) $C_3 = 1/210 + A/360$

(6) $C_4 = 11/360 + 59A/5040 + (1 + 3A)/C$

(7) $C_5 = 1/90 + 5A/1008 - (1 + A)^3/C$

(8) $C_6 = 1/120 + 17A/5040 + 1/C$

(9) $C_7 = 215/2772 + 51A/1232 + (60/7 + 225A/14 + 75A^2/7 + 5A^3/2)/C$

(10) $C_8 = 31/6930 + 128A/45{,}045 + (6/7 + 15A/7 + 12A^2/7 + 5A^3/11)/C$

(11) $C_9 = 533/30{,}240 + 653A/73{,}920 + (1/2 + 33A/14 + 39A^2/28 + 25A^3/84)/C$

(12) $C_{10} = 29/3780 + 3A/704 - (1/2 + 33A/14 + 81A^2/28 + 13A^3/12)/C$

(13) $C_{11} = 31/6048 + 1763A/665{,}280 + (1/2 + 6A/7 + 15A^2/28 + 5A^3/42)/C$

(14) $C_{12} = 1/2925 + 71A/300{,}300 + (8/35 + 18A/35 + 156A^2/385 + 6A^3/55)/C$

(15) $C_{13} = 761/831{,}600 + 937A/1{,}663{,}200 + (1/35 + 6A/35 + 11A^2/70 + 3A^3/70)/C$

(16) $C_{14} = 197/415{,}800 + 103A/332{,}640 - (1/35 + 6A/35 + 17A^2/70 + A^3/10)/C$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 2-7.1
FLANGE FACTORS IN FORMULA FORM (CONT'D)

(17) $C_{15} = 233/831{,}600 + 97A/554{,}400 + (1/35 + 3A/35 + A^2/14 + 2A^3/105)/C$

(18) $C_{16} = C_1C_7C_{12} + C_2C_8C_3 + C_3C_8C_2 - (C_3^2C_7 + C_8^2C_1 + C_2^2C_{12})$

(19) $C_{17} = [C_4C_7C_{12} + C_2C_8C_{13} + C_3C_8C_9 - (C_{13}C_7C_3 + C_8^2C_4 + C_{12}C_2C_9)]/C_{16}$

(20) $C_{18} = [C_5C_7C_{12} + C_2C_8C_{14} + C_3C_8C_{10} - (C_{14}C_7C_3 + C_8^2C_5 + C_{12}C_2C_{10})]/C_{16}$

(21) $C_{19} = [C_6C_7C_{12} + C_2C_8C_{15} + C_3C_8C_{11} - (C_{15}C_7C_3 + C_8^2C_6 + C_{12}C_2C_{11})]/C_{16}$

(22) $C_{20} = [C_1C_9C_{12} + C_4C_8C_3 + C_3C_{13}C_2 - (C_3^2C_9 + C_{13}C_8C_1 + C_{12}C_4C_2)]/C_{16}$

(23) $C_{21} = [C_1C_{10}C_{12} + C_5C_8C_3 + C_3C_{14}C_2 - (C_3^2C_{10} + C_{14}C_8C_1 + C_{12}C_5C_2)]/C_{16}$

(24) $C_{22} = [C_1C_{11}C_{12} + C_6C_8C_3 + C_3C_{15}C_2 - (C_3^2C_{11} + C_{15}C_8C_1 + C_{12}C_6C_2)]/C_{16}$

(25) $C_{23} = [C_1C_7C_{13} + C_2C_9C_3 + C_4C_8C_2 - (C_3C_7C_4 + C_8C_9C_1 + C_2^2C_{13})]/C_{16}$

(26) $C_{24} = [C_1C_7C_{14} + C_2C_{10}C_3 + C_5C_8C_2 - (C_3C_7C_5 + C_8C_{10}C_1 + C_2^2C_{14})]/C_{16}$

(27) $C_{25} = [C_1C_7C_{15} + C_2C_{11}C_3 + C_6C_8C_2 - (C_3C_7C_6 + C_8C_{11}C_1 + C_2^2C_{15})]/C_{16}$

(28) $C_{26} = -(C/4)^{1/4}$

(29) $C_{27} = C_{20} - C_{17} - 5/12 + C_{17}C_{26}$

(30) $C_{28} = C_{22} - C_{19} - 1/12 + C_{19}C_{26}$

(31) $C_{29} = -(C/4)^{1/2}$

(32) $C_{30} = -(C/4)^{3/4}$

(33) $C_{31} = 3A/2 - C_{17}C_{30}$

(34) $C_{32} = 1/2 - C_{19}C_{30}$

(35) $C_{33} = 0.5C_{26}C_{32} + C_{28}C_{31}C_{29} - (0.5C_{30}C_{28} + C_{32}C_{27}C_{29})$

(36) $C_{34} = 1/12 + C_{18} - C_{21} - C_{18}C_{26}$

(37) $C_{35} = -C_{18}(C/4)^{3/4}$

(38) $C_{36} = (C_{28}C_{35}C_{29} - C_{32}C_{34}C_{29})/C_{33}$

(39) $C_{37} = [0.5C_{26}C_{35} + C_{34}C_{31}C_{29} - (0.5C_{30}C_{34} + C_{35}C_{27}C_{29})]/C_{33}$

(40) $E_1 = C_{17}C_{36} + C_{18} + C_{19}C_{37}$

(41) $E_2 = C_{20}C_{36} + C_{21} + C_{22}C_{37}$

(42) $E_3 = C_{23}C_{36} + C_{24} + C_{25}C_{37}$

(43) $E_4 = 1/4 + C_{37}/12 + C_{36}/4 - E_3/5 - 3E_2/2 - E_1$

(44) $E_5 = E_1(1/2 + A/6) + E_2(1/4 + 11A/84) + E_3(1/70 + A/105)$

(45) $E_6 = E_5 - C_{36}\,(7/120 + A/36 + 3A/C) - 1/40 - A/72 - C_{37}(1/60 + A/120 + 1/C)$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

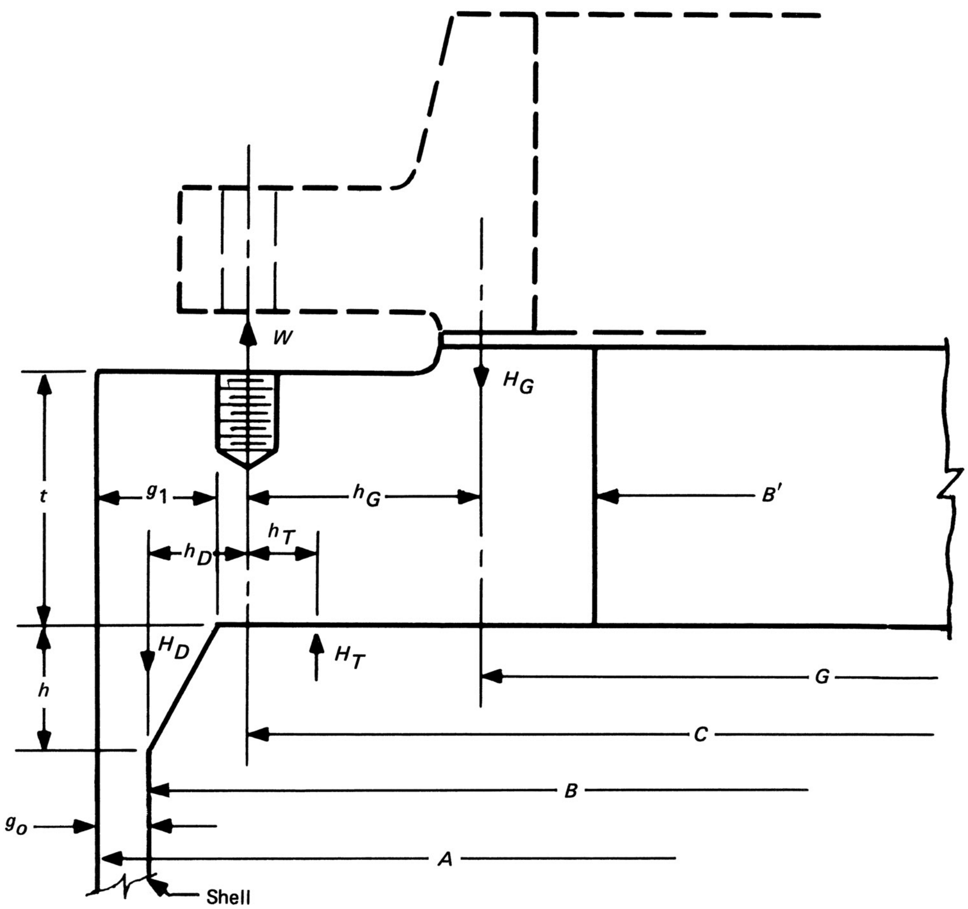


FIG. 2-13.1 REVERSE FLANGE

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

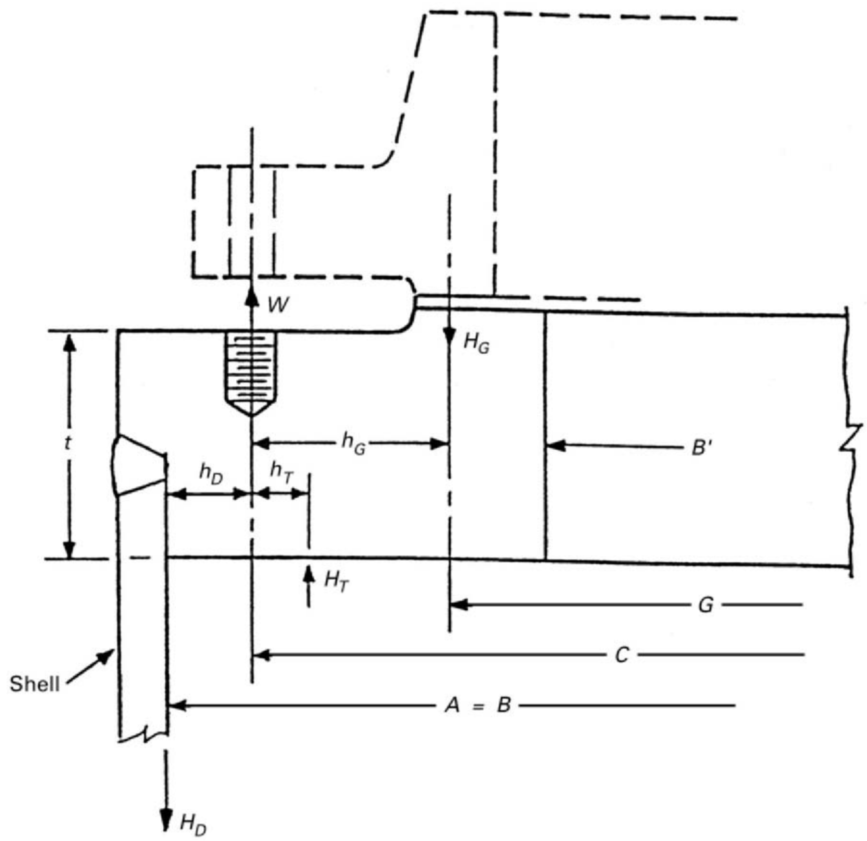


FIG. 2-13.2 LOOSE RING TYPE REVERSE FLANGE

(2) Stress at Inside Diameter B′

$$S_{T2} = (M_o / t^2 B') \left[Y - \frac{2K^2(1 + \frac{2}{3} te_r)}{(K^2 - 1)L_r} \right]$$

(d) For Loose Ring Type Reverse Flanges

$$S_T = YM_o/t^2B'$$

$$S_R = 0 \qquad S_H = 0$$

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 3
DEFINITIONS

3-1 INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains definitions of terms generally used in this Division. Definitions relating to specific applications, such as for layered vessels, may be found in related parts of this Division.

04 3-2 DEFINITION OF TERMS

acceptance by the Inspector — where words such as "acceptance by the Inspector" and/or "accepted by the Inspector" are used in this Division, they shall be understood to mean that the Inspector has reviewed a subject in accordance with his duties as required by the rules of this Division and after such review is able to sign the Certificate of Inspection for the applicable Manufacturer's Data Report Form. Such words do not imply assumption by the Inspector of any of the responsibilities of the Manufacturer.

ASME Designated Organization — an entity authorized by ASME to perform administrative functions on its behalf

ASME Designee — an individual authorized by ASME to perform administrative functions on its behalf as an ASME Designee. The ASME Designee performs reviews, surveys, audits, and examinations of organizations or persons holding or applying for accreditation or certification in accordance with the ASME code or standard.

basic material specification — a description of the identifying characteristics of a material (product form, ranges of composition, mechanical properties, methods of production, etc.) together with the sampling, testing, and examination procedures to be applied to production lots of such material to verify acceptable conformance to the intended characteristics

bolt — a threaded fastener with a head on one end

calculated test pressure — the requirements for determining the test pressure based on calculations are outlined in UG-99(c) for the hydrostatic test and in UG-100(b) for the pneumatic test. The basis for calculated test pressure in either of these paragraphs is the highest permissible internal pressure as determined by the design formulas, for each element of the vessel using nominal thicknesses with corrosion allowances included and using the allowable stress values given in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D for the temperature of the test.

certificate of compliance — a document by which the material manufacturer or supplier certifies that the material represented has been produced and tested in accordance with the requirements of the basic material specification shown on the certificate. Signatures are not required to appear on certificates of compliance. Objective evidence of compliance with the requirements of the material specification shall be maintained in the records of the material manufacturer or supplier.

clad vessel — a vessel made from a base material having a corrosion resistant material either integrally bonded or weld metal overlaid to the base of less resistant material

design pressure — the pressure used in the design of a vessel component together with the coincident design metal temperature, for the purpose of determining the minimum permissible thickness or physical characteristics of the different zones of the vessel. When applicable, static head shall be added to the design pressure to determine the thickness of any specific zone of the vessel (see UG-21).

design temperature — see UG-20

efficiency of a welded joint — the efficiency of a welded joint is expressed as a numerical (decimal) quantity and is used in the design of a joint as a multiplier of the appropriate allowable stress value taken from the applicable table in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D (see UW-12)

full vacuum (FV) — a condition where the internal absolute pressure is 0 psi (0 KPa) and the external absolute pressure on the vessel is 15 psi (100 KPa) (see UG-116)

joints — for the purpose of this Division, the following definitions are applicable:

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(a) *angle joint* — a joint between two members located in intersecting planes with an angle greater than 30 deg but less than 90 deg

(b) *butt joint* — a joint between two members located in intersecting planes between 0 deg and 30 deg, inclusive

(c) *corner joint* — a joint between two members located in intersecting planes at approximately 90 deg

layered vessel — a vessel having a shell and/or heads made up of two or more separate layers

lined vessel — a vessel having a corrosion resistant lining attached intermittently to the vessel wall

liquid penetrant examination (PT) — a method of nondestructive examination which provides for the detection of imperfections open to the surface in ferrous and nonferrous materials which are nonporous. Typical imperfections detectable by this method are cracks, seams, laps, cold shuts, and laminations.

magnetic particle examination (MT) — a method of detecting cracks and similar imperfections at or near the surface in iron and the magnetic alloys of steel. It consists of properly magnetizing the material and applying finely divided magnetic particles which form patterns indicating the imperfections.

material — any substance or product form which is covered by an SA, SB, or SFA material specification in Section II or any other material permitted by the Code

material manufacturer — the organization which performs or supervises and directly controls one or more of the operations which affect the material properties required by the basic material specification. The material manufacturer certifies the results of one or more of the tests, examinations, repairs, or treatments required by the basic material specification. When the specification permits certain specific requirements to be completed later, those incomplete items must be noted.

material supplier — the organization which supplies material furnished and certified by a material manufacturer, but which does not perform any operation intended to affect the material properties required by the basic material specification. The material supplier may perform and certify the results of tests, examinations, repairs, and treatments not performed by the material manufacturer.

Material Test Report — a document, or documents, on which are recorded the results of tests, examinations, repairs, or treatments required by the basic material specification to be reported. Supplementary or special requirements in addition to the requirements of the basic material specification may also be included on the Material Test Report. All such documents shall identify the applicable material specification and shall be identified to the material represented. When preparing a Material Test Report, a material manufacturer may transcribe data produced by other organizations provided he accepts responsibility for the accuracy and authenticity of the data and maintains a file containing the test report from the originator of the data. In such instances, the material manufacturer shall identify on the Material Test Report the source of the data and the location of the file containing the test report from the originator of the data. Signatures are not required to appear on Material Test Reports. A material supplier shall not transcribe data certified by a material manufacturer but shall furnish a copy of that certification, supplemented as necessary by additional documents which certify the results of tests, examinations, repairs, or treatments required by the basic material specification and performed by the material supplier.

maximum allowable stress value — the maximum unit stress permissible for any specified material that may be used in the design formulas given in this Division (see UG-23)

maximum allowable working pressure — the maximum gage pressure permissible at the top of a completed vessel in its normal operating position at the designated coincident temperature for that pressure. This pressure is the least of the values for the internal or external pressure to be determined by the rules of this Division for any of the pressure boundary parts, including the static head thereon, using nominal thicknesses exclusive of allowances for corrosion and considering the effects of any combination of loadings listed in UG-22 which are likely to occur (see UG-98) at the designated coincident temperature [see UG-20(a)]. It is the basis for the pressure setting of the pressure relieving devices protecting the vessel. The design pressure may be used in all cases in which calculations are not made to determine the value of the maximum allowable working pressure.

membrane stress — the component of normal stress which is uniformly distributed and equal to the average value of stress across the thickness of the section under consideration

normal operation — operation within the design limits for which the vessel has been stamped. [See UG-116(a).] Any coincident pressure and temperature during a specific operation are permissible, provided they do not constitute a more severe condition than that assumed in the design of the vessel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

operating or working temperature — the temperature that will be maintained in the metal of the part of the vessel being considered for the specified operation of the vessel (see UG-20 and UG-23)

operating pressure — the pressure at the top of a vessel at which it normally operates. It shall not exceed the maximum allowable working pressure, and it is usually kept at a suitable level below the setting of the pressure relieving devices to prevent their frequent opening (see M-9).

porosity — gas pockets or voids in metal

primary stress — a stress developed by the imposed loading which is necessary to satisfy the simple laws of equilibrium of external and internal forces and moments. Primary stress can be either membrane or bending stress.

Primary membrane stress may be of two types: general and local. A general primary membrane stress is one which is so distributed in the structure that no redistribution of load occurs as a result of yielding. A local primary membrane stress is one which is produced by pressure or other mechanical loading and which is associated with a primary and/or discontinuity effect.

Examples of primary stress are:

(a) general membrane stress in a circular cylinder or a spherical shell due to internal pressure or to distributed loads;

(b) bending stress in the central portion of a flat head due to pressure.

radiographic examination (RT) — a method of detecting imperfections in materials by passing X-ray or nuclear radiation through the material and presenting their image on a recording medium

safety valve set pressure — See ASME PTC 25

stationary pressure vessel — a pressure vessel to be installed and operated as a fixed geographical location

stud — a threaded fastener without a head, with threads on one end or both ends, or threaded full length

thickness of vessel wall

(a) design thickness — the sum of the required thickness and the corrosion allowance (see UG-25)

(b) required thickness — that computed by the formulas in this Division before corrosion allowance is added (see UG-22)

(c) nominal thickness — except as defined in UW-40(f) and modified in UW-11(g), the nominal thickness is the thickness selected as commercially available, and supplied to the Manufacturer. For plate material, the nominal thickness shall be, at the Manufacturer's option, either the thickness shown on the Material Test Report {or material Certificate of Compliance [UG-93(a)(1)]} before forming, or the measured thickness of the plate at the joint or location under consideration.

ultrasonic examination (UT) — a method for detecting imperfections in materials by passing ultrasonic vibrations (frequencies normally 1 MHz to 5 MHz) through the material

vessel Manufacturer — any Manufacturer who constructs an item such as a pressure vessel, vessel component, or part in accordance with rules of this Division and who holds an ASME Certificate of Authorization to apply the Code Symbol Stamp to such an item

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 4
ROUNDED INDICATIONS CHARTS ACCEPTANCE STANDARD FOR RADIOGRAPHICALLY DETERMINED ROUNDED INDICATIONS IN WELDS

4-1 APPLICABILITY OF THESE STANDARDS

These standards are applicable to ferritic, austenitic, and nonferrous materials.

4-2 TERMINOLOGY

(a) Rounded Indications. Indications with a maximum length of three times the width or less on the radiograph are defined as rounded indications. These indications may be circular, elliptical, conical, or irregular in shape and may have tails. When evaluating the size of an indication, the tail shall be included. The indication may be from any imperfection in the weld, such as porosity, slag, or tungsten.

(b) Aligned Indications. A sequence of four or more rounded indications shall be considered to be aligned when they touch a line parallel to the length of the weld drawn through the center of the two outer rounded indications.

(c) Thickness t. t is the thickness of the weld, excluding any allowable reinforcement. For a butt weld joining two members having different thicknesses at the weld, t is the thinner of these two thicknesses. If a full penetration weld includes a fillet weld, the thickness of the throat of the fillet shall be included in t.

4-3 ACCEPTANCE CRITERIA

(a) Image Density. Density within the image of the indication may vary and is not a criterion for acceptance or rejection.

(b) Relevant Indications. (See Table 4-1 for examples.) Only those rounded indications which exceed the following dimensions shall be considered relevant.

(1) $\frac{1}{10}t$ for t less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm)

(2) $\frac{1}{64}$ in. for t from $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (3 mm to 6 mm), incl.

(3) $\frac{1}{32}$ in. for t greater than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. to 2 in. (6 mm to 50 mm), incl.

(4) $\frac{1}{16}$ in. for t greater than 2 in. (50 mm)

(c) Maximum Size of Rounded Indication. (See Table 4-1 for examples.) The maximum permissible size of any indication shall be $\frac{1}{4}t$, or $\frac{5}{32}$ in. (4 mm), whichever is smaller; except that an isolated indication separated from an adjacent indication by 1 in. (25 mm) or more may be $\frac{1}{3}t$, or $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm), whichever is less. For t greater than 2 in. (50 mm) the maximum permissible size of an isolated indication shall be increased to $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (10 mm).

(d) Aligned Rounded Indications. Aligned rounded indications are acceptable when the summation of the diameters of the indications is less than t in a length of $12t$. See Fig. 4-1. The length of groups of aligned rounded indications and the spacing between the groups shall meet the requirements of Fig. 4-2.

(e) Spacing. The distance between adjacent rounded indications is not a factor in determining acceptance or rejection, except as required for isolated indications or groups of aligned indications.

(f) Rounded Indication Charts. The rounded indications characterized as imperfections shall not exceed that shown in the charts. The charts in Figs. 4-3 through 4-8 illustrate various types of assorted, randomly dispersed and clustered rounded indications for different weld thicknesses greater than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm). These charts represent the maximum acceptable concentration limits for rounded indications. The charts for each thickness range represent full-scale 6 in. (150 mm) radiographs, and shall not be enlarged or reduced. The distributions shown are not necessarily the patterns that may appear on the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 4-1[1]

Customary Units

Thickness t, in.	Maximum Size of Acceptable Rounded Indication, in. — Random	Maximum Size of Acceptable Rounded Indication, in. — Isolated	Maximum Size of Nonrelevant Indication, in.
Less than $\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}t$	$\frac{1}{3}t$	$\frac{1}{10}t$
$\frac{1}{8}$	0.031	0.042	0.015
$\frac{3}{16}$	0.047	0.063	0.015
$\frac{1}{4}$	0.063	0.083	0.015
$\frac{5}{16}$	0.078	0.104	0.031
$\frac{3}{8}$	0.091	0.125	0.031
$\frac{7}{16}$	0.109	0.146	0.031
$\frac{1}{2}$	0.125	0.168	0.031
$\frac{9}{16}$	0.142	0.188	0.031
$\frac{5}{8}$	0.156	0.210	0.031
$\frac{11}{16}$	0.156	0.230	0.031
$\frac{3}{4}$ to 2, incl.	0.156	0.250	0.031
Over 2	0.156	0.375	0.063

SI Units

Thickness t, mm	Maximum Size of Acceptable Rounded Indication, mm — Random	Maximum Size of Acceptable Rounded Indication, mm — Isolated	Maximum Size of Nonrelevant Indication, mm
Less than 3	$\frac{1}{4}t$	$\frac{1}{3}t$	$\frac{1}{10}t$
3	0.79	1.07	0.38
5	1.19	1.60	0.38
6	1.60	2.11	0.38
8	1.98	2.64	0.79
10	2.31	3.18	0.79
11	2.77	3.71	0.79
13	3.18	4.27	0.79
14	3.61	4.78	0.79
16	3.96	5.33	0.79
17	3.96	5.84	0.79
19.0 to 50, incl.	3.96	6.35	0.79
Over 50	3.96	9.53	1.60

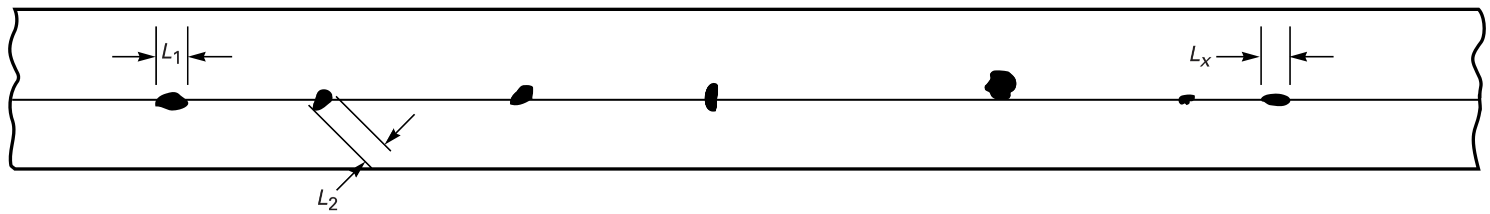
NOTE:
(1) This Table contains examples only.

radiograph, but are typical of the concentration and size of indications permitted.

(g) Weld Thickness t less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm). For t less than $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) the maximum number of rounded indications shall not exceed 12 in a 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld. A proportionally fewer number of indications shall be permitted in welds less than 6 in. (150 mm) in length.

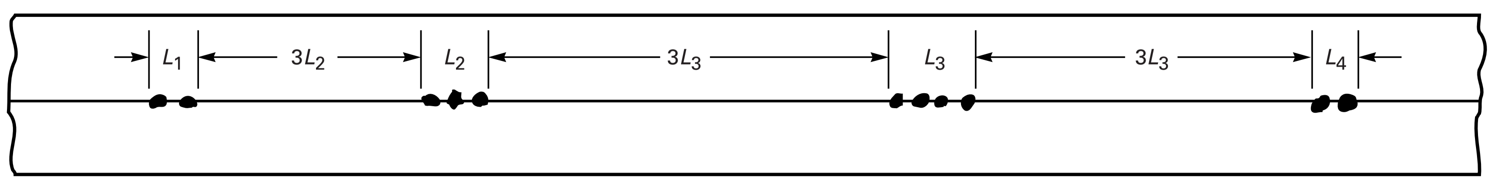
(h) Clustered Indications. The illustrations for clustered indications show up to four times as many indications in a local area, as that shown in the illustrations for random indications. The length of an acceptable cluster shall not exceed the lesser of 1 in. (25 mm) or $2t$. Where more than one cluster is present, the sum of the lengths of the clusters shall not exceed 1 in. (25 mm) in a 6 in. (150 mm) length weld.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: Sum of L_1 to L_x shall be less than t in a length of $12t$.

FIG. 4-1 ALIGNED ROUNDED INDICATIONS

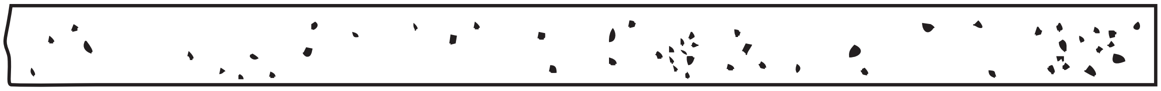


GENERAL NOTE: Sum of the group lengths shall be less than t in a length of $12t$.

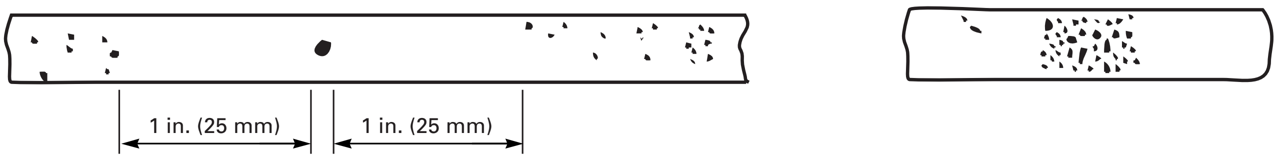
Maximum Group Length	Minimum Group Spacing
L = 1/4 in. (6 mm) for t less than 3/4 in. (19 mm) L = 1/3t for t 3/4 in. (19 mm) to 2 1/4 in. (57 mm) L = 3/4 in. (19 mm) for t greater than 2 1/4 in. (57 mm)	$3L$ where L is the length of the longest adjacent group being evaluated.

FIG. 4-2 GROUPS OF ALIGNED ROUNDED INDICATIONS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Random Rounded Indications [See Note (1)]

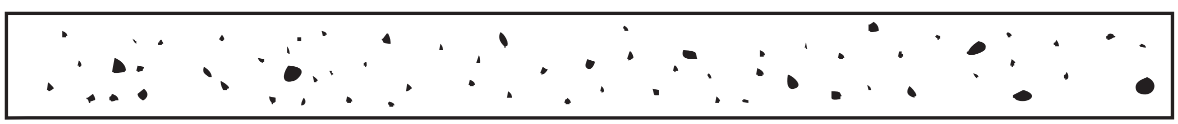


(b) Isolated Indication [See Note (2)]

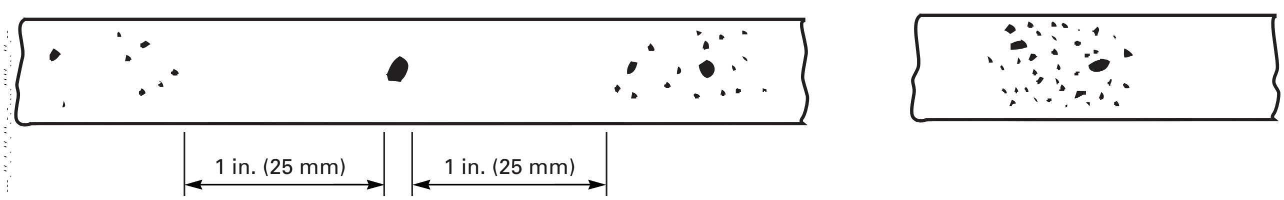
(c) Cluster

NOTES:
(1) Typical concentration and size permitted in any 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld.
(2) Maximum size per Table 4-1.

FIG. 4-3 CHARTS FOR t EQUAL TO $\frac{1}{8}$ in. to $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (3 mm to 6 mm), INCLUSIVE



(a) Random Rounded Indications [See Note (1)]



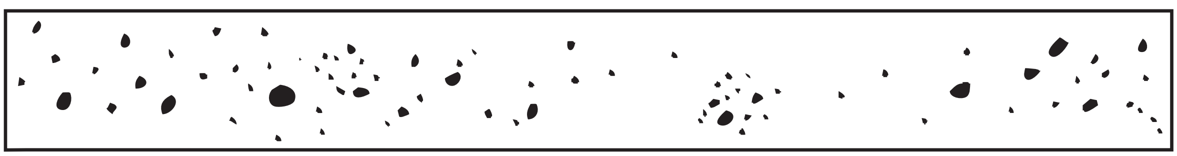
(b) Isolated Indication [See Note (2)]

(c) Cluster

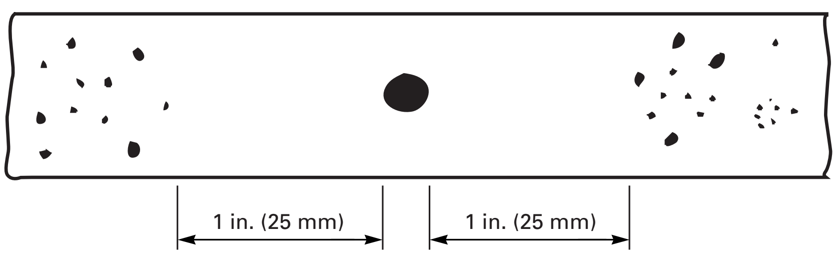
NOTES:
(1) Typical concentration and size permitted in any 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld.
(2) Maximum size per Table 4-1.

FIG. 4-4 CHARTS FOR t OVER $\frac{1}{4}$ in. to $\frac{3}{8}$ in. (6 mm to 10 mm), INCLUSIVE

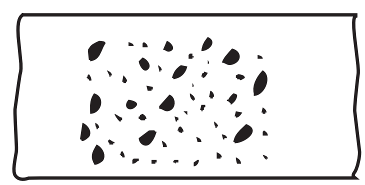
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Random Rounded Indications [See Note (1)]



(b) Isolated Indication [See Note (2)]



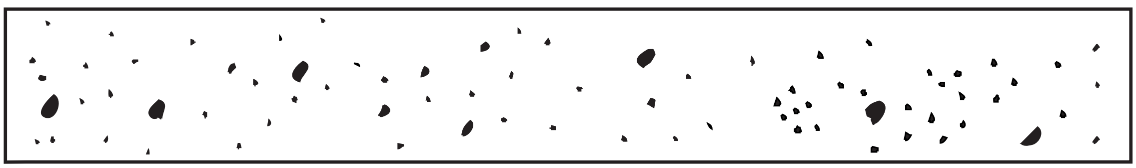
(c) Cluster

NOTES:
(1) Typical concentration and size permitted in any 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld.
(2) Maximum size per Table 4-1.

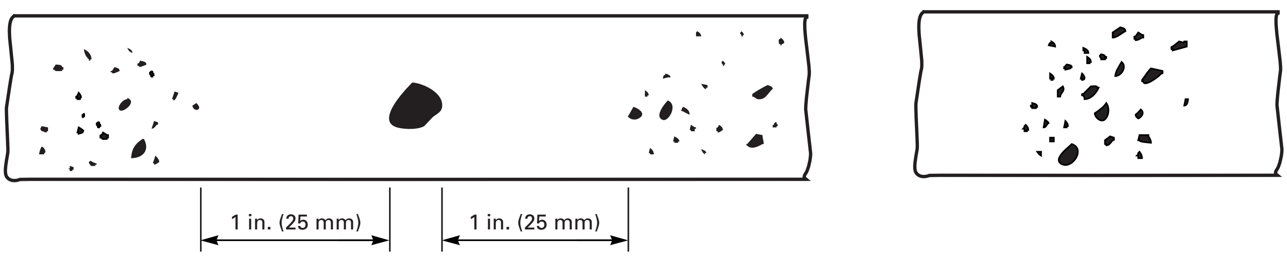
FIG. 4-5 CHARTS FOR t OVER $\frac{3}{8}$ in. to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (10 mm to 19 mm), INCLUSIVE

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Random Rounded Indications [See Note (1)]



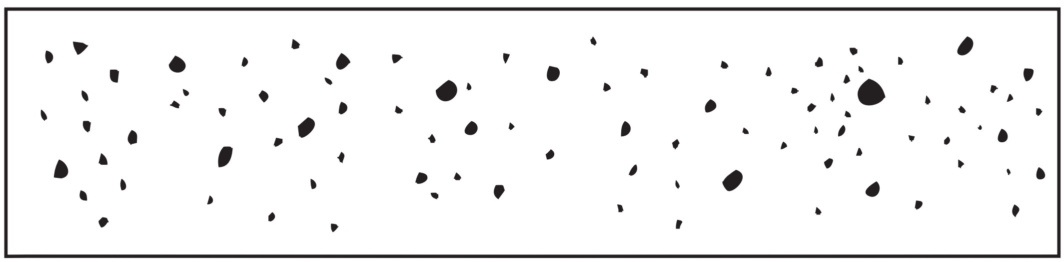
(b) Isolated Indication [See Note (2)]

(c) Cluster

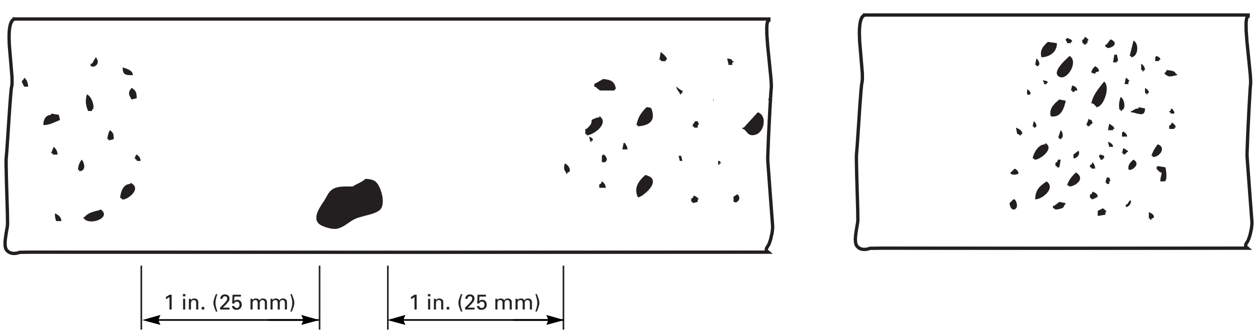
NOTES:
(1) Typical concentration and size permitted in any 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld.
(2) Maximum size per Table 4-1.

FIG. 4-6 CHARTS FOR t OVER $^3/_4$ in. to 2 in. (19 mm to 50 mm), INCLUSIVE

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Random Rounded Indications [See Note (1)]



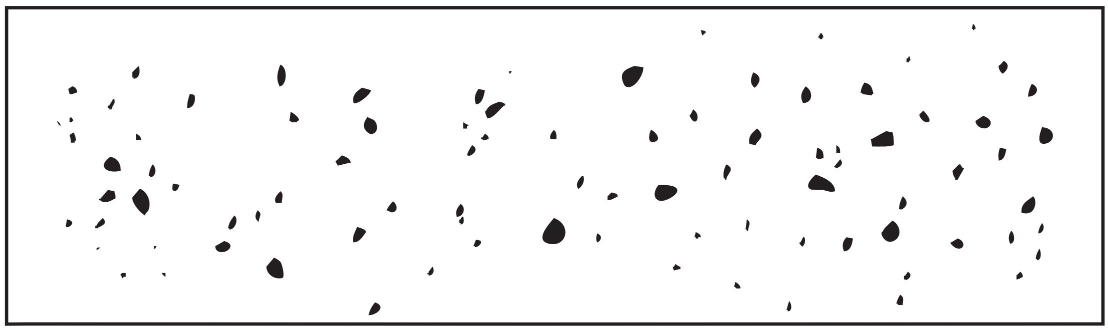
(b) Isolated Indication [See Note (2)]

(c) Cluster

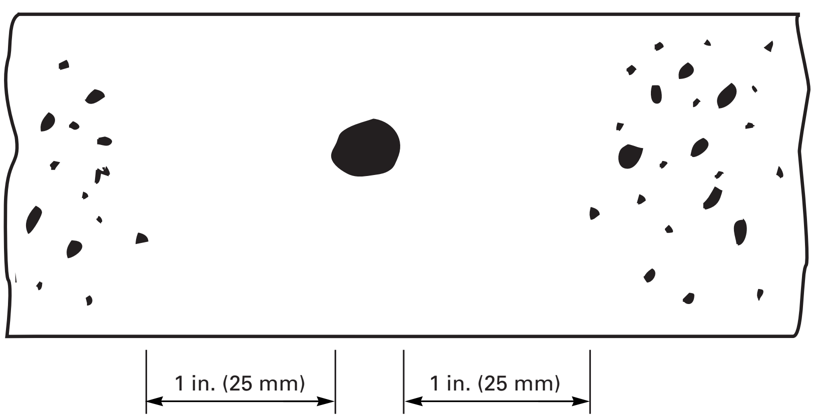
NOTES:
(1) Typical concentration and size permitted in any 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld.
(2) Maximum size per Table 4-1.

FIG. 4-7 CHARTS FOR t OVER 2 in. to 4 in. (50 mm to 100 mm), INCLUSIVE

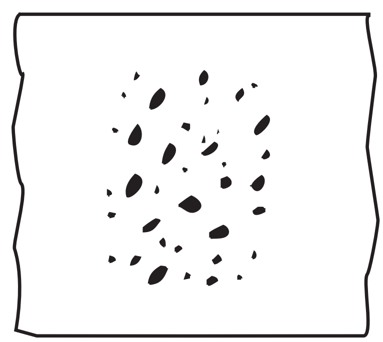
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(a) Random Rounded Indications [See Note (1)]



(b) Isolated Indication [See Note (2)]



(c) Cluster

NOTES:
(1) Typical concentration and size permitted in any 6 in. (150 mm) length of weld.
(2) Maximum size per Table 4-1.

FIG. 4-8 CHARTS FOR t OVER 4 in. (100 mm)

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 5
FLANGED AND FLUED OR FLANGED ONLY EXPANSION JOINTS

04 5-1 GENERAL

5-1(a) Flanged and flued or flanged only expansion joints used as an integral part of heat exchangers or other pressure vessels shall be designed to provide flexibility for thermal expansions and also function as pressure containing elements. The rules in this Appendix are intended to apply to typical single layer flanged and flued or flanged only elements shown in Fig. 5-1. They are limited to applications involving only axial deflections.

The suitability of the expansion joint for the specified design, pressure, and temperature shall be determined by methods described in this Appendix.

5-1(b) In all vessels with expansion joints, the hydrostatic end force caused by pressure and/or the joint spring force shall be contained by adequate restraining elements (i.e., tube bundle, tubesheets or shell, external bolting, anchors, etc.). The average primary membrane stress [see UG-23(c)] in these restraining elements shall not exceed the maximum allowable stress at the design temperature for the material given in the tables given in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D.

5-1(c) Joint flexible elements shall not be extended, compressed, rotated, or laterally offset to accommodate connecting parts which are not properly aligned, unless such movements have been accounted for in the design under the provisions of U-2(g).

5-1(d) The rules of this Appendix do not address cyclic loading conditions. As such, this Appendix does not require a cyclic life determination. The User is cautioned that the design of some expansion joints (especially flanged-only joints) may not be governed by cyclic loading. If cyclic loading [see UG-22(e)] is specified for a vessel containing the expansion joint, see U-2(g).

5-1(e) This Division does not contain rules to cover all details of design and construction of expansion joints. The criteria in this Appendix are therefore established to cover most common forms of flanged and flued or flanged only expansion joints, but it is not intended to limit configuration or details to those illustrated or otherwise described herein. For designs which differ from the basic concepts of this Appendix (e.g., multilayer, asymmetric geometries or loadings, etc.), the design requirements of U-2(g) apply.

5-2 MATERIALS

Materials for pressure retaining components shall conform to the requirements of UG-4. For carbon and low alloy steels, minimum thickness exclusive of corrosion allowance shall be 0.125 in. (3 mm) for all pressure containing parts. The minimum thickness for high alloy steel shall conform to requirements of UG-16.

5-3 DESIGN 04

The design of expansion joints shall conform to the requirements of Part UG and those of (a) through (f) below.

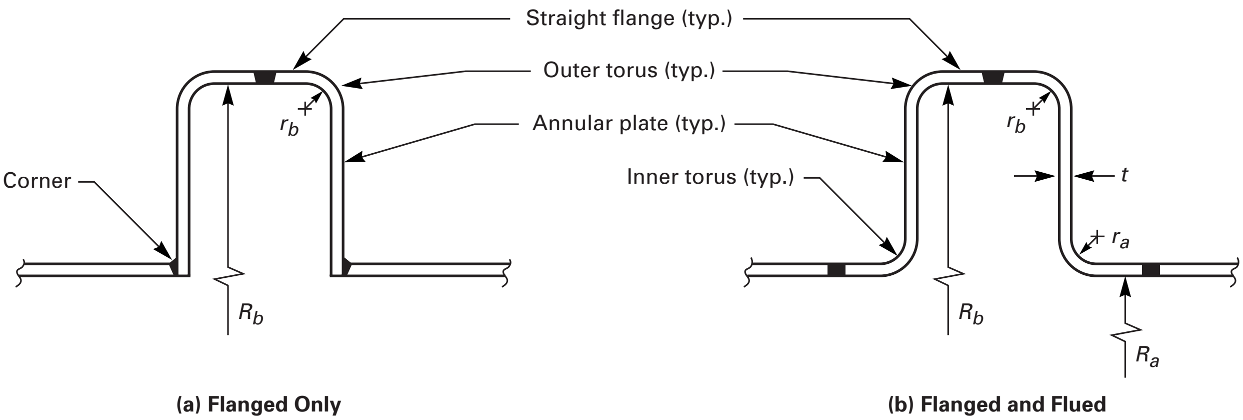
5-3(a) The design of expansion joint flexible elements shall satisfy, in both the corroded and noncorroded condition, the following combinations of maximum stress components and corresponding stress limits [see (b) below].

5-3(a)(1) Pressure Loadings Only. The maximum stress at any location within the joint shall be limited to 1.5S [where S is the maximum allowable stress value (see UG-23) for the joint material], except as provided below. The references to maximum stress do not include any effect of stress concentrations.

(a) For tubular heat exchangers, considering tube side pressure, the stresses may be evaluated only in accordance with provisions of (a)(2) below if the restraining elements are not dependent on the stiffness of the expansion joint in order to satisfy the stress requirements of 5-1(b).

(b) For tubular heat exchangers, considering shell side pressure, when the restraining elements are not dependent on the stiffness of the expansion joint in order to satisfy the stress requirements of 5-1(b):

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: r_a, $r_b \geq 3t$.

R_a, R_b = inside radius of expansion joint straight flange)
t = uncorroded thickness of expansion joint straight flange

FIG. 5-1 TYPICAL FLANGED AND FLUED OR FLANGED ONLY FLEXIBLE ELEMENTS

(1) the maximum membrane plus bending stress in the annular plates or straight flanges (see Fig. 5-1) shall be limited to 1.5S;

(2) the maximum membrane stress in the corners and torus (radius portion of the flange or flue, see Fig. 5-1) shall be limited to 1.5S;

(3)(a) the maximum membrane plus bending stress in the corners and torus shall be limited to 1.5S except as provided in (3)(b) below;

(3)(b) the maximum membrane plus bending stress in the corners and torus shall be limited to S_{PS} [see UG-23(e)], provided it is demonstrated that rotational stiffness at the corners and torus is not needed to maintain the maximum stress in the annular plates or straight flanges equal to or less than 1.5S.

5-3(a)(2) Pressure Plus Axial Deflection (Pressure or Thermally Induced) Loadings. Considering the most severe combination of pressure(s) and axial deflection, the maximum stress (not including any effects of stress concentration) at any location in the joint shall be limited to S_{PS} [see UG-23(e)].

5-3(b) The calculation of the individual stress components in (a) above and their combination shall be performed by any method of stress analysis which can be shown to be applicable to expansion joints.

5-3(c) The knuckle radius r_a or r_b of any formed element shall not be less than three times the element thickness t as shown in Fig. 5-1.

5-3(d) The spring rate of the expansion joint assembly may be determined either by calculation or by testing.

5-3(e) Thinning of any flexible element as a result of forming operations shall be considered in the design and specifications of material thickness.

5-3(f) Extended straight flanges between the inner and outer torus of flexible elements are permissible. Extended straight flanges with lengths in excess of 0.5 $\sqrt{Rt}$ shall satisfy all the requirements of UG-27 where

t = uncorroded thickness of expansion joint straight flange
R = inside radius of expansion joint straight flange at the point of consideration
= R_a or R_b

5-4 FABRICATION

The following requirements shall be met in the fabrication of expansion joint flexible elements.

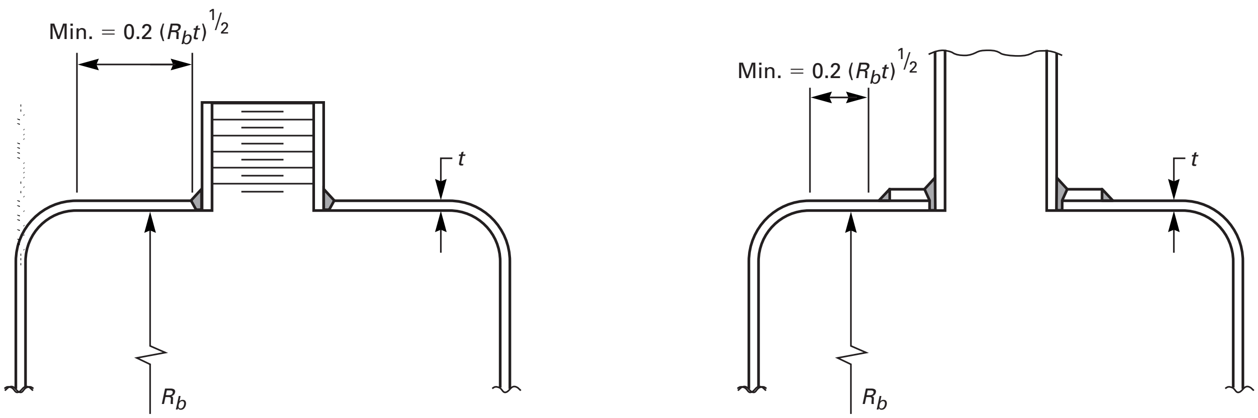
5-4(a) All welded joints shall comply with requirements of UW-26 through UW-36.

5-4(b) All longitudinal and circumferential weld seams shall be full penetration welds, Type (1) of Table UW-12.

5-4(c) Longitudinal welds shall be ground flush and smooth on both the inside and outside surfaces prior to being formed into expansion elements.

5-4(d) Other than the shell attachment welds and flange welds, no circumferential welds are permitted in the fabrication of the flexible elements, i.e., inner torus, annular plate, and outer torus, unless the welds are ground flush and fully radiographed.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



(a) Nonreinforced Nozzle **(b) Reinforced Nozzle**

R_b = inside radius of expansion joint straight flange
t = uncorroded thickness of expansion joint straight flange

FIG. 5-2 TYPICAL NOZZLE ATTACHMENT DETAILS SHOWING MINIMUM LENGTH OF STRAIGHT FLANGE

5-4(e) Flexible elements shall be attached by full penetration circumferential welds.

5-4(f) Nozzles, backing strips, clips, or other attachments shall not be located in highly stressed areas of the expansion joint, i.e., inner torus, annular plate, and outer torus. Nozzles or other attachments located in the outer straight flange shall satisfy the axial spacing requirements of Fig. 5-2.

5-4(g) Alignment tolerances of the completed expansion joint attached to the shell shall meet the tolerances specified by UW-33.

5-5 INSPECTION AND TESTS

5-5(a) All expansion joint flexible elements shall be visually examined and found to be free of unacceptable imperfections, such as notches, crevices, weld spatter, etc., which may serve as points of local stress concentration. Suspect surface areas shall be further examined by liquid penetrant or magnetic particle examination.

5-5(b) Longitudinal welds shall be fully radiographed in accordance with UW-51. All full penetration butt type welds shall be examined 100% on both sides by the liquid penetrant or magnetic particle methods after forming.

5-5(c) The circumferential attachment welds between the expansion joint and shell shall be examined 100% on both sides by liquid penetrant or magnetic particle examination.

5-5(d) The completed expansion joint shall be subjected to a pressure test in accordance with UG-99. The pressure testing of an expansion joint may be performed as a part of the final vessel hydrostatic pressure test provided the joint is accessible for inspection during pressure testing.

5-5(e) Expansion joint restraining elements [see Fig. 5-1 sketch (b)] shall also be pressure tested in accordance with UG-99 as a part of the initial expansion joint pressure test or as a part of the final vessel hydrostatic pressure test after installation of the joint.

5-5(f) In addition to inspecting the expansion joint for leaks during the pressure test, flanged and flued or flanged only expansion joints shall be inspected before, during, and after the pressure test for visible permanent distortion.

5-6 MARKING AND REPORTS 04

The expansion joint Manufacturer, whether the vessel Manufacturer or a parts Manufacturer, shall have a valid ASME Code U Certificate of Authorization and shall complete the appropriate Data Report in accordance with UG-120.

5-6(a) The Manufacturer responsible for the expansion joint design shall include the following additional data and statements on the appropriate Data Report:

5-6(a)(1) uncorroded and corroded spring rate

5-6(a)(2) axial movement (+ and −) and associated loading condition, if applicable

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

5-6(a)(3) that the expansion joint has been constructed to the rules of this Appendix

5-6(b) A parts Manufacturer shall identify the vessel for which the expansion joint is intended on the Partial Data Report.

5-6(c) Markings shall not be stamped on the flexible elements of the expansion joint.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 6
METHODS FOR
MAGNETIC PARTICLE EXAMINATION (MT)

6-1 SCOPE

(a) This Appendix provides for procedures which shall be followed whenever magnetic particle examination is specified in this Division.

(b) Article 7 of Section V shall be applied for the detail requirements in methods and procedures, and the additional requirements specified within this Appendix.

(c) Magnetic particle examination shall be performed in accordance with a written procedure, certified by the Manufacturer to be in accordance with the requirements of T-150 of Section V.

6-2 CERTIFICATION OF COMPETENCY FOR NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION PERSONNEL

The manufacturer shall certify that each magnetic particle examiner meets the following requirements.

(a) He has vision, with correction if necessary, to enable him to read a Jaeger Type No. 2 Standard Chart at a distance of not less than 12 in., and is capable of distinguishing and differentiating contrast between colors used. These requirements shall be checked annually.

(b) He is competent in the techniques of the magnetic particle examination method for which he is certified, including making the examination and interpreting and evaluating the results, except that where the examination method consists of more than one operation, he may be certified as being qualified only for one or more of these operations.

6-3 EVALUATION OF INDICATIONS

Indications will be revealed by retention of magnetic particles. All such indications are not necessarily imperfections, however, since excessive surface roughness, magnetic permeability variations (such as at the edge of heat affected zones), etc., may produce similar indications.

An indication of an imperfection may be larger than the imperfection that causes it; however, the size of the indication is the basis for acceptance evaluation. Only indications which have any dimension greater than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) shall be considered relevant.

(a) A linear indication is one having a length greater than three times the width.

(b) A rounded indication is one of circular or elliptical shape with a length equal to or less than three times its width.

(c) Any questionable or doubtful indications shall be reexamined to determine whether or not they are relevant.

6-4 ACCEPTANCE STANDARDS

These acceptance standards shall apply unless other more restrictive standards are specified for specific materials or applications within this Division.

All surfaces to be examined shall be free of:

(a) relevant linear indications;

(b) relevant rounded indications greater than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm);

(c) four or more relevant rounded indications in a line separated by $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) or less, edge to edge.

6-5 REPAIR REQUIREMENTS

The defect shall be removed or reduced to an imperfection of acceptable size. Whenever an imperfection is removed by chipping or grinding and subsequent repair by welding is not required, the excavated area shall be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid sharp notches, crevices, or corners. Where welding is required after removal of an imperfection, the area shall be cleaned and welding performed in accordance with a qualified welding procedure.

(a) Treatment of Indications Believed Nonrelevant. Any indication which is believed to be nonrelevant shall be regarded as an imperfection unless it is shown by

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

reexamination by the same method or by the use of other nondestructive methods and/or by surface conditioning that no unacceptable imperfection is present.

(b) Examination of Areas From Which Imperfections Have Been Removed. After a defect is thought to have been removed and prior to making weld repairs, the area shall be examined by suitable methods to ensure it has been removed or reduced to an acceptably sized imperfection.

(c) Reexamination of Repair Areas. After repairs have been made, the repaired area shall be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid sharp notches, crevices, or corners and reexamined by the magnetic particle method and by all other methods of examination that were originally required for the affected area, except that, when the depth of repair is less than the radiographic sensitivity required, reradiography may be omitted.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 7
EXAMINATION OF STEEL CASTINGS

7-1 SCOPE

This Appendix covers examination requirements which shall be observed for all steel castings to which a 100% quality factor is to be applied in accordance with UG-24(a)(5). Except for applications involving lethal service, steel castings made to an accepted standard, such as ASME/ANSI B16.5, are not required to comply with the provisions of this Appendix.

7-2 EXAMINATION TECHNIQUES

Examination techniques shall be carried out in accordance with the following.

(a) Magnetic particle examinations shall be per Appendix 6 except that acceptance standards shall be as given in 7-3(a)(3) of this Appendix.

(b) Liquid penetrant examinations shall be per Appendix 8 except that acceptance standards shall be as given in 7-3(a)(4) of this Appendix.

(c) Radiographic examinations shall be per Article 2 of Section V with acceptance standards as given in 7-3(a)(1) or 7-3(b)(3) of this Appendix.

(1) A written radiographic examination procedure is not required. Demonstration of density and penetrameter image requirements on production or technique radiographs shall be considered satisfactory evidence of compliance with Article 2.

(2) The requirements of T-285 of Article 2 of Section V are to be used only as a guide. Final acceptance of radiographs shall be based on the ability to see the prescribed penetrameter image and the specified hole or the designated wire or a wire penetrameter.

(d) Ultrasonic examinations shall be per Article 5 of Section V with acceptance standards as given in 7-3(b)(3) of this Appendix.

7-3 EXAMINATION REQUIREMENTS

All steel castings shall be examined in accordance with (a) or (b) as applicable.

(a) All castings having a maximum body thickness less than $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. (115 mm) shall be examined as follows.

(1) All critical sections[1] shall be radiographed. For castings having radiographed thicknesses up to 2 in. (51 mm), the radiographs shall be compared to those in ASTM E 446, Standard Reference Radiographs For Steel Castings Up To 2 in. (51 mm) in Thickness. The maximum acceptable severity levels for imperfections shall be as follows:

Imperfection Category	Maximum Severity Level: Thicknesses <1 in.	Maximum Severity Level: Thicknesses 1 in. to <2 in.
A — Gas porosity	1	2
B — Sand and slag	2	3
C — Shrinkage (four types)	1	3
D — Cracks	0	0
E — Hot tears	0	0
F — Inserts	0	0
G — Mottling	0	0

For castings having radiographed thicknesses from 2 in. to $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. (51 mm to 114 mm), the radiographs shall be compared to those in ASTM E 186, Standard Reference Radiographs for Heavy-Walled [2 to $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. (51 mm to 114 mm)] Steel Castings. The maximum acceptable severity levels for imperfections shall be as follows:

Imperfection Category	Maximum Severity Level
A — Gas porosity	2
B — Sand and slag inclusions	2
C — Shrinkage	
Type 1	1
Type 2	2
Type 3	3
D — Cracks	0
E — Hot tear	0
F — Inserts	0

(2) All surfaces including machined gasket seating

[1] Critical sections: For static castings, the sections where imperfections are usually encountered are abrupt changes in section and at the junctions of risers, gates, or feeders to the casting. For centrifugal castings, *critical sections* shall be interpreted to be any abrupt changes of section, the circumference for a distance of at least 3 in. (75 mm) from each end, and one additional circumferential band at least 3 in. (75 mm) wide and including the area of the most severe indication detected by other examination methods.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

surfaces shall be examined by the magnetic particle or the liquid penetrant method. When the casting specification requires heat treatment, these examinations shall be conducted after that heat treatment.

(3) Surface indications determined by magnetic particle examination shall be compared with those indicated in ASTM E 125, Standard Reference Photographs for Magnetic Particle Indications on Ferrous Castings, and shall be removed if they exceed the following limits:

Type	Degree
I. Linear discontinuities (hot tears and cracks)	All
II. Shrinkage	2
III. Inclusions	3
IV. Chills and chaplets	1
V. Porosity	1

(4) Surface indications determined by liquid penetrant examination are unacceptable if they exceed the following limits:

(a) all cracks and hot tears;

(b) any group of more than six linear indications other than those in (a) above in any rectangular area of $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. × 6 in. (38 mm × 150 mm) or less or any circular area having a diameter of $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. (88 mm) or less, these areas being taken in the most unfavorable location relative to the indications being evaluated;

(c) other linear indications more than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) long for thicknesses up to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) inclusive, more than one-third of the thickness in length for thicknesses from $\frac{3}{4}$ in. to $2\frac{1}{4}$ in. (19 mm to 57 mm), and more than $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) long for thicknesses over $2\frac{1}{4}$ in. (57 mm) (aligned acceptable imperfections separated from one another by a distance equal to the length of the longer imperfection are acceptable);

(d) all indications of nonlinear imperfections which have any dimension exceeding $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm).

(5) When more than one casting of a particular design is produced, each of the first five shall be examined to the full extent prescribed herein. When more than five castings are being produced, examinations as prescribed shall be performed on the first five and on one additional casting for each additional five castings produced. If any of these additional castings proves to be unacceptable, each of the remaining four castings of that group shall be examined fully.

(b) All castings having maximum body thickness $4\frac{1}{2}$ in. (114 mm) and greater and castings of lesser thickness which are intended for severe service applications[2] shall be examined as follows.

(1) Each casting shall be subjected to 100% visual examination and to complete surface examination by either the magnetic particle or the liquid penetrant method. When the casting specification requires heat treatment, these examinations shall be conducted after that heat treatment. Acceptability limits for surface imperfections shall be as given in (a)(3) and (4) above.

(2) All parts of castings up to 12 in. (300 mm) in thickness shall be subjected to radiographic examination and the radiographs compared to those given in ASTM E 280, Standard Reference Radiographs For Heavy-Walled [$4\frac{1}{2}$ to 12 in. (114 mm to 300 mm)] Steel Castings. The maximum acceptable severity levels for imperfections shall be as follows:

Imperfection Category	Maximum Severity Level
A — Gas porosity	2
B — Sand and slag inclusions	2
C — Shrinkage	
Type 1	2
Type 2	2
Type 3	2
D — Cracks	0
E — Hot tears	0
F — Inserts	0

(3) For castings having a maximum thickness in excess of 12 in. (300 mm), all thicknesses which are less than 12 in. (300 mm) shall be examined radiographically in accordance with the preceding paragraph. All parts of such castings having thicknesses in excess of 12 in. (300 mm) shall be examined ultrasonically in accordance with Article 5 of Section V. Any imperfections which do not produce indications exceeding 20% of the straight beam back reflection or do not reduce the height of the back reflection by more than 30% during a total movement of the transducer of 2 in. (50 mm) in any direction shall be considered acceptable. Imperfections exceeding these limits shall be repaired unless proved to be acceptable by other examination methods.

7-4 REPAIRS

(a) Whenever an imperfection is repaired, the excavated areas shall be examined by the magnetic particle

[2] The Code as currently written provides minimum requirements for construction and it is recognized to be the responsibility of the designing engineer to determine when the intended service is of a nature that requires supplementary requirements to ensure safety; consequently, the designer should determine when the service warrants that this class of inspection be specified for steel castings of less than 4 in. (100 mm) nominal body thickness.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

or liquid penetrant method to ensure it has been removed or reduced to an acceptable size.

(b) Whenever a surface imperfection is repaired by removing less than 5% of the intended thickness of metal at that location, welding need not be employed in making repairs. Where this is the case, the excavated area shall be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid any sharp contours.

(c) Castings of nonweldable materials which contain imperfections in excess of acceptable limits as given in 7-3 shall be rejected.

(d) For any type of defect, if the repair will entail removal of more than 75% of the thickness or a length in any direction of 6 in. (150 mm) or more, approval of the purchaser of the casting shall be obtained prior to making repairs.

(e) The finished surface of all repair welds shall be examined by the magnetic particle or liquid penetrant method. When subsequent heat treatment is required, this examination of the repaired area shall be conducted after heat treatment.

(f)(1) Except as provided in (2) and (3) below, all weld repairs shall be examined by radiography.

(2) Where the depth of repair is less than 1 in. or 20% of the section thickness, whichever is the lesser, and where the repaired section cannot be radiographed effectively, the first layer of each $^1/_4$ in. (6 mm) thickness of deposited weld metal shall be examined by the magnetic particle or the liquid penetrant method.

(3) Weld repairs which are made as a result of ultrasonic examination shall be reexamined by the same method when completed.

(g) When repair welding is done after the casting has been heat treated and when required by either the rules of this Section or the requirements of the casting specification, the repaired casting shall be postweld heat treated.

(h) All welding shall be performed using procedure qualifications in accordance with Section IX. The procedure qualification shall be performed on a test specimen of the same P-Number and same group as the production casting. The test specimen shall be subjected to the same heat treatment both before and after welding as will be applied to the production casting. All welders and operators performing this welding shall be qualified in accordance with Section IX.

7-5 IDENTIFICATION AND MARKING

Each casting shall be marked with the manufacturer's name and casting identification, including the applicable casting quality factor and material identification. The manufacturer shall furnish reports of the chemical and mechanical properties and certification that each casting conforms to all applicable requirements of this Appendix. The certification for castings for lethal service shall indicate the nature, location, and extent of any repairs.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 8
METHODS FOR
LIQUID PENETRANT EXAMINATION (PT)

NOTE: Satisfactory application of this method of examination requires special skills in the techniques involved and in interpreting the results. The requirements specified herein presume application by suitably experienced personnel.

8-1 SCOPE

(a) This Appendix describes methods which shall be employed whenever liquid penetrant examination is specified in this Division.

(b) Article 6 of Section V shall be applied for detail requirements in methods, procedures and qualifications, unless specified within this Appendix.

(c) Liquid penetrant examination shall be performed in accordance with a written procedure, certified by the Manufacturer to be in accordance with the requirements of T-150 of Section V.

8-2 CERTIFICATION OF COMPETENCY OF NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION PERSONNEL

The manufacturer shall certify that each liquid penetrant examiner meets the following requirements.

(a) He has vision, with correction if necessary, to enable him to read a Jaeger Type No. 2 Standard Chart at a distance of not less than 12 in. (300 mm), and is capable of distinguishing and differentiating contrast between colors used. These requirements shall be checked annually.

(b) He is competent in the techniques of the liquid penetrant examination method for which he is certified, including making the examination and interpreting and evaluating the results, except that, where the examination method consists of more than one operation, he may be certified as being qualified only for one or more of these operations.

8-3 EVALUATION OF INDICATIONS

An indication of an imperfection may be larger than the imperfection that causes it; however, the size of the indication is the basis for acceptance evaluation. Only indications with major dimensions greater than $\frac{1}{16}$ in. shall be considered relevant.

(a) A linear indication is one having a length greater than three times the width.

(b) A rounded indication is one of circular or elliptical shape with the length equal to or less than three times the width.

(c) Any questionable or doubtful indications shall be reexamined to determine whether or not they are relevant.

8-4 ACCEPTANCE STANDARDS

These acceptance standards shall apply unless other more restrictive standards are specified for specific materials or applications within this Division.

All surfaces to be examined shall be free of:

(a) relevant linear indications;

(b) relevant rounded indications greater than $\frac{3}{16}$ in. (5 mm);

(c) four or more relevant rounded indications in a line separated by $\frac{1}{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) or less (edge to edge).

8-5 REPAIR REQUIREMENTS

Unacceptable imperfections shall be repaired and reexamination made to assure removal or reduction to an acceptable size. Whenever an imperfection is repaired by chipping or grinding and subsequent repair by welding is not required, the excavated area shall be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid sharp notches, crevices, or corners. Where welding is required after repair of an imperfection, the area shall be cleaned and welding performed in accordance with a qualified welding procedure.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(a) Treatment of Indications Believed Nonrelevant. Any indication which is believed to be nonrelevant shall be regarded as an imperfection unless it is shown by reexamination by the same method or by the use of other nondestructive methods and/or by surface conditioning that no unacceptable imperfection is present.

(b) Examination of Areas From Which Defects Have Been Removed. After a defect is thought to have been removed and prior to making weld repairs, the area shall be examined by suitable methods to ensure it has been removed or reduced to an acceptably sized imperfection.

(c) Reexamination of Repair Areas. After repairs have been made, the repaired area shall be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid sharp notches, crevices, or corners and reexamined by the liquid penetrant method and by all other methods of examination that were originally required for the affected area, except that, when the depth of repair is less than the radiographic sensitivity required, reradiography may be omitted.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 9
JACKETED VESSELS

9-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in Appendix 9 cover minimum requirements for the design, fabrication, and inspection of the jacketed portion of a pressure vessel. The *jacketed portion of the vessel* is defined as the inner and outer walls, the closure devices, and all other penetrations or parts within the jacket which are subjected to pressure stresses. Parts such as nozzle closure members and stiffening or stay rings are included.

(b) All other Parts of this Division shall apply unless otherwise stated in this Appendix.

(c) Where the internal pressure is 15 psi (100 kPa) or less, any combination of pressures and vacuum in the vessel and jacket which will produce a total external pressure greater than 15 psi (100 kPa) on the inner vessel wall, the entire jacket shall be interpreted as within the scope of this part.

(d) For the purpose of this Appendix, jackets are assumed to be integral pressure chambers, attached to a vessel for one or more purposes such as:

(1) to heat the vessel and its contents;

(2) to cool the vessel and its contents;

(3) to provide a sealed insulation chamber for the vessel.

(e) As stated in U-2(g), this Division does not contain rules to cover all details of design and construction. These rules are therefore established to cover most common jacket types, but are not intended to limit configurations to those illustrated or otherwise described herein.

9-2 TYPES OF JACKETED VESSELS

This Appendix shall apply to jacketed vessels having jackets which cover the shell or heads as illustrated in Fig. 9-2 and partial jackets as illustrated in Fig. 9-7. Jackets, as shown in Fig. 9-2, shall be continuous circumferentially for Types 1, 2, 4, or 5 shown and shall be circular in cross section for Type 3. The use of any combination of the types shown is permitted on any one vessel provided the individual requirements for each are met. Nozzles or other openings in Type 1, 2, 4, or 5 jackets that also penetrate the vessel shell or head shall be designed in accordance with UG-37(d)(2). Dimpled jackets are not covered in this Appendix (see UW-19).

9-3 MATERIALS

Materials used in the fabrication of jackets shall be in accordance with Subsection A.

9-4 DESIGN OF JACKET SHELLS AND JACKET HEADS

Design shall comply with the applicable requirements of Subsection A except where otherwise provided for in this Appendix.

(a) Shell and head thickness shall be determined by the appropriate formula given in Subsection A. In consideration of the loadings given in UG-22, particular attention to the effects of local internal and external loads and expansion differentials at design temperatures shall be given. Where vessel supports are attached to the jacket, consideration shall be given to the transfer of the supported load of the inner vessel and contents.

(b) The requirements for inspection openings as prescribed in UG-46 shall apply to jackets except that the maximum size of opening need not exceed 2 in. (50 mm) pipe size (DN 50) for all diameter vessels.

(c) The use of impingement plates or baffles at the jacket inlet connection to reduce erosion of the inner wall shall be considered for media where vapors are condensed, i.e., steam.

(d) Jacketed vessels may be designed utilizing braced and stayed surfaces as given in UG-47 provided the jacket wall in addition to meeting the requirements of UG-47(a) also meets the applicable requirements of UG-27(c) and (d) and UG-32. This paragraph is not intended to apply to dimpled jackets. (See UW-19.)

9-5 DESIGN OF CLOSURE MEMBER OF JACKET TO VESSEL

(a) This paragraph gives rules for the design of closure members shown herein. Closures of geometries other than

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

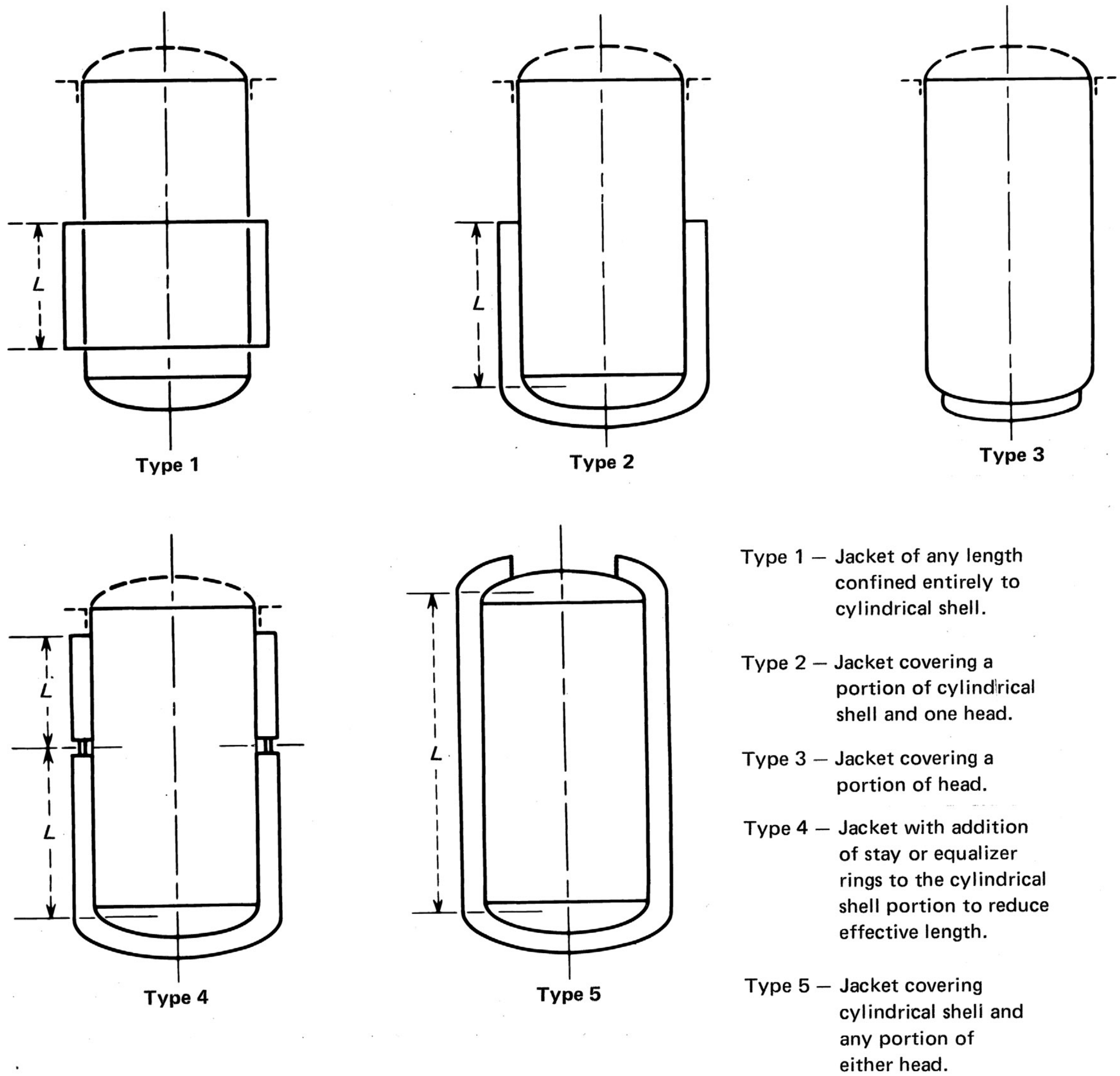


FIG. 9-2 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF JACKETED VESSELS

those illustrated may be used if the strength requirements of UG-101 are met.

(b) Symbols used in Figs. 9-5 and 9-6 are as follows:

t_s = nominal thickness of inner vessel wall
t_{rj} = required minimum thickness of outer jacket wall
t_{rc} = required minimum thickness of closure member as determined herein
t_c = nominal thickness of closure member
t_j = nominal thickness of outer jacket wall
t_n = nominal thickness of nozzle wall
r = corner radius of torus closures
R_s = outside radius of inner vessel
R_j = inside radius of jacket
R_p = radius of opening in the jacket at the jacket penetration
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21) in jacket chamber
S = maximum allowable stress value (see UG-23)
j = jacket space. Inside radius of jacket minus outside radius of inner vessel.
a, b, c, Y, Z = minimum weld dimensions for attachment of closure member to inner vessel measured as shown in Figs. 9-5 and 9-6
L = design length of a jacket section as shown in Fig. 9-2. This length is determined as follows:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(a) the distance between inner vessel head-bend lines plus one-third of the depth of each inner vessel head if there are no stiffening rings nor jacket closures between the head-bend lines;

(b) the center-to-center distance between any two adjacent stiffening rings or jacket closures; or

(c) the distance from the center of the first stiffening ring or the jacket closure to the jacketed inner head-bend line plus one-third of the inner vessel head, all measured parallel to the axis of the vessel

For the design of a closure member or stiffening ring, the greater adjacent L shall be used.

(c) Jacket closures shown in Fig. 9-5 shall conform to the following requirements.

(1) Closures of the type shown in Fig. 9-5 sketch (a) that are used on Types 1, 2, and 4 jacketed vessels as shown in Fig. 9-2 shall have t_{rc} of at least equal to t_{rj} and corner radius r shall not be less than $3t_c$. This closure design is limited to a maximum thickness t_{rc} of $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm). When this construction is used on Type 1 jacketed vessels, the weld dimension Y shall be not less than $0.7t_c$; and when used on Types 2 and 4 jacketed vessels, the weld dimension Y shall be not less than $0.83t_c$.

(2) Closures of the type shown in Fig. 9-5 sketches (b-1), (b-2), and (b-3) shall have t_{rc} at least equal to t_{rj}. In addition for sketch (b-3), the t_{rc} shall be not less than the following:

$$t_{rc} = 0.707j \sqrt{P/S} \text{ (see footnote 1)}$$

A groove weld attaching the closure to the inner vessel and fully penetrating the closure thickness t_c may be used with any of the types of jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2. However, a fillet weld having a minimum throat dimension of $0.7t_c$ may also be used to join the closure of the inner vessel on Type 1 jacketed vessels of Fig. 9-2.

(3) Closures of the type shown in Fig. 9-5 sketch (c) shall be used only on Type 1 jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2. The closure thickness t_{rc} shall be determined by Formula (4) of UG-32(g), but shall be not less than t_{rj}. The angle θ shall be limited to 30 deg maximum.

(4) Closures of the types shown in Fig. 9-5 sketches (d-1), (d-2), (e-1), and (e-2) shall be used only on Type 1 jacketed vessels as shown in Fig. 9-2 and with the further limitation that t_{rj} does not exceed $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm). The required minimum thickness for the closure bar shall be the greater of the following:

$$t_{rc} = 2t_{rj}$$

$$t_{rc} = 0.707j \sqrt{P/S} \text{ (see footnote 1)}$$

Fillet weld sizes shall be as follows:

Y shall be not less than the smaller of $0.75t_c$ or $0.75t_s$

Z shall not be less than t_j

(5) Closure bar and closure bar to inner vessel welds of the types shown in Fig. 9-5 sketches (f-1), (f-2), and (f-3) may be used on any of the types of jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2. For Type 1 jacketed vessels, the required minimum closure bar thickness shall be determined from the formulas of 9-5(c)(4). For all other types of jacketed vessels, the required minimum closure bar thickness and the maximum allowable width of the jacket space shall be determined from the following formulas:

$$t_{rc} = 1.414 \sqrt{(PR_s j)/S} \text{ (see footnote 1)}$$

$$j = \frac{2St_s^2}{PR_j} - 0.5\ (t_s + t_j)$$

Weld sizes connecting the closure bar to the inner vessel shall be as follows:

Y = not less than the smaller of $1.5t_c$ or $1.5t_s$ and shall be measured as the sum of dimensions a and b as shown in the appropriate sketch of Fig. 9-5

Z = minimum fillet size necessary when used in conjunction with a groove weld or another fillet weld to maintain the minimum required Y dimension

(6) Jacket to closure bar attachment welds shown in Fig. 9-5 sketches (g-1), (g-2), and (g-3) may be used on any of the types of jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2. Attachment welds shown in Fig. 9-5 sketches (g-4), (g-5), and (g-6), may be used on any of the types of jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2 where t_{rj} does not exceed $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm).

(7) Closures shown in Fig. 9-5 sketch (h) used on Type 3 jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2 shall have attachment welds in accordance with Fig. 9-5 sketch (i-1) or (i-2). This construction is limited to jackets where t_{rj} does not exceed $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm).

(8) Closures for conical or toriconical jackets shown in Fig. 9-5 sketches (k) and (l) shall comply with the requirements for Type 2 jacketed vessels shown in Fig. 9-2.

(d) Any radial welds in closure members shall be butt welded joints penetrating through the full thickness of the member and shall be ground flush where attachment welds are to be made.

[1] The coefficients of these formulas include a factor which effectively increases the allowable stress for such construction to 1.5S.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

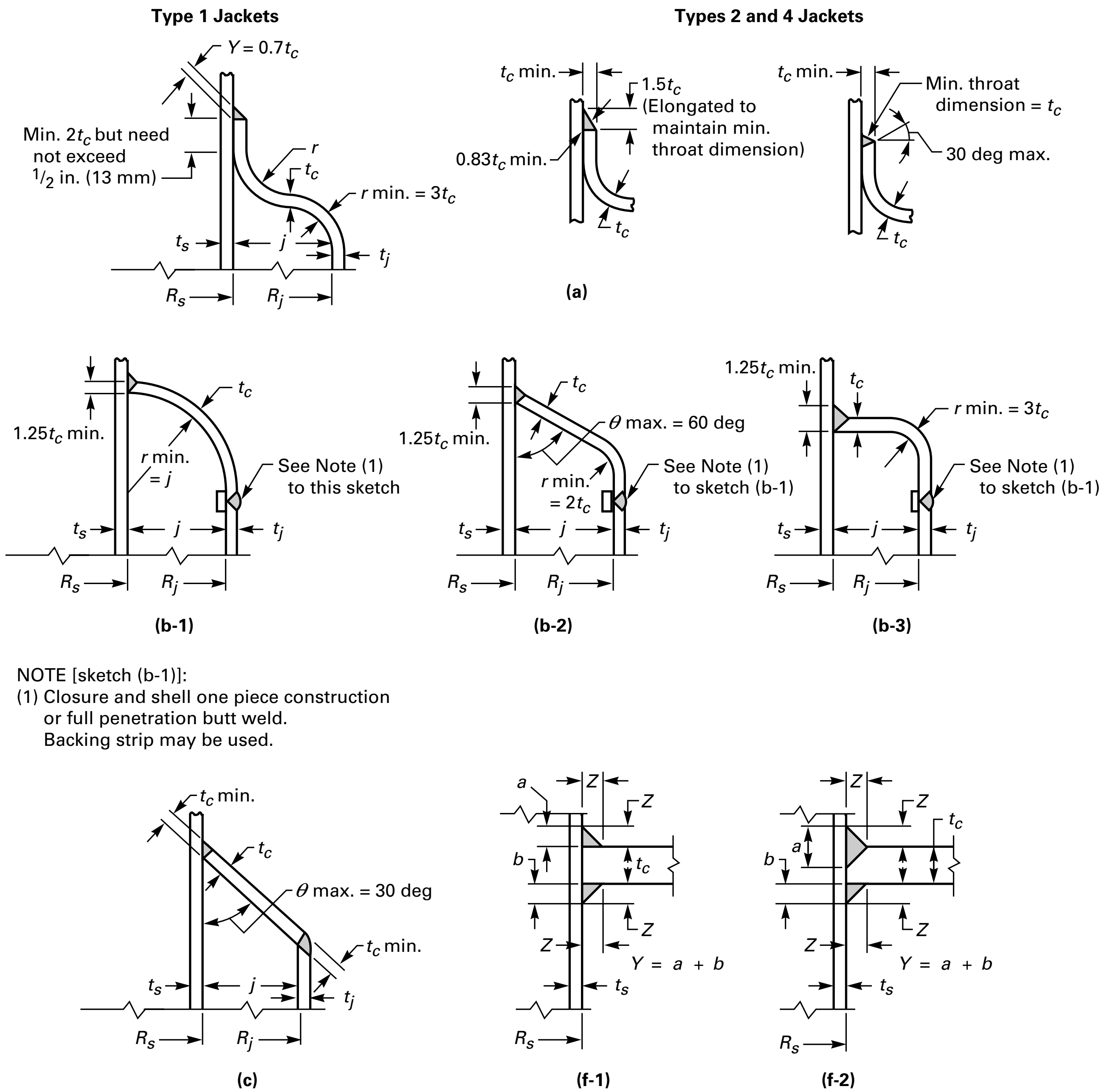


FIG. 9-5 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF JACKET CLOSURES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

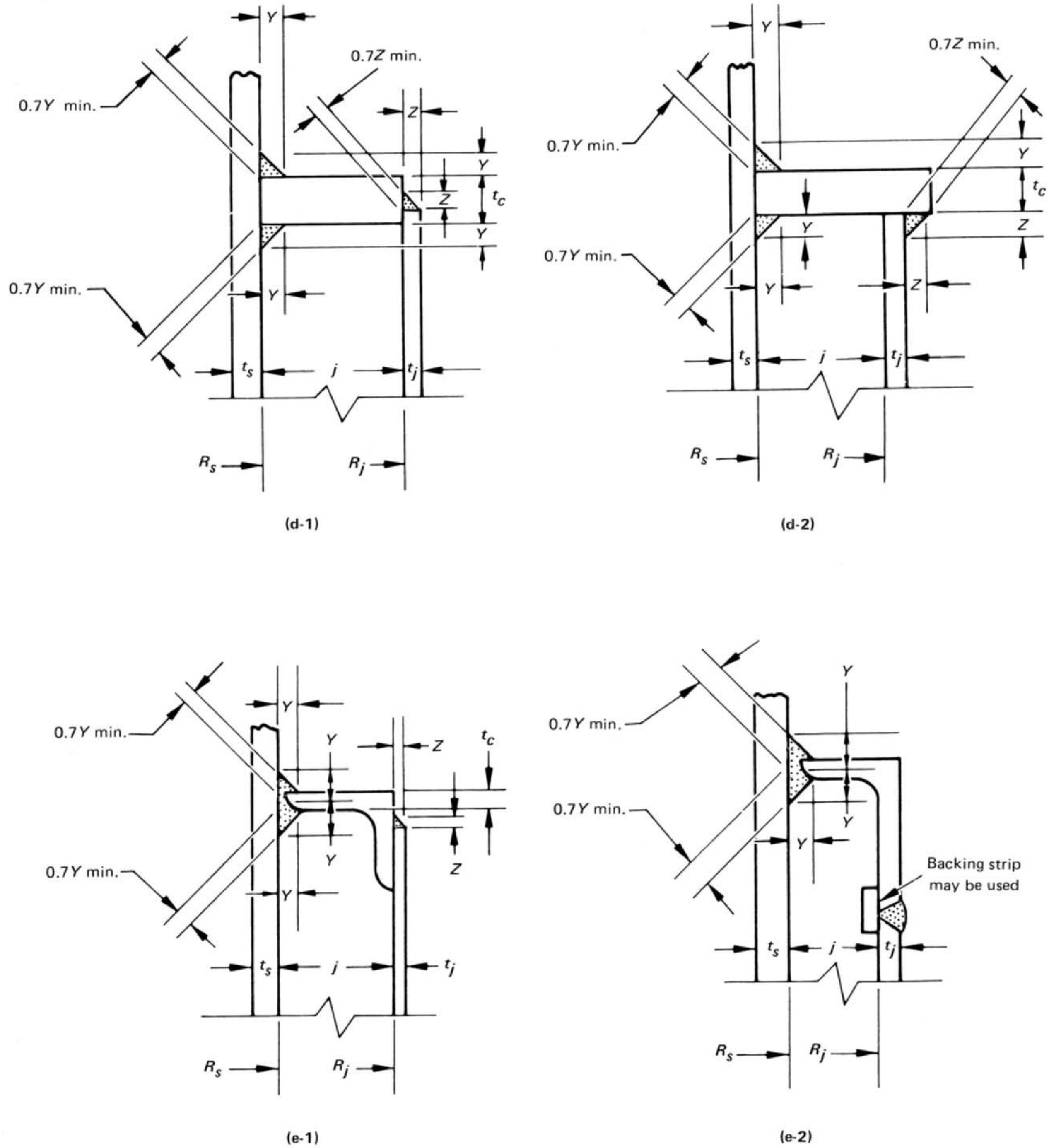


FIG. 9-5 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF JACKET CLOSURES (CONT'D)

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

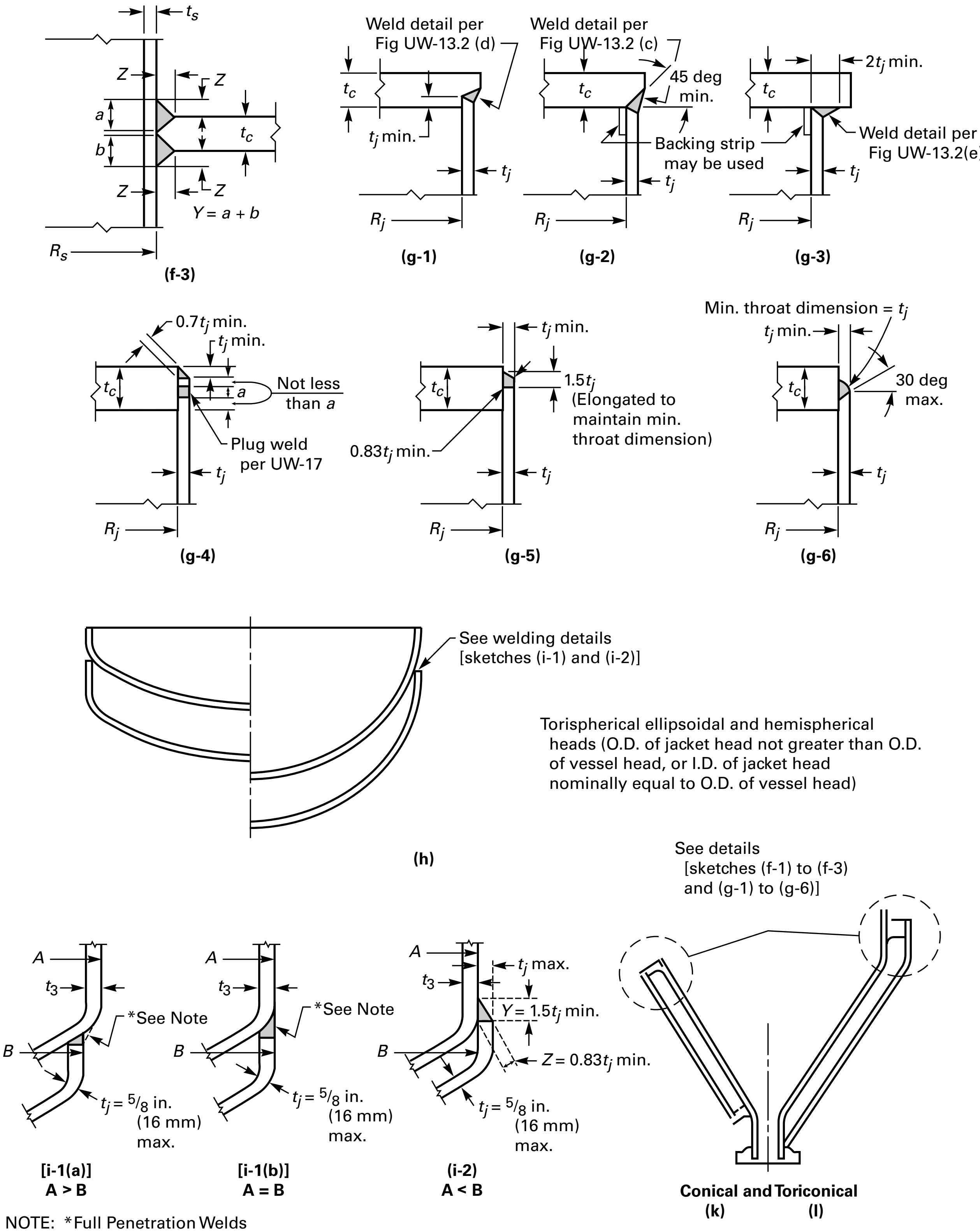


FIG. 9-5 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF JACKET CLOSURES (CONT'D)
(See Text for Limitations)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(e) Where the inner vessel must meet the requirements of UW-2, the attachment welds of the jacket to the inner vessel need not be welded for their full thickness nor radiographed. These attachment welds shall be postweld heat treated where required by UW-2 except as may be exempted by the notes to Table UCS-56. The remainder of the jacket need not comply with UW-2 when the inner vessel alone is subjected to the service restrictions. The diameter limitations of UW-12 and UW-13 do not apply to the jacket attachment welds.

(f) Closures for any type of staybolted jacket may be designed in accordance with the requirements of Type 1 jackets shown in Fig. 9-2 provided the entire jacket is staybolted to compensate for pressure end forces.

9-6 DESIGN OF PENETRATIONS THROUGH JACKETS

(a) The design of openings through the jacket space shall be in accordance with the rules given in UG-36 through UG-45.

(b) Reinforcements of the opening in the jacket shall not be required for penetrations shown in Fig. 9-6 since the opening is stayed by virtue of the nozzle or neck of the closure member.

(c) The jacket penetration closure member minimum thickness considers only pressure membrane loading. Axial pressure loadings and secondary loadings given in UG-22 shall be considered in the design [see 9-6(d)(6)].

(d) Jacket penetration closure member designs shown in Fig. 9-6 shall conform to the following requirements.

(1) The nozzle wall may be used as the closure member as shown in Fig. 9-6 sketch (a), where jacket is welded to nozzle wall.

(2) The minimum required thickness t_{rc} for designs Fig. 9-6, sketches (b) and (d) shall be calculated as a shell under external pressure per UG-28.

(3) The minimum required thickness t_{rc} for design Fig. 9-6 sketch (c) shall be equal to t_{rj}.

(4) For designs Fig. 9-6 sketches (e-1) and (e-2), the thickness required of the closure member attached to the inner vessel t_{rc1} shall be calculated as a shell under external pressure per UG-28. The required thickness of the flexible member t_{rc2} shall be determined from one of the following expressions:

$$t_{rc2} = \frac{Pr}{SE - 0.6P}$$

(when no tubular section exists between jacket and torus)

$$t_{rc2} = \frac{PR_p}{SE - 0.6P}$$

(when tubular section exists between jacket and torus)

where

E = weld efficiency from Table UW-12 for circumferential weld in the torus for equation using r, or for any weld in opening closure member for equation using R_p, radius of penetration

(5) The minimum thickness t_{rc} for design (f) shall be calculated as a shell of radius R_p under external pressure per UG-28.

(6) Designs (b), (c), (d), and (e) of Fig. 9-6 provide for some flexibility and are designed on a similar basis to that of expansion joints under the conditions of U-2(g) in combination with UG-22 and UG-23. Only pressure membrane loading is considered in establishing the minimum thickness of the penetration closure member, and it is not the intent that the combination of direct localized and secondary bending stress need be held to the Code-tabulated allowable stress values. It is recognized by UG-23(c) that high localized and secondary bending stresses may exist in Code vessels.

(e) All radial welds in opening sealer membranes shall be butt welded joints penetrating through the full thickness of the member.

(f) Closure member welds shall be circular, elliptical, or obround in shape where possible. Rectangular member welds are permissible provided that corners are rounded to a suitable radius.

9-7 DESIGN OF PARTIAL JACKETS

(a) Partial jackets are jackets which encompass less than the full circumference of the vessel. Some variations are shown in Fig. 9-7.

(b) The rules for construction of jacketed vessels given in preceding paragraphs shall apply to partial jackets with following exceptions.

(1) Stayed partial jackets shall be designed and constructed in accordance with UG-47. Closure members shall conform to 9-5.

(2) Partial jackets which by virtue of their service or configuration do not lend themselves to staybolt construction may be fabricated by other means providing they are designed using appropriate stress values and are proof tested in accordance with UG-101(p).

9-8 FABRICATION

(a) Fabrication of vessels shall be in accordance with applicable Parts of Subsection A and Subsection B, Part UW. The requirements of UW-13(e) do not apply to closure rings.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

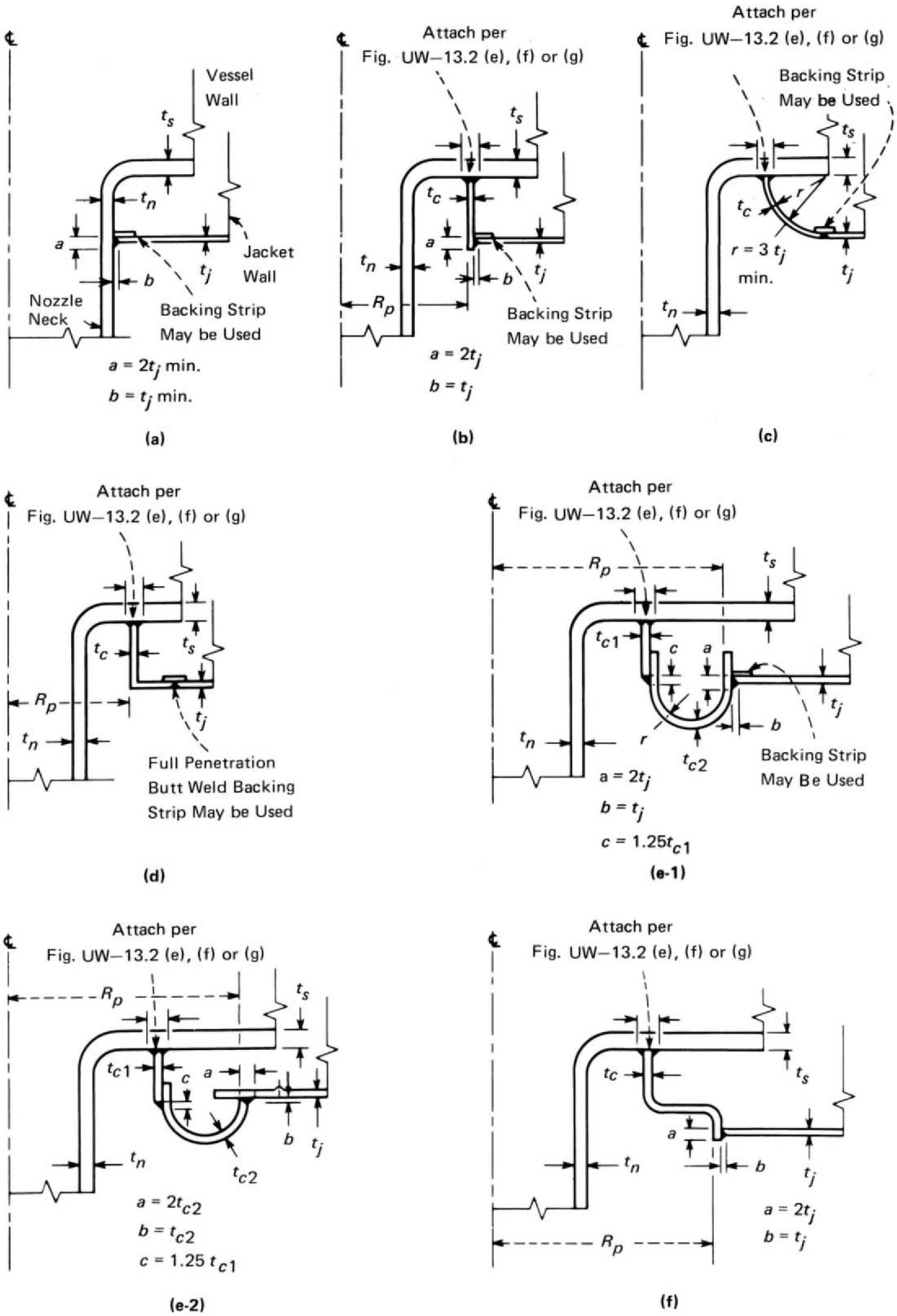


FIG. 9-6 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF PENETRATION DETAILS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(b) This Appendix covers fabrication of jacketed vessels by welding. Other methods of fabrication are permitted provided the requirements of applicable parts of this Division are met.

(c) Where only the inner vessel is subjected to lethal service, the requirements of UW-2 shall apply only to welds in the inner vessel and those welds attaching the jacket to the inner vessel. Welds attaching the jacket to the inner vessel need not be radiographed and may be fillet welded. Postweld heat treatment shall be as required by Table UCS-56.

9-10 INSPECTION

Inspection and testing shall be carried out as stated in Subsection A.

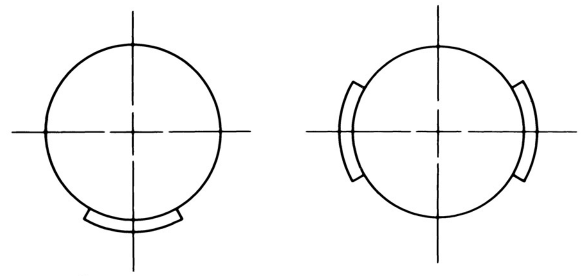


FIG. 9-7

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 10
QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

04 10-1 GENERAL

The Manufacturer or Assembler shall have and maintain a quality control system which will establish that all Code requirements,[1] including material, design, fabrication, examination (by the Manufacturer or Assembler), and for vessels and vessel parts, inspection (by the Authorized Inspector), will be met. The Quality Control Systems of UM, UV, or UD Stamp holders shall include duties of a Certified Individual, as required by this Division. The Certified Individual authorized to provide oversight may also serve as the Certificate Holder's authorized representative responsible for signing data reports or certificates of conformance. Provided that Code requirements are suitably identified, the system may include provisions for satisfying any requirements by the Manufacturer, Assembler, or user which exceed minimum Code requirements and may include provisions for quality control of non-Code work. In such systems, the Manufacturer of vessels or vessel parts may make changes in parts of the system which do not affect the Code requirements without securing acceptance by the Inspector. [See UG-117(d).] Before implementation, revisions to quality control systems of Manufacturers and Assemblers of pressure relief valves shall have been found acceptable to the ASME designated organization if such revisions affect Code requirements.

The system that the Manufacturer or Assembler uses to meet the requirements of this Division must be one suitable for his own circumstances. The necessary scope and detail of the system shall depend on the complexity of the work[2] performed and on the size and complexity of the Manufacturer's organization.[3] A written description of the system the Manufacturer or Assembler will use to produce a Code item shall be available for review. Depending upon the circumstances, the description may be brief or voluminous.

The written description may contain information of a proprietary nature relating to the Manufacturer's or Assembler's processes. Therefore, the Code does not require any distribution of this information except for the Inspector, ASME Designee, or an ASME designated organization as covered by 10-15(c) and 10-16(c). It is intended that information learned about the system in connection with the evaluation will be treated as confidential and that all loaned descriptions will be returned to the Manufacturer or Assembler upon completion of the evaluation.

10-2 OUTLINE OF FEATURES TO BE INCLUDED IN THE WRITTEN DESCRIPTION OF THE QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The following is a guide to some of the features which should be covered in the written description of the Quality Control System and which is equally applicable to both shop and field work.

10-3 AUTHORITY AND RESPONSIBILITY

The authority and responsibility of those in charge of the Quality Control System shall be clearly established. Persons performing quality control functions shall have sufficient and well-defined responsibility, the authority, and the organizational freedom to identify quality control problems and to initiate, recommend and provide solutions.

10-4 ORGANIZATION

An organization chart showing the relationship between management and engineering, purchasing, manufacturing, construction, inspection, and quality control is required to reflect the actual organization. The purpose

[1] See UG-90(b) and UG-90(c)(1).

[2] The complexity of the work includes factors such as design simplicity versus complexity, the types of materials and welding procedures used, the thickness of materials, the types of nondestructive examinations applied, and whether heat treatments are applied.

[3] The size and complexity of the organization includes factors such as the number of employees, the experience level of employees, the number of Code items produced, and whether the factors defining the complexity of the work cover a wide or narrow range.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of this chart is to identify and associate the various organizational groups with the particular function for which they are responsible. The Code does not intend to encroach on the Manufacturer's right to establish, and from time to time to alter, whatever form of organization the Manufacturer considers appropriate for its Code work.

10-5 DRAWINGS, DESIGN CALCULATIONS, AND SPECIFICATION CONTROL

The Manufacturer's or Assembler's Quality Control System shall provide procedures which will ensure that the latest applicable drawings, design calculations, specifications, and instructions, required by the Code, as well as authorized changes, are used for manufacture, examination, inspection, and testing.

10-6 MATERIAL CONTROL

The Manufacturer or Assembler shall include a system of receiving control which will ensure that the material received is properly identified and has documentation including required Certificates of Compliance or Material Test Reports to satisfy Code requirements as ordered. The required Certificates of Compliance or Material Test Reports may be electronically transmitted from the material manufacturer or supplier to the Certificate Holder. The material control system shall ensure that only the intended material is used in Code construction.

10-7 EXAMINATION AND INSPECTION PROGRAM

The Manufacturer's or Assembler's Quality Control System shall describe the fabrication operations, including examinations, sufficiently to permit the Inspector, ASME Designee, or an ASME designated organization to determine at what stages specific inspections are to be performed.

10-8 CORRECTION OF NONCONFORMITIES

There shall be a system agreed upon with the Inspector for correction of nonconformities. A nonconformity is any condition which does not comply with the applicable rules of this Division. Nonconformities must be corrected or eliminated in some way before the completed component can be considered to comply with this Division.

10-9 WELDING

The Quality Control System shall include provisions for indicating that welding conforms to requirements of Section IX as supplemented by this Division. Manufacturers intending to use AWS Standard Welding Procedures shall describe control measures used to assure that welding meets the requirements of this Division and Section IX.

10-10 NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINATION

The Quality Control System shall include provisions for identifying nondestructive examination procedures the Manufacturer or Assembler will apply to conform with the requirements of this Division.

10-11 HEAT TREATMENT

The Quality Control System shall provide controls to insure that heat treatments as required by the rules of this Division are applied. Means shall be indicated by which the Inspector, ASME Designee, or an ASME designated organization can satisfy himself that these Code heat treatment requirements are met. This may be by review of furnace time–temperature records or by other methods as appropriate.

10-12 CALIBRATION OF MEASUREMENT AND TEST EQUIPMENT

The Manufacturer or Assembler shall have a system for the calibration of examination, measuring, and test equipment used in fulfillment of requirements of this Division.

10-13 RECORDS RETENTION

The Manufacturer or Assembler shall have a system for the maintenance of radiographs and Manufacturer's Data Reports as required by this Division.

10-14 SAMPLE FORMS

The forms used in the Quality Control System and any detailed procedures for their use shall be available for review. The written description shall make necessary references to these forms.

10-15 INSPECTION OF VESSELS AND VESSEL PARTS

(a) Inspection of vessels and vessel parts shall be by the Inspector as defined in UG-91.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(b) The written description of the Quality Control System shall include reference to the Inspector.

(c) The Manufacturer shall make available to the Inspector, at the Manufacturer's plant or construction site, a current copy of the written description of the Quality Control System.

(d) The Manufacturer's Quality Control System shall provide for the Inspector at the Manufacturer's plant to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the Inspector to perform his duties in accordance with this Division. The Manufacturer may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the Inspector.

10-16 INSPECTION OF PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

(a) Inspection of manufacturing and/or assembly of pressure relief valves shall be by a representative from an ASME designated organization as described in UG-136(c).

(b) The written description of the Quality Control System shall include reference to the ASME designated organization.

(c) The valve Manufacturer or Assembler shall make available to a representative from an ASME designated organization, at the Manufacturer's or Assembler's plant, a current copy of the written description of the applicable Quality Control System.

(d) The valve Manufacturer's or Assembler's Quality Control System shall provide for a representative from an ASME designated organization to have access to all drawings, calculations, specifications, procedures, process sheets, repair procedures, records, test results, and any other documents as necessary for the ASME Designee or a representative from an ASME designated organization to perform his duties in accordance with this Division. The Manufacturer may provide such access either to his own files of such documents or by providing copies to the ASME Designee.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 11
CAPACITY CONVERSIONS FOR SAFETY VALVES

11-1

The capacity of a safety or relief valve in terms of a gas or vapor other than the medium for which the valve was officially rated shall be determined by application of the following formulas:[1]

For steam,

$$W_s = C_N KAP$$

where:

C_N = 51.5 for U.S. Customary calculations
C_N = 5.25 for SI calculations

For air,

$$W_a = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

(U.S. Customary Units)

C = 356
M = 28.97 mol. wt.
T = 520 when W_a is the rated capacity

(SI Units)

C = 27.03
M = 28.97 mol. wt.
T = 293 when W_a is the rated capacity

For any gas or vapor,

$$W = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

where

W_s = rated capacity, lb/hr (kg/n) of steam
W_a = rated capacity, converted to lb/hr (kg/n) of air at 60°F (20°C), inlet temperature
W = flow of any gas or vapor, lb/hr
C = constant for gas or vapor which is function of the ratio of specific heats, $k = c_p/c_v$ (see Fig. 11-1)
K = coefficient of discharge [see UG-131(d) and (e)]
A = actual discharge area of the safety valve, sq in. (sq mm)
P = (set pressure × 1.10) plus atmospheric pressure, psia (MPa_{abs})
M = molecular weight
T = absolute temperature at inlet [(°F + 460) (K)]

These formulas may also be used when the required flow of any gas or vapor is known and it is necessary to compute the rated capacity of steam or air.

Molecular weights of some of the common gases and vapors are given in Table 11-1.

For hydrocarbon vapors, where the actual value of k is not known, the conservative value, $k = 1.001$ has been commonly used and the formula becomes

$$W = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

where

C = 315, for U.S. Customary Calculations
C = 23.95, for SI Calculations

When desired, as in the case of light hydrocarbons, the compressibility factor Z may be included in the formulas for gases and vapors as follows:

$$W = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{ZT}}$$

Example 1

GIVEN: A safety valve bears a certified capacity rating of 3020 lb/hr of steam for a pressure setting of 200 psi.

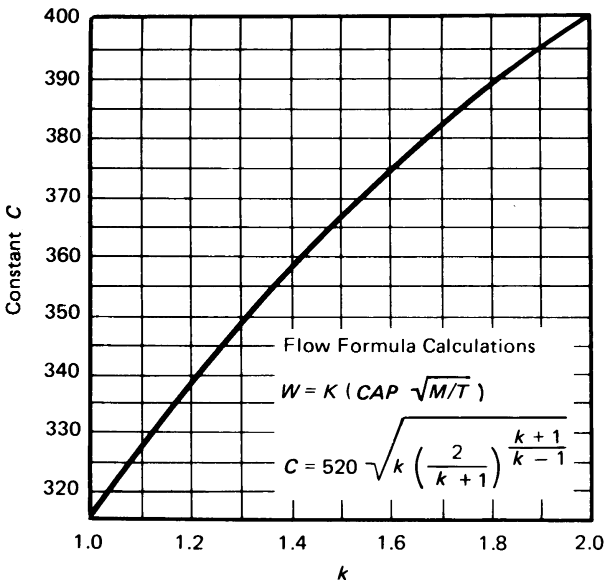
PROBLEM: What is the relieving capacity of that valve in terms of air at 100°F for the same pressure setting?

[1] Knowing the official rating capacity of a safety valve which is stamped on the valve, it is possible to determine the overall value of KA in either of the following formulas in cases where the value of these individual terms is not known:

Official Rating in Steam	Official Rating in Air
$KA = \frac{W_s}{51.5P}$	$KA = \frac{W_a}{CP}\sqrt{\frac{T}{M}}$

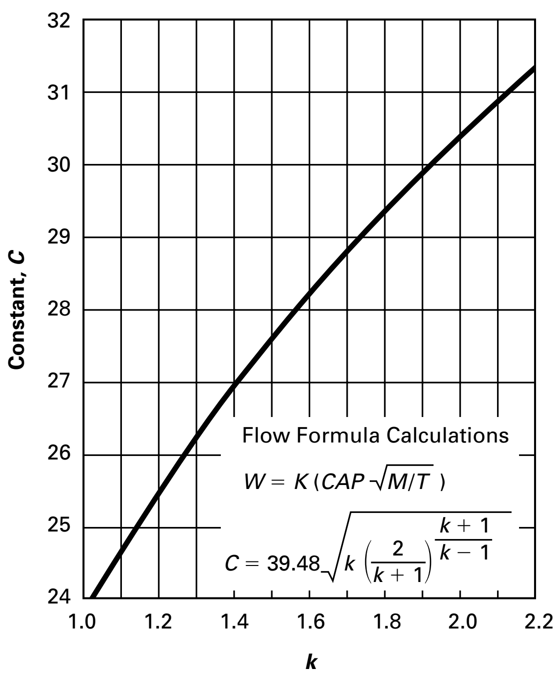
This value for KA is then substituted in the above formulas to determine the capacity of the safety valve in terms of the new gas or vapor.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



k	Constant C	k	Constant C	k	Constant C
1.00	315	1.26	343	1.52	366
1.02	318	1.28	345	1.54	368
1.04	320	1.30	347	1.56	369
1.06	322	1.32	349	1.58	371
1.08	324	1.34	351	1.60	372
1.10	327	1.36	352	1.62	374
1.12	329	1.38	354	1.64	376
1.14	331	1.40	356	1.66	377
1.16	333	1.42	358	1.68	379
1.18	335	1.44	359	1.70	380
1.20	337	1.46	361	2.00	400
1.22	339	1.48	363	2.20	412
1.24	341	1.50	364	. . .	. . .

FIG. 11-1 CONSTANT C FOR GAS OR VAPOR RELATED TO RATIO OF SPECIFIC HEATS ($k = c_p/c_v$)



k	Constant C	k	Constant C	k	Constant C
1.001	23.95	1.26	26.05	1.52	27.80
1.02	24.12	1.28	26.20	1.54	27.93
1.04	24.30	1.30	26.34	1.56	28.05
1.06	24.47	1.32	26.49	1.58	28.17
1.08	24.64	1.34	26.63	1.60	28.29
1.10	24.81	1.36	26.76	1.62	28.40
1.12	24.97	1.38	26.90	1.64	28.52
1.14	25.13	1.40	27.03	1.66	28.63
1.16	25.29	1.42	27.17	1.68	28.74
1.18	25.45	1.44	27.30	1.70	28.86
1.20	25.60	1.46	27.43	2.00	30.39
1.22	25.76	1.48	27.55	2.20	31.29
1.24	25.91	1.50	27.68	. . .	. . .

FIG. 11-1M CONSTANT C FOR GAS OR VAPOR RELATED TO RATIO OF SPECIFIC HEATS ($k = c_p/c_v$)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 11-1
MOLECULAR WEIGHTS OF GASES AND VAPORS

Air	28.97	Freon 22	86.48
Acetylene	26.04	Freon 114	170.90
Ammonia	17.03	Hydrogen	2.02
Butane	58.12	Hydrogen Sulfide	34.08
Carbon Dioxide	44.01	Methane	16.04
Chlorine	70.91	Methyl Chloride	50.48
Ethane	30.07	Nitrogen	28.02
Ethylene	28.05	Oxygen	32.00
Freon 11	137.371	Propane	44.09
Freon 12	120.9	Sulfur Dioxide	64.06

SOLUTION:
For steam

$$W_s = 51.5KAP$$

$$3020 = 51.5KAP$$

$$KAP = \frac{3020}{51.5} = 58.5$$

For air

$$W_a = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

$$= 356\ KAP\sqrt{\frac{28.97}{460 + 100}}$$

$$= (356)\ (58.5)\sqrt{\frac{28.97}{560}}$$

$$= 4750 \text{ lb/hr}$$

Example 2

GIVEN: It is required to relieve 5000 lb/hr of propane from a pressure vessel through a safety valve set to relieve at a pressure of P_s, psi, and with an inlet temperature at 125°F.

PROBLEM: What total capacity in pounds of steam per hour in safety valves must be furnished?

SOLUTION:
For propane,

$$W = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

The value of C is not definitely known. Use the conservative value, $C = 315$.

$$5000 = 315\ KAP\sqrt{\frac{44.09}{460 + 125}}$$

$$KAP = 57.7$$

For steam,

$$W_s = 51.5\ KAP = (51.5)(57.7)$$

$$= 2970 \text{ lb/hr set to relieve at } P_s, \text{ psi}$$

Example 3

GIVEN: It is required to relieve 1000 lb/hr of ammonia from a pressure vessel at 150°F.

PROBLEM: What is the required total capacity in pounds of steam per hour at the same pressure setting?

SOLUTION:
For ammonia,

$$W = CKAP\sqrt{\frac{M}{T}}$$

Manufacturer and user agree to use $k = 1.33$; from Fig. 11-1, $C = 350$.

$$1000 = 350\ KAP\sqrt{\frac{17.03}{460 + 150}}$$

$$KAP = 17.10$$

For steam,

$$W_s = 51.5\ KAP = 51.5 \times 17.10$$

$$= 880 \text{ lb/hr}$$

Example 4

GIVEN: A safety valve bearing a certified rating of 10,000 cu ft/min of air at 60°F and 14.7 psia (atmospheric pressure).

PROBLEM: What is the flow capacity of this safety valve in pounds of saturated steam per hour for the same pressure setting?

SOLUTION:
For air: Weight of dry air at 60°F and 14.7 psia is 0.0766 lb/cu ft.

$$W_a = 10{,}000 \times 0.0766 \times 60 = 45{,}960 \text{ lb/hr}$$

$$45{,}960 = 356\ KAP\sqrt{\frac{28.97}{460 + 60}}$$

$$KAP = 546$$

For steam,

$$W_s = 51.5\ KAP = (51.5)(546)$$

$$= 28{,}200 \text{ lb/hr}$$

NOTE: Before converting the capacity of a safety valve from any gas to steam, the requirements of UG-131(b) must be met.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

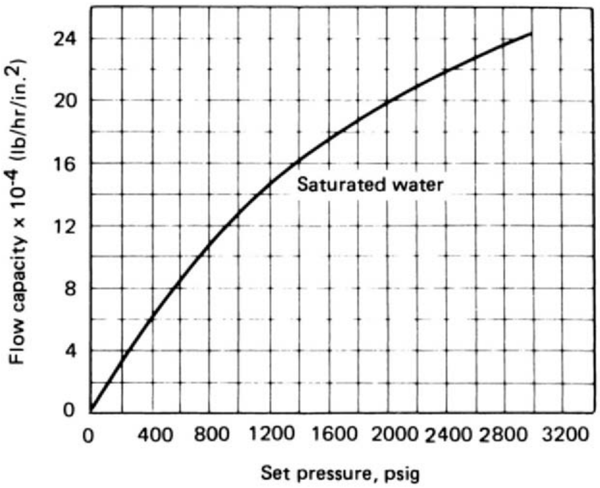


FIG. 11-2 FLOW CAPACITY CURVE FOR RATING NOZZLE TYPE SAFETY VALVES ON SATURATED WATER (BASED ON 10% OVERPRESSURE)

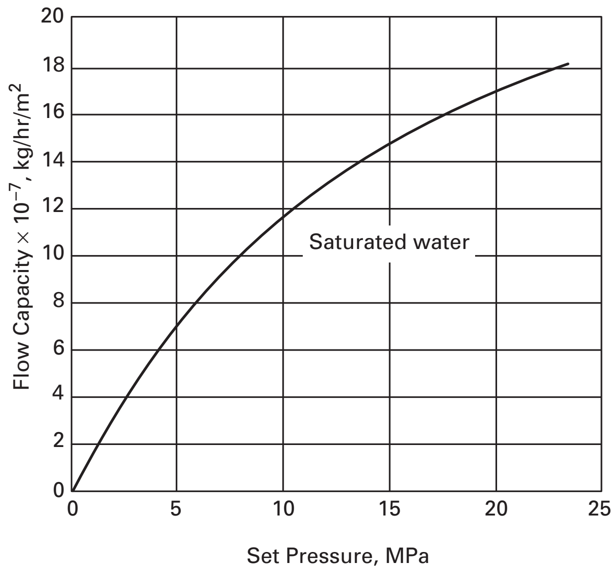


FIG. 11-2M FLOW CAPACITY CURVE FOR RATING NOZZLE TYPE SAFETY VALVES ON SATURATED WATER (BASED ON 10% OVERPRESSURE)

11-2

(a) Since it is realized that the saturated water capacity is configuration sensitive, the following applies only to those safety valves that have a nozzle type construction (throat to inlet diameter ratio of 0.25 to 0.80 with a continuously contoured change and have exhibited a coefficient K_D in excess of 0.90). No saturated water rating shall apply to other types of construction.

NOTE: The manufacturer, user, and Inspector are all cautioned that for the following rating to apply, the valve shall be continuously subjected to saturated water. If, after initial relief the flow media changes to quality steam, the valve shall be rated as per dry saturated steam. Valves installed on vessels or lines containing steam–water mixture shall be rated on dry saturated steam.

(b) To determine the saturated water capacity of a valve currently rated under UG-131 and meeting the requirements of (a) above, refer to Fig. 11-2. Enter the graph at the set pressure of the valve, move vertically upward to the saturated water line and read horizontally the relieving capacity. This capacity is the theoretical, isentropic value arrived at by assuming equilibrium flow and calculated values for the critical pressure ratio.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 12
ULTRASONIC EXAMINATION OF WELDS (UT)

12-1 SCOPE

(a) This Appendix describes methods which shall be employed when ultrasonic examination of welds is specified in this Division.

(b) Article 4 of Section V shall be applied for detail requirements in methods, procedures and qualifications, unless otherwise specified in this Appendix.

(c) Ultrasonic examination shall be performed in accordance with a written procedure, certified by the Manufacturer to be in accordance with the requirements of T-150 of Section V.

12-2 CERTIFICATION OF COMPETENCE OF NONDESTRUCTIVE EXAMINER

The Manufacturer shall certify that personnel performing and evaluating ultrasonic examinations required by this Division have been qualified and certified in accordance with their employer's written practice. SNT-TC-1A[1] shall be used as a guideline for employers to establish their written practice for qualification and certification of their personnel. Alternatively, the ASNT Central Certification Program (ACCP)[1] or CP-189[1] may be used to fulfill the examination and demonstration requirements of SNT-TC-1A and the employer's written practice. Provisions for training, experience, qualification, and certification of NDE personnel shall be described in the Manufacturer's Quality Control System (see Appendix 10).

12-3 ACCEPTANCE–REJECTION STANDARDS

These Standards shall apply unless other standards are specified for specific applications within this Division.

Imperfections which produce a response greater than 20% of the reference level shall be investigated to the extent that the operator can determine the shape, identity, and location of all such imperfections and evaluate them in terms of the acceptance standards given in (a) and (b) below.

(a) Indications characterized as cracks, lack of fusion, or incomplete penetration are unacceptable regardless of length.

(b) Other imperfections are unacceptable if the indications exceed the reference level amplitude and have lengths which exceed:

(1) $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) for t up to $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm);

(2) $\frac{1}{3}t$ for t from $\frac{3}{4}$ in. to $2\frac{1}{4}$ in. (19 mm to 57 mm);

(3) $\frac{3}{4}$ in. (19 mm) for t over $2\frac{1}{4}$ in. (57 mm).

where t is the thickness of the weld excluding any allowable reinforcement. For a butt weld joining two members having different thicknesses at the weld, t is the thinner of these two thicknesses. If a full penetration weld includes a fillet weld, the thickness of the throat of the fillet shall be included in t.

12-4 REPORT OF EXAMINATION

The Manufacturer shall prepare a report of the ultrasonic examination and a copy of this report shall be retained by the Manufacturer until the Manufacturer's Data Report has been signed by the Inspector. The report shall contain the information required by Section V. In addition, a record of repaired areas shall be noted as well as the results of the reexamination of the repaired areas. The Manufacturer shall also maintain a record of all reflections from uncorrected areas having responses that exceed 50% of the reference level. This record shall locate each area, the response level, the dimensions, the depth below the surface, and the classification.

---

[1] Recommended Practice No. SNT-TC-1A, "Personnel Qualification and Certification in Nondestructive Testing," ACCP, ASNT Central Certification Program, and CP-189 are published by the American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Inc., 4153 Arlingate Plaza, Caller #28518, Columbus, Ohio 43228-0518.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 13
VESSELS OF NONCIRCULAR CROSS SECTION

13-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in Appendix 13 cover minimum requirements for the design, fabrication, and inspection of single wall vessels having a rectangular or obround cross section. The rules of this Appendix apply to the walls and parts of the vessels subject to pressure stresses including stiffening, reinforcing and staying members.

(b) All other parts of this Division shall apply unless otherwise stated in this Appendix.

(c) As stated in U-2(g), this Division does not contain rules to cover all details of design and construction. These rules are, therefore, established to cover some common types of noncircular cross section vessels but are not intended to limit configurations to those illustrated or otherwise described herein.

(d) In 13-18 special consideration is given to the calculation of applied and allowable stresses when the structure contains butt welded joints or row of holes at locations other than at side plate midlengths.

13-2 TYPES OF VESSELS

The design equations given in this Appendix shall apply to the single wall vessels as illustrated in Fig. 13-2(a) for vessels of rectangular cross section, in Fig. 13-2(b) for vessels having an obround cross section, and in Fig. 13-2(c) for vessels of circular section with a single diametral stay plate.

(a) Rectangular Vessels. Figure 13-2(a) illustrates some basic types of vessels as follows.

(1) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (1) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section in which the opposite sides have the same wall thickness. Two opposite sides may have a wall thickness different than that of the other two opposite sides.

(2) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (2) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section in which two opposite members have the same thickness and the other two members have two different thicknesses.

(3) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (3) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section having uniform wall thickness and corners bent to a radius. For corners which are cold formed, the provisions of UG-79 and UCS-79 or UHT-79 shall apply.

(4) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (4) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section [as in (1) above] but reinforced by welded-on members.

(5) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (5) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section [as in (3) above] but externally reinforced by members welded to the flat surfaces of the vessel.

(6) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (6) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section with chamfered corner segments joined to the adjacent sides by small curved segments with constant radii and with external reinforcing members welded to the flat sides of the vessel.

(7) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (7) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section [as in (1) above] but having two opposite sides stayed at midlength.

(8) Figure 13-2(a) sketch (8) shows a vessel of rectangular cross section [as in (1) above] but having two opposite sides stayed at the third points.

(9) Figure 13-2(a) sketches (9) and (10) show vessels of rectangular cross section [as in (1) above] but having two opposite sides stayed such that the compartments have different dimensions. There is no restriction on the number of staying members used.

(b) Obround Vessels. Figure 13-2(b) illustrates some basic types of vessels as follows.

(1) Figure 13-2(b) sketch (1) shows a vessel of obround cross section in which the opposite sides have the same wall thickness. The flat side walls may have a different thickness than the wall thickness of the semicylindrical parts.

(2) Figure 13-2(b) sketch (2) shows a vessel of obround cross section [as in (1) above] but reinforced by welded-on members.

(3) Figure 13-2(b) sketch (3) shows a vessel of obround cross section [as in (1) above] but having the flat side plates stayed at midlength.

(c) Stayed Vessel of Circular Cross Section. Figure 13-2(c) illustrates a vessel of circular cross section containing a single diametral staying plate which also acts

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

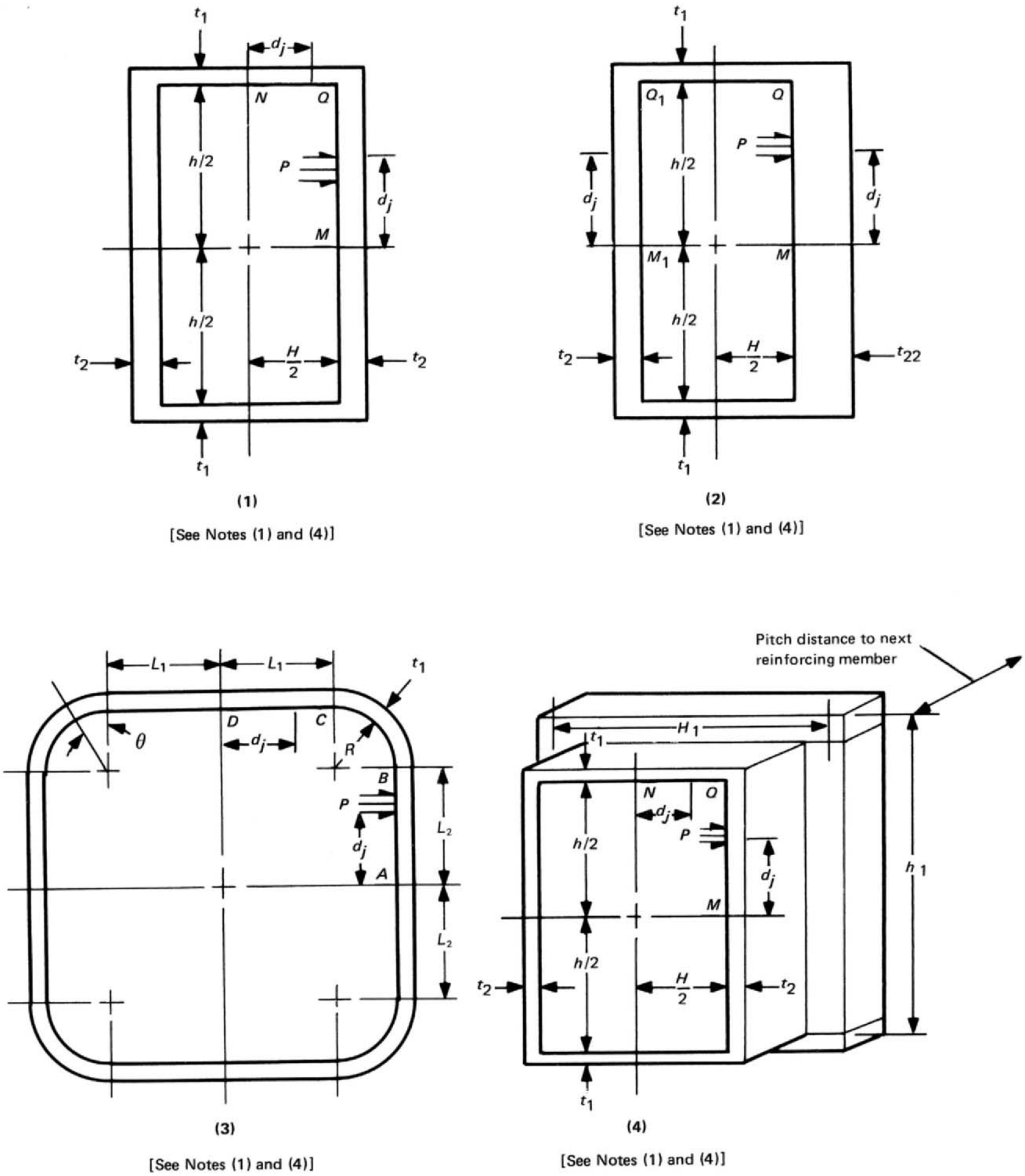
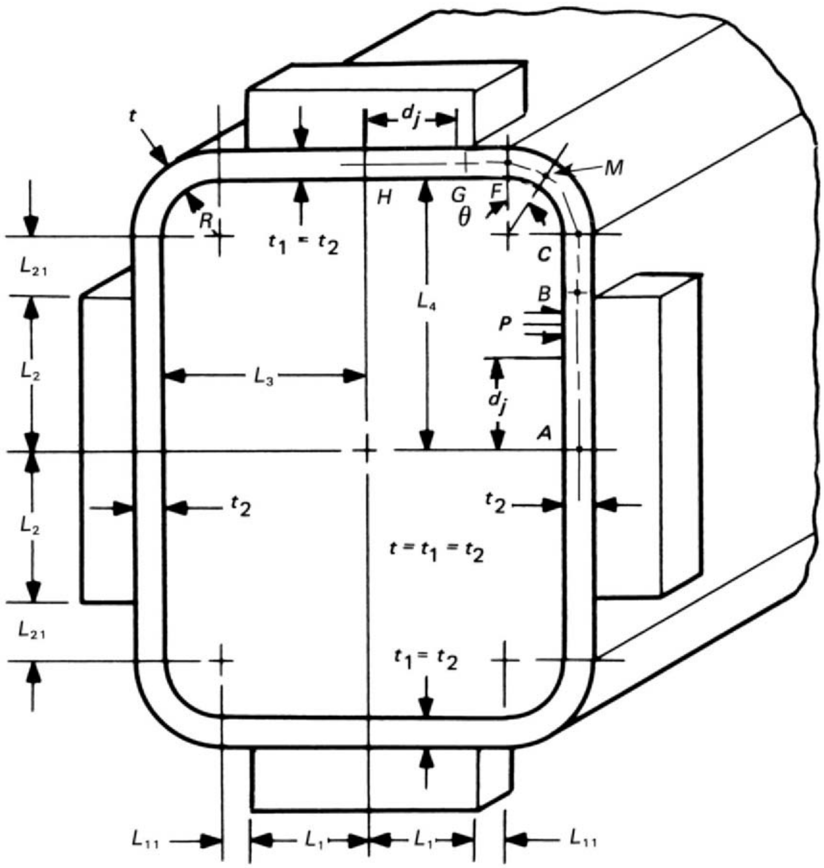


FIG. 13-2(a) VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION

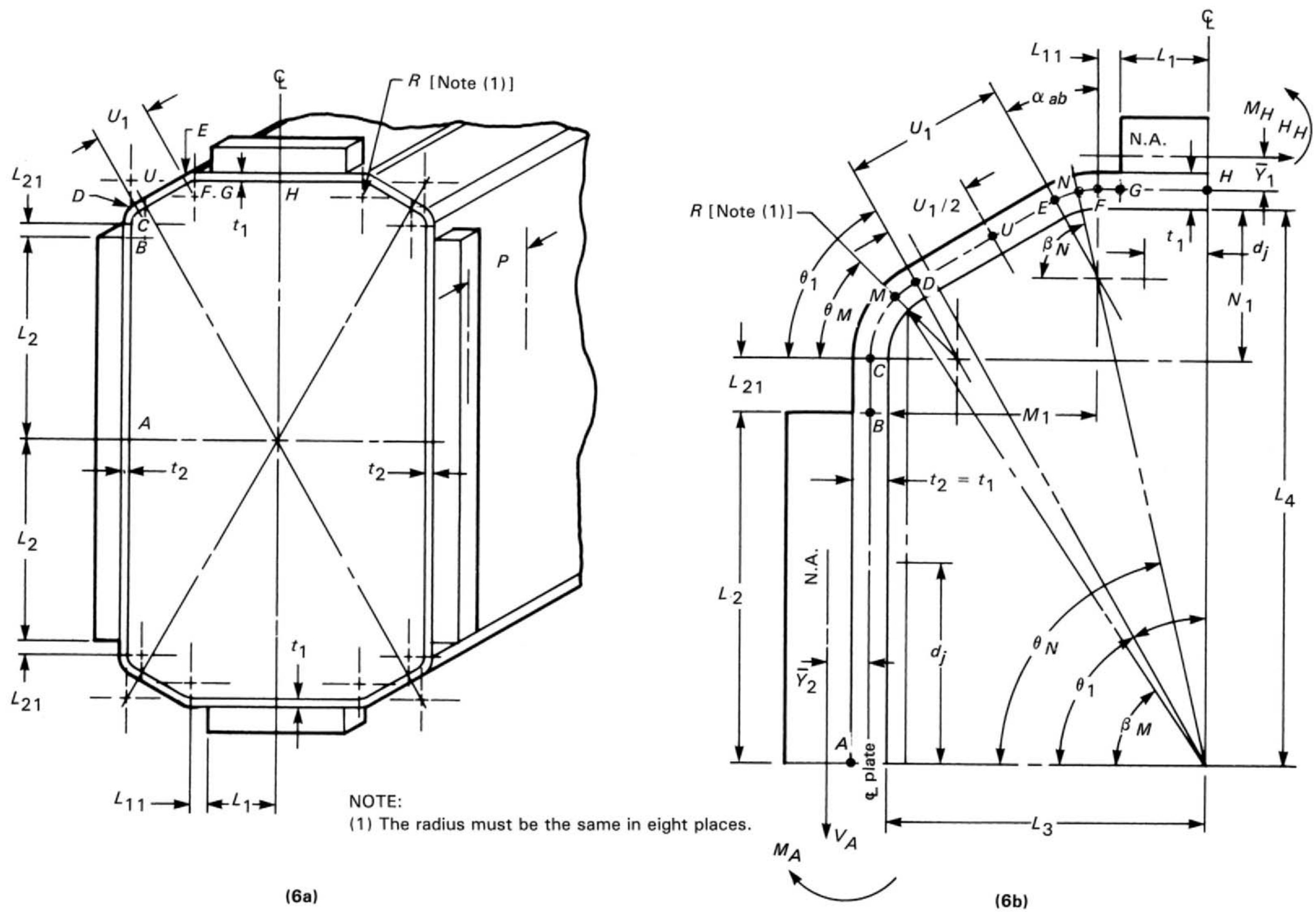
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(5)
[See Note (4)]

FIG. 13-2(a) VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

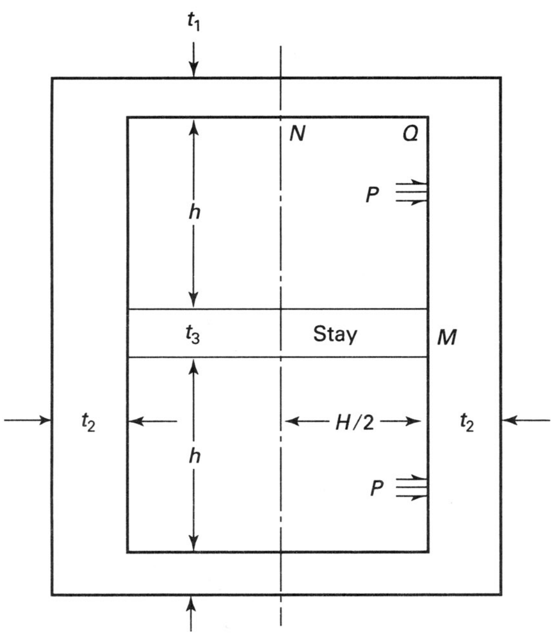


NOTE:
(1) The radius must be the same in eight places.

(6a) (6b)

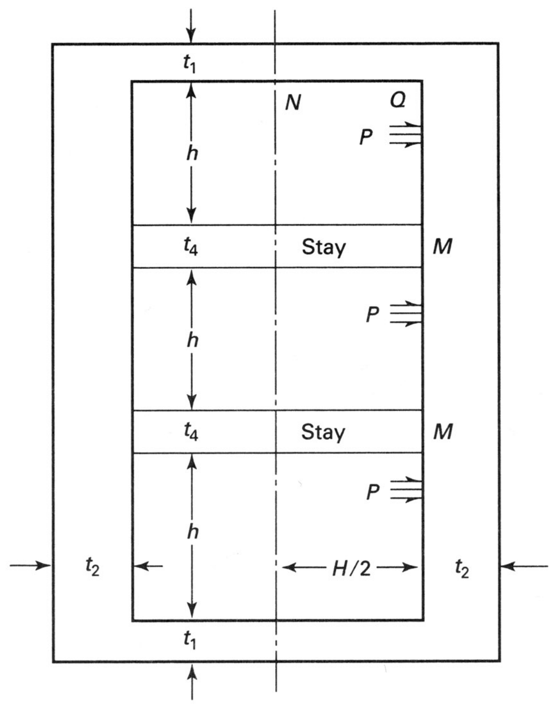
FIG. 13-2(a) VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(7)

[See Notes (1) and (2)]

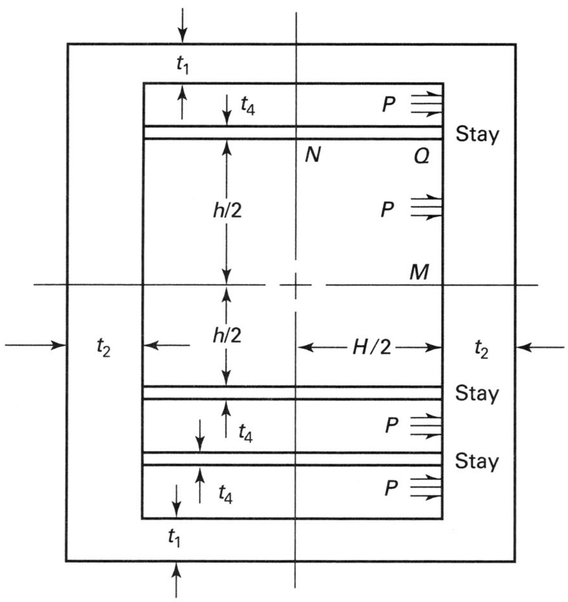


(8)

[See Notes (1) and (2)]

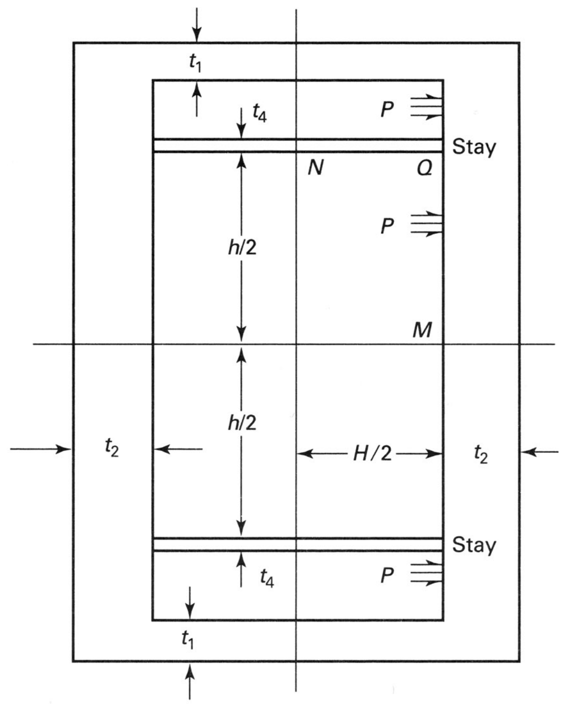
FIG. 13-2(a) VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION (CONT'D)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(9)

[See Notes (1), (2), and (3)]



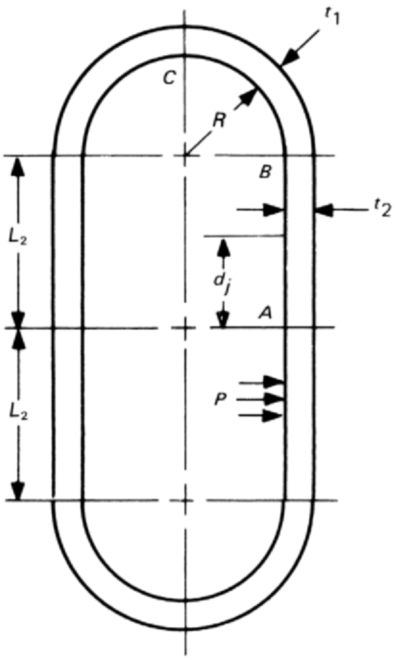
(10)

[See Notes (1), (2), and (3)]

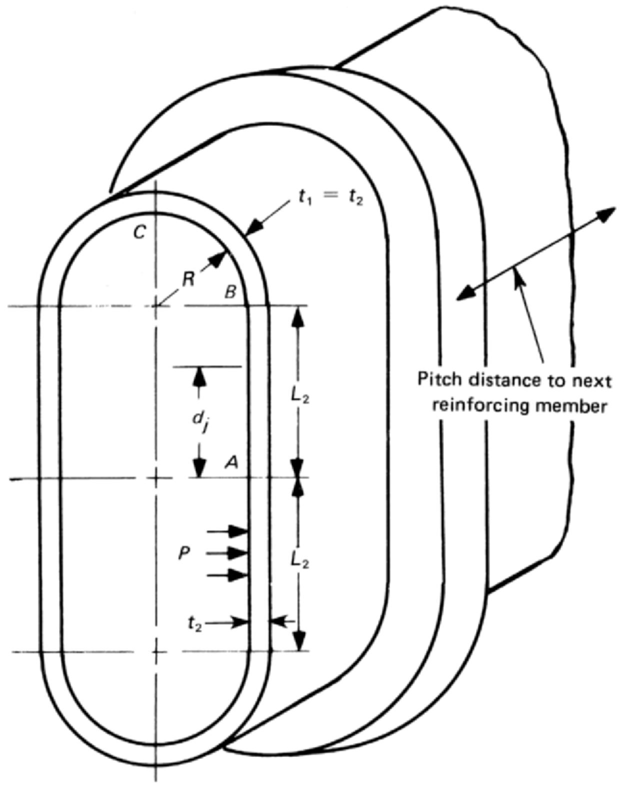
NOTES:
(1) See UW-13 for corner joints.
(2) See UG-47, UG-48, UG-49, and UW-19 for stay bars.
(3) The compartments in sketches (9) and (10) have different dimensions.
(4) See 13-18 for weld efficiency calculations.

FIG. 13-2(a) VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION (CONT'D)

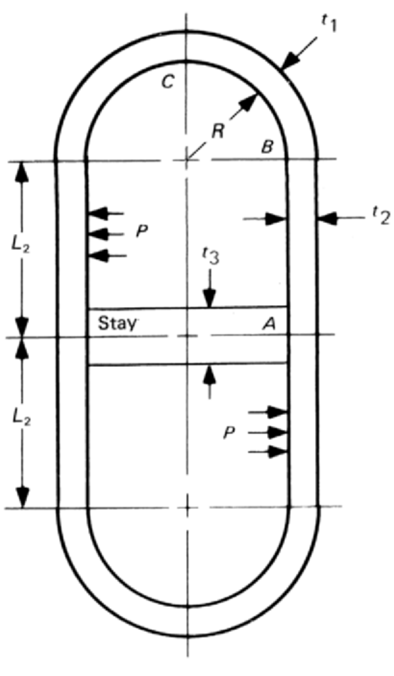
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



(1)



(2)

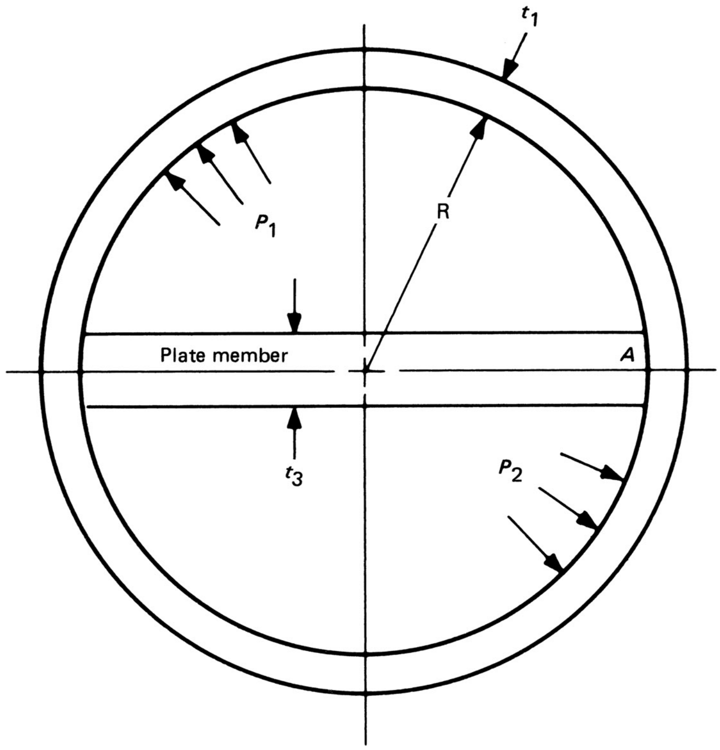


(3)

NOTES
(1) See UW 13 for corner joints.
(2) See UG-47, UG-48, UG-49, and UW-19 for stay bars.
(3) See 13-8 for weld efficiency calculations.

FIG. 13-2(b) VESSELS OF OBROUND CROSS SECTION

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



NOTE: See UW-13 for corner joints.

FIG. 13-2(c) VESSEL OF CIRCULAR CROSS SECTION WITH CENTRAL DIVIDING PLATE

as a pressure surface when the two compartments of the vessel are subject to different internal pressures.

13-3 MATERIALS

Materials used in the fabrication of vessels described herein shall be in accordance with Subsection A.

13-4 DESIGN OF VESSELS OF NONCIRCULAR CROSS SECTION

Design shall comply with the applicable requirements of Subsection A except where otherwise provided for in this Appendix.

(a) Wall thicknesses of parts of vessels described herein shall be determined by the appropriate formulas or methods given in Subsection A and in this Appendix. Since, in a rectangular or obround vessel, the walls can have different thicknesses, many of the formulas contained herein require solution by assuming a thickness, or thicknesses, and solving for stress which is then compared with the allowable stress value.

(b) Design according to this Appendix is based on both membrane and bending stresses. Membrane stresses due to pressure and mechanical loads shall not exceed the design stress S, the value contained in the allowable stress tables (see UG-23). At the weld joint, these membrane stresses shall not exceed an allowable design stress SE, where E is a joint efficiency factor [see 13-5, 13-18, UW-12, and UG-23(c)]. The joint efficiency factor E shall also be applied to the allowable design stress for evaluation of the calculated bending stress S_b at the location of the joint only. See 13-1(d), 13-5 footnote 1, and 13-8(b).

Any combination of membrane plus bending tension or compression stress induced by pressure and/or mechanical loads, shall not exceed the following limits:

(1) for plate section of rectangular cross section, 1.5 times the allowable design stress SE;

(2) for other cross sections (such as composite reinforced bar or shapes and plate sections, etc.), the lesser of:

(a) 1.5 times the design stress SE; or

(b) two-thirds times the yield strength S_y of the material at the design temperature (see 13-5 for S_y) except that due to the relatively low yield strength of some materials listed in Table UNF-23.3 or Table UHA-23, higher stress values were established in Section II, Part D at temperatures where the short-time tensile properties govern to permit the use of these alloys where slightly greater deformation is acceptable. These higher stress values exceed $\frac{2}{3}$ but do not exceed 90% of the yield

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

strength at temperature. Use of these stresses may result in dimensional changes due to permanent strain. These stress values are not recommended for the flanges of gasketed joints or other applications where slight amounts of distortion can cause leakage or malfunction. For these materials, the yield strength limits may be:

(1) 90% of yield strength at design temperature, but not more than;

(2) two-thirds of the specified minimum yield strength for the material at room temperature.

(c) The total stresses (membrane plus bending) at each cross section for vessels with and without reinforcements shall be calculated as follows.

(1) For vessels without reinforcements and for vessels with reinforcements which have the same allowable stress S (from the tables in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D) and the same yield stress S_y at the design temperature, there are two values of bending stresses to be determined at each cross section. There is one stress value for the outermost surface of the shell plate or the reinforcement (when used) and one stress value for the inner surface of the shell plate.

The sign convention necessary to establish the proper algebraic sign of the stresses for combining membrane and bending stresses to obtain the total stresses is as follows:

(a) for both membrane and bending stresses:

(1) plus (+) signifies tension stress; and

(2) minus (−) signifies compression stress.

(b) for bending stress:

(1) c_o = term is always negative;

(2) c_i = term is always positive.

A positive bending moment produces compression in the outermost fibers of the cross section. The bending moment at the midpoint of the long side of vessels without stays will always be negative.

At each cross section, the membrane stress is added algebraically to the bending stress at both the outermost surface of the shell plate or reinforcement (when used) and the innermost surface of the shell plate to obtain two values of total stress. The total stresses at the section shall be compared to the allowable design stress calculated as specified in 13-4(b).

(2) When the reinforcing members and the shell plate do not have the same S and S_y values at the design temperature, the total stress shall be determined at the innermost and outermost fibers for each material. The appropriate c values (with proper signs, 13-5) for the composite section properties shall be used in the bending equations. The total stresses at the innermost and outermost fibers for each material shall be compared to the allowable design stress 13-4(b) for each material.

(d) Particular attention shall be given to the effects of local internal and external loads and expansion differentials at design temperature, including reactions at supporting lugs, piping, and other types of attachments, as specified in UG-22.

(e) Except as otherwise specified in this Appendix, vessel parts of noncircular cross section subject to external pressure shall be designed in accordance with U-2(g).

(f) The end closures for vessels of this type shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of U-2(g) and/or UG-101 except in cases where the ends are flat plates subject to rating under the rules of UG-34. Unstayed flat heads used as welded end plates for vessels described in this Appendix shall conform to the rules of UG-34 except that a C factor of 0.20 shall be used in all cases.

(g) The requirements for ligaments prescribed in UG-53 shall apply except as modified in 13-6 for the case of multidiameter holes in plates. [See 13-18(b)].

The ligament efficiencies e_m and e_b shall only be applied to the calculated stresses for the plates containing the ligaments.

(1) When e_m and e_b are less than the joint efficiency E (see 13-5 and UW-12), which would be used if there were no ligaments in the plate, the membrane and bending stresses calculated based on the gross area of the section shall be divided by e_m and e_b, respectively, to obtain the stresses based on the net area for the section. The allowable design stresses for membrane and membrane plus bending shall be calculated as described in 13-4(b) using $E = 1.0$.

(2) When e_m and e_b are greater than the joint efficiency E, which would be used if there were no ligaments in the plate, the stresses shall be calculated as if there were no ligaments in the plate. The allowable design stresses for membrane and membrane plus bending shall be calculated as described in 13-4(b) using the appropriate E factor required by UW-12.

(h) The design equations in this Appendix are based on vessels in which the length L_v to side dimension (H or h) ratio (aspect ratio) is greater than 4. These equations are conservatively applicable to vessels of aspect ratio less than 4 and may thus be used as specified in this Appendix. Vessel sideplates with aspect ratios less than 4 are strengthened by the interaction of the end closures and may be designed in accordance with the provisions of U-2(g) by using established techniques of structural analysis. Membrane and bending stresses shall be determined throughout the structure and shall not exceed the allowable values established in this Appendix. Short unreinforced or unstayed vessels of rectangular cross section having an aspect ratio not greater than 2.0 may be

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

designed in accordance with 13-18(b) and (c).

(i) Bolted full-side or end plates and flanges may be provided for vessels of rectangular cross section. Many acceptable configurations are possible. Therefore, rules for specific designs are not provided, and these parts shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of UG-34 for unstayed flat plates and U-2(g) for the flange assembly. Analysis of the components must consider gasket reactions, bolting forces, and resulting moments, as well as pressure and other mechanical loading.

(j) Openings may be provided in vessels of noncircular cross section as follows:

(1) Openings in noncircular vessels do not require reinforcement other than that inherent in the construction, provided they meet the conditions given in UG-36(c)(3).

04 *(2)* As a minimum, the reinforcement of other openings in noncircular vessels shall comply with UG-39, except the required thickness to be used in the reinforcement calculations shall be the thickness required to satisfy the stress criteria in 13-4(b). Compensation for openings in noncircular vessels must account for the bending strength as well as the membrane strength of the side with the opening. In addition, openings may significantly affect the stresses in adjacent sides. Because many acceptable configurations are possible, rules for specific designs are not provided [see U-2(g)].

(k) For vessels without reinforcements and for vessels with stay plates and stay rods (paras. 13-7, 13-9, 13-10, 13-12, and 13-13), the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b =$ 1.0. For vessels with reinforcements that do not extend around the corners of thee vessel, (para. 13-8 and 13-11), the moments of inertia are calculated using the traditional definition, $I = pt_2/12$. For width of cross section for vessels with reinforcements, see para. 13-8(d). For un-reinforced vessels of rectangular cross section, (para. 13-7), the given moments are defined on a per-unit-width basis. That is, M_A and M_r, have dimensions [Length × Force/ Length] = Force.

13-5 NOMENCLATURE

Symbols used in this Appendix are as follows:

$A = R(2\gamma + \pi\alpha_2)$

A_1 = cross-sectional area of reinforcing member only attached to plate of thickness t_1

A_2 = cross-sectional area of reinforcing member attached to plate of thickness t_2

$A_3 = r(2\gamma_1 + \pi)$

$B = R^2(\gamma^2 + \pi\gamma\alpha_2 + 2\alpha_2)$

C = plate coefficient, UG-47

$C_1 = R^2(2\gamma^2 + 3\gamma\pi\alpha_2 + 12\alpha_2)$

$C_2 = r^2(2\gamma_1{}^2 + 3\pi\gamma_1 + 12)$

$D_1 = R^3(\gamma^3 + 2\pi\gamma^2\alpha_2 + 12\gamma\alpha_2 + 2\pi\alpha_2)$

D_E = equivalent uniform diameter of multidiameter hole

E = joint efficiency factor as required by UW-12 for all Category A butt joints (see UW-3) and to any Category C or D butt[1] joints. The joint efficiency factor is used as described in 13-4(b) and (g) to calculate the allowable design membrane and membrane plus bending stresses.

$E_1 = R^3(4\gamma^3 + 6\pi\gamma^2\alpha_2 + 24\gamma\alpha_2 + 3\pi\alpha_2)$

E_2 = modulus of elasticity at design temperature

E_3 = modulus of elasticity at ambient temperature

NOTE: The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

$F = (3AD_1 - 2BC_1)/(AE_1 - 6B^2)$

H = inside length of short side of rectangular vessel
= $2(L_1 + L_{11})$ for equations in 13-8(d) for Figs. 13-2(a) sketches (5) and (6)

H_1 = centroidal length of reinforcing member on short side of rectangular vessel

H_O = outside length of short side of rectangular vessel

I = moment of inertia

I_e = moment of inertia about axis parallel to long side of rectangular vessel and passing through centroid of cross-sectional area

I_1 = moment of inertia of strip of thickness[2] t_1

I_2 = moment of inertia of strip of thickness[2] t_2

I_3 = moment of inertia of strip of thickness[2] t_3

I_{11} = moment of inertia of combined reinforcing member and effective width of plate w of thickness t_1

I_{21} = moment of inertia of combined reinforcing member and effective width of plate w of thickness t_2

I_{22} = moment of inertia of strip of thickness[2] t_{22}

J = plate parameter, Table 13-8(d)

J_1 = plate parameter, Table 13-13(c)

K = vessel parameter $(I_2/I_1)\alpha$

[1] Use $E = 1.0$ for Category C and D joints which are not butt welded since stresses in these joints are controlled by the applicable rules for sizing such joints. See Figs. UG-34 and UW-13.2.

[2] $I = bt^3/12$ where $b = 1.0$ for vessels without reinforcements and for vessels with stay plates or stay rods. $I = pt^3/12$ for vessels with reinforcements that do not extend around the corners of the vessel [see Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (5) and (6)].

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

K_1 = $2k_2 + 3$
K_2 = $3k_1 + 2k_2$
K_3 = factor for unreinforced rectangular vessel [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (3)]
K_4 = factor for reinforced rectangular vessel [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (5)]
L_1 = half-length of short side of rounded or chamfered corner vessel without reinforcements; half-length of reinforcement on short side of reinforced vessel
L_2 = half-length of long side plate of obround and rounded or chamfered corner rectangular vessels without reinforcements; half-length of reinforcement on long side of reinforced vessel
L_3, L_4 = dimensions of rectangular vessel, [Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (5) and (6)]
L_{21}, L_{11} = dimension of rectangular vessel [Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (5) and (6)]
L_v = length of vessel
M = bending moment
M_j = bending moment at weld joint[3]
M_A, M_M = bending moment at midpoint of longside[3]. Positive sign results in a compression stress in the outermost fibers in the cross section.
N = $K_1K_2 - k_2^2$
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
P_e = external design pressure
P_1, P_2 = internal design pressures in two-compartment vessel, Fig. 13-2(c) where $P_1 > P_2$
R = inside radius
R_1 = least radius of gyration of noncircular cross-sectional vessel
S = allowable tensile stress values (see UG-23)
S_b = bending stress (+ = tension, − = compression)
S_m = membrane stress
S_T = total stress, $(S_m + S_b)$
S_y = yield strength of material at design temperature from Table Y-1 in Subpart 1 of Section II, Part D
T_o = length of hole of diameter d_o,
T_1 = length of hole of diameter d_1
T_2 = length of hole of diameter d_2
T_n = length of hole of diameter d_n,
$\overline{X}$ = distance from base of plate to neutral axis

[3] For un-reinforced vessels of rectangular cross ection (para. 13-7 and parts of para. 13-18), the given moments are defined on a per-unit-width basis. That is, moments have dimensions [Length × Force/Length] = [Force].

$\overline{Y}_1$ = distance between centroid of reinforced cross section with I_{11} and center line of shell plate with t_1 [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (6)]
$\overline{Y}_2$ = distance between centroid of reinforced cross section with I_{21} and center line of shell plate with t_2 [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (6)]
Z = plate parameter, UG-34
b_o = $p - d_o$ (Fig. 13-6)
b_1 = $p - d_1$ (Fig. 13-6)
b_2 = $p - d_2$ (Fig. 13-6)
b_n = $p - d_n$ (Fig. 13-6)
c = distance from neutral axis of cross section to extreme fibers (see c_i and c_o). The appropriate c_i or c_o value shall be substituted for the c term in the stress equations.
c_i = distance from neutral axis of cross section of plate, composite section, or section with multidiameter holes (see 13-6) to the inside surface of the vessel. Sign is always positive (+).
c_o = distance from neutral axis of cross section of plate, composite section, or section with multidiameter holes (see 13-6) to the extreme outside surface of the section. Sign is always negative (−).
$\pm c_x$ = distance from neutral axis of cross section to any intermediate point. Sign is positive (+) when inward and sign is negative (−) when outward.
d_o = diameter of hole of length T_o (pitch diameter for threaded hole) (Fig. 13-6)
d_1 = diameter of hole of length T_1 (pitch diameter for threaded hole) (Fig. 13-6)
d_2 = diameter of hole of length T_2 (pitch diameter for threaded hole) (Fig. 13-6)
d_j = distance from midlength of plate to weld joint or center line of row of holes in the straight segment of the plate
d_n = diameter of hole of length T_n (pitch diameter for threaded hole) (Fig. 13-6)
e_b = bending ligament efficiency [see 13-4(g), 13-6, and 13-18(b)]
e_m = membrane ligament efficiency [see 13-4(g), 13-6, and 13-18(b)]
h = inside length of long side of unstayed rectangular vessel; or dimension perpendicular to the H dimension in stayed vessels as shown in Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (7), (8), (9), and (10) in which case h may be greater than, equal to, or less than H,
= $2(L_2 + L_{21})$ for equations in 13-8(d) for Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (5) and (6)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

= $2L_2$ for equations in 13-8(d) for Fig. 13-2(b) sketch (2)

h_1 = centroidal length of reinforcing member on long side of rectangular vessel

h_o = outside length of long side of rectangular vessel

k = reinforcement member parameter

= $(I_{21}/I_{11})\alpha_1$

k_1 = I_{22}/I_2

k_2 = $I_{22}\alpha/I_1$

p = pitch distance; distance between reinforcing members; plate width between edges of reinforcing members

r = radius to centroidal axis of reinforcement member on obround vessel

t = plate thickness

t_1 = thickness of short-side plates of vessel

t_2 = thickness of long-side plates of vessel

t_{22} = thickness of long-side plates of vessel

t_3 = thickness or diameter of staying member

t_4 = thickness or diameter of staying member

t_5 = thickness of end closure plate or head of vessel

w = width of plate included in moment of inertia calculation of reinforced section

$\overline{y}$ = distance from geometric center of end plate to centroid of cross-sectional area of a rectangular vessel. If both long-side plates are of equal thickness t_e, then $\overline{y} = 0$.

α = rectangular vessel parameter $= H/h$

α_1 = rectangular vessel reinforcement parameter

= H_1/h_1

α_2 = I_2/I_1

α_3 = L_2/L_1

γ = L_2/R

γ_1 = L_2/r

θ = angle

ϕ = R/L_1

Δ = material parameter associated with w, Table 13-8(e)

β = h/p, H/p, or $2R/p$

π = 3.1415

ν = Poisson's ratio

13-6 LIGAMENT EFFICIENCY OF MULTIDIAMETER HOLES IN PLATES

In calculations made according to this Appendix for the case of a plate with uniform diameter holes, the ligament efficiency factors e_m and e_b for membrane and bending stresses, respectively, are considered to be the same. See 13-4(g) and 13-18(b) for application of ligament efficiency factors. In the case of multidiameter holes, the neutral axis of the ligament may no longer be at midthickness of the plate; in this case, for bending loads, the stress is higher at one of the plate surfaces than at the other surface.

(a) Ligament Efficiency of Plate With Multidiameter Holes Subject to Membrane Stress. Figure 13-6 shows a plate with multidiameter holes. In the case of membrane stresses, the ligament efficiency is as follows:

$$e_m = (p - D_E)/p \tag{1}$$

where

$$D_E = \frac{1}{t}\left(d_oT_o + d_1T_1 + d_2T_2 + \dots\dots\dots + d_nT_n\right) \tag{2}$$

(b) Ligament Efficiency of Plate With Multidiameter Holes Subject to Bending Stress. Figure 13-6 shows a plate with multidiameter holes. In the case of bending loads the ligament efficiency is given by

$$e_b = (p - D_E)/p \tag{3}$$

where

$$D_E = p - 6I/t^2\mathrm{c} \tag{4}$$

$$\begin{aligned} I = {} & \frac{1}{12}\left(b_oT_o^{\,3} + b_1T_1^{\,3} + b_2T_2^{\,3} + \dots + b_nT_n^{\,3}\right) \\ & + b_oT_o\left(\frac{T_o}{2} + T_1 + T_2 + \dots + T_n - \overline{X}\right)^2 \\ & + b_1T_1\left(\frac{T_1}{2} + T_2 + \dots + T_n - \overline{X}\right)^2 \\ & + b_2T_2\left(\frac{T_2}{2} + \dots + T_n - \overline{X}\right)^2 \\ & + b_nT_n\left(\overline{X} - \frac{T_n}{2}\right)^2 \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{X} = {} & \left[b_oT_o\left(\frac{T_o}{2} + T_1 + T_2 + \dots + T_n\right)\right. \\ & + b_1T_1\left(\frac{T_1}{2} + T_2 + \dots + T_n\right) \\ & \left. + b_2T_2\left(\frac{T_2}{2} + \dots + T_n\right) + b_nT_n\left(\frac{T_n}{2}\right)\right] \\ & \times (b_oT_o + b_1T_1 + b_2T_2 + \dots + b_nT_n)^{-1} \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

c = the larger of $\overline{X}$ or $(t - \overline{X})$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

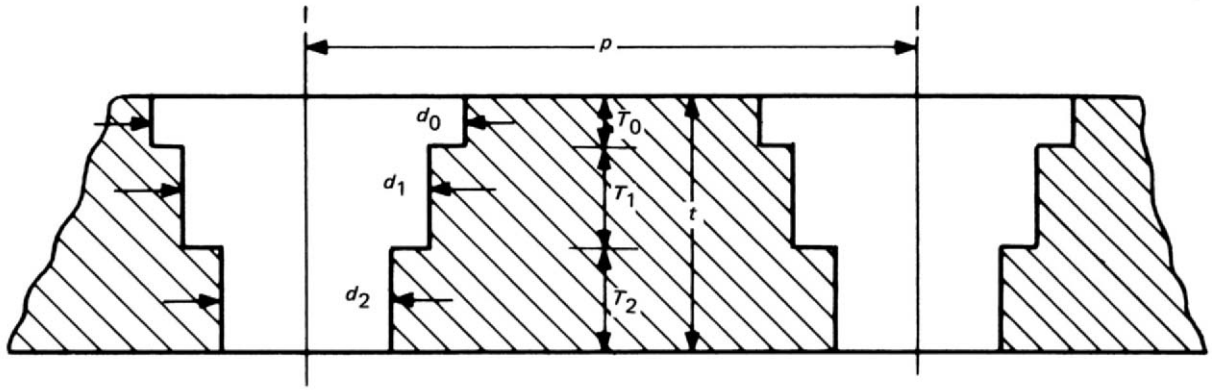


FIG. 13-6 PLATE WITH MULTIDIAMETER HOLE PATTERN

13-7 UNREINFORCED VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION

For the equations in these paragraphs, the moments and moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b = 1.0$. The moments M_A and M_r have dimensions [Force × Length/Length] = Force. See para. 13-4(k).

(a) Vessel per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (1)

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = Ph/2t_1 \tag{1}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = PH/2t_2 \tag{2}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{Pc}{12I_1}\left[-1.5H^2 + h^2\left(\frac{(1+\alpha^2K)}{1+K}\right)\right] \tag{3}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2c}{12I_1}\left(\frac{1+\alpha^2K}{1+K}\right) \tag{4}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Ph^2c}{12I_2}\left[-1.5 + \left(\frac{(1+\alpha^2K)}{1+K}\right)\right] \tag{5}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2\,c}{12I_2}\left(\frac{1+\alpha^2\,K}{1+K}\right) \tag{6}$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (3)} \tag{7}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (4)} \tag{8}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (5)} \tag{9}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (6)} \tag{10}$$

(4) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(a).

(b) Vessel per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (2). In this type of vessel the maximum stress occurs either at the corners of the vessel or at the midpoint of the long sides.

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = Ph\,/\,2t_1 \tag{11}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_m)_{t_2} = \frac{P}{8NHt_2}\left\{4NH^2 - 2h^2\left[(K_2 + k_2) - k_1\,(K_1 + k_2) + \alpha^2\,k_2\,(K_2 - K_1)\right]\right\} \tag{12A}$$

$$(S_m)_{t_{22}} = \frac{P}{8NHt_{22}}\left\{4NH^2 - 2h^2\left[-(K_2 + k_2) + k_1\,(K_1 + k_2) - \alpha^2\,k_2\,(K_2 - K_1)\right]\right\} \tag{12B}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Pch^2}{4NI_1} \times [(K_2 - k_1\,k_2) + \alpha^2\,k_2\,(K_2 - k_2)] \tag{13}$$

$$(S_b)_{Q_1} = \frac{Pch^2}{4NI_1} \times [(K_1\,k_1 - k_2) + \alpha^2\,k_2\,(K_1 - k_2)] \tag{14}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Pch^2}{8NI_{22}} \left\{2 \left[(K_2 - k_1 k_2) + \alpha^2 k_2 (K_2 - k_2)\right] - N\right\} \tag{15}$$

$$(S_b)_{M_1} = \frac{Pch^2}{8NI_2} \left\{2 \left[(K_1 k_1 - k_2) + \alpha^2 k_2 (K_1 - k_2)\right] - N\right\} \tag{16}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Pch^2}{4NI_{22}} \left[(K_2 - k_1 k_2) + \alpha^2 k_2 (K_2 - k_2)\right] \tag{17}$$

$$(S_b)_{Q_1} = \frac{Pch^2}{4NI_2} \left[(K_1 k_1 - k_2) + \alpha^2 k_2 (K_1 - k_2)\right] \tag{18}$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (11)} + \text{Eq. (13)} \tag{19}$$

$$(S_T)_{Q_1} = \text{Eq. (11)} + \text{Eq. (14)} \tag{20}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (12B)} + \text{Eq. (15)} \tag{21}$$

$$(S_T)_{M_1} = \text{Eq. (12A)} + \text{Eq. (16)} \tag{22}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (12B)} + \text{Eq. (17)} \tag{23}$$

$$(S_T)_{Q_1} = \text{Eq. (12A)} + \text{Eq. (18)} \tag{24}$$

(4) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(b).

(c) Vessel per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (3)

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_m)_C = (S_m)_D = \frac{P\,(R + L_2)}{t_1} \tag{25}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_m)_A = (S_m)_B = \frac{P\,(L_1 + R)}{t_1} \tag{26}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_m)_{B\text{-}C} = \frac{P}{t_1}\left(\sqrt{L_2^2 + L_1^2} + R\right) \tag{27}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{c}{2I_1} \times [2M_A + P\,(2RL_2 - 2RL_1 + L_2^2)] \tag{28}$$

$$(S_b)_D = \frac{c}{2I_1}[2M_A + P\,(L_2^2 + 2RL_2 - 2RL_1 - L_1^2)] \tag{29}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{M_A\,c}{I_1} \tag{30}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{c}{2I_1}(2M_A + PL_2^2) \tag{31}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_b)_{B\text{-}C} = \frac{M_r\,c}{I_1} = \frac{c}{2I_1}(2M_A + P\,\{2R\,[L_2 \cos\theta - L_1\,(1 - \sin\theta)] + L_2^2\}) \tag{32}$$

where $(S_b)_{B\text{-}C}$ maximum at

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(L_1 / L_2)$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_C = \text{Eq. (25)} + \text{Eq. (28)} \tag{33}$$

$$(S_T)_D = \text{Eq. (25)} + \text{Eq. (29)} \tag{34}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_A = \text{Eq. (26)} + \text{Eq. (30)} \tag{35}$$

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (26)} + \text{Eq. (31)} \tag{36}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_T)_{B\text{-}C} = \text{Eq. (27)} + \text{Eq. (32)} \tag{37}$$

where

$$M_A = PK_3 \tag{38}$$

$$M_r = M_A + P\,\{R\,[L_2 \cos\theta - L_1\,(1 - \sin\theta)] + L_2^2 / 2\} \tag{39}$$

$$K_3 = -L_1^2\,(6\phi^2\alpha_3 - 3\pi\phi^2 + 6\phi^2 + \alpha_3^3 + 3\,\alpha_3^2 - 6\phi - 2 + 1.5\,\pi\phi\alpha_3^2 + 6\phi\alpha_3) \times [3\,(2\alpha_3 + \pi\phi + 2)]^{-1} \tag{40}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(4) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(c).

13-8 REINFORCED VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION

(a) In the type of construction shown on Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (4), (5) and (6), the analyses are similar to those in 13-7(a) and (c) but in addition the spacing of the reinforcing members and the adequacy of the composite reinforced section must be determined. See 13-4(c) for the procedure for determining total stresses which must not be more than the allowable design stress calculated according to the methods given in 13-4(b).

(b) The rules of this paragraph cover only the types of reinforced rectangular cross section vessels shown in Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (4), (5) and (6) where welded-on reinforcement members are in a plane perpendicular to the long axis of the vessel; however, the spacing between reinforcing members need not be uniform. All reinforcement members attached to two opposite plates shall have the same moment of inertia. For any other type of reinforced rectangular cross section vessel, see U-2.

For the vessel type shown on Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (4) when the side plate thicknesses are equal, the plates may be formed to a radius at the corners. The analysis is, however, carried out in the same manner as if the corners were not rounded. For corners which are cold formed, the provisions of UG-79 and UCS-79 or UHT-79 shall apply. For the special case where $L_1 = 0$, the analysis is for an obround shell with continuous external rectangular frame reinforcement; see 13-11(b).

Reinforcing members shall be placed on the outside of the vessel and shall be attached to the plates of the vessel by welding on each side of the reinforcing member. For continuous reinforcement, welding may be either continuous or intermittent. The total length of intermittent welding on each side of the reinforcing member shall be not less than one-half the length being reinforced on the shell. Welds on opposite sides of the reinforcing member may be either staggered or in-line and the distance between intermittent welds shall be no more than eight times the plate thickness of the plate being reinforced as shown in Fig. UG-30. For assuring the composite section properties, for noncontinuous reinforcements, the welds must be capable of developing the necessary shear.[4]

(c) The end closures for vessels of this type shall be designed in accordance with the provisions in 13-4(f).

[4] See Manual of Steel Construction, AISC, American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc., 400 North Michigan Avenue, Chicago, Illinois 60611.

TABLE 13-8(d)

β or $1/\beta$ (Whichever Is Larger)	Stress Parameter, J
1.0	4.9
1.1	4.3
1.2	3.9
1.3	3.6
1.4	3.3
1.5	3.1
1.6	2.9
1.7	2.8
1.8	2.6
1.9	2.5
2.0	2.4
3.0	2.1
≥ 4.0	2.0

(d) Distance Between Reinforcing Members.

(1) The basic maximum distance between reinforcing member center lines shall be determined by Eq. (1) of UG-47. This distance is then used to calculate a value of β for the short side H and for the long side h. A value J is then obtained for each value from Table 13-8(d). The values thus obtained are used in the applicable Eqs. (1a) through (1d) to determine the values of p_1 and p_2. The maximum distance between any reinforcing member center lines shall not be greater than the least of the values computed using Eqs. (1a) through (1d).

(2) Equation (2) is used to compute the maximum effective width of the shell plate which can be used in computing the effective moments of inertia I_{11} and I_{21} of the composite section (reinforcement and shell plate acting together) at locations where the shell plate is in compression.

(3) The allowable effective width of the shell plate w shall not be greater than the least value of p computed using the applicable Eqs. (1a) through (1d) nor greater than the actual value of p if the actual value of p is less than that permitted by Eqs. (1a) through (1d). One-half of w shall be considered to be effective on each side of the reinforcing member center line, but the effective widths shall not overlap. The effective width shall not be greater than the actual width available. At locations, other than in the corner regions [see (d)(4) below], where the shell plate is in tension, w equal to the actual pitch distance may be used in computing the moments of inertia of the composite section.

(4) The equations given in this Appendix for calculation of stresses do not include the effects of high localized stresses. In the corner regions of some configurations meeting Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (4) conditions, the localized stresses may significantly exceed the calculated stress.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 13-8(e)

Material	Effective Width Coefficient, Δ [Note (1)] $\sqrt{\text{psi}}$	$\sqrt{\text{MPa}}$
Carbon Steel	6,000	498
Austenitic Stainless Steel	5,840	485
Ni–Cr–Fe	6,180	513
Ni–Fe–Cr	6,030	501
Aluminum	3,560	296
Nickel Copper	5,720	475
Unalloyed Titanium	4,490	373

NOTE:
(1) These coefficients are based on moduli of elasticity at ambient temperature for the materials in Table NF-1 of Subpart 2 of Section II, Part D. For different modulus values calculate Δ as follows:

$$\Delta = (\Delta)_{\text{tabulated}} \sqrt{E_2/E_3}$$

Only a very small width of the shell plate may be effective in acting with the composite section in the corner regions. The designer shall consider the effect of the high stress regions in the Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (4) type vessels for the loadings in UG-22 to show compliance with UG-23 and this Appendix using recognized analysis methods as permitted by U-2(g).

(5) In the equations for calculating stresses, the value of p is the sum of one-half the distances to the next reinforcing member on each side.

$$\text{For } H \geq p,\ p_1 = t_1 \sqrt{SJ / P} \tag{1a}$$

$$\text{For } H < p,\ p_1 = (t_1 / \beta) \sqrt{SJ / P} \tag{1b}$$

$$\text{For } h \geq p,\ p_2 = t_2 \sqrt{SJ / P} \tag{1c}$$

$$\text{For } h < p,\ p_2 = (t_2 / \beta) \sqrt{SJ / P} \tag{1d}$$

$$w = \frac{(t)\,(\Delta)}{\sqrt{S_y}} \tag{2}$$

(e) Vessel per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (4)

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Members

$$S_m = \frac{Php}{2(A_1 + pt_1)} \tag{3}$$

Long-Side Members

$$S_m = \frac{PHp}{2(A_2 + pt_2)} \tag{4}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Members

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{Ppc}{24I_{11}} \times \left[-3H^2 + 2h^2 \left(\frac{1 + \alpha_1{}^2 K}{1 + K}\right)\right] \tag{5}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2\,pc}{12I_{11}} \left(\frac{1 + \alpha_1{}^2 K}{1 + K}\right) \tag{6}$$

Long-Side Members

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Ph^2\,pc}{24I_{21}} \left[-3 + 2 \left(\frac{1 + \alpha_1{}^2 K}{1 + K}\right)\right] \tag{7}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2\,pc}{12I_{21}} \left(\frac{1 + \alpha_1{}^2 K}{1 + K}\right) \tag{8}$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Members

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (3)} + \text{Eq. (5)} \tag{9}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (3)} + \text{Eq. (6)} \tag{10}$$

Long-Side Members

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (4)} + \text{Eq. (7)} \tag{11}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (4)} + \text{Eq. (8)} \tag{12}$$

An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(d).

(f) Vessel per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (5)

(1) Membrane Stress. For this type of construction where the reinforcement is not continuous the membrane stress is based on the plate thickness only:

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{P\,(L_2 + L_{21} + R)}{t_1} \tag{21}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{P\,(L_1 + L_{11} + R)}{t_2} \tag{22}$$

Corner Sections

$$S_m = \frac{P}{t_1} \left[\sqrt{(L_2 + L_{21})^2 + (L_1 + L_{11})^2} + R\right] \tag{23}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Members

$$(S_b)_F = \frac{c}{I_1} \left\{M_A + pP \left[\frac{(L_2 + L_{21})^2}{2} + R\,(L_2 + L_{21} - L_1 - L_{11})\right]\right\} \tag{24}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$(S_b)_G = \frac{c}{I_1}\left\{M_A + \frac{pP}{2}\right.$$
$$\times\left[L_2{}^2 + 2L_2L_{21} + L_{21}{}^2\right.$$
$$- 2L_1L_{11} - L_{11}{}^2$$
$$\left.\left. + 2R\,(L_2 + L_{21} - L_1 - L_{11})\right]\right\} \tag{25}$$

$$(S_b)_H = \frac{c}{I_{11}}\left\{M_A + \frac{pP}{2}\left[(L_2 + L_{21})^2\right.\right.$$
$$+ 2R\,(L_2 + L_{21} - L_1 - L_{11})$$
$$\left.\left. - (L_1 + L_{11})^2\right]\right\} \tag{26}$$

Long-Side Members

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{M_A\,c}{I_{21}} \tag{27}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{c}{I_2}\left(M_A + \frac{pPL_2{}^2}{2}\right) \tag{28}$$

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{c}{I_2}\left[M_A + \frac{pP}{2}\,(L_2 + L_{21})^2\right] \tag{29}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_b)_{C\text{-}F} = \frac{M_r c}{I_1} \tag{30}$$

where $(S_b)_{C\text{-}F}$ maximum occurs at Section M for $M_M = M_r$ maximum when

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{L_1 + L_{11}}{L_2 + L_{21}}\right)$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Members

$$(S_T)_F = \text{Eq. (21) + Eq. (24)} \tag{31}$$

$$(S_T)_G = \text{Eq. (21) + Eq. (25)} \tag{32}$$

$$(S_T)_H = \text{Eq. (21) + Eq. (26)} \tag{33}$$

Long-Side Members

$$(S_T)_A = \text{Eq. (22) + Eq. (27)} \tag{34}$$

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (22) + Eq. (28)} \tag{35}$$

$$(S_C)_C = \text{Eq. (22) + Eq. (29)} \tag{36}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_T)_{C\text{-}F} = \text{largest of Eq. (21), (22), or (23)}$$
$$\text{plus maximum value of Eq. (30)} \tag{37}$$

where

$$M_A = pPK_4$$

$$M_r = M_A + pP\left\{(L_2 + L_{21})\left(\frac{L_2 + L_{21}}{2} + R\cos\theta\right)\right.$$
$$\left. + (1 - \sin\theta)[R^2 - R\,(L_1 + L_{11} + R)]\right\} \tag{38}$$

$$K_4 = [- 3RL_2\,(4R + \pi L_2) - L_{21}\,(12R^2 + 3\pi RL_{21}$$
$$+ 2L_{21}{}^2) + 12RL_{11}{}^2 - 6L_2L_{21}\,(L_2 + L_{21} + \pi R$$
$$+ 2L_{11}) - 6L_2L_{11}\,(2R + L_2) - 6L_{21}L_{11}(2R + L_{21})$$
$$+ 6L_1L_{11}\,(2R + L_{11}) + 6R^2(\pi - 2)(L_1 + L_{11})$$
$$+ 4L_{11}{}^3 - 2L_2{}^3(I_1/I_{21}) - 2(I_1/I_{11})(6L_2L_{21}L_1$$
$$+ 3L_2{}^2L_1 + 3L_{21}{}^2L_1 - 6L_1{}^2L_{11} - 3L_1L_{11}{}^2 - 6RL_1{}^2$$
$$- 2L_1{}^3 + 6RL_2L_1 + 6RL_{21}L_1 - 6RL_1L_{11})]$$
$$\times\{6\,[2L_{21} + 2L_{11} + \pi R + 2L_1(I_1/I_{11})$$
$$+ 2L_2(I_1/I_{21})]\}^{-1} \tag{39}$$

An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(e).

(g) Vessels per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (5) Modified. Figure 13-2(a) sketch (5) shows a vessel with rounded corners and noncontinuous reinforcement. Some modifications of this construction are:

(1) continuous reinforcement where the reinforcement follows the contour of the vessel. In this case the analysis is carried out the same as for Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (4), per 13-8(e).

(2) continuous reinforcement where the reinforcement is a rectangular frame as in Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (4). The analysis is carried out, as in (g)(1) above, per 13-8(e).

(h) Vessel per Fig. 13-2(a) Sketch (6). This type vessel is similar to that shown in Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (5) except for the corner geometry. The corner region consists of a flat, chamfered segment joined to the adjacent sides by curved segments with constant radii. The chamfered segments must be perpendicular to diagonal lines drawn through the points where the sides would intersect if they were extended.

(1) The following terms are used to simplify the membrane and bending stress equations given in 13-8(h) for the reinforced vessel with chamfered corners shown in Figure 13-2(a) sketch 6.

$$A_C = t_1\,p$$
$$A_{DE} = \{L_4 - [L_2 + L_{21} + R\tan(\theta_1/2.0)]\}\sin\theta_1$$
$$C_3 = L_2 + L_{21} + R\sin\theta_1$$
$$C_{E1} = C_3 + N_1 - R$$
$$C_{E2} = E_{\theta 1} + M_1 - R$$
$$C_M = L_2 + L_{21} + R\sin\theta_M$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$
\begin{aligned}
C_N &= L_4 - R + R \sin \beta_N \\
D_2 &= 6.0\ L_4\ \overline{Y}_2 \\
D_3 &= L_4 - R \\
D_4 &= L_1 + L_{11} + R \cos \theta_1 \\
E_{\theta 1} &= R[1.0 - \cos \theta_1] \\
E_M &= R[1.0 - \cos \theta_M] \\
F_1 &= R[1.0 - \sin \theta_1] \\
F_N &= R[1.0 - \sin \beta_N] \\
G_1 &= R \cos \theta_1 \\
G_N &= R \cos \beta_N \\
H\theta_1 &= R \sin \theta_1 \\
J_2 &= \overline{Y}_2 + t_1 / 2.0 + M_1 \\
K_5 &= L_2 + L_{21} \\
M_1 &= L_3 - (L_1 + L_{11}) \\
N_1 &= L_4 - (L_2 + L_{21}) \\
O_{DE} &= \sqrt{(L_3^2 + L_4^2)} - A_{DE} \\
O_K &= L_1 + L_{11} + R \cos \beta_N \\
S_1 &= 2.0\ R + t_1 \\
U_1 &= \sqrt{(M_1 - R)^2 + (N_1 - R)^2} \\
U_2 &= U_1 / 2.0 \\
U_{2X} &= U_2 \sin \theta_1 \\
U_{2Y} &= U_2 \cos \theta_1 \\
V_1 &= t_1 \sin \theta_1 \\
V_N &= t_1 \sin \beta_N \\
V_A &= pP\ L_3 \\
V_M &= t_1 \sin \theta_M \\
W &= Pp / 2.0 \\
W_1 &= t_1 \cos \theta_1 \\
W_M &= t_1 \cos \theta_M \\
W_N &= t_1 \cos \beta_N
\end{aligned}
$$

See Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (6) for locations for the following terms.

$$
\begin{aligned}
\alpha_{ab} &= \tan^{-1} (L_3 / L_4) \\
\beta_M &= \tan^{-1} [C_M / (L_3 - E_{\theta 1})] \\
\beta_N &= \tan^{-1} [(L_4 - R) / (L_1 + L_{11})] \\
\theta_1 &= \tan^{-1} (L_4 / L_3) \\
\theta_M &= \tan^{-1} \{- K_5\ S_1 / [2.0\ R^2 - RS_1 - L_3\ t_1]\} \\
\theta_N &= \tan^{-1} (C_N / O_K)
\end{aligned}
$$

(2) Membrane Stress. When the reinforcement is not continuous, the membrane stress is based on the plate area only:

Long-Side Plates A to C

$$(S_m)_A = (S_m)_B = (S_m)_C = Pp\ L_3 / A_C \tag{1}$$

Corner Section C to D

$$(S_m)_M = [Pp/A_C] \sqrt{C_M^2 + (L_3 - E_M)^2} \times \cos (\theta_M - \beta_M) \tag{2}$$

Flat Corner Section D to E

$$(S_m)_D = (S_m)_U = (S_m)_E = Pp\ O_{DE} / A_C \tag{3}$$

Corner Section E to F

$$(S_m)_N = [Pp / A_C] \sqrt{(C_N^2 + O_K^2)} \cos (\theta_N - \beta_N) \tag{4}$$

Short Side Plates F to H

$$(S_m)_F = (S_m)_G = (S_m)_H = Pp\ L_4 / A_C \tag{5}$$

(3) Bending Stress. Equations are given for calculating the bending stress at each of the sections identified by letters A through H, and at U (at the midpoint of the flat corner segment), and at the section of maximum bending moment between sections C and D and between sections E and F. The bending stress is calculated using the equation:

$$S_b = Mc / I \tag{6}$$

where M is the bending moment at the section, c is the distance from the neutral axis to the extreme fiber of the section, and I is the moment of inertia of the section. The appropriate c_i or c_o value must be substituted for the c term to calculate the stresses at the inner and outer surfaces respectively.

All the bending stress equations contain the term M_A for the bending moment at section A. The equation for M_A is:

$$M_A = pP\ K_8 \tag{7}$$

where

$$K_8 = K_{N8} / K_{D8} \tag{8}$$

$$K_{N8} = K_{AB} + K_{BC} + K_{CD} + K_{DE} + K_{EF} + K_{FG} + K_{GH} \tag{9}$$

$$K_{D8} = - 6.0[(I_1 / I_{21})\ L_2 + L_{21} + R\pi/2 + U_1 + L_{11} + (I_1 / I_{11})L_1] \tag{10}$$

$$K_{AB} = (I_1 / I_{21})\ [L_2^3 - D_2L_2] \tag{11}$$

$$K_{BC} = 3.0\ L_2\ L_{11}\ K_5 + L_{21}^3 - D_2L_{11} \tag{12}$$

$$K_{CD} = 3.0\ R\ \theta_1\ [K_5^2 + 2.0R^2 + R\ t_1 - L_3\ (S_1 + 2.0\overline{Y}_2)] + 3.0\ K_5\ E_{\theta 1}\ S_1 + 3.0\ H_{\theta 1}S_1\ (L_3 - R) \tag{13}$$

$$K_{DE} = 3.0\ U_1\ [C_3^2 + C_3\ V_1 + E_{\theta 1}^2 - E_{\theta 1}\ W_1] - 6.0\ L_3\ U_1\ \{\overline{Y}_2 + (t_1 / 2.0)\ [1.0 - \cos \theta_1] + E_{\theta 1}\} + 3.0\ U_1^2\ \{C_3 \cos \theta_1 + \sin \theta_1[E_{\theta 1} - L_3]\} + U_1^3 \tag{14}$$

$$K_{EF} = 3.0\ R\ \alpha_{ab}\ [D_3^2 + M_1^2 - 2.0\ L_3\ J_2 + R^2 + R\ t_1] + 3\ G_1\ D_3\ S_1 + 3\ F_1\ S_1 \times (L_3 - M_1) \tag{15}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$K_{FG} = 3.0\ L_{11}\ [L_4^2 + L_4\ t_1 + M_1^2 - 2.0\ L_3 J_2] + 3.0\ (M_1 - L_3)\ L_{11}^2 + L_{11}^3 \quad (16)$$

$$K_{GH} = (I_1 / I_{11})\ \{3.0\ L_1\ [L_4^2 + 2.0\ L_4 \overline{Y}_1 + L_4\ t_1 + (M_1 + L_{11})^2 - 2.0\ L_3 \times (J_2 + L_{11})] - 2.0\ L_1^3\} \quad (17)$$

Each of the equations K_{AB} through K_{GH} above represents terms associated with each segment of the vessel between lettered sections.

The equations for the bending stresses at each lettered section are as follows.

$$(S_b)_A = M_A\ c / I_{21} \quad (18)$$

$$(S_b)_B = (c / I_1)\ [M_A - V_A\ \overline{Y}_2 + W\ L_2^2] \quad (19)$$

$$(S_b)_C = (c / I_1)\ [M_A + W\ K_5^2 - 2.0\ L_3\ W\ \overline{Y}_2] \quad (20)$$

$$(S_b)_D = (c / I_1)\ \{M_A + W\ [C_3^2 + C_3\ V_1 + E_{\theta 1}^2 - E_{\theta 1}\ W_1 - L_3\ (2.0\ E_{\theta 1} + t_1 - W_1 + 2.0 \overline{Y}_2)]\} \quad (21)$$

$$(S_b)_{U2} = (c / I_1)\ \{M_A + W\ [(C_3 + U_{2Y})^2 + (C_3 + U_{2Y})\ V_1 + (E_{\theta 1} + U_{2X})^2 - (E_{\theta 1} + U_{2X})\ W_1 - 2.0\ L_3\ (\overline{Y}_2 + (t_1 / 2)\ (1.0 - \cos\ \theta_1) + E_{\theta l} + U_{2X})]\} \quad (22)$$

$$(S_b)_E = (c / I_1)\ \{M_A + W\ [C_{E1}^2 + C_{E1} V_1 + C_{E2}^2 - C_{E2}\ W_1 - 2L_3\ (\overline{Y}_2 + (t_1 / 2)\ (1 - \cos\ \theta_1) + C_{E2})]\} \quad (23)$$

$$(S_b)_F = (c / I_1)\ \{M_A + W\ [L_4^2 + L_4\ t_1 + M_1^2 - 2.0\ L_3\ J_2]\} \quad (24)$$

$$(S_b)_G = (c / I_1)\ \{M_A + W\ [L_4^2 + L_4 t_1 + (M_1 + L_{11})^2 - 2.0\ L_3 \times (J_2 + L_{11})]\} \quad (25)$$

$$(S_b)_H = (c / I_{11})\{M_A + W[L_4^2 + L_4 t_1 + 2.0 L_4\ \overline{Y}_1 - L_3^2 - 2.0 L_3 \times (\overline{Y}_2 + t_1 / 2)]\} \quad (26)$$

The maximum stress between sections C and D occurs at section M defined by the angle θ_M:

$$\theta_M = \tan^{-1}\{- K_5 S_1 / [2R^2 - RS_1 - L_3 t_1]\} \quad (27)$$

$$(S_b)_M = (c / I_1)\ \{M_A + W\ [C_M^2 + C_M\ V_M + E_M^2 - E_M\ W_M - L_3\ (2.0 E_M + t_1 - W_M + 2.0 \overline{Y}_2)]\} \quad (28)$$

The maximum stress between sections E and F occurs at section N defined by the angle β_N:

$$\beta_N = \tan^{-1}[(L_4 - R) / (L_1 + L_{11})] \quad (29)$$

$$(S_b)_N = (c / I_1)\{M_A + W[(L_4 - F_N)^2 + V_N(L_4 - F_N) + (M_1 - G_N)^2 - W_N(M_1 - G_N) - L_3(2.0 \overline{Y}_2 + t_1 + 2.0 M_1 - 2.0 G_N - W_N)]\} \quad (30)$$

See Table 13-18.1 for equations to calculate the stress at any location between sections A and C and between sections F and H.

(4) Total Stress. The total stress at any point in a section is the sum of the membrane stress and the bending stress at the point:

$$(S_T)_i = (S_m)_i + (S_b)_i \quad (31)$$

where i is any of the sections identified by letters. The signs of the stresses must be considered when calculating the total stresses. The stresses must be calculated at both the inner and outer surfaces for the reinforced sections [see 13-4(c)]. The maximum tensile stress on a section will occur at the surface where the stress due to the bending moment is a tensile stress since the membrane stress is a tensile stress.

13-9 STAYED VESSELS OF RECTANGULAR CROSS SECTION [FIG. 13-2(a) SKETCHES (7) AND (8)]

For the equations in these paragraphs, the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b = 1.0$. See para. 13-4(k).

(a) Three types of stayed construction are considered as shown on Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (7) through (10). In these types of construction the staying members may be plates welded to the side plates for the entire length of the vessel; or, the stays may be bars of circular cross section fastened to the side plates on a uniform pitch. For the former case, the stay plates shall not be constructed so as to create pressure containing partitions (see UG-19 for vessels containing more than one independent pressure chamber). For the latter case the rules of UG-47(a), UG-48, UG-49, and UG-50 must be met. End plates are subject to the rules of 13-4(f).

(b) Vessel Stayed by a Single Plate. Figure 13-2(a) sketch (7) shows a vessel with a central stay plate.

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{Ph}{4t_1}\left\{4 - \left[\frac{2 + K\ (5 - \alpha^2)}{1 + 2K}\right]\right\} \quad (1)$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = PH/2t_2 \tag{2}$$

Stay Plate

$$S_m = \frac{Ph}{2t_3}\left[\frac{2 + K(5 - \alpha^2)}{1 + 2K}\right] \tag{3}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{Pc}{24I_1}\left[-3H^2 + 2h^2\left(\frac{1 + 2\alpha^2 K}{1 + 2K}\right)\right] \tag{4}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_1}\left(\frac{1 + 2\alpha^2 K}{1 + 2K}\right) \tag{5}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left[\frac{1 + K(3 - \alpha^2)}{1 + 2K}\right] \tag{6}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left(\frac{1 + 2\alpha^2 K}{1 + 2K}\right) \tag{7}$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (4)} \tag{8}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (5)} \tag{9}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (6)} \tag{10}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (7)} \tag{11}$$

Stay Plate

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (3)} \tag{12}$$

(c) Vessel Stayed With Two Plates

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{Ph}{2t_1}\left\{3 - \left[\frac{6 + K(11 - \alpha^2)}{3 + 5K}\right]\right\} \tag{13}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = PH/2t_2 \tag{14}$$

Stay Plates

$$S_m = \frac{Ph}{2t_4}\left[\frac{6 + K(11 - \alpha^2)}{3 + 5K}\right] \tag{15}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{Pc}{24I_1}\left[-3H^2 + 2h^2\left(\frac{3 + 5\alpha^2 K}{3 + 5K}\right)\right] \tag{16}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_1}\left(\frac{3 + 5\alpha^2 K}{3 + 5K}\right) \tag{17}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left[\frac{3 + K(6 - \alpha^2)}{3 + 5K}\right] \tag{18}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left(\frac{3 + 5\alpha^2 K}{3 + 5K}\right) \tag{19}$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (13)} + \text{Eq. (16)} \tag{20}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (13)} + \text{Eq. (17)} \tag{21}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (14)} + \text{Eq. (18)} \tag{22}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (14)} + \text{Eq. (19)} \tag{23}$$

Stay Plates

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (15)} \tag{24}$$

(d) Vessel Stayed by Single Row of Circular Bars on Uniform Pitch. The maximum pitch distance is determined per Eq. (1) of UG-47.

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = Ph/t_1 \tag{25}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = PH/2t_2 \tag{26}$$

Stay Bars

$$S_m = \frac{2Php}{\pi t_3^2}\left[\frac{2 + K(5 - \alpha^2)}{1 + 2K}\right] \tag{27}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{Pc}{24I_1}\left[-3H^2 + 2h^2\left(\frac{1 + 2\alpha^2 K}{1 + 2K}\right)\right] \tag{28}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_1}\left(\frac{1 + 2\alpha^2 K}{1 + 2K}\right) \tag{29}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left[\frac{1 + K(3 - \alpha^2)}{1 + 2K}\right] \tag{30}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left(\frac{1 + 2\alpha^2 K}{1 + 2K}\right) \tag{31}$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (25)} + \text{Eq. (28)} \tag{32}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (25)} + \text{Eq. (29)} \tag{33}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (26)} + \text{Eq. (30)} \quad (34)$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (26)} + \text{Eq. (31)} \quad (35)$$

Stay Bars

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (27)} \quad (36)$$

(4) In the event that $h > p$, then a pressure rating shall be computed per Eq. (2) of UG-47 with h substituted for p. If this value of pressure P is less than the original selected pressure, then this new calculated pressure shall be the pressure rating for the vessel.

(e) Vessel Stayed by Double Row of Bars. The maximum pitch distance is determined by Eq. (1) of UG-47.

(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = Ph/t_1 \quad (37)$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = PH/2t_2 \quad (38)$$

Stay Bars

$$S_m = \frac{2Php}{\pi t_4{}^2}\left[\frac{6 + K(11 - \alpha^2)}{3 + 5K}\right] \quad (39)$$

(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{Pc}{24I_1}\left[-3H^2 + 2h^2\left(\frac{3 + 5\alpha^2 K}{3 + 5K}\right)\right] \quad (40)$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_1}\left(\frac{3 + 5\alpha^2 K}{3 + 5K}\right) \quad (41)$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left[\frac{3 + K(6 - \alpha^2)}{3 + 5K}\right] \quad (42)$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{Ph^2 c}{12I_2}\left(\frac{3 + 5\alpha^2 K}{3 + 5K}\right) \quad (43)$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (37)} + \text{Eq. (40)} \quad (44)$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (37)} + \text{Eq. (41)} \quad (45)$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (38)} + \text{Eq. (42)} \quad (46)$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (38)} + \text{Eq. (43)} \quad (47)$$

Stay Bars

$$(S_T) = \text{Eq. (39)} \quad (48)$$

(f) Vessels of Rectangular Cross Section Having Two or More Compartments of Unequal Size [Fig. 13-2(a) Sketches (9) and (10)]. Typical rectangular cross section vessels having unequal compartments are shown on Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (9) and (10). These types of vessels shall be qualified using either of the two methods given below:

(1) by applying the provisions of U-2(g) and using techniques of structural analysis for rigid frames, such as moment distribution, consistent deformation, slope-deflection, etc. Membrane and bending stresses shall be calculated throughout the structure and shall not exceed the allowable values established in this Appendix. For end plate analysis, see 13-4(e).

(2) by selecting the compartment having the maximum dimensions and then analyzing the structure per (b) above for the case of a two-compartment vessel and per (c) above for the case of a vessel with more than two compartments. For example, if the vessel has two unequal compartments, use the geometry shown in Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (7) with each compartment having the maximum dimension of the actual vessel. For a vessel with more than two compartments, use the geometry shown in Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (8) with three compartments having the maximum dimensions of the actual vessel (thus, a five- or six-compartment vessel for example would be analyzed as if it had only three compartments).

13-10 UNREINFORCED VESSELS HAVING AN OBROUND CROSS SECTION [FIG. 13-2(b) SKETCH (1)]

For the equations in these paragraphs, the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b = 1.0$. See para. 13-4(k).

(a) Membrane Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_m)_B = PR/t_1 \quad (1)$$

$$(S_m)_C = P(R+L_2)/t_1 \quad (2)$$

Side Plates

$$S_m = PR/t_2 \quad (3)$$

(b) Bending Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2 c}{6I_1}(3L_2 - C_1/A) \quad (4)$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{PL_2c}{6I_1}\,[3(L_2 + 2R) - C_1/A] \tag{5}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = PL_2C_1c/6AI_2 \tag{6}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2c}{6I_2}\,(3L_2 - C_1/A) \tag{7}$$

(c) Total Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (1) + Eq. (4)} \tag{8}$$

$$(S_T)_C = \text{Eq. (2) + Eq. (5)} \tag{9}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_T)_A = \text{Eq. (3) + Eq. (6)} \tag{10}$$

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (3) + Eq. (7)} \tag{11}$$

(d) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(f).

13-11 REINFORCED VESSELS OF OBROUND CROSS SECTION [FIG. 13-2(b) SKETCH (2)]

(a) In the type of construction shown in Fig. 13-2(b) sketch (2), the analysis is similar to that in 13-10, but in addition, the spacing of the reinforcing members and the adequacy of the reinforced section must be determined.

(b) The rules of this part of this Appendix cover only the type of reinforced obround cross section vessel shown in Fig. 13-2(b) sketch (2) where welded-on reinforcement [see 13-8(b)] either following the contour of the vessel or being in the form of a rectangular frame, is continuous in a plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vessel; however, the spacing between reinforcing members need not be uniform. In the case where the reinforcement is in the form of a rectangular frame, the analysis is carried out the same as if the reinforcement followed the contour of the vessel. All reinforcement members must have the same moment of inertia. For any other type of reinforced obround cross section vessel, see U-2.

(c) The end closures for vessels of this type shall be designed in accordance with the provisions in 13-4(f).

(d) Distance Between Reinforcing Members. The distance between reinforcing members and the effective width of plate w shall be determined by the procedure given in 13-8(d) except that Eqs. (1a) and (1b) are not applicable.

(e) Strength of Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member:

(1) Membrane Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_m)_B = \frac{PRp}{A_1 + pt_1} \tag{1}$$

$$(S_m)_C = \frac{P(R+L_2)p}{A_1 + pt_1} \tag{2}$$

Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{PRp}{A_1 + pt_1} \tag{3}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2pc}{6I_{11}}\,(3L_2 - C_2/A_3) \tag{4}$$

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{PL_2pc}{I_{11}}\,[3(L_2 + 2r) - C_2/A_3] \tag{5}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{PL_2pc}{6I_{11}}\,(-C_2/A_3) \tag{6}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2pc}{6I_{11}}\,(3L_2 - C_2/A_3) \tag{7}$$

(3) Total Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (1) + Eq. (4)} \tag{8}$$

$$(S_T)_C = \text{Eq. (2) + Eq. (5)} \tag{9}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_T)_A = \text{Eq. (3) + Eq. (6)} \tag{10}$$

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (3) + Eq. (7)} \tag{11}$$

(4) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(g).

13-12 STAYED VESSELS OF OBROUND CROSS SECTION [FIG. 13-2(b) SKETCH (3)]

For the equations in these paragraphs, the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b = 1.0$. See para. 13-4(k).

(a) The type of stayed construction considered in this Appendix is shown on Fig. 13-2(b) sketch (3). The staying member may be a plate welded to the side plates for the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

entire length of the vessel; or, the stays can be bars of circular cross section fastened to the side plates on a uniform pitch. For the former case, the stay plates shall not be constructed so as to create pressure containing partitions (see UG-19 for vessels containing more than one independent pressure chamber). For the latter case, the rules of UG-47(a), UG-48, UG-49, and UG-50 must be met. End plates are subject to the rules of 13-4(f).

(b) Vessel Stayed by a Single Plate. Figure 13-2(b) sketch (3) shows a vessel with a central stay plate.

(1) Membrane Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_m)_B = \frac{PR}{t_1} \tag{1}$$

$$(S_m)_C = \frac{P}{2t_1}\left[2(R + L_2) - L_2\right] = F \tag{2}$$

Side Plates

$$S_m = PR/t_2 \tag{3}$$

Stay Plate

$$S_m = PL_2F/t_3 \tag{4}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_1A}\left[F(B - AL_2) - \frac{C_1}{3} + AL_2\right] \tag{5}$$

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_1A}\left[F(B - AL_2 - AR) + A(L_2 + 2R) - \frac{C_1}{3}\right] \tag{6}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_2A}(BF - C_1/3) \tag{7}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_2A}\left[F(B - AL_2) - \frac{C_1}{3} + AL_2\right] \tag{8}$$

(3) Total Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (5)} \tag{9}$$

$$(S_T)_C = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (6)} \tag{10}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_T)_A = \text{Eq. (3)} + \text{Eq. (7)} \tag{11}$$

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (3)} + \text{Eq. (8)} \tag{12}$$

Stay Plate

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (4)} \tag{13}$$

(c) Vessel Stayed by Single Row of Circular Cross Section Bars on Uniform Pitch [Fig. 13-2(b) Sketch (3)]. The maximum pitch distance is determined per Eq. (1) of UG-47.

(1) Membrane Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_m)_B = PR/t_1 \tag{14}$$

$$(S_m)_C = \frac{P}{2t_1}[2(R + L_2) - L_2F] \tag{15}$$

Side Plates

$$S_m = PR/t_2 \tag{16}$$

Stay Bars

$$S_m = \frac{4PL_2Fp}{\pi {t_3}^2} \tag{17}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_1A}\left[F(B - AL_2) - \frac{C_1}{3} + AL_2\right] \tag{18}$$

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_1A}\left[F(B - AL_2 - AR) + A(L_2 + 2R) - \frac{C_1}{3}\right] \tag{19}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_2A}(BF - C_1/3) \tag{20}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{PL_2c}{2I_2A}\left[F(B - AL_2) - \frac{C_1}{3} + AL_2\right] \tag{21}$$

(3) Total Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (14)} + \text{Eq. (18)} \tag{22}$$

$$(S_T)_C = \text{Eq. (15)} + \text{Eq. (19)} \tag{23}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_T)_A = \text{Eq. (16)} + \text{Eq. (20)} \tag{24}$$

$$(S_T)_B = \text{Eq. (16)} + \text{Eq. (21)} \tag{25}$$

Stay Bars

$$(S_T) = \text{Eq. (17)} \tag{26}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(4) In the event that $(L_2 + R/2) > p$, then compute a possible new pressure rating per 13-9(d)(4).

(d) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(h).

13-13 VESSELS OF CIRCULAR CROSS SECTION HAVING A SINGLE DIAMETRAL STAYING MEMBER [FIG. 13-2(c)]

For the equations in these paragraphs, the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b = 1.0$. See para. 13-4(k).

(a) The cylindrical shell and diametral stay plate are sized such that the various vessel members will not be overstressed when there is full pressure in both vessel compartments or when there is full pressure in one compartment and zero pressure in the other compartment. End closure plates or heads are subject to the rules of 13-4(f) and shall be designed for the maximum pressure condition in the compartments. Stresses need to be computed only at the shell-plate junction since this is the location of maximum stress.

(b) For the case of equal pressure in both compartments, stresses are as follows:

(1) Membrane Stress

Shell Section

$$S_m = P_1 R / t_1 \tag{1}$$

Diametral Plate

$$S_m = \frac{2\pi P_1 t_1^2}{3Rt_3(\pi^2 - 8)} \tag{2}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Shell Section

$$S_b = \frac{c}{I_1}\left[\frac{2P_1 t_1^2}{3(\pi^2 - 8)}\right] \tag{3}$$

(3) Total Stress

Shell Section

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (3)} \tag{4}$$

Diametral Plate

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (2)} \tag{5}$$

(4) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(i).

(c) For the case of unequal pressures in the compartments, stresses are as follows, where P is the maximum value P_1 or P_2.

TABLE 13-13(c)

Ratio of Long to Short Side of Plate Element	Plate Parameter J_1
1.0	0.0513
1.1	0.0581
1.2	0.0639
1.3	0.0694
1.4	0.0755
1.5	0.0812
1.6	0.0862
1.7	0.0908
1.8	0.0948
1.9	0.0985
2.0	0.1017
3.0	0.1189
4.0	0.1235
≥ 5.0	0.1246

(1) Membrane Stress

Shell Section

$$S_m = PR / t_1 \tag{6}$$

Diametral Plate

$$S_m = \frac{\pi t_1^2 (P_1 + P_2)}{3Rt_3(\pi^2 - 8)} \tag{7}$$

(2) Bending Stress

Shell Section

$$S_b = \frac{c}{3I_1}\left[P_1\left(\frac{2t_1^2}{\pi^2 - 8}\right) + (P_1 - P_2)\frac{3R^2}{6 + (t_3/t_1)^3}\right] \tag{8}$$

Diametral Plate

For $L_1 \leq 2R$,

$$S_b = \frac{J_1 c}{I_3}[(P_1 - P_2)L_v^2] \tag{9}$$

For $L_1 > 2R$,

$$S_b = \frac{J_1 c}{I_3}[(P_1 - P_2)(4R^2)] \tag{10}$$

where J_1 is given in Table13-13(c).

(3) Total Stress

Shell Section

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (6)} + \text{Eq. (8)} \tag{11}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Diametral Plate

$$S_T = \text{Eq. (7)} + \text{Eq. (9) or (10)} \qquad (12)$$

(4) An example illustrating use of these rules is given in 13-17(i).

13-14 VESSELS OF NONCIRCULAR CROSS SECTION SUBJECT TO EXTERNAL PRESSURE

Rectangular cross section vessels per Fig. 13-2(a) sketches (1) and (2) subject to external pressure shall meet the following requirements.

13-14(a) The stresses shall be calculated in accordance with 13-7(a) and (b) except that P_e shall be substituted for P. These stresses shall meet the allowable stress criteria as for the case of internal pressure in accordance with 13-4.

13-14(b) The four side plates and the two end plates shall be checked for stability in accordance with Eq. (1). In the following equations, the plate thickness t and the modulus of elasticity E_2 must be adjusted if the plate is perforated. In equations for S_{mA} and S_{mB}, multiply t by e_m; in equations for S_{crA} and S_{crB}, no adjustment of t shall be made.

A = subscript to identify stress or load acting in direction parallel to long dimension of panel being considered

B = subscript to identify stress or load acting in direction parallel to short dimension of panel being considered

S_{mA} = compression stress applied to short edge of side panels due to external pressure on the end plates [see Fig. 13-14(b)]

S_{mB} = compression stress applied to long edge of side panels and end panels due to external pressure on the adjacent side plates [see Fig. 13-14(b)]

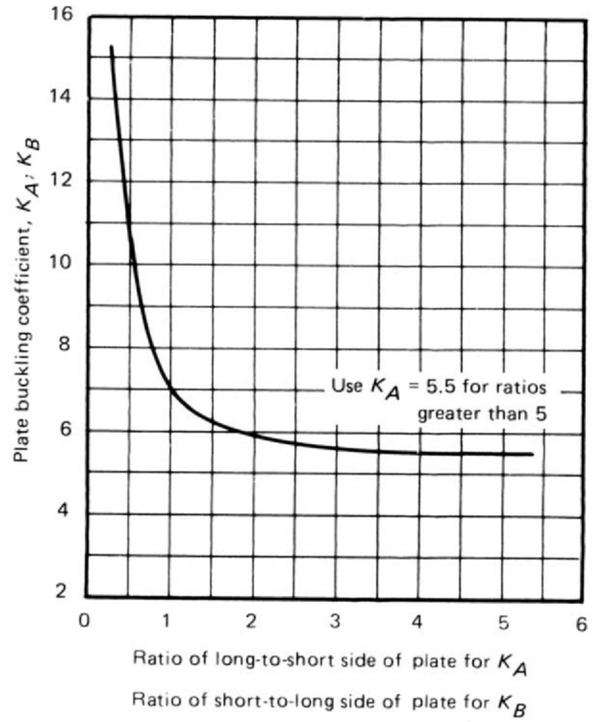
$K_A; K_B$ = plate buckling coefficients, obtained from Fig. 13-14(a), as used in equations for calculating S_{crA} and S_{crB}, respectively

$S_{crA}; S_{crB}$ = plate buckling stress when panel is subjected to stresses on two opposite edges in directions indicated by subscripts A and B [see Fig. 13-14(b)]

$$\frac{2S_{mA}}{S_{crA}} + \frac{2S_{mB}}{S_{crB}} \leq 1.0 \qquad (1)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} S_{crA} &= S'_{crA} \text{ when } S'_{crA} \leq S_y/2 \\ &= S''_{crA} \text{ when } S'_{crA} > S_y/2 \\ S_{crB} &= S'_{crB} \text{ when } S'_{crB} \leq S_y/2 \\ &= S''_{crB} \text{ when } S'_{crB} > S_y/2 \end{aligned}$$



GENERAL NOTE: When ratio is less than 0.258, use $K_B = 1.0$ and L_v = (short side dimension, H or h) in equations for calculating S'_{crB}.

FIG. 13-14(a)

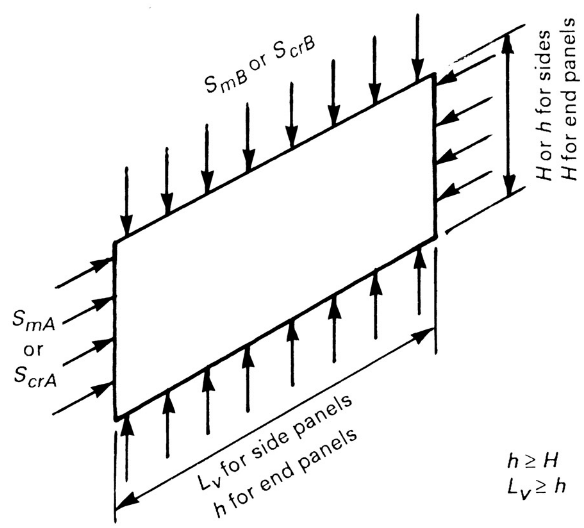


FIG. 13-14(b) ORIENTATION OF PANEL DIMENSIONS AND STRESSES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Short-Side Plates

$$S_{mA} = \frac{P_e hH}{2(t_1 H + t_2 h)} \tag{2[5]}$$

$$S_{mB} = P_e h/2t_1 \tag{3}$$

$$S'_{crA} = \frac{\pi^2 E_2}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_1}{H}\right)^2 K_A \tag{4A}$$

$$S''_{crA} = S_y - S_y{}^2/4S'_{crA} \tag{4B}$$

$$S'_{crB} = \frac{\pi^2 E_2}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_1}{L_v}\right)^2 K_B \tag{5A}$$

$$S''_{crB} = S_y - \frac{S_y{}^2}{4S_{crB}} \tag{5B}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_{mA} = \frac{P_e hH}{2(t_1 H + t_2 h)} \tag{6[5]}$$

$$S_{mB} = \frac{P_e H}{2t_2} \tag{7[6]}$$

$$S'_{crA} = \frac{\pi^2 E_2}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_2}{h}\right)^2 K_A \tag{8A}$$

$$S''_{crA} = S_y - \frac{S_y{}^2}{4S'_{crA}} \tag{8B}$$

$$S'_{crB} = \frac{\pi^2 E_2}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_2}{L_v}\right)^2 K_B \tag{9A}$$

$$S''_{crB} = S_y - \frac{S_y{}^2}{4S'_{crB}} \tag{9B}$$

End Plates

$$S_{mA} = \frac{P_e H L_v}{2(t_2 L_v + t_5 H)} \tag{10[5]}$$

$$S_{mB} = \frac{P_e h L_v}{2(t_1 L_v + t_5 h)} \tag{11}$$

$$S'_{crA} = \frac{\pi^2 E_2}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_5}{H}\right)^2 K_A \tag{12A}$$

$$S''_{crA} = S_y - \frac{S_y{}^2}{4S'_{crA}} \tag{12B}$$

$$S'_{crB} = \frac{\pi^2 E_2}{12(1-v^2)}\left(\frac{t_5}{h}\right)^2 K_B \tag{13A}$$

$$S''_{crB} = S_y - \frac{S_y{}^2}{4S'_{crB}} \tag{13B}$$

13-14(c) In addition to checking each of the four side plates and the two end plates for stability in accordance with Eq. (1) above, the cross section shall be checked for column stability in accordance with Eq. (14) as follows:

$$\frac{S_a}{F_a} + \frac{S_b}{(1 - S_a/F'_e)S} \le 1.0 \tag{14}$$

where

$$S_a = \frac{P_e h_o H_o}{2(t_1 H_o + t_2 h_o)} \tag{15[5]}$$

when

$$2L_v/R_1 \le C_c$$

$$F_a = \frac{\left[1 - \frac{(2L_v/R_1)^2}{2C_c{}^2}\right]S_y}{\frac{5}{3} + \frac{3(2L_v/R_1)}{8C_c} - \frac{(2L_v/R_1)^3}{8C_c{}^3}} \tag{16A}$$

when

$$2L_v/R_1 > C_c$$

$$F_a = \frac{12\pi^2 E_2}{23(2L_v/R_1)^2} \tag{16B}$$

$$C_c = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi^2 E_2}{S_y}} \tag{17}$$

$$S_b = \frac{Mc_1}{I_e} \tag{18}$$

$$M = P_e h_o H_o \bar{y} \tag{19}$$

$$F'_e = \frac{12\,\pi^2 E_2}{23(2L_v/R_1)^2} \tag{20}$$

13-15 FABRICATION

(a) Fabrication of vessels shall be in accordance with applicable parts of Subsection A and Subsection B, Part UW, except as otherwise provided for in this Appendix. Category A joints (see UW-3) may be of Type No. (3) of Table UW-12 when the thickness does not exceed $^5\!/_8$ in. (16 mm).

(b) This Appendix covers fabrication of vessels by welding. Other methods of fabrication are permissible provided the requirements of applicable parts of this Section are met.

13-16 INSPECTION

Inspection and testing shall be carried out as stated in Subsection A.

[5] These equations apply to vessels in which the long-side plates are of equal thickness. If thicknesses are not equal, replace $2t_1$ with $(t_2 + t_{22})$.

[6] These equations apply to vessels in which the long-side plates are of equal thickness. If thicknesses are unequal, then use Eqs. (12A) and (12B) of 13-7(b)(1).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13-17 EXAMPLES

Examples illustrating use of the rules of this Appendix are as follows:

13-17(a) Rules of 13-7(a). A vessel of rectangular cross section [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (1)] consists of plain short-side and end plates, a long-side plate with uniform 1.5 in. diameter holes on a 3.75 in. pitch, and a long-side plate with multidiameter holes on a 3.75 in. pitch. The internal design pressure is 115 psi at a design temperature of 650°F. Material is SA-515 Grade 70 steel. There is no corrosion allowance and the vessel is spot radiographed; $E = 0.8$. The following additional data are given.

Short-Side Plate Thickness. (Butt welded at Location N)

$$t_1 = 0.625 \text{ in.}$$

Long-Side Plate Thickness

$$t_2 = 1.00 \text{ in.}$$

End Plate Thickness

$$t_5 = 0.50 \text{ in.}$$

Short-Side Inside Length

$$H = 6.00 \text{ in.}$$

Long-Side Inside Length

$$h = 13.5 \text{ in.}$$

Multidiameter Hole Dimensions

$$d_o = 1.75 \text{ in.}$$

$$d_1 = 1.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$T_o = 0.625 \text{ in.}$$

$$T_1 = 0.375 \text{ in.}$$

Per Table UW-12 for Type 2 joint,

$$E = 0.80$$

From 13-6(a), $e_m = e_b = (3.75 - 1.5)/3.75 = 0.60$ for the side plate with uniform diameter holes. For the other side plate, $e_m = (3.75 - D_E)/3.75$ where $D_E = 1.75$ (0.625) plus 1.25 (0.375) = 1.5625 in. Thus, $e_m = (3.75 - 1.5625)/3.75 = 0.58$. These efficiencies are less than $E = 0.8$ [see 13-4(g)]; therefore, these values will be used. According to 13-6(b) for bending ligament efficiency,

$$\overline{X} = \frac{2(0.625)(0.3125 + 0.375) + 2.5(0.375)(0.1875)}{1.250 + 0.9375}$$

$$c_i = \overline{X} = 0.473 \text{ in.}$$

$$I = \frac{1}{6}(0.625)^3 + \frac{2.5}{12}(0.375)^3 + 1.25\,(0.3125 + 0.375 - 0.473)^2 + 2.5\,(0.375)\,(0.1875 - 0.473)^2 = 0.1856 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$c_o = -(1 - 0.473) = -0.527 \text{ in.}$$

$$D_E = 3.75 - \frac{6(0.1856)}{1^2(0.527)} = 1.637 \text{ in.}$$

$$e_b = (3.75 - 1.637)/3.75 = 0.56$$

$$\alpha = 0.44,\ K = 1.82$$

The membrane stresses are as follows:

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{115(13.5)}{2(0.625)} = 1242 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plate ($e_m = 0.60$)[7] From Eq. (2) and 13-4(g)

$$S_m = \frac{115(6)}{(2)(0.60)(1.0)} = 575 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plate ($e_m = 0.58$)[7] From Eq. (2) and 13-4(g)

$$S_m = \frac{115(6)}{2(0.58)(1.0)} = 595 \text{ psi}$$

The bending stresses are as follows:

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \frac{115(\pm 0.3125)}{0.625^3} \times \left[-54 + 182.25\left(\frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)\right]$$

Inner, $(S_b)_N = 4{,}913$ psi tension

Outer, $(S_b)_N = -4{,}913$ psi compression

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{115(13.5)^2\,(\pm 0.3125)}{0.625^3}\left(\frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Inner, $(S_b)_Q = 12{,}862$ psi tension

Outer, $(S_b)_Q = -12{,}862$ psi compression

Long-Side Plate ($e_b = 0.60$)[7]

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{115(13.5)^2(\pm 0.50)}{1^3(0.60)}\left(-1.5 + \frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Inner, $(S_b)_M = -17{,}825$ psi compression

Outer, $(S_b)_M = 17{,}825$ psi tension

[7] See 13-4(g) for use of ligament efficiencies.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{115(13.5)^2(\pm 0.5)}{1^3}\left(\frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Inner, $(S_b)_Q = 5{,}025$ psi tension

Outer, $(S_b)_Q = -5{,}025$ psi compression

Long-Side Plate ($e_b = 0.56$)[7]

$$c = c_o = -0.527 \text{ in.}$$

$$c = c_i = 0.473 \text{ in.}$$

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{115(13.5)^2(-0.527)}{1^3(0.56)}\left(-1.5 + \frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Outer, $(S_b)_M = 20{,}130$ psi tension

$$(S_b)_M = \frac{115(13.5)^2(+0.473)}{1^3(0.56)}\left(-1.5 + \frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Inner, $(S_b)_M = -18{,}067$ psi compression

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{115(13.5)^2(-0.527)}{1^3}\left(\frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Outer, $(S_b)_Q = -5{,}295$ psi compression

$$(S_b)_Q = \frac{115(13.5)^2(+0.473)}{1^3}\left(\frac{1.352}{2.82}\right)$$

Inner, $(S_b)_Q = 4752$ psi tension

The total stresses are maximum at the surfaces where tensile stresses due to the bending moment occur. The total tension stresses are as follows.

Short-Side Plates

Outer, $(S_T)_N = 1{,}242 + 4{,}913 = 6{,}155$ psi

Inner, $(S_T)_Q = 1{,}242 + 12{,}862 = 14{,}104$ psi

Long-Side Plates ($e_b = 0.60$)

Outer, $(S_T)_M = 575 + 17{,}825 = 18{,}400$ psi

Inner, $(S_T)_Q = 575 + 5{,}025 = 5{,}600$ psi

Long-Side Plates ($e_b = 0.56$)

Outer, $(S_T)_M = 595 + 20{,}130 = 20{,}725$ psi

Inner, $(S_T)_Q = 595 + 4{,}752 = 5{,}347$ psi

Outer, $(S_T)_Q = 595 - 5{,}295 = -4{,}700$psi

End Plates [UG-34 and 13-4(f)]

$$Z = 3.4 - 2.4(6/13.5) = 2.33$$

$$S = \pm\frac{6^2(2.33)(0.20)(115)}{0.5^2} = \pm 7{,}717 \text{ psi}$$

The maximum allowable stress from Table 1A of Section II, Part D is $S = 17{,}500$ psi. The allowable design stress SE for membrane stress, is: $E = 0.8$; $SE = 14{,}000$ psi. The ligament efficiencies $e_m = 0.60$ and $e_m = 0.58$ have already been used in calculating the applied stresses. These stresses are compared to the allowable stress $S = 17{,}500$ psi. All of the membrane stresses calculated meet the allowable design stresses.

The allowable design stresses $1.5SE$ for membrane plus bending stresses are: $E = 1.0$, $1.5SE = 26{,}250$ psi; $E = 0.8$, $1.5SE = 21{,}000$ psi.

The ligament efficiencies $e_m = 0.60$ and $e_m = 0.56$ have already been used in calculating the applied stresses.

The location of the significant membrane plus bending stresses are at:

13-17(a)(1) midlength M on the long side plate having the multidiameter hole pattern. The total stress here is

$$(S_T)_M = 20{,}725 \text{ psi} < 1.5SE = 26{,}250 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(a)(2) corners Q on the short side plates. The total stress here is

$$(S_T)_Q = 14{,}104 \text{ psi} < 1.5SE = 26{,}250 \text{ psi}$$

The allowable stress for the end plates is based on UG-34. Since the end plates have no butt welds, the joint efficiency equals one ($E = 1.0$). The allowable stress for the end plate is $SE = 17{,}500$ psi. The equations in UG-34 contain the term C which includes a factor of 0.667 which effectively increases the allowable stress for welded end plates to $1.5SE$.

The allowable design stress requirements have been met; therefore, the plate thicknesses specified are satisfactory.

13-17(b) Rules of 13-7(b). A vessel of rectangular cross section [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (2)] consists of plain long-side, short-side, and end plates. Design conditions are 115 psig internal pressure at 650°F. Material is SA-515 Grade 70 steel. There is no corrosion allowance. There are no butt welds.

The following additional data are given.

Short-Side Plate Thickness

$$t_1 = 0.625 \text{ in.}$$

Long-Side Plate Thickness

$$t_2 = 1.00 \text{ in.}$$

Long-Side Plate Thickness

$$t_{22} = 2.00 \text{ in.}$$

Short-Side Length

$$H = 6.00 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Long-Side Length

$$h = 13.50 \text{ in.}$$

End-Plate Thickness

$$t_5 = 0.75 \text{ in.}$$

Vessel welded at corners only

$$k_1 = 7.995$$

$$k_2 = 14.567$$

$$K_1 = 32.134$$

$$K_2 = 53.119$$

$$I_1 = 0.0203 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_{22} = 0.666 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$N = 1495$$

$$I_2 = 0.0833 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$\alpha = 0.444$$

13-17(b)(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{115(13.50)}{2(0.625)} = 1{,}242 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_m)_{t_2} = \frac{115(215{,}280 + 89{,}456)}{71{,}760(1)} = 488 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_m)_{t_{22}} = \frac{115(215{,}280 - 89{,}456)}{71{,}760(2)} = 101 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(b)(2) Bending Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_Q = \pm \frac{115(0.3125)(13.5)^2}{4(1{,}495)(0.0203)} \times (-\,63.344 + 111) = 2{,}571 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Q_1} = \frac{115(0.3125)(13.5)^2}{4(1{,}495)(0.0203)} \times (242 + 50.45) = 15{,}778 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \pm \frac{115(1)(13.5)^2}{8(1{,}495)(0.666)} [2\,(-63.344 + 111) - 1{,}495] = 3{,}683 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{M_1} = \pm \frac{115(0.5)(13.5)^2}{8(1{,}495)(0.0833)} [2\,(242 + 50.45) - 1{,}495] = 9{,}572 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \pm \frac{115(1)(13.5)^2}{4(1{,}495)(0.666)} \times [-63.344 + 111] = 250 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Q_1} = \pm \frac{115(0.5)(13.5)^2}{4(1{,}495)(0.0833)} \times (242 + 50.45) = 6{,}153 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(b)(3) Total Stresses

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_Q = 1{,}242 + 2{,}571 = 3{,}813 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Q_1} = 1{,}242 + 15{,}778 = 17{,}020 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = 101 + 3{,}683 = 3{,}784 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{M_1} = 488 + 9{,}572 = 10{,}060 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = 101 + 250 = 351 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Q_1} = 488 + 6{,}153 = 6{,}641 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(b)(4) End Plates

$$Z = 3.4 - 2.4(6/13.5) = 2.33$$

$$S = \frac{(6)^2(2.33)(0.20)(115)}{(0.75)^2} = 3{,}430 \text{ psi}$$

The material allowable membrane stress from Table 1A of Section II, Part D is $S = 17{,}500$ psi. Since there are no butt welded joints in the vessel, $E = 1.0$ and the allowable design stress is also $SE = 17{,}500$ psi. All of the membrane stresses calculated meet this requirement. The allowable membrane plus bending design stress is $1.5SE = 1.5(17{,}500) = 26{,}500$ psi. All the calculated membrane plus bending stresses meet this requirement.

13-17(c) Rules of 13-7(c). A vessel of rectangular cross section [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (3)] is constructed of SA-515 Grade 70 steel and is subject to an internal design pressure of 15 psi at 200°F. The following additional details are given:

$$t_1 = 1.0 \text{ in.} \qquad R = 10.0 \text{ in.}$$

$$L_2 = 20.0 \text{ in.} \qquad L_1 = 10.0 \text{ in.}$$

No corrosion allowance; spot radiographic examination; the butt welds are at locations A and D with $E = 0.85$ from Table UW-12 for Type 1 joint; and end plates are qualified per U-2(g).

13-17(c)(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_m)_C = (S_m)_D = 15(30)/1.0 = 450 \text{ psi}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_m)_A = (S_m)_B = 15(40)/2.0 = 300 \text{ psi}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_m)_{B-C} = 15\,(\sqrt{20^2 + 10^2} + 10)/1.0$$

$$= 485 \text{ psi tension}$$

13-17(c)(2) Bending Stress

$$\alpha_3 = 20/10 = 2.0$$

$$\phi = 10/10 = 1.0$$

$$K_3 = -188$$

$$M_A = -2{,}820 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{\pm 0.5}{2(0.0833)}[2(-2820) + 15(400 - 200 + 400)]$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_C = 10{,}084 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_C = -10{,}084 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$(S_b)_D = \frac{\pm 0.50}{2(0.0833)}[2(-2820) + 15(400 - 200 + 400 - 100)]$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_D = -5{,}583 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_D = 5{,}583 \text{ psi tension}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{-2820(\pm 0.50)}{0.0833}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_A = -16{,}927 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_A = 16{,}927 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{\pm 0.50}{2(0.0833)}\left(-5{,}640 + 6{,}000\right)$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_B = 1{,}080 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_B = -1{,}080 \text{ psi compression}$$

Corner Sections. For maximum bending moment, $\theta = \tan^{-1}(10/20) = 27$ deg

$$(S_b)_{27\text{ deg.}} = \frac{\pm 0.50}{2(0.0833)}\left(-5{,}640 + 9{,}708\right)$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_{27\text{ deg}} = 12{,}209 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_{27\text{ deg}} = -12{,}209 \text{ psi compression}$$

13-17(c)(3) Total stresses are maximum at the surfaces where tensile stresses due to the bending moment occur.

Short-Side Plates

$$\text{Inner, } (S_T)_C = 450 + 10{,}084 = 10{,}534 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_T)_D = 450 + 5{,}583 = 6{,}033 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$\text{Outer, } (S_T)_A = 300 + 16{,}927 = 17{,}227 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_T)_B = 300 + 1{,}080 = 1{,}380 \text{ psi}$$

Corner Sections

$$\text{Inner, } (S_T)_{B\text{-}C} = 485 + 12{,}209 = 12{,}694 \text{ psi}$$

The allowable membrane stress from Table 1A of Section II, Part D is $S = 17{,}500$ psi (see 13-5 for application of weld joint efficiency factor). The allowable design stress SE for membrane stress is $SE = 17{,}500(0.85) = 14{,}875$ psi. All of the calculated membrane stresses meet this requirement.

The allowable design stress $1.5SE$ for membrane plus bending tension or compression stresses is: for $E = 1.00$, $1.5SE = 26{,}250$ psi; for $E = 0.85$, $1.5SE = 22{,}312$ psi. All membrane plus bending stresses in this example meet these requirements.

13-17(d) Rules of 13-8(e). A vessel of rectangular cross section [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (4)] is reinforced by structural I-beam members. The following data are given:

Internal Design Pressure

$$P = 15 \text{ psi}$$

Design Temperature $= 400°$F

Plate Thickness

$$t_1 = t_2 = 0.375 \text{ in.}$$

Plate Reinforcement

Short Sides: 6-in. 12.5 lb/ft I-Beams

$$A_6 = 3.61 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad I_6 = 21.8 \text{ in.}^4$$

Long Sides: 8-in. 18.4 lb/ft I-Beams

$$A_8 = 5.34 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad I_8 = 56.9 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$H = 61.625 \text{ in.} \qquad H_1 = 70.375 \text{ in.}$$

$$h = 83.625 \text{ in.} \qquad h_1 = 90.375 \text{ in.}$$

$$\alpha = 0.74 \qquad \alpha_1 = 0.78$$

No corrosion allowance; spot radiographic examination; end closures qualified per U-2(g). Butt welds are at locations M and N and are Type 1 as shown in Table UW-12. Since there is spot radiographic examination, the E value is 0.85 for both membrane and bending stress at

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

locations M and N. Corner welds at Q meet the requirements of Fig. UW-13.2 and $E = 1.0$.

Material:

Vessel: SA-285 Grade C steel

Reinforcement: SA-36 structural steel

The end closures are special formed plates qualified per U-2(g). From Eq. (1) of UG-47(a) the basic maximum distance between reinforcing members is

$$p = 0.375 \sqrt{\frac{13{,}800(2.1)}{15}} = 16.48 \text{ in.}$$

and from Table 13-8(d), $\beta = 5.1$ giving a J value of 2.0. Then from Eqs. (1a) and (1c) of 13-8(d), the maximum value of p is 16.03 in. From Eq. (2) and Table 13-8(e), $w = 14$ in. The maximum allowable pitch can be 16.03 in., but the designer chooses to make the actual pitch 14.0 in. The reinforcement members are welded to plate 0.375 in. thick; therefore, the effective area of plate and the moment of inertia are as follows:

Short-Side Plate Reinforcement

$$A_p = tw = 0.375(14) = 5.25 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{X} &= (A_6X_6 + A_pY_p)/(A_p + A_6)\\ &= [3.61(3.375) + 5.25(0.1875)]/8.86\\ &= 1.486 \text{ in.}\end{aligned}$$

$$c_i = 1.486 \text{ in.} \qquad c_o = -(6.375 - 1.486) = -4.889 \text{ in.}$$

$$\begin{aligned}I_{11} &= I_6 + A_6X_{6I}^2 + I_p + A_p(\overline{X} - t_1/2)^2\\ &= 21.8 + 3.6(1.889)^2 + 0.0615 + 5.25(1.299)^2\\ &= 43.60 \text{ in.}^4\end{aligned}$$

Long-Side Plate Reinforcement

$$\begin{aligned}\overline{X} &= (A_8X_8 + A_pY_p)/(A_p + A_8)\\ &= [5.34(4.375) + 5.25(0.1875)]/10.59\\ &= 2.299 \text{ in.}\end{aligned}$$

$$c_i = 2.299 \text{ in.} \qquad c_o = -(8.375 - 2.299) = -6.076 \text{ in.}$$

$$\begin{aligned}I_{21} &= I_8 + A_8X_{8I}^2 + I_p + A_p(\overline{X} - t_1/2)^2\\ &= 56.9 + 5.34(2.076)^2 + 0.0615 + 5.25(2.112)^2\\ &= 103.39 \text{ in.}^4\end{aligned}$$

Membrane Stress

Short-Side Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member

$$S_m = \frac{15(83.625)(14)}{2(3.61 + 14 \times 0.375)} = 991 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member

$$S_m = \frac{15(61.625)(14)}{2(5.34 + 14 \times 0.375)} = 611 \text{ psi}$$

Bending Stress

Short-Side Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member

Outer Surface, Reinforcing Member

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_N &= \frac{15(14)(-4.889)}{24(43.60)}\left\{-3(61.625)^2 + 2(83.625)^2 \times \left[\frac{1.0 + 0.78^2(1.85)}{2.85}\right]\right\}\\ &= 944 \text{ psi tension}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_Q &= \frac{15(83.625)^2(14)(-4.889)(2.126)}{12(43.60)(2.85)}\\ &= -10{,}234 \text{ psi compression}\end{aligned}$$

Inner Surface, Shell Plate

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_N &= \frac{15(14)(+1.486)}{24(43.60)}\left\{-3(61.625)^2 + 2(83.625)^2 \times \left[\frac{1.0 + 0.78^2(1.85)}{2.85}\right]\right\}\\ &= -287 \text{ psi compression}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_Q &= \frac{15(83.625)^2(14)(+1.486)(2.126)}{12(43.60)(2.85)}\\ &= 3{,}111 \text{ psi tension}\end{aligned}$$

Long-Side Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member

Outer Surface, Reinforcing Member

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_M &= \frac{15(83.625)^2(14)(-6.076)}{24(103.39)}\left[-3 + 2\left(\frac{2.13}{2.85}\right)\right]\\ &= 5{,}413 \text{ psi tension}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_Q &= \frac{15(83.625)^2(14)(-6.076)}{12(103.39)}\left[\frac{2.13}{2.85}\right]\\ &= -5{,}374 \text{ psi compression}\end{aligned}$$

Inner Surface, Shell Plate

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_M &= \frac{15(83.625)^2(14)(+2.299)}{24(103.39)}[-3 + 2(2.13/2.85)]\\ &= -2{,}049 \text{ psi compression}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(S_b)_Q &= \frac{15(83.625)^2(14)(+2.299)}{12(103.39)}(2.13/2.85)\\ &= 2{,}034 \text{ psi tension}\end{aligned}$$

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Total Stress

Short-Side Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member

Outer Surface, Reinforcing Member

$$(S_T)_N = 991 + 944 = 1{,}935 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = 991 - 10{,}234 = -9{,}243 \text{ psi compression}$$

Inner Surface, Shell Plate

$$(S_T)_N = 991 - 287 = 704 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = 991 + 3{,}111 = 4{,}102 \text{ psi tension}$$

Long-Side Composite Plate and Reinforcing Member

Outer Surface, Reinforcing Member

$$(S_T)_M = 611 + 5{,}413 = 6{,}024 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = 611 - 5{,}374 = -4{,}763 \text{ psi compression}$$

Inner Surface, Shell Plate

$$(S_T)_M = 611 - 2{,}049 = -1{,}438 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = 611 + 2{,}034 = 2{,}645 \text{ psi tension}$$

The stress values from Section II, Part D, Tables 1A and Y-1 for a design temperature of 400°F [see 13-4(b)] are as follows:

SA-285 Grade C: $S = 13{,}800$ psi; $S_y = 25{,}700$ psi

SA-36 Bar: $S = 14{,}500$ psi; $S_y = 30{,}800$ psi

The maximum allowable design stresses are:

Membrane Stress

SA-285 Grade C ($E = 0.85$): $SE = 13{,}800(0.85) = 11{,}730$ psi (at weld joint only)

SA-36 Bar ($E = 1.0$): $SE = 14{,}500$ psi

Membrane Plus Bending

Allowable design stress is lesser of $1.5SE$ or $(^2\!/\!_3)S_y$

SA-285 Grade C ($E = 1.0$)

$$1.5SE = 1.5(13{,}800)(1.0)$$
$$= 20{,}700 \text{ psi}$$

SA-285 Grade C ($E = 0.85$)

$$1.5SE = 1.5(13{,}800)(0.85)$$
$$= 17{,}595 \text{ psi}$$
$$^2\!/\!_3 S_y = {}^2\!/\!_3(25{,}700)$$
$$= 17{,}133 \text{ psi (limits)}$$

SA-36 Bar ($E = 1.0$)

$$1.5SE = 1.5(14{,}500)(1.0)$$
$$= 21{,}750 \text{ psi}$$
$$^2\!/\!_3 S_y = {}^2\!/\!_3(30{,}800)$$
$$= 20{,}530 \text{ psi}$$

Based on these allowable design stresses, the elements of the vessel are all within allowable limits. Note that the combined membrane plus bending allowable design stress is limited by the $^2\!/\!_3 \times$ yield stress at design temperature. [See 13-4(b)(2).]

13-17(e) Rules of 13-8(f). A vessel of rectangular cross section [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (5)] consists of a shell of uniform plate 0.25 in. thick, reinforced by members welded on the flat sides of the vessel. Material is SA-515 Grade 70 steel. The internal design pressure is 27 psi at a design temperature of 500°F. The following design details are given:

$$A_1 = 1.50 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad A_2 = 1.50 \text{ in.}^2$$
$$E = \text{(see 13-4, 13-5, and UW-12)}$$
$$L_1 = 6.88 \text{ in.} \qquad L_2 = 10.75 \text{ in.}$$
$$L_{11} = 1.00 \text{ in.} \qquad L_{21} = 0.125 \text{ in.}$$
$$R = 2.13 \text{ in.}$$

Reinforcement: 2 in. × 0.75 in. bar on 7 in. pitch. (From UG-47 the maximum pitch distance is 9.22 in.)

$$I_1 = 0.0091 \text{ in.}^4 \qquad I_{11} = 1.53 \text{ in.}^4 \qquad I_{21} = 1.53 \text{ in.}^4$$
$$c_1 = 0.644 \text{ in. (to inside surface)}$$
$$c_2 = -1.61 \text{ in. (to outside surface of reinforcing bar)}$$

No corrosion allowance; no radiographic examination; butt welds are at locations A and H with $E = 0.70$ from Table UW-12; end closures qualified per U-2(g).

13-17(e)(1) Membrane Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{27(10.75 + 0.125 + 2.13)}{0.250} = 1{,}400 \text{ psi}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$S_m = 27(6.88 + 1.00 + 2.13)/0.250 = 1{,}080 \text{ psi}$$

Corner Sections

$$S_m = \frac{27}{0.250}\left[\sqrt{(10.75 + 0.125)^2 + (6.88 + 1.000)^2} + 2.13\right]$$
$$= 1{,}680 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(e)(2) Bending Stress

$$K_4 = -65.3$$
$$M_A = -12{,}300$$
$$M_r = 1{,}070$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Short-Side Members

Plate Sections at Locations F, G, and H

$$(S_b)_F = \frac{\pm 0.125}{0.0091}(-12{,}300 + 12{,}400)$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_F = 1{,}370 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_F = -1{,}370 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$(S_b)_G = \frac{\pm 0.125}{0.0091}(-12{,}300 + 11{,}000)$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_G = -\ 17{,}900 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_G = 17{,}900 \text{ psi tension}$$

At H for composite plate and reinforcing member, butt welded joint in plate.

$$(S_b)_H = \frac{c(-12{,}300 + 6{,}500)}{1.53}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_H = \frac{0.644\ (-12{,}300 + 6{,}500)}{1.53}$$

$$= -2{,}440 \text{ psi compression}$$

Outer surface, reinforcing member

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_H = \frac{-1.61(-12{,}300 + 6{,}500)}{1.53}$$

$$= 6{,}100 \text{ psi tension}$$

Long-Side Members

Plate Sections at Locations A, B, and C

At A for composite plate and reinforcing member, butt welded joint in plate.

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{c(-12{,}300)}{1.53}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_A = \frac{0.644\ (-12{,}300)}{1.53}$$

$$= -5{,}180 \text{ psi compression}$$

Outer surface, reinforcing member

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{-1.61(-12{,}300)}{1.53} = 12{,}900 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$(S_b)_B = \frac{\pm 0.125(-12{,}300 + 10{,}900)}{0.0091}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_B = \frac{0.125\ (-12{,}300 + 10{,}900)}{0.0091}$$

$$= -19{,}200 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_B = \frac{-0.125\ (-12{,}300 + 10{,}900)}{0.0091}$$

$$= 19{,}200 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{\pm 0.125}{0.0091}(-12{,}300 + 11{,}200)$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_C = -15{,}100 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_C = 15{,}100 \text{ psi tension}$$

Corner Sections

$$(S_b)_{C\text{–}F} = \frac{\pm 0.125(1100)}{0.0091}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_b)_{C\text{–}F} = \frac{0.125(1100)}{0.0091}$$

$$= 15{,}100 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_b)_{C\text{–}F} = = \frac{-0.125(1100)}{0.0091}$$

$$= -15{,}100 \text{ psi compression}$$

where $(S_b)_{C\text{–}F}$ maximum occurs at section M for $M_M = M_r$ maximum when

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}(7.88/10.88) = 35.9 \text{ deg}$$

13-17(e)(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Members

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_F = 1{,}400 + 1{,}370 = 2{,}770 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_t)_F = 1{,}400 - 1{,}370 = 30 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_G = 1{,}400 - 17{,}900$$

$$= -16{,}500 \text{ psi compresssion}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_t)_G = 1{,}400 + 17{,}900 = 19{,}300 \text{ psi tension}$$

At H for composite plate and reinforcing member, butt welded joint in plate.

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_H = 1{,}400 - 2{,}440 = -1{,}040 \text{ psi compression}$$

Outer surface, reinforcing member

$$(S_t)_H = 1{,}400 + 6{,}100 = 7500 \text{ psi tension}$$

Long-Side Member

At A for composite plate and reinforcing member, butt welded joint in plate.

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_A = 1{,}080 - 5{,}180$$
$$= -4100 \text{ psi compresssion}$$

Outer surface, reinforcing member

$$\text{Outer, } (S_t)_A = 1{,}080 + 12{,}900 = 14{,}000 \text{ psi tension}$$

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_B = 1{,}080 - 19{,}200$$

$$= -18{,}100 \text{ psi compression}$$

$$\text{Outer, } (S_t)_B = 1{,}080 + 19{,}200 = 20{,}300 \text{ psi tension}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_C = 1{,}080 - 15{,}100$$
$$= -14{,}000 \text{ psi compresssion}$$
$$\text{Outer, } (S_t)_C = 1{,}080 + 15{,}100 = 16{,}200 \text{ psi tension}$$

Corner Sections

$$\text{Inner, } (S_t)_{C\text{–}F} = 1{,}680 + 15{,}100 = 16{,}800 \text{ psi tension}$$
$$\text{Outer, } (S_t)_{C\text{–}F} = 1{,}680 - 15{,}100$$
$$= -13{,}400 \text{ psi compression}$$

13-17(e)(4) Allowable Stresses. The stress value from Table 1A of Section II, Part D is 17,500 psi. This is the allowable membrane stress for all locations except the weld joints at A and H. The allowable design stress SE for membrane stress at the weld joints A and H is $SE = 17{,}500(0.70) = 12{,}300$ psi. [See UW-12(c); Table UW-12; and 13-5 for application of E.] All membrane stresses calculated meet these requirements.

The allowable design stress for membrane plus bending is [see UW-12(c), 13-4(b), and 13-5]:

(a) At Locations B, C, F, G, and M. Plate only; no weld; $E = 1.0$; $1.5SE = 1.5\,(17{,}500) = 26{,}300$ psi.

(b) At Locations A and H. Composite plate and reinforcing member; plate is butt welded with $E = 0.70$. The allowable design stress is the lesser of $1.5SE$ or $\frac{2}{3}$ yield stress at design temperature; at 500°F, $S_y = 30{,}800$ psi (see 13-5).

(1) Plate, $E = 0.70$

$$1.5SE = 1.5(17{,}500)(0.70)$$
$$= 18{,}400 \text{ psi}$$
$$\tfrac{2}{3}S_y = \tfrac{2}{3}(30{,}800)$$
$$= 20{,}500 \text{ psi}$$

Maximum allowable stress in plate is 18,400 psi.

(2) Reinforcing Member, $E = 1.0$

$$1.5SE = 1.5(17{,}500)$$
$$= 26{,}300 \text{ psi}$$
$$\tfrac{2}{3}S_y = \tfrac{2}{3}(30{,}800)$$
$$= 20{,}500 \text{ psi}$$

Maximum allowable stress in reinforcing member is 20,500 psi. All the calculated stresses are less than the allowable stresses.

13-17(f) Rules of 13-10. A vessel of plain obround cross section [Fig. 13-2(b) sketch (1)] is constructed of SA-515 Grade 70 steel. The internal design pressure is 20 psi at a design temperature of 650°F. There is no corrosion allowance. The vessel is 100% radiographed, and $E = 1.0$. Dimensions are as follows:

$R = 10$ in. $\quad t_1 = 0.5$ in. $\quad t_5 = 0.625$ in.
$L_2 = 10$ in. $\quad t_2 = 0.75$ in.

13-17(f)(1) Membrane Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_m)_B = \frac{20(10)}{0.5} = 400 \text{ psi}$$
$$(S_m)_C = \frac{20(10 + 10)}{0.5} = 800 \text{ psi}$$

Side Plates

$$S_m = \frac{20(10)}{0.75} = 267 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(f)(2) Bending Stress

$$A = 10\,[2(10/10) + \pi(0.75/0.5)^3] = 126$$
$$C_1 = (10)^2[2(10/10)^2 + 3\,\pi(0.75/0.5)^3\,(10/10)$$
$$+ 12(0.75/0.5)^3] = 7431$$

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_b)_B = \pm\frac{20(10)}{(0.5)^2}\left[3(10) - \frac{7431}{126}\right]$$
$$= 23{,}180 \text{ psi}$$
$$(S_b)_C = \pm\frac{20(10)}{(0.5)^2}\left[3(10 + 20) - \frac{7431}{126}\right]$$
$$= 24{,}819 \text{ psi}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{\pm\,20(10)(7431)}{126(0.75)^2} = 20{,}969 \text{ psi}$$
$$(S_b)_B = \frac{\pm\,20(10)}{(0.75)^2}\left[3(10) - \frac{7431}{126}\right] = 10{,}303 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(f)(3) Total Stress

Semicylindrical Sections

$$(S_T)_B = 400 + 23{,}180 = 23{,}580 \text{ psi}$$
$$(S_T)_C = 800 + 24{,}819 = 25{,}619 \text{ psi}$$

Side Plates

$$(S_T)_A = 267 + 20{,}969 = 21{,}236 \text{ psi}$$
$$(S_T)_B = 267 + 10{,}303 = 10{,}570 \text{ psi}$$

The membrane allowable stress is 17,500 psi and the membrane plus bending allowable stress is 1.5 (17,500) = 26,250 psi. The above stresses are all within these limits.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13-17(f)(4) End Plates

$$Z = 3.4 - 2.4(20/40) = 2.20$$

$$t_5 = 20\sqrt{\frac{(2.20)(0.20)(20)}{17{,}500}} = 0.448 \text{ in.}$$

The end plates are satisfactory since a thickness of 0.625 in. was provided.

13-17(g) Rules of 13-11. Determine the maximum internal pressure rating for the vessel described in 13-17(f) at 650°F except that t_2 is also 0.5 in. and the vessel is provided with contoured external reinforcing structural I-sections, $3 \times 2\frac{3}{8} - 5.7$ lb/ft ($A_1 = 1.67$ in.^{2}) on 15 in. centers constructed of SA-36 steel. For the given reinforcement, $r = 12$ in., $\gamma_1 = 0.833$, $A_3 = 57.7$ in.^{2}, $C_2 = 3059$. The moment of inertia I_{11} of the combined I-section and a width of plate 15 in. × 0.5 in. thick is $I_{11} = 6.859$ in.^{4}; and $c_o = -2.93$ in., $c_i = 0.569$ in. Therefore, from Eq. (9), and noting that the allowable membrane plus bending design stress in the outer surface of the reinforcing member is the lesser of

$$1.5SE = 1.5(14{,}500)$$
$$= 21{,}750 \text{ psi}$$

or $\frac{2}{3}\, S_y$ at 650°F

$$\tfrac{2}{3}S_y = \tfrac{2}{3}(26{,}100)$$
$$= 17{,}400 \text{ psi which governs [see 13-4(b)]}$$

The stress will be highest in the outer surface at either Section A or Section C. The outer surfaces are in tension at A and in compression at C.

For Section A

$$(S_m)_A = \frac{P(15)(10)}{1.67 + (15)(0.50)} = 16.36P \text{ (tension)}$$

The outer fibers

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{-P(15)(10)(3{,}059)(-2.93)}{(6)(57.7)(6.859)}$$
$$= 566.18P \text{ (tension)}$$

$$(S_T)_A = 16.36P + 566.18P$$
$$= 582.54P$$

For Section C

$$(S_m)_C = \frac{P(15)(20)}{1.67 + 15(0.50)} = 32.72P \text{ (tension)}$$

For outer fibers

$$(S_b)_C = \frac{-P(15)(10)(-2.93)}{6(6.859)} \times [3(34) - 3{,}059/57.7]$$
$$= -523.12P \text{ (compression)}$$

$$(S_T)_C = -32.72P - 523.12P$$
$$= -490.40P \text{ (compression)}$$

The maximum allowable working pressure is limited by the stress in the reinforcement at Section A:

$$(S_T)_A = 17{,}400 = 582.54P$$
$$P = 29.9 \text{ psi} = \text{MAWP}$$

13-17(h) Rules of 13-12. Determine the maximum internal pressure rating for the vessel described in 13-17(f) except that the vessel is stayed by either a single plate, 0.5 in. thick, of SA-515 Grade 70 Steel, or by 0.75 in. diameter bars of SA-36 steel.

13-17(h)(1) Case I: Stay Plate Construction

$$A = 126$$
$$B = 1835$$
$$C_1 = 7431$$
$$D_1 = 83{,}912$$
$$E_1 = 180{,}426$$
$$F = 1.757$$

From the equations in 13-12:

Eq. (1): $17{,}500 = 20.0P$; $P_{\max} = 875$ psi

Eq. (2): $17{,}500 = 22.43P$; $P_{\max} = 780$ psi

Eq. (3): $17{,}500 = 13.3P$; $P_{\max} = 1313$ psi

Eq. (4): $17{,}500 = 35.16P$; $P_{\max} = 498$ psi

Eq. (5): $26{,}250 = 196.88P$; $P_{\max} = 133$ psi

Eq. (6): $26{,}250 = 94.72P$; $P_{\max} = 277$ psi

Eq. (7): $26{,}250 = 316.23P$; $P_{\max} = 83$ psi

Eq. (8): $26{,}250 = 87.50P$; $P_{\max} = 300$ psi

Eq. (9): $26{,}250 = 216.88P$; $P_{\max} = 121$ psi

Eq. (10): $26{,}250 = 117.15P$; $P_{\max} = 224$ psi

Eq. (11): $26{,}250 = 329.56P$; $P_{\max} = 80$ psi

Eq. (12): $26{,}250 = 100.84P$; $P_{\max} = 260$ psi

Eq. (13): $17{,}500 = 35.16P$; $P_{\max} = 498$ psi

The pressure rating is thus 80 psi. Note that the thickness of the stay plate is governed by membrane stress. In this example, from Eq. (13), for a pressure rating of 80 psi the stay plate thickness could be reduced considerably, if fabrication and other requirements permitted, to a value as low as $\frac{1}{16}$.

13-17(h)(2) Case II: Stay Bar Construction. In this case it is necessary to select a pitch distance. Take p =

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

12 in.; then, from Eq. (1), 13-8(d), $P_{max} = 150$ psi. Also, per:

$$\text{Eq. (14): } 17{,}500 = 20.0P;\ P_{max} = 875 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (15): } 17{,}500 = 22.43P;\ P_{max} = 780 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (16): } 17{,}500 = 13.3P;\ P_{max} = 1313 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (17): } 14{,}500 = 477.24P;\ P_{max} = 30 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (18): } 26{,}250 = 196.88P;\ P_{max} = 133 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (19): } 26{,}250 = 94.72P;\ P_{max} = 277 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (20): } 26{,}250 = 316.83P;\ P_{max} = 83 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (21): } 26{,}250 = 87.50P;\ P_{max} = 300 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (22): } 26{,}250 = 216.88P;\ P_{max} = 121 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (23): } 26{,}250 = 117.15P;\ P_{max} = 224 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (24): } 26{,}250 = 329.56P;\ P_{max} = 80 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (25): } 26{,}250 = 100.83P;\ P_{max} = 260 \text{ psi}$$

$$\text{Eq. (26): } 14{,}500 = 477P;\ P_{max} = 30 \text{ psi}$$

The minimum of the above ratings is 30 psi. However, per 13-12(c)(4), $L_2 + R/2 = 10 + 5 = 15$ in. This is greater than the selected pitch distance of 12 in. Thus from 13-9(d)(4),

$$15 = 0.75 \sqrt{\frac{17{,}500(2.1)}{P}}$$

from which $P_{max.} = 92$ psi. The maximum pressure rating of the vessel is thus 30 psi.

13-17(i) Rules of 13-13. A vessel per Fig. 13-2(c) is 24 in. long, 12 in. I.D. and is subject to a pressure P_1 of 50 psi and a pressure P_2 of 10 psi. Material is SA-515 Grade 70 steel. All plate thicknesses are 0.375 in.; there is no corrosion allowance and the vessel is 100% radiographed.

13-17(i)(1) Membrane Stress

Shell

$$S_m = 50(6)/0.375 = 800 \text{ psi}$$

Plate

$$S_m = \frac{\pi(0.375)}{(18)(1.8696)}(60) = 2.1 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(i)(2) Bending Stress

Shell

$$(S_b)_A = \frac{40(0.1875)}{3(0.00439)}\left(\frac{0.28125}{1.8696} + 15.4\right)$$

$$= 8{,}856 \text{ psi}$$

Plate

$$L_v = 24 \text{ in.}$$

$$2R = 12 \text{ in.}$$

$$J_1 \text{ [Table 13-13(c)]} = 0.1017$$

$$(S_b) = \frac{0.1017(0.1875)}{0.00439}[40 \times 12^2] = 25{,}020 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(i)(3) Total Stress

Shell

$$(S_T)_A = 800 + 8{,}856 = 9{,}656 \text{ psi}$$

Plate

$$(S_T) = 2.1 + 25{,}020 = 25{,}022 \text{ psi}$$

All stresses are within allowable limits.

13-17(j) Rules of 13-8(h). A vessel of rectangular cross section [Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (6)] is constructed to the same alternate configuration given in (e) above except the corners are chamfered instead of rounded.

$$P = 33 \text{ psi}, L_1 = L_2 = 9.50 \text{ in.}$$

$$L_{11} = L_{21} = 0 \text{ in.}, t_1 = t_2 = 0.250 \text{ in.}$$

$$R = 0.25 \text{ in.}, L_3 = L_4 = 11.625 \text{ in.}$$

$$p = 7.00 \text{ in.}, I_{11} = I_{21} = 1.530 \text{ in.}^4$$

$$I_1 = 0.0091 \text{ in.}^4$$

For Sections With I_{11} and I_{21}

$$c_i = 0.644 \text{ in.}, c_o = -1.606 \text{ in.}$$

For Sections Without Reinforcements

$$c_i = 0.125 \text{ in.}, c_o = -0.125 \text{ in.}$$

$$K_8 = -38.8079, M_A = -8{,}964.62 \text{ in.-lb}$$

13-17(j)(1) Membrane Stresses

For Straight Segments

$$(S_m)_A = 1{,}535 \text{ psi}, (S_m)_B = (S_m)_C = 1{,}535 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_m)_D = (S_m)_{U2} = (S_m)_E = 1{,}981 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_m)_F = (S_m)_G = 1{,}535 \text{ psi}, (S_m)_H = 1{,}535 \text{ psi}$$

For Curved Corner Segments

$$(S_m)_M = 1{,}981 \text{ psi}, (S_m)_N = 1{,}981 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(j)(2) Bending Stresses

$$(S_b)_{Ai} = -3{,}771 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Ao} = 9{,}400 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Bi} = 899 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Bo} = -899 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Ci} = 899 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Co} = -899 \text{ psi}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$(S_b)_{Di} = 4{,}921 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Do} = -4{,}921 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Ui} = 2{,}137 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Uo} = -2{,}137 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Ei} = 4{,}921 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Eo} = -4{,}921 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Fi} = 899 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Fo} = -899 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Gi} = 899 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Go} = -899 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Hi} = -\ 3{,}771 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Ho} = 9{,}400 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Mi} = 5{,}000 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{Mo} = -5{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_b)_{Ni} = 5{,}000 \text{ psi}, (S_b)_{No} = -5{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(j)(3) Total Stress

$$(S_T)_{Ai} = 1{,}535 - 3{,}771 = -2{,}236 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Ao} = 1{,}535 + 9{,}400 = 10{,}935 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Bi} = 1{,}535 + 899 = 2{,}434 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Bo} = 1{,}535 - 899 = 636 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Ci} = 1{,}535 + 899 = 2{,}434 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Co} = 1{,}535 - 899 = 636 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Di} = 1{,}981 + 4{,}921 = 6{,}902 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Do} = 1{,}981 - 4{,}921 = -2{,}940 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Ui} = 1{,}981 + 2{,}137 = 4{,}118 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Uo} = 1{,}981 - 2{,}137 = -155 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Ei} = 1{,}981 + 4{,}921 = 6{,}902 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Eo} = 1{,}981 - 4{,}921 = -2{,}940 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Fi} = 1{,}535 + 899 = 2{,}434 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Fo} = 1{,}535 - 899 = 636 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Gi} = 1{,}535 + 899 = 2{,}434 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Go} = 1{,}535 - 899 = 636 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Hi} = 1{,}535 - 3{,}771 = -2{,}236 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Ho} = 1{,}535 + 9{,}400 = 10{,}935 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Mi} = 1{,}981 + 5{,}000 = 6{,}981 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Mo} = 1{,}981 - 5{,}000 = -3{,}019 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{Ni} = 1{,}981 + 5{,}000 = 6{,}981 \text{ psi}$$

$$(S_T)_{No} = 1{,}981 - 5000 = -3{,}019 \text{ psi}$$

13-17(j)(4) Allowable Stresses. The stress value from Table 1A of Section II, Part D is 17,500 psi. This is the allowable membrane stress for all locations except for the weld joints A and H. The allowable design stress SE for membrane stress at the weld joints at A and H is $SE = 17{,}500(0.70) = 12{,}250$ psi. [See UW-12(c); Table UW-12; and 13-5 for application of E.] All membrane stresses calculated meet these requirements.

The allowable design stress for membrane plus bending is [see UW-12(c), 13-4(b), and 13-5]:

(a) At locations *B, C, D, E, F, G, M,* and *N:* plate only; no weld; $E = 1.0$; 1.5 SE = 1.5 (17,500) = 26,250 psi.

(b) At locations A and H: composite plate and reinforcing member; plate is butt welded with $E = 0.70$. The allowable design stress is the lesser of 1.5 SE or $^2\!/_3$ yield stress at design temperature; at 500°F, $S_y = 30{,}800$ psi (see 13-5).

(1) Plate, $E = 0.70$

$$\begin{aligned} 1.5SE &= 1.5(17{,}500)(0.70) \\ &= 18{,}375 \text{ psi} \\ {}^2\!/_3 S_y &= {}^2\!/_3(30{,}800) \\ &= 20{,}533 \text{ psi} \end{aligned}$$

Maximum allowable stress in plate is 18,375 psi.

(2) Reinforcing Member, $E = 1.0$

$$\begin{aligned} 1.5SE &= 1.5(17{,}500) \\ &= 26{,}250 \text{ psi} \\ {}^2\!/_3 S_y &= {}^2\!/_3(30{,}800) \\ &= 20{,}533 \text{ psi} \end{aligned}$$

Maximum allowable stress in reinforcing member is 20,533 psi. All the calculated stresses are less than the allowable stresses.

13-18 SPECIAL CALCULATIONS

(a) Weld Efficiency. Cases may arise where application of the weld efficiency factor E (13-5) at non-welded locations results in unnecessarily increased plate thicknesses. If the butt weld occurs at one of the locations for which equations are provided in this Appendix, then no relief can be provided. However, if the weld occurs at some intermediate location, it is permissible to calculate the bending stress at the weld location. Then, if the total stress at the joint location is within the limits of the allowable design stress SE [see 13-4(b)], using the appropriate E factor, the design will be considered satisfactory for the conditions imposed.

Consider Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (1) to have, instead of a butt joint at locations M and/or N, a joint between locations M and Q and a distance d_j from location M. Since bending stress is given by $M(c/I)$, Eq. (5) of 13-7(a)(2) can be written

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$(S_b)_M = M_M\left(\frac{c}{I}\right) = \frac{Ph^2c}{12I_2}\left[-1.5 + \frac{(1+\alpha^2K)}{1+K}\right] \quad **$$

from which the bending moment at M is

$$M_M = \frac{Ph^2}{12}\left[-1.5 + \frac{(1+\alpha^2K)}{1+K}\right] \quad **$$

The counter-moment at distance d_j from M is $Pd_j^2/2$ so that the total moment at the joint is

$$M_j = \frac{Ph^2}{12}\left[-1.5 + \frac{(1+\alpha^2K)}{1+K}\right] + \frac{Pd_j^2}{2} \quad **$$

The bending stress is then

$$(S_b)_j = M_j\left(\frac{c}{I}\right) = \frac{Pc}{12I_2}\left\{h^2\left[-1.5 + \left(\frac{1+\alpha^2K}{1+K}\right)\right] + 6d_j^2\right\} \quad **$$

and the total stress (bending plus membrane) is

$$(S_T)_j = S_m + (S_b)_j \quad **$$

where $(S_b)_j$ may be either positive or negative depending on whether the inside or the outside surface is considered. See 13-4(b) and 13-5.

$$(S_T)_j = \frac{PH}{2t_2} + \frac{Pc}{12I_2}\left\{h^2\left[-1.5 + \left(\frac{1+\alpha^2K}{1+K}\right)\right] + 6d_j^2\right\} \quad **$$

A summary of equations for various geometries is given in Table 13-18.1.

(b) Ligament Efficiencies. The applied membrane and bending stresses at a location containing a row of holes are higher than at the location without holes. When there are no holes at the location where the highest bending moments occur, e.g., at the midpoint of the sides and in the corner regions in vessels without stays, the application of the ligament efficiency factors may result in an unnecessary increase in required plate thickness.

Rows of holes may be located in regions of relatively low bending moments to keep the required plate thickness to a minimum. Therefore, it is permissible to calculate the stresses at the center line of each row of holes closest to the locations where the highest bending moments occurs, i.e., at the midpoint of the sides and at the corners. If the diameter of all the holes are not the same, the stresses must be calculated for each set of e_m and e_b values.

The applied gross area stresses may be calculated using the same procedure as for calculating the stresses at a joint [refer to (a) above]. The value of d_j to be used in the equations is the distance from the midpoint of the side to the plane containing the center lines of the holes.

The net area stresses are calculated according to the procedures in 13-4(g). The total (net area) stresses are determined by the methods given in 13-4(c) and compared with the allowable design stresses according to 13-4(g) and 13-4(b).

(c) Vessels per Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (1) with aspect ratios of L_v/H or L_v/h between 1.0 and 2.0 and with flat heads welded to the sides visible in the sketch, may be designed in accordance with the rules of (1), (2), and (3) below. For such vessels with aspect ratios of L_v/H or L_v/h less than 1.0, the axis of the vessel shall be rotated so that the largest dimension becomes the length L_v, and new ratios L_v/H and L_v/h are 1.0 or larger. All stresses shall be recalculated using the new orientation.

(1) Membrane Stress. Equations (1) and (2) of 13-7 shall be used to determine the membrane stresses.

(2) Bending Stress. Equations (3), (4), (5), and (6) of 13-7 multiplied by the plate parameters of Table 13-18(b) shall be used to determine the bending stresses as follows:

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_N = \text{Eq. (3)} \times J_2$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \text{Eq. (4)} \times J_3$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \text{Eq. (5)} \times J_2$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \text{Eq. (6)} \times J_3$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_N = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (3)}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (1)} + \text{Eq. (4)}$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (5)}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (2)} + \text{Eq. (6)}$$

(d) Vessels per Fig. 13-2(a) sketch (2) with aspect ratios of L_v/H or L_v/h between 1.0 and 2.0, and with flat heads welded to the sides visible in the sketch, may be designed in accordance with the rules of (1), (2), and (3) below. For such vessels with aspect ratios of L_v/H or L_v/h less than 1.0, the axis of the vessel shall be rotated so that the largest dimension becomes the length L_v, and new ratios L_v/H and L_v/h are 1.0 or larger. All stresses shall be recalculated using the new orientation.

(1) Membrane Stress. Equations (11), (12A), and (12B) of 13-7 shall be used to determine the membrane stresses.

** For these equations, the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b = 1.0$. The moments M_M and M_j have dimensions [Force × Length/Length] = Force. See para. 13-4(k).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 13-18.1

Fig. 13-2	Location of Weld Between	Bending Stress at Joint $\pm (S_b)_j$, psi (MPa)	Notes
13-2(a) sketch (1)	M and Q	$\dfrac{Pc}{12I_2}\left\{h^2\left[-1.5+\left(\dfrac{1+\alpha^2K}{1+K}\right)\right]+6d_j^2\right\}$	(1)
13-2(a) sketch (1)	N and Q	$\dfrac{Pc}{12I_1}\left[-1.5H^2+h^2\dfrac{(1+\alpha^2K)}{1+K}+6d_j^2\right]$	(1)
13-2(a) sketch (2)	M and Q	$\dfrac{Pc}{2I_{22}}\left\{\dfrac{h^2}{2N}\left[(K_2-k_1k_2)+\alpha^2k_2(K_2-k_2)\right]-\dfrac{h^2}{4}+d_j^2\right\}$	(1)
13-2(a) sketch (2)	M_1 and Q_1	$\dfrac{Pc}{2I_2}\left\{\dfrac{h^2}{2N}\left[(K_1k_1-k_2)+\alpha^2k_2(K_1-k_2)\right]-\dfrac{h^2}{4}+d_j^2\right\}$	(1)
13-2(a) sketch (3)	A and B	$\dfrac{c}{I_1}\left(M_A+\dfrac{Pd_j^2}{2}\right)$	(1, 2)
13-2(a) sketch (3)	D and C	$\dfrac{c}{I_1}\left[M_A+\dfrac{P}{2}(L_2^2+2RL_2-2RL_1-L_1^2+d_j^2)\right]$	(1, 2)
13-2(a) sketch (4)	M and Q	$\dfrac{Pph^2c}{24I_{11}}\left[-3+2\left(\dfrac{1+\alpha_1^2k}{1+k}\right)+\dfrac{12d_j^2}{h^2}\right]$	
13-2(a) sketch (4)	N and Q	$\dfrac{Ppc}{24I_{11}}\left[-3H^2+2h^2\left(\dfrac{1+\alpha_1^2k}{1+k}\right)+12d_j^2\right]$	
13-2(a) sketch (5)	A and B	$\dfrac{c}{I_{21}}\left(M_A+P\dfrac{pd_j^2}{2}\right)$	
13-2(a) sketch (5)	B and C	$\dfrac{c}{I_2}\left(M_A+P\dfrac{pd_j^2}{2}\right)$	
13-2(a) sketch (5)	H and G	$\dfrac{c}{I_{11}}\left\{M_A+P\dfrac{p}{2}\left[(L_2+L_{21})^2+2R(L_2+L_{21}-L_1-L_{11})-(L_1+L_{11})^2+d_j^2\right]\right\}$	
13-2(a) sketch (5)	G and F	$\dfrac{c}{I_1}\left\{M_A+P\dfrac{p}{2}\left[{L_2}^2+2L_2L_{21}+{L_{21}}^2-2L_1L_{11}-{L_{11}}^2+2R(L_2+L_{21}-L_1-L_{11})+d_j^2\right]\right\}$	
13-2(a) sketch (6)	A and B	$(c/I_{21})[M_A+Ppd_j^2/2]$	
13-2(a) sketch (6)	B and C	$(c/I_1)[M_A+Ppd_j^2/2]$	
13-2(a) sketch (6)	F and G	$(c/I_1)[M_A+W[{L_4}^2+L_4t_1+2.0L_4\overline{Y}_1-{L_3}^2-2.0L_3(\overline{Y}_2+t_1/2)]+Ppd_j^2/2]$	
13-2(a) sketch (6)	H and G	$(c/I_{11})[M_A+W[{L_4}^2+L_4t_1+2.0L_4\overline{Y}_1-{L_3}^2-2.0L_3(\overline{Y}_2+t_1/2)]+Ppd_j^2/2]$	
13-2(b) sketch (1)	A and B	$\dfrac{Pc}{I_2}\left(\dfrac{-L_2C_1}{6A}+\dfrac{d_j^2}{2}\right)$	(1)
13-2(b) sketch (2)	A and B	$\dfrac{Ppc}{I_{11}}\left(\dfrac{-L_2C_2}{6A_3}+\dfrac{d_j^2}{2}\right)$	

NOTES:
(1) For this equation, the moments of inertia are calculated on a per-unit-width basis. That is, $I = bt^3/12$, where $b \equiv 1.0$. See para. 13-4(k).
(2) For this equation, moment M_A has dimensions [Force × Length/Length] = [Force]. See para. 13-4(k).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(2) Bending Stress. Equations (13), (14), (15), (16), (17), and (18) of 13-7 multiplied by the plate parameters of Table 13-18(b) shall be used to determine the bending stress as follows:

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_Q = \text{Eq. (13)} \times J_3$$

$$(S_b)_{Q1} = \text{Eq. (14)} \times J_3$$

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_b)_M = \text{Eq. (15)} \times J_2$$

$$(S_b)_{M1} = \text{Eq. (16)} \times J_2$$

$$(S_b)_Q = \text{Eq. (17)} \times J_3$$

$$(S_b)_{Q1} = \text{Eq. (18)} \times J_3$$

(3) Total Stress

Short-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (11)} + \text{Eq. (13)}$$

$$(S_T)_{Q1} = \text{Eq. (11)} + \text{Eq. (14)}$$

TABLE 13-18(b)

L_v/H or L_v/h	J_2	J_3
1.0	0.56	0.62
1.1	0.64	0.70
1.2	0.73	0.77
1.3	0.79	0.82
1.4	0.85	0.87
1.5	0.89	0.91
1.6	0.92	0.94
1.7	0.95	0.96
1.8	0.97	0.97
1.9	0.99	0.99
2.0	1.00	1.00

Long-Side Plates

$$(S_T)_M = \text{Eq. (12B)} + \text{Eq. (15)}$$

$$(S_T)_{M1} = \text{Eq. (12A)} + \text{Eq. (16)}$$

$$(S_T)_Q = \text{Eq. (12B)} + \text{Eq. (17)}$$

$$(S_T)_{Q1} = \text{Eq. (12A)} + \text{Eq. (18)}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 14
INTEGRAL FLAT HEADS WITH A LARGE, SINGLE, CIRCULAR, CENTRALLY LOCATED OPENING

14-1 SCOPE

04 *14-1(a)* In accordance with UG-39(c)(1), flat heads which have a single, circular, centrally located opening that exceeds one-half of the head diameter shall be designed according to the rules which follow. The shell-to-flat head juncture shall be either integral, as shown in Fig. UG-34 sketches (a), (b-1), (b-2), (d), and (g), or a butt weld, or a full penetration corner weld similar to the joints shown in Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (a), (b), (c), (d), (e), and (f). When Fig. UW-13.2 sketches (c) and (d) are used, the maximum wall thickness of the shell shall not exceed $^3/_8$ in. (10 mm) and the maximum design metal temperature shall not exceed 650°F (345°C). The central opening in the flat head may have a nozzle which is integral or integrally attached by a full penetration weld or may have an opening without an attached nozzle or hub. For openings in which the nozzle is attached with non-integral welds (i.e., a double fillet of partial penetration weld) use the design rules for an opening without an attached nozzle or hub.

14-1(b) A general arrangement of an integral flat head with or without a nozzle attached at the central opening is shown in Fig. 14-1.

14-1(c) The head thickness does not have to be calculated by UG-34 rules. The thickness which satisfies all the requirements of this Appendix meets the requirements of the Code.

14-2 NOMENCLATURE

14-2(a) Except as given below, the symbols used in the equations of this Appendix are defined in 2-3.

A = outside diameter of flat head and shell
B_n = diameter of central opening (for nozzle, this is inside diameter and for opening without nozzle, diameter of opening)
B_s = inside diameter of shell (measured below tapered hub, if one exists)
$(E\theta)^*$ = slope of head with central opening or nozzle times the modulus of elasticity, disregarding the interaction of the integral shell at the outside diameter of the head, psi (MPa)
M_H = moment acting at shell-to-flat head juncture
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)
t = flat head nominal thickness

B_1, F, S_H, S_R, S_T, V, f, g_o, g_1, and h_o are defined in 2-3. These terms may refer to either the shell-to-flat head juncture or to the central opening-to-flat head juncture and depend upon details at those junctures.

14-3 DESIGN PROCEDURE

14-3(a) Disregard the shell attached to the outside diameter of the flat head and then analyze the flat head with a central opening (with or without a nozzle) in accordance with these rules.

14-3(a)(1) Calculate the operating moment M_o according to 2-6. (There is no M_o for gasket seating to be considered.) The formulas in Appendix 2 for loads (2-3) and moment arms (Table 2-6) shall be used directly with the following definitions and terms substituted for terms in Appendix 2:

Let $C = G =$ inside diameter of shell B_s; $B = B_n$, where B_n is as shown in Fig. 14-1 depending on an integral nozzle or no nozzle.

The moment arm h_g in Table 2-6 will be equal to zero when using the rules of this Appendix. The M_G moment will therefore be equal to zero.

14-3(a)(2) With $K = A/B_n$, use 2-7 to calculate the stresses S_H, S_R, and S_T. The S_H and S_R stresses are equal to zero for the case of an opening without a nozzle.

14-3(b) Calculate $(E\theta)^*$:

14-3(b)(1) for an integrally attached nozzle,

$$(E\theta)^* = \frac{0.91\,(g_1/g_o)^2\,B_1\,V}{f\,h_o}S_H$$

14-3(b)(2) for an opening without a nozzle or with a nozzle or hub attached with a non-integral weld, 04

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

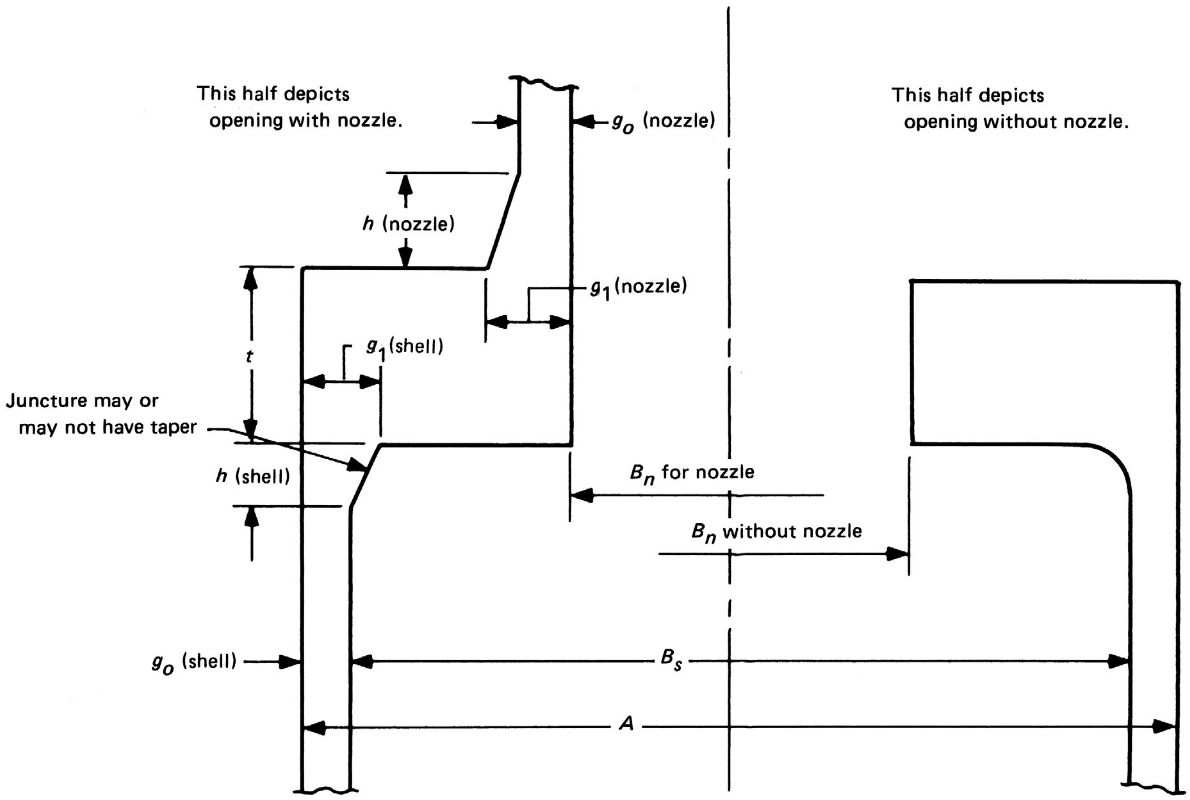


FIG. 14-1 INTEGRAL FLAT HEAD WITH LARGE CENTRAL OPENING

$$(E\theta)^* = (B_n/t)S_T$$

where g_o, g_1, B_1, V, f, h_o, and B_n all pertain to the opening in the flat head as described in 14-3(a).

14-3(c) Calculate M_H:

$$M_H = \frac{(E\theta)^*}{\dfrac{1.74\ h_o V}{g_o{}^3 B_1} + \dfrac{(E\theta)^*}{M_o}(1 + Ft/h_o)}$$

where h_o, V, g_o, B_1, and F refer to the shell attached to the outside diameter of the flat head.

14-3(d) Calculate X_1:

$$X_1 = \frac{M_o - M_H\,(1 + Ft/h_o)}{M_o}$$

where F and h_o refer to the shell.

14-3(e) Calculate stresses at head/shell juncture and opening/head juncture as follows:

14-3(e)(1) Head/Shell Juncture

Longitudinal hub stress in shell

$$S_{HS} = (X_1)(E\theta)^* \frac{1.10 h_o f}{(g_1/g_o)^2 B_s V}$$

where h_o, f, g_o, g_1, B_s, and V refer to the shell.

Radial stress at outside diameter

$$S_{RS} = \frac{1.91\ M_H(1 + Ft/h_o)}{B_s t^2} + \frac{0.64 F M_H}{B_s h_o t}$$

where B_s, F, and h_o refer to the shell.

Tangential stress at outside diameter

$$S_{TS} = \frac{(X_1)(E\theta)^* t}{B_s} - \frac{0.57(1 + Ft/h_o)M_H}{B_s t^2} + \frac{0.64 F Z M_H}{B_s h_o t}$$

where B_s, F, and h_o refer to the shell, and

$$Z = \frac{K^2 + 1}{K^2 - 1}$$

14-3(e)(2) Opening/Head Juncture

Longitudinal hub stress in central opening

$$S_{HO} = X_1 S_H$$

Radial stress at central opening

$$S_{RO} = X_1 S_R$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Tangential stress at diameter of central opening

$$S_{TO} = X_1 S_T + \frac{0.64 F Z_1 M_H}{B_s h_o t}$$

where F, B_s, and h_o refer to the shell, and

$$Z_1 = \frac{2K^2}{K^2 - 1}$$

14-3(f) The calculated stresses above shall meet the allowable stresses in 2-8.

14-4 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 14, Integral Flat Heads with a Large, Single, Circular, Centrally-Located Opening."

14-5 EXAMPLES

Examples illustrating use of the rules of this Appendix are as follows.

14-5(a) Example (a)

14-5(a)(1) Introduction. A cylindrical vessel (with a 72 in. O.D. and a 70 in. I.D.) has an integral flat head with a large centrally located opening with a 40 in. diameter. A nozzle is attached to the opening. The wall thickness of the nozzle is $^9\!/_{16}$ in. Both the head/shell and the opening/head details of the transition are shown in Fig. 14-2. The design pressure of the vessel is 100 psi with a design temperature of 100°F. The vessel is fabricated from 304 stainless steel with an allowable stress of 18.8 ksi. The thickness of the flat head is 3 in. Using the rules above determine if the vessel design is acceptable.

This Example was performed using computer software. The Example was generated by performing the entire calculation without rounding off during each step. Accuracy of the final results beyond three significant figures is not intended or required.

14-5(a)(2) Solution

(a) Input Data

A = outside diameter of flat head and shell = 72 in.
B_n = diameter of central opening = 40 in.
B_s = inside diameter of shell = 70 in.
P = internal design pressure = 100 psi
g_{on} = thickness of nozzle above transition = 0.563 in.
g_{1n} = thickness of nozzle at head = 1.125 in.
g_{os} = thickness of shell below transition = 1 in.
g_{1s} = thickness of shell at head = 2 in.
h_n = length of nozzle transition = 2 in.
h_s = length of shell transition = 3 in.
n = subscript for nozzle at central opening
s = subscript for shell at outside diameter of head
t = nominal thickness of flat head = 3 in.

(b) Calculate parameters to determine chart values from Appendix 2:

$$gr_n = \frac{g_{1n}}{g_{on}} = 2$$

$$gr_s = \frac{g_{1s}}{g_{os}} = 2$$

$$h_{on} = \sqrt{B_n g_{on}} = 4.75 \text{ in.}$$

$$h_{os} = \sqrt{B_s g_{os}} = 8.37 \text{ in.}$$

$$hr_n = \frac{h_n}{h_{on}} = 0.421$$

$$hr_s = \frac{h_s}{h_{os}} = 0.359$$

$$F_n = 0.843$$

$$F_s = 0.857$$

$$V_n = 0.252$$

$$V_s = 0.276$$

$$f_n = 1.518$$

$$f_s = 1.79$$

F is from Fig. 2-7.2; V is from Fig. 2-7.3; f is from Fig. 2-7.6.

(c) Computation of K and factors associated with K at nozzle opening:

$$K = \frac{A}{B_n} = 1.8$$

$$T = \frac{K^2(1 + 8.55246 \log K) - 1}{(1.04720 + 1.9948K^2)(K - 1)} = 1.58$$

$$U = \frac{K^2(1 + 8.55246 \log K) - 1}{1.36136(K^2 - 1)(K - 1)} = 3.82$$

$$Y = \frac{1}{K - 1}\left(0.66845 + 5.7169 \frac{K^2 \log K}{K^2 - 1}\right) = 3.47$$

$$d = \frac{U}{V_n} h_{on} g_{on}{}^2 = 23 \text{ in.}^3$$

$$e = \frac{F_n}{h_{on}} = 0.18 \text{ in.}^{-1}$$

$$L = \frac{te + 1}{T} + \frac{t^3}{d} = 2.15$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

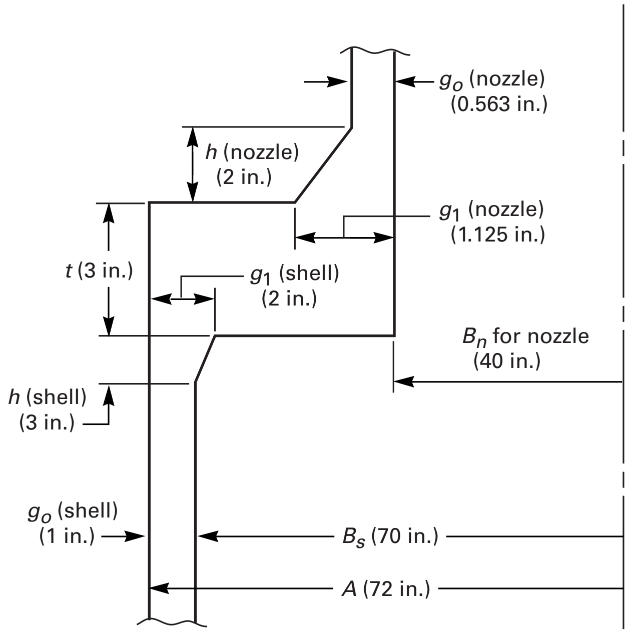


FIG. 14-2 GEOMETRY FOR EXAMPLE (a)

$$Z = \frac{K^2 + 1}{K^2 - 1} = 1.89$$

$$Z_1 = \frac{2K^2}{K^2 - 1} = 2.89$$

(d) Calculate loads and moments using equations from 2-6 and 2-3:

$$H = 0.785 B_s^2 P = 3.85 \times 10^5 \text{ lb}$$

$$H_D = 0.785 B_n^2 P = 125{,}600 \text{ lb}$$

$$H_T = H - H_D = 259{,}050 \text{ lb}$$

$$R = \frac{B_s - B_n}{2} - g_{1n} = 13.88 \text{ in.}$$

$$h_D = R + 0.5 g_{1n} = 14.44 \text{ in.}$$

$$h_T = \frac{R + g_{1n}}{2} = 7.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_D = H_D h_D = 1{,}813{,}350 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_T = H_T h_T = 1{,}942{,}875 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_0 = M_D + M_T = 3{,}756{,}225 \text{ in.-lb}$$

(e) Calculate stress using 2-7:

$$S_H = \frac{f_n M_0}{L g_{1n}^2 B_n} = 52{,}287 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_R = \frac{(1.33te + 1)M_0}{(Lt^2 B_n)} = 8{,}277 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_T = \frac{YM_0}{t^2 B_n} - ZS_R = 20{,}582 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(f) Calculate $(E\theta)^*$ for the condition of an integrally attached nozzle using the geometry at the opening:

$$B_{1n} = B_n + g_{on} = 40.563 \text{ in.}$$

$$(E\theta)^* = \frac{0.91\left(\frac{g_{1n}}{g_{on}}\right)^2 B_{1n} V_n}{f_n h_{on}} S_H = 269{,}584 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(g) Calculate M_H using the geometry at the shell:

$$B_{1s} = B_s + g_{os} = 71 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_H = \frac{(E\theta)^*}{\frac{1.74 h_{os} V_s}{g_{os}^3 B_{1s}} + \frac{(E\theta)^*}{M_0}\left(1 + \frac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right)} = 1{,}792{,}262 \text{ in.-lb}$$

(h) Calculate X_1 using the geometry at the shell:

$$X_1 = \frac{M_0 - M_H\left(1 + \frac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right)}{M_0} = 0.376$$

(i) Calculate stresses at the head/shell juncture using the geometry at the shell:

Longitudinal hub stress in the shell

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$S_{HS} = \frac{1.10 h_{os} f_s}{\left(\frac{g_{1s}}{g_{os}}\right)^2 B_s V_s} X_1 (E\theta)^* = 21{,}621 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Radial stress at outside diameter of shell

$$S_{RS} = \frac{1.91 M_H \left(1 + \frac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right)}{B_s t^2} + \frac{0.64 F_s M_H}{B_s h_{os} t} = 7{,}663 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Tangential stress at outside diameter of shell

$$S_{TS} = \frac{X_1 (E\theta)^* t}{B_s} - \frac{0.57 \left(1 + \frac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right) M_H}{B_s t^2} + \frac{0.64 F_s Z M_H}{B_s h_{os} t}$$
$$= 3{,}286 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(j) Calculate stresses at the opening/head juncture using the geometry at the shell

Longitudinal hub stress at central opening

$$S_{HO} = X_1 S_H = 19{,}672 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Radial stress at central opening

$$S_{RO} = X_1 S_R = 3{,}114 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Tangential stress at diameter of central opening

$$S_{TO} = X_1 S_T + \frac{0.64 F_s Z_1 M_H}{B_s h_{os} t} = 9{,}362 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(k) Allowable stress from 2-8 and Section II, Part D:

$$S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(l) Computed versus allowable stress for the head/shell juncture:

$$S_{HS} = 21{,}621 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq 1.5 S_f = 28{,}200 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_{RS} = 7{,}663 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_{TS} = 3{,}286 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$\frac{S_{HS} + S_{RS}}{2} = 14{,}642 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$\frac{S_{HS} + S_{TS}}{2} = 12{,}454 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(m) Computed versus allowable stress for the opening/head juncture:

$$S_{HO} = 19{,}672 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq 1.5 S_f = 28{,}200 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_{RO} = 3114 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_{TO} = 9362 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$\frac{S_{HO} + S_{RO}}{2} = 11{,}393 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$\frac{S_{HO} + S_{TO}}{2} = 14{,}517 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

The computed stresses meet the requirements; therefore, the design meets the Appendix 14 rules

14-5(b) Example (b)

14-5(b)(1) Introduction. A cylindrical vessel (with a 22.5 in. O.D. and a 22 in. I.D.) has an integral flat head with a large centrally located opening with a 16 in. diameter. No nozzle is attached to the head at the opening. The design pressure of the vessel is 250 psi with a design temperature of 100°F. The vessel is fabricated from 304 stainless steel with an allowable stress of 18.8 ksi. The thickness of the flat head is 2.25 in. Dimensional details of the vessel are shown in Fig. 14-3. Using the rules above determine if the vessel design is acceptable.

This Example was performed using computer software. The Example was generated by performing the entire calculation without rounding off during each step. Accuracy of the final results beyond three significant figures is not intended or required.

14-5(b)(2) Solution

(a) Input Data

A = outside diameter of flat head and shell
= 22.5 in.
B_n = diameter of central opening = 16 in.
B_s = inside diameter of shell = 22 in.
P = internal design pressure = 250 psi
g_{os} = thickness of shell below transition = 0.25 in.
g_{1s} = thickness of shell at head = 0.25 in.
h_s = length of shell transition = 0 in.
n = subscript for nozzle at central opening
s = subscript for shell at outside diameter of head
t = nominal thickness of flat head = 2.25 in.

(b) Calculate parameters to determine chart values from Appendix 2:

$$gr_s = \frac{g_{1s}}{g_{os}} = 1$$

$$h_{0s} = \sqrt{B_s g_{os}} = 2.35 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

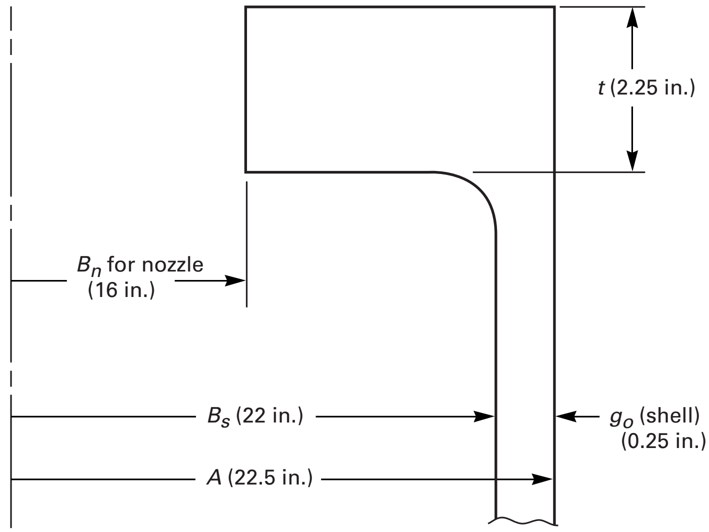


FIG. 14-3 GEOMETRY FOR EXAMPLE (b)

$$hr_s = \frac{h_s}{h_{os}} = 0$$

$$F_s = 0.908920$$

$$V_s = 0.550103$$

$$f_s = 1$$

F, V, and f in this Example are the default values from Table 2-7.1 for $g_1/g_o = 1$ and $h/h_o = 0$.

(c) Computation of K and factors associated with K at opening:

$$K = \frac{A}{B_n} = 1.41$$

$$T = \frac{K^2(1 + 8.55246 \log K) - 1}{(1.04720 + 1.99448K^2)(K - 1)} = 1.75$$

$$U = \frac{K^2(1 + 8.55246 \log K) - 1}{1.36136(K^2 - 1)(K - 1)} = 6.44$$

$$Y = \frac{1}{K - 1}\left(0.66845 + 5.7169\frac{K^2 \log K}{K^2 - 1}\right) = 5.86$$

$$Z = \frac{K^2 + 1}{K^2 - 1} = 3.05$$

$$Z_1 = \frac{2K^2}{K^2 - 1} = 4.05$$

(d) Calculate loads and moments using equations from 2-6:

$$H = 0.785B_s^2P = 94,985 \text{ lb}$$

$$H_D = 0.785B_n^2P = 50,240 \text{ lb}$$

$$H_T = H - H_D = 44,745 \text{ lb}$$

$$R = \frac{B_s - B_n}{2} = 3 \text{ in.}$$

$$h_D = R = 3 \text{ in.}$$

$$h_T = \frac{R}{2} = 1.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_D = H_D h_D = 150,720 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_T = H_T h_T = 67,117 \text{ in.-lb}$$

$$M_0 = M_D + M_T = 217,837 \text{ in.-lb}$$

(e) Calculate stresses using 2-7:

$$S_T = \frac{YM_0}{t^2B_n} = 15,761 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Note that for an opening without a nozzle attached the longitudinal hub stress and the radial stress are equal to zero.

(f) Calculate $(E\theta)^*$ for the condition of an opening without a nozzle, using the geometry at the opening:

$$(E\theta)^* = \left(\frac{B_n}{t}\right)S_T = 112,077 \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(g) Calculate M_H using the geometry at the shell:

$$B_{1s} = B_s + g_{os} = 22.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$M_H = \frac{(E\theta)^*}{\frac{1.74h_{os}V_s}{g_{os}^{\ 3}B_{1s}} + \frac{(E\theta)^*}{M_0}\left(1 + \frac{F_st}{h_{os}}\right)} = 15,105 \text{ in.-lb}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(h) Calculate X_1 using the geometry at the shell:

$$X_1 = \frac{M_0 - M_H\left(1 + \dfrac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right)}{M_0} = 0.87$$

(i) Calculate stresses at the head/shell juncture using the geometry at the shell:

Longitudinal hub stress in the shell

$$S_{HS} = \frac{1.10 h_{os} f_s}{\left(\dfrac{g_{1s}}{g_{os}}\right)^2 B_s V_s} X_1 (E\theta)^* = 20{,}789 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Radial stress at outside diameter of shell

$$S_{RS} = \frac{1.91 M_H\left(1 + \dfrac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right)}{B_s t^2} + \frac{0.64 F_s M_H}{B_s h_{os} t} = 561 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

Tangential stress at outside diameter of shell

$$S_{TS} = \frac{X_1 (E\theta)^* t}{B_s} - \frac{0.57\left(1 + \dfrac{F_s t}{h_{os}}\right) M_H}{B_s t^2} + \frac{0.64 F_s Z M_H}{B_s h_{os} t}$$
$$= 10{,}060 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(j) Calculate stresses at the opening/head juncture using the geometry at the shell:

Tangential stress at diameter of central opening

$$S_{TO} = X_1 S_T + \frac{0.64 F_s Z_1 M_H}{B_s h_{os} t} = 14{,}021 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(k) Allowable stress from 2-8 and Section II, Part D:

$$S_f = 18{,}800 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(l) Calculate stress margins for the head/shell juncture:

$$S_{HS} = 20{,}789 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq 1.5 S_f = 28{,}200 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_{RS} = 561 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$S_{TS} = 10{,}060 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$\frac{S_{HS} + S_{RS}}{2} = 10{,}675 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

$$\frac{S_{HS} + S_{TS}}{2} = 15{,}425 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

(m) Calculate stress margins for the opening/head juncture:

$$S_{TO} = 14{,}021 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2} \leq S_f = 18{,}800 \ \frac{\text{lb}}{\text{in.}^2}$$

The computed stresses meet the requirements; therefore, the design meets the Appendix 14 rules.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 16
SUBMITTAL OF TECHNICAL INQUIRIES TO THE BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE

16-1 INTRODUCTION

(a) The ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee and its Subcommittees, Subgroups, and Working Groups meet regularly to consider revisions of the Code rules, new Code rules as dictated by technological development, Code Cases, and Code interpretations. This Appendix provides guidance to Code users for submitting technical inquiries to the Committee. Technical inquiries include requests for revisions or additions to the Code rules, requests for Code Cases, and requests for Code interpretations.

(b) Code Cases may be issued by the Committee when the need is urgent. Code Cases clarify the intent of existing Code requirements or provide alternative requirements. Code Cases are written as a question and reply and are usually intended to be incorporated into the Code at a later date. Code interpretations provide the meaning of or the intent of existing rules in the Code and are also presented as a question and a reply. Both Code Cases and Code interpretations are published by the Committee.

(c) The Code rules, Code Cases, and Code interpretations established by the Committee are not to be considered as approving, recommending, certifying, or endorsing any proprietary or specific design or as limiting in any way the freedom of manufacturers or constructors to choose any method of design or any form of construction that conforms to the Code rules.

(d) As an alternative to the requirements of this Appendix, members of the Committee and its Subcommittees, Subgroups, and Working Groups may introduce requests for Code revisions or additions, Code Cases, and Code interpretations at their respective Committee meetings or may submit such requests to the Secretary of a Subcommittee, Subgroup, or Working Group.

(e) Inquiries that do not comply with the provisions of this Appendix or that do not provide sufficient information for the Committee's full understanding may result in the request being returned to the inquirer with no action.

16-2 INQUIRY FORMAT

Submittals to the Committee shall include:

(a) Purpose. Specify one of the following:

(1) revision of present Code rule(s);

(2) new or additional Code rule(s);

(3) Code Case;

(4) Code interpretation.

(b) Background. Provide the information needed for the Committee's understanding of the inquiry, being sure to include reference to the applicable Code Section, Division, Edition, Addenda, paragraphs, figures, and tables. Preferably, provide a copy of the specific referenced portions of the Code.

(c) Presentations. The inquirer may desire or be asked to attend a meeting of the Committee to make a formal presentation or to answer questions from the Committee members with regard to the inquiry. Attendance at a Committee meeting shall be at the expense of the inquirer. The inquirer's attendance or lack of attendance at a meeting shall not be a basis for acceptance or rejection of the inquiry by the Committee.

16-3 CODE REVISIONS OR ADDITIONS

Requests for Code revisions or additions shall provide the following.

(a) Proposed Revision(s) or Addition(s). For revisions, identify the rules of the Code that require revision and submit a copy of the appropriate rules as they appear in the Code marked up with the proposed revision. For additions, provide the recommended wording referenced to the existing Code rules.

(b) Statement of Need. Provide a brief explanation of the need for the revision(s) or addition(s).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(c) Background Information. Provide background information to support the revision(s) or addition(s) including any data or changes in technology that form the basis for the request that will allow the Committee to adequately evaluate the proposed revision(s) or addition(s). Sketches, tables, figures, and graphs should be submitted as appropriate. When applicable, identify any pertinent paragraph in the Code that would be affected by the revision(s) or addition(s) and identify paragraphs in the Code that reference the paragraphs that are to be revised or added.

16-4 CODE CASES

Requests for Code Cases shall provide a *Statement of Need* and *Background Information* similar to that defined in 16-3(b) and 16-3(c), respectively, for Code revisions or additions. The proposed Code Case should identify the Code Section and Division and be written as a *Question* and a *Reply* in the same format as existing Code Cases. Requests for Code Cases should also indicate the applicable Code Edition(s) and Addenda to which the proposed Code Case applies.

16-5 CODE INTERPRETATIONS

Requests for Code interpretations shall provide the following.

(a) Inquiry. Provide a condensed and precise question, omitting superfluous background information, and, when possible, composed in such a way that a "yes" or a "no" *Reply,* possibly with brief provisos, is acceptable. The question should be technically and editorially correct.

(b) Reply. Provide a proposed *Reply* that will clearly and concisely answer the *Inquiry* question. Preferably, the *Reply* should be "yes" or "no" possibly with brief provisos.

(c) Background Information. Provide any background information that will assist the Committee in understanding the proposed *Inquiry* and *Reply.*

16-6 SUBMITTALS

Submittals to and responses from the Committee shall meet the following:

(a) Submittal. Inquiries from Code users shall preferably be submitted in typewritten form; however, legible handwritten inquiries will also be considered. They shall include the name, address, telephone number, and fax number, if available, of the inquirer and be mailed to the following address:

Secretary
ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee
Three Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5990

(b) Response. The Secretary of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee or of the appropriate Subcommittee shall acknowledge receipt of each properly prepared inquiry and shall provide a written response to the inquirer upon completion of the requested action by the Code Committee.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 17
DIMPLED OR EMBOSSED ASSEMBLIES

17-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in this Appendix cover minimum requirements for the design, fabrication, and inspection of pressure vessel assemblies limited to the following types:

(1) dimpled or embossed prior to welding;

(2) dimpled or embossed form achieved by using hydraulic or pneumatic pressure after welding.

(b) Welding processes covered under the rules of this Appendix include "weld-through" processes in which welding is done by penetrating through one or more members into, but not through, another member (see Figs. 17-1 through 17-6). These welding processes are as follows:

(1) resistance spot welding;

(2) resistance seam welding;

(3) gas-metal arc spot welding in which a spot weld is produced between two overlapping metal parts by heating with a timed electric arc between a consumable metal electrode and the work. The spot weld is made without preparing a hole in either member or with a hole in the dimpled or embossed member. Filler metal is obtained from the consumable electrode, and shielding is obtained from a single gas, a gas mixture (which may contain an inert gas), or a gas and a flux. See Fig. 17-4.

(4) machine, automatic, or semiautomatic gas tungsten arc seam welding without the addition of filler metal;

(5) machine, automatic, or semiautomatic gas tungsten-arc spot welding without the addition of filler metal;

(6) machine or automatic plasma arc seam welding without the addition of filler metal;

(7) machine or automatic submerged-arc seam welding with filler metal obtained from the electrode and shielding provided by the flux.

(c) Welding processes covered under the rules of this Appendix are "weld-through" processes in which welding is done by penetrating through one or more members into another member (see Fig. 17-17). These welding processes are as follows: machine or automatic laser beam seam welding without the addition of filler metal.

(d) For the purposes of specifying special requirements and degree of inspection, the weld joints made by the processes covered under the rules of this Appendix shall be considered as Category C joints.

(e) Embossed or dimpled assemblies may be made in one or more of the following manners:

(1) two embossed or two dimpled plates welded together as shown in Figs. 17-1 and 17-2 or an embossed or dimpled plate welded to a plain plate as shown in Figs. 17-3, 17-4, and 17-5 using a welding process described in (b)(1), (b)(2), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(5), (b)(6), (b)(7), or (c) above;

(2) two outer embossed or two outer dimpled plates welded to a third, intermediate plate, frame, or series of spacers to form a three-ply assembly as shown in Fig. 17-6 using a welding process described in (b)(1) or (b)(2) above.

(f) Dimpled or embossed assemblies, which consist of a dimpled or embossed plate welded to another like plate or to a plain plate and for which the welded attachment is made by fillet welds around holes or slots, shall be constructed in accordance with the requirements of UW-19(c).

17-2 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

(a) Assemblies as defined in this Appendix shall not be used for the containment of substances defined as lethal by UW-2(a).

(b) Assemblies defined in 17-1(a)(2) shall not be used as unfired steam boilers or as vessels subject to direct firing.

(c) Low Temperature Operation. Welds made in accordance with 17-1(b)(1) and (b)(2) do not require impact test qualification when joining permitted Part UHA and Part UNF materials. 04

17-3 MATERIALS

Materials used in the pressure containing parts of vessels covered by this Appendix shall be limited to those permitted by other parts of this Section or Division and qualified for welding per 17-7.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

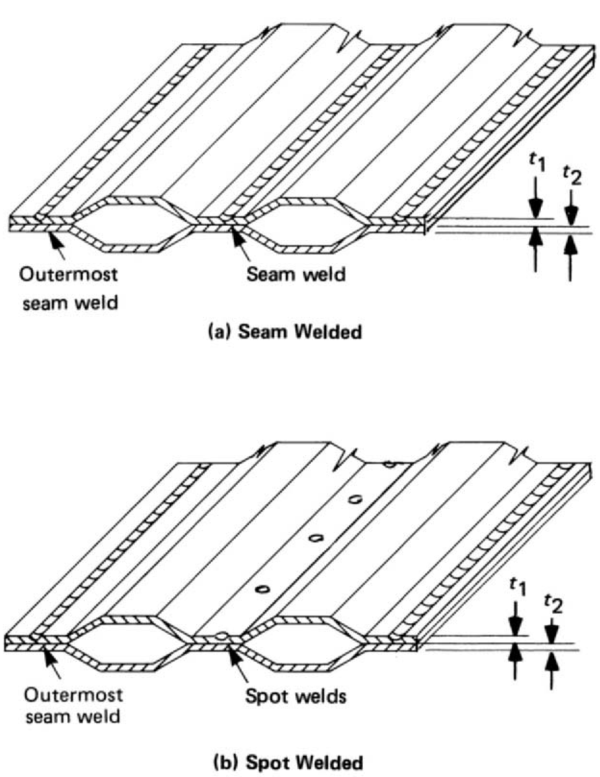


FIG. 17-1 TWO EMBOSSED PLATES

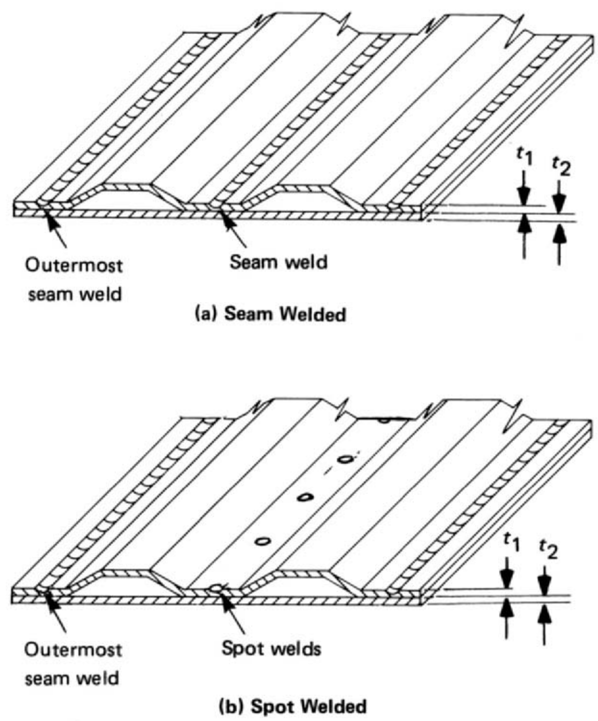


FIG. 17-3 EMBOSSED PLATE TO PLAIN PLATE

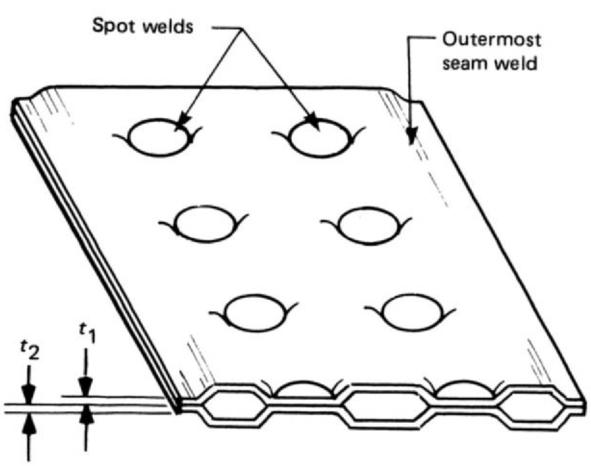


FIG. 17-2 TWO DIMPLED PLATES

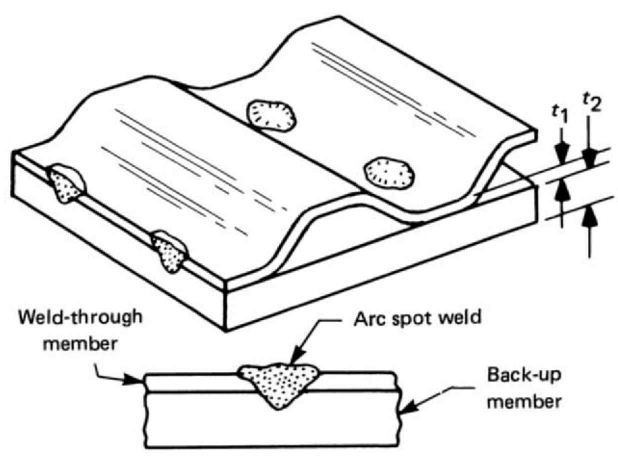


FIG. 17-4 ARC-SPOT-WELDED TWO-LAYER ASSEMBLY

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

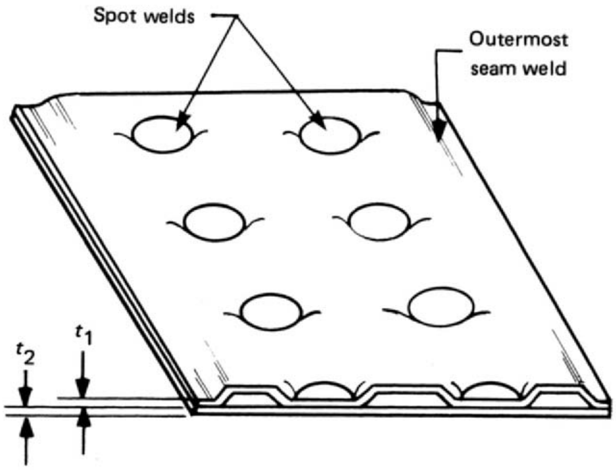


FIG. 17-5 DIMPLED PLATE WELDED TO PLAIN PLATE

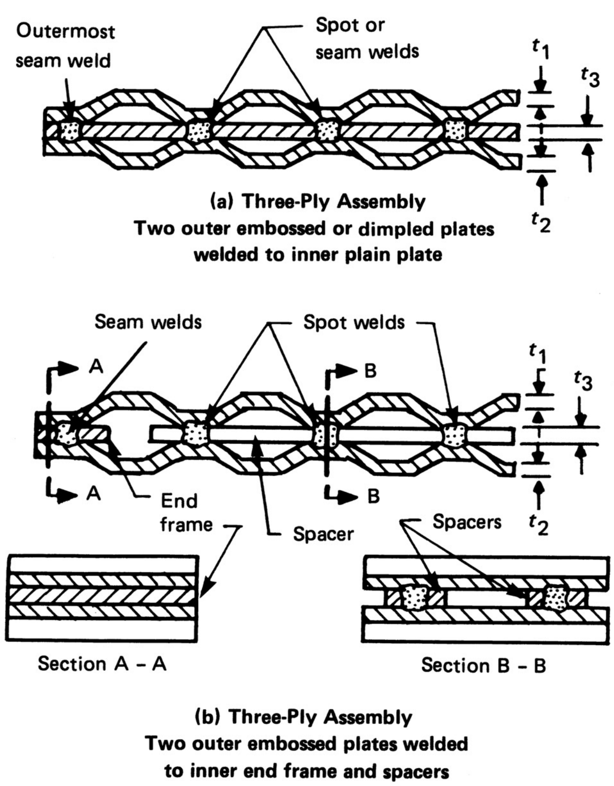


FIG. 17-6 THREE-PLY ASSEMBLIES

17-4 THICKNESS LIMITATIONS

The range of thickness of pressure containing parts which may be welded under the provisions of this Appendix shall be limited to that qualified by the welding procedure under the provisions of 17-7.

17-5 MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE WORKING PRESSURE (MAWP)

The MAWP shall be the lowest pressure established by (a) and (b) below.

(a) Proof Test

(1) For assemblies constructed under the provision of 17-1(a)(1), a proof test shall be conducted in accordance with UG-101. In using the formulas for calculating the MAWP, a value of 0.8 shall be used for E, the weld joint efficiency factor. This test may be a separate test or part of the test in 17-7(a)(1)(a).

(2) For assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(a)(2), a proof test shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of UG-101 of this Division using the bursting test procedures of UG-101(m) except provisions of UG-101(c) need not be followed provided that, when performing the proof test, the application of pressure is continuous until burst or until the proof test is stopped. In using the formulas for calculating the maximum allowable working pressure, a value of 0.80 shall be used for E, the weld joint efficiency factor. If the spot-welded and seam-welded sheets are formed to any shape other than flat plates prior to the inflating process which results in the dimpled formation, the proof tested vessel or representative panel shall be of a configuration whose curvature is to a radius no greater than that which will be used in production vessels.

(b) Calculations

(1) For assemblies using plain plate welded in accordance with 17-1(b)(2), (b)(4), (b)(6), (b)(7), and (c), calculate the MAWP or minimum thickness of the plain plate by the following formulas:

$$P = \frac{3St^2}{p^2} \tag{1}$$

$$t = p\sqrt{\frac{P}{3S}} \tag{2}$$

where

t = minimum thickness of plate, in. (mm)
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21), psi (kPa)
S = maximum allowable stress value given in Section II, Part D, psi (kPa)
p = maximum pitch measured between adjacent seam weld center lines, in. (mm)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(2) For assemblies using plain plate welded in accordance with 17-1(b)(1), (b)(3), and (b)(5), calculate the MAWP of the plain plate in accordance with the requirements for braced and stayed surfaces. See UG-47.

17-6 DESIGN LIMITATIONS

For assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(a)(2), the following design limitations shall apply.

(a) A change in any of the following variables will require requalification of the design using the proof test of 17-5(a)(2):

(1) an increase in the spot or seam pitch exceeding $^1\!/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm);

(2) a change in the specification, type, thickness, or grade of material for either sheet or both sheets;

(3) a change in the electrode size or electrode material;

(4) in formed construction when the radius of the curvature is less than the radius in the proof section [see 17-5(a)(2)].

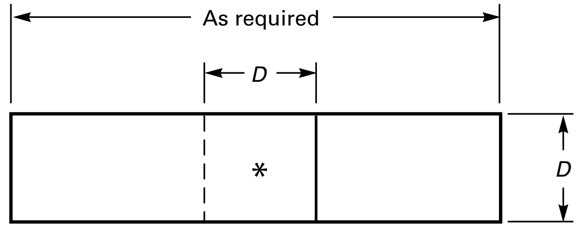
(b) A test panel duplicating that used to establish the maximum allowable working pressure shall be inflated to a pressure at least 5% greater than the maximum forming pressure to be used in production. The rate of pressurization shall be the same as that used in the burst test. The panel shall be sectioned to show at least six spot welds (see Fig. 17-14). The weld cross sections shall be subjected to macroetch examinations and shall show no cracks. The maximum pillow heights measured, as shown in Fig. 17-15, of vessels made in production shall not exceed 95% of the maximum pillow height of this duplicate test panel. The maximum forming pressure shall not exceed 80% of the burst pressure.

17-7 WELDING CONTROL

(a) In lieu of the Procedure Qualification requirements of Section IX, the following requirements shall be met. Performance Qualification for assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(a)(1) shall be performed in accordance with Section IX or the following requirements.

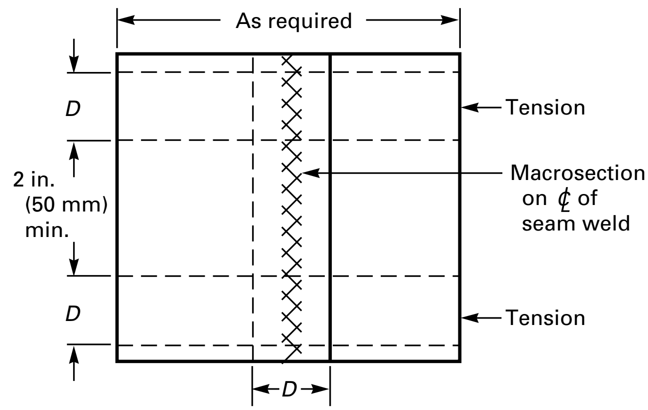
(1) Proof Testing for Procedure and Performance Qualification

(a) For assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(a)(1), a pressure proof test to destruction shall be conducted on a finished vessel or representative panel. The test shall be conducted as specified in UG-101(m). If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction, but not less than 24 in. (600 mm) in either direction.



NOTE: 1 in. (25 mm) ≤ D ≤ $1^1\!/_4$ in. (32 mm)

FIG. 17-7 SINGLE-SPOT-WELD TENSION SPECIMEN, TWO-PLY JOINT



NOTE: 1 in. (25 mm) ≤ D ≤ $1^1\!/_4$ in. (32 mm)

FIG. 17-8 SEAM-WELD SPECIMEN FOR TENSION AND MACROSECTION, TWO-PLY JOINT

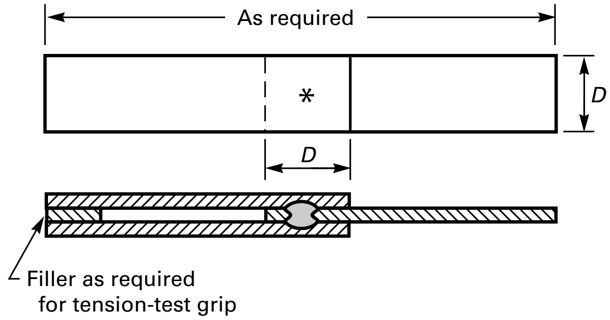
(b) For assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(a)(2), a pressure proof test to destruction as set forth in 17-5(a)(2) shall be conducted on a finished vessel or representative panel. This test may be a separate test or a part of the test in 17-5(a)(2). If a representative panel is used, it shall be rectangular in shape and at least 5 pitches in each direction but not less than 24 in. (600 mm) in either direction.

(c) Duplicate parts or geometrically similar parts that are fabricated using the same welding process, and meet the requirements of UG-101(d)(1) or UG-101(d)(2) need not be tested.

(2) Workmanship Samples

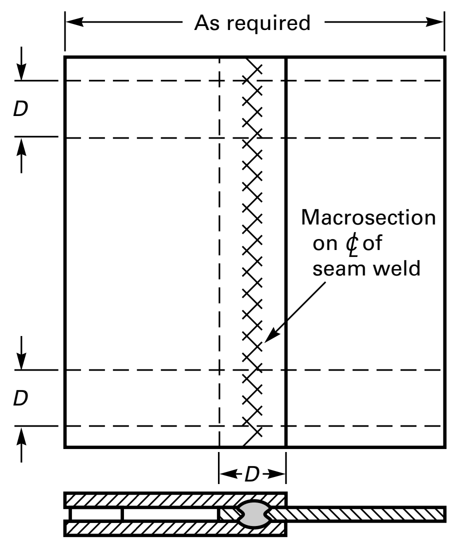
(a) For assemblies for two-ply joints constructed under the provisions of 17-1(b)(1), (b)(2), (b)(4), (b)(5), (b)(6), (b)(7), or (c), three single spot welded specimens or one seam welded specimen, as shown in Figs. 17-7 and 17-8 shall be made immediately before and after the welding of the proof test vessel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



NOTE: 1 in. (25 mm) ≤ D ≤ $1^1/_4$ in. (32 mm)

FIG. 17-9 SINGLE SPOT-WELD TENSION SPECIMEN FOR THREE-PLY JOINT



NOTE: 1 in. (25 mm) ≤ D ≤ $1^1/_4$ in. (32 mm)

FIG. 17-10 SEAM-WELD SPECIMEN FOR TENSION AND MACROSECTION FOR THREE-PLY JOINT

Similarly, for assemblies for three-ply joints constructed under the provisions of 17-1(b)(1) and/or (b)(2), three single spot welded specimens and/or one seam welded specimen, as shown in Figs. 17-9 and 17-10 for three-ply joints shall be made immediately before and after welding of the proof test vessel. These test specimens shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test vessel.

When resistance welding and a difference in the amount of magnetic material in the throat of the machine or the part geometry preclude the welding of satisfactory test specimens at the same machine settings as those used for the proof test vessel, sufficient material shall be placed in the throat of the welding machine to compensate for the difference in size of the proof test panel and the small test specimens.

The spot welded specimens shall be subjected to tensile loading for ultimate strength and be visually inspected for nugget size, electrode indentation, and evidence of defects. The seam weld specimens shall be similarly tested for ultimate strength and prepared for macrographic examination to reveal nugget size, spacing, penetration, soundness, and surface condition. In addition, a typical spot welded sample and seam welded sample shall be cut from the proof test vessel or panel after failure. A portion of each sample shall be sectioned for macroetch examination.

Also for two-ply assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(b)(4), (b)(6), (b)(7), or (c), additional test specimens as shown in Fig. 17-13 shall be made; one immediately before and one immediately after the welding of the proof test vessel, using the same plate thicknesses and material grade used in the proof test vessel. These welds shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test vessel and of the practice to be used for the production vessels. One cross section shall be taken from each weld test assembly, as shown in Fig. 17-13, and shall be suitably polished and etched to show clearly the demarcation between the weld metal and the base metal. The etched macrosections shall reveal sound weld metal with complete fusion along the bond line and complete freedom from cracks in the weld metal and the heat affected base metals. The width of the weld at the interface shall be measured and recorded as a workmanship reference value.

Bend tests shall be made on each of the test weld assemblies, as shown in Fig. 17-13. The bend specimens shall be tested in accordance with QW-160, Section IX, except that after bending, the convex surface of the specimens, in the weld and the heat affected base metal, shall show not more than two cracks or other open defects, neither of which shall measure more than $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) in length in any direction.

One cross section from each of any two welds constructed under the provisions of 17-1(b)(4), (b)(6), (b)(7), or (c), shall be cut from the proof test vessel after failure and these shall be subjected to macroetch examination as above.

(b) For assemblies constructed under the provision of 17-1(b)(3), a test block of five or more arc-spot welds, as shown in Fig. 17-11, shall be made immediately before and after welding of the proof test vessel, using the same plate thickness and material of the same specification and grade as used in the proof test vessel. These

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

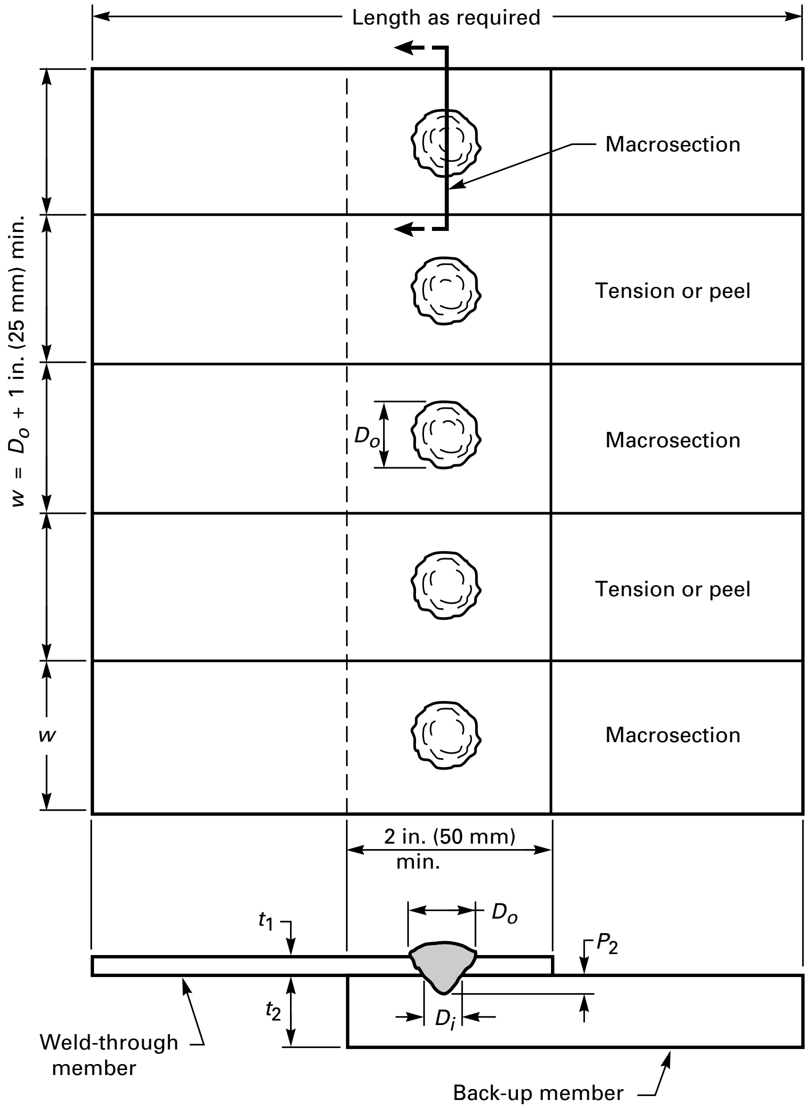
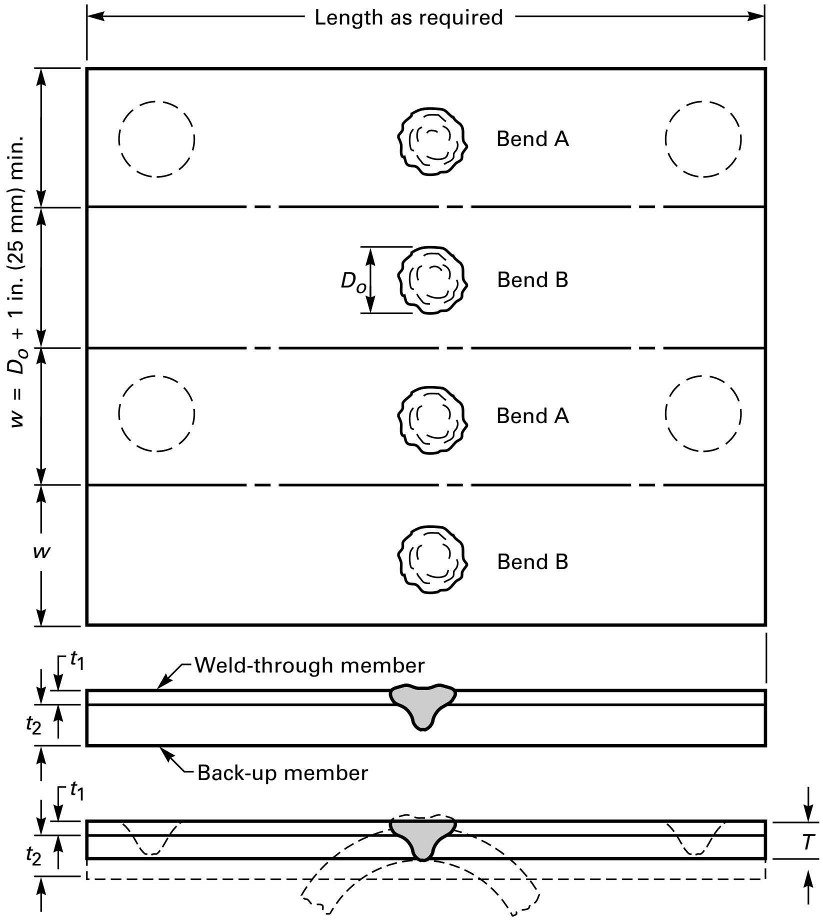


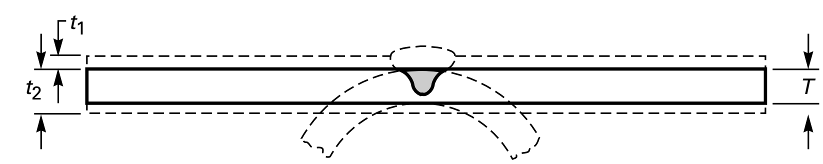
FIG. 17-11 GAS METAL ARC-SPOT-WELD BLOCK FOR MACROSECTIONS AND STRENGTH TESTS

welds shall be representative of the manufacturing practice employed in the fabrication of the proof test vessel and of the practice to be used for the production vessels. The arc-spot welds shall be visually inspected for surface soundness, fusion, and external nugget shape and size D_o. At least three welds from each test block shall be cross-sectioned and suitably etched to show clearly the demarcation between the weld metal and the base metal. The etched macrosections shall reveal sound weld metal with complete fusion along the bond line and complete freedom from cracks in the weld metal and the heat affected base metals. The nugget diameter D_i at the faying surface shall be reasonably consistent in all specimens, and the penetration P_2 into the backup member shall be less than the thickness t_2 of that member. At least two welds from each test block shall be broken in tension or peel-tested. In addition to the test-block welds, five or more typical arc-spot weld samples shall be cut from the proof test vessel, after it has been tested to destruction, for cross sectioning and macroscopic examination for nugget size, penetration, and configuration. Any combination of carbon steels P-No. 1 material listed in Table UCS-23 shall be considered as a similar-material combination. Any combination of stainless steels listed in Table UHA-23 shall be considered as a similar-material combination. Any combination of nonferrous materials listed

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Bend A: Grind arc-spot weld reinforcement flush, and machine back-up member to bend-specimen thickness T, if required. Bend in direction indicated.



Bend B: Remove weld-through member, grind smooth at arc-spot-weld (faying surface), and machine back-up member to bend-specimen thickness T, if required. Bend in direction indicated.

FIG. 17-12 GAS METAL ARC-SPOT-WELD BLOCK FOR BEND TESTS

in Table UNF-23 shall be considered as a similar-material combination. For qualification of arc-spot welds in dissimilar combinations of carbon steels, stainless steels, and SB-168 (Ni–Cr–Fe alloy), an additional block of four arc-spot welds shall be prepared for bend tests, as shown in Fig. 17-12, immediately before and after the welding of the proof test vessel. The bend specimens shall be tested in accordance with QW-466, Section IX, except that after bending, the convex surface of the specimens, in the weld and the heat affected base metal, shall show not more than two cracks or other open defects, neither of which shall measure more than $^1/_{16}$ in. (1.5 mm) in length in any direction.

(b) Machine Settings and Controls

(1) For vessels constructed under the provisions of this Appendix, all applicable parameters used in the making of the proof test vessel and workmanship samples

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

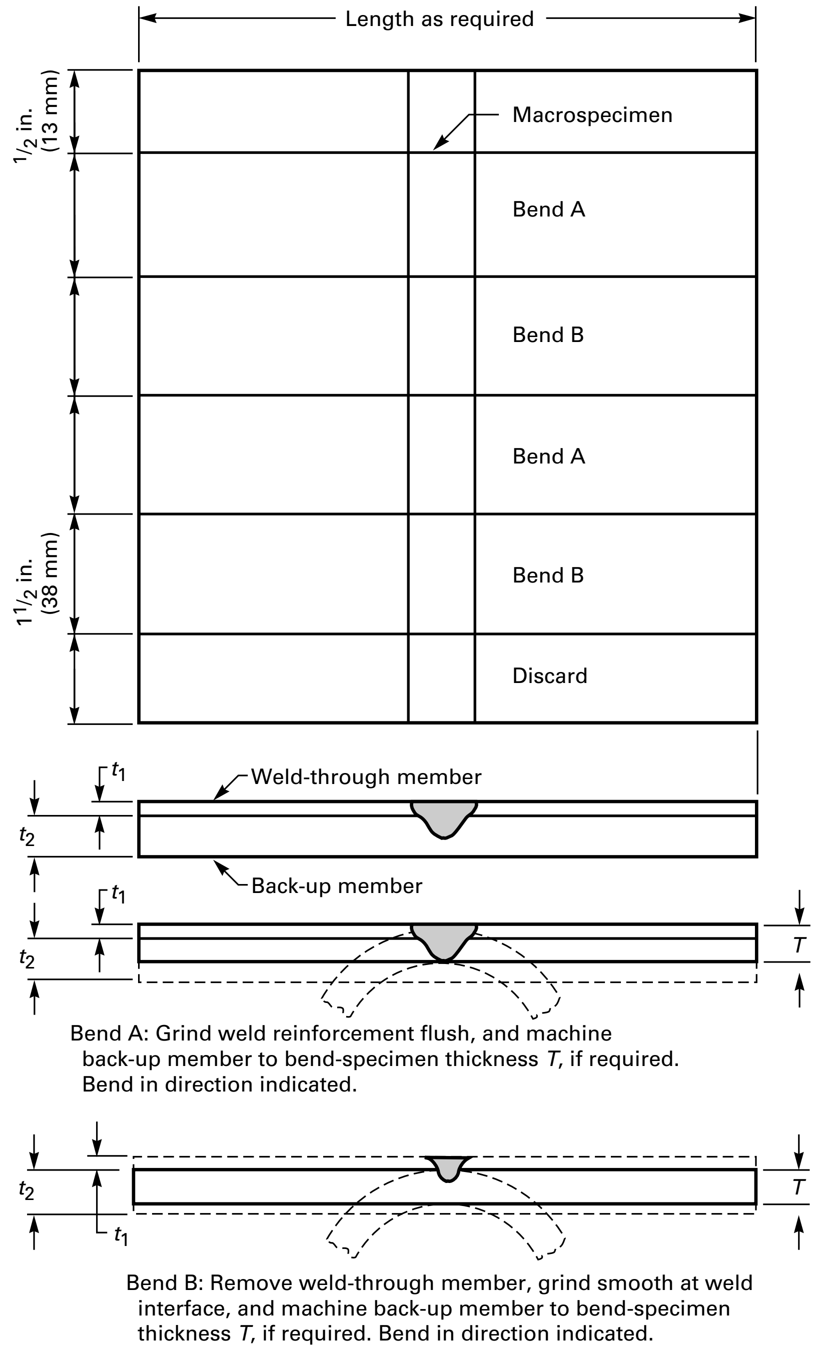


FIG. 17-13 GAS TUNGSTEN-ARC SEAM WELD, PLASMA-ARC SEAM WELD, SUBMERGED-ARC SEAM WELD, AND LASER BEAM SEAM WELD TEST SPECIMEN FOR BEND TESTS
Refer to Section IX, QW-462.3 and QW-466

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

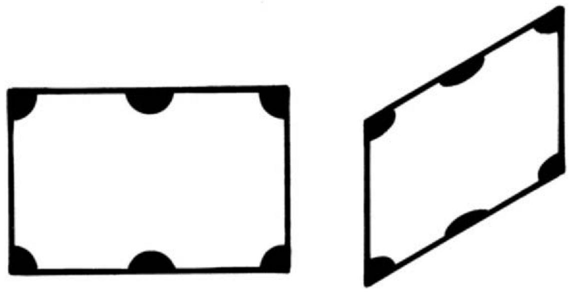


FIG. 17-14

shall be recorded. Parameters to be recorded are as follows:

(a) all Essential, Nonessential, and Supplementary Essential (if required) Variables listed in Section IX for procedure qualifications of the applicable process;

(b) all preheat, postweld heat treatments, and inspection procedures;

(c) applicable material specification, including type, grade, and thickness of the material welded;

(d) parameters recorded above shall be included in a written Welding Procedure Specification and will serve as procedure and performance qualifications for future production.

(2) Except for minor variations permitted by the welding variables in Section IX, the settings recorded per (b)(1) above shall be used in the fabrication of all vessels in a given production run. See 17-8(a)(1).

(3) If equipment other than that used for the initial proof test vessel and the workmanship samples is to be used in production, each additional machine and welding procedure shall be qualified in full accordance with (a)(1) above. The performance of the additional proof test vessels shall substantiate the allowable working pressure previously established for the specific pressure vessel design. In assemblies welded per 17-1(b)(3), any major component change or replacement of welding equipment previously qualified shall require requalification. (Routine maintenance and replacement of expendable items, such as contact tubes and shielding nozzles, are excluded.)

(c) Miscellaneous Welding Requirements

(1) Lap joints may only be resistance spot or seam welded per 17-1(b)(1) or (b)(2); or machine, automatic, or semiautomatic gas tungsten-arc welded per 17-1(b)(4) or (b)(5); or machine or automatic plasma-arc welded per 17-1(b)(6); or machine or automatic submerged-arc welded per 17-1(b)(7); or machine or automatic laser beam welded per 17-1(c).

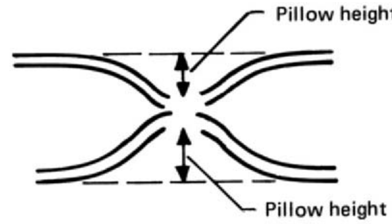


FIG. 17-15

(2) For assemblies welded per 17-1(b)(3), the gas metal arc-spot welding equipment used in the qualification tests and in production shall be semiautomatic (with a timed arc) or fully automatic. Manual arc-spot welding where the welder has manual control of arc time is not permitted under the rules of this Appendix, nor are edge or fillet type arc-spot welds. All gas metal arc-spot welding shall be done in the downhand position, with the work, at the location of the spot weld, in a substantially horizontal plane. The required size and spacing of the gas metal arc-spot welds shall be demonstrated by calculation and by the pressure proof test [see 17-5(a)].

(3) For assemblies constructed under the provisions of 17-1(a)(2), and having sheets formed within dies where the dies control the shape of the pillow (Fig. 17-15) and restrain the welds so that the bending in the sheet is outside of the heat affected zone, the welding may be done before or after forming; and the requirements and limitations of 17-6(b) do not apply.

(d) Welding other than that permitted by this Appendix, used for the attachment of nozzles, tubes and fittings, for the closing of peripheral seams, for the making of plug and slot welds, or for the fillet welding of holes and slots, shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of this Division.

17-8 QUALITY CONTROL

(a) Definitions

(1) production run — a group of vessels or assemblies all produced during the same 24 hr day using the same welding processes, materials, and material thicknesses

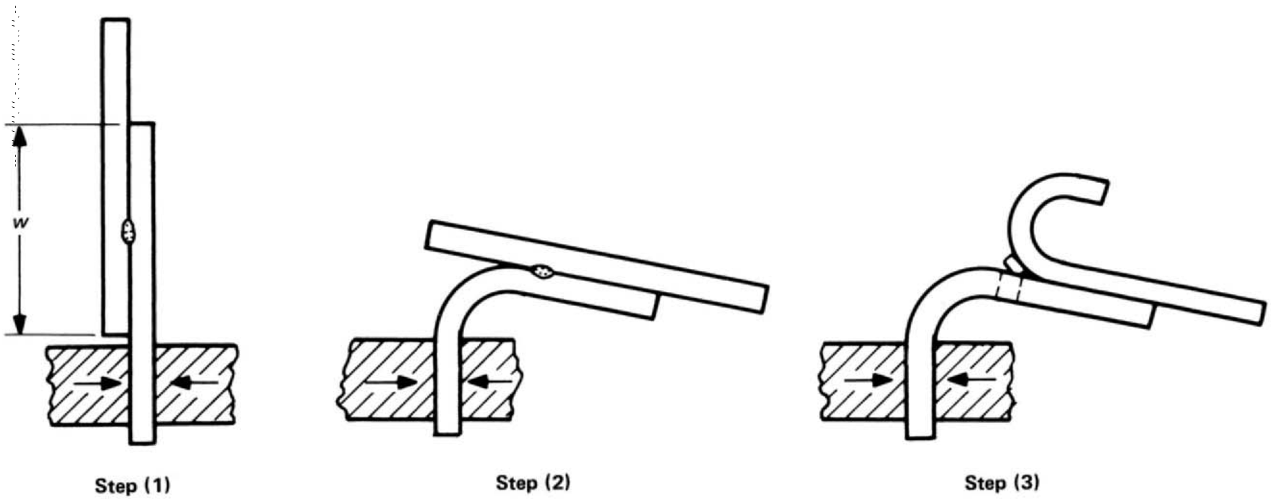
(2) peel test — a test performed in accordance with Fig. 17-16

(3) tension test — a destructive test performed in a tension test machine employing specimens shown in Figs. 17-7, 17-8, 17-9, 17-10, and 17-11

(b) Test Requirements. At the beginning of each production run, at least one test shall be made as follows.

(1) For assemblies constructed under 17-1(b)(1), (b)(2), (b)(4), (b)(5), (b)(6), (b)(7), or (c) either a peel

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



Step 1: Grip specimen in vise or other suitable device.

Step 2: Bend specimen (This step may not be required if the gripped portion of the specimen is greatly thicker than the other portion.)

Step 3: Peel pieces apart with suitable tool until they are separated.

FIG. 17-16 PEEL TEST

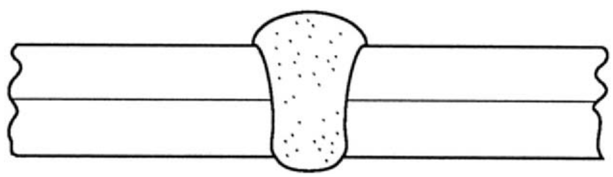


FIG. 17-17 WELDING PROCESSES PER 17-1(c)

test, or a tension test, or a macroetch examination shall be performed. The acceptance criteria for the peel and tension tests shall be that the parent metal adjacent to the weld must fail before the weld itself fails. The macroetch examination shall be performed on one test specimen by cross sectioning and examining the weld in accordance with 17-7(a)(2)(b).

(2) For assemblies constructed under 17-1(b)(3), a macroetch examination shall be performed in accordance with 17-7(a)(2)(b) except that only one weld need be cross sectioned and examined.

17-9 RECORDS

As specified in 17-7(b), records shall be maintained for all data obtained during the fabrication of the proof test vessels and the workmanship samples. Such records shall also be kept for production work welded in accordance with 17-1(b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(5), (b)(6), (b)(7), and (c).

17-10 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 17, Dimpled or Embossed Assemblies."

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 18
ADHESIVE ATTACHMENT OF NAMEPLATES

18-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in this Appendix cover minimum requirements for the use of adhesive systems for the attachment of nameplates, limited to:

(1) the use of pressure-sensitive acrylic adhesives which have been preapplied by the nameplate manufacturer to a nominal thickness of at least 0.005 in. (0.13 mm) and which are protected with a moisture-stable liner;

(2) use for vessels with design temperatures within the range of −40°F to 300°F (−40°C to 150°C), inclusive;

(3) application to clean, bare metal surfaces, with attention being given to removal of antiweld spatter compound which may contain silicone;

(4) use of prequalified application procedures as outlined in 18-2;

(5) use of the preapplied adhesive within an interval of 2 years after adhesive application.

18-2 NAMEPLATE APPLICATION PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION

(a) The Manufacturer's Quality Control System [see U-2(h)] shall define that written procedures, acceptable to the Inspector, for the application of adhesive-backed nameplates shall be prepared and qualified.

(b) The application procedure qualification shall include the following essential variables, using the adhesive and nameplate manufacturers' recommendations where applicable:

(1) description of the pressure-sensitive acrylic adhesive system employed, including generic composition;

(2) the qualified temperature range [the cold box test temperature shall be −40°F (−40°C) for all applications];

(3) materials of nameplate and substrate when the mean coefficient of expansion at design temperature of one material is less than 85% of that for the other material;

(4) finish of the nameplate and substrate surfaces;

(5) the nominal thickness and modulus of elasticity at application temperature of the nameplate when nameplate preforming is employed. A change of more than 25% in the quantity: [(nameplate nominal thickness)^2 × nameplate modulus of elasticity at application temperature] will require requalification.

(6) the qualified range of preformed nameplate and companion substrate contour combinations when preforming is employed;

(7) cleaning requirements for the substrate;

(8) application temperature range and application pressure technique;

(9) application steps and safeguards.

(c) Each procedure used for nameplate attachment by pressure-sensitive acrylic adhesive systems shall be qualified for outdoor exposure in accordance with Standard UL-969, Marking and Labeling Systems, with the following additional requirements.

(1) Width of nameplate test strip shall not be less than 1 in. (25 mm).

(2) Nameplates shall have an average adhesion of not less than 8 lb/in. (36 N/25 mm) of width after all exposure conditions, including low temperature.

(d) Any change in (b) above shall require requalification.

(e) Each lot or package of nameplates shall be identified with the adhesive application date.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 19
ELECTRICALLY HEATED OR GAS FIRED JACKETED STEAM KETTLES

19-1 SCOPE

The rules in Appendix 19 provide additional requirements for electrically heated or gas fired jacketed steam kettles constructed under the rules of this Division.

19-2 SERVICE RESTRICTIONS

No steam or water shall be withdrawn from the jacket for use external to the vessel and the operating pressure of the jacket shall not exceed 50 psi (350 kPa).

19-3 MATERIALS

When in contact with products of combustion, austenitic stainless steel parts shall be of either the low carbon or stabilized grades. Structural grade carbon steel, SA-36 and SA-283 (Grades A, B, C, and D), shall not be used for any pressure part.

19-4 DESIGN

Welded Categories A and B joints in contact with products of combustion shall be of Type No. 1 of Table UW-12.

19-5 INSPECTION AND STAMPING

Electrically heated or gas fired jacketed steam kettles shall be inspected by an Inspector and shall not be marked with the UM Symbol regardless of volume [see U-1(j)].

19-6 PRESSURE RELIEF

The capacity of the safety valve in pounds of steam per hour shall be at least equal to the Btu per hour rating of the burner divided by 1000 or the kilowatt rating of the electric heating element multiplied by 3.5.

19-7 APPURTENANCES AND CONTROLS

The jacket shall be furnished with the following minimum appurtenances and controls [see U-2(a)(4)]:

(a) a pressure gage;

(b) a water gage glass; or alternatively, for electrically heated jacketed steam kettles with immersion type heating elements, a low level warning light;

(c) a separate connection, fitted with a stop valve, for venting air or adding water to the jacket (the water may be added while the vessel is not under pressure);

(d) an electric heater control or automatic gas valve controlled by pressure or temperature to maintain the steam pressure in the jacket below the safety valve setting;

(e) a low water cutoff that will cut off the fuel to the burner or power to the electric heating element if the water in the jacket drops below the lowest permissible water level established by the manufacturer;

(f) a safety pilot control that will cut off the fuel to both the main burner and the pilot burner in case of pilot flame failure.

19-8 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 19, Electrically Heated or Gas Fired Jacketed Steam Kettles."

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 20
HUBS MACHINED FROM PLATE

04

20-1 SCOPE

This Appendix covers the requirements for hubs of tubesheets, lap joint stub ends, and flat heads machined from plate when the hub length is in the through thickness direction of the plate.

20-2 MATERIAL

Plate shall be manufactured by a process that produces material having through thickness properties which are at least equal to those specified in the material specification. Such plate can be, but is not limited to, that produced by methods such as electroslag (ESR) and vacuum arc remelt (VAR). The plate must be tested and examined in accordance with the requirements of the material specification and the additional requirements specified in the following paragraphs.

Test specimens, in addition to those required by the material specifications, shall be taken in a direction parallel to the axis of the hub and as close to the hub as practical, as shown in Fig. UW-13.3. At least two tensile test specimens shall be taken from the plate in the proximity of the hub with one specimen taken from the center third of the plate width as rolled, and the second specimen taken at 90 deg around the circumference from the other specimen. Both specimens shall meet the tensile and yield requirements of the SA material specification. All dimensional requirements of Fig. UW-13.3 shall apply.

Subsize test specimens conforming to the requirements of Fig. 4 of SA-370 may be used if necessary, in which case the value for "elongation in 2 in. (50 mm)," required by the material specification, shall apply to the gage length specified in Fig. 4.

The reduction-of-area shall not be less than 30%. (For those materials for which the material specification requires a reduction-of-area value greater than 30%, the higher value must be met.)

20-3 EXAMINATION REQUIREMENTS

Each part shall be examined as follows.

(a) Before and after machining, the part, regardless of thickness, shall be ultrasonically examined by the straight beam technique in accordance with SA-388. The examination shall be in two directions approximately at right angles, that is, from the cylindrical or flat rectangular surfaces of the hub and in the axial direction of the hub.

The part shall be unacceptable:

(1) if the examination results show one or more indications accompanied by loss of back reflection larger than 60% of the reference back reflection;

(2) if the examination results show indications larger than 40% of the reference back reflection when accompanied by a 40% loss of back reflection.

(b) Before welding the hub of the tubesheet or flat head to the adjacent shell, the hub shall be examined by magnetic particle or liquid penetrant methods in accordance with Appendix 6 or 8.

(c) After welding, the weld and the area of the hub for at least $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) from the edge of the weld shall be 100% radiographed in accordance with UW-51. As an alternative, the weld and hub area adjacent to the weld may be ultrasonically examined in accordance with Appendix 12.

20-4 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 20, Hubs Machined from Plate."

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 21
JACKETED VESSELS CONSTRUCTED OF WORK-HARDENED NICKEL

21-1 SCOPE

Jacketed vessels having an inner shell constructed of nickel sheet or plate that meets the requirements of SB-162 and that has been work-hardened by a planishing operation over its entire surface during fabrication, with a corresponding increase in strength against collapse, shall meet the requirements of this Division, provided that the additional provisions which follow are met.

21-2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

(a) The maximum size of any vessel shall be 8 ft (2.4 m) I.D.

(b) The maximum operating temperature shall not exceed 400°F (205°C).

(c) Any cylindrical skirt (flange) on a hemispherical head that is subject to external pressure shall be designed as a cylinder.

(d) The thickness of the inner shell of each vessel shall be such as to withstand without failure a hydrostatic test pressure in the jacket space of not less than three times the desired maximum allowable working pressure.

(e) In no case shall the thickness of the inner shell or head be less than that determined from the external pressure chart Fig. NFA-4 in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D.

(f) The required moment of inertia of stiffening rings shall be determined from the appropriate chart in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D for the material used for the rings.

(g) The outer shell and head shall be designed for increased strength, if necessary, to accommodate the test pressure specified in (d) above, in order to avoid rejection of the vessel under UG-99(d).

21-3 FABRICATION

Any butt weld that is subject to the external pressure shall be ground flush with the base metal, and the deposited weld metal and the heat affected zone shall be work-hardened in the same manner as the base metal.

21-4 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 21, Jacketed Vessels Constructed of Work-Hardened Nickel."

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 22
INTEGRALLY FORGED VESSELS

22-1 SCOPE

This Appendix covers the minimum requirements for the design, fabrication, and inspection of special integrally forged pressure vessels having a higher allowable stress value than that for vessels under Part UF provided additional requirements specified in this Appendix are met.

22-2 MATERIAL

The forging material shall comply with SA-372 Grade A, B, C, or D, Grade E Class 55, 65, or 70, Grade F Class 55 or 70, Grade G Class 55 or 70, Grade H Class 55 or 70, Grade J Class 55, 65, or 70, Grade L, or Grade M Class A or B.

22-3 DESIGN

(a) A maximum allowable stress value of one-third the minimum tensile strength specified in the material specification (Section II) for the grade shall be used.

(b) The maximum inside diameter of the shell shall not exceed 24 in. (600 mm).

(c) The design metal temperatures shall be as given in UG-20, except the maximum temperature shall not exceed 200°F (95°C). All other requirements of UG-20 shall be met.

(d) The vessel shall be of streamlined design, as shown in Fig. 22-1, with the following features.

(1) The shell portion shall have no stress raisers, such as openings, welded attachments, or stamping, except for identification stamping on the forging material prior to heat treatment.

(2) The integral heads shall be hot formed, concave to the pressure, and so shaped and thickened as to provide details of design and construction of the center openings which will be as safe as those provided by the rules of this Division; the center openings shall not exceed the lesser of 50% of the inside diameter of the vessel or NPS 3 (DN 80); other openings in the head shall not exceed NPS $^3/_4$ (DN 20); openings shall be placed at a point where the calculated membrane stress, without holes, is not more than one-sixth of the specified minimum tensile strength.

(3) The vessel shall have no welding, except for seal welding of threaded connections performed either before or after heat treatment in accordance with UF-32.

22-4 HEAT TREATMENT

(a) The completed vessel, after all forging operations, shall be heat treated by one of the applicable methods outlined in SA-372.

(b) The tensile properties shall be determined by the testing method outlined in SA-372.

(c) When liquid quenched and tempered, each vessel shall be hardness tested as outlined in UF-31(b)(1)(b).

(d) After heat treatment, the outside surface of each vessel, regardless of the type of heat treatment used, shall be subjected to the magnetic particle test or the liquid penetrant test as outlined in UF-31(b)(1)(a).

22-5 MARKING

(a) The vessel shall be stamped on the thickened head portion with both the maximum allowable working pressure based on that for vessels under Part UF and also the maximum allowable working pressure based on a stress equal to one-third the specified minimum tensile strength.

(b) The words "Appendix 22" shall be stamped following the latter pressure in (a) above.

22-6 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 22, Integrally Forged Vessels."

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

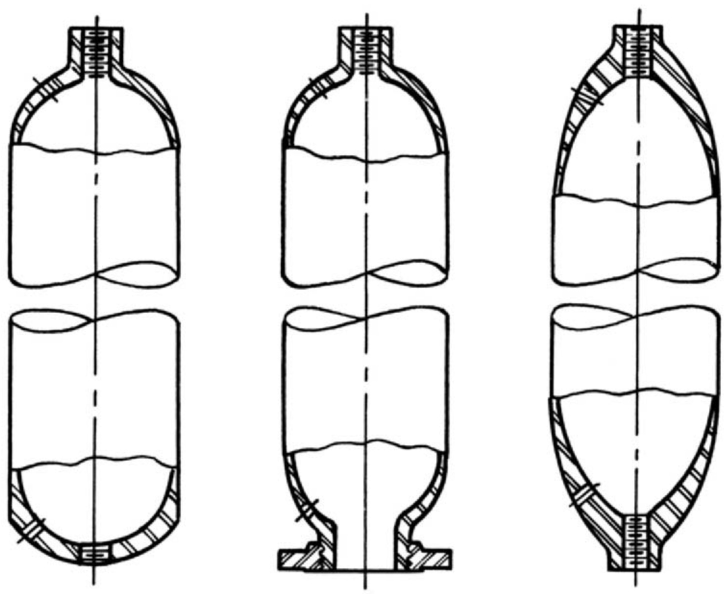


FIG. 22-1 TYPICAL SECTIONS OF SPECIAL SEAMLESS VESSELS

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 23
EXTERNAL PRESSURE DESIGN OF COPPER, COPPER ALLOY, AND TITANIUM ALLOY CONDENSER AND HEAT EXCHANGER TUBES WITH INTEGRAL FINS

23-1 SCOPE

The rules in this Appendix cover the proof test procedure and criteria for determining the maximum allowable external working pressure of copper, copper alloy, and titanium alloy condenser and heat exchanger tubes with helical fins that are integrally extended from the tube wall as an alternative to the requirements of UG-8(b)(4). This Appendix may only be used when the specified corrosion allowance for the tubes is zero. In addition, when using SB-543, this Appendix may only be used when the finning operations are performed after the tubes have been welded, tested, and inspected according to SB-543.

23-2 MATERIALS

(a) Copper and copper alloy tubes shall meet SB-359 or SB-543.

04 *(b)* Titanium alloy tubes shall meet SB-861 or SB-862.

04 23-3 TEST PROCEDURE

(a) Test to failure (visible collapse) by external hydrostatic pressure three full size specimens.

(b) The maximum allowable working pressure P shall be determined by

$$P = F\left(\frac{B}{3}\right)\left(\frac{Y_s}{Y_a}\right)$$

where

B = minimum collapse pressure, psi (kPa)

F = factor to adjust for change in strength due to design temperature
$= S/S_2$

S = maximum allowable stress value for the tube material at design temperature, as given in the tables referenced in UG-23 but not to exceed S_2, psi

S_2 = maximum allowable stress value for the tube material at test temperature, as given in the tables referenced in UG-23, psi

Y_a = actual average yield strength determined from the unfinned length of the three specimens tested at room temperature, psi (kPa)

Y_s = specified minimum yield strength at room temperature, psi (kPa)

23-4 CRITERIA

(a) The design of copper and copper alloy finned tubes to this Appendix shall meet the following requirements.

(1) External design pressure rating shall not exceed 700 psi (4800 kPa).

(2) Design temperature shall not exceed 150°F (65°C), except that when the test specimens are annealed after finning, the design temperature may be the maximum temperature shown on the external pressure chart for the material corresponding to the temper of the unfinned sections of the tubes. 04

(3) Tubes shall have external and/or internal integrally extended helical fins and the sum of external plus internal fins shall be at least 10 fins/in. (10 fins/25 mm).

(4) Dimensions and permissible variations shall be as specified in Item 15 of SB-359.

(b) The design of titanium alloy finned tubes to this Appendix shall meet the following requirements.

(1) External design pressure rating shall not exceed 3,500 psi (24 MPa).

(2) Design temperature shall not exceed 600°F (315°C).

(3) Tubes shall have external integrally extended helical fins only and shall have at least 10 fins/in. (10 fins/25 mm).

(4) Dimensions and permissible variations shall be as specified in item 15 of SB-359 (Specification for Copper and Copper Alloy Seamless Condenser and Heat Exchanger Tubes with Integral Fins).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(c) Additional requirements for copper, copper alloy, and titanium alloy tubes designed to this Appendix are as follows.

(1) Test specimens shall be identical in fin geometry and pitch to production tubes.

(2) Test specimens of 50 outside diameters or more in length shall qualify all totally finned lengths.

(3) Unfinned length at the ends or at an intermediate section shall qualify that length and all lesser unfinned lengths.

(4) Nominal wall thickness under the fin and at the unfinned area shall qualify all thicker wall sections but with no increase in P.

(5) Outside diameter of the finned section shall not exceed the outside diameter of the unfinned section.

(6) Tests shall be done in accordance with 23-3, witnessed by and subjected to the acceptance of the Inspector.

23-5 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance with Appendix 23, External Pressure Design of Copper, Copper Alloy, and Titanium Alloy Condenser and Heat Exchanger Tubes With Integral Fins."

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 24
DESIGN RULES FOR CLAMP CONNECTIONS

24-1 SCOPE

(a) The rules in this Appendix apply specifically to the design of clamp connections for pressure vessels and vessel parts and shall be used in conjunction with the applicable requirements in Subsections A, B, and C of this Division. These rules shall not be used for the determination of thickness of supported or unsupported tubesheets integral with a hub nor for the determination of thickness of covers. These rules provide only for hydrostatic end loads, assembly, and gasket seating.

(b) The design of a clamp connection involves the selection of the gasket, bolting, hub, and clamp geometry. Bolting shall be selected to satisfy the requirements of 24-4. Connection dimensions shall be such that the stresses in the clamp and the hub, calculated in accordance with 24-6 and 24-7, do not exceed the allowable stresses specified in Table 24-8. All calculations shall be made on dimensions in the corroded condition. Calculations for assembly, gasket seating, and operating conditions are required.

(c) It is recommended that either a pressure energized and/or low seating load gasket be used to compensate for possible nonuniformity in the gasket seating force distribution. Hub faces shall be designed such as to have metal-to-metal contact outside the gasket seal diameter. This may be provided by recessing the hub faces or by use of a metal spacer (see Fig. 24-1). The contact area shall be sufficient to prevent yielding of either the hub face or spacer under both operating and assembly loads.

(d) It is recognized that there are clamp designs which utilize no wedging action during assembly since clamping surfaces are parallel to the hub faces. Such designs are acceptable and shall satisfy the bolting and corresponding clamp and hub requirements of a clamp connection designed for a total included clamping angle of 10 deg.

(e) The design method used herein to calculate stresses, loads, and moments may also be used in designing clamp connections of shapes differing from those shown in Figs. 24-1 and 24-2, and for clamps consisting of more than two circumferential segments. The design formulas used herein may be modified when designing clamp connections of shape differing from those shown in Figs. 24-1 and 24-2, provided that the basis for the modifications is in accordance with U-2(g). However, the requirements of (f) below shall be complied with for all clamp connections.

(f) Clamps designed to the rules of this Appendix shall be provided with a bolt retainer. The retainer shall be designed to hold the clamps together independently in case of failure of the primary bolting [see UG-35(b)]. Multiple bolting (two or more bolts per lug) is an acceptable alternative for meeting this requirement. Clamp-hub friction shall not be considered as a retainer method.

24-2 MATERIALS

(a) Materials used in the construction of clamp connections shall comply with the requirements given in UG-5 through UG-14.

(b) Hubs made from ferritic steel and designed in accordance with the rules herein shall be given a normalizing or full-annealing heat treatment when the thickness of the hub neck section exceeds 3 in. (75 mm).

(c) Cast steel hubs and clamps shall be examined and repaired in accordance with Appendix 7.

(d) Hubs and clamps shall not be machined from plate.

(e) Bolts and studs shall comply with UG-12. Minimum diameter shall be $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm). Nuts and washers shall comply with UG-13.

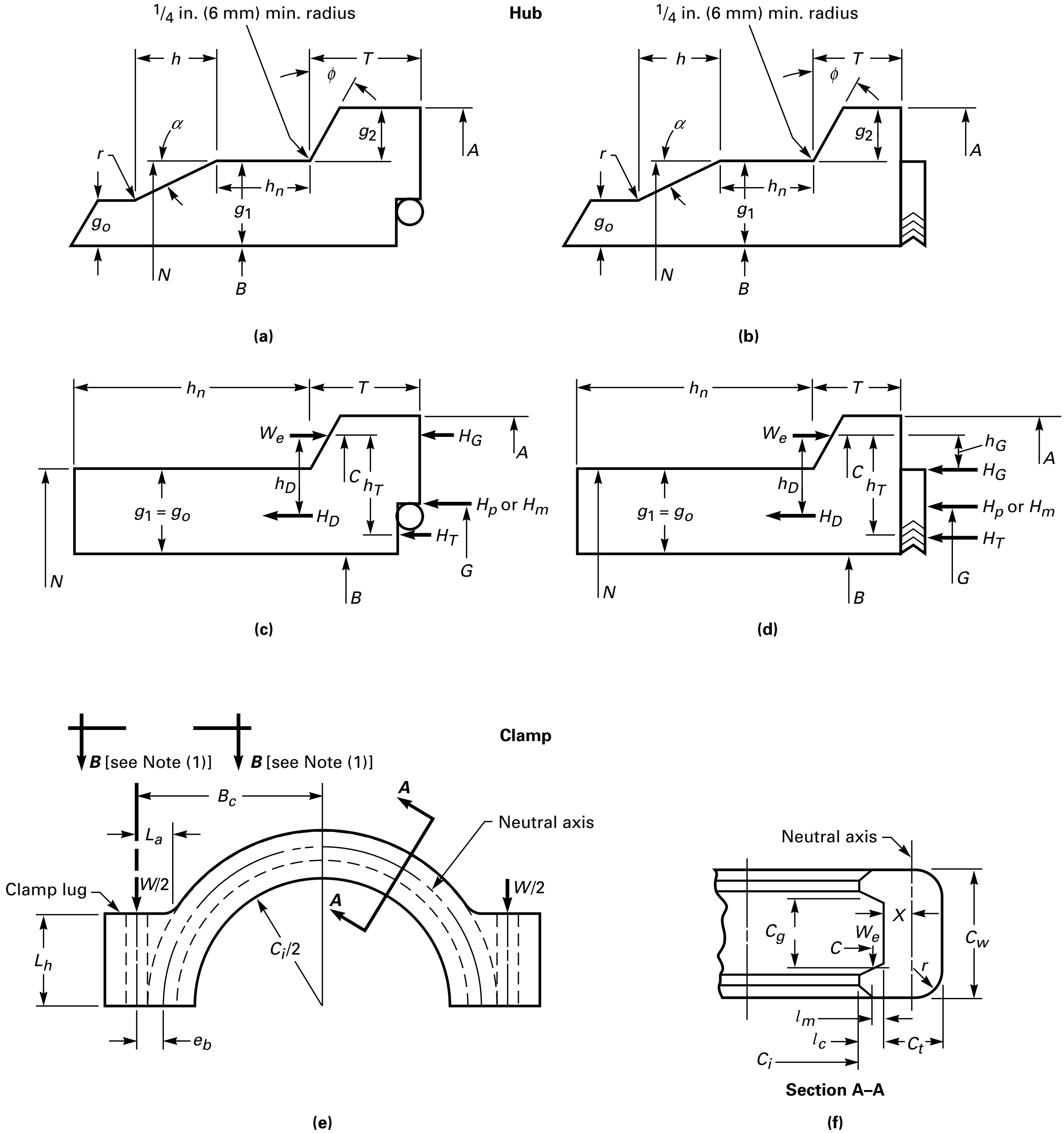
24-3 NOTATION

The notation below is used in the formulas for the design of clamp-type connections (see also Figs. 24-1 and 24-2).

A = outside diameter of hub

A_{bL} = total cross-sectional area of the bolts per clamp lug using the smaller of the root diameter of the thread or least diameter of unthreaded portion. Cross-sectional area of bolt retainer shall not be included in calculation of this area. When multiple bolting is used in lieu of bolt retainer, the total cross-sectional area of all the bolts per clamp lug shall be used.

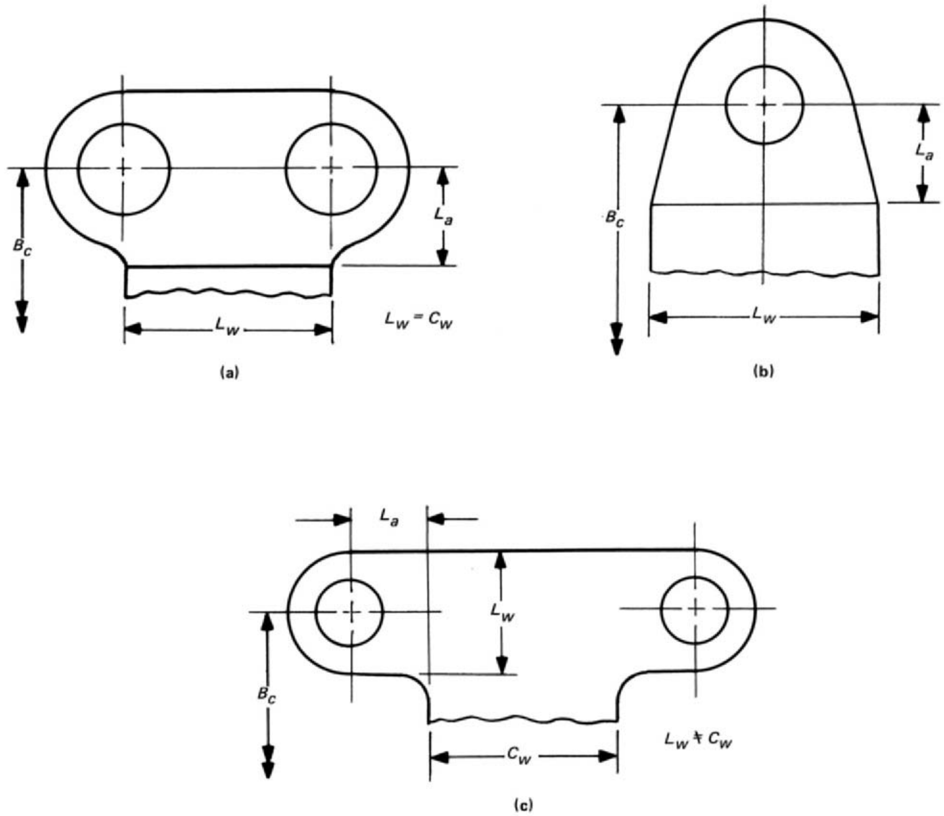
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTE:
(1) See Fig. 24-2 for Section B-B

FIG. 24-1 TYPICAL HUB AND CLAMP

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: See 24-1(f) for retainer requirements.

FIG. 24-2 TYPICAL CLAMP LUG CONFIGURATIONS

A_c = total effective clamp cross-sectional area
= A_1+A_2+A_3
A_1 = partial clamp area
= $(C_w–2C_t)C_t$
A_2 = partial clamp area
= $1.571C_t^2$
A_3 = partial clamp area
= $(C_w–C_g)l_c$
A_{m1} = total cross-sectional area of bolts per clamp lug at root of thread or section of least diameter under stress, required for the operating conditions
= $W_{m_1}/2S_b$
A_{m2} = total cross-sectional area of bolts per clamp lug at root of thread or section of least diameter under stress, required for gasket seating
= $W_{m_2}/2S_a$
A_{m3} = total cross-sectional area of bolts per clamp lug at root of thread or section of least diameter under stress, required for assembly conditions
= $W_{m_3}/2S_a$
A_{mL} = total required cross-sectional area of bolts per clamp lug taken as the greater of A_{m1}, A_{m2}, or A_{m3}
b = effective gasket or joint-contact-surface seating width (see Table 2-5.2)
b_o = basic gasket or joint-contact-surface seating width (see Table 2-5.2)
B = inside diameter of hub
B_c = radial distance from connection center line to center of bolts [see Fig. 24-1 sketch (e)]
C = diameter of effective clamp-hub reaction circle
= $(A + C_i)/2$
C_i = inside diameter of clamp
C_g = effective clamp gap determined at diameter C
C_t = effective clamp thickness (C_t shall be equal to or greater than r)
C_w = clamp width
e_b = radial distance from center of the bolts to the centroid of the clamp cross section
= $B_c - (C_i/2) - l_c - X$
f = hub stress correction factor from Fig. 2-7.6. (This is the ratio of the stress in the small end

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

of the hub to the stress in the large end.) (For values below limit of the figure, use $f = 1.0$.)

g_o = thickness of hub neck at small end

g_1 = thickness of hub neck at intersection with hub shoulder

g_2 = height of hub shoulder (g_2 shall not be larger than T.)

$\bar{g}$ = radial distance from the hub inside diameter B to the hub shoulder ring centroid

$$= \frac{Tg_1^2 + h_2g_2(2g_1 + g_2)}{2(Tg_1 + h_2g_2)}$$

G = diameter at location of gasket load reaction. Except as noted in Fig. 24-1, G is defined as follows (see Table 2-5.2):

(a) when $b_o \leq 1/4$ in. (6 mm), G = mean diameter of gasket or joint contact face;

(b) when $b_o > 1/4$ in. (6 mm), G = outside diameter of gasket contact face less $2b$

h = hub taper length

h_D = radial distance from effective clamp-hub reaction circle to the circle on which H_D acts

$= [C-(B + g_1)]/2$

h_G = radial distance from effective clamp-hub reaction circle to the circle on which H_G acts(mm) (for full face contact geometries, $h_G = 0$)

h_n = hub neck length [minimum length of h_n is $0.5g_1$ or $1/4$ in. (6 mm), whichever is larger]

$h_o = \sqrt{Bg_o}$,

h_T = radial distance from effective clamp-hub reaction circle to the circle on which H_T acts

$= [C - (B + G)/2]/2$

h_2 = average thickness of hub shoulder

$= T - (g_2 \tan \phi)/2$

$\bar{h}$ = axial distance from the hub face to the hub shoulder ring centroid

$$= \frac{T^2g_1 + h_2^2g_2}{2(Tg_1 + h_2g_2)}$$

H = total hydrostatic end force

$= 0.785\, G^2P$

H_D = hydrostatic end force on bore area

$= 0.785\, B^2P$

H_G = difference between total effective axial clamping preload and the sum of total hydrostatic end force and total joint contact surface compression

$= [1.571\, W/\tan(\phi + \mu)] - (H + H_p)$

H_m = total axial gasket seating requirements for makeup ($3.14bGy$ or the axial seating load for self-energizing gaskets, if significant)

H_p = total joint contact surface compression load

$= 2b \times 3.14GmP$

= (For self-energized gaskets, use $H_p = 0$ or actual retaining load if significant.)

H_T = difference between total hydrostatic end force and hydrostatic end force on bore area

$= H - H_D$

I_c = moment of inertia of clamp relative to neutral axis of entire section

$$= \left(\frac{A_1}{3} + \frac{A_2}{4}\right) C_t^2 + \frac{A_3 l_c^2}{3} - A_c X^2$$

I_h = moment of inertia of hub shoulder relative to its neutral axis

$$= \frac{g_1T^3}{3} + \frac{g_2h_2^3}{3} - (g_2h_2 + g_1 T)\bar{h}^2$$

L_a = distance from W to the point where the clamp lug joins the clamp body [see Fig. 24-1 sketch (e)]

L_h = clamp lug height [see Fig. 24-1 sketch (e)]

L_w = clamp lug width (see Fig. 24-2)

l_c = effective clamp lip length

l_m = effective clamp lip moment arm

$= l_c - (C - C_i)/2$

m = gasket factor from Table 2-5.1

M_D = moment due to H_D

$= H_Dh_D$

M_F = offset moment

$= H_D(g_1 - g_o)/2$

M_G = moment due to H_G

$= H_Gh_G$

M_H = reaction moment at hub neck

$$= M_o \Big/ \left\{1 + \frac{1.818}{\sqrt{Bg_1}} \times \left[T - \bar{h} + \frac{3.305\, I_h}{g_1^2(B/2 + \bar{g})}\right]\right\}$$

M_o = total rotational moment on hub (see 24-5)

M_P = pressure moment

$= 3.14 \times PBT\,(T/2 - \bar{h})$

M_R = radial clamp equilibriating moment

$= 1.571\, W\,\{\bar{h} - T + [(C - N)\tan\phi]/2\}$

M_T = moment due to H_T

$= H_Th_T$

N = outside diameter of hub neck

P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)

Q = reaction shear force at hub neck

$= 1.818\, M_H/\sqrt{Bg_1}$

r = clamp or hub cross section corner radius

$= 1/4$ in. (6 mm) min., C_t max.

S_a = allowable bolt stress at room temperature

S_b = allowable bolt stress at design temperature

S_{OH} = allowable design stress for hub material at (operating condition) design temperature

S_{AH} = allowable design stress for hub material at (assembly condition) room temperature

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

S_{OC} = allowable design stress for clamp material at (operating condition) design temperature
S_{AC} = allowable design stress for clamp material at (assembly condition) room temperature
S_1 = hub longitudinal stress on outside at hub neck
S_2 = maximum Lamé hoop stress at bore of hub
S_3 = maximum hub shear stress at shoulder
S_4 = maximum radial hub shear stress in neck
S_5 = clamp longitudinal stress at clamp body inner diameter
S_6 = clamp tangential stress at clamp body outer diameter
S_7 = maximum shear stress in clamp lips
S_8 = clamp lug bending stress
S_9 = effective bearing stress between clamp and hub
T = thickness of hub shoulder per Fig. 24-1
W = total design bolt load required for operating or assembly conditions, as applicable
W_e = total effective axial clamping preload on one clamp lip and hub shoulder (gasket seating or assembly)
= $1.571\ W/\tan(\phi + \mu)$
W_{m1} = minimum required total bolt load for the operating conditions [see 24-4(b)(1)]
W_{m2} = minimum required total bolt load for gasket seating [see 24-4(b)(2)]
W_{m3} = minimum required total bolt load for assembly [see 24-4(b)(3)]
X = clamp dimension to neutral axis per Fig. 24-1 sketch (f)

$$= \left[\left(\frac{C_w}{2} - \frac{C_t}{3}\right) C_t^2 - \frac{(C_w - C_g)}{2}\, l_c^2\right] / A_c$$

y = gasket seating stress (from Table 2-5.1)
Z = clamp-hub taper angle, deg. (for gasket seating and preload, $Z = \phi + \mu$; for operating, $Z = \phi - \mu$) [see 24-4(b)(4)]
α = hub transition angle, deg
= 45 deg max.
μ = friction angle, deg
ϕ = clamp shoulder angle, deg
= 40 deg max.

24-4 BOLT LOADS

(a) General. During assembly of the clamp connection, the design bolt load W is resolved into an effective clamp preload W_e, which is a function of the clamp-hub taper angle ϕ and the friction angle μ. An appropriate friction angle shall be established by the Manufacturer, based on test results for both assembly and operating conditions.

(b) Calculations. In the design of bolting for a clamp connection, complete calculations shall be made for three separate and independent sets of conditions which are defined as follows.

(1) The required bolt load for the operating conditions W_{m1} shall be sufficient to resist the hydrostatic end force H exerted by the design pressure acting on the area bounded by the diameter of gasket reaction plus a gasket compressive load H_p which experience has shown to be sufficient to assure a tight joint. The minimum operating bolt load W_{m1} shall be determined in accordance with Formula (1):

$$W_{m1} = 0.637\ (H + H_p) \tan(\phi - \mu) \quad (1)$$

(2) Before a tight joint can be obtained, it is necessary to seat the gasket or joint-contact surface properly by applying a minimum initial load (under atmospheric temperature conditions without the presence of internal pressure), which is a function of the gasket material and the effective gasket area to be seated. The minimum initial bolt load required for gasket seating W_{m2} shall be determined in accordance with Formula (2):

$$W_{m2} = 0.637\ H_m \tan(\phi + \mu) \quad (2)$$

(3) To assure proper preloading of the clamp connection against operating conditions, an assembly bolt load W_{m3} shall be determined in accordance with Formula (3):

$$W_{m3} = 0.637\ (H + H_p) \tan(\phi + \mu) \quad (3)$$

(4) In Formula (1), credit for friction is allowed based on clamp connection geometry and experience, but the bolt load shall not be less than that determined using a $\phi - \mu$ value of 5 deg. Friction is also considered in determining bolt loads by Formulas (2) and (3), but the μ factor used shall not be less than 5 deg.

(c) Required Bolt Area. The total cross-sectional area of bolting A_{mL} required shall be the greater of the values for operating conditions A_{m1}, gasket seating conditions A_{m2}, or assembly condition A_{m3}. Bolt bending in the assembly shall be avoided by utilization of spherically seated nuts and/or washers.

(d) Clamp Connection Design Bolt Load W. The bolt load used in the design of the clamp connection shall be the value obtained from Formulas (4) and (5).

Operating conditions:

$$W = W_{m1} \quad (4)$$

Assembly conditions:

$$W = (A_{mL} + A_{bL}) S_a \quad (5)$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

24-5 HUB MOMENTS

The moments used in determining hub stresses are the products of loads and moment arms illustrated in Fig. 24-1 and defined in 24-3.

In addition, reaction moments due to hub eccentricities and bearing pressure are considered.

For the operating condition, the design moment M_o is the sum of six individual moments: M_D, M_G, M_T, M_F, M_P, and M_R. The bolt load W used is that from Formula (4).

For assembly, the design moment M_o is based on the design bolt load of Formula (5):

$$M_o = \frac{0.785\ W(C - G)}{\tan\ (\phi + \mu)} \tag{6}$$

24-6 CALCULATION OF HUB STRESSES

The stresses in the hub shall be determined for both the operating and the assembly condition.

(a) The reaction moment M_H and the reaction shear Q are defined in 24-3 and shall be calculated at the hub neck for rotational moment M_o.

(b) Hub stresses shall be calculated from the following formulas:

Hub longitudinal stress

$$S_1 = f\left[\frac{PB^2}{4g_1(B + g_1)} + \frac{1.91M_H}{g_1{}^2(B + g_1)}\right] \tag{7}$$

Hub hoop stress

$$S_2 = P\left(\frac{N^2 + B^2}{N^2 - B^2}\right) \tag{8}$$

Hub axial shear stress

$$S_3 = \frac{0.75\ W}{T(B + 2g_1)\ \tan Z} \tag{9}$$

Hub radial shear stress

$$S_4 = \frac{0.477\ Q}{g_1(B + g_1)} \tag{10}$$

24-7 CALCULATION OF CLAMP STRESSES

The stresses in the clamp shall be determined for both the operating and the assembly conditions. Clamp stresses shall be calculated from the following formulas:

Clamp longitudinal stress

$$S_5 = \frac{W}{2C\ \tan Z}\left[\frac{1}{C_t} + \frac{3(C_t + 2l_m)}{C_t{}^2}\right] \tag{11}$$

Clamp tangential stress

$$S_6 = \frac{W}{2}\left[\frac{1}{A_c} + \frac{|e_b|\ (C_t - X)}{I_c}\right] \tag{12}$$

Clamp lip shear stress

$$S_7 = \frac{1.5\ W}{(C_w - C_g)\ C\ \tan Z} \tag{13}$$

Clamp lug bending stress

$$S_8 = 3\ W\frac{L_a}{L_wL_h{}^2} \tag{14}$$

In addition, a bearing stress calculation shall be made at the clamp-to-hub contact by Formula (15):

$$S_9 = \frac{W}{(A - C_i)\ C\ \tan Z} \tag{15}$$

24-8 ALLOWABLE DESIGN STRESSES FOR CLAMP CONNECTIONS

Table 24-8 gives the allowable stresses that are to be used with formulas of 24-6 and 24-7.

TABLE 24-8
ALLOWABLE DESIGN STRESS FOR CLAMP CONNECTIONS

Stress Category	Allowable Stress
S_1	$1.5S_{OH}$ or $1.5S_{AM}$
S_2	S_{OH}
S_3	$0.8S_{OH}$ or $0.8S_{AH}$
S_4	$0.8S_{OH}$ or $0.8S_{AH}$
S_5	$1.5S_{OC}$ or $1.5S_{AC}$
S_6	$1.5S_{OC}$ or $1.5S_{AC}$
S_7	$0.8S_{OC}$ or $0.8S_{AC}$
S_8	S_{OC} or S_{AC}
S_9	(1)

NOTE:
(1) 1.6 times the lower of the allowable stresses for hub material (S_{OH}, S_{AH}) and clamp material (S_{OC}, S_{AC}).

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 25
ACCEPTANCE OF TESTING LABORATORIES AND AUTHORIZED OBSERVERS FOR CAPACITY CERTIFICATION OF PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

25-1 SCOPE

These rules cover the requirements for ASME acceptance of testing laboratories and Authorized Observers for conducting capacity certification tests of pressure relief valves.

25-2 TEST FACILITIES AND SUPERVISION

The tests shall be conducted at a place where the testing facilities, methods, procedures, and person supervising the tests (Authorized Observer) meet the applicable requirements of ASME PTC 25. The tests shall be made under the supervision of and certified by an Authorized Observer. The testing facilities, methods, procedures, and the qualifications of the Authorized Observer shall be subject to the acceptance of ASME on recommendation from a representative from an ASME designated organization. Acceptance of the testing facility is subject to review within each 5 year period. The testing laboratory shall have available for reference a copy of ASME PTC 25 and this Section VIII, Division 1.

25-3 ACCEPTANCE OF TESTING FACILITY

Before a recommendation is made to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee on the acceptability of a testing facility, a representative from an ASME designated organization shall review the applicant's Quality Control System and testing facility and shall witness test runs. Before a favorable recommendation can be made to ASME, the testing facility must meet all applicable requirements of ASME PTC 25. Uncertainty in final flow measurement results shall not exceed ±2%. To determine the uncertainty in final flow measurements, the results of flow tests on an object tested at the applicant's testing laboratory will be compared to flow test results on the same object tested at a designated ASME accepted testing laboratory.

25-4 QUALITY CONTROL SYSTEM

The applicant shall prepare a Quality Control Manual describing his quality control system which will clearly establish the authority and responsibility of those in charge of the Quality Control System. The manual shall include a description of the testing facility, testing arrangements, pressure, size and capacity limitations, and the testing medium used. An organization chart showing the relationship among the laboratory personnel is required to reflect the actual organization.

The Quality Control Manual shall include as a minimum the applicable requirements of this Division and ASME PTC 25, including but not limited to a description of the Quality Control Manual and document control, the procedure to be followed when conducting tests, the methods by which test results are to be calculated, how test instruments and gages are to be calibrated and the frequency of their calibration, and methods of identifying and resolving nonconformities. Sample forms shall be included. If testing procedure specifications or other similar documents are referenced, the Quality Control Manual shall describe the methods of their approval and control.

25-5 TESTING PROCEDURES

25-5(a) Flow tests shall be conducted at the applicant's facility, including the testing of one or more valves and other flow devices (nozzle orifice or other object with a fixed flow path) in accordance with the methods specified by this Division and ASME PTC 25. The capacity of the devices to be tested shall fall within the testing capability of the laboratory being evaluated and a designated ASME accepted testing laboratory. The representative from an

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ASME designated organization will observe the procedures and methods of tests, and the recording of results.

25-5(b) The devices tested at the applicant's facility will then be tested at a designated ASME accepted testing laboratory to confirm the test results obtained. Agreement between the results of the two laboratories shall be within ±2%.

The purpose of comparing test results at the two laboratories is to check not only procedures, but also all test instruments and equipment of the applicant's facility over the capacity and pressure range proposed. Since the capabilities of each laboratory are different, a specific number of tests cannot be predetermined. The number will be in accordance with the flow capability and measurment techniques available at the laboratory being evaluated.

Provided the above tests and comparisons are found acceptable, a representative from an ASME designated organization will submit a report to the Society recommending the laboratory be accepted for the purpose of conducting capacity certification tests. If a favorable recommendation cannot be given, a representative from an ASME designated organization will provide, in writing to the Society, the reasons for such a decision.

25-6 AUTHORIZED OBSERVERS

A representative from an ASME designated organization shall review and evaluate the experience and qualifications of persons who wish to be designated as Authorized Observers. Following such review and evaluation, a representative from an ASME designated organization shall make a report to the Society. If a favorable recommendation is not made, full details shall be provided in the report.

Persons designated as Authorized Observers by the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Committee shall supervise capacity certification tests only at testing facilities specified by ASME.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 26 PRESSURE VESSEL AND HEAT EXCHANGER EXPANSION JOINTS

04

26-1 SCOPE

The rules in this Appendix apply to single or multiple layer bellows expansion joints, unreinforced, reinforced or toroidal, as shown in Fig. 26-1, subject to internal or external pressure and cyclic displacement. The bellows shall consist of single or multiple identically formed convolutions. They may be as formed (not heat-treated), or annealed (heat-treated). The suitability of an expansion joint for the specified design pressure, temperature, and axial displacement shall be determined by the methods described herein.

26-2 CONDITIONS OF APPLICABILITY

The design rules of this Appendix are applicable only when the following conditions of applicability are satisfied:

(a) The bellows shall be such that: $Nq \le 3D_b$.

(b) The bellows nominal thickness shall be such that $nt \le 0.2$ in. (5.0 mm).

(c) The number of plies shall be such that: $n \le 5$.

(d) The displacement shall be essentially axial. However angular and/or lateral deflection inherent in the fit-up of the expansion joint to the pressure vessel is permissible provided the amount is specified and is included in the expansion joint design [see 26-4(d)].

(e) The design temperature shall not be in the range where the time-dependent properties govern the allowable stress. For austenitic chromium-nickel stainless steels, UNS N066XX and UNS N04400, the design temperature shall not exceed 800°F (425°C).

26-3 NOMENCLATURE

Symbols used in this Appendix are as follows (see Fig. 26-1):

A = cross-sectional metal area of one convolution

$$A = \left[\left(\frac{\pi - 2}{2}\right) q + 2w\right] nt_p$$

A_c = cross-sectional metal area of all reinforcing collars for toroidal bellows

A_f = cross-sectional metal area of one reinforcing fastener

A_r = cross-sectional metal area of one bellows reinforcing ring member

B_1, B_2, B_3 = coefficients used for toroidal bellows, given by Table 26-8

C_p, C_f, C_d = coefficients for U-shaped convolutions, given by Figs. 26-4, 26-5, and 26-6

C_r = convolution height factor for reinforced bellows

$$C_r = 0.3 - \left(\frac{100}{K_c P^{1.5} + 320}\right)^2$$

K_c = 0.6, where P is expressed in psi

K_c = 1,048, where P is expressed in MPa

C_1, C_2 = coefficients given by equations, used to determine coefficients C_p, C_f, C_d

$$C_1 = \frac{q}{2w}$$

$$C_2 = \frac{q}{2.2\sqrt{D_m t_p}}$$

C_{wc} = longitudinal weld joint efficiency for tangent collar (see UW-12)

C_{wr} = longitudinal weld joint efficiency for reinforcing member (see UW-12)

D_b = inside diameter of bellows convolution and end tangents

D_c = mean diameter of collar

$$D_c = D_b + 2nt + tc$$

D_m = mean diameter of bellows convolution. For U-shaped bellows:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

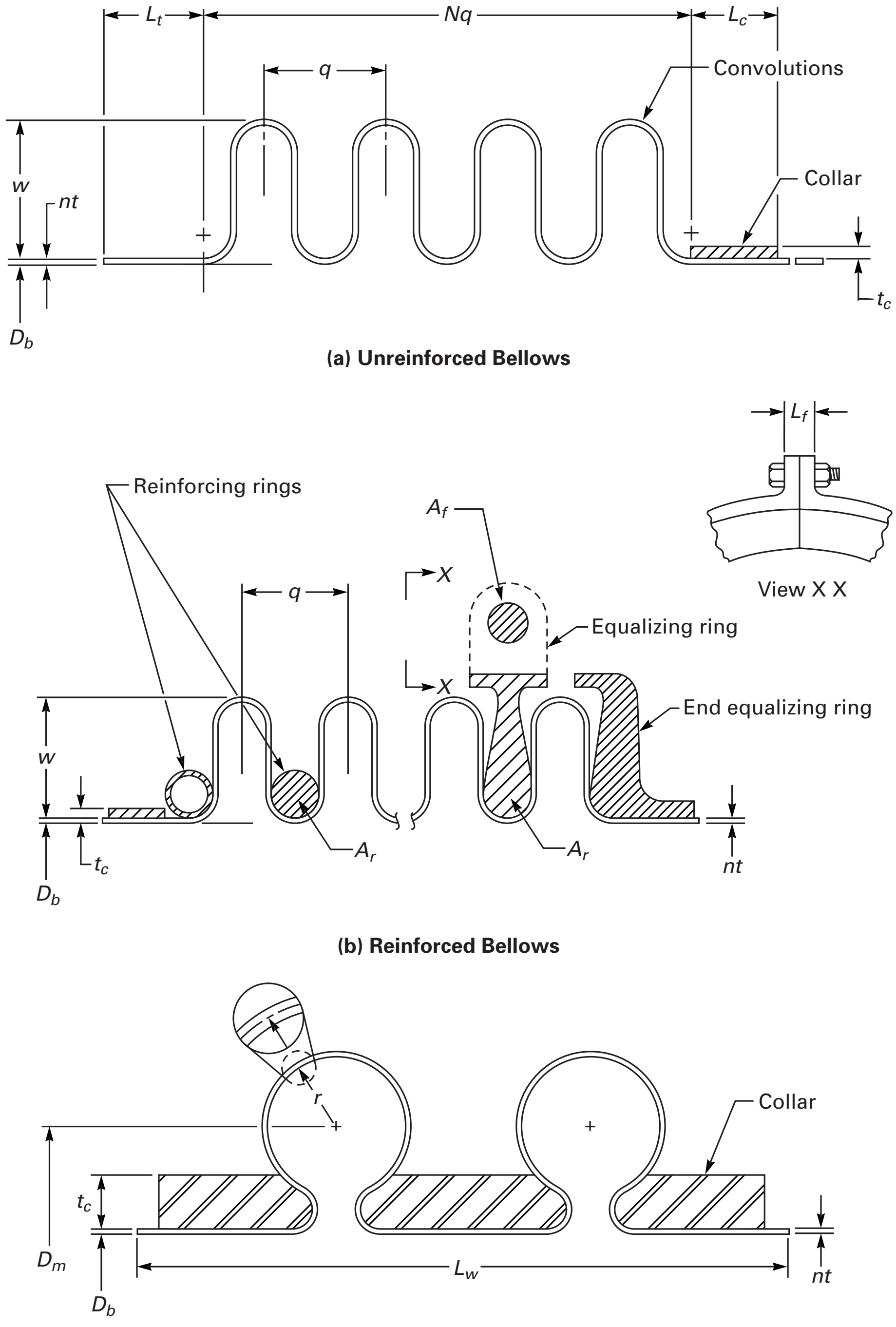


FIG. 26-1 TYPICAL BELLOWS TYPE EXPANSION JOINTS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$D_m = D_b + w + nt$$

E_b = modulus of elasticity of bellows material at design temperature

E_c = modulus of elasticity of collar material at design temperature

E_f = modulus of elasticity of reinforcing fastener material at design temperature

E_r = modulus of elasticity of reinforcing ring member material at design temperature

E_o = modulus of elasticity of bellows material at room temperature

H = resultant total internal pressure force acting on the bellows and reinforcement

= PD_mq

K_b = bellows axial stiffness

k = factor considering the stiffening effect of the attachment weld and the end convolution on the pressure capacity of the end tangent

$$k = \mathrm{MIN}\left[\left(\frac{L_t}{1.5\sqrt{D_b t}}\right), (1.0)\right]$$

L_c = bellows collar length

L_t = end tangent length

L_f = effective length of one reinforcing fastener

L_w = distance between toroidal bellows attachment welds

MIN [(a),(b),(c)] = lowest of a, b, c

N = number of convolutions

N_{alw} = allowable number of fatigue cycles

N_{spe} = specified number of fatigue cycles

n = number of plies

P = design pressure (see UG-21). The design pressure should be used as the MAWP.

q = convolution pitch (see Fig. 26-1)

R = ratio of the internal pressure force resisted by the bellows to the internal pressure force resisted by the reinforcement. Use R_1 or R_2 as designated in the equations.

= R_1, for integral reinforcing ring members

$$R_1 = \frac{A\,E_b}{A_r\,E_r}$$

= R_2, for reinforcing ring members joined by fasteners

$$R_2 = \frac{A\,E_b}{D_m}\left(\frac{L_f}{A_f\,E_f} + \frac{D_m}{A_r\,E_r}\right)$$

r = mean radius of toroidal bellows convolution

S = allowable stress of bellows material at design temperature

S_c = allowable stress of collar material at design temperature

S_f = allowable stress of reinforcing fastener material at design temperature

S_r = allowable stress of reinforcing ring member material at design temperature

S_t = total stress range due to cyclic displacement

S_1 = circumferential membrane stress in bellows tangent, due to pressure P

S_1' = circumferential membrane stress in collar, due to pressure P

S_2 = circumferential membrane stress in bellows, due to pressure P

S_2' = circumferential membrane stress in reinforcing member, due to pressure P

S_2'' = membrane stress in fastener, due to pressure member P

S_3 = meridional membrane stress in bellows, due to pressure P

S_4 = meridional bending stress in bellows, due to pressure P

S_5 = meridional membrane stress in bellows, due to total equivalent axial displacement range Δq

S_6 = meridional bending stress in bellows, due to total equivalent axial displacement range Δq

t = nominal thickness of one ply

t_c = collar thickness

t_p = thickness of one ply, corrected for thinning during forming

$$t_p = t\sqrt{\frac{D_b}{D_m}}$$

w = convolution height

Δq = total equivalent axial displacement range per convolution

v_b = Poisson's ratio of bellows material

Main subscripts:

b = for bellows

c = for collars

p = for ply

r = for reinforced

t = for end tangent

NOTE: No subscript is used for the bellows convolutions.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

26-4 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS

26-4.1 General

(a) Expansion joints used, as an integral part of heat exchangers or other pressure vessels shall be designed to provide flexibility for thermal expansion and also to function as a pressure containing element.

(b) The vessel manufacturer shall specify the design conditions and requirements for the detailed design and manufacture of the expansion joint. Use of specification sheet in 26-16 is recommended.

(c) In all vessels with integral expansion joints, the hydrostatic end force caused by pressure and/or the joint spring force shall be resisted by adequate restraint elements (e.g., exchanger tubes or shell, external restraints, anchors, etc.). The stress [see UG-23(c)] in these restraining elements shall not exceed the maximum allowable stress at the design temperature for the material given in the tables referenced by UG-23.

(d) The expansion joints shall be provided with bars or other suitable members for maintaining the proper overall length dimension during shipment and vessel fabrication. Expansion bellows shall not be extended, compressed, rotated, or laterally offset to accommodate connecting parts, which are not properly aligned, unless the design considers such movements. See 26-9.

(e) The minimum thickness limitations of UG-16(b) and UHT-16(b) do not apply to bellows designed to this Appendix.

(f) As stated in U-2(g), this Division does not contain rules to cover all details of design and construction. The criteria in this Appendix are, therefore, established to cover common expansion joint types, but it is not intended to limit configurations or details to those illustrated or otherwise described herein. However, when evaluating designs which differ from the basic concepts of this Appendix (e.g., asymmetric geometries or loadings, external pressure, materials, etc.), the design shall comply with the requirements of U-2(g).

(g) Longitudinal weld seams that comply with 26-10 and 26-11 shall be considered to have a joint efficiency of 1.0.

26-4.2 Fatigue

(a) Cumulative Damage. If there are two or more types of stress cycles, which produce significant stresses, their cumulative effect shall be evaluated as given below.

(1) Designate the specified number of times each type of stress cycle of Types 1, 2, 3, etc., will be repeated during the life of the expansion joint as n_1, n_2, n_3, etc., respectively. In determining n_1, n_2, n_3, etc., consideration shall be given to the superposition of cycles of various origins, which produce a total stress difference range greater than the stress difference ranges of the individual cycles. For example, if one type of stress cycle produces 1,000 cycles of a stress difference variation from zero to +60,000 psi and another type of stress cycle produces 10,000 cycles of a stress difference variation from zero to −50,000 psi, the two types of cycle to be considered are defined by the following parameters:

Type 1 cycle:

$n_1 = 1{,}000$

$S_{t1} = |60{,}000| + |-50{,}000| = 110{,}000$ psi

Type 2 cycle:

$n_2 = 10{,}000 - 1{,}000 = 9{,}000$

$S_{t2} = |0| + |-50{,}000| = 50{,}000$ psi

(2) For each value S_{t1}, S_{t2}, S_{t3}, etc., use the applicable design fatigue curve to determine the maximum number of repetitions which would be allowable if this type of cycle were the only one acting. Call these values N_1, N_2, N_3, etc.

(3) For each type of stress cycle, calculate the usage factors U_1, U_2, U_3, etc., from

$U_1 = n_1 / N_1$

$U_2 = n_2 / N_2$

$U_3 = n_3 / N_3$, etc.

(4) Calculate the cumulative usage factor U from:

$U = U_1 + U_2 + U_3 + \ldots$

(5) The cumulative usuage factor U shall not exceed 1.0.

(b) In complying with the requirements of 26-6.6 (unreinforced bellows), 26-7.6 (reinforced bellows), or 26-8.6 (toroidal bellows), the calculation and relation to fatigue life may be performed by any method based on the theory of elasticity. However, the method must be substantiated by correlation with proof or strain gage testing (UG-101) on a consistent series of bellows of the same basic design (annealed, and as formed bellows are considered as separate designs) by the manufacturer to demonstrate predictability of rupture pressure and cyclic life.

The substantiation of any analytical procedure shall be based on data obtained from five separate tests on bellows of the same basic design. When substantiating bellows designs with more than two convolutions in series, the test data shall have been obtained from bellows with a minimum of three convolutions.

When compared with the data obtained from the calculation procedure, the test data shall demonstrate that the rupture pressure of the bellows is equal to or greater than three times the maximum allowable working pressure at room temperature.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

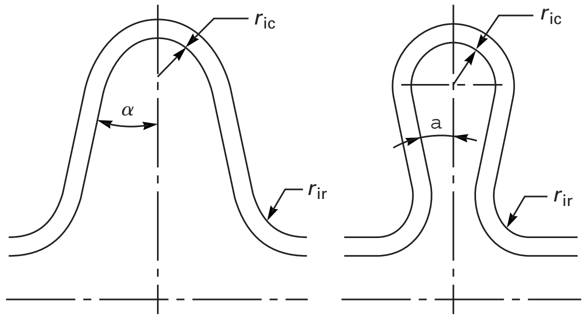


FIG. 26-2 POSSIBLE CONVOLUTION PROFILE IN THE NEUTRAL POSITION

When S_t along with the other appropriate factors are used in the cycle life equations in 26-6.6 (unreinforced bellows), 26-7.6 (reinforced bellows), or 26-8.6, the required design life N_{alw} shall be less than the calculated cycles to failure based on the data obtained by testing. Design cycle life may not be increased above that obtained from the equations in 26-6.6, 26-7.6, or 26-8.6 regardless of the test results. The substantiation of analytical procedures shall be available for review by the Inspector.

26-5 MATERIALS

Pressure-retaining component materials including the restraining elements covered by 26-4.1(c) shall comply with the requirements of UG-4.

26-6 DESIGN OF U-SHAPED UNREINFORCED BELLOWS

26-6.1 Scope

These rules cover the design of bellows having unreinforced U-shaped convolutions.

Each convolution consists of a sidewall and two tori of the same radius (at the crest and root of the convolution), in the neutral position, so that the convolution profile presents a smooth geometrical shape as shown in Fig. 26-1.

26-6.2 Conditions of Applicability

These conditions of applicability apply in addition to those listed in 26-2.

(a) A variation of 10% between the crest convolution radius r_{ic} and the root convolution radius r_{ir} is permitted (see Fig. 26-2 for the definition of r_{ic} and r_{ir}).

(b) The torus radius shall be such that: $r_i \geq 3t$

where

$$r_i = \frac{r_{ic} + r_{ir}}{2}$$

(c) The off-set angle of the sidewalls, α, in the neutral position shall be such that $-15 \leq \alpha \leq +15$ deg (see Fig. 26-2).

In this case, q is defined as the length between two consecutive convolutions when their sidewalls have been made parallel.

(d) The convolution height shall be such that:

$$w \leq \frac{D_b}{3}$$

26-6.3 Internal Pressure Capacity

26-6.3.1 End Tangent. The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(D_b + nt)^2 \, L_t \, E_b \, k}{nt \, (D_b + nt) \, L_t \, E_b + t_c \, D_c \, L_c \, E_c \, k} P$$

shall comply with: $S_1 \leq S$

26-6.3.2 Collar. The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_1' = \frac{1}{2} \frac{D_c^2 \, L_t \, E_c \, k}{nt \, (D_b + nt) \, L_t \, E_b + t_c \, D_c \, L_c \, E_c \, k} P$$

shall comply with $S'_1 \leq C_{wc} \, S_c$

26-6.3.3 Bellows Convolutions

(a) The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

(1) For end convolutions:

$$S_{2,E} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{qD_m + L_t \, (D_b + nt)}{A + nt_p L_t} P$$

shall comply with $S_{2,E} \leq S$

(2) For intermediate convolutions:

$$S_{2,I} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{qD_m}{A} P$$

shall comply with $S_{2,I} \leq S$

(b) The meridional membrane stress due to pressure is given by

$$S_3 = \frac{w}{2nt_p} P$$

(c) The meridional bending stress due to pressure is given by:

$$S_4 = \frac{1}{2n} \left(\frac{w}{t_p}\right)^2 C_p \, P$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(d) The meridional membrane and bending stresses shall comply with: $S_3 + S_4 \le K_f S$

where

$K_f = 3.0$, for as-formed bellows
$K_f = 1.5$, for annealed bellows

26-6.4 Instability Due to Internal Pressure

26-6.4.1 Column Instability. The allowable internal design pressure to avoid column instability is given by:

when

$$\frac{Nq}{D_b} \ge C_z$$

$$P_{sc} = 0.34\,\frac{\pi K_b}{Nq}$$

when

$$\frac{Nq}{D_b} < C_z$$

$$P_{sc} = 0.87\,\frac{AS_y^*}{D_b q}\left[1 - \frac{0.73\,Nq}{C_z D_b}\right]$$

where

$$C_z = \sqrt{4.72\,\frac{NK_b q^2}{S_y^* D_b A}}$$

S_y^* is the effective yield strength at design temperature (unless otherwise specified) of bellows material in the as-formed or annealed conditions.

In the absence of values for S_y^* in material standards, the following values shall be used:

$S_y^* = 2.3\ S_y$, for as-formed bellows
$S_y^* = 0.75\ S_y$, for annealed bellows

where S_y is the yield strength of bellow materials at design temperature, given by Section II-D, Table Y-1. For materials not listed in Section II-D, Table Y-1, see UG-28.

Higher values of S_y^* may be used if justified by representative tests. The internal pressure shall not exceed P_{sc}: $P \le P_{sc}$.

26-6.4.2 In-plane Instability. The allowable internal design pressure based on in-plane instability is given by

$$P_{si} = 1.02\,\frac{AS_y^*}{D_m q\sqrt{\alpha}}$$

where

$$\alpha = 1 + 2\delta^2 + \sqrt{1 - 2\delta^2 + 4\delta^4}$$

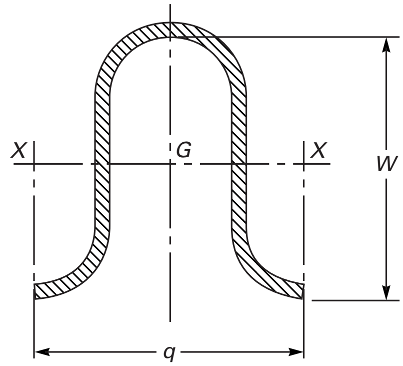


FIG. 26-3 DIMENSIONS TO DETERMINE I_{xx}

with

$$\delta = \frac{1}{3}\,\frac{S_4}{S_{2,I}}$$

The internal pressure shall not exceed P_{si}: $P \le P_{si}$.

26-6.5 External Pressure Strength

26-6.5.1 External Pressure Capacity. The rules of 26-6.3 shall be applied taking P as the absolute value of the external pressure.

NOTE: When the expansion bellows is submitted to vacuum, the design shall be performed assuming that only the internal ply resists the pressure. The pressure stress equations of 26-6.3 shall be applied with $n = 1$.

26-6.5.2 Instability Due to External Pressure. This design shall be performed according to the rules of UG-29 by replacing the bellows with an equivalent cylinder, using:

(a) an equivalent outside diameter, D_{eq} given by

$$D_{eq} = D_b + 2e_{eq}$$

(b) an equivalent thickness, e_{eq} given by

$$e_{eq} = \sqrt[3]{12\,(1 - \nu_b^2)\,\frac{I_{xx}}{q}}$$

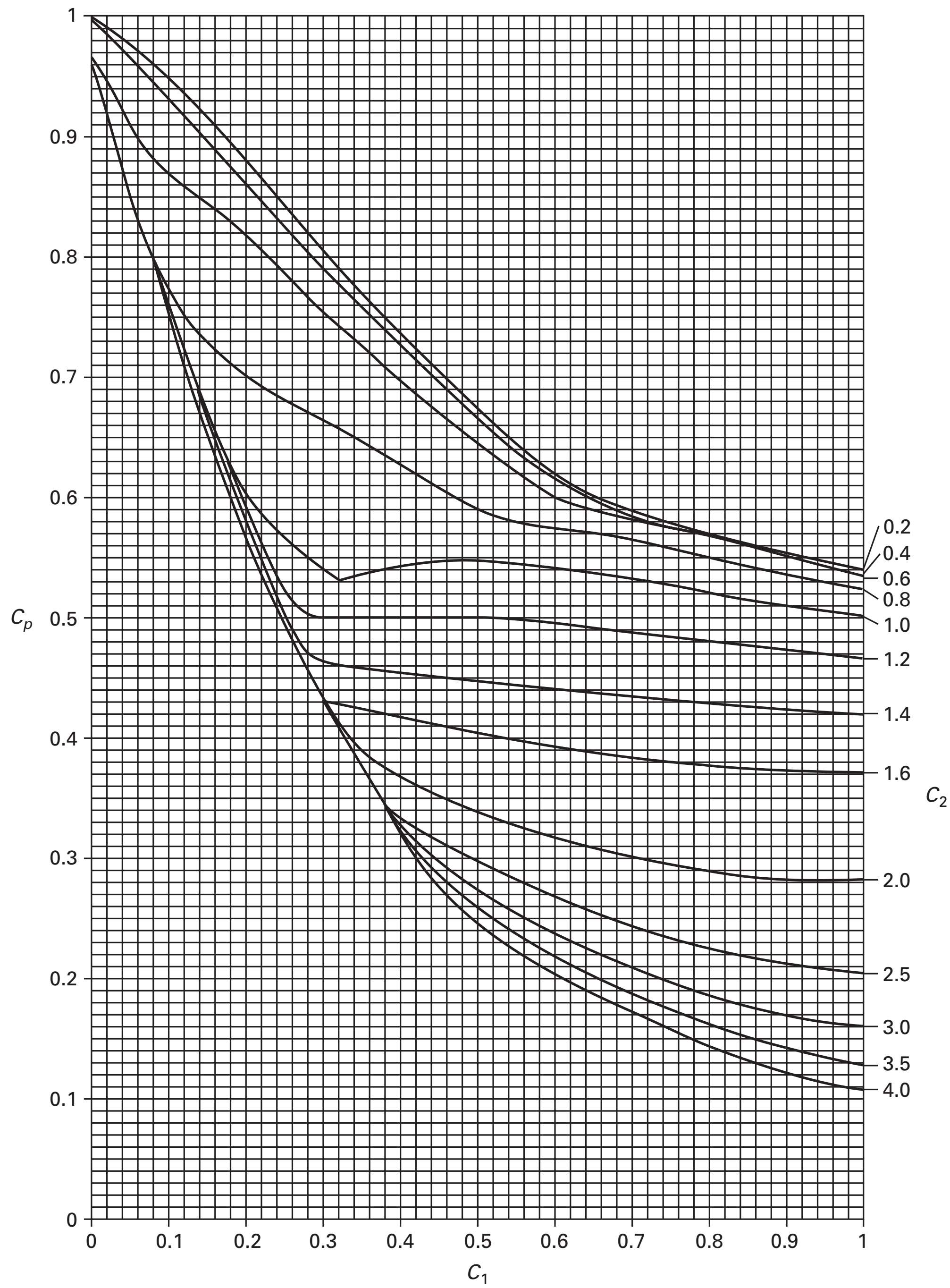
where I_{xx} is the moment of inertia of one convolution cross section relative to the axis passing by the center of gravity and parallel to the axis of the bellows (see Fig. 26-3).

NOTE: If $L_t = 0$, then I_{xx} is given by

$$I_{xx} = nt_p\left[\frac{(2w - q)^3}{48} + 0.4q(w - 0.2q)^2\right]$$

The portion of cylindrical shell shall be taken between the two closest stiffening rings adjacent to the bellows.

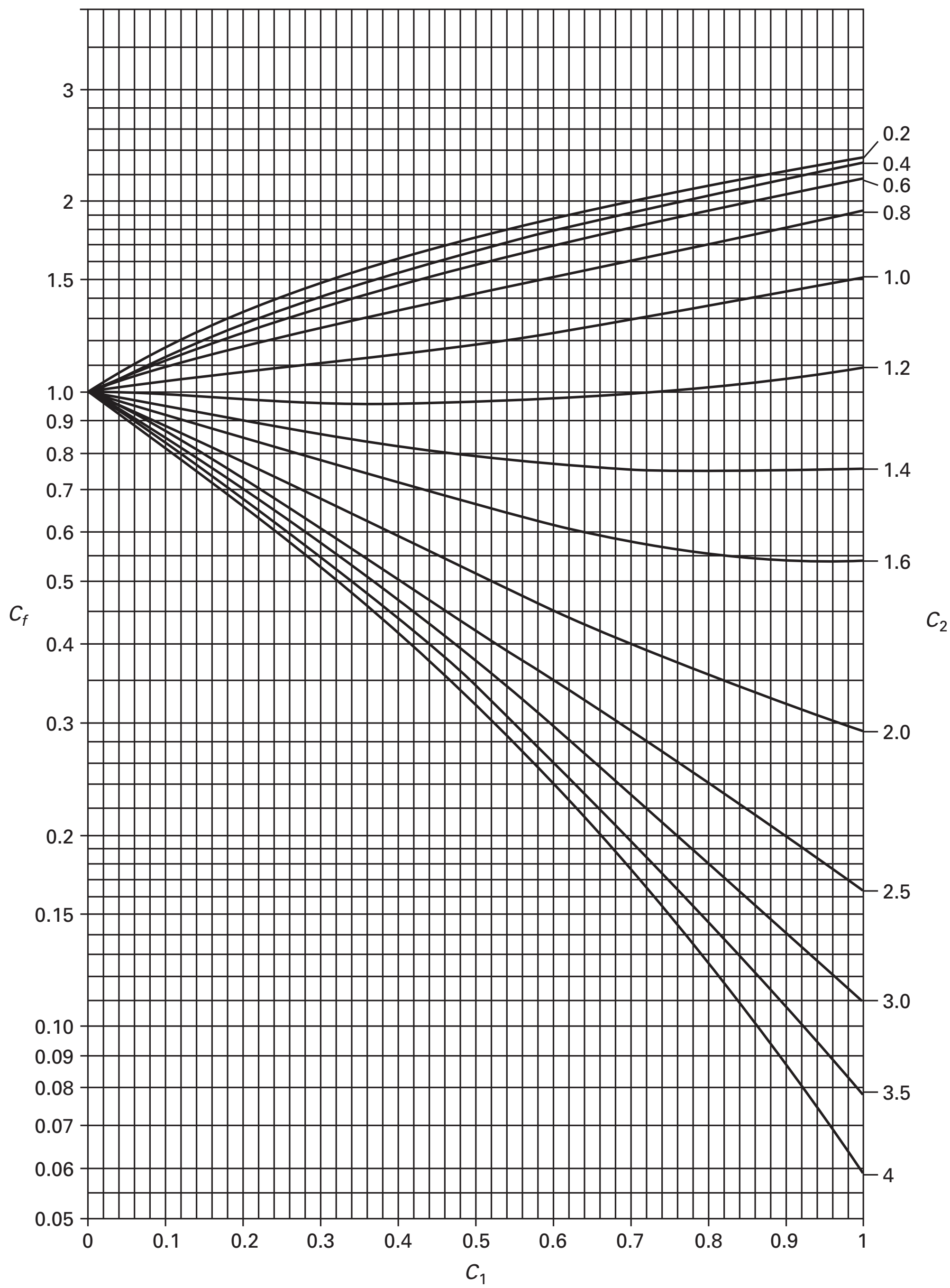
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: Paragraph 26-15 gives polynomial approximations for these curves when $0.2 \leq C_2 \leq 4.0$.

FIG. 26-4 COEFFICIENT C_p

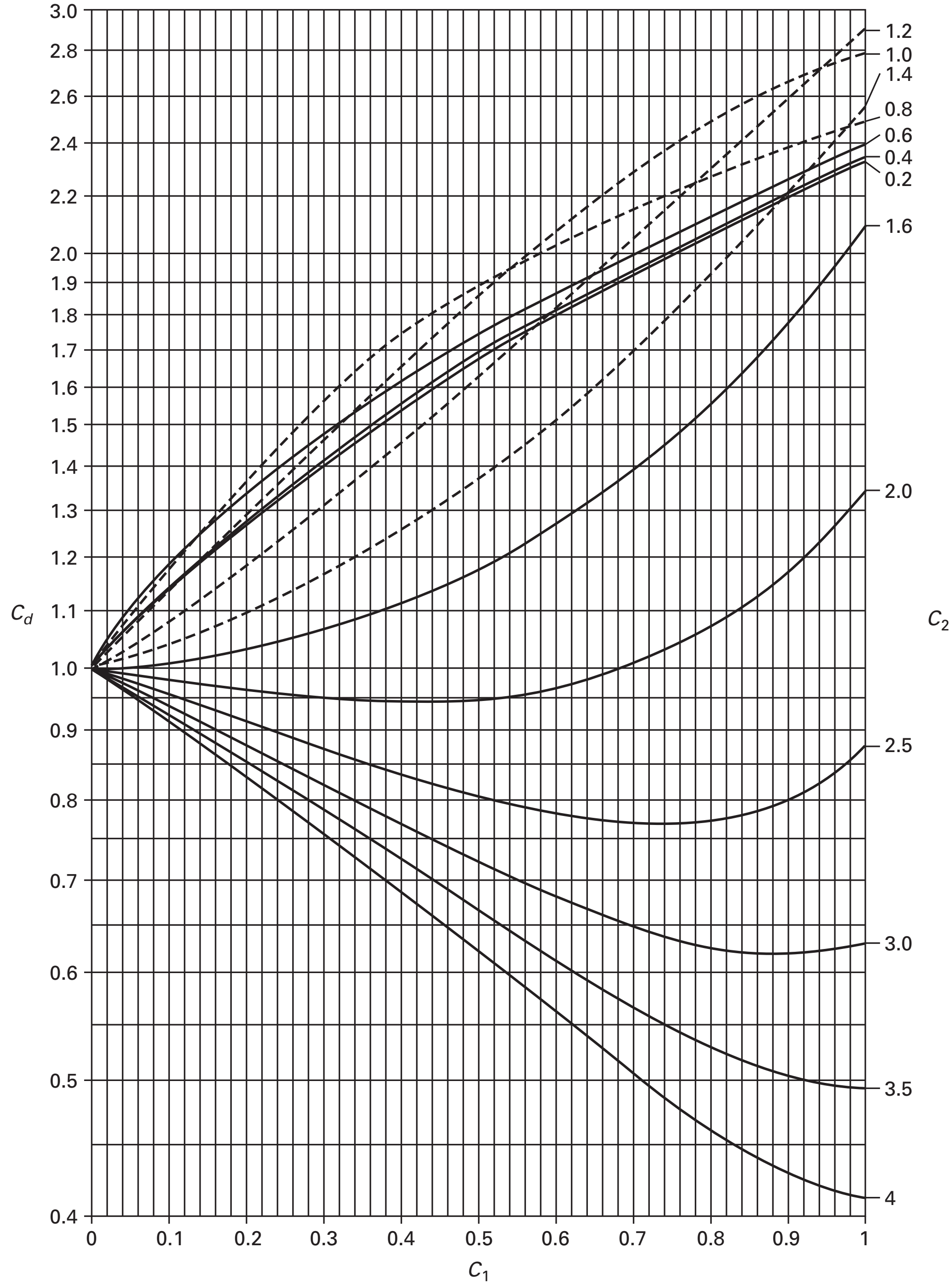
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: Paragraph 26-15 gives polynomial approximations for these curves when $0.2 \leq C_2 \leq 4.0$.

FIG. 26-5 COEFFICIENT C_f

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: Paragraph 26-15 gives polynomial approximations for these curves when $0.2 \leq C_2 \leq 4.0$.

FIG. 26-6 COEFFICIENT C_d

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

26-6.6 Fatigue Evaluation

26-6.6.1 Calculation of Stresses Due to the Total Equivalent Axial Displacement Range Δq of Each Convolution

(a) Meridional membrane stress:

$$S_5 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{E_b t_p^2}{w^3 C_f}\Delta q$$

(b) Meridional bending stress:

$$S_6 = \frac{5}{3}\frac{E_b t_p}{w^2 C_d}\Delta q$$

26-6.6.2 Calculation of Total Stress Range Due to Cyclic Displacement:

$$S_t = 0.7\left[S_3 + S_4\right] + \left[S_5 + S_6\right]$$

26-6.6.3 Calculation of Allowable Number of Cycles

26-6.6.3.1 General

(a) The specified number of cycles N_{spe} shall be stated as consideration of the anticipated number of cycles expected to occur during the operating life of the bellows. The allowable number of cycles N_{alw}, as derived in this subclause, shall be at least equal to N_{spe}: $N_{alw} \geq N_{spe}$.

The allowable number of cycles given by the following formulas includes a reasonable safety factor (3 on cycles and 1.25 on stresses) and represents the maximum number of cycles for the operating condition considered. Therefore, an additional safety factor should not be applied. An overly conservative estimate of cycles can necessitate a greater number of convolutions and result in a bellows more prone to instability.

(b) If the bellows is submitted to different cycles of pressure or displacement, such as those produced by start-up or shutdown, their cumulative damage shall be considered as in 26-4.2(a).

(c) For fatigue correlation testing, see 26-4.2(b).

26-6.6.3.2 Fatigue Equation. The following equations are valid for:

(a) austenitic chromium-nickel stainless steels, UNS N066XX and UNS N04400 for metal temperatures not exceeding 800°F (425°C).

(b) U-shaped unreinforced bellows, as-formed or annealed.

The allowable number of cycles N_{alw} is given by

$$\text{If} \quad K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \geq 65{,}000 \text{ psi (448 MPa)}$$

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{K_o}{K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - S_o}\right)^2$$

where S_t is expressed in psi: $K_o = 5.2 \times 10^6$, $S_o = 38{,}300$

where S_t is expressed in MPa: $K_o = 35\ 850$, $S_o = 264$

$$\text{If} \quad K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t < 65{,}000 \text{ psi (448 MPa)}$$

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{K_o}{K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - S_o}\right)^2$$

where S_t is expressed in psi: $K_o = 6.7 \times 10^6$, $S_o = 30{,}600$

where S_t is expressed in MPa: $K_o = 46\ 200$, $S_o = 211$

When

$$K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \leq 30{,}600 \text{ psi (211 MPa) : then } N_{alw} = 10^6 \text{ cycles}$$

In the above formulas,

K_g = fatigue strength reduction factor which accounts for geometrical stress concentration factors due to thickness variations, weld geometries, surface notches, and other surface or environmental conditions. The range K_g is $1.0 \leq K_g \leq 4.0$ with its minimum value for smooth geometrical shapes and its maximum for 90 deg welded corners and fillet welds. Fatigue strength reduction factors may be determined from theoretical, experimental, or photoelastic studies. A factor has already been included in the above equations for N to account for normal effects of size, environment, and surface finish. For expansion bellows without circumferential welds and meeting all the design and examination requirements of this Appendix, a K_g of 1.0 may be used.

26-6.7 Axial Stiffness

The theoretical axial stiffness of a bellows comprising N convolutions may be evaluated by the following formula:

$$K_b = \frac{\pi}{2(1 - \nu_b^2)}\frac{n}{N} E_b D_m \left(\frac{t_p}{w}\right)^3 \frac{1}{C_f}$$

This formula is valid only in the elastic range.

NOTE: Outside of the elastic range, lower values can be used, based upon manufacturer's experience or representative test results.

26-7 DESIGN OF U-SHAPED REINFORCED BELLOWS

26-7.1 Scope

These rules cover the design of bellows having U-shaped convolutions with rings to reinforce the bellows against internal pressure.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Each convolution consists of a sidewall and two tori of the same radius (at the crest and root of the convolution), in the neutral position, so that the convolution profile presents a smooth geometrical shape as shown in Fig. 26-1.

26-7.2 Conditions of Applicability

The following conditions of applicability apply in addition to those listed in 26-2.

(a) A variation of 10% between the crest convolution radius r_{ic} and the root convolution radius r_{ir} is permitted (see Fig. 26-2 for definitions of r_{ic} and r_{ir}).

(b) The torus radius shall be such that $r_i \geq 3t$, where

$$r_i = \frac{r_{ic} + r_{ir}}{2}$$

(c) The off-set angle of the sidewalls, α, in the neutral position shall be such that $-15 \leq \alpha \leq +15$ deg (see Fig. 26-2).

In this case, q is defined as the length between two consecutive convolutions.

(d) The convolution height shall be such that:

$$w \leq \frac{D_b}{3}$$

26-7.3 Internal Pressure Capacity

26-7.3.1 End Tangent. The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(D_b + nt)^2 L_t E_b k}{nt (D_b + nt) L_t E_b + t_c D_c L_c E_c k} P$$

shall comply with: $S_1 \leq S$

26-7.3.2 Collar. The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_1' = \frac{1}{2} \frac{D_c^2 L_t E_c k}{nt (D_b + nt) L_t E_b + t_c D_c L_c E_c k} P$$

shall comply with: $S_1' \leq C_{wc} S_c$

26-7.3.3 Bellows Convolutions

(a) The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_2 = \frac{H}{2A} \left(\frac{R}{R+1} \right)$$

where

$R = R_1$, for integral reinforcing ring members
$R = R_2$, for reinforcing fasteners

shall comply with: $S_2 \leq S$

NOTE: In the case of reinforcing members which are made in sections, and joined by fasteners in tension, this equation assumes that the structure used to retain the fastener does not bend so as to permit the reinforcing member to expand diametrically. In addition, the end reinforcing members must be restrained against the longitudinal annular pressure load of the bellows.

(b) The meridional membrane stress due to pressure is given by

$$S_3 = 0.85 \frac{w - C_r q}{2nt_p} P$$

(c) The meridional bending stress due to pressure is given by

$$S_4 = \frac{0.85}{2n} \left(\frac{w - C_r q}{t_p} \right)^2 C_p P$$

(d) The meridional membrane and bending stresses shall comply with: $S_3 + S_4 \leq K_f S$

where

$K_f = 3.0$, for as-formed bellows
$K_f = 1.5$, for annealed bellows

26-7.3.4 Reinforcing Ring Member. The cirumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S'_2 = \frac{H}{2 A_r} \left(\frac{1}{R_1 + 1} \right)$$

shall comply with: $S_2' \leq C_{wr} S_r$

NOTE: In the case of equalizing rings, this equation provides only the simple membrane stress and does not include the bending stress caused by the eccentric fastener location. Elastic analysis and/or actual tests can determine these stresses.

26-7.3.5 Reinforcing Fastener. The membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S''_2 = \frac{H}{2A_f} \left(\frac{1}{R_2 + 1} \right)$$

shall comply with: $S_2'' \leq S_f$

26-7.4 Instability Due to Internal Pressure

26-7.4.1 Column Instability. The allowable internal design pressure to avoid column instability is given by

$$P_{sc} = 0.3 \frac{\pi K_b}{Nq}$$

and shall comply with $P \leq P_{sc}$.

26-7.4.2 In-plane Instability. Reinforced bellows are not prone to in-plane instability.

26-7.5 External Pressure Strength

26-7.5.1 External Pressure Capacity. The rules of 26-6.3 relative to unreinforced bellows shall be applied

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

taking P as the absolute value of the external pressure.

NOTE: When the expansion bellows is exposed to vacuum, the analysis shall be performed assuming that only the internal ply resists the pressure. The pressure stress equations of 26-7.3 shall be applied with $n = 1$.

26-7.5.2 Instability Due to External Pressure. The circumferential instability of a reinforced bellows shall be calculated in the same manner as for unreinforced bellows. See 26-6.5.2.

26-7.6 Fatigue Evaluation

26-7.6.1 Calculation of Stresses Due to the Total Equivalent Axial Displacement Range of Δq of Each Convolution

(a) Meridional membrane stress:

$$S_5 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{E_b t_p^2}{(w - C_r q)^3 C_f} \Delta q$$

(b) Meridional bending stress:

$$S_6 = \frac{5}{3} \frac{E_b t_p}{(w - C_r q)^2 C_d} \Delta q$$

26-7.6.2 Calculation of Total Stress Range

$$S_t = 0.7 \left[S_3 + S_4\right] + \left[S_5 + S_6\right]$$

26-7.6.3 Calculation of Allowable Number of Cycles

26-7.6.3.1 General

(a) The specified number of cycles N_{spe} shall be stated as consideration of the anticipated number of cycles expected to occur during the operating life of the bellows. The allowable number of cycles N_{alw}, as derived in this subclause, shall be at least equal to N_{spe}: $N_{alw} \geq N_{spe}$.

The allowable number of cycles given by the following formulas includes a reasonable safety factor (3 on cycles and 1.25 on stresses) and represents the maximum number of cycles for the operating condition considered. Therefore, an additional safety factor should not be applied. An overly conservative estimate of cycles can necessitate a greater number of convolutions and result in a bellows more prone to instability.

(b) If the bellows is submitted to different cycles of pressure or displacement, such as those produced by start-up or shutdown, their cumulative damage shall be considered as in 26-4.2(a).

(c) For fatigue correlation testing, see 26-4.2(b).

26-7.6.3.2 Fatigue Equation. The following equations are valid for:

(a) austenitic chromium-nickel stainless steels, UNS N066XX and UNS N04400 for metal temperatures not exceeding 800°F (425°C).

(b) U-shaped reinforced bellows, as-formed or annealed.

The allowable number of cycles N_{alw} is given by

$$\text{If} \quad K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \geq 82{,}200 \text{ psi (567 MPa)}$$

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{K_o}{K_g \dfrac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - S_o} \right)^2$$

where S_t is expressed in psi: $K_o = 6.6 \times 10^6$, $S_o = 48{,}500$

where S_t is expressed in MPa: $K_o = 45\ 505$, $S_o = 334$

$$\text{If} \quad K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t < 82{,}200 \text{ psi (567 MPa)}$$

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{K_o}{K_g \dfrac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - S_o} \right)^2$$

where S_t is expressed in psi: $K_o = 8.5 \times 10^6$, $S_o = 38{,}800$

where S_t is expressed in MPa: $K_o = 58\ 605$, $S_o = 268$

When

$$K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \leq 38{,}800 \text{ psi (268 MPa) : then } N_{alw} = 10^6 \text{ cycles}$$

In the above formulas:

K_g = fatigue strength reduction factor which accounts for geometrical stress concentration factors due to thickness variations, weld geometries, surface notches, and other surface or environmental conditions. The range K_g is $1.0 \leq K_g \leq 4.0$ with its minimum value for smooth geometrical shapes and its maximum for 90 deg welded corners and fillet welds. Fatigue strength reduction factors may be determined from theoretical, experimental, or photoelastic studies. A factor has already been included in the above equations for N to account for normal effects of size, environment, and surface finish. For expansion bellows without circumferential welds and meeting all the design and examination requirements of this Appendix, a K_g of 1.0 may be used.

26-7.7 Axial Stiffness

The theoretical axial stiffness of a bellows comprising N convolutions may be evaluated by the following formula:

$$K_b = \frac{\pi}{2(1 - \nu_b^2)} \frac{n}{N} E_b D_m \left(\frac{t_p}{w - C_r q} \right)^3 \frac{1}{C_f}$$

This formula is valid only in the elastic range.

NOTE: Outside of the elastic range lower values can be used, based upon manufacturer's experience or representative test results.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 26-8
TABULAR VALUES FOR COEFFICIENTS B_1, B_2, B_3

$\frac{6.61r^2}{D_m t_p}$	B_1	B_2	B_3
0	1.0	1.0	1.0
1	1.1	1.0	1.1
2	1.4	1.0	1.3
3	2.0	1.0	1.5
4	2.8	1.0	1.9
5	3.6	1.0	2.3
6	4.6	1.1	2.8
7	5.7	1.2	3.3
8	6.8	1.4	3.8
9	8.0	1.5	4.4
10	9.2	1.6	4.9
11	10.6	1.7	5.4
12	12.0	1.8	5.9
13	13.2	2.0	6.4
14	14.7	2.1	6.9
15	16.0	2.2	7.4
16	17.4	2.3	7.9
17	18.9	2.4	8.5
18	20.3	2.6	9.0
19	21.9	2.7	9.5
20	23.3	2.8	10.0

26-8 DESIGN OF TOROIDAL BELLOWS

26-8.1 Scope

These rules cover the design of bellows having toroidal convolutions. Each convolution consists of a torus of radius r as shown in Fig. 26-1.

26-8.2 Conditions of Applicability

The general conditions of applicability listed in 26-2 apply.

26-8.3 Internal Pressure Capacity

26-8.3.1 End Tangent. The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(D_b + nt)^2 L_w E_b}{nt (D_b + nt) L_w E_b + D_c E_c A_c} P$$

shall comply with: $S_1 \leq S$.

26-8.3.2 Collar. The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_1' = \frac{1}{2} \frac{D_c^2 L_w E_c}{nt (D_b + nt) L_w E_b + D_c E_c A_c} P$$

shall comply with $S_1' \leq C_{wc} S_c$.

26-8.3.3 Bellows Convolutions

(a) The circumferential membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_2 = \frac{r}{2nt_p} P$$

shall comply with: $S_2 \leq S$.

(b) The meridional membrane stress due to pressure:

$$S_3 = \frac{r}{2nt_p} \left(\frac{D_m - r}{D_m - 2r} \right) P$$

shall comply with $S_3 \leq S$.

26-8.4 Instability Due to Internal Pressure

26-8.4.1 Column Instability. The allowable internal design pressure to avoid column instability is given by

$$P_{sc} = \frac{0.15 \pi K_b}{Nr}$$

26-8.4.2 In-plane Instability. Toroidal bellows are not subject to in-plane instability.

26-8.5 External Pressure Strength

26-8.5.1 External Pressure Capacity. The rules of 26-8.3 shall be applied taking P as the absolute value of the external pressure.

NOTE: When the expansion bellows is exposed to vaccum, the analysis shall be performed assuming that only the internal ply resists the pressure. The pressure stress equations of 26-8.3 shall be applied with $n = 1$.

26-8.5.2 Instability Due to External Pressure. Toroidal bellows are not subject to external pressure instability.

26-8.6 Fatigue Evaluation

26-8.6.1 Calculation of Stress Due to the Total Equivalent Axial Displacement Range Δq of Each Convolution

(a) Meridional membrane stress:

$$S_5 = \frac{E_b t_p^2 B_1}{34.3 r^3} \Delta q$$

(b) Meridional bending stress:

$$S_6 = \frac{E_b t_p B_2}{5.72 r^2} \Delta q$$

26-8.6.2 Calculation of Total Stress Range

$$S_t = 3 S_3 + S_5 + S_6$$

26-8.6.3 Calculation of Allowable Number of Cycles

26-8.6.3.1 General

(a) The specified number of cycles N_{spe} shall be stated as consideration of the anticipated number of cycles expected to occur during the operating life of the bellows.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The allowable number of cycles N_{alw}, as derived in this subclause, shall be at least equal to N_{spe}: $N_{alw} \geq N_{spe}$.

The allowable number of cycles given by the following formulas includes a reasonable safety factor (3 on cycles and 1.25 on stresses) and represents the maximum number of cycles for the operating condition considered. Therefore, an additional safety factor should not be applied. An overly conservative estimate of cycles can necessitate a greater number of convolutions and result in a bellows more prone to instability.

(b) If the bellows is submitted to different cycles of pressure or displacement, such as those produced by start-up or shutdown, their cumulative damage shall be considered as in 26-4.2(a).

(c) For fatigue correlation testing, see 26-4.2(b).

26-8.6.3.2 Fatigue Equation. The following equations are valid for:

(a) austenitic chromium-nickel stainless steels, UNS N066XX and UNS N04400 for metal temperatures not exceeding 800°F (425°C).

(b) toroidal reinforced bellows, as-formed or annealed.

The allowable number of cycles N_{alw} is given by

$$\text{If} \quad K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \geq 65{,}000 \text{ psi (448 MPa)}$$

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{K_o}{K_g \dfrac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - S_o} \right)^2$$

where S_t is expressed in psi: $K_o = 5.2 \times 10^6$, $S_o = 38{,}300$

where S_t is expressed in MPa: $K_o = 35\ 850$, $S_o = 264$

$$\text{If} \quad K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t < 65{,}000 \text{ psi (448 MPa)}$$

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{K_o}{K_g \dfrac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - S_o} \right)^2$$

where S_t is expressed in psi: $K_o = 6.7 \times 10^6$, $S_o = 30{,}600$

where S_t is expressed in MPa: $K_o = 46\ 200$, $S_o = 211$

When

$$K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \leq 30{,}600 \text{ psi (211 MPa) : then } N_{alw} = 10^6 \text{ cycles}$$

In the above formulas:

K_g = fatigue strength reduction factor which accounts for geometrical stress concentration factors due to thickness variations, weld geometries, surface notches, and other surface or environmental conditions. The range K_g is $1.0 \leq K_g \leq 4.0$ with its minimum value for smooth geometrical shapes and its maximum for 90 deg welded corners and fillet welds. Fatigue strength reduction factors may be determined from theoretical, experimental, or photoelastic studies. A factor has already been included in the above equations for N to account for normal effects of size, environment, and surface finish. For expansion bellows without circumferential welds and meeting all the design and examination requirements of this Appendix, a K_g of 1.0 may be used.

26-8.7 Axial Stiffness

The theoretical axial stiffness of a bellows comprising N convolutions may be evaluated by the following formula:

$$K_b = \frac{1}{12(1 - \nu_b^2)} \frac{n}{N} E_b D_m \left(\frac{t_p}{r} \right)^3 B_3$$

This formula is valid only in the elastic range.

NOTE: Outside of the elastic range lower values can be used, based upon manufacturer's experience or representative test results.

26-9 BELLOWS SUBJECTED TO AXIAL, LATERAL, OR ANGULAR DISPLACEMENTS

26-9.1 General

The purpose of this subclause is to determine the equivalent axial displacement of an expansion bellows subjected at its ends to:

(a) an axial displacement from the neutral position: x in extension ($x>0$), or in compression ($x<0$)

(b) a lateral deflection from the neutral position: y ($y>0$)

(c) an angular rotation from the neutral position: θ ($\theta>0$)

26-9.2 Axial Displacement

When the ends of the bellows are subjected to an axial displacement x (see Fig. 26-7), the equivalent axial displacement per convolution is given by

$$\Delta q_x = \frac{1}{N} x$$

where

x = positive for extension ($x>0$)
= negative for compression ($x<0$)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

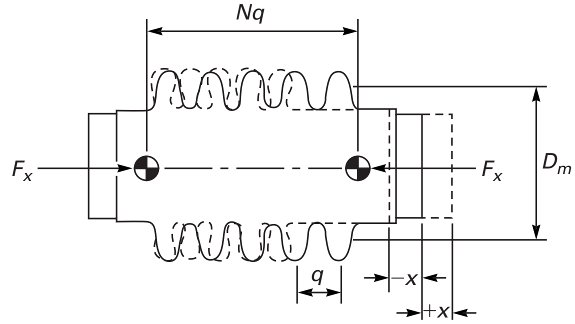


FIG. 26-7 BELLOWS SUBJECTED TO AN AXIAL DISPLACEMENT x

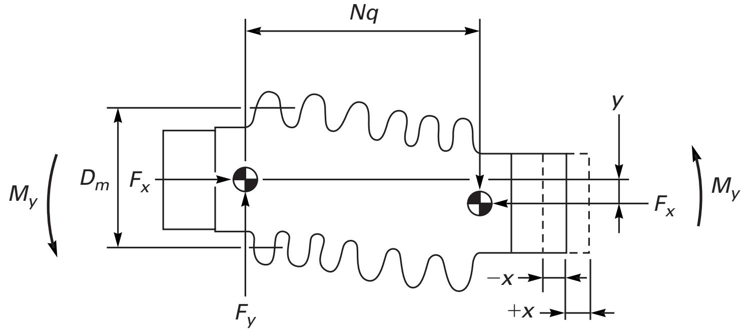


FIG. 26-8 BELLOWS SUBJECTED TO A LATERAL DEFLECTION y

Values of x in extension and compression may be different.

The corresponding axial force F_x applied to the ends of the bellows is given by

$$F_x = K_b\, x$$

26-9.3 Lateral Deflection

When the ends of the bellows are subjected to a lateral deflection y (see Fig. 26-8), the equivalent axial displacement per convolution is given by

$$\Delta q_y = \frac{3D_m}{N\,(Nq + x)}\, y$$

where y shall be taken postive.

The corresponding lateral force F_y applied to the ends of the bellows is given by

$$F_y = \frac{3K_b \cdot D_m^2}{2\,(Nq + x)^2}\, y$$

The corresponding moment M_y applied to the ends of the bellows is given by

$$M_y = \frac{3K_b \cdot D_m^2}{4\,(Nq + x)}\, y$$

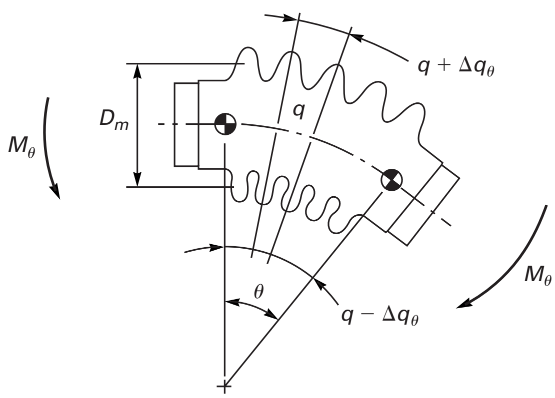


FIG. 26-9 BELLOWS SUBJECTED TO AN ANGULAR ROTATION θ

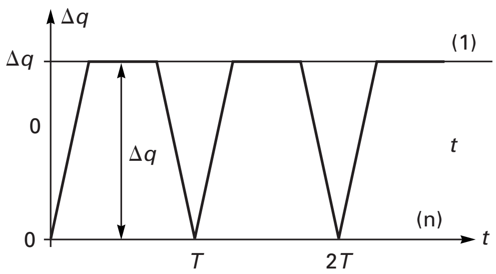
26-9.4 Angular Rotation

When the ends of the bellows are subjected to an angular rotation θ (see Fig. 26-9), the equivalent axial displacement per convolution is given by

$$\Delta q\theta = \frac{D_m}{2N}\, \theta$$

where θ, expressed in radians, shall be taken positive.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:
(1) operating position Δq
(n) neutral position

FIG. 26-10 CYCLIC DISPLACEMENTS

The corresponding moment M_θ applied to the ends of the bellows is given by

$$M_\theta = \frac{K_b \cdot D_m^2}{8}\,\theta$$

26-9.5 Total Equivalent Axial Displacement Range Per Convolution

26-9.5.1 Equivalent Axial Displacement Per Convolution. The equivalent axial displacement per convolution, in extension or compression, is given by:

$$\Delta q_e = \Delta q_x + \Delta q_y + \Delta q_\theta \qquad \text{(extended convolution)}$$

$$\Delta q_c = \Delta q_x - \Delta q_y - \Delta q_\theta \qquad \text{(compressed convolution)}$$

26-9.5.2 Bellows Installed Without Cold Spring. This subclause applies when the bellows is submitted to displacements (see Fig. 26-10):

(a) from the neutral position ($x_0 = 0,\ y_0 = 0,\ \theta_0 = 0$)

(b) to the operating position (x, y, θ)

The equivalent axial displacement per convolution, in extension or compression, is given by:

$$\Delta q_e = \Delta q_x + \Delta q_y + \Delta q_\theta \qquad \text{(extension)}$$

$$\Delta q_c = \Delta q_x - \Delta q_y - \Delta q_\theta \qquad \text{(compression)}$$

If $x>0$: first formula controls.

If $x<0$: second formula controls.

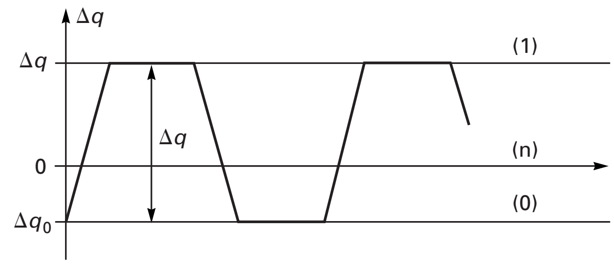
The total equivalent axial displacement range is given by:

$$\Delta q = \max.\left[\left|\Delta q_e\right|, \left|\Delta q_c\right|\right]$$

26-9.5.3 Bellows Installed With Cold Spring. This subclause applies when the bellows is submitted to displacements (see Fig. 26-11):

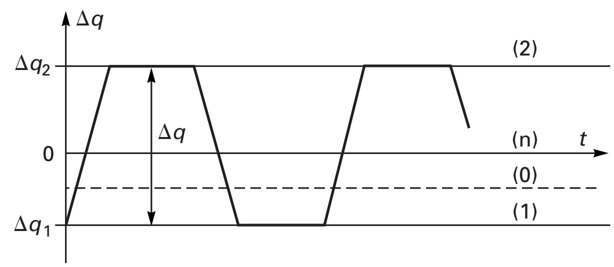
(a) from an initial position (x_0, y_0, θ_0), which is not the neutral position.

$$\Delta q_{e,0} = \Delta q_{x,0} + \Delta q_{y,0} + \Delta q_{\theta,0} \qquad \text{(extension)}$$



GENERAL NOTES:
(0) initial position Δq_0
(1) operating position Δq
(n) neutral position

FIG. 26-11 CYCLIC DISPLACEMENTS



GENERAL NOTES:
(0) initial position 0
(n) neutral position
(1) operating position 1
(2) operating position 2

FIG. 26-12 CYCLIC DISPLACEMENTS

$$\Delta q_{c,0} = \Delta q_{x,0} - \Delta q_{y,0} - \Delta q_{\theta,0} \qquad \text{(compression)}$$

(b) to the operating position (x, y, θ).

$$\Delta q_e = \Delta q_x + \Delta q_y + \Delta q_\theta \qquad \text{(extension)}$$

$$\Delta q_c = \Delta q_x - \Delta q_y - \Delta q_\theta \qquad \text{(compression)}$$

The total equivalent axial displacement range is given by:

$$\Delta q = \max.\left[\left|\Delta q_e - \Delta q_{c,0}\right|, \left|\Delta q_c - \Delta q_{e,0}\right|\right]$$

26-9.5.4 Bellows Operating Between Two Operating Positions. This subclause applies when the bellows is submitted to displacements (see Fig. 26-12):

(a) from the operating position 1 (x_1, y_1, θ_1).

$$\Delta q_{e,1} = \Delta q_{x,1} + \Delta q_{y,1} + \Delta q_{\theta,1} \qquad \text{(extension)}$$

$$\Delta q_{c,1} = \Delta q_{x,1} - \Delta q_{y,1} - \Delta q_{\theta,1} \qquad \text{(compression)}$$

(b) to the operating position 2 (x_2, y_2, θ_2).

$$\Delta q_{e,2} = \Delta q_{x,2} + \Delta q_{y,2} + \Delta q_{\theta,2} \qquad \text{(extension)}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$\Delta q_{c,2} = \Delta q_{x,2} - \Delta q_{y,2} - \Delta q_{\theta,2} \qquad \text{(compression)}$$

The total equivalent axial displacement range is given by:

$$\Delta q = \max.\left[\left|\Delta q_{e,2} - \Delta q_{c,1}\right|, \left|\Delta q_{c,2} - \Delta q_{e,1}\right|\right]$$

An initial cold spring (initial position 0) has no effect on the results.

26-10 FABRICATION

The following requirements shall be met in the fabrication of expansion joint flexible elements.

(a) All welded joints shall comply with the requirements of UW-26 through UW-36.

(b) All longitudinal weld seams shall be butt-type full penetration welds; Type (1) of Table UW-12.

(c) Bellows shall be attached to the weld end elements by circumferential butt or full fillet welds as shown in Fig. 26-13.

(d) Other than the attachment welds, no circumferential welds are permitted in the fabrication of bellows convolutions.

26-11 EXAMINATION

The following examinations are required to verify the integrity of expansion joints.

(a) All expansion joint flexible elements shall be visually examined for and shall be free of injurious defects, such as notches, crevices, material buildup or upsetting, weld spatter, etc., which may serve as points of local stress concentrations. Suspect surface areas shall be further exmined by liquid penetrant.

(b) All bellows butt-type welds shall be examined 100% on the inside and outside surfaces by the liquid penetrant method before forming. This examination shall be repeated after forming to the maximum extent possible considering the physical and visual access to the weld surfaces after forming. The butt weld shall be full penetration.

(c) The circumferential attachment welds between the bellows and the weld ends shall be examined 100% by liquid penetrant.

(d) Liquid penetrant examination shall be per Appendix 8. However, any linear indication found by examination shall be considered relevant if the dimension exceeds $t_m/4$, but not less than 0.010 in. (0.25 mm), where t_m is the minimum bellows wall thickness before forming.

26-12 PRESSURE TEST REQUIREMENTS

The pressure testing requirements for expansion joints shall be as follows.

(a) The completed expansion joint shall be subjected to a pressure test in accordance with UG-99 or UG-100. The pressure testing of an expansion joint may be performed as a part of the vessel pressure test, provided the joint is accessible for inspection during pressure testing.

(b) In addition to inspecting the expansion joint for leaks and general structural integrity during the pressure test, an expansion joint shall be inspected before, during, and after the pressure test to confirm that the requirements of 26-4.1(d) are satisfied.

(c) Any expansion joint restraining elements [see Fig. 26-1(b)] shall also be pressure tested in accordance with UG-99 or UG-100 as part of the initial expansion joint pressure test, or as a part of the final vessel pressure test after installation of the joint.

26-13 MARKING AND REPORTS

The expansion joint Manufacturer, whether the vessel Manufacturer or a parts Manufacturer, shall have a valid ASME Code U Certificate of Authorization and shall complete the appropriate Data Report in accordance with UG-120.

(a) The Manufacturer responsible for the expansion joint design shall include the following additional data and statements on the appropriate Data Report:

(1) spring rate

(2) axial movement (+ and −), associated design life in cycles, and associated loading condition, if applicable

(3) that the expansion joint has been constructed to the rules of this Appendix

(b) A parts Manufacturer shall identify the vessel for which the expansion joint is intended on the Partial Data Report.

(c) Markings shall not be stamped on the flexible elements of the expansion joint.

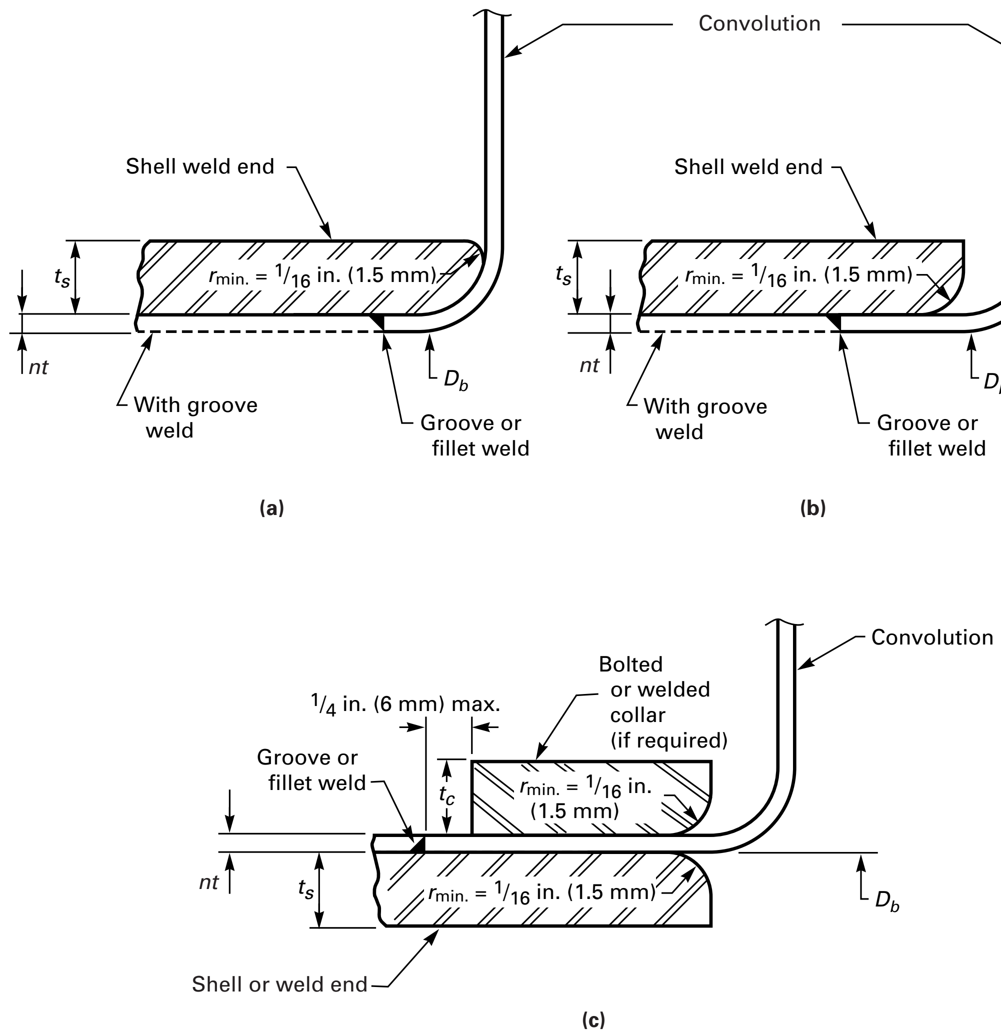
26-14 EXAMPLES

Examples illustrating use of the rules of this Appendix are as follows. Please note that the examples in this Appendix were produced using computer software. The results were generated without rounding off during each step. Accuracy of the final results beyond three significant figures is not intended or required.

26-14.1 Examples of 26-6 for Unreinforced Bellows

26-14.1.1 Data Summary. An unreinforced, as-formed, single ply bellows-type expansion joint with a 9

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE: t_s = minimum required thickness of shell component plus corrosion allowance.

FIG. 26-13 SOME TYPICAL EXPANSION BELLOWS TO WELD END DETAILS

in. cumulative length and axial movement of 1 in. is to be evaluated. The joint material is SA-240 304 stainless steel and the design temperature is 200°F. This joint does not have a collar. Does this expanision joint satisfy the rules of this Appendix?

D_b = 24.0 in.
E_b = 27,600,000 psi
E_o = 28,300,000 psi
K_f = 3.0
K_g = 1.0
L_t = 0.75 in.
N = 8
N_{spe} = 1,000 cycles
n = 1
P = 150 psig
q = 9.0 in./8 = 1.125 in.
Δq = 0.125 in.
S = 20,000 psi
S_y = 25,000 psi
t = 0.05 in.
ν_b = 0.3
w = 1.125 in.

26-14.1.2 Calculation Results. The conditions of applicability per 26-2(a), (b), (c), (d), (e) and 26-6.2(a), (b), (c), (d) must be met. For this symmetric expansion joint all conditions are satisfied.

(a) Mean diameter of bellows convolutions per 26-3:

$$D_m = D_b + w + nt = 25.175 \text{ in.}$$

(b) Thickness of one ply, corrected for thinning during forming per 26-3:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$t_p = t\sqrt{\frac{D_b}{D_m}} = 0.0488 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Cross-sectional area of one convolution per 26-3:

$$A = \left[\left(\frac{\pi - 2}{2}\right) q + 2w\right] nt_p = 0.1412 \text{ in.}^2$$

(d) Stiffening effect factor k, per 26-3:

$$k = \text{MIN}\left[\left(\frac{L_t}{1.5\sqrt{D_b t}}\right), (1.0)\right] = 0.456$$

(e) Coefficient C_1 per 26-3:

$$C_1 = \frac{q}{2\,w} = 0.500$$

(f) Coefficient C_2 per 26-3:

$$C_2 = \frac{q}{2.2\sqrt{\mathrm{D}_m \mathrm{t}_p}} = 0.461$$

With the given values of C_1 and C_2 determine the values of C_d, C_f, and C_p from the polynomial series expansion given in 26-15.1 through 26-15.3. Alternatively, these values can be taken from the graphs of Figs. 26-6.1 though 26-6.3.

$C_d = 1.718$
$C_f = 1.686$
$C_p = 0.659$

(g) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-6.3.1:

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{(D_b + nt)^2\, L_t\, E_b\, k}{nt\,(D_b + nt)\, L_t\, E_b + t_c\, D_c\, L_c\, E_c\, k} P$$

$= 16{,}466$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}000$ psi

(h) End convolution membrane stress due to pressure per 26-6.3.3(a):

$$S_{2,E} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{qD_m + L_t\,(D_b + nt)}{A + nt_p\, L_t} P$$

$= 19{,}555$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}000$ psi

(i) Intermediate convolution membrane pressure stress per 26-6.3.3(a):

$$S_{2,I} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{qD_m}{A} P$$

$= 15{,}044$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}000$ psi

(j) Meridional membrane pressure stress per 26-6.3.3(b):

$$S_3 = \frac{w}{2nt_p} P = 1{,}728 \text{ psi}$$

(k) Meridional bending pressure stress per 26-6.3.3(c):

$$S_4 = \frac{1}{2n}\left(\frac{w}{t_p}\right)^2 C_p P = 26{,}239 \text{ psi}$$

(l) Meridional stress summation 26-6.3.3(d):

$S_3 + S_4 = 27{,}968$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $(K_f,S) = 60{,}000$ psi

(m) Instability due to internal pressure per 26-6.4

(1) Axial stiffness factor K_b per 26-6.7:

$$K_b = \frac{\pi}{2(1 - \nu_b{}^2)}\frac{n}{N} E_b D_m \left(\frac{t_p}{w}\right)^3 \frac{1}{C_f} = 7{,}266 \text{ lb/in.}$$

(2) Transition point factor C_z:

$$C_z = \sqrt{\frac{4.72\, NK_b q^2}{S_y^* D_b A}} = 1.335$$

where $S_y^* = 2.3S_y = 57{,}500$ psi

(3) Allowable pressure to avoid column instability per 26-6.4.1:

$$P_{sc} = \frac{0.87\, AS_y^*}{D_b q}\left[1 - \frac{0.73Nq}{C_z\, D_b}\right]$$

$= 208$ psi must be greater than $P = 150$ psi

(4) Allowable pressure to avoid in-plane instability per 26-6.4.2:

$$P_{si} = \frac{1.02\, AS_y^*}{D_m q\sqrt{\alpha}}$$

$= 183$ psi must be greater than $P = 150$ psi

where

$$\alpha = 1 + \delta^2 + \sqrt{1 - 2\delta^2 + 4\delta^4} = 2.56$$

$$\text{with: } \delta = \frac{1}{3}\frac{S_4}{S_{2,I}} = 0.582$$

(n) Fatigue Stress Evaluation per 26-6.6

(1) Meridional membrane stress per 26-6.6.1(a):

$$S_5 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{E_b\, t_p^2}{w^3 C_f}\Delta q = 1{,}713 \text{ psi}$$

(2) Meridional bending stress per 26-6.6.1(b):

$$S_6 = \frac{5}{3}\frac{E_b\, t_p}{w^2 C_d}\Delta q = 129{,}129 \text{ psi}$$

(3) Total stress range per 26-6.6.2:

$$S_t = 0.7\left[S_3 + S_4\right] + \left[S_5 + S_6\right] = 150{,}420 \text{ psi}$$

(4) Based on the total stress range, determine the allowable number of cycles per 26-6.6.3.2:

$$\text{Since } K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t = 15{,}423 \text{ psi}$$

$\geq 65{,}000$ psi, use the following equation:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{5.2 \times 10^6}{K_g \dfrac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - 38{,}300} \right)^2$$

$= 2{,}012$ cycles, shall be greater than $N_{spe} = 1{,}000$ cycles

This expansion joint meets the requirements of this Appendix.

26-14.2 Examples of 26-7 for Reinforced Bellows

26-14.2.1 Data Summary. A reinforced, as-formed, single ply bellows-type expansion joint with a 6.75 in. cumulative length is to be evaluated. The 0.5 in. diameter rings and joint material are constructed of SA-240 304 stainless steel. The design temperature is 200°F. Does this expansion joint satisfy the rules of this Appendix?

$C_{wc} = 1.0$
$C_{wr} = 1.0$
$D_b = 24.0$ in.
$E_b = 27{,}600{,}000$ psi
$E_c = 27{,}600{,}000$ psi
$E_o = 28{,}300{,}000$ psi
$E_r = 27{,}600{,}000$ psi
$K_f = 3.0$
$K_g = 1.0$
$L_c = 0.75$ in.
$L_t = 1.125$ in.
$N = 6$
$n = 1$
$N_{spe} = 500$ cycles
$P = 450$ psig
$q = 6.75$ in./6 = 1.125 in.
$\Delta q = 0.1$ in.
$S = 20{,}000$ psi
$S_c = 20{,}000$ psi
$t = 0.06$ in.
$t_c = 0.375$ in.
$\nu_b = 0.3$
$w = 1.25$ in.

26-14.2.2 Calculation Results. The conditions of applicability per 26-2(a), (b), (c), (d), (e) and 26-7.2(a), (b), (c), (d) must be met. For this symmetric expansion joint all conditions are satisfied.

(a) Mean diameter of bellows convolutions per 26-3:

$$D_m = D_b + w + nt = 25.310 \text{ in.}$$

(b) Thickness of one ply, corrected for thinning during forming per 26-3:

$$t_p = t \sqrt{\frac{D_b}{D_m}} = 0.0584 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Cross-sectional area of one convolution per 26-3:

$$A = \left[\left(\frac{\pi - 2}{2} \right) q + 2w \right] nt_p = 0.1836 \text{ in.}^2$$

(d) Convolution height factor per 26-3:

$$C_r = 0.3 - \left(\frac{100}{0.6P^{1.5} + 320} \right)^2 = 0.2997$$

(e) Cross-sectional area of the reinforcement per 26-3:

$$A_r = \pi(0.5)^2/4 = 0.1963 \text{ in.}^2$$

(f) Stiffening effect factor k, per 26-3:

$$k = \text{MIN} \left[\left(\frac{L_t}{1.5\sqrt{D_b\, t}} \right), (1.0) \right] = 0.625$$

(g) Coefficient C_1 per 26-3:

$$C_1 = \frac{q}{2\, w} = 0.450$$

(h) Coefficient C_2 per 26-3:

$$C_2 = \frac{q}{2.2\sqrt{D_m\, t_p}} = 0.421$$

With the given values of C_1 and C_2 determine the values of C_d, C_f, C_p from the polynomial series expansion given in 26-15.1 through 26-15.3. Alternatively, these values can be taken from the graphs of Figs. 26-6.1 through 26-6.3.

$C_d = 1.639$
$C_f = 1.638$
$C_p = 0.689$

(i) Resultant total internal pressure force acting on the bellows and reinforcement per 26-3:

$$H = PD_m q = 12{,}813 \text{ lb}$$

(j) Ratio of the internal pressure force resisted by the bellows to the internal pressure force resisted by the reinforcement per 26-3:

$$R_I = \frac{A\, E_b}{A_r\, E_r} = 0.935$$

(k) Mean diameter of end reinforcing collar per 26-3:

$$D_c = D_b + 2\, nt + t_c = 24.495 \text{ in.}$$

(l) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-7.3.1 (End Tangent):

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(D_b + nt)^2\, L_t\, E_b\, k}{nt\,(D_b + nt)\, L_t\, E_b + t_c\, D_c\, L_c\, E_c\, k} P$$

$= 15{,}444$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}000$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

(m) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-7.3.2 (Collar):

$$S_1' = \frac{1}{2}\frac{D_c^2 L_t E_c k}{nt\,(D_b + nt)\,L_t E_b + t_c D_c L_c E_c k} P$$

$$= 16{,}008 \text{ psi, shall be less than or equal to } C_{wc}S_c = 20{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

(n) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-7.3.3(a) (Bellows Convolutions):

$$S_2 = \frac{H}{2A}\left(\frac{R}{R+1}\right)$$

$= 16{,}862$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}000$ psi

(o) Meridional membrane stress due to pressure per 26-7.3.3(b):

$$S_3 = \frac{0.85P\,(w - C_r\,q)}{2nt_p} = 2{,}988 \text{ psi}$$

(p) Meridional bending stress due to pressure per 26-7.3.3(c):

$$S_4 = \frac{0.85P}{2n}\left(\frac{w - C_r\,q}{t_p}\right)^2 C_p = 32{,}148 \text{ psi}$$

The sum of meridional membrane plus bending stress (S_3+S_4) shall be less than or equal to $K_f\,S$. (2,988+32,148) less than 60,000 psi [per 26-7.3.3(d)].

(q) Membrane stress due to pressure in the reinforcing member per 26-7.3.4:

$$S_2' = \frac{H}{2A_r}\left(\frac{R}{R_1+1}\right)$$

$$= 16{,}865 \text{ psi, must be less than or equal to } C_{wr}S_r = 20{,}000 \text{ psi}$$

(r) Allowable internal pressure to avoid column instability per 26.7.4.1:

$$P_{sc} = \frac{0.3\pi K_b}{2Nq}$$

$= 4{,}492$ psi, must be greater than or equal to $P = 450$ psi

where

$$K_b = \frac{\pi}{2(1 - \nu_b^2)}\frac{n}{N}E_b D_m\left(\frac{t_p}{w}\right)^3\frac{1}{C_f}$$

$$= 32{,}172 \text{ lb/in. (per 26-7.7)}$$

(s) Fatigue Stress Evaluation per 26-7.6.1

(1) Meridional membrane stress per 26-7.6.1(a):

$$S_5 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{E_b\,t_p^2}{(w - C_r\,q)^3\,C_f}\Delta q = 3{,}781 \text{ psi}$$

(2) Meridional bending stress per 26-7.6.1(b):

$$S_6 = \frac{5}{3}\frac{E_b\,t_p}{(w - C_r\,q)^2\,C_d}\Delta q = 196{,}759 \text{ psi}$$

(3) Total stress range per 26-7.6.2:

$$S_t = 0.7\left[S_3 + S_4\right] + \left[S_5 + S_6\right] = 225{,}136 \text{ psi}$$

(4) With the computed stress range S_t, calculate the number of allowable cycles from 26-7.6.3.2.

$$\text{Since } K_g\frac{E_o}{E_b}S_t = 230{,}846 \text{ psi}$$

$\geq 82{,}200$ psi, use the following equation:

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{6.6\times10^6}{K_g\dfrac{E_o}{E_b}S_t - 48{,}500}\right)^2$$

$= 1{,}310$ cycles, must be greater than $N_{spe} = 500$ cycles

This expansion joint meets the requirements of this Appendix.

26-14.3 Example of 26-8 for Toroidal Bellows

26-14.3.1 Data Summary. An as-formed, single ply toroidal bellows-type expansion joint with a 7 in. cumulative length is to be evaluated. The joint material is SB-168 600 and the collar is constructed from SA-240 304 stainless steel. The design temperature is 550°F. Does this expansion joint satisfy the rules of this Appendix?

A_c = 5.25 in.^{2}
C_{wc} = 1.0
D_b = 25.375 in.
D_m = 28.125 in.
E_b = 28,850,000 psi
E_c = 25,550,000 psi
E_o = 31,000,000 psi
K_g = 1.0
L_w = 5 in.
N = 2
n = 1
N_{spe} = 500 cycles
P = 835 psig
Δq = 0.625 in.
r = 1.375 in.
S = 20,050 psi
S_c = 11,083 psi
t = 0.078 in.
t_c = 0.75 in.
ν_b = 0.3

26-14.3.2 Calculation Results. The conditions of applicability per 26-2(a), (b), (c), (d), (e) must be met. For this symmetric expansion joint, all conditions are satisfied.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(a) Thickness of one ply, corrected for thinning during forming per 26-3:

$$t_p = t\sqrt{\frac{D_b}{D_m}} = 0.07409 \text{ in.}$$

(b) Mean diameter of end reinforcing collar per 26-3:

$$D_c = D_b + 2nt + t_c = 26.281 \text{ in.}$$

(c) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-8.3.1 (End Tangent):

$$S_1 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{(D_b + nt)^2 L_w E_b}{nt\,(D_b + nt)\,L_w E_b + D_c E_c A_c} P$$

$= 10{,}236$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}050$ psi

(d) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-8.3.2 (Collar):

$$S'_1 = \frac{1}{2}\frac{D_c^2 L_w E_c}{nt\,(D_b + nt)\,L_w E_b + D_c E_c A_c} P$$

$= 9{,}665$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $C_{wc}S_c = 11{,}083$ psi

(e) Circumferential membrane stress due to pressure per 26-8.3.2(a):

$$S_2 = \frac{r}{2nt_p}P$$

$= 7{,}749$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}050$ psi

(f) Meridional membrane stress due to pressure per 26-8.3.3(b):

$$S_3 = \frac{r}{nt_p}\left(\frac{D_m - r}{D_m - 2r}\right) P$$

$= 16{,}337$ psi, shall be less than or equal to $S = 20{,}050$ psi

(g) Allowable internal pressure to avoid column instability per 26-8.4.1:

$$P_{sc} = \frac{0.15\pi K_b}{Nr}$$

$= 2{,}781$ psi, must be greater than or equal to $P = 835$ psi

where

$$K_b = \frac{1}{12\,(1 - \nu_b^2)}\frac{n}{N} E_b D_m \left(\frac{t_p}{r}\right)^3$$

$$B_3 = 16{,}234 \text{ lb/in. per 26-8.7}$$

The values of B_1, B_2, and B_3 are derived from Table 26-8 using linear interpolation.

$\dfrac{6.61r^2}{D_m t_p} = 5.998$, using this value determine B_1, B_2, B_3.

$B_1 = 4.6$
$B_2 = 1.1$
$B_3 = 2.794$

(h) Fatigue Stress Evaluation per 26-8.6

(1) Meridional membrane stress per 26-8.6.1(a):

$$S_5 = \frac{E_b t_p^2 B_1}{34.3r^3}\Delta q = 5{,}105 \text{ psi}$$

(2) Meridional bending stress per 26-8.6.1(b):

$$S_6 = \frac{E_b t_p B_2}{5.72r^2}\Delta q = 135{,}875 \text{ psi}$$

(3) Total stress range per 26-8.6.2:

$$S_t = 3S_3 + S_5 + S_6 = 189{,}991 \text{ psi}$$

(4) With the computed stress range S_t, calculate the number of allowable cycles from 26-8.6.3.2.

Since $K_g \dfrac{E_o}{E_b} S_t \geq 65{,}000$ psi, use the following equation:

$$N_{alw} = \left(\frac{5.2\times 10^6}{K_g \frac{E_o}{E_b} S_t - 38{,}300}\right)^2$$

$= 983$ cycles, must be greater than $N_{spe} = 500$ cycles

This expansion joint satisfies the rules of this Appendix.

26-15 POLYNOMIAL APPROXIMATION FOR COEFFICIENTS C_p, C_f, C_d

26-15.1 Coefficient C_p

$$C_p = \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 C_1 + \alpha_2 C_1^2 + \alpha_3 C_1^3 + \alpha_4 C_1^4 + \alpha_5 C_1^5$$

Coefficients α_i are given by Table 26-15.1a if $C_1 \leq 0.3$ or Table 26-15.1b if $C_1 > 0.3$.

26-15.2 Coefficients C_f

$$C_f = \beta_0 + \beta_1 C_1 + \beta_2 C_1^2 + \beta_3 C_1^3 + \beta_4 C_1^4 + \beta_5 C_1^5$$

Coefficients β_i are given by Table 26-15.2.

26-15.3 Coefficient C_d

$$C_d = \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 C_1^1 + \gamma_2 C_1^2 + \gamma_3 C_1^3 + \gamma_4 C_4^4 + \gamma_5 C_5^5$$

Coefficients γ_i are given by Table 26-15.3.

26-16 SPECIFICATION SHEET FOR EXPANSION JOINTS

See Form 26-1.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 26-15.1a
POLYNOMIAL COEFFICIENTS α_i FOR THE DETERMINATION OF C_p WHEN $C_1 \leq 0.3$

C_2	α_0	α_1	α_2	α_3	α_4	α_5
0.2	1.001	−0.448	−1.244	1.932	−0.398	−0.291
0.4	0.999	−0.735	0.106	−0.585	1.787	−1.022
0.6	0.961	−1.146	3.023	−7.488	8.824	−3.634
0.8	0.955	−2.708	7.279	14.212	−104.242	133.333
1	0.95	−2.524	10.402	−93.848	423.636	−613.333
1.2	0.95	−2.296	1.63	16.03	−113.939	240
1.4	0.95	−2.477	7.823	−49.394	141.212	−106.667
1.6	0.95	−2.027	−5.264	48.303	−139.394	160
2	0.95	−2.073	−3.622	29.136	−49.394	13.333
2.5	0.95	−2.073	−3.622	29.136	−49.394	13.333
3	0.95	−2.073	−3.622	29.136	−49.394	13.333
3.5	0.95	−2.073	−3.622	29.136	−49.394	13.333
4	0.95	−2.073	−3.622	29.136	−49.394	13.333

TABLE 26-15.1b
POLYNOMIAL COEFFICIENTS α_i FOR THE DETERMINATION OF C_p WHEN $C_1 > 0.3$

C_2	α_0	α_1	α_2	α_3	α_4	α_5
0.2	1.001	−0.448	−1.244	1.932	−0.398	−0.291
0.4	0.999	−0.735	0.106	−0.585	1.787	−1.022
0.6	0.961	−1.146	3.023	−7.488	8.824	−3.634
0.8	0.622	1.685	−9.347	18.447	−15.991	5.119
1	0.201	2.317	−5.956	7.594	−4.945	1.299
1.2	0.598	−0.99	3.741	−6.453	5.107	−1.527
1.4	0.473	−0.029	−0.015	−0.03	0.016	0.016
1.6	0.477	−0.146	−0.018	0.037	0.097	−0.067
2	0.935	−3.613	9.456	−13.228	9.355	−2.613
2.5	1.575	−8.646	24.368	−35.239	25.313	−7.157
3	1.464	−7.098	17.875	−23.778	15.953	−4.245
3.5	1.495	−6.904	16.024	−19.6	12.069	−2.944
4	2.037	−11.037	28.276	−37.655	25.213	−6.716

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 26–15.2
POLYNOMIAL COEFFICIENTS β_i FOR THE DETERMINATION OF C_f

C_2	β_0	β_1	β_2	β_3	β_4	β_5
0.2	1.006	2.375	−3.977	8.297	−8.394	3.194
0.4	1.007	1.82	−1.818	2.981	−2.43	0.87
0.6	1.003	1.993	−5.055	12.896	−14.429	5.897
0.8	1.003	1.338	−1.717	1.908	0.02	−0.55
1	0.997	0.621	−0.907	2.429	−2.901	1.361
1.2	1	0.112	−1.41	3.483	−3.044	1.013
1.4	1	−0.285	−1.309	3.662	−3.467	1.191
1.6	1.001	−0.494	−1.879	4.959	−4.569	1.543
2	1.002	1.061	−0.715	3.103	−3.016	0.99
2.5	1	−1.31	−0.829	4.116	−4.36	1.55
3	0.999	−1.521	−0.039	2.121	−2.215	0.77
3.5	0.998	−1.896	1.839	−2.047	1.852	−0.664
4	1	−2.007	1.62	−0.538	−0.261	0.249

TABLE 26–15.3
POLYNOMIAL COEFFICIENTS γ_i FOR THE DETERMINATION OF C_d

C_2	γ_0	γ_1	γ_2	γ_3	γ_4	γ_5
0.2	1	1.151	1.685	−4.414	4.564	−1.645
0.4	0.999	1.31	0.909	−2.407	2.273	−0.706
0.6	1.003	2.189	−3.192	5.928	−5.576	2.07
0.8	1.005	1.263	5.184	−13.929	13.828	−4.83
1	1.001	0.953	3.924	−8.773	10.44	−4.749
1.2	1.002	0.602	2.11	−3.625	5.166	−2.312
1.4	0.998	0.309	1.135	−1.04	1.296	−0.087
1.6	0.999	0.12	0.351	−0.178	0.942	−0.115
2	1	−0.133	−0.46	1.596	−1.521	0.877
2.5	1	−0.323	−1.118	3.73	−4.453	2.055
3	1	−0.545	−0.42	1.457	−1.561	0.71
3.5	1	−0.704	−0.179	0.946	−1.038	0.474
4	1.001	−0.955	0.577	−0.462	0.181	0.08

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

FORM 26-1 SPECIFICATION SHEET FOR ASME SECTION VIII, DIVISION 1 APPENDIX 26 BELLOWS EXPANSION JOINTS

Date: _______ / ______ / ______ Applicable ASME Code Edition: ______________

1. Item Number: ___________ Vessel Manufacturer: ____________________________
2. Drawing/Tag/Serial/Job Number: ___________ Vessel Owner: ____________________________
3. Quantity: ________ Installation Location: ____________________________
4. Size: ______ O.D. ______ I.D. in. Expansion Joint Overall Length: __________ in.

---

5. Internal Pressure: Design: _______ psig
6. External Pressure: Design: _______ psig
7. Vessel Manufacturer Hydrotest Pressure: Internal: _______ psig External: ______ psig

---

8. Temperature: Design: _______ °F Operating: ____ °F Upset: _____ F
9. Vessel Rating: MAWP: _______ psig MDMT: _______ °F Installed Position: Horiz. Vert.

---

10. Design Movements: Axial Compression: (−) _____ in. Axial Extension: (+) _____ in. Lateral: _____ in. Angular: _____ deg
11. Specified Number of Cycles: ________________ cycles

---

12. Shell Material: _________________________ Bellows Material: __________________________
13. Shell Thickness: _______ inches Shell Corrosion Allowance: Internal: _______ inches External: _______ inches
14. Shell Radiography: None / Spot / Full
15. End Preparation: Square Cut Outside Bevel Inside Bevel Double Bevel (Describe in Line 23 if special)
16. Heat Exchanger Tube Length Between Inner Tubesheet Faces: ______ in.

---

17. Maximum Bellows Spring Rate: N Y - ______________________________ lb. / in.
18. Internal Liner: N Y - Material: _______________________
19. Drain Holes in Liner: N Y - Quantity/Size : ___________________
20. Liner Flush With Shell I.D.: N Y - Telescoping Liners? N Y
21. External Cover: N Y - Material: _______________________
22. Pre-production Approvals Required: N Y - Drawings / Bellows Calculations / Weld Procedures
23. Additional Reqirements: (i.e. bellows preset, ultrasonic inspection...)

U-2 Partial data report required per Appendix 26 para. 26–12. Temporary shipping bars are required to maintain assembly length during shipment and vessel fabrication only, and ARE NOT to be used during vessel hydrotest for expansion joint pressure restraint [see para. 26–4.1 (b) and (c)].

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

FORM 26-1M SPECIFICATION SHEET FOR ASME SECTION VIII, DIVISION 1 APPENDIX 26 BELLOWS EXPANSION JOINTS

Date: _______ / _____ / _____ Applicable ASME Code Edition: ______________

1. Item Number: ___________ Vessel Manufacturer: ____________________________
2. Drawing/Tag/Serial/Job Number: ___________ Vessel Owner: ____________________________
3. Quantity: ________ Installation Location: ____________________________
4. Size: ______ O.D. ______ I.D. mm Expansion Joint Overall Length: __________ mm

---

5. Internal Pressure: Design: _______ MPa
6. External Pressure: Design: _______ Mpa
7. Vessel Manufacturer Hydrotest Pressure: Internal: _______ MPa External: ______ MPa

---

8. Temperature: Design: _______ °C Operating: _____ °C Upset: ______ °C
9. Vessel Rating: MAWP: _______ MPa MDMT: _______ °C Installed Position: Horiz. Vert.

---

10. Design Movements: Axial Compression: (−) _____ mm Axial Extension: (+) ____ mm Lateral: ____ mm Angular: ___ deg
11. Specified Number of Cycles ________________ cycles

---

12. Shell Material: __________________________ Bellows Material: __________________________
13. Shell Thickness: _______ mm Shell Corrosion Allowance: Internal: _______ mm External: _______ mm
14. Shell Radiography: None / Spot / Full
15. End Preparation: Square Cut Outside Bevel Inside Bevel Double Bevel (Describe in Line 23 if special)
16. Heat Exchanger Tube Length Between Inner Tubesheet Faces: ______ mm

---

17. Maximum Bellows Spring Rate: N Y - ______________________________ N/ mm
18. Internal Liner: N Y - Material: ________________________
19. Drain Holes in Liner: N Y - Quantity/Size : ___________________
20. Liner Flush With Shell I.D.: N Y - Telescoping Liners? N Y
21. External Cover: N Y - Materials: ________________________
22. Pre-production Approvals Required: N Y - Drawings / Bellows Calculations / Weld Procedures
23. Additional Requirements: (i.e. bellows preset, ultrasonic inspection...)

U-2 Partial data report required per Appendix 26 para. 26–12. Temporary shipping bars are required to maintain assembly length during shipment and vessel fabrication only, and ARE NOT to be used during vessel hydrotest for expansion joint pressure restraint [see para. 26–4.1 (b) and (c)].

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 27
ALTERNATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GLASS-LINED VESSELS

27-1 SCOPE

The rules of this Appendix cover acceptable alternative requirements that are applicable to glass-lined (enameled-lined) vessels. All applicable requirements in this Division are mandatory except as modified herein.

27-2 PERMISSIBLE OUT-OF-ROUNDNESS OF CYLINDRICAL SHELLS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

If the out-of-roundness of a glass lined cylindrical vessel exceeds the limits in UG-80(a)(1) or UG-80(a)(2), or in both, and the condition cannot be corrected, the maximum allowable working pressure may be calculated as follows.

27-2(a) The out-of-roundness, as determined by the maximum difference between any two diameters for any cross section, shall not exceed 3%.

27-2(b) The shell shall be certified for a lower internal pressure by the following formula:

$$\text{Reduced pressure } P' = P\left[\frac{1.25}{\dfrac{S_b}{S}+1}\right]$$

and in which

$$S_b = \frac{1.5PR_1t(D_1-D_2)}{t^3+3\dfrac{P}{E}R_1R_a^{\,2}}$$

where

E = modulus of elasticity at design temperature. The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

D_1 and D_2 = the inside diameters, maximum and minimum, respectively, as measured for the critical section, and for one additional section in each direction therefrom at a distance not exceeding $0.2D_2$. The average of the three readings for D_1 and D_2, respectively, shall be inserted in the formula.

P' = reduced maximum allowable working pressure to be stamped on the nameplate of the vessel and shown on the Manufacturer's Data Report

NOTE: Use $P' = P$ when $S_b \leq 0.25S$

P = maximum allowable working pressure for shell meeting the requirements of UG-80(a)(1)

R_a = average radius to middle of shell wall at critical section
$= \frac{1}{4}(D_1 + D_2) + t/2$

R_1 = average inside radius at critical section
$= \frac{1}{4}(D_1 + D_2)$

S = design stress value at metal service temperature

S_b = bending stress at metal service temperature

t = nominal thickness of vessel shell

27-3 PERMISSIBLE TOLERANCE FOR HEMISPHERICAL OR 2:1 ELLIPSOIDAL HEADS

If a hemispherical or 2:1 ellipsoidal head exceeds the tolerance limits in UG-81(a), and the condition cannot be corrected, the head may be used providing the following requirements are met:

27-3(a) The inner surface of the head shall not deviate outside the specified shape by more than 3% of D nor inside the specified shape by more than 3% of D, where D is the nominal inside diameter of the vessel shell at the point of attachment. Such deviations shall be measured perpendicular to the specified shape and shall not be

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

abrupt. The deviation shall be essentially symmetric about the axial centerline of the head.

27-3(b) The provisions of UG-81(c), (d), and (e) shall be met. UG-81(b) shall be met as regards the remaining spherical portions of the head.

27-3(c) Deviations that exceed the limits in UG-81(a) shall be outside of any areas used for reinforcing of openings.

27-3(d) A comparative analysis shall be made between the distorted shape and the undistorted shape to demonstrate that the design margins of the Code for internal pressure and, as appropriate, external pressure have been met [see U-2(g)].

27-4 HYDROSTATIC TEST

The hydrostatic test pressure for glass-lined vessels shall be at least equal to, but need not exceed, the maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the vessel; the hydrostatic test pressure for jackets of glass-lined vessels shall be at least equal to, but need not exceed, the maximum allowable working pressure to be marked on the jacket.

27-5 HEAT TREATMENT OF TEST SPECIMENS

27-5(a) Except when impact testing per UCS-66 is required, and in lieu of the requirements of UCS-85, the plate, forging, pipe, and strip steels used in the production of glass-lined vessels may be represented by test specimens that meet the following requirements:

27-5(a)(1) the test specimens shall be heat treated two times, first to a temperature of 1675°F ± 25°F (915°C ± 15°C), and then to a temperature that is nominally equal to the last (lowest) temperature of the glassing cycle. The minimum holding time for each heat treatment shall be $\frac{1}{2}$ hr/in. (1 min/mm) of thickness;

27-5(a)(2) the materials shall be limited to SA-106, SA-285, SA-414, SA-516, and SA-836; and

27-5(a)(3) the multiple temperature cycles used in the glassing operation shall be within the range of 1450°F to 1700°F (790°C to 925°C), with at least one cycle being above the upper transformation temperature of the material. The vessel is to be held at temperature approximately $\frac{1}{2}$ hr/in. ($\frac{1}{2}$ hr/25 mm) of thickness, and still-air-cooled to ambient.

27-5(b) SA-106, SA-285, SA-414 Grades A and B, and SA-516 materials used in the production of glass-lined vessels may be exempt from the simulated test requirements of UCS-85 when the following requirements are met;

27-5(b)(1) the requirements of (a)(3) above;

27-5(b)(2) the carbon content of the materials shall not exceed 0.25% by heat analysis;

27-5(b)(3) the tensile strength and yield strength of the material, as represented by mill test specimens, shall be at least 10% higher than the minimum specified by the material specification;

27-5(b)(4) impact testing per UCS-66 is not required.

27-6 LOW TEMPERATURE OPERATION

Materials used in the fabrication of glass lined vessels shall follow the impact testing requirements or exemptions as defined within this Division with the exceptions listed below.

27-6(a) SA-285 Grade C, for glass lined vessels, may be assigned to Curve B in Fig. UCS-66 under the following conditions:

27-6(a)(1) the maximum carbon content limit is 0.18%; and

27-6(a)(2) the glass operation shall be per 27-5(a)(3).

27-6(b) Stainless steel vessels fabricated from SA-240 316L plate, SA-182 F316L forgings, SA-312 TP316L pipe, and SA-213 TP316L tubing may be exempted from production impact tests per UHA-51, provided the following conditions are met:

27-6(b)(1) The Welding Procedure Qualification shall include impact tests in accordance with UHA-51(b). Each heat or lot of consumable welding electrodes shall be so tested. The test specimens shall be subjected to the glass lined 316L stainless steel vessel glassing cycle temperature, time, and cooling rates, and a number of cycles that is equal to or greater than that of the production vessels.

27-6(b)(2) The impact testing shall be done at a temperature not warmer than the MDMT of the vessels. The MDMT of the vessels shall be no colder than −155°F (−104°C).

27-6(b)(3) The multiple temperature cycles used in the glassing operation shall be within the range of 1400°F to 1700°F (760°C to 927°C). The vessel is to be held at temperature approximately $\frac{1}{2}$ hr/in. of thickness (0.20 hr/cm of thickness) per cycle, and still-air-cooled (non-quench) to ambient.

27-6(b)(4) As an alternative to (b)(1) through (b)(3) above, impact testing is not required when the coincident ratio of design stress [see footnote (3) of UHA-51] in tension to allowable tensile stress is less than 0.35, provided that the welding electrodes are certified to SFA-5.4 Grade 316L-15 with a ferrite number not to exceed 3,

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

and provided that the MDMT of the vessels is no colder than −200°F (−129°C).

27-7 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

The heat treatment provided in the temperature cycle for the glassing operation may be used in lieu of the postweld heat treatment requirements of UW-40 and UCS-56. The weld qualification test specimens required by UW-28 and Section IX shall be heat treated per 27-5(a)(1). Inner vessels which are so heat treated need not be again postweld heat treated after the attachment to the jacket, if the joining welds do not require postweld heat treatment.

27-8 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division, as modified by the alternative requirements of this Appendix, have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance With Appendix 27, Alternative Requirements for Glass-Lined Vessels."

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 28
ALTERNATIVE CORNER WELD JOINT DETAIL FOR BOX HEADERS FOR AIR-COOLED HEAT EXCHANGERS

28-1 GENERAL

For box headers for air-cooled heat exchangers using a multipass corner weld joint constructed in accordance with Fig. 28-1, the rules of UW-13(e)(4) and Fig. UW-13.2 shall be supplemented as described below.

28-2 SUPPLEMENTARY REQUIREMENTS

This Appendix only replaces the requirement, "$a + b$ not less than $2t_s$" of UW-13(e)(4) and the weld joint geometry of Fig. UW-13.2. All other rules in the Code pertaining to welded joints shall apply.

In addition, the following shall apply.

28-2(a) A sample corner weld joint shall be prepared to qualify the weld procedure; and a sample corner weld joint shall be prepared to qualify each welder or welding operator. The Manufacturer shall prepare the sample corner weld joint with nominal thickness and configuration matching that to be employed with the following tolerances:

28-2(a)(1) the sample thinner plate shall match the thickness of the production thinner plate within $\pm^1\!/_4$ in. (±6 mm);

28-2(a)(2) the sample thicker plate shall be at least 1.5 times the thickness of the sample thinner plate.

The sample shall be sectioned, polished, and etched to clearly delineate the line of fusion. Acceptability shall be determined by measurements of the line of fusion for use in the calculations for compliance with Fig. 28-1. The sample shall be free from slag, cracks, and lack of fusion. A sample corner weld shall be prepared for each P-Number, except that a sample prepared to qualify a joint made from material with a given value for K [see 28-2(d)] may be used to qualify a joint made from material having an equal or higher value for K but not vice versa.

28-2(b) This sample corner weld joint is an addition to the Welding Procedure Specification Qualification and the Welder and Welding Operator Performance Qualification requirements of Section IX. The following essential variables apply for both the procedure and performance qualification, in addition to those of Section IX:

28-2(b)(1) a change in the nominal size of the electrode or electrodes used and listed in the PQR;

28-2(b)(2) a change in the qualified root gap exceeding $\pm^1\!/_{16}$ in. (±1.5 mm);

28-2(b)(3) addition or deletion of nonmetallic retainers or nonfusing metal retainers;

28-2(b)(4) a change in the SFA specification filler metal classification or to a weld metal or filler metal composition not covered in the specifications;

28-2(b)(5) the addition of other welding positions than those qualified;

28-2(b)(6) for fill passes, a change in amperage exceeding 25 amp, change in voltage exceeding 3 v;

28-2(b)(7) a change in contact tube to work distance exceeding $^1\!/_4$ in. (6 mm);

28-2(b)(8) a change from single electrode to multiple electrodes, or vice versa;

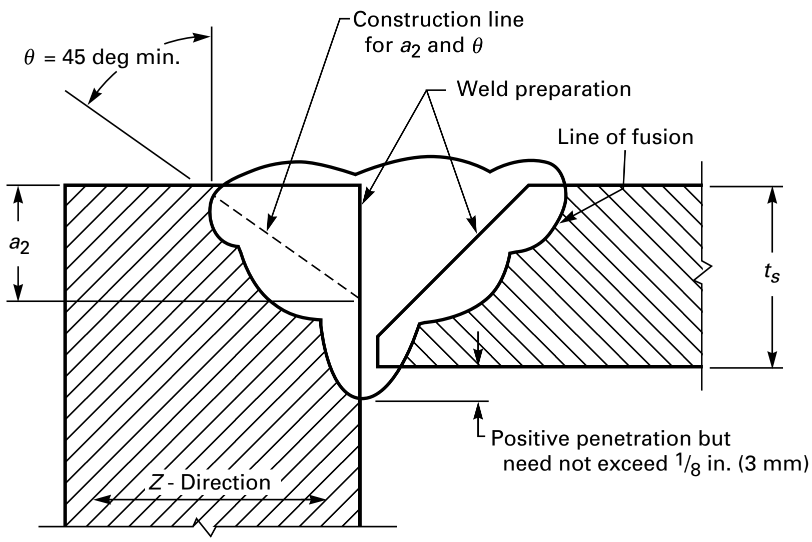
28-2(b)(9) a change in the electrode spacing;

28-2(b)(10) a change from manual or semiautomatic to machine or automatic welding or vice versa.

28-2(c) After production welding, the back side of the weld shall be subjected to a visual examination to assure that complete fusion and penetration have been achieved in the root, except where visual examination is locally prevented by an internal member covering the weld.

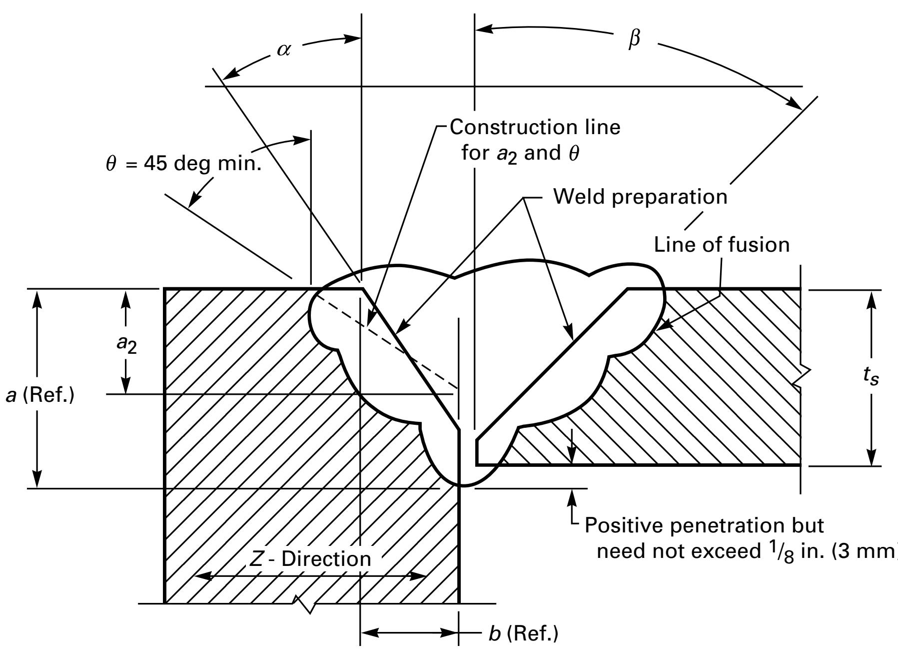
28-2(d) K, the ratio of through-thickness (Z direction) tensile strength to the specified minimum tensile strength, shall be taken as 0.6. Higher values for K, but not higher than 1.0, may be used if through-thickness tensile strength is determined in accordance with Specification SA-770. The test results, including the UTS in addition to the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



K	a_2/t_s not less than
0.6	0.29
0.7	0.23
0.8	0.17
0.9	0.09
1.0	0

(a) Details for One Member Beveled



See sketch (a) above for table with values of K and a_2/t_s

(b) Details for Both Members Beveled

FIG. 28-1

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

reduction in area, shall be reported on the Material Test Report, in addition to the information required by Specification SA-20 when the testing in accordance with Specification SA-770 is performed by the material manufacturer. If the testing is performed by the vessel Manufacturer, the test result shall be reported on the Manufacturer's Data Report. See UG-93(b) and UG-93(c).

28-2(e) The maximum value of t_s (see Fig. 28-1) shall be limited to 3 in. (75 mm).

28-2(f) Both members may be beveled as shown in Fig. 28-1 sketch (b). When the bevel angle (α) is large enough to satisfy the UW-13(e)(4) requirements, the alternative rules of this Appendix do not apply. When the bevel angle (α) results in weld fusion dimensions that do not satisfy the UW-13(e)(4) requirement that $a + b$ is not less than $2t_s$, the following shall be satisfied.

28-2(f)(1) The angle (α) shall be equal to or greater than 15 deg.

28-2(f)(2) The dimension a_2 shall be measured from the projected surface of the plate being attached as shown in Fig. 28-1 sketch (b).

28-2(f)(3) The angle (β) shall be equal to or greater than 15 deg.

28-2(f)(4) All other requirements of this Appendix shall be applied.

28-2(g) When all the requirements of this Division and the supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered in the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in conformance with Appendix 28."

04

MANDATORY APPENDIX 29

DELETED

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 30
RULES FOR DRILLED HOLES NOT PENETRATING THROUGH VESSEL WALL

30-1 SCOPE

Partially drilled radial holes in cylindrical and spherical shells may be used provided they are 2.0 in. (50 mm) or less in diameter and the shell diameter to thickness ratio $D/t \geq 10$. The acceptance criterion for the depth of the hole is the plot of the ratio t_{min}/t versus d/D that is on or above the curve in Fig. 30-1.

30-2 SUPPLEMENTARY REQUIREMENTS

In addition, the following conditions shall be met.

30-2(a) The minimum remaining wall thickness t_{min} shall not be less than 0.25 in. (6 mm).

30-2(b) The calculated average shear stress, $\tau = Pd/4t_{min}$, in the remaining wall shall not exceed $0.8S$.

30-2(c)

30-2(c)(1) The center line distance between any two such drilled holes or between a partially drilled hole and an unreinforced opening shall satisfy the requirements of UG-36(c)(3)(c) and (c)(3)(d).

30-2(c)(2) Partially drilled holes shall not be placed within the limits of reinforcement of a reinforced opening.

30-2(d) The outside edge of the hole shall be chamfered; for flat bottom holes, the inside bottom corner of the hole shall have a minimum radius of the lesser of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) or $d/4$.

30-2(e) These rules are not applicable to studded connections (see UG-43) and telltale holes (UG-25).

30-3 NOMENCLATURE

Symbols used in this Appendix are as follows.

D = vessel inside diameter
P = design pressure (see UG-21)
S = maximum allowable stress value
d = diameter of drilled hole
t = nominal thickness in corroded condition
t_{min} = remaining wall thickness

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

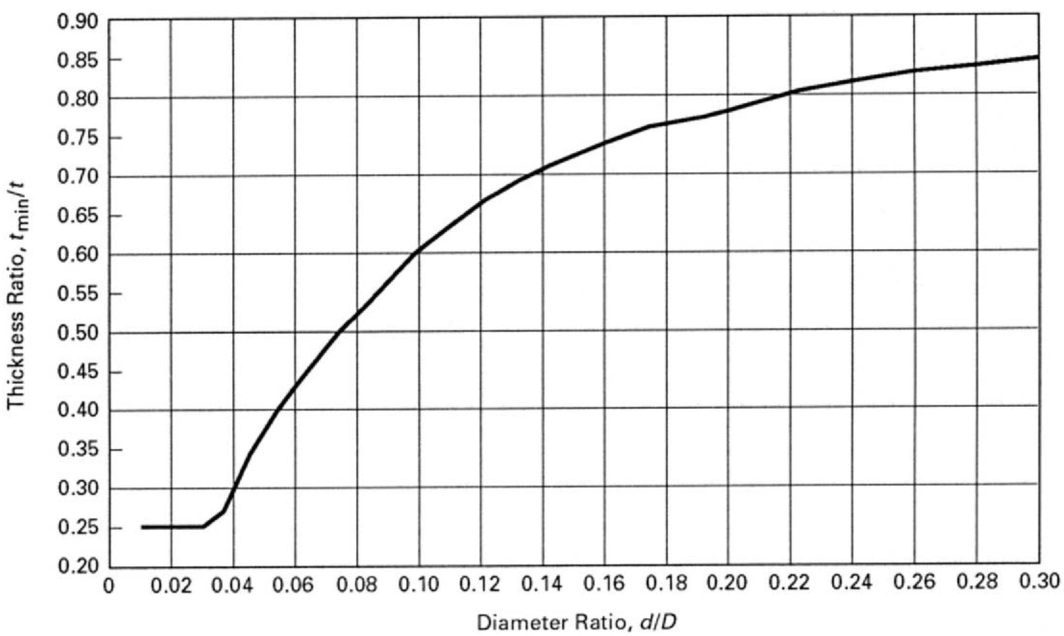


FIG. 30-1 THICKNESS RATIO VERSUS DIAMETER RATIO

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 31
RULES FOR Cr–Mo STEELS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDING AND HEAT TREATMENT

31-1 SCOPE

This Appendix covers special fabrication and testing rules for a group of materials for which tightly controlled welding and heat treatment procedures are of particular importance. The materials and appropriate specifications covered by this Appendix are listed in Table 31-1.

The requirements of this Appendix are in addition to the rules in other parts of this Division for carbon and low alloy steels. In cases of conflicts, the rules in this Appendix shall govern.

This Appendix number shall be shown on the Manufacturer's Data Report Form.

31-2 POSTWELD HEAT TREATMENT

31-2(a) $2^1/_4$Cr–1Mo–$^1/_4$V and 3Cr–1Mo–$^1/_4$V–Ti–B Materials. The final postweld heat treatment shall be in accordance with the requirements of this Division for P-No. 5C materials.

31-2(b) $2^1/_4$Cr–1Mo Materials. The final postweld heat treatment temperature shall be in accordance with the requirement of this Division for P-No. 5A materials except that the permissible minimum normal holding temperature is 1,200°F (650°C), and the holding time shall be 1 hr/in. up to a nominal thickness of 5 in. (125 mm). For thicknesses over 5 in. (125 mm), the holding time shall be 5 hr plus 15 min for each additional inch over 5 in. (125 mm).

31-3 TEST SPECIMEN HEAT TREATMENT

31-3(a) In fulfilling the requirements of UCS-85(b), two sets of tension specimens and one set of Charpy impact specimens shall be tested. One set each of the tension specimens shall be exposed to heat treatment Condition A. The second set of tension specimens and the set of Charpy impact specimens shall be exposed to heat treatment Condition B.

Condition A: Temperature shall be no lower than the actual maximum vessel-portion temperature, less 25°F (15°C). Time at temperature shall be no less than 80% of the actual hold time of the vessel-portion exposed to the maximum vessel-portion temperature.

Condition B: Temperature shall be no higher than the actual minimum vessel-portion temperature, plus 25°F (15°C). Time at temperature shall be no more than 120% of the actual hold time of the vessel-portion exposed to the minimum vessel-portion temperature.

31-3(b) Suggested procedure for establishing test specimen heat treatment parameters:

31-3(b)(1) Establish maximum and minimum temperatures and hold times for the vessel/component heat treatment based on experience/equipment.

31-3(b)(2) Determine Conditions A and B for the test specimen heat treatments.

31-3(b)(3) Vessel heat treatment temperature and hold time limitations and test specimen Conditions A and B are shown in Fig. 31-1 (shaded area).

31-4 WELD PROCEDURE QUALIFICATION AND WELD CONSUMABLES TESTING

31-4(a) Welding procedure qualifications using a production weld consumable shall be made for material welded to itself or to other materials. The qualifications shall conform to the requirements of Section IX, and the maximum tensile strength at room temperature shall be 110 ksi (for heat treatment Conditions A and B). Welding shall be limited to submerged-arc (SAW) and the shielded metal-arc (SMAW) processes for 3Cr–1Mo–$^1/_4$V–Ti–B material only.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE 31-1
MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS

Nominal Composition	Type/ Grade	Specification No.	Product Form
$2^1/_4$Cr–1Mo	Grade 22, Cl. 3	SA-508	Forgings
	Grade 22, Cl. 3	SA-541	Forgings
	Type B, Cl. 4	SA-542	Plates
$2^1/_4$Cr–1Mo–$^1/_4$V	Grade F22V	SA-182	Forgings
	Grade F22V	SA-336	Forgings
	Grade 22V	SA-541	Forgings
	Type D, Cl. 4a	SA-542	Plates
	Grade 22V	SA-832	Plates
3Cr–1Mo–$^1/_4$V–Ti–B	Grade F3V	SA-182	Forgings
	Grade F3V	SA-336	Forgings
	Grade 3V	SA-508	Forgings
	Grade 3V	SA-541	Forgings
	Type C, Cl. 4a	SA-542	Plates
	Grade 21V	SA-832	Plates

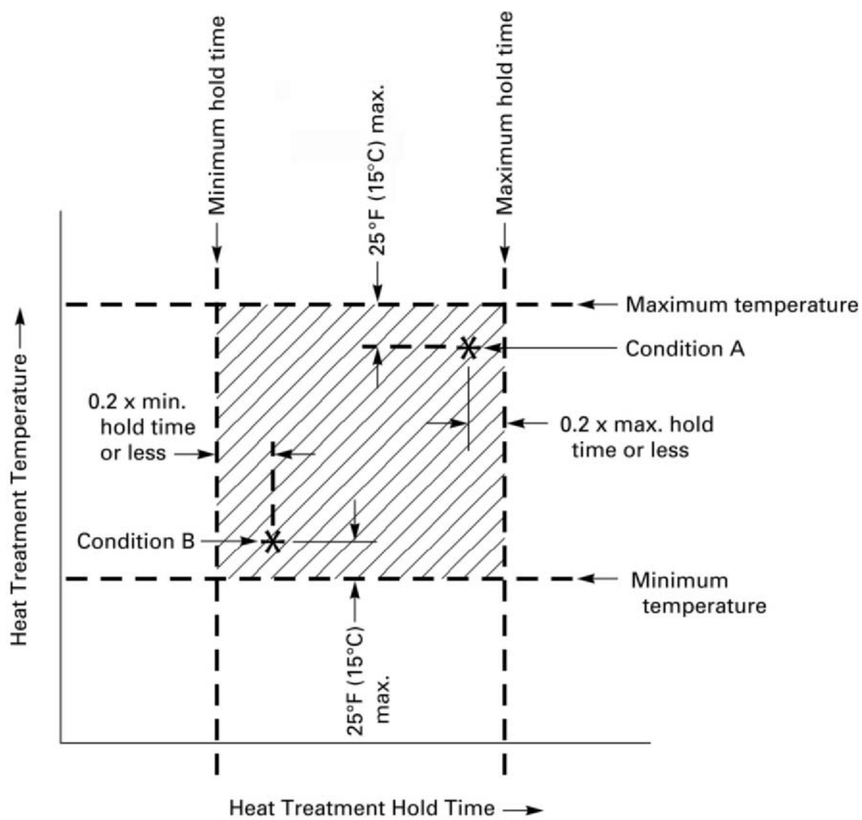


FIG. 31-1

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE 31-2
COMPOSITION REQUIREMENTS FOR $2\frac{1}{4}$Cr–1Mo–$\frac{1}{4}$V WELD METAL

Welding Process	C	Mn	Si	Cr	Mo	P	S	V	Cb
SAW	0.05–0.15	0.50–1.30	0.05–0.35	2.00–2.60	0.90–1.20	0.015 max.	0.015 max.	0.20–0.40	0.010–0.040
SMAW	0.05–0.15	0.50–1.30	0.20–0.50	2.00–2.60	0.90–1.20	0.015 max.	0.015 max.	0.20–0.40	0.010–0.040
GTAW	0.05–0.15	0.30–1.10	0.05–0.35	2.00–2.60	0.90–1.20	0.015 max.	0.015 max.	0.20–0.40	0.010–0.040
GMAW	0.05–0.15	0.30–1.10	0.20–0.50	2.00–2.60	0.90–1.20	0.015 max.	0.015 max.	0.20–0.40	0.010–0.040

31-4(b) Weld metal from each heat or lot of electrodes and filler-wire–flux combination shall be tested. The minimum and maximum tensile properties shall be met in PWHT Conditions A and B. The minimum CVN impact properties shall be met in PWHT Condition B. Testing shall be in general conformance with SFA-5.5 for covered electrodes and SFA-5.23 for filler-wire–flux combinations.

31-4(c) Duplicate testing in the PWHT Condition A and PWHT Condition B (see 31-3) is required. The minimum tensiles and CVN impact properties for the base material shall be met. CVN impact testing is only required for Condition B.

For $2\frac{1}{4}$Cr–1Mo–$\frac{1}{4}$V material, the weld metal shall meet the composition requirements listed in Table 31-2. For all other materials, the minimum carbon content of the weld metal shall be 0.05%.

31-5 TOUGHNESS REQUIREMENTS

The minimum toughness requirements for base metal, weld metal, and heat affected zone, after exposure to the simulated postweld heat treatment Condition B, shall be as follows:

Number of Specimens	Impact Energy, ft-lb
Average of 3	40
Only one in set	35 min.

GENERAL NOTE: Full size Charpy V-notch, transverse, tested at the MDMT.

If the material specification or other parts of this Division have more demanding toughness requirements, they shall be met.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 32
LOCAL THIN AREAS IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS AND IN SPHERICAL SEGMENTS OF SHELLS

32-1 SCOPE

The rules of this Appendix permit acceptable Local Thin Areas (LTAs) in cylindrical shells or spherical segments of shells (such as spherical vessel, hemispherical heads, and the spherical portion of torispherical and ellipsoidal heads) under internal pressure be less than the required thickness required by UG-16, UG-27, or UG-32 as applicable. Local thin areas on the inside or outside of cylindrical shells or spherical segments of shells designed for internal pressure are acceptable, provided they meet the requirements in this Appendix.

32-2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

04 *32-2(a)* The Manufacturer shall maintain records of the calculations and the location and extent of all LTAs that are evaluated using this Appendix, and provide such information to the purchaser or the User or the User's designated agent if requested. This information shall be documented in the design calculations made to meet the requirements of this Appendix.

32-2(b) The maximum design temperature shall not exceed the maximum temperature limitls specified in Table 1-4.3.

32-2(c) This Appendix shall not be applied to Part UF Vessels.

32-2(d) The provisions of this Appendix do not apply to corrosion-resistant linings or overlays.

32-2(e) All other applicable requiremetns of this Division shall be met.

32-3 NOMENCLATURE

C = projected circumferential length of LTA in a cylindrical shell, in.

D = per UG-32

D_L = maximum dimension of LTA in a spherical segment, in.

L = projected axial length of LTA in a cylindrical shell, in.

LTA = local thin area

R = inside radius for cylindrical shell or spherical segment, for ellipsoidal heads $R = K_o D$ where K_o is from Table UG-33.1, in.

t = required thickness per UG-27(c), UG-27(d), UG-32(d), UG-32(e), or UG-32(f), as applicable, but not less than thickness requirements of UG-16, in.

t_L = minimum thickness of LTA, in.

θ = see Fig. 32-3

32-4 SINGLE LOCAL THIN AREAS IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

32-4(a) Single LTA shall satisfy the following equations:

$$\frac{t_L}{t} \geq 0.9 \tag{1}$$

$$L \leq \sqrt{Rt} \tag{2}$$

$$C \leq 2L \tag{3}$$

$$t - t_L \leq {}^3\!/_{16} \text{ in.} \tag{4}$$

32-4(b) Any edge of an LTA shall not be closer than $2.5\sqrt{Rt}$ from a structural discontinuity such as a head or stiffener.

32-4(c) For openings meeting UG-36(c)(3), the minimum axial distance between the edge of the LTA and the center of the opening shall be equal to or greater than the inside diameter of the opening plus $\sqrt{Rt}$

32-4(d) For openings not meeting UG-36(c)(3), the minimum axial distance between the edge of the LTA and the reinforment limit of the opening shall be equal to or greater than $\sqrt{Rt}$

32-4(e) The blend between the LTA and the thicker surface shall be with a taper length not less than three times the LTA depth as shown in Fig. 32-3, sketch (b). The minimum bottom blend radius shall be equal to or greater than two times the LTA depth as shown in Fig. 32-3, sketch (b). 04

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

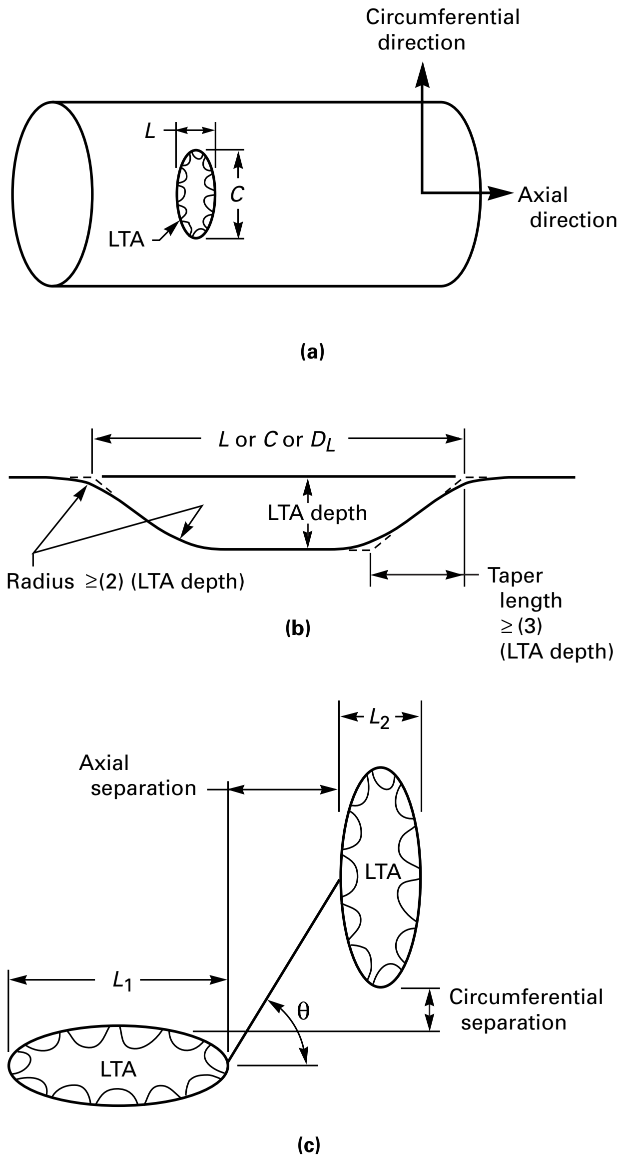


FIG. 32-3 NOMENCLATURE

32-4(f) The longitudinal stresses on the LTA from mechanical loads other than internal pressure shall not exceed $0.3S$.

32-4(g) The thickness at the LTA shall meet the requirements of UG-23(b) and/or UG-28 as applicable.

32-5 MULTIPLE LOCAL THIN AREAS IN CYLINDRICAL SHELLS

32-5(a) A pair of local areas with finished axial length, L_1 and L_2 [see Fig. 32-3, sketch (c)] are acceptable if the individual LTA satisfies the requirements of 32-4 above and one of the following conditions [(a)(1) or (a)(2)] is met.

32-5(a)(1) When $\theta \leq 45$ deg, the minimum axial separation [see Fig. 32-3, sketch (c)] shall be the greater of:

$$\frac{(1.0 + 1.5 \cos \theta)(L_1 + L_2)}{2} \text{ or } 2t$$

32-5(a)(2) When $\theta > 45$ deg, both of the following shall be met:

32-5(a)(2)(a) The miniumum axial separation shall be equal to or greater than:

$$\frac{2.91 \cos \theta \,(L_1 + L_2)}{2}$$

32-5(a)(2)(b) The minimum circumferential separation shall be equal to or greater than $2t$.

32-5(b) Multiple pairs of LTA are acceptable provided all pairs meet the rules of a single pair specified in 32-5(a).

32-5(c) Multiple local thin areas may be combined as a single LTA. The resultant single LTA is acceptable if it satisfies the rules of 32-4.

32-6 SINGLE LOCAL THIN AREAS IN SPHERICAL SEGMENTS OF SHELLS 04

32-6(a) The single LTA shall satisfy the following equations:

$$\frac{t_L}{t} \geq 0.9 \tag{5}$$

$$D_L \leq \sqrt{Rt} \tag{6}$$

$$t - t_L \leq {}^3\!/_{16} \text{ in.} \tag{7}$$

32-6(b) For openings meeting UG-36(c)(3), the minimum distance between the edge of the LTA and the center of the opening shall be equal to or greater than the inside diameter of the opening plus $\sqrt{Rt}$.

32-6(c) For openings not meeting UG-36(c)(3), the miniumum distance between the edge of the LTA and the reinforcement limit of the opening shall be equal to or greater than $\sqrt{Rt}$.

32-6(d) The edges of a LTA shall not be closer than $2.5\sqrt{Rt}$ from a structural discontinuity.

32-6(e) A constant thickness junction between head and cylindrical shell is not considered to be a structural discontinuity for LTA rules.

32-6(f) The blend between the LTA and the thicker surface shall be with a taper length not less than three times the LTA depth. The minimum bottom blend radius shall be equal to or greater than two times the LTA depth.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

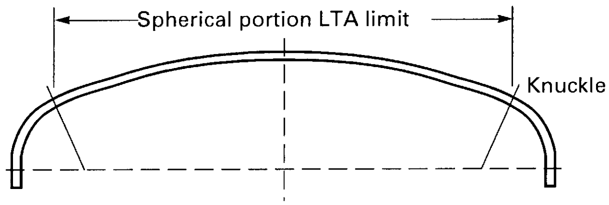


FIG. 32-6.1 LIMITS FOR TORISPHERICAL HEAD

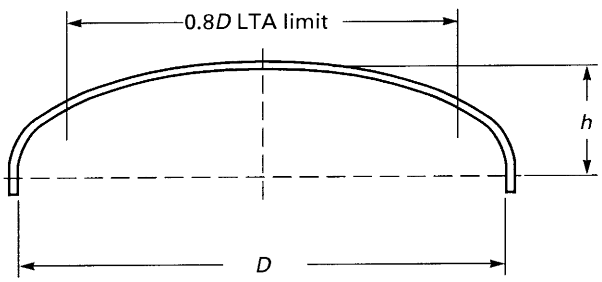


FIG. 32-6.2 LIMITS FOR ELLIPSOIDAL HEAD

The blend requirements are shown in Fig. 32-3, sketch (b).

32-6(g) The LTA for a torispherical head must lie entirely within the spherical portion of the head. See Fig. 32-6.1.

32-6(h) The LTA for an ellipsoidal head must lie entirely within a circle, the center of which coincides with the axis of the vessel and the diameter of which is equal to 80% of the shell inside diameter. See Fig. 32-6.2.

32-6(i) The LTA for a hemispherical head is acceptable within any portion of the head except as limited by 32-6(d). See Fig. 32-6.3.

32-6(j) The thickness at the LTA shall meet the requirements of UG-28(d) or UG-33 as applicable.

32-6(k) The provisions of this Appendix do not apply to the torus portion of either a torispherical or ellipsoidal head, to flat heads, or to conical heads.

32-7 MULTIPLE LOCAL THIN AREAS IN SPHERICAL SEGMENTS OF SHELLS

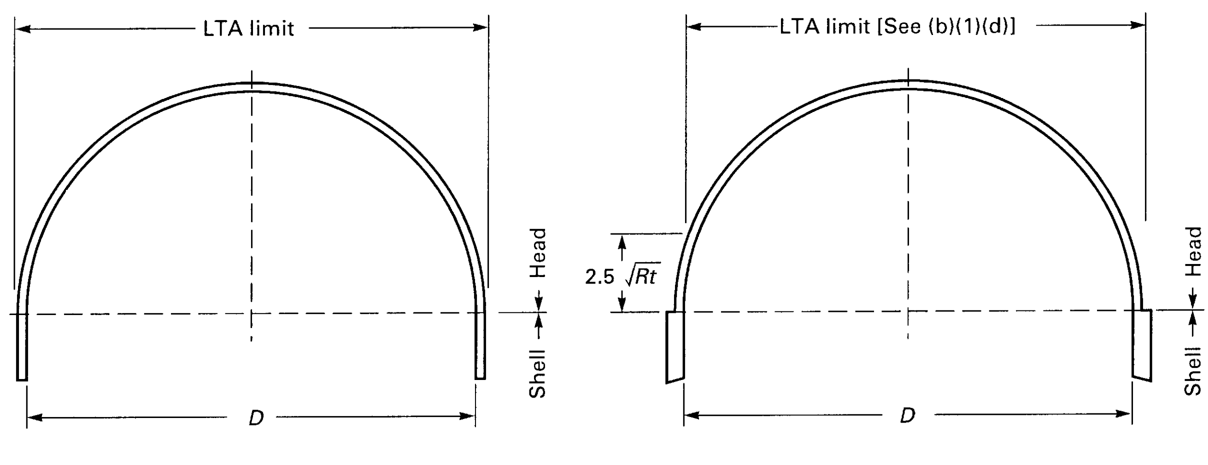
32-7(a) Multiple LTAs may be combined and evaluated as a single LTA. The encompassed areas of the combined LTAs shall be within the D_L dimension.

32-7(b) Each LTA in the encompassed area shall meet the rules of 32-6.

32-7(c) Multiple LTAs may be treated as single LTAs provided their edges are no closer than $2.5\sqrt{Rt}$.

32-8 DATA REPORTS

When all the requirements of this Division and supplemental requirements of this Appendix have been met, the following notation shall be entered on the Manufacturer's Data Report under Remarks, "Constructed in Conformance With Appendix 32, Local Thin Areas in Cylindrical Shells and in Spherical Segments of Shells."



(a) Constant Thickness Junction **(b) Non-Constant Thickness Junction**

FIG. 32-6.3 LIMITS FOR HEMISPHERICAL HEAD

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MANDATORY APPENDIX 33 STANDARD UNITS FOR USE IN EQUATIONS

04

TABLE 33-1
STANDARD UNITS FOR USE IN EQUATIONS

Quantity	U.S. Customary Units	SI Units
Linear dimensions (e.g., length, height, thickness, radius, diameter)	inches (in.)	millimeters (mm)
Area	square inches ($in.^2$)	square millimeters (mm^2)
Volume	cubic inches ($in.^3$)	cubic millimeters (mm^3)
Section modulus	cubic inches ($in.^3$)	cubic millimeters (mm^3)
Moment of inertia of section	$inches^4$ ($in.^4$)	$millimeters^4$ (mm^4)
Mass (weight)	pounds mass (lbm)	kilograms (kg)
Force (load)	pounds force (lbf)	newtons (N)
Bending moment	inch-pounds (in.-lb)	newton-millimeters (N·mm)
Pressure, stress, stress intensity, and modulus of elasticity	pounds per square inch (psi)	megapascals (MPa)
Energy (e.g., Charpy impact values)	foot-pounds (ft-lb)	joules (J)
Temperature	degrees Fahrenheit (°F)	degrees Celsius (°C)
Absolute temperature	Rankine (R)	kelvin (K)
Fracture toughness	ksi square root inches ($ksi\sqrt{in.}$)	MPa square root meters ($MPa\sqrt{m}$)
Angle	degrees or radians	degrees or radians
Boiler capacity	Btu/hr	watts (W)

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDICES

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX A
BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING ALLOWABLE LOADS FOR TUBE-TO-TUBESHEET JOINTS

A-1 GENERAL

04 *A-1(a)* This Appendix provides a basis for establishing allowable tube-to-tubesheet joint loads, except for the following welds.

A-1(a)(1) Full-strength welds defined in accordance with UHX-15.2(a) shall be designed in accordance with UHX-15.4 and do not require shear load testing.

A-1(a)(2) Partial-strength welds defined in accordance with UHX-15.2(b) shall be designed in accordance with UW-18(d) or UHX-15.5 and do not require shear load testing.

The rules of this Appendix may be used to establish the allowable loads for welded tube-to-tubesheet joints where it is preferred to use welds smaller than those required by UHX-15.

The rules of this Appendix are not intended to apply to U-tube construction.

A-1(b) Tubes used in the construction of heat exchangers or similar apparatus may be considered to act as stays which support or contribute to the strength of the tubesheets in which they are engaged. Tube-to-tubesheet joints shall be capable of transferring the applied tube loads. The design of tube-to-tubesheet joints depends on the type of joint, degree of examination, and shear load tests, if performed. Some acceptable geometries and combinations of brazed, welded, and mechanical joints are described in Table A-2. Some acceptable types of welded joints are illustrated in Fig. A-2.

A-1(b)(1) Geometries, including variations in tube pitch, fastening methods, and combinations of fastening methods, not described or shown, may be used provided qualification tests have been conducted and applied in compliance with the procedures set forth in A-3 and A-4.

A-1(b)(2) Materials for welded or brazed tube-to-tube-sheet joints which do not meet the requirements of UW-5 or UB-5, but in all other respects meet the requirements of Section VIII, Division 1, may be used providing qualification tests of the tube-to-tubesheet joint have been conducted and applied in compliance with the procedures set forth in A-3 and A-4.

A-1(c) Some combinations of tube and tubesheet materials, when welded, result in welded joints having lower ductility than required in the material specifications. Appropriate tube-to-tubesheet joint geometry, welding method, and/or heat treatment shall be used with these materials to minimize this effect.

A-1(d) In the selection of joint type, consideration shall be given to the mean metal temperature of the joint at operating temperatures (see 3-2) and differential thermal expansion of the tube and tubesheet which may effect the joint integrity. The following provisions apply for establishing maximum operating temperature for tube-to-tubesheet joints.

A-1(d)(1) Tube-to-tubesheet joints made by welding shall be limited to the maximum temperature for which there are allowable stresses for the tube or tube-sheet material in Tables 1A or 1B of Section II, Part D.

A-1(d)(2) Tube-to-tubesheet joints made by brazing shall be limited to temperatures in conformance with the requirements of Part UB.

A-1(d)(3) Tube-to-tubesheet joints that depend on friction between the tube and the tube hole such as Joint Types i, j, and k as listed in Table A-2, shall be limited to temperatures as determined by the following.

(a) The maximum temperature for which the allowable stress of neither the tube nor the tubesheet

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE A-2
EFFICIENCIES f_r

Type Joint	Description (1)	Notes	f_r (test) (2)	f_r (no test)
a	Welded only, $a \geq 1.4t$	(3)	1.00	0.80
b	Welded only, $t \leq a < 1.4t$	(3)	0.70	0.55
b-1	Welded only, $a < t$	(4)	0.70	. . .
c	Brazed, examined	(5)	1.00	0.80
d	Brazed, not fully examined	(6)	0.50	0.40
e	Welded, $a \geq 1.4t$, and expanded	(3)	1.00	0.80
f	Welded, $a < 1.4t$, and expanded, enhanced with two or more grooves	(3)(7)(8)(9)	0.95	0.75
g	Welded, $a < 1.4t$, and expanded, enhanced with single groove	(3)(7)(8)(9)	0.85	0.65
h	Welded, $a < 1.4t$, and expanded, not enhanced	(3)(7)(8)	0.70	0.50
i	Expanded, enhanced with two or more grooves	(7)(8)(9)	0.90	0.70
j	Expanded, enhanced with single groove	(7)(8)(9)	0.80	0.65
k	Expanded, not enhanced	(7)(8)	0.60	0.50

GENERAL NOTE: The joint efficiencies listed in this table apply only to allowable loads and do not indicate the degree of joint leak tightness.

NOTES:

(1) For joint types involving more than one fastening method, the sequence used in the joint description does not necessarily indicate the order in which the operations are performed.

(2) The use of the f_r(test) factor requires qualification in accordance with A-3 and A-4.

(3) The value of f_r(no test) applies only to material combinations as provided for under Section IX. For material combinations not provided for under Section IX, f_r shall be determined by test in accordance with A-3 and A-4.

(4) For f_r(no test), refer to UHX-15.2(b).

(5) A value of 1.00 for f_r(test) or 0.80 for f_r(no test) can be applied only to joints in which visual examination assures that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint [see UB-14(a)] and the depth of penetration is not less than three times the nominal thickness of the tube wall.

(6) A value of 0.50 for f_r(test) or 0.40 for f_r(no test) shall be used for joints in which visual examination will not provide proof that the brazing filler metal has penetrated the entire joint [see UB-14(b)].

(7) When $d_o/(d_o - 2t)$ is less than 1.05 or greater than 1.410, f_r shall be determined by test in accordance with A-3 and A-4.

(8) When the nominal pitch (center-to-center distance of adjacent tube holes) is less than $d_o + 2t$, f_r shall be determined by test in accordance with A-3 and A-4.

(9) The Manufacturer may use other means to enhance the strength of expanded joints, provided however, that the joints are tested in accordance with A-3 and A-4.

material is obtained from time-dependent properties as provided in Tables 1A or 1B of Section II, Part D.

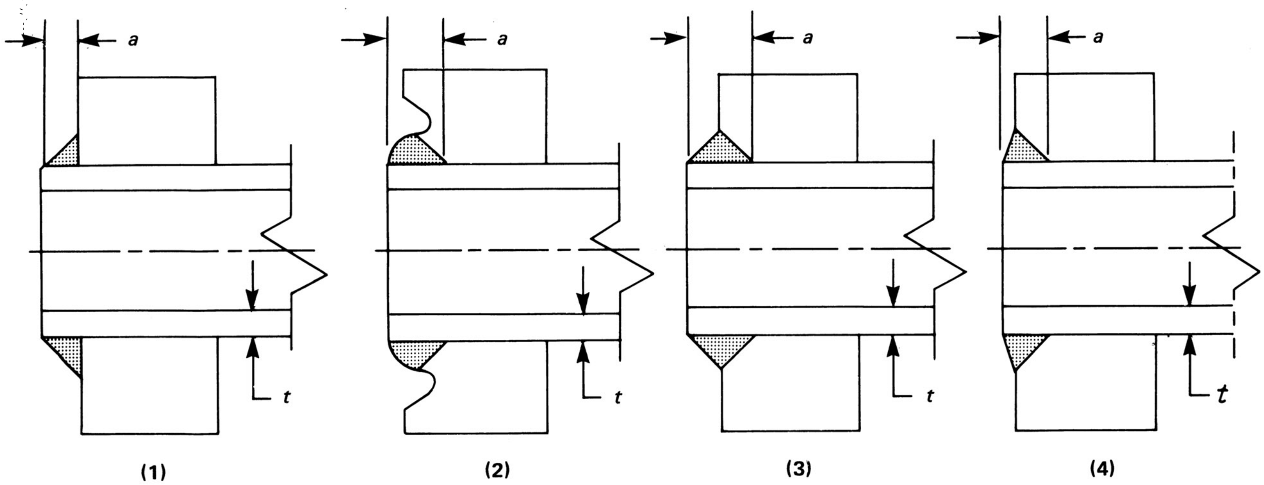
(b) The maximum operating temperature is based on the interface pressure that exists between the tube and tubesheet. The maximum operating temperature is limited such that the interface pressure due to expanding the tube at joint fabrication plus the interface pressure due to differential thermal expansion does not exceed 58% of the smaller of the tube or tubesheet yield strength listed in Table Y-2 of Section II, Part D at the operating temperature. When the tube or tubesheet yield strength is not listed in Table Y-2, the operating temperature limit shall be determined as described in (d)(3)(d) below. The interface pressure due to expanding the tube at fabrication or the interface pressure due to differential thermal expansion may be determined analytically or experimentally.

(c) Due to differential thermal expansion, the tube may expand less than the tubesheet. For this condition, the interfacial pressure P_T as defined in A-2 is a negative number.

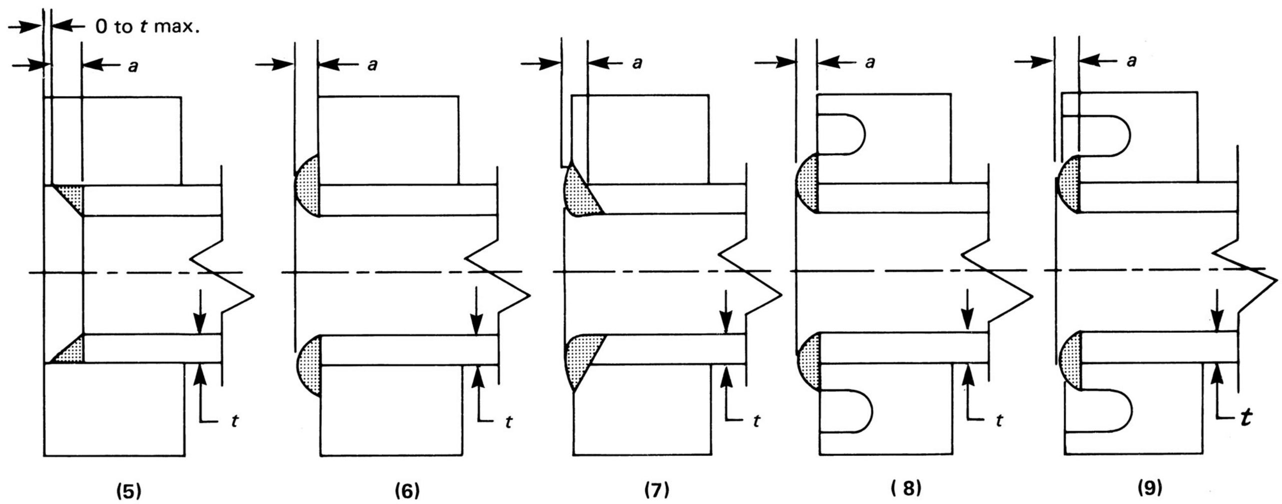
(d) When the maximum temperature is not determined by (d)(3)(b) above, or the tube expands less than or equal to the tubesheet, joint acceptability shall be determined by shear load tests described in A-3. Two sets of specimens shall be tested. The first set shall be tested at the proposed operating temperature. The second set shall be tested at room temperature after heat soaking at the proposed operating temperature for 24 hr. The proposed operating temperature is acceptable if the provisions of A-5 are met.

A-1(e) The Manufacturer shall prepare written procedures for joints which are expanded (whether welded

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



Some acceptable weld geometries where *a* is not less than 1.4*t*.



Some acceptable weld geometries where *a* is less than 1.4*t*.

FIG. A-2 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF TUBE-TO-TUBESHEET WELDS

and expanded or expanded only) for joint strength. The Manufacturer shall establish the variables that affect joint repeatability in these procedures. The procedures shall provide detailed descriptions or sketches of enhancements, such as grooves, serrations, threads, and coarse machining profiles. The Manufacturer shall make these written procedures available to the Authorized Inspector.

A-2 MAXIMUM AXIAL LOADINGS

In the design of shell and tube heat exchangers of other than U-tube construction, the maximum allowable axial load[1] in either direction on tube-to-tubesheet joints shall be determined in accordance with the following:

For joint types a, b, b-1, c, d, e,

$$L_{\max} = A_t S_a f_r \tag{1}$$

For joint types f, g, h,

$$L_{\max} = A_t S_a f_e f_r f_y \tag{2}$$

[1] The loads determined by Eqs. (1), (2) and (3) apply to the tube-to-tubesheet joint only. Rules for determining allowable axial loads on stays in tension are given in Subsection A, UG-47, braced and stayed surfaces. (Appropriate paragraphs in Subsection A are to be supplemented as required.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

For joint types i, j, k,

$$L_{\max} = A_t S_a f_e f_r f_y f_T \tag{3}$$

where

A_t = nominal transverse cross-sectional area of tube wall
$= \pi(d_o - t)t$
d_o = nominal outside diameter of tube
t = nominal tube wall thickness

$L_{\max}$ = maximum allowable axial load in either direction on tube-to-tubesheet joint

S = maximum allowable stress value as given in the applicable part of Section II, Part D,. For welded tube, the allowable stress for an equivalent seamless tube.

S_a = kS, allowable stress for tube material

f_e = factor for the length of the expanded[2] portion of the tube, where
$f_e = \ell / d_o$ or 1.0, whichever is less, for joints made with expanded tubes in tube holes without enhancement, where
ℓ = length of the expanded portion of the tube
f_e = 1.0 for joints made with expanded tubes having enhancements

f_T = factor to account for the increase or decrease of tube joint strength due to radial differential thermal expansion at the tube-to-tubesheet joint, where
$= (P_o + P_T)/P_o$
P_o = interface pressure between the tube and tubesheet that remains after expanding the tube at fabrication. This pressure may be established analytically or experimentally, but must consider the effect of change in material strength at operating temperature
P_T = interface pressure between the tube and tubesheet due to differential thermal growth. This pressure may be established analytically or experimentally

NOTE: $P_o + P_T$ shall not exceed 58% of the smaller of the tube or tubesheet yield strength; see A-1(d)(3)(b).

f_r = factor for efficiency of joint, where
f_r *(test)* = value calculated from results of test in accordance with A-4 or as tabulated in Table A-2, whichever is less, except as permitted in A-3(k)
f_r (no test) = maximum allowable value without qualification test in accordance with Table A-2

f_y = factor for differences in the mechanical properties of tubesheet and tube materials, where
f_y = ratio of tubesheet yield stress to tube yield stress or 1.0, whichever is less, for expanded joints. When f_y is less than 0.60, qualification tests in accordance with A-3 and A-4 are required.
= Yield stress shall be the specified minimum yield stress at metal temperature as tabulated in stress tables.

k = 1.0 for loads due to pressure-induced axial forces.

k = 2.0 for loads due to thermally or pressure plus thermally-induced axial forces, except for joint types b and b-1 of Table A-2, the value of k shall be 1.0 for all loads.

[2] An expanded joint is a joint between tube and tubesheet produced by applying expanding force inside the portion of the tube to be engaged in the tubesheet. Expanding force shall be set to values necessary to effect required holding power.

A-3 SHEAR LOAD TEST[3]

(a) Flaws in the specimen may affect results. If any test specimen develops flaws, the retest provisions of (k) shall govern.

(b) If any test specimen fails because of mechanical reasons, such as failure of testing equipment or improper specimen preparation, it may be discarded and another specimen taken from the same heat.

(c) The shear load test subjects a full-size specimen of the tube joint under examination to a measured load sufficient to cause failure. In general, the testing equipment and methods are given in the Methods of Tension Testing of Metallic Materials (ASTM E 8). Additional fixtures for shear load testing of tube-to-tubesheet joints are shown in Fig. A-3.

(d) The test block simulating the tubesheet may be circular, square or rectangular in shape, essentially in general conformity with the tube pitch geometry. The test assembly shall consist of an array of tubes such that the tube to be tested is in the geometric center of the array and completely surrounded by at least one row of adjacent tubes. The test block shall extend a distance of at least one tubesheet ligament beyond the edge of the peripheral tubes in the assembly.

(e) All tubes in the test block array shall be from the same heat and shall be installed using identical procedures.

[3] Shear load tests of tube-to-tubesheet joints made as required in A-1 and A-2.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

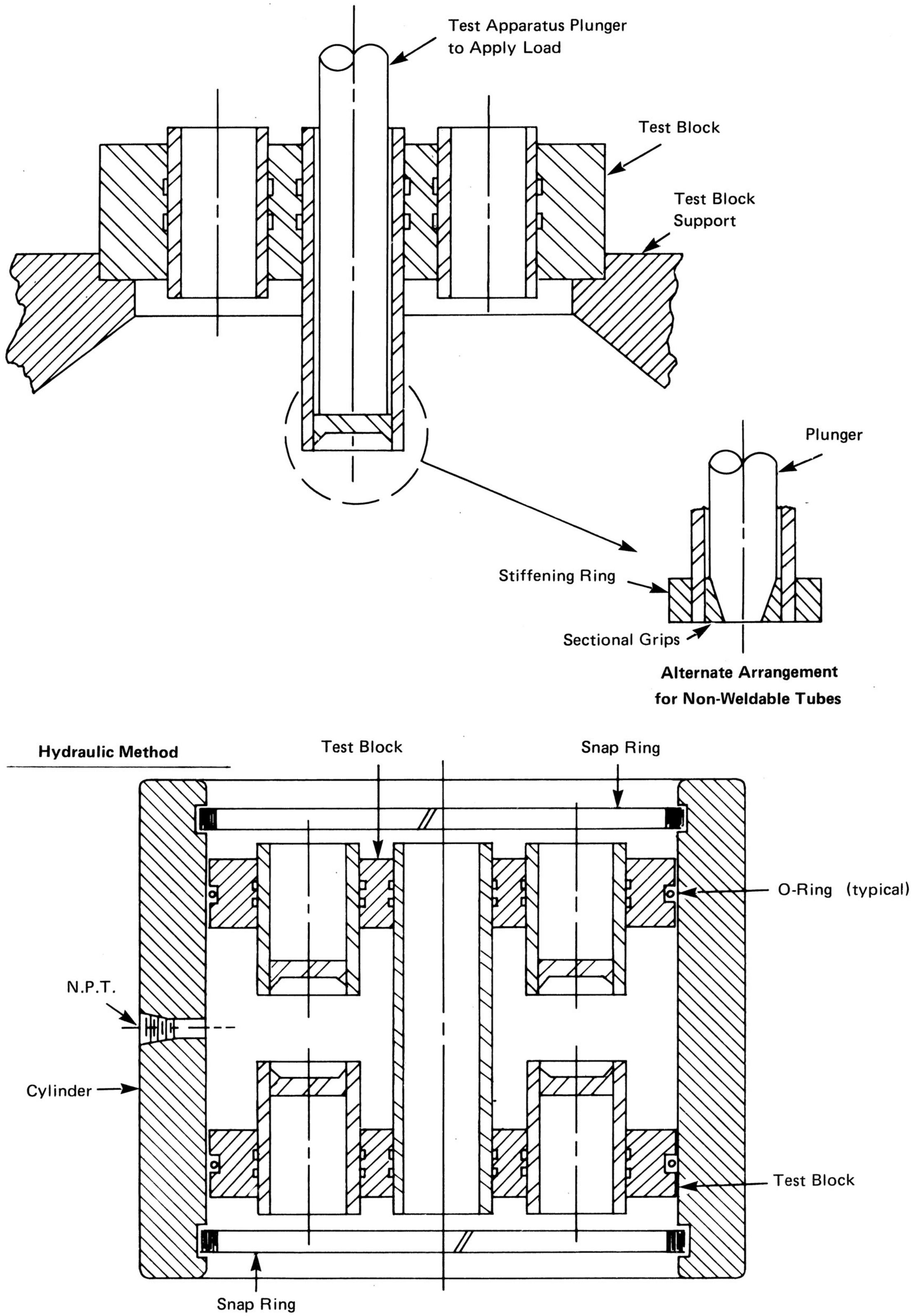


FIG. A-3 TYPICAL TEST FIXTURES FOR EXPANDED OR WELDED TUBE-TO-TUBESHEET JOINTS

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(1) The finished thickness of the test block may be less but not greater than the tubesheet it represents. For expanded joints, made with or without welding, the expanded area of the tubes in the test block may be less but not greater than that for the production joint to be qualified.

(2) The length of the tube used for testing the tube joint need only be sufficient to suit the test apparatus. The length of the tubes adjacent to the tube joint to be tested shall not be less than the thickness of the test block to be qualified.

(f) The procedure used to prepare the tube-to-tubesheet joints in the test specimens shall be the same as used for production.

(g) The tube-to-tubesheet joint specimens shall be loaded until mechanical failure of the joint or tube occurs. The essential requirement is that the load be transmitted axially.

(h) Any convenient speed of testing may be used provided load readings can be determined accurately.

(i) The reading from the testing device shall be such that pounds of applied load required to produce mechanical failure of the tube-to-tubesheet joint can be determined.

(j) For determining f_r (test) for joint types listed in Table A-2, a minimum of three specimens shall constitute a test. The value of f_r (test) shall be calculated in accordance with A-4(a) using the lowest value of L (test). In no case shall the value of f_r (test) using a three specimen test exceed the value of f_r (test) given in Table A-2. If the value of f_r (test) so determined is less than the value for f_r (test) given in Table A-2, retesting shall be performed in accordance with (k) below, or a new three specimen test shall be performed using a new joint configuration or fabrication procedure. All previous test data shall be rejected. To use a value of f_r (test) greater than the value given in Table A-2, a nine specimen test shall be performed in accordance with (k) below.

(k) For joint types not listed in Table A-2, to increase the value of f_r (test) for joint types listed in Table A-2, or to retest joint types listed in Table A-2, the tests to determine f_r (test) shall conform to the following.

(1) A minimum of nine specimens from a single tube shall be tested. Additional tests of specimens from the same tube are permitted provided all test data are used in the determination of f_r (test). Should a change in the joint design or its manufacturing procedure be necessary to meet desired characteristics, complete testing of the modified joint shall be performed.

(2) In determining the value of f_r (test), the mean value of L (test) shall be determined and the standard deviation, sigma, about the mean shall be calculated. The value of f_r (test) shall be calculated using the value of L (test) corresponding to −2 sigma, using the applicable formula given in A-4(b). In no case shall f_r (test) exceed 1.00.

A-4 ACCEPTANCE STANDARDS FOR f_r DETERMINED BY TEST

(a) The value of f_r (test) shall be calculated as follows:

For joint types a, b, b-1, c, d, e,

$$f_r \text{ (test)} = \frac{L\text{(test)}}{A_t S_T}$$

For joint types f, g, h, i, j, k,

$$f_r \text{ (test)} = \frac{L\text{(test)}}{A_t S_T f_e f_y}$$

where

f_r (test) = test efficiency
L (test) = axial load at which failure of the test specimens occurs [refer to A-3(j) or (k), as applicable]
S_T = specified minimum tensile strength of tube material

A_t, f_e, and f_y, as defined in A-2

(b) For design purposes, the value of f_r as determined by test shall be used in the equation for determining the maximum allowable axial load on tube-to-tubesheet joints.

A-5 ACCEPTANCE STANDARDS FOR PROPOSED OPERATING TEMPERATURES DETERMINED BY TEST

(a) The proposed operating conditions shall be acceptable if both of the following conditions are met:

$$L_1 \text{ (test)} = A_t f_e f_y S_T \qquad (1)$$

$$L_2 \text{ (test)} = A_t f_e f_y S_T \qquad (2)$$

where

L_1 (test) = lowest axial load at which failure occurs at operating temperature
L_2 (test) = lowest axial load at which failure of heat soaked specimen tested at room temperature occurs

A_t, f_e, and f_y are as defined in A-2. S_T is as defined in A-4.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX C
SUGGESTED METHODS FOR OBTAINING THE OPERATING TEMPERATURE OF VESSEL WALLS IN SERVICE

C-1

At least three thermocouples shall be installed on vessels that are to have contents at temperatures above that at which the allowable stress value of the material is less than its allowable stress value at 100°F (40°C). One of the thermocouples shall be on the head that will be subject to the higher temperature, and the other two shall be on the shell in the zone of maximum temperature. For a number of vessels in similar service in the same plant, thermocouples need be attached to one vessel only of each group or battery, provided that each vessel has a suitable temperature measuring device to show the temperature of the entering fluid, in order that a comparison of the operation of the different vessels can be made and any abnormal operation immediately detected. Thermocouples shall be attached to the outside surface of the vessel by inserting the terminals separately in two small holes drilled into the shell approximately $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm) center-to-center and firmly securing them therein, or by some other equally satisfactory method.

C-2

In lieu of the provisions in the preceding paragraph, it shall be optional to provide a thermocouple or other temperature measuring device for obtaining the temperature of the fluid in the zone of the vessel having the highest temperature. In this case, the metal temperature shall be assumed to be the same as the maximum fluid temperature.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX D
SUGGESTED GOOD PRACTICE REGARDING INTERNAL STRUCTURES

D-1

Pressure vessels that have heavy internal structures such as trays and baffles are subject to damage due to failure of the connections that support the structures.

D-2

The designer should have this possible hazard in mind and provide supports of sufficient strength with due allowance for corrosion.

D-3

The following are some suggestions that should be considered in the design of internal structures.

(1) Connections to the vessel wall should be designed to prevent excessive tensile stress outward from the wall face due to the connection. (See UG-55.)

(2) Structures should rest on top of their supports in preference to being suspended from them.

(3) Additional metal should be provided when corrosion is expected. The corrosion allowance need not be the same as in the vessel if the supports and structures can be replaced more readily and economically than the vessel.

(4) Corrosion resistant metals may be used in the fabrication of the structures and supports.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX E
SUGGESTED GOOD PRACTICE REGARDING CORROSION ALLOWANCE[1]

E-1

From the standpoint of corrosion, pressure vessels may be classified under one of the following groups:

(1) vessels in which corrosion rates may be definitely established from information available to the designer regarding the chemical characteristics of the substances they are to contain. Such information may, in the case of standard commercial products, be obtained from published sources, or, where special processes are involved, from reliable records compiled from results of previous observations by the user or others under similar conditions of operation.

(2) vessels in which corrosion rates, while known to be relatively high, are either variable or indeterminate in magnitude;

(3) vessels in which corrosion rates, while indeterminate, are known to be relatively low;

(4) vessels in which corrosion effects are known to be negligible or entirely absent.

E-2

When the rate of corrosion is closely predictable, additional metal thickness over and above that required for the initial operating conditions should be provided, which should be at least equal to the expected corrosion loss during the desired life of the vessel.

E-3

When corrosion effects are indeterminate prior to design of the vessel, although known to be inherent to some degree in the service for which the vessel is to be used, or when corrosion is incidental, localized, and/or variable in rate and extent, the designer must exercise his best judgment in establishing a reasonable maximum excess shell thickness. This minimum allowance may, of course, be increased according to the designer's judgment.

E-4

When corrosion effects can be shown to be negligible or entirely absent, no excess thickness need be provided.

E-5

When a vessel goes into corrosive service without previous service experience, it is recommended that service inspections be made at frequent intervals until the nature and rate of corrosion in service can be definitely established. The data thus secured should determine the subsequent intervals between service inspections and the probable safe operating life of the vessel.

E-6

For parts which are essential to vessel strength such as stiffener rings, the attachment of the part to the shell must provide adequate corrosion allowance or protection to assure the required strength throughout the service life. Some attachments, such as intermittent welds, require protection on both face and root sides; alternatively, continuous welds or a suitably sized seal weld between the strength welds will provide protection for the root side.

[1] When using high alloys and nonferrous materials either for solid wall or clad or lined vessels, refer to UHA-6, UCL-3, and UNF-4, as appropriate.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX F SUGGESTED GOOD PRACTICE REGARDING LININGS

F-1

When protective linings are used, the amount of additional shell thickness provided to compensate for corrosion effects will depend largely on the nature of the protective material itself, as well as on the degree of knowledge available regarding its resistivity under the intended operating conditions.

F-2

(a) When corrosion resistant metal linings are used, either as a surface layer integral with the shell plate, or in deposited form as applied with a so-called metal gun, or in sheet form mechanically attached, the base plate may be only as thick as required for design operating conditions, provided, however, the thickness of such lining is sufficient to afford an estimated life equal at least to twice the length of the initial inspection period and that application of the material is such as to preclude any possibility of contact between the corrosive agent and the steel shell by infiltration or seepage through or past the lining.

(b) Before strip lining or joint covering strips are applied to carbon steel base plate, the surface shall be closely inspected to assure that it is properly prepared and that it is free of all foreign matter, rust, scale, and moisture. It may be necessary to sand-blast or to hot-air dry the surface, or both.

F-3

No paint of any type should be considered as a permanent protection. When paint is applied to the inside of a vessel, corrosion allowance should be added to the wall thickness of the vessel as if it were unprotected.

F-4

When the test fluid seeps behind the applied liner, there is danger that the fluid will remain in place until the vessel is put in service. In cases where the operating temperature of the vessel is above the boiling point of the test fluid, the vessel should be heated slowly for a sufficient time to drive out all test fluid from behind the applied liner without damage to the liner. This heating operation may be performed at the vessel manufacturing plant or at the plant where the vessel is being installed. After the test fluid is driven out, the lining should be repaired by welding.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX G
SUGGESTED GOOD PRACTICE REGARDING PIPING REACTIONS AND DESIGN OF SUPPORTS AND ATTACHMENTS

G-1

A vessel supported in a vertical or horizontal position will have concentrated loads imposed on the shell in the region where the supports are attached. Primary and secondary stresses due to other loadings, such as the weight of water present for hydrostatic test, may exceed that due to normal internal pressure. Calculations to resist the forces involved are not given here because they involve so many variables depending upon the size and weight of vessels, the temperature of service, the internal pressure, the arrangement of the supporting structure, and the piping attached to the vessel as installed.

G-2

The details of supports should conform to good structural practice, bearing in mind the following items (see *Manual for Steel Construction,* latest edition, by the American Institute of Steel Construction).

(a) All supports should be designed to prevent excessive localized stresses due to temperature changes in the vessel or deformations produced by the internal pressure.

(b) External stays in ring girders, or any internal framing that may support other internal parts, may also exert a stiffening effect on the shell.

(c) Columns supporting field assembled vessels and bearing loads which may produce high secondary stresses in the vessel wall should be so designed at the attachment to the wall that no high stress concentration can occur near changes in shape, gusset plates if any, or at ends of attachment welds. It is preferable to use details permitting continuous welds extending completely around the periphery of the attachment and to avoid intermittent or deadend welds at which there may be local stress concentration. A thicker wall plate at the support may serve to reduce secondary stresses and, if desired, a complete ring of thicker wall plates may be installed.

(d) When superimposed forces on the vessel wall occurring at the attachment for principal struts or gussets and supports of any kind can produce high bending stresses, and when thicker wall plates do not seem appropriate, an oval or circular reinforcing plate may be used. The attachment of such reinforcing plates should be designed to minimize flexing of the plate under forces normal to the surface of the vessel.

G-3

Vertical vessels may be supported on a number of posts without substantial ring girder bracing them around the shell, provided they attach to the shell where the latter is reinforced in an equivalent manner by the head of the vessel or by an intermediate partition.

G-4

Where vertical vessels are supported by lugs, legs, or brackets attached to the shell, the supporting members under these bearing attachments should be as close to the shell as possible to minimize local bending stresses in the shell.

G-5

For large and heavy vertical vessels to be supported by skirts, the conditions of loading under hydrostatic tests, before pressure is applied, or for any possible combination of loadings (see UG-22) under the highest expected metal temperature in service for the normal operating pressure, shall be compared in determining the best location for the line of skirt attachment. In applying UG-22 and UG-23(a) to vertical vessels supported on skirts, the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

following shall be considered in addition to pressure effects:

(a) the skirt reaction:

(1) the weight of vessel and contents transmitted in compression to the skirt by the shell above the level of the skirt attachment;

(2) the weight of vessel and contents transmitted to the skirt by the weight in the shell below the level of skirt attachment;

(3) the load due to externally applied moments and forces when these are a factor, e.g., wind, earthquake, or piping loads.

(b) the stress in the vessel wall due to the effects enumerated in (a) above. Localized longitudinal bending and circumferential compressive stresses of high order may exist in the metal of the shell and skirt near the circle of the skirt attachment if the skirt reaction is not substantially tangent to the vessel wall. When the skirt is attached below the head tangent line, localized stresses are introduced in proportion to the component of the skirt reaction which is normal to the head surface at the point of attachment; when the mean diameter of skirt and shell approximately coincide and a generous knuckle radius is used (e.g., a 2:1 ellipsoidal head), the localized stresses are minimized and are not considered objectionable. In other cases an investigation of local effects may be warranted depending on the magnitude of the loading, location of skirt attachment, etc., and an additional thickness of vessel wall or compression rings may be necessary.

G-6

Horizontal vessels may be supported by means of saddles[1] or equivalent leg supports. For other than very small vessels, the bearing afforded by the saddles shall extend over at least one-third of the circumference of the shell.

Supports should be as few in number as possible, preferably two in the length of the vessel. The vessel may be reinforced by stiffening rings at intermediate sections.[2]

[1] See "Stresses in Large Cylindrical Pressure Vessels on Two Saddle Supports," p. 959, *Pressure Vessels and Piping: Design and Analysis, A Decade of Progress,* Volume Two, published by ASME.

[2] See Transactions ASCE, Volume 98 — 1931 "Design of Large Pipe Lines."

G-7

Large horizontal storage tanks for gases under pressure may be supported by any combination of hangers, with ring girders, stiffeners, and such other reinforcement as may be necessary to prevent stresses in the shell in excess of those allowed by UG-23 and to prevent excessive distortion due to the weight of the vessel when the internal pressure is near atmospheric.

G-8

Certain attachments may serve to mount a pump, compressor, motor, internal combustion engine, mixer, or any other rotating or reciprocating equipment upon a vessel. Such equipment can cause cyclic forces to act upon the attachment, upon the attachment weld to the vessel, upon the vessel shell, and upon the vessel supports. For such cyclic loading, the practices advocated in G-2(c) and (d) above are of particular importance. It is important to avoid resonance between the cyclic forces imposed by the equipment and the natural frequency of the vessel with the equipment in place.

G-9

Additional guidance on the design of supports, attachments and piping reactions may be found in the following references:

(a) British Standard BS-5500, Specification for Fusion Welded Pressure Vessels (Advanced Design and Construction) for Use in the Chemical, Petroleum, and Allied Industries;

(b) Welding Research Council Bulletin #107, Local Stresses in Spherical and Cylindrical Shells Due to External Loadings;

(c) Welding Research Council Bulletin #198, Part 1, Secondary Stress Indices for Integral Structural Attachments to Straight Pipes; Part 2, Stress Indices at Lug Supports on Piping Systems;

(d) Welding Research Council Bulletin 297, Local Stresses in Spherical and Cylindrical Shells Due to External Loadings, Supplement to WRC-107.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX H
GUIDANCE TO ACCOMMODATE LOADINGS PRODUCED BY DEFLAGRATION

H-1 SCOPE

When an internal vapor-air or dust-air deflagration is defined by the user or his designated agent as a load condition to be considered in the design, this Appendix provides guidance for the designer to enhance the ability of a pressure vessel to withstand the forces produced by such conditions.

H-2 GENERAL

Deflagration is the propagation of a combustion zone at a velocity that is less than the speed of sound in the unreacted medium, whereas detonation is the propagation of a combustion zone at a velocity that is greater than the speed of sound in the unreacted medium. A detonation can produce significant dynamic effects in addition to pressure increases of great magnitude and very short duration, and is outside the scope of this Appendix. This Appendix only addresses the lower and slower loadings produced by deflagrations that propagate in a gas-phase.

The magnitude of the pressure rise produced inside the vessel by a deflagration is predictable with reasonable certainty. Unvented deflagration pressures can be predicted with more certainty than vented deflagration pressures. Methods are provided in the references listed in H-5 to bound this pressure rise. Other methods may also be used to determine pressure rise.

H-3 DESIGN LIMITATIONS

The limits of validity for deflagration pressure calculations are described in References (1) and (2).

H-4 DESIGN CRITERIA

H-4.1 Safety Margin

As described in NFPA-69 [see Reference (1)], a vessel may be designed to withstand the loads produced by a deflagration:

H-4.1(a) without significant permanent deformation; or

H-4.1(b) without rupture [see Reference (3)].

A decision between these two design criteria should be made by the user or his designated agent based upon the likelihood of the occurrence and the consequences of significant deformation. It is noted that either (a) or (b) above will result in stresses for a deflagration that are larger than the basic Code allowable stress listed in Section II, Part D. Because of this, appropriate design details and nondestructive examination requirements shall be agreed upon between the user and designer.

These two criteria are very similar in principle to the Level C and Level D criteria, respectively, contained in Section III, Subsection NB for use with Class 1 vessels [see References (4) and (5)]. The limited guidance in NFPA 69 requires the application of technical judgments made by knowledgeable designers experienced in the selection and design of appropriate details. The Level C and Level D criteria in Section III provide detailed methodology for design and analysis. The successful use of either NFPA 69 or Section III criteria for deflagration events requires the selection of materials of construction that will not fail because of brittle fracture during the deflagration pressure excursions.

H-4.2 Likelihood of Occurrence

For vapor-air and dust-air combustion, various methods of reducing the likelihood of occurrence are described in Reference (2). It is good engineering practice to minimize the likelihood of occurrence of these events, regardless of the capability of the vessel to withstand them.

H-4.3 Consequences of Occurrence

In deciding between designing to prevent significant permanent deformation [see H-4.1(a)] or designing to prevent rupture [see H-4.1(b)], the consequences of significant distortion of the pressure boundary should be considered. Either the aforementioned NFPA or Section

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

III design criteria may be used: Each has been used successfully.

H-4.4 Strain Concentration

When developing a design to withstand either of the criteria cited above, the designer should avoid creating weak sections in the vessel at which strain can be concentrated. Examples of design details to avoid are partial-penetration pressure boundary welds, cone to cylinder junctions without transition knuckles, large openings in heads or cylindrical shells which require special design consideration [see UG-36(b)(1)], etc.

H-5 REFERENCES

(1) National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 69, Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems, Chapter 5, Deflagration Pressure Containment, issue effective with the applicable Addenda of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

(2) National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 68, Guide for Venting of Deflagrations, issue effective with the applicable Addenda of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

(3) B.F. Langer, PVRC Interpretive Report of Pressure Vessel Research, Section 1 — Design Considerations, 1.4 Bursting Strength, Welding Research Council Bulletin 95, April 1964.

(4) ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section III, Division 1, NB-3224, Level C Service Limits.

(5) ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section III, Division 1, NB-3225 and Appendix F, Level D Service Limits.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX K
SECTIONING OF WELDED JOINTS

ETCH TESTS

K-1

(a) Carbon and Low Alloy Steels. Etching solutions suitable for carbon and low alloy steels, together with directions for their use, are suggested as follows.

(1) Hydrochloric Acid. Hydrochloric (muriatic) acid and water equal parts by volume. The solution should be kept at or near the boiling temperature during the etching process. The specimens are to be immersed in the solution for a sufficient period of time to reveal all lack of soundness that might exist at their cross-sectional surfaces.

(2) Ammonium Persulfate. One part of ammonium persulfate to nine parts of water by weight. The solution should be used at room temperature and should be applied by vigorously rubbing the surface to be etched with a piece of cotton saturated with the solution. The etching process should be continued until there is a clear definition of the structure in the weld.

(3) Iodine and Potassium Iodide. One part of powdered iodine (solid form), two parts of powdered potassium iodide, and ten parts of water, all by weight. The solution should be used at room temperature and brushed on the surface to be etched until there is a clear definition of outline of the weld.

(4) Nitric Acid. One part of nitric acid and three parts of water by volume.

CAUTION: Always pour the acid into the water. Nitric acid causes bad stains and severe burns.

The solution may be used at room temperature and applied to the surface to be etched with a glass stirring rod. The specimens may also be placed in a boiling solution of the acid but the work should be done in a well-ventilated room. The etching process should be continued for a sufficient period of time to reveal all lack of soundness that might exist at the cross-sectional surfaces of the weld.

(b) The appearance of the etched specimens may be preserved by washing them in clear water after etching, removing the excess water, immersing them in ethyl alcohol, and then drying them. The etched surface may then be preserved by coating it with a thin clear lacquer.

(c) Aluminum Alloy. The following etching solution is suggested for revealing the macrostructure of welded aluminum alloy specimens:

Hydrochloric Acid (conc.)	15 ml
Hydrofluoric Acid (48%)	10 ml
Water	85 ml

This solution is used at room temperature and etching is accomplished by either swabbing or immersion of the specimen. The surface to be etched should be smoothed by filing or machining or by grinding on No. 180 Aloxite paper. With different alloys and tempers the etching period will vary from 15 sec to several minutes and should be continued until the desired contrast is obtained.

CLOSURE OF OPENINGS RESULTING FROM SECTIONING

K-2

(a) Holes in welded joints left by the removal of trepanned plug specimens may be closed by any welding method approved by the authorized inspector. Some suggested methods for closing round plug openings by welding are as follows.

(1) Insert and weld in special plugs of which some acceptable types are shown in Fig. K-2. Type (a) is adapted to welding from both sides and should be used wherever that method is practicable, and Types (b) and (c) when access is possible only from one side. The diameter of the filler plug shall be such as to make a snug fit in the hole to be filled. Each layer of weld metal as deposited shall be thoroughly peened to reduce residual stresses. The $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm) hole in the center of the plugs shown in Fig. K-2 may afterwards be closed by any reasonable method. Plain plugs without a hole may be used.

(2) For joints where the thickness of the thinner plate at the joint is not greater than one-third of the diameter of the hole, place a backing plate on the inside of the shell over the opening and fill the hole completely

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

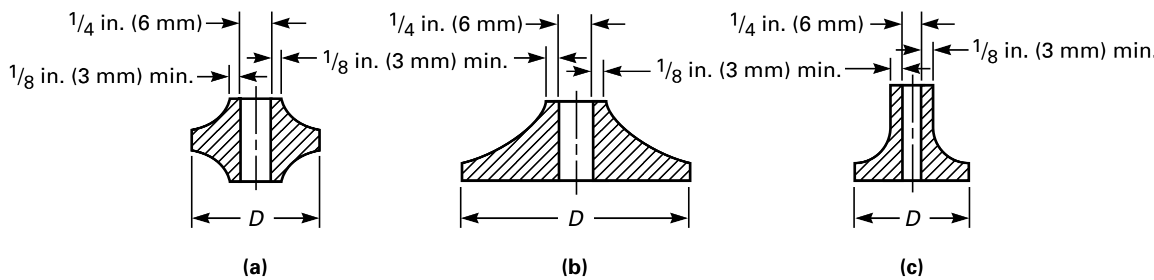


FIG. K-2 SOME ACCEPTABLE TYPES OF FILLER PLUGS

with weld metal applied from the outside of the shell. Rebuild fillet welds where cut.

(3) For joints where the thickness of the thinner plate at the joint is not less than one-third, nor greater than two-thirds the diameter of the hole, fill the hole completely with weld metal applied from both sides of the shell. Rebuild fillet welds where cut.

(4) For butt joints where the thickness of the thinner plate at the joint does not exceed $\frac{7}{8}$ in. (22 mm), chip a groove on one side of the plate each way along the seam from the hole. The groove at the opening shall have sufficient width to provide a taper to the bottom of the hole, and the length of the groove on each side of the opening is to have a slope of approximately one to three. Use a backing plate on the side opposite that on which the chipping is done or a thin disk [not over $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) thick] at the bottom of the hole and fill the groove and the hole with weld metal.

(5) For butt joints, and for plates of any thickness, chip a groove on both sides of the plate each way along the seam from the hole. The groove at the opening shall have sufficient width to provide a taper to the middle of the plate, and the length of the groove on each side of the opening is to have a slope of approximately one to three. Place a thin disk [not over $\frac{1}{8}$ in. (3 mm) thick] in the hole at the middle of the plate and fill the grooves and the hole on both sides with weld metal.

(b) The following is a suggested method for closing openings cut with a spherical saw: For butt welded joints place a backing plate, where necessary, on the inside of the vessel shell over the opening. For lap-welded joints, a part of the parent plate remaining opposite the removed weld will usually serve as a backing plate. Fill the opening completely with the weld metal. Rebuild fillet welds where cut.

K-3

Where gas welding is employed, the area surrounding the plugs shall be preheated prior to welding.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX L
EXAMPLES ILLUSTRATING THE APPLICATION OF CODE FORMULAS AND RULES

VESSELS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE

L-1 APPLICATION OF RULES FOR JOINT EFFICIENCY IN SHELLS AND HEADS OF VESSELS WITH WELDED JOINTS

L-1.1 Introduction

This Appendix provides guidelines for establishing the appropriate joint efficiency for vessels of welded construction. The joint efficiencies are applied in various design formulas which determine either the minimum required design thicknesses of vessel parts or the maximum allowable working pressure for a given thickness.

L-1.2 Requirements for Radiography

Radiography is mandatory for certain vessel services and material thicknesses (UW-11). When radiography is not mandatory, the degree of radiography is optional, and the amount of radiography must be determined by the user or his designated agent (U-2).

Whether radiography is mandatory or optional, the amount of radiography performed on each butt weld together with the type of weld (UW-12) will determine the joint efficiency to be applied in the various design formulas.

L-1.3 Application of Joint Efficiency Factors

The longitudinal and circumferential directions of stress are investigated separately to determine the most restrictive condition governing stresses in the vessel. [See UG-23(c).] In terms of the application of joint efficiencies, each weld joint is considered separately, and the joint efficiency for that weld joint is then applied in the appropriate design formula for the component under consideration.

L-1.4 Flow Charts

Figures L-1.4-1 and L-1.4-2 provide step-by-step guidelines for determining required joint efficiencies for various components. Alternatively, Figs. L-1.4-3 and L-1.4-4 provide guidelines for determining joint efficiencies for weld categories. Generally, the designer should consider the following points.

L-1.4.1 Is radiography mandatory due to service or material thickness?

L-1.4.2 Are weld types mandated? For example, UW-2 restricts weld types to Types 1 or 2 for weld Categories A and B. If not, select types appropriate.

L-1.4.3 If radiography is not mandatory, the amount of radiography performed is optional. The user or his designated agent shall determine the extent of radiography to be performed, or at his option, may permit the vessel manufacturer to select the extent of radiography.

L-1.4.4 Does the degree of radiography performed on the Category B weld joints in a cylindrical or conical shell affect the joint efficiency used on the Category A weld joints? Remember, the minimum required thickness for a cylindrical or conical shell is calculated separately for the circumferential and longitudinal directions and the larger of these two thicknesses calculated selected.

L-1.5 Examples

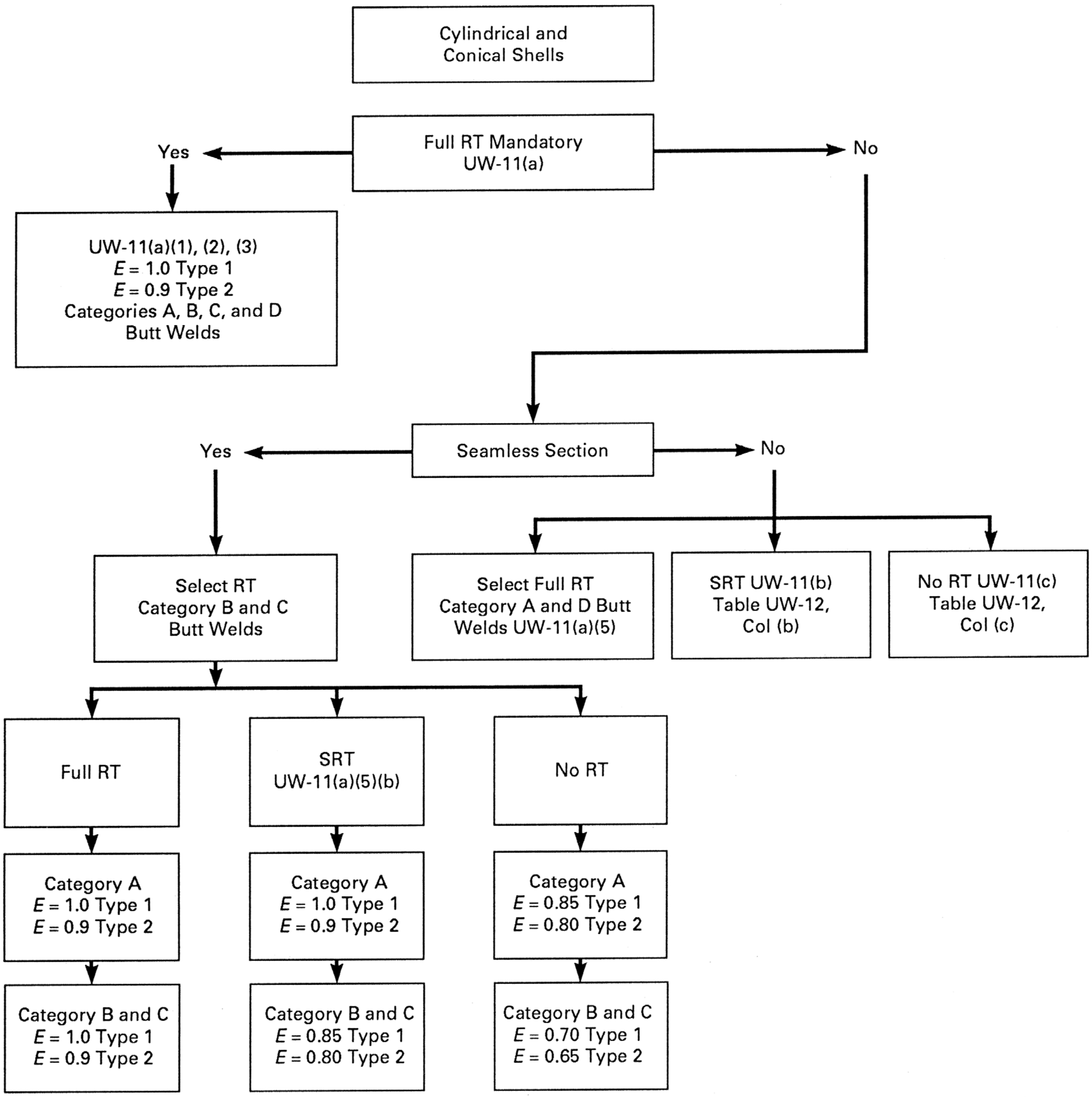
In the following examples, all vessels are cylindrical 24 in. (600 mm) O.D. with a 2:1 ellipsoidal head on one end and a hemispherical head on the other. The ellipsoidal head is attached with a Type No. 2 butt weld, and the hemispherical head is attached with a Type No. 1 butt joint. The vessel has a $12\frac{3}{4}$ in. (325 mm) O.D. seamless pipe sump with a torispherical head attached with a Type No. 2 butt joint. In each case, the internal design pressure is 500 psi with 0.125 in. (3 mm) corrosion allowance. Design temperature is 450°F (230°C).

All materials are carbon steel with a maximum allowable stress of 15.0 ksi as given in Table 1A of Section

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

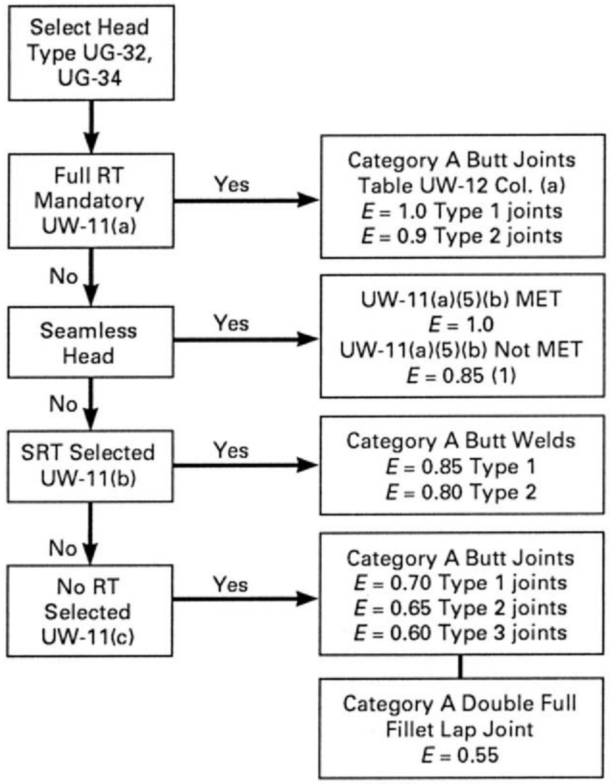
Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTES:
(a) Thickness required for longitudinal stress in conical sections is as follows: $t = PD/[4 \cos (\alpha) (SE + 0.4P)]$.
(b) See UW-11(a)(4) for Categories B and C butt welds in nozzles and communicating chambers equal to or less than NPS 10 and thickness $1^1/_8$ in. (30 mm) or less.
(c) Type 2 joints not allowed for Category A weld joints for UW-2(c) designs.
(d) Type 2 joints allowed for Category A weld joints for UW-2(b) designs for austenitic stainless steel Type 304.

FIG. L-1.4-1 JOINT EFFICIENCY AND WELD JOINT TYPE — CYLINDERS AND CONES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale



NOTES:
(1) See UW-12(d) when head-to-shell attachment weld is Type No. 3, 4, 5, or 6.

FIG. L-1.4-2 JOINT EFFICIENCY AND WELD JOINT TYPE — HEADS

II, Part D. All heads and the sump are seamless in all examples. The shell is seamless in Examples (1), (2), and (3). In Examples (4), (5), and (6), the shell has a Type No. 1 butt welded longitudinal joint. See Fig. L-1.5-1 for vessel configuration and Table L-1.5-1 for a summary.

Proposed thicknesses (uncorroded) for all examples:
shell = 0.688 (nominal for seamless examples)
hemi head = 0.375
2:1 head = 0.625
sump = 0.500 (nominal)
F and D head = 0.428 (min.)

In the corroded condition:
shell thickness nominal = 0.688 − 0.125 = 0.563
thickness minimum (smls)[1] = 0.688 × 0.875 − 0.125 = 0.477
inside radius = 12 − 0.563 = 11.437

hemi head thickness = 0.375 − 0.125 = 0.25
inside radius = 12 − 0.25 = 11.75

ellipsoidal head thickness = 0.625 − 0.125 = 0.500
inside diameter = 24 − 2(0.5) = 23.0

sump thickness nominal = 0.500 − 0.125 = 0.375
thickness minimum = 0.500 × 0.875 − 0.125 = 0.313
inside radius = 6.375 − 0.375 = 6.0

torispherical head thickness = 0.563 − 0.125 = 0.438
dish radius = 12.0 + 0.125 = 12.125
corner radius = 1.5 + 0.125 = 1.625

L-1.5.1 Given. This vessel for lethal service with full radiography required [UW-11(a)(1)] all joints including sump to head [UW-11(a)(4)].

L-1.5.1(a) Shell, Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)}$$

$$= 0.389 \text{ in.}$$

[1] See UG-16(d); manufacturing under tolerance specified in the material specification is $12\frac{1}{2}$%.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

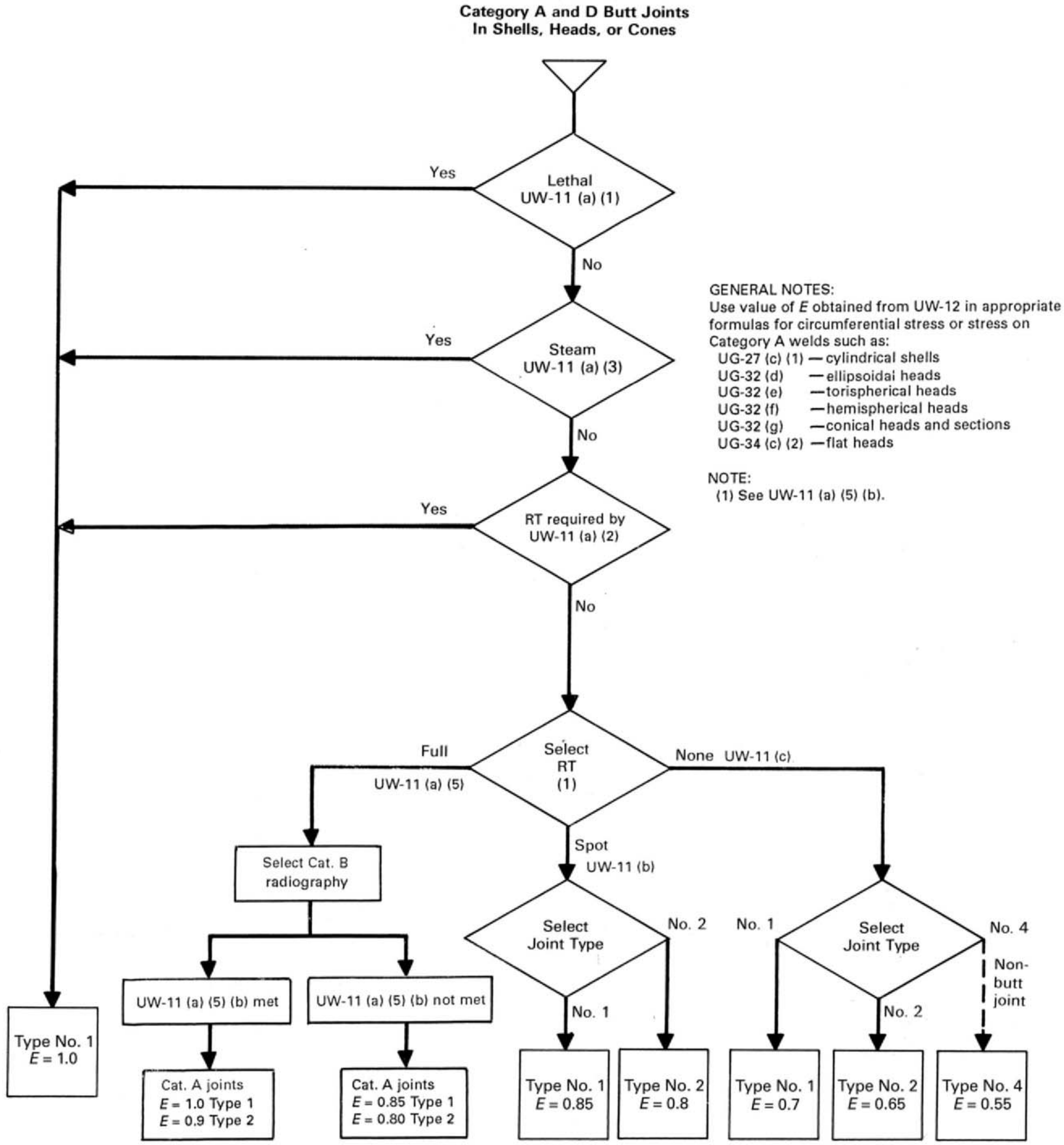
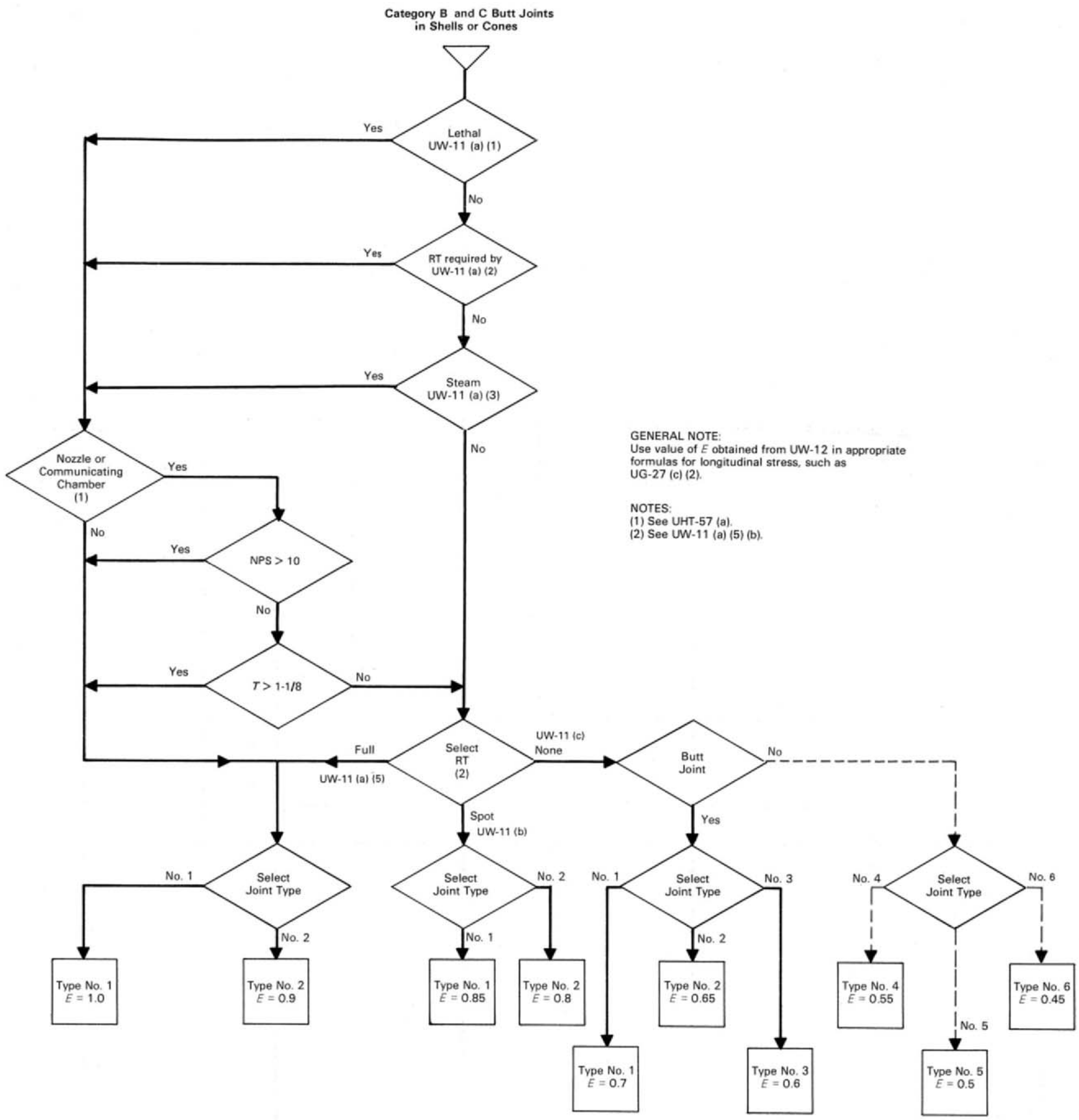


FIG. L-1.4-3 JOINT EFFICIENCIES FOR CATEGORIES A AND D WELDED JOINTS IN SHELLS, HEADS, OR CONES

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



GENERAL NOTE:
Use value of E obtained from UW-12 in appropriate formulas for longitudinal stress, such as UG-27 (c) (2).

NOTES:
(1) See UHT-57 (a).
(2) See UW-11 (a) (5) (b).

FIG. L-1.4-4 JOINT EFFICIENCIES FOR CATEGORIES B AND C WELDED JOINTS IN SHELLS OR CONES

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

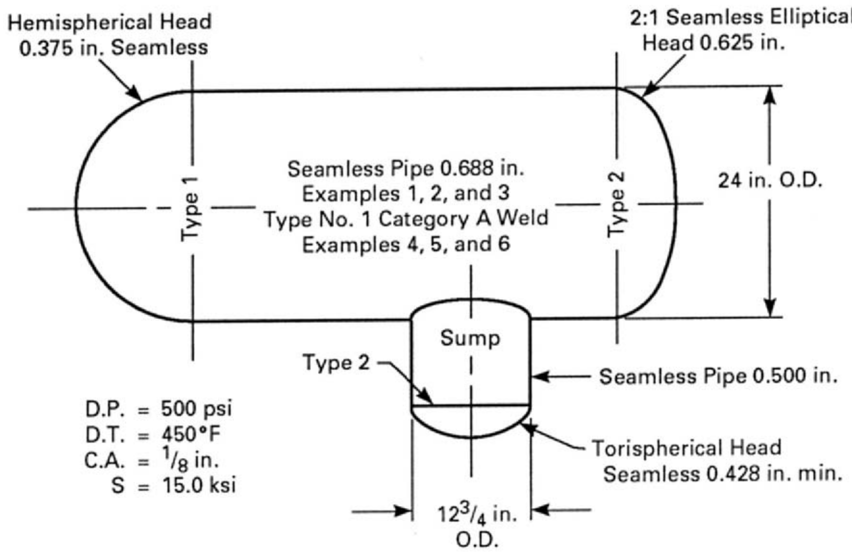


FIG. L-1.5-1 CONFIGURATION OF EXAMPLE VESSELS

L-1.5.1(b) Shell, Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.90$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{2(15{,}000)(0.90) + 0.4(500)}$$

$$= 0.210 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.1(c) Ellipsoidal Head, UG-32(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(23.0)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.385 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.1(d) Hemispherical Head, UG-32(f), Attached With Fully Radiographed Type No. 1 Butt Joint

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.196$$

L-1.5.1(e) Sump (Seamless Pipe) Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)} = 0.204$$

L-1.5.1(f) Sump (Seamless Pipe) Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2); Full Radiography Required [UW-11(a)(4)] on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.9$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.90) + 0.4(500)} = 0.110$$

L-1.5.1(g) Sump Torispherical Head, 1-4(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.0$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{12.125}{1.625} = 7.46;\ M = 1.44 \text{ (from Table 1-4.2)}$$

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(12.125)(1.44)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.292$$

L-1.5.2 Given. Vessel for general service with the following radiography selected:

Category A, head to shell: full

Category B, head to shell: spot, meets UW-11(a)(5)(b)

Category B, sump to head: none

L-1.5.2(a) Shell, Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1), Seamless Pipe

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)}$$

$$= 0.389 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.2(b) Shell, Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint With Spot

$$E = 0.80$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{2(15{,}000)(0.80) + 0.4(500)}$$

$$= 0.236 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE L-1.5-1
SUMMARY OF REQUIRED THICKNESSES AND JOINT EFFICIENCIES
Examples of L-1.5

		Example L-1.5.1	Example L-1.5.2	Example L-1.5.3	Example L-1.5.4	Example L-1.5.5	Example L-1.5.6
Type service		Lethal	General service	General service	Unfired steam	General service	General service
Shell seam		Seamless	Seamless	Seamless	Type No. 1	Type No. 1	Type No. 1
Radiography		Full	Category A full Category B SRT	None	Full	Category A full Category B SRT	Category A SRT Category B SRT
		Thickness Required / Joint Efficiency					
Vessel Part		*Tr/E*	*Tr/E*	*Tr/E*	*Tr/E*	*Tr/E*	*Tr/E*
Shell	Circumferential	0.389/1.0	0.389/1.0	0.459/0.85	0.389/1.0	0.389/1.0	0.459/0.85
	Longitudinal	0.210/0.9	0.236/0.80	0.290/0.65	0.210/0.90	0.236/0.80	0.236/0.80
Elliptical head		0.385/1.0	0.385/1.0	0.453/0.85	0.385/1.0	0.385/1.0	0.385.1.0
Hemispherical head		0.196/1.0	0.196/1.0	0.281/0.7 0.231/0.85	0.196/1.0	0.196/1.0	0.231/0.85
Sump shell	Circumferential	0.204/1.0	0.241/0.85	0.241/0.85	0.204/1.0	0.204/1.0	0.204/1.0
	Longitudinal	0.110/0.90	0.153/0.65	0.153/0.65	0.110/0.90	0.153/0.65	0.124/0.80
Sump torispherical head		0.290/1.0	0.341/0.85	0.341/0.85	0.290/1.0	0.290/1.0	0.290/1.0

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

L-1.5.2(c) Ellipsoidal Head, UG-32(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(23.0)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.385 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.2(d) Hemispherical Head, UG-32(f), on a Type No. 1 Fully Radiographed Joint

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.196$$

L-1.5.2(e) Sump Seamless Pipe Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 0.85 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{15{,}000(0.85) - 0.6(500)} = 0.241 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.2(f) Sump Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.65$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.65) + 0.4(500)} = 0.152$$

L-1.5.2(g) Sump Torispherical head, 1-4(d), Seamless

$$E = 0.85 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{12.125}{1.625} = 7.46;\ M = 1.44 \text{ (from Table 1-4.2)}$$

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(12.125)(1.44)}{2(15{,}000)(0.85) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.344 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.3 Given. Vessel for general service with visual examination only.

L-1.5.3(a) Shell, Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1), Seamless Pipe

$$E = 0.85 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{15{,}000(0.85) - 0.6(500)}$$

$$= 0.459 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.3(b) Shell, Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.65$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{2(15{,}000)(0.65) + 0.4(500)}$$

$$= 0.290 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.3(c) Ellipsoidal Head, UG-32(d), Seamless

$$E = 0.85 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(23.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.85) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.453 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.3(d) Hemispherical Head, UG-32(f), on a Type No. 1 Joint

$$E = 0.7$$

not good $$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

$$= \frac{500(11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(0.70) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.281 > 0.25$$

Head must either be thicker or attachment butt joint must be spot radiographed. Use same head with spot radiography.

$$E = 0.85$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500\ (11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(0.85) - 0.2(500)} = 0.231$$

L-1.5.3(e) Sump Seamless Pipe Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 0.85 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{15{,}000(0.85) - 0.6(500)} = 0.241 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.3(f) Sump Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.65$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.65) + 0.4(500)} = 0.152$$

L-1.5.3(g) Sump Torispherical Head, 1-4(d), Seamless

$$E = 0.85 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{12.125}{1.625} = 7.46;\ M = 1.44 \text{ (from Table 1-4.2)}$$

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(12.125)(1.44)}{2(15{,}000)(0.85) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.344 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.4 Given. Vessel for use as unfired steam boiler with full radiography required for all joints [UW-2(c) and UW-11(a)(3)] including sump to head joint [UW-11(a)(4)].

NOTE: In the following examples, shell has a Type No. 1 butt welded longitudinal joint.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Radiography: Full [UW-11(a)(3)] all joints including sump to head [UW-11(a)(4)].

L-1.5.4(a) Shell, Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)}$$

$$= 0.389 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.4(b) Shell, Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.9$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{2(15{,}000)(0.90) + 0.4(500)}$$

$$= 0.210 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.4(c) Ellipsoidal Head, UG-32(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(23.0)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.385 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.4(d) Hemispherical Head, UG-32(f), Type No. 1 Fully Radiographed Joint

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.196$$

L-1.5.4(e) Sump (Seamless Pipe) Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)} = 0.204$$

L-1.5.4(f) Sump (Seamless Pipe) Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), Joint

$$E = 0.9$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.90) + 0.4(500)} = 0.110$$

L-1.5.4(g) Sump Torispherical Head, 1-4(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.0$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{12.125}{1.625} = 7.46;\ M = 1.44 \text{ (from Table 1-4.2)}$$

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(12.125)(1.44)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.292$$

L-1.5.5 Given. Vessel for general service with the following radiography selected:

Category A, long joint: full
Category A, head to shell: full
Category B, head to shell: spot, meets UW-11(a)(5)(b)
Category B, sump to head: spot, meets UW-11(a)(5)(b)

L-1.5.5(a) Shell, Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1), Type No. 1 Fully Radiographed

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)}$$

$$= 0.389 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.5(b) Shell, Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint With Spot

$$E = 0.80$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{2(15{,}000)(0.80) + 0.4(500)}$$

$$= 0.236 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.5(c) Ellipsoidal Head, UG-32(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(23.0)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.385 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.5(d) Hemispherical Head, UG-32(f), on a Type No. 1 Fully Radiographed Joint

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.196$$

L-1.5.5(e) Sump Seamless Pipe Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 1.00 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)} = 0.204 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.5(f) Sump Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.65$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.65) + 0.4(500)} = 0.152$$

L-1.5.5(g) Sump Torispherical Head, 1-4(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.00 \text{ [UW-12(d)]}$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{12.125}{1.625} = 7.46;\ M = 1.44 \text{ (from Table 1-4.2)}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P}$$

$$= \frac{500(12.125)(1.44)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.292 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.6 Given. Vessel for general service with spot radiography selected for all joints. The requirements of UW-11(a)(5)(b) have been met.

L-1.5.6(a) Shell, Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 0.85$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{15{,}000(0.85) - 0.6(500)}$$

$$= 0.459 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.6(b) Shell, Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.80$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(11.437)}{2(15{,}000)(0.8) + 0.4(500)}$$

$$= 0.236 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.6(c) Ellipsoidal Head, UG-32(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.00$$

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(23.0)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)}$$

$$= 0.385 \text{ in.}$$

L-1.5.6(d) Hemispherical Head, UG-32(f), on a Type No. 1 Joint

$$E = 0.85$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(11.75)}{2(15{,}000)(0.85) - 0.2(500)} = 0.231$$

L-1.5.6(e) Sump Seamless Pipe Circumferential Stress, UG-27(c)(1)

$$E = 1.0$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{15{,}000(1.0) - 0.6(500)} = 0.204$$

L-1.5.6(f) Sump Longitudinal Stress, UG-27(c)(2), on a Type No. 2 Joint

$$E = 0.8$$

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} = \frac{500(6.0)}{2(15{,}000)(0.8) + 0.4(500)} = 0.124$$

L-1.5.6(g) Sump Torispherical Head, 1-4(d), Seamless

$$E = 1.0$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{12.125}{1.625} = 7.46; M = 1.44 \text{ (from Table 1-4.2)}$$

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{500(12.125)(1.44)}{2(15{,}000)(1.0) - 0.2(500)} = 0.292$$

L-2 THICKNESS CALCULATION FOR SHELLS UNDER INTERNAL PRESSURE WITH SUPPLEMENTAL LOADINGS

L-2.1 Example of the Use of UG-27(c) for Vertical Vessels

L-2.1.1 Given. A process column is to be fabricated with several shell sections. The vessel is supported at the bottom head to shell joint. The longitudinal (Category A) welds in each shell section are Type No. 1. The circumferential welds (Category B) between the shell courses are Type No. 2. The longitudinal welds are spot radiographed in accordance with UW-52. The circumferential welds are not radiographed. Given the following parameters, determine the required shell thickness at the bottom of the shell:

vessel I. D. = 24 in.
vessel height H = 43 ft
internal design pressure, P = 200 psi
design temperature = 200°F
stress value S = 13,800 psi
weight of vessel W_v = 3,200 lb
density of contents g = 70 lbf/ft^3
weight of contents W_c = 9,500 lb
joint efficiency (circumferential stress) E_c = 0.85
joint efficiency (longitudinal stress) E_ℓ = 0.65
bending moment due to wind load M_b = 665,000 in.-lbf
material chart for compressive stress = Fig. CS-2 in Section II, Part D

L-2.1.2 Solution. Three cases must be investigated to determine the minimum shell thickness:

(1) Tensile Stress

(a) circumferential [UG-27(c)(1)];

(b) longitudinal [UG-27(c)(2)].

(2) Compressive Stress [UG-23(b)]

Case (1)(a) Circumferential Tensile Stress. The following equation accounts for the stress due to internal pressure plus stress imposed due to the static head of the contents of the vessel:

$$R = D/2$$
$$= 12 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$t_1 = \frac{PR}{SE_c - 0.6P} + \frac{\frac{Hg}{144}R}{SE_c - 0.6\left(\frac{Hg}{144}\right)}$$
$$= 0.228 \text{ in.}$$

Case (1)(b) Longitudinal Tensile Stress. The general form of the equation for thickness due to longitudinal stress is

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE_\ell + 0.4P} - \frac{W_v + W_c}{\pi DSE_\ell} \pm \frac{M}{\pi R^2 SE_\ell}$$

In the case under investigation, the most severe condition at the bottom of the shell occurs under full pressure with the vessel full of contents. Above the support line, $W_c = 0$, and per UG-23(d) let the stress value for wind loadings be $S_{o\ell} = S \times 1.2$. Using the general equation:

$$t_{1b} = \frac{PR}{2S_{o\ell}E_\ell + 0.4P} + \frac{M_b}{\pi R^2 S_{o\ell}E_\ell} - \frac{W_v + W_c}{\pi DS_{o\ell}E_\ell}$$
$$= 0.244 \text{ in.}$$

NOTE: Joint efficiency of circumferential weld applies to all three terms of the above equation when the total resultant stress is tensile.

Case (2) Compressive Stress. The general equation is the same as for longitudinal tensile stress; however, for the case under investigation, the most severe condition occurs with no pressure and the vessel full of contents.

Check allowable compressive stress per UG-23(b).

$$R_o = R + t_{1b}$$
$$= 12.244 \text{ in.}$$

$$A = \frac{0.125}{R_o / t_{1b}} = 0.00249$$

$$B = 15{,}500 > S = 13{,}800 \text{ psi}$$

Per UG-23(d), $S_{o\ell} = S \times 1.2 = 16{,}560$ psi.

For all butt welds when investigating longitudinal compression $E_\ell = 1.0$; see UG-23(b).

The equation becomes

$$t = \frac{M_b}{\pi R^2 S_{o\ell}E_\ell} \pm \frac{W_v}{\pi DS_{o\ell}E_\ell}$$

When the mathematical operator is plus, let t become

$$t_{2p} = \frac{M_b}{\pi R^2 S_{o\ell}E_\ell} + \frac{W_v}{\pi DS_{o\ell}E_\ell}$$
$$= 0.091 \text{ in.}$$

and when the mathematical operator is minus, let t become

$$t_{2m} = \frac{M_b}{\pi R^2 S_{o\ell}E_\ell} - \frac{W_v}{\pi DS_{o\ell}E_\ell}$$
$$= 0.086 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, the required design thickness (exclusive of corrosion allowance) is $t_{1b} = 0.232$ in. governed by longitudinal tensile stress.

L-2.2 Example of the Use of UG-27(c) for Horizontal Vessels

L-2.2.1 Given. A horizontal vessel 60 ft long fabricated using 6 rings 10 ft long. The vessel is supported by 120 deg. saddles located 2 ft 6 in. from each head joint. The heads are ellipsoidal attached using Type No. 2 butt joints. The shell courses have Type No. 1 longitudinal joints which are spot radiographed in accordance with UW-52. The circumferential welds joining the courses are Type No. 2 with no radiography. Given the following parameters, determine the required shell thickness.

vessel O.D. = 120 in.
internal design pressure P including static head = 60 psi
design temperature = 100°F
shell thickness $t = 0.3125$ in.
shell length $L = 720$ in.
joint efficiency (long seams) = 0.85
joint efficiency (circumferential seams) = 0.65
weight of vessel $W = 30{,}000$ lb
weight of contents $W_c = 320{,}000$ lb
total weight = 350,000 lb
reaction at each saddle $Q = 175{,}000$ lb
head depth $H = 30$ in.
saddle to tangent line $A = 30$ in.
material to chart for compressive stress = Fig. CS-2 in Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D

L-2.2.2 Solution. Here again three cases must be investigated:

(1) Circumferential stress due to internal pressure.

(2) Longitudinal tensile stress due to bending must be added to the longitudinal stress due to internal pressure.

(3) Longitudinal compressive stress due to bending.

Case 1 Circumferential Tensile Stress. In this horizontal vessel, the equation in UG-27(c)(1) is used.

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{60(59.6875)}{13{,}800(0.85) - 0.6(60)} = 0.306 \text{ in.}$$

Case 2 Longitudinal Tensile Stress. The following equation combines the longitudinal tensile stress due to pressure with the longitudinal tensile stress due to bending at the midpoint between the saddles.[2]

[2] See "Stresses in Large Cylindrical Pressure Vessels on Two Saddle Supports," p. 959, *Pressure Vessels and Piping: Design and Analysis, A Decade of Progress, Volume Two,* ASME, New York.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$t = \frac{PR}{2SE + 0.4P} \pm \frac{QL}{4\,\pi\,R^2\,SE} \times \left[\frac{1 + \frac{2(R^2 - H^2)}{L^2}}{1 + \frac{4H}{3L}} - \frac{4A}{L} \right]$$

$$= \frac{60(59.6875)}{2(13{,}800)(0.65) + 0.4(60)} \pm \frac{175{,}000(720)}{4\,\pi\,(59.6875)^2(13{,}800)(0.65)} \times \left[\frac{1 + \frac{2(59.6875^2 - 30^2)}{720^2}}{1 + \frac{4(30)}{3(720)}} - \frac{4(30)}{720} \right]$$

$$= 0.199 \pm 0.31376\ (0.79043)$$

$$= 0.199 \pm 0.248 = 0.447 \text{ in.}$$

This is greater than actual thickness so we must either thicken the shell or increase the efficiency of the welded joint by changing the weld type or the amount of radiography.

Action. Spot radiograph the circumferential joint.

NOTE: The quantity in brackets will remain the same. Joint efficiency will change to 0.8.

$$t = \frac{60(59.6875)}{2(13{,}800)(0.8) + 0.4(60)} + \frac{175{,}000(720)}{4\,\pi\,(59.6875)^2(13{,}800)(0.8)}\ (0.79043)$$

$$= 0.162 + 0.255\ (0.79043)$$

$$= 0.162 + 0.202 = 0.364 \text{ in.}$$

Still not good and by inspection it can be seen that the joint efficiency will need to be greater than 0.9.

Action. Change circumferential seam to Type No. 1 fully radiographed.

$$t = \frac{60(59.6875)}{2(13{,}800)(1.0) + 0.4(60)} + \frac{175{,}000(720)}{4\,\pi\,(59.6875)^2(13{,}800)(1.0)}\ (0.79043)$$

$$= 0.130 + 0.204\ (0.79043)$$

$$= 0.130 + 0.161 = 0.291 \text{ in. Good}$$

Conclusion. Circumferential joint at center of vessel must be Type No. 1 fully radiographed. This is at the point of maximum positive moment. Maximum negative moment is at supports but there is no joint there. Other circumferential joint must be investigated using moment at the joint in calculating the combined stresses. It should be noted that many other areas of stress due to saddle loadings exist and should be investigated (see Appendix G).

Case 3 Longitudinal Compressive Stress. First determine the allowable compressive stress [see UG-23(b)]

$$A = \frac{0.125}{R_o/t} = \frac{0.125}{60/0.3125} = 0.000651$$

$$B = AE/2$$

where

E = modulus of elasticity
B = 9446 psi (from Fig. CS-2)

The general equation for thickness is the same as for longitudinal tensile stress except the pressure portion drops out since the most severe condition occurs when there is no pressure in the vessel.

$$t = \frac{QL}{4\,\pi\,R^2\,SE} \left[\frac{1 + \frac{2(R^2 - H^2)}{L^2}}{1 + \frac{4H}{3L}} - \frac{4A}{L} \right]$$

$$= \frac{175{,}000(720)}{4\,\pi\,(59.6875)^2(9446)(1.0)} \times \left[\frac{1 + \frac{2(59.6875^2 - 30^2)}{720^2}}{1 + \frac{4(30)}{3(720)}} - \frac{4(30)}{720} \right]$$

$$= 0.29795\ (0.79043) = 0.236 \text{ in.}$$

L-2.3 Examples of the Use of 1-5 for Cone-to-Cylinder Juncture

L-2.3.1 Example 1. Determine the required thickness of a conical reducer for the following conditions:

$P = 50$ psi; $T = 650$°F; $R_L = 100$ in.; $R_s = 50$ in.; $\alpha = 30$ deg ($\tan \alpha = 0.577$, $\cos \alpha = 0.866$); $S_c = 17{,}500$ psi; $E_2 = 0.85$; $E_c = 30 \times 10^6$ psi.

Substitute in Eq. (5), 1-4(e) with $S = S_c$, $E = E_2$, and $D = 2R_L$ for the large end:

$$t_r = \frac{50 \times 2 \times 100}{2 \times 0.866\ (17{,}500 \times 0.85 - 0.6 \times 50)} = 0.389 \text{ in.}$$

For the small end:

$$t_r = \frac{50 \times 2 \times 50}{2 \times 0.866(17{,}500 \times 0.85 - 0.6 \times 50)}$$

$$= 0.195 \text{ in.}$$

Use $t_c = 0.438$ in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-2.3.2 Example 2. The conical reducer in Example 1 is to be attached to cylindrical shells at each end for the following conditions:

S_s = 17,500 psi; E_1 = 1.0; $E_s = 30 \times 10^6$ psi; S_r = 14,500 psi; $E_r = 30 \times 10^6$ psi; cylinder at large end: t_s = 0.313 in., t = 0.286 in.; cylinder at small end: t_s = 0.188 in., t = 0.143 in. The resulting axial load due to wind and dead load is in tension as follows: f_1 = 250 lb/in., f_2 = 62.5 lb/in.

Determine the required reinforcement at the cylinder-to-cone juncture.

L-2.3.2(a) At Large Cylinder-to-Cone Juncture

$$P/S_sE_1 = 50/17{,}500 \times 1.0 = 0.00286$$

Entering Table 1-5.1, determine Δ = 17.58. Since $\alpha > \Delta$, reinforcement is required at the juncture. A reinforcement ring is to be installed on the shell.

$$y = S_sE_s = 17{,}500 \times 30 \times 10^6$$

$$k = y/S_rE_r = 17{,}500 \times 30 \times 10^6/14{,}500 \times 30 \times 10^6$$
$$= 1.21$$

$$Q_L = PR_L/2 + f_1 = 50 \times 100/2 + 250 = 2{,}750 \text{ lb/in.}$$

Area required in reinforcement ring from Eq. (1):

$$A_{rL} = \frac{k\,Q_LR_L}{S_sE_1}\left(1 - \frac{\Delta}{\alpha}\right)\tan\alpha$$
$$= \frac{1.21 \times 2750 \times 100}{17{,}500 \times 1.0}\left(1 - \frac{17.58}{30}\right)(0.577)$$
$$= 4.54 \text{ in.}^2$$

Effective area of reinforcement in the cone and cylinder is:

$$A_{eL} = (t_s - t)\sqrt{R_Lt_s} + (t_c - t_r)\sqrt{R_Lt_c/\cos\alpha}$$
$$= (0.313 - 0.286)\sqrt{100 \times 0.313}$$
$$+ (0.438 - 0.389)\sqrt{100 \times 0.438/0.866}$$
$$= 0.500 \text{ in.}^2$$

Thus, additional area of reinforcement shall be 4.54 − 0.500 = 4.04 in.^{2}

L-2.3.2(b) At Small Cylinder-to-Cone Juncture

$$P/S_sE_1 = 0.00286$$

Entering Table 1-5.2, determine Δ = 4.57. Since $\alpha > \Delta$, reinforcement at the juncture is required. A reinforcement ring is to be installed on the shell.

$$k = 1.21$$

$$Q_s = PR_s/2 + f_2 = 50 \times 50/2 + 62.5 = 1{,}312.5 \text{ lb/in.}$$

Area required in reinforcement ring from Eq. (3):

$$A_{rs} = \frac{kQ_sR_s}{S_sE_1}\left(1 - \frac{\Delta}{\alpha}\right)\tan\alpha$$
$$= \frac{1.21 \times 1312.5 \times 50}{17{,}500 \times 1.0}\left(1 - \frac{4.57}{30}\right)(0.577)$$
$$= 2.22 \text{ in.}^2$$

Effective area of reinforcement in the cone and cylinder is

$$A_{es} = 0.78\sqrt{R_st_s}[(t_s - t) + (t_c - t_r)/\cos\alpha]$$
$$= 0.78\sqrt{50 \times 0.188}$$
$$\times [(0.188 - 0.143) + (0.438 - 0.195)/\cos 30 \text{ deg}]$$
$$= 0.78 \text{ in.}^2$$

Thus, additional area of reinforcement shall be 2.22 − 0.78 = 1.44 in.^{2}

L-2.3.3 Example 3. A conical head is to be attached to the shell with a knuckle for the following conditions:

D = 200 in.; r = 20 in.; α = 30 deg; P = 50 psi; S_c = 13,800 psi; E_2 = 0.80.

Find the thickness of the knuckle and the cone. [See UG-32(g).]

Required thickness of the knuckle:

The inside diameter of the cone at the point tangent to the knuckle is

$$D_i = 200 - 2 \times 20(1 - 0.866) = 194.64 \text{ in.}$$

$$L = \frac{D_i}{2\cos\alpha} = \frac{194.64}{2 \times 0.866} = 112 \text{ in.}$$

$$\frac{L}{r} = \frac{112}{20} = 5.60$$

and from Table 1-4.2, M = 1.34. Using Formula (3) in 1-4(d),

$$t = \frac{PLM}{2SE - 0.2P}$$
$$= \frac{50 \times 112 \times 1.34}{2 \times 13{,}800 \times 0.80 - 0.2 \times 50} = 0.340 \text{ in.}$$

Required thickness of cone:

$$D = D_i = 194.64 \text{ in.};\ \cos\alpha = 0.866$$

Using Formula (5) in 1-4(e):

$$t = \frac{PD}{2\cos\alpha\,(SE - 0.6P)}$$
$$= \frac{50 \times 194.64}{2 \times 0.866\,(13{,}800 \times 0.80 - 0.6 \times 50)}$$
$$= 0.510 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

VESSELS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

NOTE: In Subpart 3 of Section II, Part D, the lines on Fig. Gexpress a geometrical relationship between L/D_o and D_o/t for cylindrical shells and tubes which is common for all materials. This chart is used only for determining the factor A when factor A is not obtained by formula in the special case when $D_o/t < 10$.

The remaining charts in Subpart 3 are for specific material or classes of materials and represent pseudo stress–strain diagrams containing suitable factors of safety relative both to plastic flow and elastic collapse.

L-3

L-3.1 Cylindrical Shell Under External Pressure

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-28(c)]

L-3.1.1 Given. Fractionating tower 14 ft I.D. by 21 ft long, bend line to bend line, fitted with fractionating trays, and designed for an external design pressure of 15 psi at 700°F. The tower to be constructed of SA-285 Gr. C Carbon Steel. Design length is 39 in.

L-3.1.2 Required. Shell thickness t

L-3.1.3 Solution

Step 1. Assume a thickness $t = 0.3125$ in. Assumed outside diameter $D_o = 168.625$ in.

$$\frac{L}{D_o} = \frac{39}{168.625} = 0.231$$

$$\frac{D_o}{t} = \frac{168.625}{0.3125} = 540$$

Steps 2, 3. Enter Fig. G at the value of$L/D_o = 0.231$; move horizontally to the D_o/t line of 540 and read the value A of 0.0005.

Step 4, 5. Enter Fig. CS-2 at the value of $A = 0.0005$ and move vertically to the material line for 700°F. Move horizontally and read B value of 6100 on ordinate.

Step 6. The maximum allowable external working pressure for the assumed shell thickness of 0.3125 in. is

$$P_a = \frac{4B}{3(D_o/t)} = \frac{4(6,100)}{3(540)} = 15.1 \text{ psi}$$

Since P_a is greater than the external designpressure P of 15 psi, the assumed thickness is satisfactory.

L-3.2 Spherical Shell Under External Pressure

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-28(d)]

L-3.2.1 Given. A spherical vessel having an inside diameter of 72 in., made of an aluminum alloy conforming to SB-209 Alloy 3003-0 to withstand an external design pressure of 20 psi at 100°F.

L-3.2.2 Required. Shell thickness t

L-3.2.3 Solution

Step 1. Assume a shell thickness $t = 0.50$ in. Then

$$R_o = \frac{72}{2} + 0.5 = 36.5$$

$$A = \frac{0.125}{R_o/t} = \frac{0.125}{36.5/0.50} = 0.00171$$

Steps 2, 3. Enter Fig. NFA-1 at $A = 0.00171$ and move vertically to the material line of 100°F; move horizontally and read B value of 1780.

Step 4. The maximum allowable external working pressure for the assumed shell thickness of 0.50 in. is:

$$P_a = \frac{B}{R_o/t} = \frac{1780}{36.5/0.5} = 24.4 \text{ psi}$$

Since P_a is greater than the external design pressure P of 20 psi, the assumed shell thickness of 0.50 in. is satisfactory.

L-3.3 Cone-to-Cylinder Juncture Under External Pressure

(An Example of the Use of the Rules in 1-8)

Determine the required reinforcement of a cone-to-cylinder juncture under external pressure and the design of a stiffening ring at the juncture such that the juncture can be considered as a line of support.

L-3.3.1 Design Data

External design pressure $P = 50$ psi, design temperature $T = 650$°F, $S_s = 17.5$ ksi, $E_1 = 0.85$, $E_s = 25.3 \times 10^6$ psi.

Cylinder at large end of cone
- inside diameter $D = 200$ in.
- minimum required thickness $t = 1.22$ in.
- nominal thickness $t_s = 1.25$ in.

Cylinder at small end of cone
- inside diameter $D = 50$ in.
- minimum required thickness $t = 0.330$ in.
- nominal thickness $t_s = 0.375$ in.

Cone section
- minimum required thickness:
  - $t_r = 1.22$ in. at the large end
  - $t_r = 0.55$ in. at the small end
- nominal thickness $t_c = 1.25$ in.
- axial length $L = 130$ in.
- cone half-angle $\alpha = 30$ deg
- $S_c = 15.0$ ksi, $E_2 = 0.85$, $E_c = 25.3 \times 10^6$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Stiffening ring

$$S_r = 14.5 \text{ ksi}, \quad E_r = 25.3 \times 10^6 \text{ psi}$$

L-3.3.2 Solution

$$D_L = D + 2t_s = 200 + 2(1.25) = 202.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$D_s = D + 2t_s = 50 + 2(0.375) = 50.75 \text{ in.}$$

$$L_c = \sqrt{(130)^2 + (101.25 - 25.375)^2} = 150.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$L_L = 250.0 \text{ in.}, \quad L_S = 75.0 \text{ in.}$$

$f_1 = 250$ lb/in. and $f_2 = 62.5$ lb/in. are in compression

$$y = S_sE_s = 17{,}500 \times 25.3 \times 10^6$$

$$k = y/S_rE_r$$

$$= 17{,}500 \times 25.3 \times 10^6/14{,}500 \times 25.3 \times 10^6$$

$$= 1.21$$

L-3.3.2(a) At Large Cylinder-to-Cone Juncture. Assume $A_s = 0$.

$$A_{TL} = L_Lt_s/2 + L_ct_c/2 + A_s$$

$$= 250\,(1.25)/2 + 150.5(1.25)/2 + 0$$

$$= 250 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$M = -(R_L \tan\alpha)/2$$

$$+ L_L/2 + (R_L^2 - R_S^2)/(3R_L \tan\alpha)$$

$$= -101.25 \times 0.577/2 + 250/2$$

$$+ (101.25^2 - 25.375^2)/(3 \times 101.25 \times 0.577)$$

$$= -29.25 + 125.0 + 54.82$$

$$= 150.6$$

$$F_L = PM + f_1 \tan\alpha$$

$$= 50(150.6) + 250 \times 0.577$$

$$= 7{,}530 + 144.3$$

$$= 7{,}670$$

$$B = \tfrac{3}{4}\, F_LD_L/A_{TL} = \tfrac{3}{4}\,(7{,}670)\,(202.5)/250 = 4{,}660$$

$$A = 0.00037 \text{ from Fig. CS-2}$$

$$I'_s = AD_L^2A_{TL}/10.9 = 0.00037(202.5)^2 \times (250)/10.9$$

$$= 348 \text{ in.}^4$$

Try a WT8 × 18 standard tee with the stem welded to the shell-to-cone juncture on the shell as shown in Fig. L-3.3.2 sketch (a).

The calculated I' for the combined ring-shell-cone cross section is

$$I' = 375 \text{ in.}^4$$

Consequently, $I' > I'_s$.

Effective area of reinforcement in the cone and cylinder is:

$$A_{eL} = 0.55\sqrt{D_Lt_s}(t_s + t_c\ /\cos\alpha)$$

$$= 0.55\sqrt{202.5 \times 1.25}$$

$$\times\ (1.25 + 1.25/\cos\ 30°)$$

$$= 23.57 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{Total area available} = A_{eL} + \text{area of stiffening ring}$$

$$= 23.57 + 5.28$$

$$= 28.9 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$Q_L = PR_L/2 + f_1 = 2781 \text{ lb/in.}$$

$$P/S_sE_1 = 50/(17{,}500 \times 0.85) = 0.0034$$

From Table 1-8.1, $\Delta = 5.93$.

$$A_{rL} = \frac{kQ_LR_L \tan\alpha}{S_sE_1}\left[1 - \tfrac{1}{4}\left(\frac{PR_L - Q_L}{Q_L}\right)\frac{\Delta}{\alpha}\right]$$

$$= \frac{1.21 \times 2781 \times 101.25 \times 0.577}{17{,}500 \times 0.85}$$

$$\times \left[1 - \tfrac{1}{4}\left(\frac{50 \times 101.25 - 2781}{2781}\right)\frac{5.93}{30}\right]$$

$$= 12.7 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{Total area} > A_{rL}$$

$$28.9 > 12.7 \text{ in.}^2$$

Since reinforcement area and moment of inertia requirements have been met, use WT8 × 18 as the stiffening ring at the large cylinder-to-cone juncture.

L-3.3.2(b) At Small Cylinder-to-Cone Juncture. Assume $A_s = 0$, calculate

$$A_{TS} = L_st_s/2 + L_ct_c/2 + A_s$$

$$= 75 \times 0.375/2 + 150.5 \times 1.25/2 + 0$$

$$= 108 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$N = R_s \tan\alpha/2 + L_s/2 + (R_L^2 - R_s^2)/(6R_s \tan\alpha)$$

$$= \frac{25.375 \times 0.577}{2} + \frac{75}{2} + \frac{(101.25)^2 - (25.375)^2}{6 \times 25.375 \times 0.577}$$

$$= 154.2$$

$$F_s = PN + f_2 \tan\alpha$$

$$= 50 \times 154.2 + 62.5 \times 0.577$$

$$= 7{,}745$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

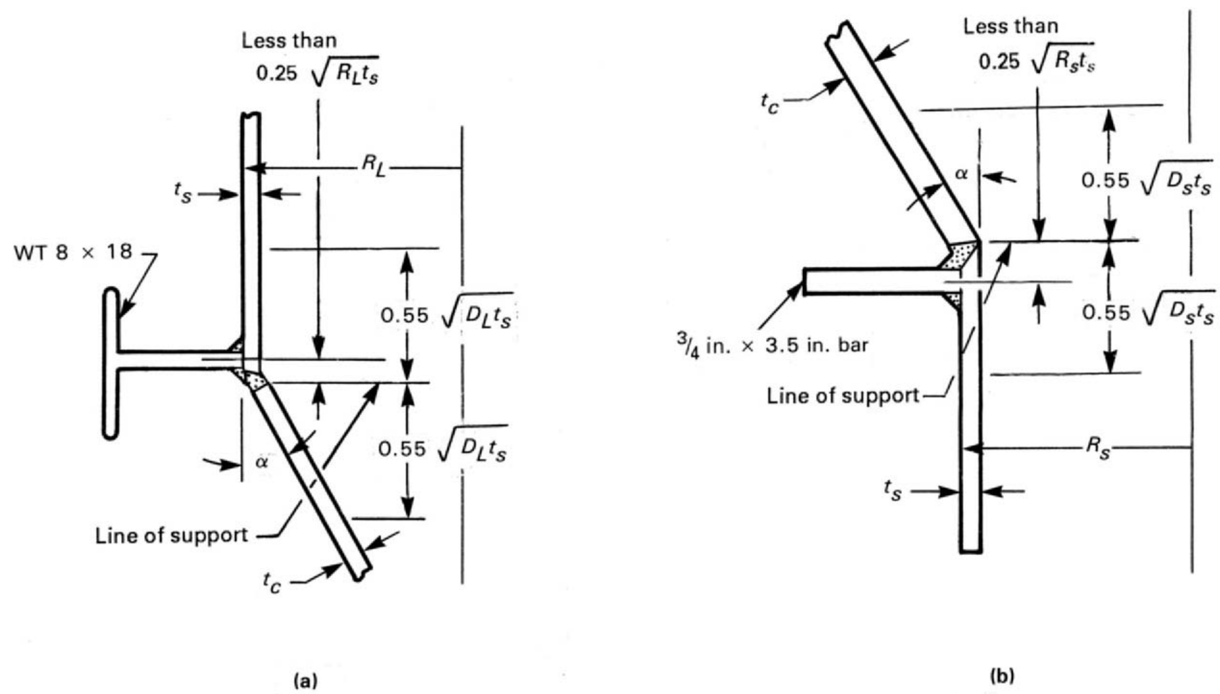


FIG. L-3.3.2

$$B = \tfrac{3}{4} F_s D_s / A_{TS}$$

$$= \tfrac{3}{4} \times 7745 \times 50.75/108$$

$$= 2730$$

$$A = 0.00022 \text{ from Fig. CS-2}$$

Utilizing the combined ring-shell-cone cross section requires $I' \geq I'_s$.

$$I'_s = AD_s^2 A_{TS}/10.9$$

$$= 0.00022 \times (50.75^2) \times 108/10.9$$

$$= 5.61 \text{ in.}^4$$

Try a $\tfrac{3}{4}$ in. × 3.5 in. bar welded to the shell-to-cone juncture on the shell side as shown in Fig L-3.3.2 sketch (b).

The calculated I' for the combined ring-shell-cone cross section is

$$I' = 7.10 \text{ in.}^4$$

Consequently, $I' > I'_s$.

$$A_{es} = 0.55\sqrt{D_s t_s}[(t_s - t) + (t_c - t_r)\ /\cos\ \alpha]$$

$$= 0.55\sqrt{50.75 \times 0.375}$$

$$\times\ [(0.375 - 0.330) + (1.25 - 0.55)/\cos\ 30\ \text{deg}]$$

$$= 2.05 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{Total area available} = A_{es} + \text{area of stiffening ring}$$

$$= 2.05 + 2.63$$

$$= 4.68 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$Q_s = PR_s/2 + f_2$$

$$= 50 \times 25.375/2 + 62.5$$

$$= 696.9 \text{ lb/in.}$$

$$A_{rs} = kQ_s R_s \tan\ \alpha / S_s E_1$$

$$= 1.21 \times 696.9$$

$$\times\ 25.375 \times 0.577/(17{,}500 \times 1.0)$$

$$= 0.71 \text{ in.}^2$$

$$\text{Total area} > A_{rs}$$

$$4.68 > 0.71 \text{ in.}^2$$

Since reinforcement area and moment of inertia requirement have been met, use a $\tfrac{3}{4}$ in. × 3.5 in. bar as the stiffening ring at the small cylinder-to-cone juncture.

L-4 MAXIMUM OUT-OF-ROUNDNESS PERMITTED FOR VESSELS UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-80(b)]

L-4.1 Given

The same vessel considered in L-3.1.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-4.2 Required

Maximum out-of-roundness permitted.

L-4.3 Solution

By the requirement in UG-80(b)(1), the difference between the maximum diameter D_{max} and the minimum diameter D_{min} (see Fig. UG-80.2) in any plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the vessel shall not exceed 1% of the nominal diameter; that is, $0.01 \times 168 = 1.68$ in.

By the requirement in UG-80(b)(2) the maximum deviation from a circular form of $D_o/t = 540$ and $L/D_o = 0.231$, as determined from Fig. UG-80.1 is

$$e = 0.87t = 0.87 \times 0.3125 = 0.272 \text{ in.}$$

From Fig. UG-29.2, for the same values of D_o/t and L/D_o the arc length is found to be $0.053 D_o$. The reference chord then becomes

$$2 \times 0.053 \times 168.625 = 17.87 \text{ in.}$$

Thus, in a chord length of 17.87 in., the maximum plus-or-minus deviation from the true circular form shall not exceed 0.272 in.

L-5 DESIGN OF CIRCUMFERENTIAL STIFFENING RING AND ATTACHMENT WELD FOR A CYLINDRICAL SHELL UNDER EXTERNAL PRESSURE

[An example of the rules in UG-29(a) and UG-30(e)]

L-5.1 Given

outside diameter $D_o = 169$ in.
shell thickness $t = 0.3125$ in.
support distance $L_s = 40$ in.
external design pressure $P = 15$ psi
design temperature = 700°F
material and allowable stress at 700°F:
shell, SA-285 Gr. C; $S = 14.3$ ksi
ring, SA-36; $S = 15.6$ ksi
external pressure chart for both materials is CS-2

L-5.2 Required

Check stiffener per UG-29(a). Check attachment weld per UG-30(e).

L-5.3 Solution

To illustrate the procedure, a channel section is selected and attached to the shell by the channel legs. The channel selected is an American Standard Channel Member (C-6 × 8.2) having a value $A_s = 2.39$ sq in. The quantity

$$1.1\sqrt{D_o t} = 1.1\sqrt{(169)(0.3125)} = 8 \text{ in.}$$

using this value, the combined ring-shell moment of inertia is approximately 3 in.^{4}

The factor B [UG-29(a)] is

$$B = \tfrac{3}{4}\left[\frac{PD_o}{t + A_S/L_S}\right] = 0.75\left[\frac{(15)(169)}{0.3125 + (2.39/40)}\right] = 5{,}107$$

Enter the right-hand side of Fig. CS-2 at a value $B = 5{,}107$ and move horizontally to the left to the material line for 700°F. Move vertically downwards and read value $A = 0.0004$. Then,

$$I_s' = \frac{D_O^2 L_S (t + A_S/L_S)A}{10.9} = \frac{(169)^2(40)\left(0.3125 + \frac{2.39}{40}\right)(0.0004)}{10.9} = 15.61 \text{ in.}^4$$

This required value of the moment of inertia $I_s' = 15.61$ in.^{4} is larger than provided by the channel section selected; therefore, a new shape must be selected, or the method of attaching the channel to the shell can be changed. For illustration purposes, a bar of rectangular cross section is chosen, 2 in. × 3.75 in. This shape provides an $A_S = 7.50$ sq in. With the 3.75 in. dimension in the radial direction, the combined ring-shell moment of inertia is 16.57 in.^{4} Then,

$$B = \frac{0.75(15)(169)}{0.3125 + (7.5/40)} = 3{,}803$$

Enter the right-hand side of Fig. CS-2 at a value $B = 3{,}803$ and move horizontally to the left to the material line for 700°F. Move vertically downwards and read value $A = 0.00031$. Then,

$$I_S' = \frac{(169)^2(40)\left(0.3125 + \frac{7.5}{40}\right)(0.00031)}{10.9} = 16.25 \text{ in.}^4$$

The required moment of inertia of 16.25 in.^{4} for the combined ring-shell section is less than the value of 16.57 in.^{4} provided by the shell-ring section with a 2 in. × 3.75 in. bar; therefore, this stiffening ring is satisfactory.

Attachment welds, UG-30(e):

Radial pressure load $PL_s = 15 \times 40 = 600$ lb/in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

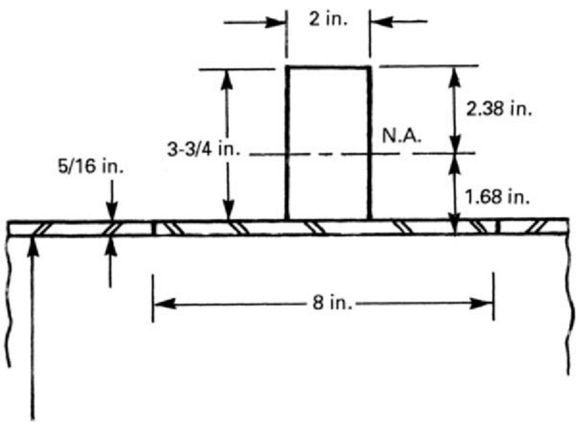


FIG. L-5.3

Radial shear load 0.01 $PL_sD_o = 0.01 \times 15 \times 40 \times 169 = 1{,}014$ lb

There are no external design loads to be carried by the stiffener. Weld shear flow due to radial shear load equals VQ/I_s where Q is the first moment of area, and V is the radial shear load.

$$I_s = 16.57 \text{ in.}^4 \quad A_s = 7.50 \text{ in.}^2$$

The value of Q is obtained from Fig. L-5.3 as

$$Q = 8.0 \times 0.3125(1.68 - 0.3125/2) = 3.81 \text{ in.}^3$$

$$VQ/I_s = 1014 \times 3.81/16.57 = 233 \text{ lb/in.}$$

$$\text{combined weld load} = (600^2 + 233^2)^{1/2} = 644 \text{ lb/in.}$$

Fillet weld stress is based on weaker of materials joined. In this case, SA-285 Gr. C. Allowable fillet weld stress = 0.55S [see UW-18(d)]. The allowable fillet weld stress = 0.55 × 14.3 = 7.865 ksi. Try the minimum fillet weld leg size of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. [see UG-30(f)]. The maximum clear spacing between intermittent welds on each side of the ring = $8t = 8 \times 0.3125 = 2\frac{1}{2}$ in. [see UG-30(c)].

Check the adequacy of 5 in. long fillet weld segments with $2\frac{1}{2}$ in. spacing between segments. The spacing efficiency of the fillet weld segments = $5/(5 + 2\frac{1}{2}) = 0.67$. Based on welds on each side, the allowable load for the welds = 2 × 0.67 × 0.25 × 7,865 = 2,620 lb/in. which is greater than the design load of 644 lb/in. and is acceptable using the minimum fillet weld leg size of $\frac{1}{4}$ in.

NOTE: Shorter weld segments may be used (2 in. minimum) if desired.

L-6 REQUIRED THICKNESS FOR FORMED HEADS WITH PRESSURE ON THE CONVEX SIDE

L-6.1 Ellipsoidal Head

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-33(d)]

L-6.1.1 Given. The same vessel considered in L-3.1; the head to have a major-to-minor axis ratio of 2:1.

L-6.1.2 Required. Head thickness t.

L-6.1.3 Solution

equivalent spherical radius $R_o = K_1 D_o$ in.
from Table UG-37 ($D/2h = 2$), $K_1 = 0.90$
outside diameter $D_o \cong 169$ in.

$$R_o = 0.90(169) = 152.1 \text{ in.}$$

Step 1. Assume a head thickness t of 0.5625 in., and calculate the value of factor A:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{(R_o/t)} = \frac{0.125}{(152.1/0.5625)} = 0.000462$$

Steps 2, 3. Enter Fig. CS-2 at A value of 0.000462 and move vertically to material line for 700°F. Move horizontally to the right and read B value of 5,100.

Step 4. The maximum allowable external working pressure for the assumed thickness of 0.5625 in. is:

$$P_a = \frac{B}{(R_o/t)} = \frac{5100}{(152.1/0.5625)} = 18.9 \text{ psi}$$

Since P_a of 18.9 psi is greater than the external design pressure of 15 psi, the assumed thickness is satisfactory.

L-6.2 Torispherical Head

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-33(e)]

L-6.2.1 Given. The same vessel considered in L-3.1. The head to have a crown radius equal to the diameter of the vessel and a knuckle radius equal to 6% of the vessel diameter.

L-6.2.2 Required. Head thickness t.

L-6.2.3 Solution. Spherical radius $R_o = D_o = 169$ in.

Step 1. Assume a head thickness t of 0.50 in. and calculate value of factor A:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{(R_o/t)} = \frac{0.125}{(169/0.50)} = 0.00037$$

Steps 2, 3. Enter Fig. CS-2 at A value of 0.00037 and move vertically to material line for 700°F. Move horizontally to the right and read B value of 4,300.

Step 4. The maximum allowable external working pressure for the assumed thickness of 0.50 in. is:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$P_a = \frac{B}{(R_o/t)} = \frac{4{,}300}{(169/0.50)} = 12.7 \text{ psi}$$

Since P_a of 12.7 psi is less than the external design pressure P of 15 psi, it is necessary to assume a greater value for the thickness. As a second trial, investigate t = 0.5625 in. Then, D_o = 169.125 in., and $R_o = D_o$ = 169.125 in. Then:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{(169.125/0.5625)} = 0.00042$$

This value of A, referred to Fig. CS-2 corresponds to a B value of 4,700 at 700°F. Then:

$$P_a = \frac{4{,}700}{(169.125/0.5625)} = 15.6 \text{ psi}$$

This value of P_a of 15.6 psi is greater than the external design pressure P of 15.0 psi; therefore, a head thickness of 0.5625 in. is satisfactory.

L-6.3 Hemispherical Head

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-33(c)]

L-6.3.1 Given. The same vessel considered in L-3.1. The head to have a hemispherical shape.

L-6.3.2 Required. Head thickness t.

L-6.3.3 Solution

spherical radius $R_o = D_o/2 = 169/2 = 84.5$ in.

Step 1. Assume a head thickness t of 0.3125 in. and calculate the value of factor A:

$$A = \frac{0.125}{(R_o/t)} = \frac{0.125}{(84.5/0.3125)} = 0.00046$$

Steps 2, 3. Enter Fig. CS-2 at A value of 0.00046 and move vertically to material line for 700°F. Move horizontally to the right and read B value of 5,200.

Step 4. The maximum allowable external working pressure for the assumed head thickness of 0.3125 in. is:

$$P_a = \frac{B}{(R_o/t)} = \frac{5{,}200}{(84.5/0.3125)} = 19.23 \text{ psi}$$

Since P_a of 19.23 psi is greater than the external design pressure P of 15.0 psi, the assumed head thickness of 0.3125 in. should be satisfactory.

L-6.4 Conical Head

[An example of the use of the rules in UG-33(f)(1)]

L-6.4.1 Given. The same vessel considered in L-3.1. The head to be of conical shape with a 45 deg included (apex) angle. There are to be no stiffening rings in the head.

L-6.4.2 Required. Head thickness t.

L-6.4.3 Solution

outside diameter D_L = 169.5 in.

one-half the included angle = 22.5 deg

$$\text{Length } L = \frac{D_L/2}{\tan\alpha} = \frac{84.75}{0.4142} = 204.6 \text{ in.}$$

$$L_e = \frac{L}{2}(1 + D_s/D_L)$$

$$= \frac{204.6}{2} + \frac{0}{169.5} = 102.3$$

Step 1. Assume a head thickness t of 0.75 in.

$$t_e = t\cos\alpha = 0.75\ (0.92) = 0.69$$

$$L_e/D_L = \frac{102.3}{169.5} = 0.60$$

$$D_L/t_e = \frac{169.5}{0.69} = 246$$

Steps 2, 3. Enter Fig. G at $L_e/D_L = 0.60$ and move horizontally to the D_L/t_e line of 246. From this intersection move vertically downwards and read the value of factor A of 0.0006.

Steps 4, 5. Enter Fig. CS-2 at value A of 0.0006 and move vertically to the material line for 700°F. Move horizontally to the right and read value of B of 6,900. The maximum allowable external working pressure is then:

$$P_a = \frac{4(6{,}900)}{3(169.5/0.69)} = 37.5 \text{ psi}$$

This value of P_a of 37.5 is greater than the external design pressure P of 15 psi; therefore, the assumed value of the head thickness of 0.75 in. is satisfactory. In this case, 0.75 in. may be too uneconomical, thus a thinner wall thickness can be investigated.

Assume a new value t of 0.563 in. Then D_L = 169.13 in. and:

$$L = \frac{84.56}{0.4142} = 204.2 \text{ in.}$$

$$L_e = \frac{204.2}{2}\left(1 + \frac{0}{169.13}\right) = 102.1$$

$$\frac{L_e}{D_L} = \frac{102.1}{169.13} = 0.60$$

$$t_e = 0.563\ (0.92) = 0.52$$

$$\frac{D_L}{t_e} = \frac{169.13}{0.52} = 325$$

From Fig. G for $L_e/D_L = 0.60$ and $D_L/t_e = 325$, the value of factor A is 0.00038.

From Fig. CS-2 for $A = 0.00038$ and using the material line for 700°F, B = 4,500 and:

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$P_a = \frac{4(4{,}500)}{3(169.13/0.52)} = 18.45 \text{ psi}$$

Since P_a of 18.45 psi is greater than the external design pressure of 15.0 psi, the assumed thickness of 0.563 in. is satisfactory.

OPENINGS AND REINFORCEMENTS

L-7 WELDED CONNECTIONS

NOTE: The value of F has been taken as 1.0 for all planes through openings in cylindrical shells although UG-37 permits smaller values of a magnitude dependent upon the plane under consideration. The numerical figures, except for nominal dimensions in fractions of an inch, used in the following examples are rounded off to three significant figures or, for values less than one, to three decimal places.

The use of UG-45 rules for determination of nozzle wall thickness or calculation of shear stresses caused by shear producing loads is illustrated in Examples 2, 5, and 8 (see L-7.2, L-7.5, and L-7.8).

L-7.1 Example 1

L-7.1.1 Given. A 4 in. I.D., $\frac{3}{4}$ in. wall, nozzle conforming to a specification with an allowable stress of 15,000 psi is attached by welding to a vessel that has an inside diameter of 30 in. and a shell thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ in. The shell material conforms to a specification with an allowable stress of 13,700 psi. The internal design pressure is 250 psi at a design temperature of 150°F. There is no allowance for corrosion. The longitudinal joint meets the spot examination requirements of UW-52. The opening does not pass through a vessel Category A joint (see UW-3). There are no butt welds in the nozzle. Check the construction for full penetration groove-weld and for the $\frac{3}{8}$ in. fillet cover-weld shown in Fig. L-7.1.1.

L-7.1.2 Wall Thicknesses Required

$$\text{Shell } t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{250 \times 15}{13{,}700 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 250} = 0.277 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Nozzle } t_{rn} = \frac{PR_n}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{250 \times 2}{15{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 250} = 0.034 \text{ in.}$$

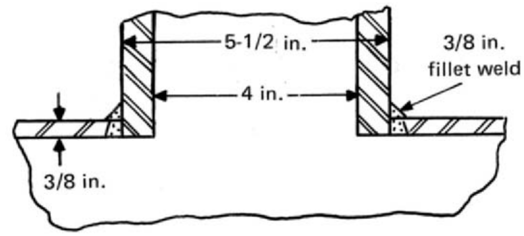


FIG. L-7.1.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

L-7.1.3 Size of Weld Required [UW-16(c), Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (c)]

L-7.1.3(a)

t_c = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or $0.7t_{min}$

where

t_{min} = lesser of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. or the thickness less corrosion allowance of the thinner part joined
= lesser of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. or $\frac{3}{8}$ in.
t_c (minimum) = lesser of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or 0.7 ($\frac{3}{8}$), i.e., $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or 0.263 in.
t_c (actual) = 0.7 (0.375) = 0.263 in.
0.263 in. > 0.25 in.

Cover weld is satisfactory. Strength calculations for attachment welds are not required for this detail which conforms with Fig. UW-16.1 sketch (d) [see UW-15(b)].

$$f_{r1} = f_{r2} = 15.0 / 13.7 > 1.0;$$

$$\text{therefore, use } f_{r1} = f_{r2} = 1.0$$

L-7.1.3(b) Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.1.3(b)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 4 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$R_n + t_n + t = 2 + 0.75 + 0.375 = 3.125 \text{ in.}$$

Use 4 in.

L-7.1.3(b)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 0.375 = 0.938 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$2.5t_n + t_e = 2.5 \times 0.75 + 0 = 1.875 \text{ in.}$$

Use 0.938 in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

L-7.1.4 Area of Reinforcement Required

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= (4 \times 0.277 \times 1) + 0 = \quad 1.11 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.1.5 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.1.5(a) Area available in shell:

$$A_1 = \text{larger of following}$$

$$= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n\,(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= (1 \times 0.375 - 1 \times 0.277)\ 4 - 0$$

$$= 0.392 \quad 0.392 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r)$$

$$- 2t_n\,(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= (1 \times 0.375 - 1 \times 0.277)$$

$$\times (0.75 + 0.375)\ 2 - 0$$

$$= 0.220$$

L-7.1.5(b) Area available in nozzle:

$$A_2 = \text{smaller of following}$$

$$= 5(t_n - t_{rn})\,f_{r2}\,t$$

$$= (5)(0.75 - 0.034)(1)(0.375)$$

$$= 1.34 \quad 1.34 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= 5(t_n - t_{rn})\,f_{r2}\,t_n$$

$$= (5)(0.75 - 0.034)(1.0)(0.75)$$

$$= 2.69$$

L-7.1.5(c) Area available in welds:

$$A_{41} = 2 \times 0.5 \times (0.375)^2(1.0) = \quad \underline{0.141} \text{ sq in.}$$

Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41}$ = 1.87 sq in.

This is greater than the required area so a reinforcing element is not needed.

L-7.2 Example 2

L-7.2.1 Given. An $11\frac{3}{4}$ in. I.D., $\frac{1}{2}$ in. wall, nozzle (NPS 12) conforming to a specification with an allowable stress of 16,600 psi is attached by welding to a vessel that has an inside diameter of 60 in.; shell thickness $\frac{3}{4}$ in.; reinforcing element thickness $\frac{3}{8}$ in.; shell plate to conform to a specification with an allowable stress of 14,300 psi and the reinforcing element, if needed, to conform to a specification with an allowable stress of 13,200 psi. The longitudinal joint meets the spot examination requirements of UW-52. The opening does not pass through a vessel Category A joint (see UW-3). The vessel's internal design pressure is 250 psi at a design temperature of 700°F. There is to be no allowance for corrosion. Check the adequacy of the reinforcing element, the attachment welds, and the minimum nozzle neck thickness required by UG-45 for the configuration shown in Fig. L-7.2.1.

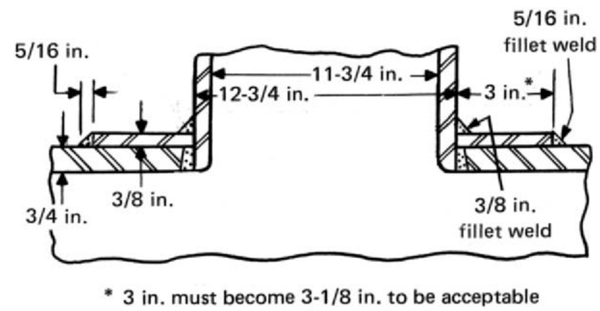


FIG. L-7.2.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

L-7.2.2 Wall Thicknesses Required

$$\text{Shell } t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{250 \times 30}{14{,}300 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 250}$$

$$= 0.530 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Nozzle } t_{rn} = \frac{PR_n}{SE - 0.6 \times P}$$

$$= \frac{250 \times 5.875}{16{,}600 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 250}$$

$$= 0.089 \text{ in.}$$

L-7.2.3 Minimum Nozzle Wall Thickness by UG-45

L-7.2.3.1 UG-45 requires the minimum nozzle wall thickness to be the larger of the thickness determined by UG-45(a) or UG-45(b). Shear stresses caused by superimposed loads on the nozzle [see UG-22(c)] shall be limited to the UG-45(c) allowable.

L-7.2.3.2 UG-45(a) requires minimum nozzle wall thickness to be not less than that computed for the applicable loading plus corrosion allowance. From L-7.2.2, t_{rn} = 0.089 in. This thickness is compared with the minimum thickness provided which for pipe material would include a 12.5% undertolerance, 0.875 × 0.500 = 0.438 in. Since 0.438 in. is larger than 0.089 in., the rule is met.

L-7.2.3.3 UG-45(b) requires determining the one applicable wall thickness from (b)(1), (b)(2), or (b)(3), comparing that with the thickness from (b)(4) and then choosing the smaller of those two values.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

UG-45(b)(1) requires minimum nozzle wall thickness to be not less than the thickness required for internal pressure of the head or shell where the nozzle is located but in no case less than that thickness required by UG-16(b). From L-7.2.2, $t_r = 0.530$ in. and UG-16(b) minimum is $^1\!/_{16}$ in. Therefore, the 0.530 in. thickness governs.

UG-45(b)(2) applies to vessels designed for external pressure only and is not applicable to this example.

UG-45(b)(3) applies to vessels designed for both external and internal pressure and is not applicable to this example.

UG-45(b)(4) requires minimum nozzle wall thickness of standard wall pipe accounting for undertolerance plus the thickness added for corrosion allowance. Undertolerance for pipe manufactured in accordance with ASME B36.10M is $12^1\!/_2\%$ and standard wall thickness is 0.375 in. Thus, the minimum wall thickness is

$$0.375\,(1.0 - 0.125) = 0.328 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, the minimum nozzle wall thickness required by UG-45(b) is the smaller of (b)(1) or (b)(4), or 0.328 in.

L-7.2.3.4 UG-45(c): This Example does not require a calculation for shear stresses caused by UG-22(c) superimposed loads. See Example 5 (see L-7.5).

The minimum nozzle wall thickness required by UG-45 is the larger of UG-45(a) (0.089 in.) or UG-45(b) (0.328 in.). The 0.328 in. thickness governs as determined by UG-45(b)(4) and is less than the minimum thickness provided of $0.875 \times 0.500 = 0.438$ in. The thickness provided meets the rules of UG-45.

L-7.2.4 Size of Weld Required [UW-16(c), Fig. UW-16.1, Sketch (h)]

L-7.2.4(a) Inner (reinforcing element) fillet weld:

$$\begin{aligned} t_w &= 0.7t_{\min} \\ &= 0.7 \times 0.375 \\ &= 0.263 \text{ in. (minimum throat required)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} t_w &= 0.7 \times \text{weld size} \\ &= 0.7 \times 0.375 \\ &= 0.263 \text{ in. (actual)} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.2.4(b) Outer (reinforcing element) fillet weld:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Throat} &= {}^1\!/_2 t_{\min} \\ &= 0.5 \times 0.375 \\ &= 0.188 \text{ (minimum throat required)} \\ &= 0.7 \times \text{weld size} \\ &= 0.7 \times 0.3125 \\ &= 0.219 \text{ (actual)} \end{aligned}$$

Weld sizes are satisfactory.

L-7.2.5 Check Without Reinforcing Element (Plate)

$$f_{r1} = f_{r2} = S_n / S_v = 16.6 / 14.3 > 1.0;$$
$$\text{therefore, use } f_{r1} = f_{r2} = 1.0$$

L-7.2.5(a) Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.2.5(a)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 11.75 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} R_n + t_n + t &= 5.875 + 0.5 + 0.75 \\ &= 7.125 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

Use 11.75 in.

L-7.2.5(a)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 0.75 = 1.875 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} 2.5t_n + t_e &= 2.5 \times 0.5 + 0.375 \\ &= 1.625 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

Use 1.625 in.

L-7.2.5(b) Area of reinforcement required:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF\,(1 - f_{r1}) \\ &= (11.75)(0.530)(1) + 0 = \qquad 6.23 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.2.5(c) Area available in shell:

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 &= \text{larger of following} \\ &= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n\,(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1}) \\ &= (1.0 \times 0.75 - 1.0 \times 0.530)11.75 - 0 \\ &= 2.59 \qquad 2.59 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n\,(E_1t - Ft_r) \\ &\quad \times (1 - f_{r1}) \\ &= (1.0 \times 0.75 - 1.0 \times 0.530) \\ &\quad \times (0.5 + 0.75)2 - 0 \\ &= 0.550 \end{aligned}$$

L-7.2.5(d) Area available in nozzle:

$$\begin{aligned} A_2 &= \text{smaller of following} \\ &= 5(t_n - t_{rn})\,f_{r2}t \\ &= 5(0.5 - 0.089)(1.0)(0.75) \\ &= 1.54 \end{aligned}$$

or

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$= 5(t_n - t_{rn}) f_{r2} t_n$

$= 5(0.5 - 0.089)(1.0)(0.5)$

$= 1.03$ 1.03 sq in.

L-7.2.5(e) Area available in outside fillet welds:

$A_{41} = (\text{leg})^2 f_{r2} = (0.375)^2(1.0) =$ $\underline{0.141}$ sq in.

L-7.2.5(f) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} =$

3.76 sq in.

Area provided less than area required; try adding plate $A_{\text{reqd.}} = 6.23$ sq in. > $A_{\text{avail.}} = 3.76$ sq in.

L-7.2.6 Check With Reinforcing Element (Plate) Added

L-7.2.6(a) Area of reinforcement required:

$A = 6.23$ 6.23 sq in.

L-7.2.6(b) Area available in shell:

$A_1 = 2.59$ 2.59 sq in.

L-7.2.6(c) Area available in outer nozzle:

A_2 = smaller of following

$= 5(t_n - t_{rn}) f_{r2} t$

$= 1.54$

or

$= 2(t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e) f_{r1}$

$= 2(0.5 - 0.089)(2.5 \times 0.5 + 0.375)1.0$

$= 1.34$ 1.34 sq in.

L-7.2.6(d) Area available in outward nozzle-to-plate fillet weld:

$A_{41} = (\text{leg})^2 f_{r3}$ where $f_{r3} = S_p / S_v = 13.2 / 14.3$

$= 0.923$

$= (0.375)^2(0.923) =$ 0.130 sq in.

L-7.2.6(e) Area available in outer plate fillet weld:

$A_{42} = (\text{leg})^2 f_{r4}$ where $f_{r4} = 0.923$

$= (0.3125)^2(0.923) =$ 0.090 sq in.

L-7.2.6(f) Area available in reinforcing plate:

$A_5 = (D_p - d - 2t_n)\, t_e f_{r4}$

$= (18.75 - 11.75 - 1.0)(0.375)(0.923)$

$=$ $\underline{2.08}$ sq in.

L-7.2.6(g) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_5 =$ 6.22 sq in.

L-7.2.6(h) This is less than area required; therefore the opening is not adequately reinforced. The size of the reinforcing element must be increased.

$A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42} =$ 4.15 sq in.

$A_5 = (19.0 - 11.75 - 1.0)$

$\times 0.375 \times 0.923 =$ $\underline{2.16}$ sq in.

Total area available by increasing reinforcing element O.D. $\frac{1}{4}$ in. = 6.31 sq in.

L-7.2.7 Load to Be Carried by Welds [Fig. UG-41.1 Sketch (a)]

L-7.2.7(a) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$W = [A - A_1 + 2t_n f_{r1}(E_1 t - F t_r)]\, S_v$$
$$= [6.23 - 2.59 + 2 \times 0.5 \times 1.0(1.0 \times 0.75 - 1.0 \times 0.53)] \times 14{,}300$$
$$= 55{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.2.7(b) Per UG-41(b)(1):

$$W_{1\text{–}1} = (A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})S_v$$
$$= (1.34 + 2.16 + 0.13 + 0.09) \times 14{,}300$$
$$= 53{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{2\text{–}2} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})S_v$$
$$= (1.34 + 0 + 0.13 + 0 + 2 \times 0.50 \times 0.75 \times 1.0) \times 14{,}300$$
$$= 31{,}800 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{3\text{–}3} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})S_v$$
$$= (1.34 + 0 + 2.16 + 0.13 + 0.09 + 0 + 2 \times 0.50 \times 0.75 \times 1.0) \times 14{,}300$$
$$= 63{,}900 \text{ lb}$$

Since the weld load W calculated by UG-41(b)(2) is smaller than weld load $W_{3\text{–}3}$ calculated by UG-41(b)(1), W may be used in place of $W_{3\text{–}3}$ for comparing the weld capacity to the weld load.

L-7.2.8 Unit Stresses [UW-15(c) and UG-45(c)]

L-7.2.8(a) Outer fillet weld shear

$= 0.49 \times 13{,}200 = 6{,}470$ psi

L-7.2.8(b) Inner fillet weld shear

$= 0.49 \times 13{,}200 = 6{,}470$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-7.2.8(c) Groove weld tension

$= 0.74 \times 14{,}300 = 10{,}600$ psi

L-7.2.8(d) Nozzle wall shear

$= 0.70 \times 16{,}600 = 11{,}600$ psi

L-7.2.9 Strength of Connection Elements

L-7.2.9(a) Inner fillet weld shear

$= \pi / 2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times$ 6,470

$= 1.57 \times 12.75 \times 0.375 \times 6{,}470$

$= 48{,}600$

L-7.2.9(b) Nozzle wall shear

$= \pi / 2 \times$ mean nozzle diam. $\times\ t_n \times$ 11,600

$= 1.57 \times 12.25 \times 0.5 \times 11{,}600$

$= 112{,}000$ lb

L-7.2.9(c) Groove weld tension

$= \pi / 2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times\ t \times$ 10,600

$= 1.57 \times 12.75 \times 0.75 \times 10{,}600$

$= 159{,}000$ lb

L-7.2.9(d) Outer fillet weld shear

$= \pi / 2 \times$ reinforcing element O.D.

$\times$ weld leg $\times$ 6,470

$= 1.57 \times 19.0 \times 0.312 \times 6{,}470$

$= 60{,}200$ lb

L-7.2.10 Check Strength Paths

1-1 112,000 + 60,200 = 172,000 lb

2-2 48,600 + 159,000 = 208,000 lb

3-3 159,000 + 60,200 = 219,000 lb

All paths are stronger than the required strength of 55,200 lb [see UG-41(b)(2)].

L-7.3 Example 3

L-7.3.1 Given. An $11\frac{3}{4}$ in. I.D., $\frac{1}{2}$ in. wall, nozzle conforming to a specification with an allowable stress of 16,600 psi is attached by welding to a vessel that has an inside diameter of 60 in. The nozzle passes through the longitudinal joint on which the spot examination requirements of UW-52 are to be met. The $\frac{3}{4}$ in. thick shell plate and $\frac{1}{2}$ in. thick reinforcing element to conform to a specification with an allowable stress of 14,300 psi. The vessel's internal design pressure is 250 psi at a design temperature of 700°F. There is to be no allowance for corrosion. Check the adequacy of the reinforcing element and the attachment welds shown in Fig. L-7.3.1.

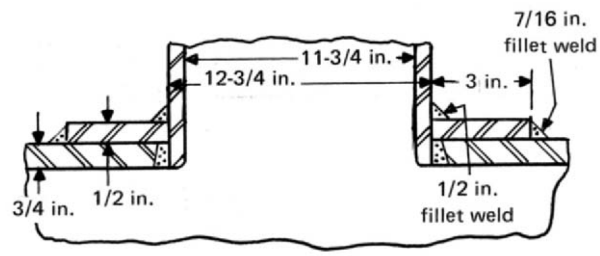


FIG. L-7.3.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

The use of UG-45 rules for determination of nozzle wall thickness or calculation of shear stresses caused by shear producing loads is illustrated in Examples 2, 5, and 8 (see L-7.2, L-7.5, and L-7.8).

L-7.3.2 Wall Thicknesses Required (From Example 2)

$$t_r = 0.530 \text{ in.} \qquad t_{rn} = 0.089 \text{ in.}$$

L-7.3.3 Size of Welds Required [UW-16(c); Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (h)]

L-7.3.3(a) Inner (reinforcing element) fillet weld:

$t_w = 0.7 t_{\min}$

$= 0.7 \times 0.5$

$= 0.35$ in. (minimum throat required)

$t_w = 0.7 \times$ weld size

$= 0.7 \times 0.50$

$= 0.35$ in. (actual)

L-7.3.3(b) Outer (reinforcing element) fillet weld:

Throat $= \frac{1}{2}\, t_{\min}$

$= 0.5 \times 0.5$

$= 0.25$ in. (minimum throat required)

Throat $= 0.7 \times$ weld size

$= 0.7 \times 0.4375$

$= 0.306$ in. (actual)

The weld sizes used are satisfactory.

$f_{r1} = f_{r2} = 16.6 / 14.3 > 1.0;$

use $f_{r1} = f_{r2} = 1.0$

$f_{r3} = f_{r4} = 14.3 / 14.3 = 1.0$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-7.3.3(c)Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.3.3(c)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 11.75 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$R_n + t_n + t = 5.875 + 0.5 + 0.75$$
$$= 7.125 \text{ in.}$$

Use 11.75 in.

L-7.3.3(c)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 0.75 = 1.875 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$2.5t_n + t_e = 2.5 \times 0.5 + 0.5$$
$$= 1.75 \text{ in.}$$

Use 1.75 in.

L-7.3.4 Area of Reinforcement Required

$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$
$= (11.75 \times 0.530 \times 1) + 0 =$ 6.23 sq in.

L-7.3.5 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.3.5(a) Area available in shell:

A_1 = larger of following
$= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$
$= (0.85 \times 0.75 - 1 \times 0.530)11.75 - 0$
$= 1.26$ 1.26 sq in.

or

$= 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r) \times (1 - f_{r1})$
$= (0.85 \times 0.75 - 1 \times 0.530) \times (0.5 + 0.75)\,2 - 0$
$= 0.269$

L-7.3.5(b) Area available in nozzle:

A_2 = smaller of following
$= (t_n - t_{rn})\,5tf_{r2}$
$= (0.5 - 0.089)(5)(0.75)(1.0)$
$= 1.54$

or

$= (t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e)\,2f_{r2}$
$= (0.5 - 0.089)(2.5 \times 0.5 + 0.5)\,2\,(1.0)$
$= 1.44$ 1.44 sq in.

L-7.3.5(c) Area available in welds:

$A_{41} + A_{42} = 2 \times 0.5(0.4375^2 + 0.5^2)(1.0)$
$= 0.441$ 0.441 sq in.

L-7.3.5(d) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42} =$ 3.14 sq in.

L-7.3.5(e) Area provided by pad:

$A_5 = (D_p - d - 2t_n)\,t_ef_{r4}$
$= (18.75 - 11.75 - 1)0.5(1.0) =$ 3.0 sq in.

L-7.3.5(f) Total area available 6.14 sq in. Opening is not adequately reinforced.

L-7.3.5(g) Size of reinforcing element must be increased.

$A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42} =$ 3.14 sq in.
$A_5 = (19.00 - 11.75 - 1)0.5 =$ 3.13 sq in.

Total area available by increasing O.D. of reinforcing element $\frac{1}{4}$ in. = 6.27 sq in.

L-7.3.6 Load to Be Carried by Weld [Fig. UG-41.1 Sketch (a)]

L-7.3.6(a) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$W = [A - A_1 + 2t_nf_{r1}(E_1t - Ft_r)]S_v$$
$$= [6.23 - 1.26 + 2 \times 0.5 \times 1.0 \times (0.85 \times 0.75 - 1.0 \times 0.53)] \times 14{,}300$$
$$= 72{,}600 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.3.6(b) Per UG-41(b)(1):

$$W_{1\text{-}1} = (A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})\,S_v$$
$$= (1.44 + 3.13 + 0.441)\,14{,}300$$
$$= 71{,}600 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{2\text{-}2} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} + 2t_ntf_{r1})\,S$$
$$= [1.44 + 0 + 0.5^2 + 0 + 2(0.5)(0.75)(1.0)] \times 14{,}300$$
$$= 34{,}900 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{3\text{-}3} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + 2t_nt \times f_{r1})\,S_v$$
$$= [1.44 + 0 + 3.125 + 0.5^2 + 0.438^2 + 0 + 2(0.5)(0.75)(1.0)]\,14{,}300$$
$$= 82{,}300 \text{ lb}$$

Since W is smaller than $W_{3\text{–}3}$, W may be used in place of $W_{3\text{–}3}$ for comparing weld capacity to weld load.

L-7.3.7 Unit Stresses [UW-15(b) and UG-45(c)]

L-7.3.7(a) Fillet weld shear $= 0.49 \times 14{,}300$
$= 7{,}010$ psi

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-7.3.7(b) Groove weld tension = 0.74 × 14,300 = 10,600 psi

L-7.3.7(c) Nozzle wall shear = 0.70 × 16,600 = 11,600 psi

L-7.3.8 Strength of Connection Elements

L-7.3.8(a) Inner (reinforcing element) fillet weld shear

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{nozzle O.D.} \times \text{weld leg} \times 7{,}010$$
$$= 1.57 \times 12.75 \times 0.5 \times 7{,}010$$
$$= 70{,}200 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.3.8(b) Nozzle wall shear

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{mean nozzle diam.} \times t_n \times 11{,}600$$
$$= 1.57 \times 12.25 \times 0.5 \times 11{,}600$$
$$= 112{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.3.8(c) Groove weld tension

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{nozzle O.D.} \times t \times 10{,}600$$
$$= 1.57 \times 12.75 \times 0.75 \times 10{,}600$$
$$= 159{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.3.8(d) Outer (reinforcing element) fillet weld

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{reinforcing element O.D.} \times \text{weld leg} \times 7{,}010$$
$$= 1.57 \times 19.0 \times 0.437 \times 7{,}010$$
$$= 91{,}400 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.3.9 Check Strength Paths

1-1 91,400 + 112,000 = 203,000 lb

2-2 70,200 + 159,000 = 229,000 lb

3-3 91,400 + 159,000 = 250,000 lb

All paths are stronger than the strength of 72,600 lb required by UG-41(b)(2). Also, all paths are stronger than the strength required by UG-41(b)(1).

L-7.4 Example 4

L-7.4.1 Given. A 16 in. I.D. seamless weld neck, $1\frac{3}{4}$ in. wall, conforming to a specification with an allowable stress of 12,000 psi is attached to a vessel that has an inside diameter of 96 in. and a shell thickness of 2 in. The shell material conforms to a specification with an allowable stress of 11,400 psi. The vessel's internal design pressure is 425 psi at a design temperature of 800°F. An allowance of $\frac{1}{16}$ in. for corrosion is included in the shell and nozzle thickness. Category A joints are to be fully radiographed (see UW-3). The opening does not pass through a vessel Category A joint. Check the opening for reinforcement and check the adequacy of the attachment welds shown in Fig. L-7.4.1.

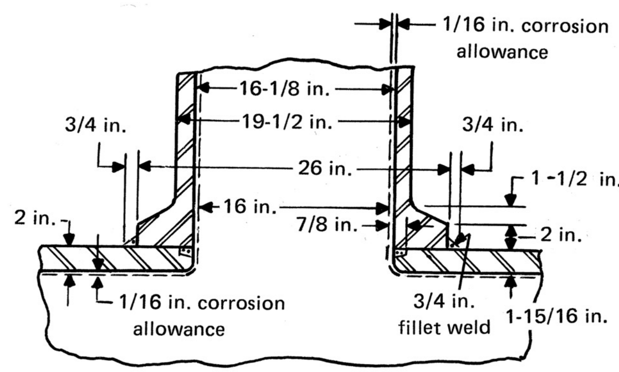


FIG. L-7.4.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

The use of UG-45 rules for determination of nozzle wall thickness or calculation of shear stresses caused by shear producing loads is illustrated in Examples 2, 5, and 8 (see L-7.2, L-7.5, and L-7.8).

L-7.4.2 Wall Thickness Required

$$\text{Shell } t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{425(48 + 0.0625)}{11{,}400 \times 1 - 0.6 \times 425} = 1.83 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Nozzle } t_{rn} = \frac{PR_n}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{425(8 + 0.0625)}{12{,}000 \times 1 - 0.6 \times 425} = 0.292 \text{ in.}$$

L-7.4.3 Size of Weld Required [UW-16(d); Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (n)]

L-7.4.3(a) Inner perimeter weld:

$$t_w = 0.7\, t_{\min} = 0.7 \times 0.75 = 0.525 \text{ in. (required)}$$

$$t_w = 0.875 - 0.0625 = 0.812 \text{ in. (actual)}$$
(see Fig. L-7.4)

L-7.4.3(b) Outer perimeter weld:

$$\text{Throat} = \tfrac{1}{2}\, t_{\min} = 0.5 \times 0.75 = 0.375 \text{ in. (minimum throat required)}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

$$\text{Throat} = 0.7 \times \text{weld size} = 0.7 \times 0.75$$
$$= 0.525 \text{ in. (actual)}$$

The weld sizes are satisfactory.

$$f_{r1} = f_{r2} = f_{r3} = 1.0$$

$$f_{r2} = f_{r3} = f_{r4} = 12.0 / 11.4 > 1.0;$$
$$\text{use } f_{r2} = f_{r3} = f_{r4} = 1.0$$

L-7.4.3(c) Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.4.3(c)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 16.125 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$R_n + t_n + t = 8.063 + 1.687 + 1.937$$
$$= 11.69 \text{ in.}$$

Use 16.125 in.

L-7.4.3(c)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 1.937 = 4.84 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$2.5t_n + t_e = 2.5 \times 1.687 + 3.5$$
$$= 7.72 \text{ in.}$$

Use 4.84 in.

L-7.4.4 Area of Reinforcement Required

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - Ft_r)$$
$$= (16.125 \times 1.83 \times 1) + 0 = \quad 29.6 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.4.5 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.4.5(a) Area available in shell:

$$A_1 = \text{larger of following}$$
$$= (E_1t - Ft_r)d - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$$
$$= (1.0 \times 1.937 - 1 \times 1.83)$$
$$\times 16.125 - 0$$
$$= 1.73 \quad 1.73 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= (E_1t - Ft_r)(t_n + t)\,2$$
$$- 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$$
$$= (1.0 \times 1.937 - 1 \times 1.83)$$
$$\times (1.687 + 1.937)\,2 - 0$$
$$= 0.776$$

Check for t_e:

$$\tan \Theta = \frac{(26 - 19.5)}{2} \div 3.5 = 0.9286$$
$$\Theta = 43 \text{ deg}$$
$$43 \text{ deg} > 30 \text{ deg}$$

Therefore, Fig. UG-40 sketch (d) applies and $t_e = 3.5$.

L-7.4.5(b) Area available in nozzle:

$$A_2 = \text{smaller of following}$$
$$= (t_n - t_{rn})\,5tf_{r2}$$
$$= (1.687 - 0.292)(5)(1.937)(1.0)$$
$$= 13.5 \quad 13.5 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= (t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e)\,2f_{r2}$$
$$= (1.687 - 0.292)(2.5 \times 1.687 + 3.5)2(1.0)$$
$$= 21.5$$

L-7.4.5(c) Area available in welds:

$$A_{41} = 2 \times 0.5 \times 0.75^2\,(1.0) = \quad \underline{0.563} \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.4.5(d) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41}$ = 15.8 sq in.

L-7.4.5(e) Area available in reinforcing element:

$$A_5 = (D_p - d - 2t_n) \times \text{average thickness of reinforcement} \times f_{r4} \text{ (see footnote 3)}$$
$$= (26.0 - 16.125 - 3.375)(2.75)(1.0) = \quad \underline{17.9} \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.4.5(f) Total area available 33.7 sq in.

This is greater than area required; therefore, the opening is adequately reinforced.

L-7.4.6 Load to Be Carried by Welds [Fig. UG-41.1 Sketch (b)]

L-7.4.6(a) Per UG-41(b)(1):

$$W_{1\text{-}1} = (A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})\,S_v$$
$$= (13.5 + 17.9 + 0.562 + 0)\,11{,}400$$
$$= 364{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.4.6(b) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$W = (A - A_1)\,S_v$$
$$= (29.6 - 1.73)\,11{,}400$$
$$= 318{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

[3] Average thickness of reinforcing element = (3.5 + 2) / 2 = 2.75.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Since W is smaller than W_{1-1}, W may be used in place of W_{1-1} for comparing weld capacity to weld load.

L-7.4.7 Unit Stresses [UW-15(c)]

L-7.4.7(a) Fillet weld shear $= 0.49 \times 11{,}400 = 5590$ psi

L-7.4.7(b) Groove weld shear $= 0.60 \times 11{,}400 = 6840$ psi

L-7.4.8 Strength of Connection Elements

L-7.4.8(a) Fillet weld shear

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{nozzle O.D.} \times \text{weld leg} \times 5{,}590$$

$$= 1.57 \times 26.0 \times 0.75 \times 5{,}590$$

$$= 171{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.4.8(b) Groove weld shear

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{mean diam. of weld} \times \text{weld } t_w \times 6{,}840$$

$$= 1.57 \times 16.9 \times 0.812 \times 6{,}840$$

$$= 147{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.4.9 Check Strength Path

1-1 171,000 + 147,000 = 318,000 lb

equals the strength of 318,000 lb required by UG-41(b)(2).

L-7.5 Example 5

L-7.5.1 Given. A nozzle with an outside diameter of 16 in. is fabricated by welding from $\frac{3}{4}$ in. plate. It is attached by welding to a vessel that has an inside diameter of 83 in. and a shell thickness of 2 in. The vessel's internal design pressure is 500 psi at a design temperature of 400°F. The material in the shell and the nozzle conforms to a specification with an allowable stress of 13,700 psi. An allowance of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. for corrosion is included in the shell and nozzle thickness. The vessel and the nozzle Category A joints are to be fully radiographed. [See UW-11(a)(3) and (a)(4).] The nozzle does not pass through a vessel Category A joint. The reinforcing element conforms to a specification with an allowable stress of 13,700 psi. A shear load of 25,000 lb and a torsion of 250,000 in.-lb from external forces act on the nozzle. Check the adequacy of the reinforcing element, the attachment welds, and the minimum nozzle neck thickness required by UG-45 for the configuration shown in Fig. L-7.5.1. Also, calculate shear stresses and compare to the allowable shear stress in UG-45(c).

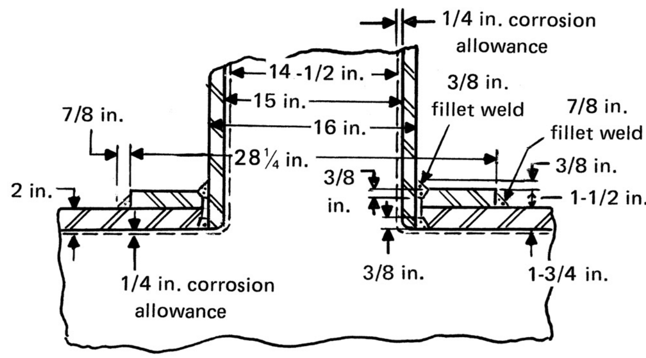


FIG. L-7.5.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

L-7.5.2 Wall Thickness Required

$$\text{Shell } t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(41.50 + 0.25)}{13{,}700 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 500} = 1.56 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Nozzle } t_{rn} = \frac{PR_n}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{500(7.25 + 0.25)}{13{,}700 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 500} = 0.280 \text{ in.}$$

L-7.5.3 Minimum Nozzle Wall Thickness by UG-45

L-7.5.3.1 UG-45 requires the minimum nozzle wall thickness to be the larger of the thickness determined by UG-45(a) or UG-45(b). Shear stresses caused by superimposed loads on the nozzle [see UG-22(c)] shall be limited to the UG-45(c) allowable.

L-7.5.3.2 UG-45(a) requires minimum nozzle wall thickness to be not less than that computed for the applicable loading plus corrosion allowance. From L-7.5.2,

$$t_{rn} = 0.280 \text{ in.} + 0.25 \text{ in. corrosion allowance} = 0.530 \text{ in.}$$

Since the nozzle wall is formed from plate material, undertolerance of 0.01 in.; it is not necessary to apply it in determining minimum thickness available. The 0.530 in. thickness is compared with the thickness provided of 0.750 in. Since 0.750 in. is larger than 0.530 in., the rule is met.

L-7.5.3.3 UG-45(b) requires determining the one applicable wall thickness from (b)(1), (b)(2), or (b)(3), comparing that with the thickness from (b)(4) and then choosing the smaller of those two values.

UG-45(b)(1) requires minimum nozzle wall thickness to be not less than the thickness required for internal

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

pressure of the head or shell where the nozzle is located but in no case less than that thickness required by UG-16(b). From L-7.5.2,

$$t_r = 1.560 + 0.250 \text{ corrosion allowance}$$
$$= 1.810 \text{ in.}$$

and UG-16(b) minimum is $\frac{1}{16}$ in. Therefore, the 1.810 in. thickness governs.

UG-45(b)(2) applies to vessels designed for external pressure only and is not applicable to this example.

UG-45(b)(3) applies to vessels designed for both external and internal pressure and is not applicable to this example.

UG-45(b)(4) requires minimum nozzle wall thickness of standard wall pipe accounting for undertolerance plus the thickness added for corrosion allowance. Undertolerance for pipe manufactured in accordance with ASME B36.10M is $12\frac{1}{2}$% and standard wall thickness is 0.375 in. Thus, the minimum wall thickness is

$$0.375\ (1.0 - 0.125) + \text{corrosion allowance}$$
$$= 0.328 + 0.250 = 0.578 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, the minimum nozzle wall thickness required by UG-45(b) is the smaller of (b)(1) or (b)(4), or 0.578 in.

The minimum nozzle wall thickness required by UG-45 is the larger of UG-45(a) (0.530 in.) or UG-45(b) (0.578 in.). The 0.578 in. thickness governs as determined by UG-45(b)(4) and is less than the minimum thickness provided of 0.750 in. The 0.750 in. thickness provided meets the rules of UG-45.

L-7.5.3.4 UG-45(c): Calculate maximum membrane shear stress due to superimposed shear and torsion loads. Allowable shear stress is $0.70S$ where S is the tensile allowable stress for the nozzle material. Allowable shear stress $= 0.70 \times 13{,}700 = 9{,}590$ psi.

According to beam theory, the maximum membrane shear stress due to a shear load occurs at the neutral axis of the cross section. For a circular cross section, the shear stress varies as the cosine of the angle measured from the load to the point of interest on the circumference of the cross section. Therefore, the maximum membrane shear stress equals the shear load divided by $\pi r t_n$ where

r = inside nozzle radius in the corroded condition and

t_n = minimum thickness of nozzle wall including pipe undertolerance

Shear stress due to the 25,000 lb shear load

$$= 25{,}000 / (3.1416 \times 7.5 \times 0.5) = 2{,}122 \text{ psi}$$

The membrane shear stress due to a torsion load is uniformly distributed around the circumference of a circular cross section and is determined by simple equilibrium analysis as equal to the torsion load divided by $2\pi r^2 t_n$.

Shear stress due to the 250,000 in.-lb torsion load

$$= 250{,}000 / (2 \times 3.1416 \times 7.5^2 \times 0.5)$$
$$= 1{,}415 \text{ psi}$$

Total combined shear stress $= 2{,}122 + 1{,}415 = 3{,}537$ psi which is less than the allowable of 9,590 psi.

L-7.5.4 Size of Weld Required [UW-16(d); Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (q)]

L-7.5.4(a) Inner (reinforcing element) fillet weld:

t_c = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or 0.7 t_{min}

$= 0.7 \times 0.75$ or 0.7×0.5

$= 0.35$ in.; therefore throat must be at least 0.25 in.

$t_c = 0.7 \times$ weld size

$= 0.7 \times 0.375$

$= 0.263$ (actual)

L-7.5.4(b) Outer (reinforcing element) fillet weld:

Throat $= \frac{1}{2}\, t_{min}$

$= 0.5 \times 0.75$

$= 0.375$ in. (minimum throat required)

Throat $= 0.7 \times$ weld size

$= 0.7 \times 0.875$

$= 0.612$ in. (actual)

L-7.5.4(c) Upper groove weld:

$t_w = 0.7\, t_{min}$

$= 0.7 \times 0.5$

$= 0.35$ in. (required)

$t_w = 0.375$ in. (see Fig. L-7.5.1)

L-7.5.4(d) Lower groove weld:

$t_w = 0.7\, t_{min}$

$= 0.7 \times 0.5$

$= 0.35$ in. (required)

$t_w = 0.375$ in. (see Fig. L-7.5.1)

The weld sizes used are satisfactory.

$$f_{r1} = f_{r2} = f_{r3} = 1.0 \text{ for all parts}$$

L-7.5.4(e) Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.5.4(e)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 15.00 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

or

$$R_n + t_n + t = 7.5 + 0.5 + 1.75 = 9.75 \text{ in.}$$

Use 15.00 in.

L-7.5.4(e)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 1.75 = 4.375 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$2.5t_n + t_e = 2.5 \times 0.5 + 1.5$$
$$= 2.75 \text{ in.}$$

Use 2.75 in.

L-7.5.5 Area of Reinforcement Required

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$$
$$= (15.0 \times 1.56 \times 1) + 0 = \qquad 23.4 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.5.6 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.5.6(a) Area available in shell:

$$A_1 = \text{larger of following}$$
$$= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$$
$$= (1 \times 1.75 - 1 \times 1.56)\ 15 - 0$$
$$= 2.85 \qquad 2.85 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r) \times (1 - f_{r1})$$
$$= (1 \times 1.75 - 1 \times 1.56)(0.5 + 1.75)2 - 0$$
$$= 0.855$$

L-7.5.6(b) Area available in nozzle:

$$A_2 = \text{smaller of following}$$
$$= (t_n - t_{rn})\ 5tf_{r2}$$
$$= (0.5 - 0.280)(5)(1.75)(1.0)$$
$$= 1.93$$

or

$$= (t_n - t_{rn})(2.5t_n + t_e)\ 2f_{r2}$$
$$= 1.21 \qquad 1.21 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.5.6(c) Area available in welds:

$$A_{41} + A_{42} = 2 \times 0.5(0.875^2 + 0.375^2)(1.0) = \qquad \underline{0.906} \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.5.6(d) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42} =$ 4.97 sq in.

L-7.5.6(e) Area available in reinforcing element:

$$A_5 = (D_p - d - 2t_n)t_ef_{r4}$$
$$= (28.25 - 15 - 1)1.5(1.0)$$
$$= 18.4 \qquad \underline{18.4} \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.5.6(f) Total area available = 23.4 sq in.

This is equal to the required area; therefore, opening is adequately reinforced.

L-7.5.7 Load to Be Carried by Welds [Fig. UG-41.1(a)]

L-7.5.7(a) Per UG-41(b)(1):

$$W_{1\text{-}1} = (A_5 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42})\ S_v$$
$$= (18.4 + 1.21 + 0.906)\ 13{,}700$$
$$= 281{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{2\text{-}2} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} + 2t_nt\,f_{r1})\ S_v$$
$$= [1.21 + 0 + 0.375^2 + 0 + 2(0.5)(1.75)(1.0)]\ 13{,}700$$
$$= 42{,}500 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{3\text{-}3} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + 2t_nt\,f_{r1})\ S_v$$
$$= [1.21 + 0 + 18.4 + 0.906 + 0 + 2(0.5)(1.75)(1.0)]\ 13{,}700$$
$$= 305{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.5.7(b) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$W = [A - A_1 + 2t_nf_{r1}(E_1t - Ft_r)]\ S_v$$
$$= [23.4 - 2.85 + 2 \times 0.5 \times 1.0(1.0 \times 1.75 - 1.0 \times 1.56)]\ 13{,}700$$
$$= 284{,}000 \text{ lb}$$

Since W is smaller than $W_{3\text{–}3}$, W may be used in place of $W_{3\text{–}3}$ for comparing weld capacity to weld load.

L-7.5.8 Unit Stresses [UW-15(c) and UG-45(c)]

L-7.5.8(a) Fillet weld shear

$$= 0.49 \times 13{,}700$$
$$= 6{,}710 \text{ psi}$$

L-7.5.8(b) Groove weld tension

$$= 0.74 \times 13{,}700$$
$$= 10{,}100 \text{ psi}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

L-7.5.8(c) Groove weld shear

$= 0.60 \times 13{,}700$

$= 8{,}220$ psi

L-7.5.8(d) Nozzle wall shear

$= 0.70 \times 13{,}700$

$= 9{,}590$ psi

L-7.5.9 Strength of Connection Elements

L-7.5.9(a) Upper fillet or cover weld

$= \pi/2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times$ 6,710

$= 1.57 \times 16.0 \times 0.375 \times 6{,}710$

$= 63{,}200$ lb

L-7.5.9(b) Nozzle wall shear

$= \pi/2 \times$ mean nozzle diam. $\times\ t_n \times$ 9,590

$= 1.57 \times 15.5 \times 0.5 \times 9{,}590$

$= 117{,}000$ lb

L-7.5.9(c) Lower groove weld tension

$= \pi/2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times$ 10,100

$= 1.57 \times 16.0 \times 0.375 \times 10{,}100$

$= 95{,}100$ lb

L-7.5.9(d) Outer (reinforcing element) fillet weld

$= \pi/2 \times$ reinforcing element O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times$ 6,710

$= 1.57 \times 28.25 \times 0.875 \times 6{,}710$

$= 260{,}000$ lb

L-7.5.9(e) Upper groove weld tension

$= \pi/2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times$ 10,100

$= 1.57 \times 16.0 \times 0.375 \times 10{,}100$

$= 95{,}100$ lb

L-7.5.10 Check Strength Paths per UG-41(b)(1)

1-1 $260{,}000 + 117{,}000 = 377{,}000$ lb

$> W_{1\text{-}1} = 281{,}000 \text{ lb} \ \therefore$ OK

2-2 $63{,}200 + 95{,}100 + 95{,}100 = 253{,}000$ lb

$> W_{2\text{-}2} = 42{,}500 \text{ lb} \ \therefore$ OK

3-3 $260{,}000 + 95{,}100 = 355{,}000$ lb

$> W_{3\text{-}3} = 305{,}000 \text{ lb} \ \therefore$ OK

Check strength paths by UG-41(b)(2). Paths 1-1 and 3-3 are stronger than total weld load, $W = 284{,}000$ lb and are acceptable. Path 2-2 does not have sufficient strength to resist load W but the weld is acceptable by UG-41(b)(1).

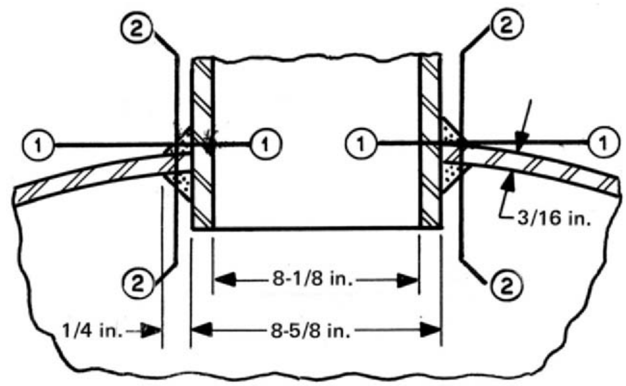


FIG. L-7.6.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

L-7.6 Example 6

L-7.6.1 Given. An NPS 8 Schedule 20 nozzle is attached by welding to the center of a seamless 2:1 ellipsoidal head that has an inside diameter of $23\frac{5}{8}$ in. and a thickness of $\frac{3}{16}$ in. The allowable stress of the nozzle material is 12,000 psi and the head material is 17,500 psi. The vessel internal design pressure is 150 psi at a design temperature of 400°F. There is no corrosion allowance and no radiography is performed on the vessel. Check the adequacy of the opening reinforcement and attachment welds as shown in Fig. L-7.6.1.

The use of UG-45 rules for determination of nozzle wall thickness or calculation of shear stresses caused by shear producing loads is illustrated in Examples 2, 5, and 8 (see L-7.2, L-7.5, and L-7.8).

L-7.6.2 Determine if the opening and its reinforcement in the ellipsoidal head are located entirely within a centrally located circle which has a diameter equal to 80% of the shell diameter [see UG-37(a)].

$$0.8 \times 23.625 = 18.9 \text{ in.}$$

$$2d = 2 \times 8.125 = 16.25 \text{ in.}$$

Therefore, the required head thickness for reinforcement calculations are to be determined by the hemispherical head formula using a radius of K_1D where $K_1 = 0.9$ for a 2:1 ellipsoidal head.

Required head thickness:

$$t_r = \frac{PK_1D}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{150 \times 0.9 \times 23.625}{2(17{,}500) \times 1.0 - 0.2 \times 150} = 0.091 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$$\text{Nozzle } t_{rn} = \frac{PR_n}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{150 \times 4.063}{12{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 150}$$

$$= 0.051 \text{ in.}$$

L-7.6.3 Size of Weld Required [UW-16(d), Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (i)]

L-7.6.3(a)

t_1 or t_2 = not less than the smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or $0.7t_{min}$

$= 0.7 \times 0.188 = 0.132$ in.; therefore throat must be at least 0.132 in.

$= 0.7 \times$ weld size

$= 0.7 \times 0.250$

$= 0.175$ in. (actual)

$$t_1 + t_2 \geq 1\tfrac{1}{4}t_{min}$$

$$0.175 + 0.175 \geq 1.25 \times 0.188$$

$$0.350 \geq 0.235$$

Cover weld satisfactory.

$$f_{r1} = f_{r2} = S_n / S_v = 12{,}000 / 17{,}500 = 0.686$$

L-7.6.3(b) Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.6.3(b)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 8.125 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$R_n + t_n + t = 4.063 + 0.25 + 0.188$$

$$= 4.5 \text{ in.}$$

Use 8.125 in.

L-7.6.3(b)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 0.188 = 0.47 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$2.5t_n + t_e = 2.5 \times 0.25 + 0$$

$$= 0.63 \text{ in.}$$

Use 0.47 in.

L-7.6.4 Area of Reinforcement Required

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= (8.125 \times 0.091 \times 1) + 2 \times 0.25 \times 0.091(1 - 0.686)$$

$$= 0.754 \qquad 0.754 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.6.5 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.6.5(a) Area available in shell:

A_1 = larger of the following

$$= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r) \times (1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= 8.125(1 \times 0.188 - 1 \times 0.091) - 2 \times 0.25(1 \times 0.188 - 1 \times 0.091) \times (1 - 0.686)$$

$$= 0.773 \qquad 0.773 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r) \times (1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= 2(0.25 + 0.188)(1 \times 0.188 - 1 \times 0.091) - 2 \times 0.25(1 \times 0.188 - 1 \times 0.091) \times (1 - 0.686)$$

$$= 0.070$$

L-7.6.5(b) Area available in outward nozzle:

A_2 = smaller of following with adjustment for differences in allowable stresses of vessel nozzle [see UG-41(a)]

$$= (t_n - t_{rn})5tf_{r2}$$

$$= (0.25 - 0.051)(5)(0.188)(0.686)$$

$$= 0.128 \qquad 0.128 \text{ sq in.}$$

or

$$= (t_n - t_{rn})(5t_n + 2t_e)f_{r2}$$

$$= (0.25 - 0.051)(5 \times 0.25 + 0)(0.686)$$

$$= 0.171$$

L-7.6.5(c) Area available in inward nozzle projection:

$$A_3 = (t_n - c)2hf_{r2}$$

h = smaller of $2.5t$ or $2.5t_n$

$$= 2.5(0.188) \text{ or } 2.5(0.250)$$

$$h = 0.47$$

$$A_3 = (0.250 - 0)2 \times 0.47 \times 0.686 = \qquad 0.161 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.6.5(d) Area available in fillet welds:

$$A_{41} + A_{43} = 4 \times 0.5 \times 0.25^2 \times 0.686 = \underline{0.086} \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.6.5(e) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} =$ 1.15 sq in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

This is greater than the required area so a reinforcing element is not needed.

L-7.6.6 Load to Be Carried by Welds [Fig. UG-41.1 Sketch (a)]

L-7.6.6(a) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$W_{1\text{-}1} = (A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})\, S_v$$
$$= (0.128 + 0 + 0.043 + 0) \times 17{,}500$$
$$= 2{,}990 \text{ lb}$$

$$W_{2\text{-}2} = (A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})\, S_v$$
$$= [0.128 + 0.161 + 0.086 + 2(0.25 \times 0.188 \times 0.686)] \times 17{,}500$$
$$= 7{,}690 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.6.6(b) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$W = [A - A_1 + 2t_n f_{r1}(E_1 t - F t_r)]\, S_v$$
$$= [0.754 - 0.773 + 2 \times 0.25 \times 0.686(1 \times 0.188 - 1.0 \times 0.091)]\ 17{,}500$$
$$= 250 \text{ lb}$$

Since W is smaller than W_{1-1} and W_{2-2}, W may be used in place of W_{1-1} and W_{2-2} for comparing weld capacity to weld load.

L-7.6.7 Unit Stresses [UW-15(c), UG-45(c)]

L-7.6.7(a) Fillet weld shear

$$= 0.49 \times 12{,}000$$
$$= 5{,}880 \text{ psi}$$

L-7.6.7(b) Nozzle wall shear

$$= 0.7 \times 12{,}000$$
$$= 8{,}400 \text{ psi}$$

L-7.6.8 Strength of Connection Elements

L-7.6.8(a) Fillet weld shear

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{nozzle O.D.} \times \text{weld leg} \times 5{,}880$$
$$= 1.57 \times 8.625 \times 0.250 \times 5{,}880$$
$$= 19{,}900 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.6.8(b) Nozzle wall shear

$$= \pi / 2 \times \text{mean nozzle diam.} \times t_n \times 8{,}400$$
$$= 1.57 \times 8.375 \times 0.250 \times 8{,}400$$
$$= 27{,}600 \text{ lb}$$

L-7.6.9 Check Strength Paths

1-1 $19{,}900 + 27{,}600 = 47{,}500$ lb

2-2 $19{,}900 + 19{,}900 = 39{,}800$ lb

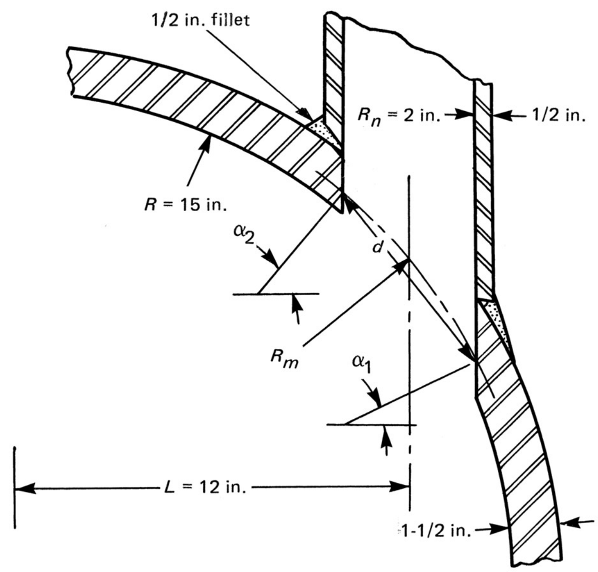


FIG. L-7.7.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

All paths are stronger than the required strength of 250 lb [UG-41(b)(2)].

L-7.7 Example 7

L-7.7.1 Given. A 4 in. I.D., $\frac{1}{2}$ in. wall "hill-side" nozzle is attached by welding to a cylindrical vessel that has an inside diameter of 30 in. and a shell thickness of $1\frac{1}{2}$ in. The vessel's internal design pressure is 1000 psi at a design temperature of 150°F. The nozzle and shell materials conform to specifications with allowable stresses of 15,000 psi and 13,800 psi, respectively, at the operating temperature. There is no allowance for corrosion. Category A joints (see UW-3) are to be fully radiographed. There are no butt welds in the nozzle and the nozzle does not pass through a shell Category A joint. Check the opening for reinforcement and check the adequacy of the attachment welds shown in Fig. L-7.7.1.

The use of UG-45 rules for determination of nozzle wall thickness or calculation of shear stresses caused by shear producing loads is illustrated in Examples 2, 5, and 8 (see L-7.2, L-7.5, and L-7.8).

L-7.7.2 Wall Thickness Required

$$\text{Shell } t_r = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$
$$= \frac{1{,}000 \times 15}{13{,}800 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 1{,}000}$$
$$= 1.14 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Nozzle } t_{rn} = \frac{PR_n}{SE - 0.6P}$$
$$= \frac{1{,}000 \times 2}{15{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 1{,}000}$$
$$= 0.139 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-7.7.3 Size of Weld Required [UW-16(b), Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (a)]

Outward nozzle fillet weld:

$$t_c = \text{smaller of } 1/4 \text{ in. or } 0.7 t_{\min}$$

$$t_{\min} = \text{smaller of } 3/4 \text{ in. or thinner of thicknesses joined.}$$

$$= 0.5 \text{ in.}$$

$$0.7\, t_{\min} = 0.7 \times 0.5 = 0.35 \text{ in.}$$

$$t_c = 0.25 \text{ in. (minimum throat required)}$$

$$\text{weld throat} = 0.7 \times 0.5 = 0.35 \text{ in.}$$

Weld size is satisfactory.

L-7.7.4 Calculate the strength reduction factor.

$$f_{r1} = 1.0$$

$$f_{r2} = S_n / S_v = 15.0 / 13.8 > 1.0 \qquad f_{r2} = 1.0$$

L-7.7.5

L-7.7.5(a) Calculate the opening chord length at midsurface of the required shell thickness as follows.

$$R_m = R + t_r / 2 = 15 + 1.14 / 2 = 15.6 \text{ in.}$$

$$L = 12 \text{ in.}$$

$$\alpha_1 = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{L + R_n}{R_m}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{12 + 2}{15.6}\right) = 26.2 \text{ deg}$$

$$\alpha_2 = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{L - R_n}{R_m}\right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{12 - 2}{15.6}\right) = 50.1 \text{ deg}$$

$$\alpha = \alpha_2 - \alpha_1 = 50.1 - 26.2 = 23.9 \text{ deg}$$

$$d = 2R_m \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 (\alpha /2)} = 2\,(15.6) \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 (23.9/2)} = 6.46 \text{ in.}$$

Per UG-37(b) and Fig. UG-37, $F = 0.5$.

L-7.7.5(b) Check for limits of reinforcement:

L-7.7.5(b)(1) Limit parallel to the vessel wall (circumferentially and longitudinally): larger of

$$d_c = 6.46 \text{ in. and } d_l = 4.0 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$R_{nc} + t_n + t = 3.23 + 0.5 + 1.5 = 5.23 \text{ in.}$$

$$R_{nl} + t_n + t = 2.0 + 0.5 + 1.5 = 4.0 \text{ in.}$$

Use 6.5 in. circ.; use 4.0 in. long.

L-7.7.5(b)(2) Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 1.5 = 3.75 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$2.5t_n + t_e = 2.5 \times 0.5 + 0 = 1.25 \text{ in.}$$

Use 1.25 in.

L-7.7.6 Area of Reinforcement Required

$$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF\,(1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= 6.46 \times 1.14 \times 0.5 + 0 = \qquad 3.68 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.7.7 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.7.7(a) Area available in shell:

$$A_1 = \text{larger of the following}$$

$$= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)\,(1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= 6.46(1.0 \times 1.5 - 0.5 \times 1.14) - 0$$

$$= 6.01$$

or

$$= 2(t + t_n)\,(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r) \times (1 - f_{r1})$$

$$= 2(1.5 + 0.5)\,(1.0 \times 1.5 - 0.5 \times 1.14) - 0$$

$$= 3.72 \qquad 6.01 \text{ sq in.}$$

L-7.7.7(b) Area available in nozzle:

$$A_2 = \text{smaller of following}$$

$$= 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t$$

$$= 5(0.5 - 0.139)\,(1.0)\,(1.5)$$

$$= 2.71$$

or

$$= 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t_n$$

$$= 5(0.5 - 0.139)\,(1.0)\,(0.5)$$

$$= 0.903 \qquad 0.903 \text{ sq in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-7.7.7(c) Area available in outward nozzle weld:

$A_{41} = (\text{leg})^2 f_{r2}$

$= (0.5)^2(1.0) =$ $\underline{0.25}$ sq in.

L-7.7.7(d) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41}$

$= 6.01 + 0.903 + 0.25 =$ 7.16 sq in.

This is greater than the required reinforcing area of 3.68 sq in. Therefore the opening is adequately reinforced in the plane considered.

L-7.7.8 Load to Be Carried by Welds [UG-41(b) and UW-15(b)]. Since the nozzle neck abuts the vessel wall and the available reinforcement A_1 in the shell is larger than the required reinforcement, the strength of the attachment welds is adequate. Detail is also exempted from weld strength calculation by UW-15(b).

Since the plane under consideration requires only 50% ($F = 0.5$) of the required reinforcement in the plane parallel to the longitudinal shell axis, the opening may not be adequately reinforced in the other planes. A check for reinforcement in plane parallel to the longitudinal shell axis is needed.

$d = 4$ in.

$F = 1.0$

L-7.7.8(a) Area of reinforcement required:

$A = dt_rF + 2t_nt_rF(1 - f_{r1})$

$= 4 \times 1.14 \times 1.0 =$ 4.56 sq in.

L-7.7.8(b) Area available in shell:

$A_1 =$ larger of following

$= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)(1 - f_{r1})$

$= 4(1.0 \times 1.5 - 1.0 \times 1.14) - 0$

$= 1.44$

or

$= 2(t + t_n)(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r)$
$\times (1 - f_{r1})$

$= 2(1.5 + 0.5)(1.0 \times 1.5$
$- 1.0 \times 1.14) - 0$

$= 1.44$ 1.44 sq in.

L-7.7.8(c) Area available in nozzle:

$A_2 =$ 0.903 sq in.

L-7.7.8(d) Area available in outward nozzle weld:

$A_{41} =$ $\underline{0.25}$ sq in.

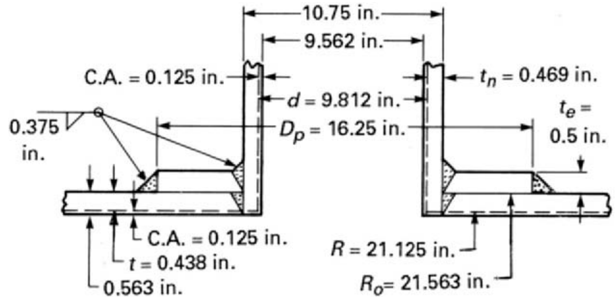


FIG. L-7.8.1 EXAMPLE OF REINFORCED OPENING

L-7.7.8(e) Area provided by $A_1 + A_2 + A_{41}$

$= 1.44 + 0.903 + 0.25 =$ 2.59 sq in.

L-7.7.9 This is less than the required reinforcing area of 4.544 sq in.; therefore, the opening is not adequately reinforced.

L-7.7.9(a) The approach of adding a separate reinforcing plate will change the F correction factor from 0.5 to 1.0 for the plane under consideration as shown in Fig. L-7.7.1. Since the opening is adequately reinforced in that plane, a better approach is to increase the nozzle wall thickness from $\frac{1}{2}$ in. to $\frac{7}{8}$ in. The available reinforcing area becomes 5.2 sq in., which is greater than the required reinforcing area of 4.54 sq in. Therefore, the opening is adequately reinforced in all planes with a $\frac{7}{8}$ in. nozzle wall. Recalculating

$A_1 = 2(1.5 + 0.875)(1.0 \times 1.5$
$- 1.0 \times 1.14) - 0 = 1.71$

$A_2 = 5(0.875 - 0.139)0.875$
$= 3.22 \text{ in.}^2$

$A_1 + A_2 + A_{41}$
$= 1.71 + 3.22 + 0.25 = 5.18 \text{ in.}^2$

which is greater than required.

L-7.7.9(b) Check outside fillet weld:

$t_{min} =$ smaller of $\frac{3}{4}$ in. or $\frac{7}{8}$ in.
$= \frac{3}{4}$ in.

$t_c =$ smaller of $\frac{1}{4}$ in. or $0.7t_{min}$
$= \frac{1}{4}$ in. (minimum throat required)

Weld throat of $0.7 \times 0.5 = 0.35$ in. is satisfactory. Weld strength calculations are not required. See UW-15(b).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

L-7.8 Example 8

L-7.8.1 Given. A nozzle fabricated from an NPS 10 Schedule 80 seamless pipe is attached by welding to a vessel that has an inside diameter of 42 in. The nozzle neck is inserted through the vessel wall as shown in Fig. L-7.8.1. The design condition, vessel and nozzle configurations, and material allowable stresses are as follows:

Design conditions:

Internal design pressure = 300 psi

Design temperature = 650°F

No piping load or external load

Shell O.D. = 43.125 in., thickness = 0.563 in., S_v = 17,500 psi, E = 0.85, C.A. = 0.125 in.

Nozzle O.D. = 10.75 in., thickness = 0.594 in., S_n = 12,000 psi, E = 1.00, C.A. = 0.125 in., outward nozzle weld leg = 0.375 in.

Reinforcing element O.D. = 16.25 in., thickness = 0.500 in., S_p = 15,000 psi, C.A. = 0.0 in., outer element weld leg = 0.375 in.

Nozzle is *not* at the shell welded seam, E_1 = 1.0.

L-7.8.2 Calculations

$$R = (43.125 - 2 \times 0.563)/2 + 0.125 = 21.125 \text{ in.}$$

$$R_n = (10.75 - 2 \times 0.594)/2 + 0.125 = 4.906 \text{ in.}$$

$$d = 2R_n = 2 \times 4.906 = 9.812 \text{ in.}$$

$$t = 0.563 - 0.125 = 0.438 \text{ in.}$$

$$t_n = 0.594 - 0.125 = 0.469 \text{ in.}$$

$$\begin{aligned} t_r &= PR/(S_v E_1 - 0.6P) \\ &= 300 \times 21.125/(17{,}500 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 300) \\ &= 0.366 \text{ in.} < 0.438 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} t_{rn} &= PR_n/(S_n E - 0.6P) \\ &= 300 \times 4.906/(12{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 300) \\ &= 0.125 \text{ in.} < 0.594 \times 0.875 - 0.125 = 0.395 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.8.3 Check minimum nozzle wall thickness to meet UG-45 rules.

From UG-45(a), t_{rn} = 0.125 in. + C.A. = 0.250 in.

From UG-45(b):

Per UG-45(b)(1), t_r = 0.366 in. + C.A. = 0.491 in. UG-45(b)(2) does not apply to this example. UG-45(b)(3) does not apply to this example. Per UG-45(b)(4), the minimum thickness of standard wall NPS 10 pipe size plus C.A.

$$= 0.365 \times 0.875 + 0.125 = 0.444 \text{ in.}$$

Thickness (b)(4) is less than thickness (b)(1) and, therefore (b)(4) governs.

Shear stresses caused by superimposed loads on the nozzle per UG-22(c) do not apply to this example.

The minimum nozzle wall thickness required by UG-45 is the largest of UG-45(a) (0.250 in.), UG-45(b) (0.444 in.), and UG-45(c) (0.0 in.). The 0.444 in. thickness required by UG-45(b) governs which is less than the minimum thickness provided of 0.594 × 0.875 = 0.520 in.

Other examples of rules in UG-45 are shown in Examples 2 and 5 (see L-7.2 and L-7.5).

L-7.8.4 Size of Welds Required [UW-16(c), Fig. UW-16.1 Sketch (a-1)]

L-7.8.4(a) Outward nozzle weld:

$$t_c = 0.7 \times t_{\min} = 0.7 \times 0.469 = 0.328 \text{ in. or } 0.25 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Weld leg size} = 0.25/0.7 = 0.357 \text{ in.} < 0.375 \text{ in.}$$

L-7.8.4(b) Outer element weld:

$$0.5 \times t_{\min} = 0.5 \times 0.438 = 0.219 \text{ in.}$$

$$\text{Weld leg size} = 0.219/0.7 = 0.313 \text{ in.} < 0.375 \text{ in.}$$

Weld sizes are satisfactory.

L-7.8.5 Check for Limits of Reinforcement

Limit parallel to the vessel wall: larger of

$$d = 9.812 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} R_n + t_n + t &= 4.906 + 0.469 + 0.438 \\ &= 5.8 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

Use 9.812 in.

Limit normal to vessel wall: smaller of

$$2.5t = 2.5 \times 0.438 = 1.095 \text{ in.}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} 2.5t_n + t_e &= 2.5 \times 0.469 + 0.5 \\ &= 1.673 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

Use 1.095 in.

Reinforcing element O.D. + 2 × outer element weld leg

$$= 16.25 + 2 \times 0.375 = 17.0 \text{ in.} < 19.6 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Reinforcing element and welds are within the limit.

$$f_{r1} = S_n/S_v = 12{,}000/17{,}500 = 0.686$$

$$f_{r2} = S_n/S_v = 12{,}000/17{,}500 = 0.686$$

$$f_{r3} = S_n/S_v = 12{,}000/17{,}500 = 0.686$$

$$f_{r4} = S_p/S_v = 15{,}000/17{,}500 = 0.857$$

L-7.8.6 Area of Reinforcement Required

$$\begin{aligned} A &= dt_rF + 2\,t_n\,t_r\,F\,(1 - f_{r1}) \\ &= 9.812 \times 0.366 \times 1.0 + 2 \times 0.469 \times 0.366 \\ &\quad \times 1.0 \times (1 - 0.686) \\ &= 3.59 + 0.108 \\ &= 3.70 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.8.7 Area of Reinforcement Available

L-7.8.7(a) Area available in shell:

$$\begin{aligned} A_1 &= \text{larger of the following} \\ &= d(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n\,(E_1t - Ft_r)\,(1 - f_{r1}) \\ &= 9.812\,(1 \times 0.438 - 1 \times 0.366) \\ &\quad - 2 \times 0.469\,(1 \times 0.438 - 1 \times 0.366) \\ &\quad \times (1 - 0.686) \\ &= 0.707 - 0.021 \\ &= 0.685 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2(t + t_n)\,(E_1t - Ft_r) - 2t_n(E_1t - Ft_r) \\ &\quad \times (1 - f_{r1}) \\ &= 2(0.438 + 0.469)\,(1 \times 0.438 - 1 \times 0.366) \\ &\quad - 2 \times 0.469\,(1 \times 0.438 - 1 \times 0.366) \\ &\quad \times (1 - 0.686) \\ &= 0.131 - 0.021 \\ &= 0.110 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

Use $A_1 = 0.685$ sq in.

L-7.8.7(b) Area available in nozzle:

$$\begin{aligned} A_2 &= \text{smaller of following} \\ &= 5(t_n - t_{rn})f_{r2}t \\ &= 5(0.469 - 0.125) \times 0.686 \times 0.438 \\ &= 0.517 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} &= 2(t_n - t_{rn})\,(2.5\,t_n + t_e)f_{r2} \\ &= 2(0.469 - 0.125)\,(2.5 \times 0.469 + 0.5) \\ &\quad \times 0.686 \\ &= 0.789 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

Use $A_2 = 0.517$ sq in.

L-7.8.7(c) Area available in fillet weld:

$$\begin{aligned} A_{41} &= (\text{leg})^2 f_{r3} \\ &= (0.375)^2 \times 0.686 \\ &= 0.096 \text{ sq in.} \\ A_{42} &= (\text{leg})^2 f_{r4} \\ &= (0.375)^2 \times 0.857 \\ &= 0.121 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.8.7(d) Area available in reinforcing element:

$$\begin{aligned} A_5 &= (D_p - d - 2t_n)\,t_e\,f_{r4} \\ &= (16.25 - 9.812 - 2 \times 0.469) \times 0.5 \times 0.857 \\ &= 2.36 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.8.7(e) Total area available:

$$\begin{aligned} &A_1 + A_2 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_5 \\ &\quad = 0.685 + 0.517 + 0.096 + 0.121 + 2.36 \\ &\quad = 3.78 \text{ sq in.} > 3.70 \text{ sq in.} \end{aligned}$$

The available reinforcement is greater than the required reinforcement. Thus, the nozzle is adequately reinforced.

L-7.8.8 Load to Be Carried by Welds [Fig. UG-41.1 Sketch (a)]

L-7.8.8(a) Per UG-41(b)(2):

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \text{total weld load [UG-41(b)(2)]} \\ &= [A - (d - 2t_n)\,(E_1t - Ft_r)]\,S_v \\ &= [3.70 - (9.812 - 2 \times 0.469)\,(1 \times 0.438 \\ &\quad - 1 \times 0.366)] \times 17{,}500 \\ &= 53{,}600 \text{ lb} \end{aligned}$$

L-7.8.8(b) Per UG-41(b)(1):

$$\begin{aligned} W_{1\text{-}1} &= \text{weld load for strength path 1-1 [UG-41(b)(1)]} \\ &= (A_2 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42})\,S_v \\ &= (0.517 + 2.36 + 0.096 + 0.121) \times 17{,}500 \\ &= 54{,}100 \text{ lb} \end{aligned}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

$W_{2\text{-}2}$ = weld load for strength path 2-2 [UG-41(b)(1)]

$= (A_2 + A_3 + A_{41} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})\ S_v$

$= (0.517 + 0 + 0.096 + 0 + 2 \times 0.469 \times 0.438 \times 0.686) \times 17{,}500$

$= 15{,}700$ lb

$W_{3\text{-}3}$ = weld load for strength path 3-3 [UG-41(b)(1)]

$= (A_2 + A_3 + A_5 + A_{41} + A_{42} + A_{43} + 2t_n t f_{r1})\ S_v$

$= (0.517 + 0 + 2.36 + 0.096 + 0.121 + 0 + 2 \times 0.469 \times 0.438 \times 0.686) \times 17{,}500$

$= 59{,}100$ lb

Since the weld load W calculated by UG-41(b)(2) is smaller than $W_{1\text{-}1}$ and $W_{3\text{-}3}$ calculated by UG-41(b)(1), W may be used in place of $W_{1\text{-}1}$ and $W_{3\text{-}3}$ for comparing weld capacity to weld load.

L-7.8.9 Unit Stresses [UW-15(c) and UG-45(c)]

L-7.8.9(a) Outward nozzle weld shear

$= 0.49 \times 12{,}000$

$= 5{,}880$ psi

L-7.8.9(b) Outer element weld shear

$= 0.49 \times 15{,}000$

$= 7{,}350$ psi

L-7.8.9(c) Nozzle wall shear

$= 0.70 \times 12{,}000$

$= 8{,}400$ psi

L-7.8.9(d) Element groove weld tension

$= 0.74 \times 12{,}000$

$= 8{,}880$ psi

L-7.8.9(e) Nozzle groove weld tension

$= 0.74 \times 12{,}000$

$= 8{,}880$ psi

L-7.8.10 Strength of Connection Elements

L-7.8.10(a) Outward nozzle weld shear

$= \pi / 2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times 5{,}880$

$= 1.57 \times 10.75 \times 0.375 \times 5{,}880$

$= 37{,}200$ lb

L-7.8.10(b) Outer element weld shear

$= \pi / 2 \times$ reinforcing element O.D. $\times$ weld leg $\times 7{,}350$

$= 1.57 \times 16.25 \times 0.375 \times 7{,}350$

$= 70{,}300$ lb

L-7.8.10(c) Nozzle wall shear

$= \pi / 2 \times$ mean nozzle diam. $\times t_n \times 8{,}400$

$= 1.57 \times 10.281 \times 0.469 \times 8{,}400$

$= 63{,}600$ lb

L-7.8.10(d) Element groove weld tension

$= \pi / 2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times t_e \times 8{,}880$

$= 1.57 \times 10.75 \times 0.500 \times 8{,}880$

$= 74{,}900$ lb

L-7.8.10(e) Nozzle groove weld tension

$= \pi / 2 \times$ nozzle O.D. $\times t \times 8{,}880$

$= 1.57 \times 10.75 \times 0.438 \times 8{,}880$

$= 65{,}600$ lb

L-7.8.11 Check Strength Paths

$1\text{-}1 = 70{,}300 + 63{,}600 = 134{,}000 \text{ lb} > W_{1\text{-}1} = 54{,}100 \text{ lb}$

$2\text{-}2 = 37{,}200 + 74{,}900 + 65{,}600 = 178{,}000 \text{ lb} > W_{2\text{-}2} = 15{,}700 \text{ lb}$

$3\text{-}3 = 70{,}300 + 65{,}600 = 136{,}000 \text{ lb} > W_{3\text{-}3} = 59{,}100 \text{ lb}$

Also, paths are stronger than the required strength of 53,600 lb. Thus, the design is adequate.

LIGAMENTS

L-8 EFFICIENCY OF LIGAMENTS

L-8.1 Example 1

GIVEN: Pitch of tube holes in a cylindrical shell, as shown in Fig. UG-53.1, = $5^1/_4$ in.; diameter of tube = $3^1/_4$ in.; diameter of tube holes = $3^9/_{32}$ in.

REQUIRED: Efficiency of the ligament.

SOLUTION: $= \dfrac{p - d}{p} = \dfrac{5.25 - 3.281}{5.25}$

$= 0.375$ or 37.5%

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

L-8.2 Example 2

GIVEN: Spacing of tube holes in a cylindrical shell as shown in Fig. UG-53.2. Diameter of tube holes $= 3^9\!/_{32}$ in.

REQUIRED: Efficiency of the ligament

$$\text{SOLUTION: } = \frac{p - nd}{p} = \frac{12 - 2 \times 3.281}{12}$$

$$= 0.453 \text{ or } 45.3\%$$

L-8.3 Example 3

GIVEN: Spacing of tube holes in a cylindrical shell as shown in Fig. UG-53.3. Diameter of tube holes $= 3^9\!/_{32}$ in.

REQUIRED: Efficiency of the ligament

$$\text{SOLUTION: } = \frac{p - nd}{p} = \frac{29.25 - 5 \times 3.281}{29.25}$$

$$= 0.439 \text{ or } 43.9\%$$

L-8.4 Example 4

GIVEN: Diagonal pitch of tube holes in a cylindrical shell, as shown in Fig. UG-53.4 = 6.42 in. Diameter of holes $= 4^1\!/_{32}$ in. Longitudinal pitch of tube holes $= 11^1\!/_2$ in. $= p = p_1$.

REQUIRED: Diagonal ligament efficiency

SOLUTION:

$$\text{Longitudinal efficiency} = \frac{p - d}{p} = \frac{11.5 - 4.031}{11.5}$$

$$= 0.649 \text{ or } 64.9\%$$

$$\frac{p'}{p_1} = \frac{6.42}{11.5} = 0.558$$

From the diagram in Fig. UG-53.5, the efficiency is 37.0%.

L-8.5 Example 5

GIVEN: Diagonal pitch of tube holes $= 6^{35}\!/_{64}$ in. Diameter of tube holes $= 4^1\!/_{64}$ in. Longitudinal pitch of tube holes $= 6^1\!/_2$ in. $= p = p_1$.

$$\frac{p'}{p} = \frac{6.547}{6.5} = 1.007$$

$$\text{Longitudinal efficiency} = \frac{p - d}{p} = \frac{6.5 - 4.0156}{6.5}$$

$$= 0.3822 \text{ or } 38.22\%$$

From the diagram in Fig. UG-53.5, it can be seen that the vertical line representing the longitudinal efficiency intersects the $p' \,/\, p_1$ value of 1.006 above the curve representing equal longitudinal and diagonal efficiencies. Thus it can be seen that the longitudinal efficiency is less and is the value to be used.

L-9 EXAMPLE OF DETERMINATION OF COLDEST ALLOWABLE MINIMUM DESIGN METAL TEMPERATURE (MDMT) USING UCS-66 RULES

The following illustrates the use of the rules in UCS-66 for determining the coldest allowable MDMT of a steel vessel without impact testing. The vessel selected for the illustration is as shown in Fig. L-9-1 and is further described on the Design Data Sheet and in Step 1 of the calculations covering the various governing thicknesses as defined in UCS-66(a)(1), (a)(2), and (a)(3). For purposes of illustration, all governing thicknesses so defined, and the joints they represent, are analyzed even though it can be readily determined by inspection that certain of them would not limit the MDMT in view of the low level of general primary membrane tensile stress. This is typically the case, and, accordingly, the following is not intended to represent a typical set of Code calculations covering the determination of the MDMT to be marked on the nameplate.

L-9.1 Design Data (See Also Fig. L-9-1)

MAWP: 400 psi at 700°F (see Note below)
MDMT: (to be determined) at 400 psi
Butt joint type: Type No. 1 (see Table UW-12)
Radiography: spot radiography of entire vessel [see UW-11(b)]; spot radiography requirements of UW-11(a)(5)(b) shall be met for Category B head-to-shell weld.
Full radiography for Category A joint in ellipsoidal head.
Corrosion allowance: 0.125 in.
Specific gravity of service fluid: 1.0
Maximum hydrostatic head: 2.2 psi
Special service requirements: do not apply [see UG-120(d)].
Pressure loadings govern general primary membrane tensile stress. [See General Note (2), Fig. UCS-66.2.]
Shock (thermal or mechanical) and cyclic loadings: do not control design requirements.
Materials of construction: see Fig. L-9-1

NOTE: The 700°F maximum temperature rating prohibits the consideration of the rules in UG-20(f) for determining the MDMT to be marked on the nameplate of this vessel [see UG-20(f)(3)].

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

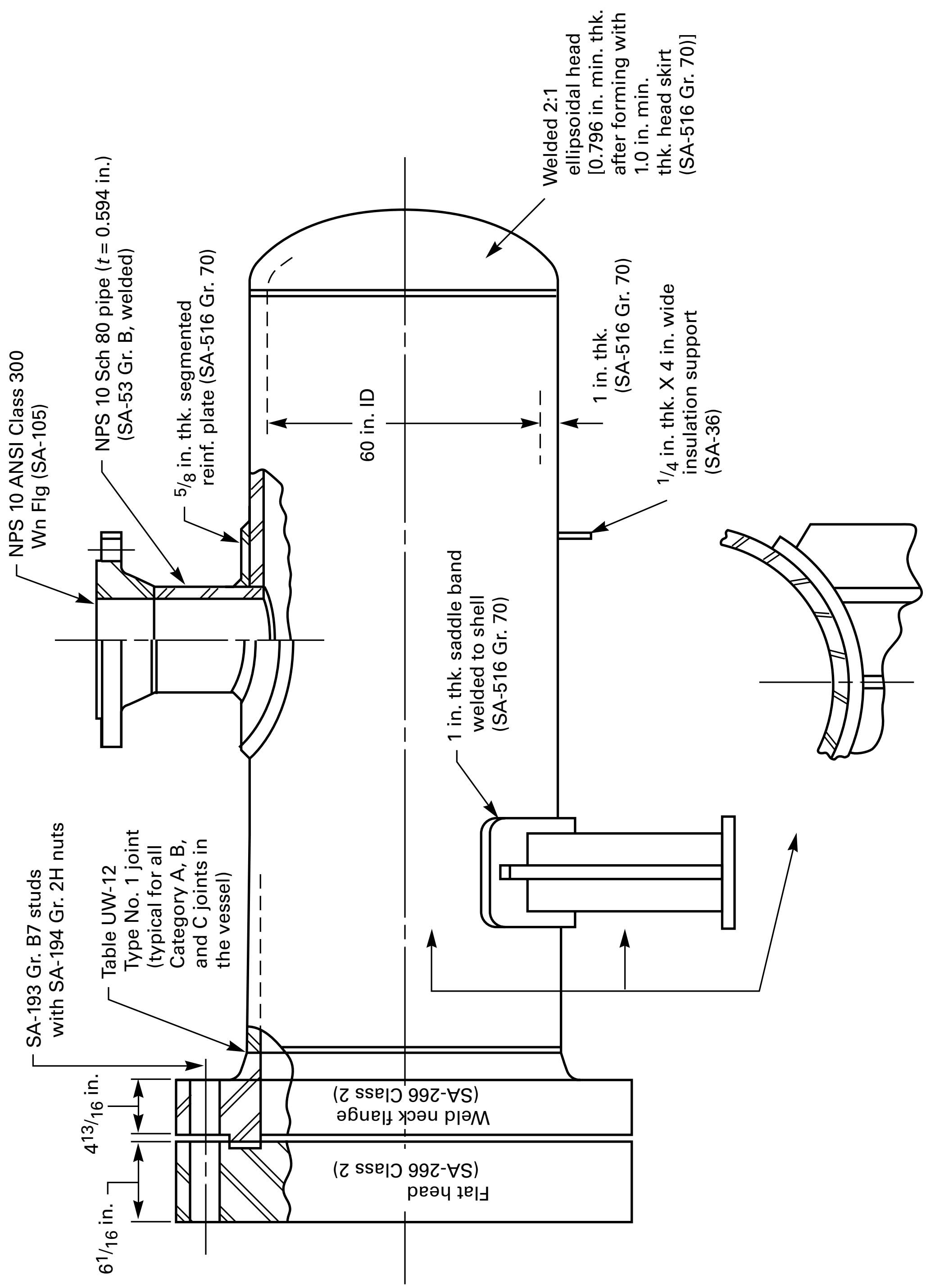


FIG. L-9-1

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

L-9.2 Governing Thickness for Butt Joints

[See definition of governing thickness, UCS-66(a)(1)(a).]

L-9.2.1 Category A Butt Joints in Shell

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Shell material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1

Figure UCS-66 material classification: Curve B

Joint efficiency, $E = 0.85$; $E^* = 0.85$

Required shell thickness:

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P} = \frac{402.2\ (30.125)}{18{,}100\ (0.85) - 0.6\ (402.2)}$$
$$= 0.800 \text{ in.}$$

$$t_n = 0.800 + 0.125 = 0.925 \text{ in.:}$$

Specify 1 in. nominal; this is the governing thickness for the subject joints.

Required thickness for adjusted MDMT determination:

$$t_r = \frac{402.2\ (30.125)}{20{,}000(0.85) - 0.6(402.2)} = 0.723 \text{ in.}$$

Step 2. From Table UCS-66, the unadjusted MDMT for a 1 in. governing thickness of Curve B material is 31°F.

Step 3

$$\text{Ratio } \frac{t_r E^*}{t_n - c} = \frac{0.723 \times 0.85}{1.00 - 0.125} = 0.702$$

Alternative Step 3

$$S^* = \frac{P}{t_n - c}\,[R + 0.6(t_n - c)]$$

derived from UG-27(c)(1)

$$\frac{S^* E^*}{S_{allow} E} = \frac{\dfrac{402.2(0.85)}{0.875}\,[30.125 + 0.6(0.875)]}{20{,}000(0.85)} = 0.704$$

This Ratio is, for practical purposes, the same as that based on thicknesses.

Step 4

$$(1 - \text{Ratio})100 = (1 - 0.702)100 = 29°\text{F}$$

[See General Note (9), Fig. UCS-66.2.]

Step 5

$$\text{Adjusted MDMT} = 31 - 29 = 2°\text{F}$$

L-9.2.2 Category B Butt Joints in Shell, Category C Body Flange-to-Shell Butt Joint, Category C Pipe Flange-to-Nozzle Neck Butt Joint

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Shell material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1
Flange material: SA-266 Cl.2	20.0	17.2
Nozzle neck material: SA-53 Gr. B welded	14.6[4]	13.3[4]

Nozzle flange material: SA-105[5]

Figure UCS-66 material classification: Curve B

Joint efficiency, $E = 0.85$; $E^* = 0.85$

Nozzle flange rating per ASME B16.5: 740 psig at MDMT

Body flange rating per Appendix 2: 685 psig at MDMT

Steps 2–5. The circumferential (hoop) stress due to pressure acting on the welds in the subject Category B and C butt joints is considered to be a primary local stress. Therefore, the maximum general primary membrane tensile stress acting on these joints is longitudinal in direction, and the total required thickness in the longitudinal direction due to the combined action of pressure and external longitudinal bending moment across the full section can be equal to that required for pressure for the intersecting Category A joints without changing (making warmer) the 2°F adjusted MDMT determined for these Category A joints. Since, by specification, the pressure loadings govern the general primary membrane tensile stress, the MDMT of the vessel will therefore not be governed by these Category B and C butt joints.

The MDMT of the body flange and nozzle flange could have been further reduced using UCS-66(b)(1)(b).

(a) For the body flange, the ratio of MAWP over MAP at the MDMT is:

(1) The governing thickness for the body flange is 1 in. at the Category C butt joint. From Table UCS-66, the unadjusted MDMT is 31°F for Curve B material.

(2) Ratio = 400/685 = 0.58.

(3) Per Fig. UCS-66.1, temperature reduction is 42°F.

(4) Adjusted MDMT = 31 − 42 = −11°F.

(b) For the nozzle flange, the ratio of MAWP over MAP at the MDMT is:

(1) The ASME B16.5 nozzle flange has an unadjusted MDMT of −20°F per UCS-66(c).

(2) Ratio = 400/740 = 0.54.

[4] Divide these values by 0.85 to determine the maximum allowable longitudinal tensile stress to be used in determining the required thickness in corroded condition t_r in the longitudinal direction. (See Note G24 of Table 1A in Section II, Part D).

[5] The MDMT for ASME/ANSI B16.5 ferritic steel flanges such as this is −20°F [see UCS-66(c)].

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(3) Per Fig. UCS-66.1, temperature reduction is 50°F.

(4) Adjusted MDMT = −20 − 50 = −70°F.

L-9.2.3 Category A Butt Joint in Formed Ellipsoidal Head

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Head material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1

Figure UCS-66 material classification: Curve B

Joint efficiency = 1.00 [Category A butt joint in head plates is fully radiographed by head manufacturer per UW-11, and, by specification, the provisions of UW-11(a)(5)(b) will be met for Category B head-to-shell joint; see UW-12(d)]; $E^* = 1.00$.

Required head thickness (dished portion):

$$t = \frac{PD}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{402.2(60.25)}{36{,}200(1.00) - 0.2(402.2)}$$

$$= 0.671 \text{ in.}$$
$$\underline{0.125 \text{ in. } c}$$

0.796 in. Specify as minimum required thickness of dished portion after forming and use as t_n for determining adjusted MDMT of the subject joint.

Required head thickness (skirt portion):

$$t = \frac{402.2(30.125)}{18{,}100(1.00) - 0.6(402.2)}$$

$$= 0.679 \text{ in.}$$
$$\underline{0.125 \text{ in.}}$$

0.804 in. See below for minimum required thickness of skirt portion after forming to be specified.

Required head thickness for adjusted MDMT determination:

$$t_r = \frac{402.2(30.125)}{20{,}000(1.00) - 0.6(402.2)} = 0.613 \text{ in.}$$

Steps 2–5 (Dished Portion). The maximum general primary membrane tensile stress is the stress of interest [see General Note (2), Fig. UCS-66.2] and occurs in the dished region of the formed head. The equivalent radius of spherical dish of a 2:1 ellipsoidal head can be considered to be 90% of the inside diameter of the head skirt [see UG-32(d)], which in this case is the same as the inside diameter of the cylindrical shell. Therefore, we can conclude without further calculation that the required thickness for general primary membrane tensile stress in the dished portion of the formed head is less than that of the attached cylindrical shell, thus resulting in the adjusted MDMT of the dished portion of the formed head being *colder* than that of the shell. (This considers the fact that both head and shell are Curve B materials.) We accordingly can conclude without further calculation that the butt joints in the dished portion of the formed head will not govern the MDMT of the vessel.

If it is desired to determine the actual adjusted MDMT of the butt joint in the dished portion of the head, the procedure used is the same as that for the butt joints in the shell, using the following thicknesses:

$$t_r = \frac{PL}{2SE - 0.2P} = \frac{402.2(0.90 \times 60.25)}{2(20{,}000)(1.00) - 0.2(402.2)}$$

$$= 0.546 \text{ in.}$$

$$t_n = 0.796 + \text{no forming allowance} = 0.796 \text{ in.}$$

[See General Note (1), Fig. UCS-66.2.]

$$c = 0.125 \text{ in.}$$

Steps 2–5 (Head Skirt)

Step 2. By straight-line interpolation from Table UCS-66, the unadjusted MDMT for governing thickness of 0.804 in. is 18°F.

Step 3

$$\text{Ratio } \frac{t_r E^*}{t_n - c} = \text{Ratio } \frac{(0.613)(1.00)}{0.804 - 0.125} = 0.903$$

Step 4

$$(1 - \text{Ratio})100 = (1 - 0.903)100 = 9°\text{F}$$

Step 5

$$\text{Adjusted MDMT} = 18 - 9 = 9°\text{F}$$

Note that this is warmer than the adjusted MDMT determined for the shell.

In this case, the 0.804 in. thick head skirt would control the MDMT of the entire vessel. Assuming it is desired that the 2°F MDMT established by the shell be maintained, the minimum head skirt thickness that will result in a 2°F adjusted MDMT for the Category A butt joint in the head skirt can be easily determined by the following formula:

NOTE: This formula applies *only* when DR is equal to or less than 40°F; for DR greater than 40°F, t_n can be determined by trial and error, where DR = desired reduction in the full-stress MDMT determined in Step 2.

$$t_n = \frac{100 t_r E^*}{100 - DR} + c \text{ (see Note above)}$$

t_n, t_r, E^*, and c are as defined in Fig. UCS-66.2. In this case, $t_r = 0.613$ in., $E^* = 1.00$, $c = 0.125$ in., and DR = 16°F (2°F desired; 18°F actual).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Substituting in the above formula, we have:

$$t_n = \frac{100(0.613)1.00}{100 - 16} + 0.125$$
$$= 0.855 \text{ in. Specify as min. required thickness of head skirt after forming.}$$

The fact that the 0.855 in. minimum head skirt thickness will be adequate for an MDMT of 2°F can be checked as follows:

Step 3

$$\frac{t_r E^*}{t_n - c} = \frac{(0.613)(1.00)}{0.855 - 0.125} = 0.84$$

Step 4

$$(1 - \text{Ratio})100 = (1 - 0.84)100 = 16°\text{F}$$

Step 5

$$\text{Adjusted MDMT} = 18 - 16 = 2°\text{F}.$$

Specify 1.0 in. minimum thickness for head skirt.

L-9.2.4 Category A Butt Joint in NPS 10 Nozzle Neck

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Nozzle neck material: SA-53 Gr. B, welded	14.6	13.3

Figure UCS-66 material classification: Curve B

Joint efficiency, $E = 1.00$ {Note that, if the nozzle were larger than NPS 10, or if the nozzle neck thickness exceeded $1\frac{1}{8}$ in., use of a 0.85 joint efficiency factor, over and above the factor already included in the allowable stress for ERW welded pipe, would be necessary since the provisions of UW-11(a)(5)(b) have not been specified for the intersecting Category C (circumferential) butt joint [see UW-12(e)]. However, the exemption in UW-11(a)(5)(b) applies in view of the NPS 10 size, and the use of a joint efficiency of 1.00 as shown is therefore applicable.}; $E^* = 1.00$.

Required nozzle neck thickness

$$t = \frac{PR_o}{SE + 0.4P} = \frac{402.2(5.375)}{13{,}300(1.00) + 0.4(402.2)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 0.161 \text{ in.} \\ &\ \underline{0.125} \text{ in. } c \\ &\ 0.286 \text{ in.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the least nominal pipe thickness acceptable for pressure loading is $0.286/0.875 = 0.326$ in.

Specify $t = 0.594$ in. (Sch 80) to meet requirements of UG-45.

$$t_n = 0.875\ (0.594) = 0.520 \text{ in.}$$
as specified in General Note (1), Fig. UCS 66.2.

Step 2. From Table UCS-66, the unadjusted MDMT for $t_n = 0.520$ is −7°F (by straight-line interpolation). Since this unadjusted MDMT is *colder* than the adjusted MDMT determined in L-9.2.1 for the Category A butt joints in the shell, we can conclude without further calculation that the butt joints in the nozzle will not govern the MDMT of the vessel.

Steps 3–5. If it is desired to determine the adjusted MDMT of the Category A butt joint in the nozzle neck, the procedure to be used is the same as for the butt joints in the shell, except that the thicknesses employed shall be:

$$t_r = \frac{PR_o}{\text{SE} + 0.4P} = \frac{402.2(5.375)}{14{,}600(1.00) + 0.4(402.2)}$$
$$= 0.146 \text{ in.}$$

$$t_n = 0.594 \times 0.875 = 0.520 \text{ in.}$$
[See General Note (1), Fig. UCS-66.2.]

$$c = 0.125 \text{ in.}$$

L-9.3 Governing Thickness for Corner Joints / Lap Welds

[See definition of governing thickness, UCS-66(a)(1)(b).]

L-9.3.1 Category D Joint in Shell

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Nozzle neck material: SA-53 Gr. B Welded	14.6	13.3
Reinforcing pad material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1
Shell material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1

Figure UCS-66 material classification: Curve B

Joint efficiency: NA

Step 2

As illustrated in Fig. L-9.3.1, this Category D joint with a reinforcing pad is really comprised of three subjoints that must be considered separately for MDMT determination.

From the Fig. L-9.3.1 we note that the unadjusted MDMT of subjoints ① and ② is *colder* than the adjusted MDMT determined in L-9.2.1 for the Category A butt joints in the shell; therefore we can conclude, without further calculation, that the subjoints ① and ② of the Category D nozzle joint will not govern the MDMT of the vessel. See below for determination of adjusted MDMT of subjoint ③.

Steps 3–5, Subjoints ① and ②. The governing thickness for subjoints ① and ② as illustrated in Fig. L-9.3.1 is the same as that for the butt joint in the nozzle neck as investigated in L-9.2.4, and therefore the evaluation of the adjusted MDMT of these two subjoints is as described therein.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

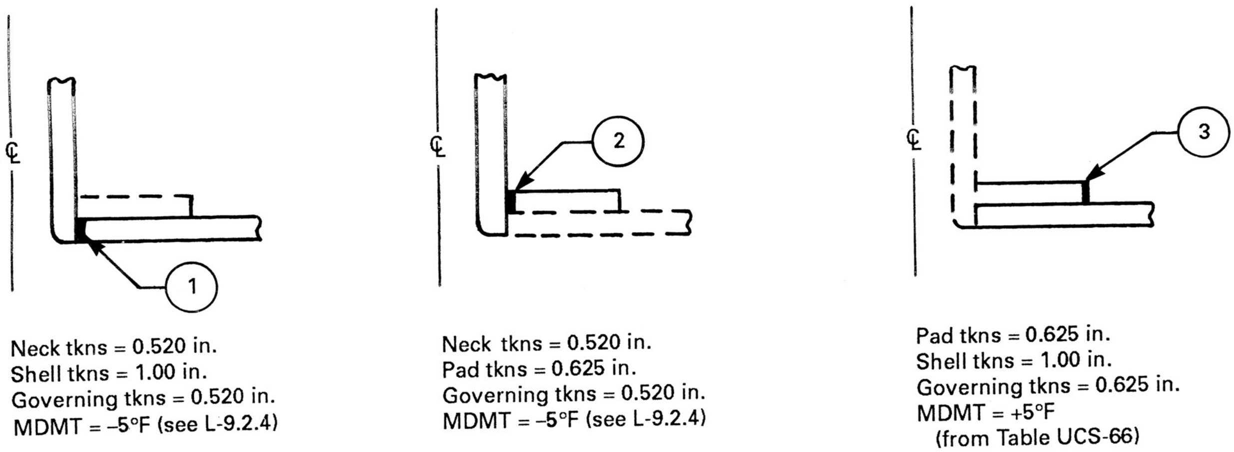


FIG. L-9.3.1

Steps 3–5, Subjoint ③. To determine the adjusted MDMT of subjoint ③, the maximum general primary membrane tensile stress in the reinforcing pad may be conservatively assumed to be the same as that in the shell after the corrosion allowance is deducted, thereby permitting the same 29°F adjustment (See Step 4 in L-9.2.1) in the full-stress MDMT of + 5°F. Therefore, the adjusted MDMT of subjoint ③ is 5 – 29 or –24°F. This is colder than the MDMT determined in L-9.2.1 for the butt joints in the shell, and therefore will not limit the MDMT that may be stamped on the vessel nameplate.

L-9.3.2 Saddle Band-to-Shell Weld

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Saddle band material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1
Shell material: SA-516 70	20.0	18.1

Joint efficiency: NA

This band is judged by the designer to be essential to the structural integrity of the vessel [see UCS-66(a)].

Governing thickness = 1 in.

Steps 2–5. The governing thickness and the associated 31°F unadjusted MDMT for this joint are the same as that determined in L-9.2.1 for the Category A butt joints in the shell. The adjusted MDMT for this joint is likewise 2°F since the maximum general primary membrane tensile stress in the saddle band may be conservatively assumed to be the same as that in the shell after the corrosion allowance is deducted.

L-9.3.3 Insulation Ring-to-Shell Corner Joint. The insulation ring attachment is judged by the designer to not be essential to the structural integrity of the vessel, and therefore this joint need not be evaluated for the vessel MDMT determination. [See UCS-66(a).]

L-9.4 Governing Thickness for Nonwelded Parts

[See definition of governing thickness, UCS-66(a)(3).]

L-9.4.1 Flat Head

Step 1

	Allowable Stress, ksi	
	At MDMT	At 700°F
Flat head material: SA-266 Class 2	20.0	17.2

Figure UCS-66 material classification: Curve B

Joint efficiency: NA

Flat Head Rating per UG-34: 685 psig at MDMT

With reference to UCS-66(a)(3), it is noted that, in this example, the governing thickness of the nonwelded flat head is the flat component thickness divided by 4, see Fig. UCS-66.3 sketch (c), $t_{g1} = 6.06/4 = 1.52$ in.

Step 2. From Table UCS-66 the MDMT for $t_{g1} = 1.52$ in. is 52°F. If the forging was purchased to fine grain practice and normalized, the Fig. UCS-66 material classification would change to Curve C, per General Note (c)(2), and the MDMT for this component would become 15°F.

Step 3–5. The adjustment to MDMT may be made for flat components using UCS-66(b)(1)(b).

$$\text{Ratio} = 400/685 = 0.58$$

Per Fig. UCS-66.1, temperature reduction is 42°F.

$$\text{Adjusted MDMT} = 52 - 42 = 10°\text{F}$$

If the forging is produced to fine grain practice and normalized the adjusted MDMT = 15 – 42 = –27°F.

L-9.4.2 Bolts and Nuts

Bolt material: SA-193 B7

Nut material: SA-194 2H

Per General Note (e) to Fig. UCS-66, the MDMT of the bolting without impact testing is –55°F, and the MDMT

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

of nonimpact tested nuts is −55°F. Therefore these components will not govern the MDMT of the vessel.

L-9.5 Summary of Results and Commentary

L-9.5.1 This example illustrates the use of the rules in UCS-66 for determining the coldest MDMT of a steel vessel without impact testing. A review of the evaluation results reveals that the warmest value for all governing thicknesses is 10°F, and therefore this is the coldest MDMT that may be stamped on the Code nameplate for the design as specified in the example. At this point a decision should be made whether or not a MDMT of 10°F is acceptable for the service conditions, see UG-20(b). Let us assume that the flat head forging was produced to the fine grain practice and normalized; the adjusted MDMT for the head would become −27°F, and the Code stamped MDMT would then become 2°F limited jointly by the 1 in. thick shell sections and the formed head skirt of 0.855 in. minimum specified thickness, both of SA-516 70 (not normalized), Fig. UCS-66 material classification Curve B. The fact that these sections limited the vessel MDMT was expected in light of the following considerations.

(a) A single Fig. UCS-66 curve represented all materials employed other than the bolts, nuts, and ANSI flanges which have a lower MDMT.

(b) The governing thicknesses of these sections are the heaviest, resulting in the MDMT determined from Fig. UCS-66 being the warmest.

(c) These sections are subjected to the highest general primary membrane tensile stress level of all of the vessel components, so that the Fig. UCS-66.1 adjustment to the Fig. UCS-66 MDMT will be the least.

Such observations will significantly reduce the time required to determine the adjusted MDMT of a vessel.

L-9.5.2 An MDMT colder than illustrated would be possible by utilizing various provisions of additional rules in this Division which include the following:

(a) use of normalized SA-516 70 plate for the shell, formed head, reinforcing pad and saddle band so that the Fig. UCS-66 material classification for these components would change from Curve B to Curve D (see General Notes to Fig. UCS-66);

(b) PWHT of the vessel after all welding fabrication has been completed [see UCS-68(c)]. Since all welded components are P-No. 1 materials, this would reduce the unadjusted MDMT's by 30°F, so that the unadjusted MDMT for the 1 in. thick shell section would, for example, be reduced from 31°F to 1°F. This, in turn, would reduce the adjusted MDMT of this component from 2°F to −28°F.

(c) selective use of impact tested materials [see UCS-66(g)];

(d) judiciously selected combinations of the above.

L-9.6 Coldest Metal Temperature During UG-99 or UG-100 Pressure Test

L-9.6.1 Assuming the pressure test will be based on the 400 psi MAWP [versus a calculated test pressure per UG-99(c)], the following statements can be made regarding the metal temperature during the pressure test:

(a) Hydrostatic Test. The coldest *recommended* metal temperature during hydrostatic test: 2 + 30 = 32°F. [See L-9.2.1, Step 5 and UG-99(h).]

(b) Pneumatic Test. The coldest metal temperature *permitted* during pneumatic test: 2 + 30 = 32°F. [See L-9.2.1, Step 5 and UG-100(c).]

L-9.6.2 Assuming the test pressure will be calculated under the provisions of UG-99(c), and further assuming that the basis for the calculated test pressure is the uncorroded nominal shell thickness of 1 in. so that $t_r = t_n - c$, the Step 3 Ratio (see Fig. UCS-66.2) would become 0.85, resulting in a reduction in the full-stress MDMT of 15°F and an adjusted MDMT of 31 − 15, or 16°F. Therefore the following statements can be made regarding the metal temperature during the pressure test [see General Note (6), Fig. UCS-66.2]:

(a) Hydrostatic Test. The coldest *recommended* metal temperature during hydrostatic test: 16 + 30 = 46°F. [See UG-99(h).]

(b) Pneumatic Test. The coldest metal temperature *permitted* during pneumatic test: 16 + 30 = 46°F. [See UG-100(c).]

L-9.6.3 During operation the vessel is to experience an occasional temperature drop to −10°F with a corresponding pressure drop to 300 psig. The Code stamped MDMT is 2°F at 400 psig. UCS-160(b) is used to determine the adjusted MDMT of the vessel as follows:

$$\text{Ratio} = \frac{300}{400} = 0.75$$

Per Fig. UCS-66.1 temperature reduction is 25°F. Adjusted MDMT = 2 − 25 = −23°F.

It should be noted that pressure loading governs general primary membrane tensile stress as stated in the design data in L-9.1. If other loadings govern, UCS-160(a) shall be used to determine the adjusted MDMT of the vessel.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX M INSTALLATION AND OPERATION

04

M-1 INTRODUCTION

(a) The rules in this Appendix are for general information only, because they pertain to the installation and operation of pressure vessels, which are the prerogative and responsibility of the law enforcement authorities in those states and municipalities which have made provision for the enforcement of Section VIII.

(b) It is permissible to use any departures suggested herein from provisions in the mandatory parts of this Division when granted by the authority having legal jurisdiction over the installation of pressure vessels.

M-2 CORROSION

(a) Vessels subject to external corrosion shall be so installed that there is sufficient access to all parts of the exterior to permit proper inspection of the exterior, unless adequate protection against corrosion is provided or unless the vessel is of such size and is so connected that it may readily be removed from its permanent location for inspection.

(b) Vessels having manholes, handholes, or cover plates to permit inspection of the interior shall be so installed that these openings are accessible.

(c) In vertical cylindrical vessels subject to corrosion, to insure complete drainage, the bottom head, if dished, should preferably be concave to pressure.

M-3 MARKING ON THE VESSEL

The marking required by this Division shall be so located that it will be accessible after installation and when installed shall not be covered with insulation or other material that is not readily removable [see UG-116(j)].

M-4 PRESSURE RELIEVING SAFETY DEVICES

The general provisions for the installation of pressure relieving devices are fully covered in UG-135. The following paragraphs contain details in arrangement of stop valves for shutoff control of safety pressure relief devices which are sometimes necessary to the continuous operation of processing equipment of such a complex nature that the shutdown of any part of it is not feasible. There are also rules with regard to the design of inlet and discharge piping to and from safety and relief valves, which can only be general in nature because the design engineer must fit the arrangement and proportions of such a system to the particular requirements in the operation of the equipment involved.

M-5 STOP VALVES LOCATED IN THE RELIEF PATH

M5.1 General

(1) Stop valve(s) located within the relief path are not allowed except as provided for in M-5(e), (f), (g), and (h), and only when specified by the user. The responsibilities of the user are summarized in M-5(c). The specific requirements in M-5(e), (f), (g), and (h) are not intended to allow for normal operation above the maximum allowable working pressure.

(2) The *pressure relief path* shall be designed such that the pressure in the equipment being protected does not exceed its maximum allowable working pressure before the pressure at the pressure relief device reaches its set pressure and the pressure does not exceed the limits of UG-125(c).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

M5.2 Definitions

administrative controls: procedures that, in combination with *mechanical locking elements*, are intended to ensure that personnel actions do not compromise the overpressure protection of the equipment. They include, as a minimum, Documented Operation and Maintenance Procedures, and Training of Operator and Maintenance Personnel in these procedures.

pressure relief path: consists of all equipment, pipe, fittings, and valves in the flow path between any protected equipment and its pressure relieving device, and between the pressure relieving device and the discharge point of the relieving stream. Stop valves within a pressure relief path include, but are not limited to, those located directly upstream and downstream of the Pressure Relief Device (PRD) that may be provided exclusively for PRD maintenance.

valve operation controls: devices used to ensure that stop valves within the pressure relief path are in their proper (open/closed) position. They include the following:

(a) mechanical interlocks which are designed to prevent valve operations which could result in the blocking of a pressure relief path before an alternative pressure relief path is put into service.

(b) instrumented interlocks which function similar to mechanical interlocks, except that instrument permissives and/or over-rides are used instead of mechanical linkages/devices to prevent valve positions that block the pressure relief path.

(c) three-way valves designed to prevent a flow path from being blocked without another flow path being simultaneously opened.

valve failure controls: measure taken in valve design, configuration, and/or orientation of the purpose of preventing an internal failure of a stop valve from closing and blocking the pressure relief path. An example of *valve failure controls* is the installation of gate valves with the valve stem oriented at or below the horizontal position.

full area stop valve: a valve in which the flow area of the valve is equal to or larger than the inlet flow area of the pressure relief device.

mechanical locking elements: elements that when installed on a stop valve, provide a physical barrier to the operation of the stop valve, such that the stop valve is not capable of being operated unless a deliberate action is taken to remove or disable the element. Such elements, when used in combination with *adminstrative controls*, ensure that the equipment overpressure protection is not compromised by personnel actions. Examples of *mechanical locking elements* include locks (with or without chains) on the stop valve handwheels, levers, or actuators, and plastic or metal straps (car seals) that are secured to the valve in such a way that the strap must be broken to operate the stop valve.

management system: the collective application of *administrative controls, valve operation controls,* and *valve failure controls*, in accordance with the applicable requirements of this Division.

M5.3 Responsibilites. The User has the responsibility to establish and maintain a management system that ensures a vessel is not operated without overpressure protection. These responsibilities include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) Deciding and specifying if the overpressure protection system will allow the use of stop valve(s) located in the relief path.

(b) Establishing the pressure relief philosophy and the *administrative controls* requirements

(c) Establishing the required level of reliability, redundancy, and maintenance of instrumented interlocks, if used.

NOTE: The procedures contained in ISA S-84, "Application of Safety Instrumented Systems for the Process Industries", or IEC 61508, "Functional Safety of Electrical/Electronic/Programmable Electronic Safety-Related Systems" may be used for this purpose and analysis.

(d) Establishing procedures to ensure that the equipment is adequately protected against overpressure.

(e) Ensuring that authorization to operate identified valves is clear and that personnel are adequately trained for this task.

(f) Establishing management systems to ensure that *administrative controls* are effective.

(g) Establishing the analysis procedures and basis to be used in determining the potential levels of pressure if the stop valve(s) were closed.

(h) Ensuring that the analysis described in M-5.3(g) is conducted by personnel who are qualified and experienced with the analysis procedure.

(i) Ensuring that the other system components are acceptable for the potential levels of pressure established in M5.3(g).

(j) Ensuring that the results of the analysis described in M5.3(g) are documented and are reviewed and accepted in writing by the individual responsible for operation of the vessel and valves.

(k) Ensuring that the *administrative controls* are reviewed and accepted in writing by the individual responsible for operation of the vessel and valves.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

M-5.5 Requirements of Procedures/Management System

(a) Procedures shall specify that valves requiring mechanical locking elements and/or valve operation controls and/or valve failure controls shall be documented and clearly identified as such.

(b) The Management System shall document the administrative controls (training and procedures), the valve controls, and the performance of the administrative controls in an auditable form for managment review.

M5.6 Stop Valves Provided in Systems for Which the Pressure Originates Exclusively From an Outside Source. A vessel or system [see UG-133(c)] for which the pressure originates from an outside source exclusively may have individual pressure relieving devices on each vessel, or connected to any point on the connecting piping, or on any one of the vessels to be protected. Under such an arrangement, there may be stop valve(s) between any vessel and the pressure relieving devices, and these stop valve(s) need not have any administrative controls, valve operation controls, or valve failure controls, provided that the stop valves also isolate the vessel from the source of pressure.

M5.7 Stop Valve(s) Provided Upstream or Downstream of the Pressure Relief Device Exclusively for Maintenance of That Device. Full area stop valve(s) may be provided upstream and/or downstream of the pressure relieving device for the purpose of inspection, testing, and repair of the pressure relieving device or discharge header isolation, provided that, as a minimum, the following requirements are complied with:

(a) administrative controls are provided to prevent unauthorized valve operation

(b) valves are provided with mechanical locking elements

(c) valve failure controls are provided to prevent accidental valve closure due to mechanical failure.

(d) Procedures are in place to provide pressure relief protection during the time when the system is isolated from its pressure relief path. These procedures shall ensure that when the system is isolated from its pressure relief path, an authorized person shall continuously monitor the pressure conditions of the vessel and shall be capable of responding promptly with documented, predefined actions, either stopping the source of overpressure or opening alternative means of pressure relief. This authorized person shall be dedicated to this task and shall have no other duties when performing this task.

(e) The system shall be isolated from its pressure relief path only for the time required to test, repair, and or replace the pressure relief device.

M-5.8 Stop Valve(s) Provided in the Pressure Relief Path Where There is Normally Process Flow. Stop valve(s), excluding remotely operated valves, may be provided in the relief path where there is normally a process flow, provided the requirements in M-5.8(a) and (b), as a minimum, are complied with. These requirements are based on the potential overpressure scenarios involving accidental closure of a single stop valve within the relief path [see M-5.3(g)]. The accidental closure of these stop valve(s) in the pressure relief system need not be considered in setting the design pressure per UG-21.

(a) The flow resistance of the valve in the full open position does not reduce the relieving capacity below that required by the rules of this Division.

(b) The closure of the valve will be readily apparent to the operators such that corrective action, in accordance with documented operating procedures, is required, and

(1) if the pressure due to closure of the valve can not exceed 116% of MAWP, then no administrative controls, mechanical locking elements, valve operation controls, or valve failure controls are required, or

(2) if the pressure due to closure of the valve can not exceed the following:

(a) the documented test pressure, multiplied by the ratio of the stress value at the design temperature to the stress value at the test temperature, or

(b) if the test pressure is calculated per UG-99(c) in addition to the ratio in M-5.8(b)(2)(a), the test pressure shall also be multiplied by the ratio of the nominal thickness minus the corrosion allowance to the nominal thickness

then, as a minimum, administrative controls and mechanical locking elements are required, or

(3) if the pressure due to closure of the valve could exceed the pressure in M-5.8(b)(2), then the user shall either

(a) eliminate the stop valve, or

(b) apply administrative controls, mechanical locking elements, valve failure controls, and valve operation controls, or

(c) provide a pressure relief device to protect the equipment that could be overpressured due to closure of the stop valve

M-5.9 Stop Valves Provided in the Relief Path of Equipment Where Fire Is the Only Potential Source of Overpressure. Full area stop valve(s) located in the relief path of equipment where fire is the only potential source of overpressure do not require mechanical locking elements, valve operation controls, or valve failure controls provided the user has documented operating procedures requiring that equipment isolated from its pressure relief path is depressured and free of all liquids.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

M-6 INLET PRESSURE DROP FOR HIGH LIFT, TOP GUIDED SAFETY, SAFETY RELIEF, AND PILOT OPERATED PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES IN COMPRESSIBLE FLUID SERVICE

(a) The nominal pipe size of all piping, valves and fittings, and vessel components between a pressure vessel and its safety, safety relief, or pilot operated pressure relief valves shall be at least as large as the nominal size of the device inlet, and the flow characteristics of the upstream system shall be such that the cumulative total of all nonrecoverable inlet losses shall not exceed 3% of the valve set pressure. The inlet pressure losses will be based on the valve nameplate capacity corrected for the characteristics of the flowing fluid.

(b) When two or more required safety, safety relief, or pilot operated pressure relief valves are placed on one connection, the inlet internal cross-sectional area of this connection shall be either sized to avoid restricting flow to the pressure relief valves or made at least equal to the combined inlet areas of the safety valves connected to it. The flow characteristics of the upstream system shall meet the requirements of (a) above with all valves relieving simultaneously.

M-7 DISCHARGE LINES FROM SAFETY DEVICES

(a) Where it is feasible, the use of a short discharge pipe or vertical riser, connected through long-radius elbows from each individual device, blowing directly to the atmosphere, is recommended. Such discharge pipes shall be at least of the same size as the valve outlet. Where the nature of the discharge permits, telescopic (sometimes called "broken") discharge lines, whereby condensed vapor in the discharge line, or rain, is collected in a drip pan and piped to a drain, are recommended.[1]

(b) When discharge lines are long, or where outlets of two or more valves having set pressures within a comparable range are connected into a common line, the effect of the back pressure that may be developed therein when certain valves operate must be considered [see UG-135(f)]. The sizing of any section of a common-discharge header downstream from each of the two or more pressure relieving devices that may reasonably be expected to discharge simultaneously shall be based on the total of their outlet areas, with due allowance for the pressure drop in all downstream sections. Use of specially designed valves suitable for use on high or variable back pressure service should be considered.

(c) The flow characteristics of the discharge system of high lift, top guided safety, safety relief, or pilot operated pressure relief valves in compressible fluid service shall be such that the static pressure developed at the discharge flange of a conventional direct spring loaded valve will not exceed 10% of the set pressure when flowing at stamp capacity. Other valve types exhibit various degrees of tolerance to back pressure and the manufacturer's recommendation should be followed.

(d) All discharge lines shall be run as direct as is practicable to the point of final release for disposal. For the longer lines, due consideration shall be given to the advantage of long-radius elbows, avoidance of closeup fittings, and the minimizing of excessive line strains by expansion joints and well-known means of support to minimize line-sway and vibration under operating conditions.

(e) Provisions should be made in all cases for adequate drainage of discharge lines.

NOTE: It is recognized that no simple rule can be applied generally to fit the many installation requirements, which vary from simple short lines that discharge directly to the atmosphere to the extensive manifold discharge piping systems where the quantity and rate of the product to be disposed of requires piping to a distant safe place.

M-8 PRESSURE DROP, NONRECLOSING PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES

Piping, valves and fittings, and vessel components comprising part of a nonreclosing device pressure relieving system shall be sized to prevent the vessel pressure from rising above the allowable overpressure.

M-9 GENERAL ADVISORY INFORMATION ON THE CHARACTERISTICS OF SAFETY RELIEF VALVES DISCHARGING INTO A COMMON HEADER

Because of the wide variety of types and kinds of safety relief valves, it is not considered advisable to attempt a description in this Appendix of the effects produced by discharging them into a common header. Several different types of valves may conceivably be connected into the same discharge header and the effect of back pressure on each type may be radically different. Data compiled by the manufacturers of each type of valve used should be consulted for information relative to its performance under the conditions anticipated.

[1] This construction has the further advantage of not transmitting discharge-pipe strains to the valve. In these types of installation, the back pressure effect will be negligible, and no undue influence upon normal valve operation can result.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

M-10 PRESSURE DIFFERENTIALS FOR PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

Due to the variety of service conditions and the various designs of safety and safety relief valves, only general guidance can be given regarding the differential between the set pressure of the valve (see UG-134) and the operating pressure of the vessel. Operating difficulty will be minimized by providing an adequate differential for the application. The following is general advisory information on the characteristics of the intended service and of the safety or safety relief valves that may bear on the proper pressure differential selection for a given application. These considerations should be reviewed early in the system design since they may dictate the MAWP of the system.

(a) Consideration of the Process Characteristics in the Establishment of the Operating Margin to Be Provided. To minimize operational problems, it is imperative that the user consider not only normal operating conditions of fluids, pressures, and temperatures, but also start-up and shutdown conditions, process upsets, anticipated ambient conditions, instrument response times, pressure surges due to quick closing valves, etc. When such conditions are not considered, the pressure relieving device may become, in effect, a pressure controller, a duty for which it is not designed. Additional consideration should be given to hazard and pollution associated with the release of the fluid. Larger differentials may be appropriate for fluids which are toxic, corrosive, or exceptionally valuable.

(b) Consideration of Safety Relief Valve Characteristics. The blowdown characteristic and capability is the first consideration in selecting a compatible valve and operating margin. After a self-actuated release of pressure, the valve must be capable of reclosing above the normal operating pressure. For example, if the valve is set at 100 psig (700 kPa) with a 7% blowdown, it will close at 93 psig (641 kPa). The operating pressure must be maintained below 93 psig (641 kPa) in order to prevent leakage or flow from a partially open valve. Users should exercise caution regarding the blowdown adjustment of large spring-loaded valves. Test facilities, whether owned by Manufacturers, repair houses, or users, may not have sufficient capacity to accurately verify the blowdown setting. The settings cannot be considered accurate unless made in the field on the actual installation.

Pilot-operated valves represent a special case from the standpoints of both blowdown and tightness. The pilot portion of some pilot-operating valves can be set at blowdowns as short as 2%. This characteristic is not, however, reflected in the operation of the main valve in all cases. The main valve can vary considerably from the pilot depending on the location of the two components in the system. If the pilot is installed remotely from the main valve, significant time and pressure lags can occur, but reseating of the pilot assures reseating of the main valve. The pressure drop in the connecting piping between the pilot and the main valve must not be excessive; otherwise, the operation of the main valve will be adversely affected.

The tightness of the main valve portion of these combinations is considerably improved above that of conventional valves by pressure loading the main disk or by the use of soft seats or both.

Despite the apparent advantages of pilot-operated valves, users should be aware that they should not be employed in abrasive or dirty service, in applications where coking, polymerization, or corrosion of the wetted pilot parts can occur, or where freezing or condensation of the lading fluid at ambient temperatures is possible. For all applications the valve Manufacturer should be consulted prior to selecting a valve of this type.

Tightness capability is another factor affecting valve selection, whether spring loaded or pilot operated. It varies somewhat depending on whether metal or resilient seats are specified, and also on such factors as corrosion or temperature. The required tightness and test method should be specified to comply at a pressure no lower than the normal operating pressure of the process. A recommended procedure and acceptance standard is given in API 527. It should also be remembered that any degree of tightness obtained should not be considered permanent. Service operation of a valve almost invariably reduces the degree of tightness.

Application of special designs such as O-rings or resilient seats should be reviewed with the valve Manufacturer.

The anticipated behavior of the valves includes allowance for a plus-or-minus tolerance on set pressure which varies with the pressure level. Installation conditions, such as back pressure, variations, and vibrations, influence selection of special types and an increase in differential pressure.

(c) General Recommendations. The following pressure differentials are recommended unless the safety or safety relief valve has been designed or tested in a specific or similar service and a smaller differential has been recommended by the Manufacturer.

A minimum difference of 5 psi (35 kPa) is recommended for set pressures to 70 psi (485 kPa). In this category, the set pressure tolerance is ±2 psi (±13.8 kPa) [UG-134(d)(1)], and the differential to the leak test pressure is 10% or 5 psi (35 kPa), whichever is greater.

A minimum differential of 10% is recommended for set pressures from 71 psi to 1,000 psi (490 kPa to 6.9 MPa). In

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

this category, the set pressure tolerance is ±3% and the differential to the leak test pressure is 10%.

A minimum differential of 7% is recommended for set pressures above 1,000 psi (6.9 MPa). In this category, the set pressure tolerance is ±3% and the differential to the leak test pressure should be 5%. Valves having small seat sizes will require additional maintenance when the pressure differential approaches these recommendations.

M-11 INSTALLATION OF SAFETY AND SAFETY RELIEF VALVES

Spring loaded safety and safety relief valves normally should be installed in the upright position with the spindle vertical. Where space or piping configuration preclude such an installation, the valve may be installed in other than the vertical position provided that:

(a) the valve design is satisfactory for such position;

(b) the media is such that material will not accumulate at the inlet of the valve; and

(c) drainage of the discharge side of the valve body and discharge piping is adequate.

M-12 REACTION FORCES AND EXTERNALLY APPLIED LOADS

(a) Reaction Thrust. The discharge of a pressure relief valve imposes reactive flow forces on the valve and associated piping. The design of the installation may require computation of the bending moments and stresses in the piping and vessel nozzle. There are momentum effects and pressure effects at steady state flow as well as transient dynamic loads caused by opening.

(b) External Loads. Mechanical forces may be applied to the valve by discharge piping as a result of thermal expansion, movement away from anchors, and weight of any unsupported piping. The resultant bending moments on a closed pressure relief valve may cause valve leakage and excessive stress in inlet piping. The design of the installation should consider these possibilities.

M-13 SIZING OF PRESSURE RELIEF DEVICES FOR FIRE CONDITIONS

(a) Excessive pressure may develop in pressure vessels by vaporization of the liquid contents and/or expansion of vapor content due to heat influx from the surroundings, particularly from a fire. Pressure relief systems for fire conditions are usually intended to release only the quantity of product necessary to lower the pressure to a predetermined safe level, without releasing an excessive quantity. This control is especially important in situations where release of the contents generates a hazard because of flammability or toxicity. Under fire conditions, consideration must also be given to the possibility that the safe pressure level for the vessel will be reduced due to heating of the vessel material, with a corresponding loss of strength. For some fire situations, there may be an insufficient rise in pressure to activate a pressure relief device. The user should consult other references, which provide guidelines for protecting vessels from the effects of fire.

(b) Several formulas have evolved over the years for calculating the pressure relief capacity required under fire conditions. The major differences involve heat flux rates. There is no single formula yet developed which takes into account all of the many factors which could be considered in making this determination. When fire conditions are a consideration in the design of a pressure vessel, the following references which provide recommendations for specific installations may be used:

API RP 520, Recommended Practice for the Design and Installation of Pressure-Relieving Systems in Refineries, Part I — Design, 1976, American Petroleum Institute, Washington, DC

API Standard 2000, Venting Atmospheric and Low-Pressure Storage Tanks (nonrefrigerated and refrigerated), 1973, American Petroleum Institute, Washington, DC

AAR Standard M-1002, Specifications for Tank Cars, 1978, Association of American Railroads, Washington, DC

Safety Relief Device Standards: S-1.1, Cylinders for Compressed Gases; S-1.2, Cargo and Portable Tanks; and S-1.3, Compressed Gas Storage Containers, Compressed Gas Association, Arlington, VA

NFPA Code Nos. 30, 59, and 59A, National Fire Protection Association, Boston, MA

Pressure-Relieving Systems for Marine Cargo Bulk Liquid Containers, 1973, National Academy of Sciences, Washington, DC

Bulletin E-2, How to Size Safety Relief Devices, Phillips Petroleum Company, Bartlesville, OK

A Study of Available Fire Test Data as Related to Tank Car Safety Device Relieving Capacity Formulas, 1971, Phillips Petroleum Company, Bartlesville, OK

M-14 PRESSURE INDICATING DEVICE 04

If a pressure indicating device is provided to determine the vessel pressure at or near the set pressure of the relief device, one should be selected that spans the set pressure of the relief device and is graduated with an upper limit that is neither less than 1.25 times the set pressure of the relief device nor more than twice the maximum allowable working pressure of the vessel. Additional devices may be installed if desired.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX P
BASIS FOR ESTABLISHING ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

P-1

The values in Tables UCI-23, UCD-23, and ULT-23 are established by the Committee only. In the determination of allowable stress values for these materials, the Committee is guided by successful experience in service, insofar as evidence of satisfactory performance is available. Such evidence is considered equivalent to test data where operating conditions are known with reasonable certainty. In the evaluation of new materials, the Committee is guided to a certain extent by the comparison of test information with available data on successful applications of similar materials.

(a) Nomenclature

S_T = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature, ksi
R_T = ratio of the average temperature dependent trend curve value of tensile strength to the room temperature tensile strength
S_Y = specified minimum yield strength at room temperature
R_Y = ratio of the average temperature dependent trend curve value of yield strength to the room temperature yield strength
$S_{R\text{avg}}$ = average stress to cause rupture at the end of 100,000 hr
$S_{R\text{min}}$ = minimum stress to cause rupture at the end of 100,000 hr
S_C = average stress to produce a creep rate of 0.01%/1,000 hr
NA = not applicable

The maximum allowable stress for Tables ULT-23, UCI-23, and UCD-23 shall be the lowest value obtained from the criteria in Table P-1.

The stress criteria, mechanical properties considered, and the factors applied to establish the maximum allowable stresses for other stress Tables are given in Appendix 1 of Section II, Part D.

TABLE P-1
CRITERIA FOR ESTABLISHING ALLOWABLE STRESS VALUES

Product/Material	Table	Below Room Temperature		Room Temperature and Above			
		Tensile Strength	Yield Strength	Tensile Strength		Yield Strength	
Cast iron	UCI-23	$\frac{S_T}{10}$	NA	$\frac{S_T}{10}$	$\frac{1.1}{10} S_T R_T$	NA	NA
Nodular iron	UCD-23	$\frac{S_T}{5}$	$\frac{2}{3} S_Y$	$\frac{S_T}{5}$	$\frac{1.1}{5} S_T R_T$	$\frac{2}{3} S_Y$	$\frac{2}{3} S_Y R_Y$
Wrought or cast ferrous and nonferrous	ULT-23	$\frac{S_T R_T}{3.5}$	$\frac{2}{3} S_Y R_Y$	NA	NA	NA	NA

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX R
PREHEATING

INTRODUCTION

Preheating may be employed during welding to assist in completion of the welded joint. The need for and temperature of preheat are dependent on a number of factors, such as the chemical analysis, degree of restraint of the parts being joined, elevated physical properties, and heavy thicknesses. Mandatory rules for preheating are, therefore, not given in this Division except as required in the footnotes that provide for exemptions to postweld heat treatment in Tables UCS-56 and UHA-32. Some practices used for preheating are given below as a general guide for the materials listed by P-Numbers in Section IX. It is cautioned that the preheating temperatures listed below do not necessarily insure satisfactory completion of the welded joint and requirements for individual materials within the P-Number listing may have preheating more or less restrictive than this general guide. The procedure specification for the material being welded specifies the minimum preheating requirements under Section IX weld procedure qualification requirements.

The heat of welding may assist in maintaining preheat temperatures after the start of welding and for inspection purposes, temperature checks can be made near the weld. The method or extent of application of preheat is not therefore, specifically given. Normally when materials of two different P-Number groups are joined by welding, the preheat used will be that of the material with the higher preheat specified on the procedure specified on the procedure specification.

R-1 P-NO. 1 GROUP NOS. 1, 2, AND 3

(a) 175°F (79°C) for material which has both a specified maximum carbon content in excess of 0.30% and a thickness at the joint in excess of 1 in. (25 mm);

(b) 50°F (10°C) for all other materials in this P-Number.

R-2 P-NO. 3 GROUP NOS. 1, 2, AND 3

(a) 175°F (79°C) for material which has either a specified minimum tensile strength in excess of 70,000 psi (480 MPa) or a thickness at the joint in excess of $\frac{5}{8}$ in. (16 mm);

(b) 50°F (10°C) for all other materials in this P-Number.

R-3 P-NO. 4 GROUP NOS. 1 AND 2

(a) 250°F (121°C) for material which has either a specified minimum tensile strength in excess of 60,000 psi (410 MPa) or a thickness at the joint in excess of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm);

(b) 50°F (10°C) for all other materials in this P-Number.

R-4 P-NOS. 5A AND 5B GROUP NO. 1

(a) 400°F (204°C) for material which has either a specified minimum tensile strength in excess of 60,000 psi (410 MPa), or has both a specified minimum chromium content above 6.0% and a thickness at the joint in excess of $\frac{1}{2}$ in. (13 mm);

(b) 300°F (149°C) for all other materials in these P-Numbers.

R-5 P-NO. 6 GROUP NOS. 1, 2, AND 3

400°F (204°C)

R-6 P-NO. 7 GROUP NOS. 1 AND 2

None

R-7 P-NO. 8 GROUP NOS. 1 AND 2

None

R-8 P-NO. 9 GROUPS

250°F (121°C) for P-No. 9A Group No. 1 materials
300°F (149°C) for P-No. 9B Group No. 1 materials

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

R-9 P-NO. 10 GROUP

175°F (79°C) for P-No. 10A Group No. 1 materials
250°F (121°C) for P-No. 10B Group No. 2 materials
175°F (79°C) for P-No. 10C Group No. 3 materials
250°F (121°C) for P-No. 10F Group No. 6 materials

For P-No. 10C Group No. 3 materials, preheat is neither required nor prohibited, and consideration shall be given to the limitation of interpass temperature for various thicknesses to avoid detrimental effects on the mechanical properties of heat treated material.

For P-No. 10D Group No. 4 and P-No. 10I Group No. 1 materials, 300°F (149°C) with interpass temperature maintained between 350°F and 450°F (177°C and 232°C)

R-10 P-NO. 11 GROUP

(a) P-No. 11A Group

Group No. 1 — None (see Note)
Group No. 2 — Same as for P-No. 5 (see Note)
Group No. 3 — Same as for P-No. 5 (see Note)
Group No. 4 — 250°F (121°C)

(b) P-No. 11B Group

Group No. 1 — Same as for P-No. 3 (see Note)
Group No. 2 — Same as for P-No. 3 (see Note)
Group No. 3 — Same as for P-No. 3 (see Note)
Group No. 4 — Same as for P-No. 3 (see Note)
Group No. 5 — Same as for P-No. 3 (see Note)
Group No. 6 — Same as for P-No. 5 (see Note)
Group No. 7 — Same as for P-No. 5 (see Note)

NOTE: Consideration shall be given to the limitation of interpass temperature for various thicknesses to avoid detrimental effects on the mechanical properties of heat treated materials.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX S
DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR BOLTED FLANGE CONNECTIONS

S-1 BOLTING

The primary purpose of the rules for bolted flange connections in Appendices 2 and Y is to ensure safety, but there are certain practical matters to be taken into consideration in order to obtain a serviceable design. One of the most important of these is the proportioning of the bolting, i.e., determining the number and size of the bolts.

In the great majority of designs the practice that has been used in the past should be adequate, viz., to follow the design rules in Appendices 2 and Y and tighten the bolts sufficiently to withstand the test pressure without leakage. The considerations presented in the following discussion will be important only when some unusual feature exists, such as a very large diameter, a high design pressure, a high temperature, severe temperature gradients, an unusual gasket arrangement, and so on.

The maximum allowable stress values for bolting given in Table 3 of Section II, Part D are design values to be used in determining the minimum amount of bolting required under the rules. However, a distinction must be kept carefully in mind between the design value and the bolt stress that might actually exist or that might be needed for conditions other than the design pressure. The initial tightening of the bolts is a prestressing operation, and the amount of bolt stress developed must be within proper limits, to insure, on the one hand, that it is adequate to provide against all conditions that tend to produce a leaking joint, and on the other hand, that it is not so excessive that yielding of the bolts and/or flanges can produce relaxation that also can result in leakage.

The first important consideration is the need for the joint to be tight in the hydrostatic test. An initial bolt stress of some magnitude greater than the design value therefore must be provided. If it is not, further bolt strain develops during the test, which tends to part the joint and thereby to decompress the gasket enough to allow leakage. The test pressure is usually $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the design pressure, and on this basis it may be thought that 50% extra bolt stress above the design value will be sufficient. However, this is an oversimplification because, on the one hand, the safety factor against leakage under test conditions in general need not be as great as under operating conditions. On the other hand, if a stress–strain analysis of the joint is made, it may indicate that an initial bolt stress still higher than $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the design value is needed. Such an analysis is one that considers the changes in bolt elongation, flange deflection, and gasket load that take place with the application of internal pressure, starting from the prestressed condition. In any event, it is evident that an initial bolt stress higher than the design value may and, in some cases, must be developed in the tightening operation, and it is the intent of this Division that such a practice is permissible, provided it includes necessary and appropriate provision to insure against excessive flange distortion and gross crushing of the gasket.

It is possible for the bolt stress to decrease after initial tightening, because of slow creep or relaxation of the gasket, particularly in the case of the "softer" gasket materials. This may be the cause of leakage in the hydrostatic test, in which case it may suffice merely to retighten the bolts. A decrease in bolt stress can also occur in service at elevated temperatures, as a result of creep in the bolt and/or flange or gasket material, with consequent relaxation. When this results in leakage under service conditions, it is common practice to retighten the bolts, and sometimes a single such operation, or perhaps several repeated at long intervals, is sufficient to correct the condition. To avoid chronic difficulties of this nature, however, it is advisable when designing a joint for high temperature service to give attention to the relaxation properties of the materials involved, especially for temperatures where creep is the controlling factor in design. This prestress should not be the controlling factor in design. This prestress should not be confused with initial bolt stress S_i used in the design of Appendix Y flanges.

In the other direction, excessive initial bolt stress can present a problem in the form of yielding in the bolting itself, and may occur in the tightening operation to the extent of damage or even breakage. This is especially

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

likely with bolts of small diameter and with bolt materials having a relatively low yield strength. The yield strength of mild carbon steel, annealed austenitic stainless steel, and certain of the nonferrous bolting materials can easily be exceeded with ordinary wrench effort in the smaller bolt sizes. Even if no damage is evident, any additional load generated when internal pressure is applied can produce further yielding with possible leakage. Such yielding can also occur when there is very little margin between initial bolt stress and yield strength.

An increase in bolt stress, above any that may be due to internal pressure, might occur in service during startup or other transient conditions, or perhaps even under normal operation. This can happen when there is an appreciable differential in temperature between the flanges and the bolts, or when the bolt material has a different coefficient of thermal expansion than the flange material. Any increase in bolt load due to this thermal effect, superposed on the load already existing, can cause yielding of the bolt material, whereas any pronounced decrease due to such effects can result in such a loss of bolt load as to be a direct cause of leakage. In either case, retightening of the bolts may be necessary, but it must not be forgotten that the effects of repeated retightening can be cumulative and may ultimately make the joint unserviceable.

In addition to the difficulties created by yielding of the bolts as described above, the possibility of similar difficulties arising from yielding of the flange or gasket material, under like circumstances or from other causes, should also be considered.

Excessive bolt stress, whatever the reason, may cause the flange to yield, even though the bolts may not yield. Any resulting excessive deflection of the flange, accompanied by permanent set, can produce a leaking joint when other effects are superposed. It can also damage the flange by making it more difficult to effect a tight joint thereafter. For example, irregular permanent distortion of the flange due to uneven bolt load around the circumference of the joint can warp the flange face and its gasket contact surface out of a true plane.

The gasket, too, can be overloaded, even without excessive bolt stress. The full initial bolt load is imposed entirely on the gasket, unless the gasket has a stop ring or the flange face detail is arranged to provide the equivalent. Without such means of controlling the compression of the gasket, consideration must be given to the selection of gasket type, size and material that will prevent gross crushing of the gasket.

From the foregoing, it is apparent that the bolt stress can vary over a considerable range above the design stress value. The design stress values for bolting in Table 3 of Section II, Part D have been set at a conservative value to provide a factor against yielding. At elevated temperatures, the design stress values are governed by the creep rate and stress-rupture strength. Any higher bolt stress existing before creep occurs in operation will have already served its purpose of seating the gasket and holding the hydrostatic test pressure, all at atmospheric temperature, and is not needed at the design pressure and temperature.

Theoretically, the margin against flange yielding is not as great. The design values for flange materials may be as high as five-eighths or two-thirds of the yield strength. However, the highest stress in a flange is usually the bending stress in the hub or shell, and is more or less localized. It is too conservative to assume that local yielding is followed immediately by overall yielding of the entire flange. Even if a "plastic hinge" should develop, the ring portion of the flange takes up the portion of the load the hub and shell refuse to carry. Yielding is far more significant if it occurs first in the ring, but the limitation in the rules on the combined hub and ring stresses provides a safeguard. In this connection, it should be noted that a dual set of stresses is given for some of the materials in Table 3 of Section II, Part D, and that the lower values should be used in order to avoid yielding in the flanges.

Another very important item in bolting design is the question of whether the necessary bolt stress is actually realized, and what special means of tightening, if any, must be employed. Most joints are tightened manually by ordinary wrenching, and it is advantageous to have designs that require no more than this. Some pitfalls must be avoided, however. The probable bolt stress developed manually, when using standard wrenches, is

$$S = \frac{45{,}000}{\sqrt{d}}$$

where

S = the bolt stress
d = the nominal diameter of the bolt

It can be seen that smaller bolts will have excessive stress unless judgment is exercised in pulling up on them. On the other hand, it will be impossible to develop the desired stress in very large bolts by ordinary hand wrenching. Impact wrenches may prove serviceable, but if not, resort may be had to such methods as preheating the bolt, or using hydraulically powered bolt tensioners. With some of these methods, control of the bolt stress is possible by means inherent in the procedure, especially if effective thread lubricants are employed, but in all cases the bolt stress can be regulated within reasonable tolerances by measuring the bolt elongation with suitable extensometer equipment. Ordinarily, simple wrenching without verification of the actual bolt stress meets all practical needs,

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

and measured control of the stress is employed only when there is some special or important reason for doing so.

S-2 FLANGE RIGIDITY

S-2(a) Flanges which have been designed based on allowable stress limits alone may not be sufficiently rigid to control leakage. This paragraph provides a method of checking flange flexibility.

The flexibility factors provided in (c) below have been proven through extensive user experience for a wide variety of joint designs and service conditions; however, their use alone does not guarantee a leakage rate within established limits, and accordingly their use must be considered as only part of the system of joint design and assembly requirements to ensure leak tightness.

S-2(b) Notation

E = modulus of elasticity for the material of the flange at the design temperature (operating condition) or atmospheric temperature (gasket seating), as may apply, psi

J = rigidity index $\leq$ 1.0. If the value of J, when calculated by the appropriate formula in (d) below, is greater than 1.0, the thickness of the flange t should be increased and J recalculated until it is within the above limit.

K_I = rigidity factor for integral- or optional-type flanges [see (c) below]

K_L = rigidity factor for loose-type flanges [see (c) below]

All other notation used in this paragraph is defined in 2-3.

S-2(c) Experience has indicated that a K_L value of 0.2 for loose-type flanges and K_I of 0.3 for integral or optional flange types are sufficient for most services. Other values may be used with the User's agreement.

S-2(d) Formulas

Integral- and optional-type flanges designed as integral type:

$$J = \frac{52.14 M_O V}{L E g_o^2 h_o K_I} \tag{1}$$

Loose-type flanges with hubs:

$$J = \frac{52.14 M_O V_L}{L E g_o^2 h_o K_L} \tag{2}$$

Loose-type flanges without hubs and optional flanges designed as loose-type:

$$J = \frac{109.4 M_O}{E t^3 \ln(K) K_L} \tag{3}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX T
TEMPERATURE PROTECTION

(a) Any pressure vessel in a service where it can be damaged by overheating should be provided with means by which the metal temperature can be controlled within safe limits or a safe shutdown can be effected.

(b) It is recognized that it is impracticable to specify detailed requirements to cover the multiplicity of means to prevent the operation of pressure vessels at overtemperature. Any means which in principle will provide compliance with (a) above will meet the intent of this Division.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX W GUIDE FOR PREPARING MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS

W-1 GUIDE FOR PREPARING MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS

W-2 INTRODUCTION

(a) The instructions contained in this Appendix are to provide general guidance for the Manufacturer in preparing Data Reports as required in UG-120.

(b) Manufacturer's Data Reports required by ASME Code rules are not intended for pressure vessels that do not meet the provisions of the Code, including those of special design or construction that require and receive approval by jurisdictional authorities under the laws, rules, and regulations of the respective State or municipality in which the vessel is to be installed.

(c) The instructions for the Data Reports are identified by circled numbers corresponding to numbers on the sample Forms in this Appendix.

(d) Where more space than has been provided for on the Form is needed for any item, indicate in the space "See remarks" or "See attached U-4 Form," as appropriate.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM U-1 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR PRESSURE VESSELS
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ (1) ______
(Name and address of Manufacturer)
2. Manufactured for ______ (2) ______
(Name and address of Purchaser)
3. Location of installation ______ (3) ______
(Name and address)
4. Type: ______ (4) ______ (Horiz., vert., or sphere) ______ (5) ______ (Tank, separator, jkt. vessel, heat exh., etc.) ______ (8) ______ (Mfg's serial No.)
______ (9) ______ (CRN) ______ (10) ______ (Drawing No.) ______ (12) ______ (Nat'l. Bd. No.) ______ (Year built)
5. ASME Code, Section VIII, Div. 1 ______ (13) ______ [Edition and Addenda (date)] ______ (14) ______ (Code Case No.) ______ (15) ______ [Special Service per UG-120(d)]

Items 6–11 incl. to be completed for single wall vessels, jackets of jacketed vessels, shell of heat exchangers, or chamber of multichamber vessels.

6. Shell (a) No. of course(s): ______ (16) ______ (b) Overall length (ft & in.): ______ (17) ______

Course(s)			Material	Thickness		Long. Joint (Cat. A)			Circum. Joint (Cat. A, B, & C)			Heat Treatment	
No.	Diameter, in.	Length (ft & in.)	Spec./Grade or Type	Nom.	Corr.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Temp.	Time
	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)	(23)	(24)		(25)	(26)		(27)	

7. Heads: (a) ______ (20) ______ (27) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.) (b) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Thickness		Radius		Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure		Category A		
		Min.	Corr.	Crown	Knuckle					Convex	Concave	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.
(a)		(28)	(22)	(29)	(30)								(31)	
(b)														

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastening) ______ (32) ______
(Mat'l Spec. No., Grade, size, No.)

8. Type of jacket ______ (33) ______ Jacket closure ______ (34) ______
(Describe as ogee & weld, bar, etc.)
If bar, give dimensions ______ If bolted, describe or sketch.

9. MAWP ______ (35) ______ (internal) ______ (external) psi at max. temp. ______ (36) ______ (internal) ______ (external) °F Min. design metal temp. ______ (37) ______ °F at ______ psi.

10. Impact test ______ (38) ______ [Indicate *yes* or *no* and the component(s) impact tested] at test temperature of ______ (38) ______ °F.

11. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test press. ______ (39) ______ Proof test ______ (40) ______

Items 12 and 13 to be completed for tube sections.

12. Tubesheet: ______ (20) ______ [Stationary (Mat'l Spec. No.)] ______ (18) ______ [Dia., In. (subject to press.)] ______ (21) ______ (Nom. thk., in.) ______ (22) ______ (Corr. Allow., in.) ______ [Attachment (welded or bolted)]
______ (20) ______ [Floating (Mat'l Spec. No.)] ______ (18) ______ (Dia., in.) ______ (21) ______ (Nom. thk., in.) ______ (22) ______ (Corr. Allow., in.) ______ (Attachment)

13. Tubes: ______ (20) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) ______ (O.D., in.) ______ (Nom. thk., in. or gauge) ______ (Number) ______ [Type (Straight or U)]

Items 14–18 incl. to be completed for inner chambers of jacketed vessels or channels of heat exchangers.

14. Shell (a) No. of course(s) ______ (b) Overall length (ft & in.): ______

Course(s)			Material	Thickness		Long. Joint (Cat. A)			Circum. Joint (Cat. A, B, & C)			Heat Treatment	
No.	Diameter, in.	Length (ft & in.)	Spec./Grade or Type	Nom.	Corr.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Temp.	Time

15. Heads: (a) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.) (b) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Thickness		Radius		Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure		Category A		
		Min.	Corr.	Crown	Knuckle					Convex	Concave	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.
(a)														
(b)														

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastening) ______
(Mat'l Spec. No., Grade, size, No.)

This form (E00108) may be obtained from the Order Dept., ASME, 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM U-1 (Back)

16. MAWP ______ (internal) ______ (external) psi at max. temp. ______ (internal) ______ (external) °F. Min. design metal temp. ______ °F at ______ psi.

17. Impact test ______ [Indicate *yes* or *no* and the component(s) impact tested] at test temperature of ___38___ °F.

18. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test press. ______ Proof test ______

19. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings:

Purpose (Inlet, Outlet, Drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Flange Type	Material		Nozzle Thickness		Reinforcement Material	How Attached		Location (Insp. Open.)
				Nozzle	Flange	Nom.	Corr.		Nozzle	Flange	
				20	20						
41		42	43	44	45	46		47	48 49	48 49	50

20. Supports: Skirt ___51___ (Yes or no) Lugs ___51___ (No.) Legs ___51___ (No.) Others ___51___ (Describe) Attached ___51___ (Where and how)

21. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of the report: (List the name of part, item number, mfg's. name and identifying number)
___52___

22. Remarks: ______
___53___

58

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements in this report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this vessel conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Division 1.

U Certificate of Authorization No. ______ Expires ______

Date ______ Name ______ (Manufacturer) Signed ______ (Representative)

60

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the State or Province of ___61___ and employed by ______ of ______ have inspected the pressure vessel described in this Manufacturer's Data Report on ______, and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the Manufacturer has constructed this pressure vessel in accordance with ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1. By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the pressure vessel described in this Manufacturer's' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ___62___ (Nat'l Board incl. endorsements, State, Province, and No.)

64

CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements on this report are correct and that the field assembly construction of all parts of this vessel conforms with the requirements of ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1. U Certificate of Authorization No. ______ Expires ______.

Date ______ Name ______ (Assembler) Signed ______ (Representative)

65

CERTIFICATE OF FIELD ASSEMBLY INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the State or Province of ______ and employed by ______ of ______, have compared the statements in this Manufacturer's Data Report with the described pressure vessel and state that parts referred to as data items ___66___, not included in the certificate of shop inspection, have been inspected by me and to the best of my knowledge and belief, the Manufacturer has constructed and assembled this pressure vessel in accordance with the ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1. The described vessel was inspected and subjected to a hydrostatic test of ______ psi. By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the pressure vessel described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ___62___ (Nat'l Board incl. endorsements, State, Province and No.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

FORM U-1A MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT FOR PRESSURE VESSELS
(Alternative Form for Single Chamber, Completely Shop or Field Fabricated Vessels Only)
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ (1) ______
(Name and address of manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ (2) ______
(Name and address of purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ (3) ______
(Name and address)

4. Type ______ (5) ______ (Horiz. or vert., tank) ______ (8) ______ (Mfgr's serial No.) ______ (9) ______ (CRN) ______ (10) ______ (Drawing No.) ______ (12) ______ (Natl. Bd. No.) ______ (Year built)

5. The chemical and physical properties of all parts meet the requirements of material specifications of the ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE. The design, construction, and workmanship conform to ASME Rules, Section VIII, Division 1 ______ (13) ______ Year
to ______ (13) ______ Addenda (Date) ______ (14) ______ Code Case Nos. ______ (15) ______ Special Service per UG-120(d)

6. Shell: ______ (20) ______ Matl. (Spec. No., Grade) ______ (21) ______ Nom. Thk. (in.) ______ (22) ______ Corr. Allow. (in.) ______ (18) ______ Diam. I.D. (ft. & in.) ______ (17) ______ Length (overall) (ft. & in.)

7. Seams: ______ (23) ______ Long. (Welded, Dbl., Sngl., Lap, Butt) ______ (24) ______ R.T. (Spot or Full) ______ (24) ______ Eff. (%) ______ (27) ______ H.T. Temp. (°F) ______ (27) ______ Time (hr) ______ (25) ______ Girth, (Welded, Dbl., Sngl., Lap, Butt) ______ (26) ______ R.T. [Spot, Eff. (%) or Full] ______ (16) ______ No. of Courses

8. Heads: (a) Matl. ______ (17) (27) (31) ______ (Spec. No., Grade) (b) Matl. ______ (Spec. No., Grade)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Minimum Thickness	Corrosion Allowance	Crown Radius	Knuckle Radius	Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure (Convex or Concave)
(a)		(28)	(22)	(29)	(30)					
(b)										

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastenings) ______ (32) ______
(Mat'l., Spec. No., Gr., Size, No.)

9. MAWP ______ (35) ______ (internal) ______ (external) psi at max. temp. ______ (36) ______ (internal) ______ (external) °F.

Min. design metal temp. ______ (37) ______ °F at ______ psi. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test pressure ______ (39) ______ psi.

10. Nozzles, inspection and safety valve openings:

Purpose (Inlet, Outlet, Drain)	No.	Diam. or Size	Type	Matl.	Nom. Thk.	Reinforcement Matl.	How Attached	Location
(41)		(42)	(42)	(20)	(46)		(48)	(50)
			(43)					
			(48)	(44)				

11. Supports: Skirt ______ (51) ______ (Yes or no) Lugs ______ (No.) Legs ______ (No.) Other ______ (Describe) Attached ______ (Where and how)

12. Remarks: Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of the report: ______
(Name of part, item number, Mfgr's. name and identifying stamp)
(38) (52) (53)

(58)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP/FIELD COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this vessel conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Division 1. "U" Certificate of Authorization No. ______ (58) ______ expires ______ .

Date ______ Co. name ______ (58) ______ (Manufacturer) Signed ______ (58) ______ (Representative)

(60)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP/FIELD INSPECTION

Vessel constructed by ______ at ______ .

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the State or Province of ______ (61) ______ and employed by ______ have inspected the component described in this Manufacturer's Data Report on ______ , and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the Manufacturer has constructed this pressure vessel in accordance with ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1. By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the pressure vessel described in this Manufacturer's Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (60) ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ______ (62) ______ [Nat'l Board (incl. endorsements), State, Prov. and No.]

This form (E00117) may be obtained from the ASME Order Dept., 22 Law Drive, Box 2300, Fairfield, NJ 07007-2300.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

FORM U-2 MANUFACTURER'S PARTIAL DATA REPORT
A Part of a Pressure Vessel Fabricated by One Manufacturer for Another Manufacturer
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 ______
(Name and address of Manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 ______
(Name and address of Purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ 3 56 ______
(Name and address)

4. Type: ______ 7 ______ [Description of vessel part (shell, two-piece head, tube bundle)] ______ 8 ______ (Mfg's serial No.) ______ 9 ______ (CRN)

______ 12 ______ (Nat'l. Bd. No.) ______ 10 ______ (Drawing No.) ______ 11 57 ______ (Drawing prepared by) ______ (Year built)

5. ASME Code, Section VIII, Div. 1 ______ 13 ______ [Edition and Addenda (date)] ______ 14 ______ (Code Case No.) ______ 15 56 ______ [Special Service per UG-120(d)]

Items 6–11 incl. to be completed for single wall vessels, jackets of jacketed vessels, shell of heat exchangers, or chamber of multichamber vessels.

6. Shell (a) No. of course(s): ______ 16 ______ (b) Overall length (ft & in.): ______ 17 ______

Course(s)			Material	Thickness		Long. Joint (Cat. A)			Circum. Joint (Cat. A, B, & C)			Heat Treatment	
No.	Diameter, in.	Length (ft & in.)	Spec./Grade or Type	Nom.	Corr.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Temp.	Time
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24		25	26		27	

7. Heads: (a) ______ 20 ______ 27 ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.) (b) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Thickness		Radius		Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure		Category A		
		Min.	Corr.	Crown	Knuckle					Convex	Concave	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.
(a)		28	22	29	30								31	
(b)														

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastening) ______ 32 ______
(Mat'l Spec. No., Grade, Size, No.)

8. Type of jacket ______ 33 ______ Jacket closure ______ 34 ______
(Describe as ogee & weld, bar, etc.)

If bar, give dimensions ______ If bolted, describe or sketch.

9. MAWP ______ 35 56 ______ (internal) ______ (external) psi at max. temp. ______ 36 ______ (internal) ______ (external) °F. Min. design metal temp. ______ 37 ______ °F at ______ psi.

10. Impact test ______ 38 ______ [Indicate *yes* or *no* and the component(s) impact tested] at test temperature of ______ 38 ______ °F.

11. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test press. ______ 39 ______ Proof test ______ 40 ______

Items 12 and 13 to be completed for tube sections.

12. Tubesheet: ______ 20 ______ [Stationary (Mat'l Spec. No.)] ______ 18 ______ [Dia., In. (subject to press.)] ______ 21 ______ (Nom. thk., in.) ______ 22 56 ______ (Corr. Allow., in.) ______ [Attachment (welded or bolted)]

______ 20 ______ [Floating (Mat'l Spec. No.)] ______ 18 ______ (Dia., in.) ______ 21 ______ (Nom. thk., in.) ______ 22 56 ______ (Corr. Allow., in.) ______ (Attachment)

13. Tubes: ______ 20 ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) ______ (O.D., in.) ______ (Nom. thk., in. or gauge) ______ (Number) ______ [Type (Straight or U)]

Items 14–18 incl. to be completed for inner chambers of jacketed vessels or channels of heat exchangers.

14. Shell (a) No. of course(s) ______ (b) Overall length (ft & in.): ______

Course(s)			Material	Thickness		Long. Joint (Cat. A)			Circum. Joint (Cat. A, B, & C)			Heat Treatment	
No.	Diameter, in.	Length (ft & in.)	Spec./Grade or Type	Nom.	Corr.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Temp.	Time
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24		25	26		27	

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

FORM U-2 (Back)

15. Heads: (a) ______________________________ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.) (b) ______________________________ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Thickness		Radius		Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure		Category A		
		Min.	Corr.	Crown	Knuckle					Convex	Concave	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.
(a)														
(b)														

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastening) ______________________________ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade, Size, No.)

16. MAWP ________ (internal) ________ (external) psi at max. temp. ________ (internal) ________ (external) °F. Min. design metal temp. ________ °F at ________ psi.

17. Impact test ______ 38 ______ [Indicate *yes* or *no* and the component(s) impact tested] at test temperature of ___ 38 ___ °F.

18. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test press. ______________ Proof test ______________

19. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings:

Purpose (Inlet, Outlet, Drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Flange Type	Material		Nozzle Thickness		Reinforcement Material	How Attached		Location (Insp. Open.)
				Nozzle	Flange	Nom.	Corr.		Nozzle	Flange	
				20	20						
41		42	43	44	45	46		47	48 49	48 49	50

20. Supports: Skirt ___ 51 ___ (Yes or no) Lugs ___ 51 ___ (No.) Legs ___ 51 ___ (No.) Others ___ 51 ___ (Describe) Attached ___ 51 ___ (Where and how)

21. Remarks: ______________________________

53

____

58

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP/FIELD COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details of material, construction, and workmanship of this pressure vessel part conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Division 1.

U Certificate of Authorization No. ______________ Expires ______________________

Date __________ Name ______________________ (Manufacturer) Signed ______________________ (Representative)

60

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP/FIELD INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the State or Province of ___ 61 ___ and employed by ______________________ of ______________________ have inspected the pressure vessel part described in this Manufacturer's Data Report on ______________________, and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the Manufacturer has constructed this pressure vessel part in accordance with ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1. By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the pressure vessel part described in this Manufacturers' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date __________ Signed ______________________ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ___ 63 ___ (Nat'l Board incl. endorsement, State, Province and No.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM U-2A MANUFACTURER'S PARTIAL DATA REPORT (ALTERNATIVE FORM)
A Part of a Pressure Vessel Fabricated by One Manufacturer for Another Manufacturer
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ (1) (Name and address of Manufacturer)
2. Manufactured for ______ (2) (Name and address of Purchaser)
3. Location of installation ______ (3) (56) (Name and address)
4. Type: ______ (7) [Description of vessel part (shell, two-piece head, tube bundle)] ______ (8) (Mfg's serial No.) ______ (9) (CRN)
   ______ (12) (Nat'l. Bd. No.) ______ (10) (Drawing No.) ______ (11) (57) (Drawing prepared by) ______ (Year built)
5. ASME Code, Section VIII, Div. 1 ______ (13) [Edition and Addenda (date)] ______ (14) (Code Case No.) ______ (15) (56) [Special Service per UG-120(d)]
6. Shell (a) No. of course(s): ______ (16) (b) Overall length (ft & in.): ______ (17)

Course(s)			Material	Thickness		Long. Joint (Cat. A)			Circum. Joint (Cat. A, B, & C)			Heat Treatment	
No.	Diameter, in.	Length (ft & in.)	Spec./Grade or Type	Nom.	Corr.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Temp.	Time
	(18)	(19)	(20)	(21)	(22)	(23)	(24)		(25)	(26)		(27)	
				(56)									

7. Heads: (a) ______ (20) (27) (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.) (b) ______ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Thickness		Radius		Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure		Category A		
		Min.	Corr.	Crown	Knuckle					Convex	Concave	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.
(a)		(28)	(22)	(29)	(30)								(31)	
(b)			(56)											

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastening) ______ (32) (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade, Size, No.)

8. MAWP (35) (56) ______ (internal) ______ (external) psi at max. temp. (36) ______ (internal) ______ (external) °F. Min. design metal temp. (37) (56) ______ °F at ______ psi.
9. Impact test ______ (38) [Indicate *yes* or *no* and the component(s) impact tested] at test temperature of (38) ______ °F.
10. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test press. ______ (39) Proof test ______ (40)
11. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings:

Purpose (Inlet, Outlet, Drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Flange Type	Material		Nozzle Thickness		Reinforcement Material	How Attached		Location (Insp. Open.)
				Nozzle	Flange	Nom.	Corr.		Nozzle	Flange	
				(20)	(20)						
(41)		(42)	(43)	(44)	(45)	(46)		(47)	(48) (49)	(48) (49)	(50)

12. Supports: Skirt (51) ______ (Yes or no) Lugs (51) ______ (No.) Legs (51) ______ (No.) Others (51) ______ (Describe) Attached (51) ______ (Where and how)
13. Remarks: ______
______
(53) ______

(58)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP/FIELD COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details of material, construction, and workmanship of this pressure vessel part conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Division 1.

U Certificate of Authorization No. ______ Expires ______

Date ______ Name ______ (Manufacturer) Signed ______ (Representative)

(60)

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP/FIELD INSPECTION

I, the undersigned, holding a valid commission issued by the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors and/or the State or Province of (61) ______ and employed by ______ of ______ have inspected the pressure vessel part described in this Manufacturer's Data Report on ______, and state that, to the best of my knowledge and belief, the Manufacturer has constructed this pressure vessel part in accordance with ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1. By signing this certificate neither the Inspector nor his employer makes any warranty, expressed or implied, concerning the pressure vessel part described in this Manufacturer's' Data Report. Furthermore, neither the Inspector nor his employer shall be liable in any manner for any personal injury or property damage or a loss of any kind arising from or connected with this inspection.

Date ______ Signed ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commissions ______ (63) (Nat'l Board incl. endorsement, State, Province and No.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM U-3 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE COVERING PRESSURE VESSELS TO BE STAMPED WITH THE UM SYMBOL, SEE U-1(j)
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ____ 1 ____
(Name and address of Manufacturer)
2. Manufactured for ____ 2 ____
(Name and address of Purchaser)
3. Location of installation ____ 56 3 ____
(Name and address)
4. Type: ____ 4 ____ (Horiz., vert., or sphere) ____ 5 ____ (Tank, separator, etc.) ____ 6 ____ (Capacity) ____ 8 ____ (Mfg's. serial No.)
____ 9 ____ (CRN) ____ 10 ____ (Drawing No.) ________ (Year built)
5. ASME Code, Section VIII, Div. 1 ____ 13 ____ [Edition and Addenda (date)] ____ 14 ____ (Code Case No.)
6. Shell (a) No. of course(s): ____ 16 ____ (b) Overall length (ft & in.): ____ 17 ____

Course(s)			Material	Thickness		Long. Joint (Cat. A)			Circum. Joint (Cat. A, B, & C)			Heat Treatment	
No.	Diameter, in.	Length (ft & in.)	Spec./Grade or Type	Nom.	Corr.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.	Temp.	Time
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24		25	26		27	

7. Heads: (a) ____ 20 27 ____ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.) (b) ________ (Mat'l Spec. No., Grade or Type) (H.T. — Time & Temp.)

	Location (Top, Bottom, Ends)	Thickness		Radius		Elliptical Ratio	Conical Apex Angle	Hemispherical Radius	Flat Diameter	Side to Pressure		Category A		
		Min.	Corr.	Crown	Knuckle					Convex	Concave	Type	Full, Spot, None	Eff.
(a)		28	22	29	30								31	
(b)														

If removable, bolts used (describe other fastening) ____ 32 ____
(Mat'l Spec. No., Grade, Size, No.)
8. Type of jacket ____ 33 ____ Jacket closure ____ 34 ____
(Describe as ogee & weld, bar, etc.)
If bar, give dimensions; if bolted describe or sketch ________
9. MAWP ____ 35 ____ (internal) ________ (external) psi at max. temp. ____ 36 ____ (internal) ________ (external) F. Min. design metal temp. ____ 37 ____ F at ________ psi.
10. Impact test ____ 38 ____ [Indicate *yes* or *no* and the component(s) impact tested] at test temperature of ____ 38 ____ °F.
11. Hydro., pneu., or comb. test press. ____ 39 ____ Proof test ____ 40 ____
12. Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings:

Purpose (Inlet, Outlet, Drain, etc.)	No.	Diameter or Size	Flange Type	Material		Nozzle Thickness		Reinforcement Material	How Attached		Location (Insp. Open.)
				Nozzle	Flange	Nom.	Corr.		Nozzle	Flange	
				20	20						
41		42	43	44	45	46		47	48 49	48 49	50

13. Supports: Skirt ____ 51 ____ (Yes or no) Lugs ____ 51 ____ (No.) Legs ____ 51 ____ (No.) Others ____ 51 ____ (Describe) Attached ____ 51 ____ (Where and how)
14. Manufacturer's Partial Data Reports properly identified and signed by Commissioned Inspectors have been furnished for the following items of the report: (List the name of part, item number, mfg's. name and identifying number)
____ 52 ____
15. Remarks: ____ 53 ____

59

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

We certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details of design, material, construction, and workmanship of this vessel conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Vessels, Section VIII, Division 1.

UM Certificate of Authorization No. ________ Expires ________

Date ________ Name ________ (Manufacturer) Signed ________ (Representative)

Signed ____ 67 ____ (Certified Individual)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM U-4 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT SUPPLEMENTARY SHEET
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 54 ______
(Name and address of Manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 54 ______
(Name and address of Purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ 3 54 ______
(Name and address)

4. Type: ______ 4 54 ______ (Horiz., vert., or sphere) ______ 5 54 ______ (Tank, separator, heat exh., etc.) ______ 8 54 ______ (Mfg's. serial No.)

______ 9 54 ______ (CRN) ______ 10 54 ______ (Drawing No.) ______ 12 54 ______ (Nat'l. Bd. No.) ______ (Year built)

Data Report Item Number	Remarks
54	55

54
Certificate of Authorization: Type ______ No. ______ Expires ______

Date ______ Name ______ (Manufacturer) Signed ______ (Representative)

Date ______ Name ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commission ______ 62 63 ______ (Nat'l Board incl. endorsement, State, Province and No.)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE W-3
INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS

Applies to Form						Note	
U-1	U-1A	U-2	U-2A	U-3	U-4	No.	Instruction
X	X	X	X	X	X	1	Name and street address of manufacturer as listed on ASME Certificate of Authorization.
X	X	. . .	. . .	X	X	2	Name and address of purchaser.
X	X	X	X	X	X	3	Name of user, and address where vessel is to be installed. If not known, so indicate (e.g., "not known" or "built for stock").
X	X	. . .	. . .	X	X	4	Type of installation intended (horizontal, vertical, or sphere).
X	X	. . .	. . .	X	X	5	Description or application of vessel (tank, separator, jacketed kettle, heat exchanger, etc.)
. . .	. . .	. . .	. . .	X	. . .	6	Indicate vessel capacity. See U-1(j).
. . .	. . .	X	X	. . .	. . .	7	Description of vessel part (i.e., shell, two-piece head, tube bundle).
X	X	X	X	X	X	8	Manufacturer's serial number. See UG-116(a)(1)(b)(5).
X	X	X	X	X	X	9	Canadian registration number, where applicable.
X	X	X	X	X	X	10	Indicate drawing number(s), including applicable revision number, that cover general assembly and list of materials. For Canadian registered vessels, the number of the drawing approved by the provincial authorities.
. . .	. . .	X	X	. . .	. . .	11	Organization that prepared drawing, if other than the Manufacturer listed in No. 1.
X	X	X	X	. . .	X	12	Where applicable, the National Board number from the Manufacturer's Series of National Board numbers sequentially without skips or gaps. National Board numbers shall not be used for owner-inspected vessels.
X	X	X	X	X	. . .	13	ASME Code, Section VIII, Division 1, Edition (e.g., 1989) and Addenda (e.g., A89, A90, etc.) used for construction.
X	X	X	X	X	. . .	14	All Code Case numbers and revisions used for construction must be listed. Where more space is needed use "Remarks" section or list on a supplemental page.
X	X	X	X	. . .	. . .	15	Note any special service by Code paragraph as specified in UG-120(d) (e.g., lethal, low temperature, unfired steam boiler, direct fired).
X	X	X	X	X	. . .	16	Total number of courses or sections between end closures (heads) required to make one shell. In the "No." blocks in the table below, under "Courses," indicate the number of courses with identical information.
X	X	X	X	X	. . .	17	Length of the shell (courses), excluding heads, in feet and inches.
X	X	X	X	X	. . .	18	Indicate the dimensions of the course(s) as follows: (a) cylindrical as inside or outside diameter; (b) transition as inside or outside diameter at the largest and smallest ends; (c) squares or rectangle as the largest width and height; (d) all other shapes define as appropriate or attach a sketch or drawing. Where more space is needed use "Remarks" section or list on a supplemental page.
X	. . .	X	X	X	. . .	19	Length of each course(s) in the shell.
X	X	X	X	X	. . .	20	Show the complete ASME specification number and grade of the actual material used in the vessel. Material is to be as designated in Section VIII, Division 1 (e.g., "SA-285C"). Exceptions: A specification number for a material not identical to an ASME specification may be shown only if such material meets the criteria in the Code in conjunction with the Foreword of this Section. When material is accepted through a Code Case, the applicable Case number shall be shown.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

TABLE W-3 (CONT'D) INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS

U-1	U-1A	U-2	U-2A	U-3	U-4	Note No.	Instruction
X	X	X	X	X	...	21	Thickness is the nominal thickness of the material used in the fabrication of the vessel shell. It includes corrosion allowance.
X	X	X	X	X	...	22	State corrosion allowance (see UG-25).
X	X	X	X	X	...	23	Type of longitudinal joint (e.g., Type 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6) per Table UW-12. In case of brazing, explain type of joint per Fig. UB-16. If seamless, indicate joint type as S, and E for electric resistance welded.
X	X	X	X	X	...	24	Category A (longitudinal) welds — identify degree of examination (radiographic or if applicable ultrasonic) employed: full, spot, or none (see UW-11). Also identify the joint efficiency associated with the circumferential stress calculations from Table UW-12 or para. UW-12. Where more space is needed, use "Remarks" section, supplemental page, or RT map, as applicable. In the case of parts, there is no need to identify the joint efficiency associated with these welds. (See Note 31 for heads of welded construction joints.)
X	X	X	X	X	...	25	Type of circumferential joint (e.g., Type 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6) per Table UW-12. In the case of brazing, explain type of joint per Fig. UB-16. For multiple course vessel, the Category B welds in the shell and head-to-shell joint (Category A, B, C) shall be listed bottom to top or left to right as shown on drawing listed in 10.
X	X	X	X	X	...	26	Categories A, B, and C (circumferential) welds — Identify degree of examination (radiographic or if applicable ultrasonic) employed: full, spot, or none (see UW-11) or spot radiography in accordance with UW-11(a)(5). Where more space is needed, use "Remarks" section, supplemental page, or RT map, as applicable. In the case of parts, there is no need to identify the joint efficiency associated with these welds.
X	X	X	X	X	...	27	When heat treatment is performed by the Manufacturer, such as postweld heat treatment, annealing, or normalizing, give the holding temperature and time. Explain any special cooling procedure under "Remarks."
X	X	X	X	X	...	28	Specified minimum thickness of the head after forming. It includes corrosion allowance.
X	X	X	X	X	...	29	Indicate the crown radius (inside or outside) for torispherical heads.
X	X	X	X	X	...	30	Indicate the knuckle radius (inside or outside) for torispherical or toriconical heads.
X	X	X	X	X	...	31	For heads of welded construction joints, indicate the following: (a) type of joint in the head (Category A), e.g., Type 1, 2, 3, etc., per Table UW-12; in the case of brazing, explain the type of joint per Fig. UB-16. (b) identify degree of examination (radiographic or if applicable ultrasonic) employed: full, spot, or none. Where more space is needed, use "Remarks" section, supplemental page, RT map, as applicable.
X	X	X	X	X	...	32	Bolts used to secure removable head or heads of vessel. Indicate the number, size, material specification (grade/type).
X	...	X	...	X	...	33	Note type of jacket by reference to Fig. 9-2, where applicable.
X	...	X	...	X	...	34	Explain type of jacket closures used by reference to Fig. 9-5.
X	X	X	X	X	...	35	Show maximum allowable working pressure (internal or external) for which vessel is constructed. See UG-98.
X	X	X	X	X	...	36	Show maximum temperature permitted for vessel at MAWP. See 35.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE W-3 (CONT'D)
INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS

Applies to Form						Note	
U-1	U-1A	U-2	U-2A	U-3	U-4	No.	Instruction
X	X	X	X	X	...	37	Indicate the minimum design metal temperature (MDMT).
X	X	X	X	X	...	38	Indicate if impact testing was conducted (yes or no) and the component(s) that were impact tested and the impact test temperature. Where more space is needed, use "Remarks" section or list on a supplement page. If no, indicate applicable paragraph(s) [such as UG-20(f), UCS-66(a), UCS-66(b), or UCS-66(c), and UHA-51 or UHT-6].
X	X	X	X	X	...	39	Indicate the type of test used (pneumatic, hydrostatic, or combination test, as applicable) and specify test pressure at the top of the vessel in the test position. Indicate under "Remarks" if the vessel was tested in the vertical position.
X	...	X	X	X	...	40	When proof test is required by Code rules, indicate type (e.g., brittle-coating, bursting, etc.), specific Code requirements satisfied (UG-101, Appendix 9, Appendix 17), proof test pressure, and acceptance date by the Inspector. Subsequent Data Reports shall indicate under "Remarks" the test date, type and acceptance date by the Inspector.
X	X	X	X	X	...	41	Nozzles, inspection, and safety valve openings; list all openings, regardless of size and use. Where more space is needed, list them on a supplemental page.
X	X	X	X	X	...	42	Indicate nozzles by size (NPS) and inspection openings by inside dimensions in inches.
X	X	X	X	X	...	43	Data entries with description acceptable to the Inspector. For flange type an abbreviation may be used to define any generic name. Some typical abbreviations: Flanged fabricated nozzle — Cl. 150 flg. Long weld neck flange — Cl. 300 lwn. Weld end fabricated nozzle — w.e. Lap joint flange — Cl. 150 lap jnt.
X	X	X	X	X	...	44	Show the material for the nozzle neck.
X	...	X	X	X	...	45	Show the material for the flange.
X	X	X	X	X	...	46	Nominal thickness applies to nozzle neck thickness.
X	...	X	X	X	...	47	Show the complete ASME specification number and grade of the actual material used for the reinforcement material (pad). Material is to be as designated in Section VIII, Division 1. Exceptions: A specification number for a material not identical to an ASME specification may be shown only if such material meets the criteria in the Code and in conjunction with the Foreword of this Section. When material is accepted through a Code Case, the applicable Case number shall be shown.
X	X	X	X	X	...	48	Data entries with description acceptable to the Inspector. A code identification of Fig. UW-16.1 (sketch no.) may be used to define the type of attachment.
X	...	X	X	X	...	49	Categories C and D welds — Identify degree of examination (radiographic or if applicable ultrasonic) employed: full, spot, or none (see UW-11). Also identify the joint efficiency associated with the weld from Table UW-12. When more space is needed, use "Remarks" section supplemental page or RT map, as applicable.
X	X	X	X	X	...	50	"Location" applies to inspection openings only.
X	X	X	X	X	...	51	Describe: (a) type of support (skirt, lugs, etc.); (b) location of support (top, bottom, side, etc.); (c) method of attachment (bolted, welded, etc.).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE W-3 (CONT'D)
INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS

Applies to Form U-1	U-1A	U-2	U-2A	U-3	U-4	Note No.	Instruction
X	X	...	...	X	...	52	To be completed when one or more parts of the vessel are furnished by others and certified on Data Report U-2 or U-2A. The part manufacturer's name and serial number required by UG-116 should be indicated.
X	X	X	X	X	...	53	Space for additional comments including any Code restrictions on the vessel, or any unusual requirements that have been met, such as those in U-2(g), UG-11, UG-46, UG-53, UG-79, UG-90(c)(2), UG-99(e)(2), UG-115, UG-119(g), UG-120(d), UCS-56(f)(1), and UCL-55 or in other notes to this Table. Indicate stiffening rings when used. See W-2(d) when additional space is needed.
...	...	...	...	...	X	54	Fill in information identical to that shown on the Data Report Form to which this sheet is supplementary. Indicate the type of Certificate of Authorization, number, expiration date, and signature of the company representative.
...	...	...	...	...	X	55	Fill in information for which there was insufficient space on the Data Report Form as indicated by the notation "See attached U-4 Form" on the Data Report. See W-2(d). Identify the applicable Data Report item number.
...	...	X	X	...	...	56	Indicate data, if known.
...	...	X	X	...	...	57	Indicate the extent, if any, of the design function performed, UG-120(c)(2).
X	X	X	X	...	...	58	Certificate of Shop/Field Compliance block is to show the name of the Manufacturer as shown on his ASME Code Certificate of Authorization. This should be signed in accordance with the organizational authority defined in the Quality Control System (10-4).
...	...	...	...	X	...	59	Manufacturer's authorization number to use the UM Symbol from his Certificate of Authorization.
X	X	X	X	...	...	60	Certificate of Shop/Field Inspection block is to be completed by the Manufacturer and signed by the Authorized Inspector who performs the inspection.
X	...	X	X	...	...	61	If the Inspector has a valid commission for the state or province where the Manufacturer's shop is located, the name of that state or province. If the Manufacturer is located in a non-Code state or province, insert the name of the state or province where the Inspector took his original examination to obtain his National Board Commission, provided he still has a valid commission for that state or province. Otherwise, if no valid commission, show the name of the state or province where he has a valid commission authorizing him to make inspection.
X	X	...	...	...	X	62	The Inspector's National Board Commission number must be shown when the pressure vessel is stamped National Board; otherwise show only his state or province commission number.
...	...	X	X	...	X	63	The Inspector's National Board Commission number must be shown when the pressure vessel part is stamped National Board; otherwise show only his state or province commission number.
X	...	...	...	...	...	64	Certificate of Field Assembly Compliance block for field work or assembly is to be signed by the Manufacturer's representative in charge of field fabrication. This should be signed in accordance with the organizational authority defined in the quality control system (10-4).
X	...	...	...	...	...	65	Certificate of Field Assembly Inspection block is for the Authorized Inspector to sign for any field construction or assembly work. See 61 for National Board Commission number requirements.
X	...	...	...	...	...	66	Indicate those items inspected in the field that were not inspected in the shop.
...	...	...	...	X	...	67	Signature of Certified Individual indicates ASME Code symbol has been applied in accordance with the requirements of Section VIII, Division 1.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM U-4 MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORT SUPPLEMENTARY SHEET
As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured and certified by ______ 1 54
(Name and address of Manufacturer)

2. Manufactured for ______ 2 54
(Name and address of Purchaser)

3. Location of installation ______ 3 54
(Name and address)

4. Type: ______ 4 54 (Horiz., vert., or sphere) ______ 5 54 (Tank, separator, heat exh., etc.) ______ 8 54 (Mfg's. serial No.)
______ 9 54 (CRN) ______ 10 54 (Drawing No.) ______ 12 54 (Nat'l. Bd. No.) ______ (Year built)

Data Report Item Number	A B 55			Remarks		
Form U-1						
Item 6	(a) Layered Construction Type: (Concentric Wrapped, Spiral Wrapped, Coil Wound, Shrink Fit, etc.) Nom. Layer					
(Shell)	Location	Material	Layer Thk.	Nom. Thk. Tot.	No. Courses	NDE
	(a) Inner Shell:					
	(b) Dummy Layer:	20	F	21	16	C
	(c) Dummy Layer:					
	(d) Layers:					
	(e) Overwraps:					
Item 7	(a) Layered Construction Type: (Formed, Machined, Segmental, etc.)					
(Heads)	Location	Material	Layer Thk.	Nom. Thk. Tot.	Smls./Welded	NDE
	(1) Inner Head:					
	(2) Dummy Layer:	20	F	21	E 31	C
	(3) Layers:					
	(b) Layered Construction Type:					
	(1) Inner Head:					
	(2) Dummy Layer:					
	(3) Layers:					
Item 22	Vent Holes	Diam. Hole	Staggered Layers or Radial Through			
(Remarks)	(a) Layered Shell:	G	H			
	(b) Layered Head:					
	Gaps Have Been Controlled According to the Provisions of Paragraph: (See ULW-77 and ULW-78)					
	I		J		B	

54 Certificate of Authorization: Type ______ No. ______ Expires ______

Date ______ Name ______ (Manufacturer) Signed ______ (Representative)

Date ______ Name ______ (Authorized Inspector) Commission ______ 62 63 (Nat'l Board incl. endorsement, State, Province and No.)

EXAMPLE

FIG. W-3.1 EXAMPLE OF THE USE OF FORM U-4

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE W-3.1
SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF MANUFACTURER'S DATA REPORTS FOR LAYERED VESSELS

Note Letter	Instruction
A	Letter symbols indicate instructions that supplement the instructions of Table W-3.
B	The form Fig. W-3.1 is not available preprinted as shown. It is intended as an example of suggested use of Form U-4 for reporting data for a vessel of layered construction. It is intended that the Manufacturer develop his own arrangement to provide supplementary data that describes his vessel.
C	Note the NDE performed (RT, PT, MT, UT).
D	Applies only when heads are of layered construction.
E	Indicate if seamless or welded.
F	When more than one layer thickness is used, add lines as needed.
G	Indicate diameter of vent holes in the layers.
H	Indicate whether vent holes are in random locations in each layer, or are drilled through all layers.
I	Indicate locations of nozzles and openings; layered shell; layered head.
J	Indicate method of attachment and reinforcement of nozzles and openings in layered shells and layered heads. Refer to figure number if applicable.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

FORM UV-1 MANUFACTURER'S OR ASSEMBLER'S CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR PRESSURE RELIEF VALVES

As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured (or assembled) by ____ ① ____

2. Table of Code symbol stamped items:

I.D. #	Date	Cert. #	Qty.	Type	Size (NPS)	Set Pressure	Capacity	Test Fluid	Date Code	CI Name	CI Signature
②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪	⑫	⑬

3. Remarks ____ ⑭ ____

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

By the signature of the Certified Individual (CI) noted above, we certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details for design, material, construction, and workmanship of the pressure relief devices conform with the requirements of Section VIII, Division 1 of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

UV Certificate of Authorization No. ____ ⑮ ____ Expires ____ ⑯ ____

Date ____ ⑰ ____ Signed ____ ⑱ ____ (responsible representative) Name ____ ⑱ ____ (Manufacturer or Assembler)

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

FORM UD-1 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FOR RUPTURE DISK DEVICES

As Required by the Provisions of the ASME Code Rules, Section VIII, Division 1

1. Manufactured by ______ 1 ______

2. Table of Code symbol stamped items:

ID #	Date	Cert. #	Qty.	Disk Material	Type	Size (NPS)	Marker Burst Pressure	Specified Disk Temp.	Min. Net Flow Area	Certified Flow Resistance Coefficient	Date Code	CI Name	CI Signature
2	3	4	5	19	6	7	20	21	22	23	11	12	13

3. Remarks ______ 14 ______

CERTIFICATE OF SHOP COMPLIANCE

By the signature of the Certified Individual (CI) noted above, we certify that the statements made in this report are correct and that all details for design, material, construction, and workmanship of the rupture disk devices conform with the requirements of Section VIII, Division 1 of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

UD Certificate of Authorization No. ______ 15 ______ Expires ______ 16 ______

Date ______ 17 ______ Signed ______ 18 ______ (responsible representative) Name ______ 18 ______ (Manufacturer)

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TABLE W-3.2
SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PREPARATION OF MANUFACTURER'S OR ASSEMBLER'S CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE FORMS UV-1 AND UD-1

Note No.	Instruction
1	Name and address of Manufacturer or Assembler.
2	Pressure relief device Manufacturer's or Assembler's unique identification number, such as serial number, work order number, or lot number.
3	The date of completion of production of the pressure relief device.
4	The NB Certification Number.
5	The quantity of identical devices for this line item.
6	The Manufacturer's Design or Type Number as marked on the nameplate.
7	The inlet size of the pressure relief device (NPS).
8	The nameplate set pressure of the pressure relief device.
9	The nameplate capacity of the pressure relief device.
10	The fluid used for testing the pressure relief device.
11	The year built or the pressure relief device Manufacturer's or Assembler's date code.
12	The name of the Certified Individual.
13	The signature of the Certified Individual. Required for each line item.
14	Include any applicable remarks (referencing the identification number) that may pertain, such as identification of a Code Case that requires marking on the device.
15	The number of the pressure relief device Manufacturer's or Assembler's Certificate of Authorization.
16	Expiration date of the pressure relief device Manufacturer's or Assembler's Certificate of Authorization.
17	Date signed by the pressure relief device Manufacturer or Assembler's authorized representative.
18	The Certificate of Compliance block is to show the name of the Manufacturer or Assembler as shown on his/her ASME Code Certificate of Authorization. This shall be signed in accordance with organizational authority defined in the Quality Control System (see 10-4).
19	The material of the rupture disk.
20	The marked burst pressure of the rupture disk.
21	The specified disk temperature of the rupture disk.
22	The minimum net flow area of the ruture disk.
23	The certified flow resistance coefficient K_{RG}, K_{RL}, or K_{RGL} of the rupture disk, as applicable.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX Y
FLAT FACE FLANGES WITH METAL-TO-METAL CONTACT OUTSIDE THE BOLT CIRCLE

Y-1 GENERAL

(a) The rules in this Appendix apply to circular, bolted flanged connections where the assemblage is comprised of identical or nonidentical flange pairs, and where the flanges are flat faced and are in uniform metal-to-metal contact across their entire face during assembly before the bolts are tightened or after a small amount of preload is applied to compress a gasket. The rules also apply when a pair of identical flat faced flanges are separated by a metal spacer. The rules are not intended for cases where the faces are intentionally made nonparallel to each other such that initial contact is at the bore.

Construction details for attachment and configuration of the flange are not covered in this Appendix. Minimum weld sizes and geometric limitations given in Fig. 2-4 and Fig. UW-13.2 apply to Appendix Y flanges. Similarly, when applying the rules of this Appendix, use of the graphs in Appendix 2 for obtaining applicable design parameters is necessary; namely, Figs. 2-7.1 through 2-7.6.

(b) It is assumed that a self-sealing gasket is used approximately in-line with the wall of attached pipe or vessel. The rules provide for hydrostatic end loads only and assume that the gasket seating loads are small and may in most cases be neglected. It is also assumed that the seal generates a negligible axial load under operating conditions. If such is not the case, allowance shall be made for a gasket load H_G dependent on the size and configuration of the seal and design pressure. Proper allowance shall be made if connections are subject to external forces or external pressure.

(c) As with flanges with ring type gaskets, the stress in the bolts may vary appreciably with pressure. There is an additional bolt stress generated due to a prying effect resulting from the flanges interacting beyond the bolt circle. As a result, fatigue of the bolts and other parts comprising the flanged connection may require consideration and adequate pretensioning of the bolts may be necessary. It is important to note that the operating bolt stress is relatively insensitive to changes in prestress up to a certain point and that thereafter the two stresses are essentially the same. This is a desirable characteristic of Appendix Y flanges; it means that if the assembly stress (prestress) in the bolts is close to the operating design stress σ_b, then subsequent applications of pressure loadings ranging from zero to full load will have no significant effect on the actual operating stress in the bolts.

Unlike Appendix 2 flanges and their bolts which are stressed during assembly (although some readjustment in the stresses may occur during pressurization), Appendix Y flanges become stressed during pressurization; however, the effect of pressurization on the operating stress in the bolts depends upon the extent to which the bolts are stressed during assembly.

(d) In the case of identical flange pairs, the analytical procedure described in this Appendix considers the flanges to be continuous, annular plates whose flexural characteristics can be approximated by beam theory by considering the flanges to be comprised of a series of discrete, radial beams. For nonidentical flange pairs, beam theory is supplemented by the theory of rigid body rotation so as to preserve equilibrium of moments and forces. Moments associated with beam theory are designated as *balanced moments,* whereas moments used when the theory of rigid body rotations is applied are designated as *unbalanced moments.* Balanced and unbalanced moments are designated M_b and M_u, respectively. When no subscript appears, a balanced moment is intended, i.e., in the equations for the analysis of identical flange pairs (Y-6.1).

(e) A reduction in flange-to-flange contact forces beyond the bolt circle occurs when the flanges are stiff with respect to the bolting and, in the extreme, flange separation occurs. The rules in this Appendix provide little insight into the problem except when the reduction in the contact force is due to the flange-hub interaction moment. The problem is considered to be of little practical significance when the nuts are tightened during assembly using ordinary wrenching techniques.

(f) The design procedure is based on the assumption that the flanges are in tangential contact at their outside

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

diameter or at some lesser distance h_C from the bolt circle. [See Y-4(a)(2) and Y-8 when

$$h_C < h_{C\max}$$

for additional requirements.] The diameter of the circle where the flanges are in tangential contact is a design variable, the smaller the diameter of the contact circle

$$C + 2h_C$$

the greater the required prestress in the bolts, the higher the ratio of prestress to operating bolt stress, S_i / σ_b, and the smaller the flange separation at the gasket. The requirement of tangential contact, even when it is assumed to occur at the outside diameter

$$(C + 2h_{C\max})$$

of the flanges, automatically yields a high ratio of S_i / σ_b which means that the possibility of flange separation or an appreciable decrease in the flange-to-flange contact forces is no longer a problem even when the flanges are stiff with respect to the bolts.

(g) The equation for the calculated strain length l of the bolts is generally applicable. However, variations in the thickness of material actually clamped by each bolt, such as sleeves, collars, or multiple washers placed between a flange and the bolt heads or nuts, or by counterboring, must be considered in establishing a value of l for use in the design equations. A large increase in l may cause the flanges to become abnormally stiff with respect to such bolts and the provision of tangential contact may not yield a sufficiently high value of the ratio S_i / σ_b unless h_C is reduced to cause an increase in the ratio.

(h) Most of the calculated stresses are bending only so that tensile and compressive stresses of the same magnitude occur on opposite surfaces at the point under consideration. However, when a membrane stress occurs in conjunction with a bending stress, the combined stress represents the maximum absolute value at the point and may be tension or compression (denoted by a − sign).

Y-2 MATERIALS

The rules in 2-2 apply.

Y-3 NOTATION

(a) The symbols described below are used in the formulas for the design of flanges:

A = outside diameter of flange

A_b = cross-sectional area of the bolts using the root diameter of the thread or least diameter of unthreaded portion, if less

A_m = total required cross-sectional area of bolts, taken as the greater of A_{m1} and A_{m2}

A_{m1} = total cross-sectional area of bolts at root of thread or section of least diameter under stress, required for the operating conditions
= W_{m1} / S_b

$\overline{AR}$ = bolt hole aspect ratio used in calculating bolt-hole flexibility factor r_B
$= \dfrac{nD}{\pi C}$

a = shape factor
$= (A + C) / 2B_1$

B = inside diameter of flange. When B is less than $20g_1$, it will be optional for the designer to substitute B_1 for B in the formula for longitudinal stress S_H.

B_1 = $B + g_1$ for loose type flanges and for integral type flanges that have calculated values h / h_0 and g_1 / g_0 which would indicate an f value of less than 1.0, although the minimum value of f permitted is 1.0

B_1 = $B + g_0$ for integral type flanges when f is equal to or greater than one

B_1 = B for Category 3 (loose type) flanges

b = effective gasket or joint-contact-surface seating width [see Note 1, 2-5(c)(1)]

b_0 = basic gasket seating width, in. (from Table 2-5.2)

C = bolt circle diameter

C_1 = factor

$$= -\left(0.748 - 1.567 J_S \log \frac{A}{B_1}\right) \div (1 + 1.3 J_S) \tag{1}$$

C_2 = factor

$$= \left[\frac{\pi}{32}(PB_1^3) - 1.3 J_P M_P\right] \div (1 + 1.3 J_S) \tag{2}$$

C_3 = factor

$$= -\left(0.575 - 1.206 J_S \log \frac{A}{B_1}\right) \div (J_S + t_I^3 / F_I') \qquad (3)^1$$

C_4 = factor

$$= -(J_P M_P) \div (J_S + t_I^3 / F_I') \qquad (4)^1$$

c = basic dimension used for the minimum sizing of welds, equal to t_n or t_x, whichever is less

D = diameter of bolt hole

[1] $C_3 = C_4 = 0$ when $F_I' = 0$.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

d = factor

$d = \frac{U}{V} h_0 g_0^2$ for integral type flanges

$d = \frac{U}{V_L} h_0 g_0^2$ for loose type flanges

d_b = nominal diameter of bolt

E = modulus of elasticity of flange material, corrected for operating temperature. The modulus of elasticity shall be taken from the applicable Table TM in Section II, Part D. When a material is not listed in the TM tables, the requirements of U-2(g) shall be applied.

E_I^* = factor
$= E_I t_I^3$

E_{II}^* = factor
$= E_{II} t_{II}^3$

e = factor
$= \frac{F}{h_0}$ for integral type flanges
$= \frac{F_L}{h_0}$ for loose type flanges

F = factor for integral type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.2)

F_L = factor for loose type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.4)

$F' = g_0^2 (h_0 + Ft)/V$ for Category 1, Class 1 assembly (5a)

$F' = g_0^2 (h_0 + F_L t)/V_L$ for Category 2, Class 1 assembly (5b)

F' = 0 for Category 3, Class 1 assembly (5c)

$F_I' = g_0^2 (h_0 + Ft_I)/V$ for Category 1, Class 3 assembly (6a)

$F_I' = g_0^2 (h_0 + F_L t_I)/V_L$ for Category 2, Class 3 assembly (6b)

F_I' = 0 for Category 3, Class 3 assembly (6c)

f = hub stress correction factor for integral flanges from Fig. 2-7.6. (When greater than 1, this is the ratio of the stress in the small end of hub to the stress in the large end.) (For values below limit of the Figure, use $f = 1$.)

G = diameter at location of gasket load reaction
= mean diameter of gasket

g_0 = thickness of hub at small end

g_1 = thickness of hub at back of flange

H = total hydrostatic end force
$= 0.785\ G^2 P$

H_C = contact force between mating flanges

H_D = hydrostatic end force on area inside of flange
$= 0.785\ B^2 P$

H_G = gasket load due to seating pressure, plus axial force generated by self-sealing of gasket

H_p = total joint-contact-surface compression load
$= 2b \times 3.14\ GmP$

H_T = difference between total hydrostatic end force and the hydrostatic end force on area inside of flange
$= H - H_D$

h = hub length

h_C = radial distance from bolt circle to flange-spacer or flange-flange bearing circle where tangential contact occurs. Tangential contact exists from the selected value of h_C to $h_{C\max}$

$h_{C\max}$ = radial distance from bolt circle to outer edge of flange or spacer, whichever is less

h_D = radial distance from the bolt circle, to the circle on which H_D acts, as prescribed in Table 2-6

h_G = radial distance from gasket load reaction to the bolt circle
$= \frac{C - G}{2}$

h_0 = factor
$= \sqrt{Bg_0}$

h_T = radial distance from the bolt circle to the circle on which H_T acts as prescribed in Table 2-6

$$J_S = \frac{1}{B_1}\left[\frac{2h_D}{\beta} + \frac{h_C}{a}\right] + \pi r_B$$

$$J_P = \frac{1}{B_1}\left[\frac{h_D}{\beta} + \frac{h_C}{a}\right] + \pi r_B$$

K = ratio of outside diameter of flange to inside diameter of flange
$= A/B$

L = factor
$= \frac{te + 1}{T} + \frac{t^3}{d}$

l = calculated strain length of bolt
$= 2t + t_s + (\frac{1}{2} d_b$ for each threaded end for a Class 1 assembly)
$= t_I + t_{II} + (\frac{1}{2} d_b$ for each threaded end for a Class 3 assembly)

M_b = balanced moment acting at diameter B_1 of flange

M_D = component of moment due to H_D,
$= H_D h_D$

M_G = component of moment due to H_G,
$= H_G h_G$

M_H = moment acting on end of hub, pipe, or shell, at its junction with back face of flange ring

M_P = moment due to H_D, H_T, H_G,
$= H_D h_D + H_T h_T + H_G h_G$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

M_S = total moment on flange ring due to continuity with hub, pipe, or shell
= $M_H + Qt/2$ where
t = thickness of the flange under consideration (t, t_{I}, or t_{II}, as applicable)

M_T = component of moment due to H_T,
= $H_T h_T$

M_u = unbalanced moment acting at diameter B_1 of flange

m = gasket factor; obtain from Table 2-5.1 [see Note 1, 2-5(c)(1)]

N = width used to determine the basic gasket seating with b_0, based upon the possible contact width of the gasket (see Table 2-5.2)

n = number of bolts

P = internal design pressure (see UG-21)

Q = shear force between flange ring and end of hub, pipe, or shell, positive as indicated in Fig. Y-3.2 sketch (b)

R = radial distance from bolt circle to point of intersection of hub and back of flange, in. For integral and hub flanges,

$$R = \frac{C - B}{2} - g_1$$

$$r_B = \frac{1}{n}\left(\frac{4}{\sqrt{1 - \overline{AR}^2}} \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{1 + \overline{AR}}{1 - \overline{AR}}} - \pi - 2\overline{AR}\right)$$

(See Fig. Y-3.1 for a curve of nr_B vs $\overline{AR}$. In the above equation for r_B, $\tan^{-1}$ must be expressed in radians.)

r_E = elasticity factor
= modulus of elasticity of flange material divided by modulus of elasticity of bolting material, corrected for operating temperature

r_S = initial bolt stress factor
= $1 - S_i/\sigma_b$

S_a = allowable bolt stress at atmospheric temperature (see UG-23)

S_b = allowable bolt stress at design temperature (see UG-23)

S_f = allowable design stress for material of flange at design temperature (operating condition) or atmospheric temperature (gasket seating), as may apply (see UG-23)

S_n = allowable design stress for material of nozzle neck, vessel or pipe wall, at design temperature (operating condition) or atmospheric temperature (gasket seating), as may apply (see UG-23)

S_H = calculated longitudinal stress in hub

S_i = initial bolt stress (always less than S_b)

S_R = calculated radial stress in flange

S_T = calculated tangential stress in flange

T = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

t = flange thickness of an identical flange pair in a Class 1 assembly

t_{I} = thickness of the nonreducing flange in a Class 3 assembly (see Y-5.1)

t_{II} = thickness of the reducer or flat circular head in a Class 3 assembly (see Y-5.1)

t_n = nominal thickness of shell or nozzle wall to which flange or lap is attached

t_s = thickness of spacer

t_i = two times the thickness g_0, when the design is calculated as an integral flange or two times the thickness of shell or nozzle wall required for internal pressure, when the design is calculated as a loose flange, but not less than $\frac{1}{4}$ in. (6 mm)

U = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

V = factor for integral type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.3)

V_L = factor for loose type flanges (from Fig. 2-7.5)

W = flange design bolt load, for the operating conditions or gasket seating, as may apply (Y-4)

W_{m1} = minimum required bolt load for the operating conditions [see Y-4]

w = width used to determine the basic gasket seating width b_0, based upon the contact width between the flange facing and the gasket (see Table 2-5.2)

X = factor
= $E_{\text{I}}^*/(E_{\text{I}}^* + E_{\text{II}}^*)$

Y = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

y = gasket or joint-contact-surface unit seating load [see Note 1, 2-5(c)(1)]

Z = factor involving K (from Fig. 2-7.1)

β = shape factor for full face metal-to-metal contact flanges
= $(C + B_1)/2B_1$

θ_A = slope of flange face at outside diameter, rad

θ_B = slope of flange face at inside diameter, rad

θ_{rb} = change in slope which flange pair undergoes due to an unbalanced moment, rad

(b) Subscripts I and II where noted are used to distinguish between the flanges in a nonidentical flange pair (Class 2 or 3 assemblies). B_1 without a subscript always refers to Flange I (the nonreducing flange) in a Class 2 or 3 assembly.

(c) Unless otherwise noted, B_1, J_s, J_p, and F_1' [Eqs. (6a), (6b), and (6c) of Y-3(a)] and M_p are based on the

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

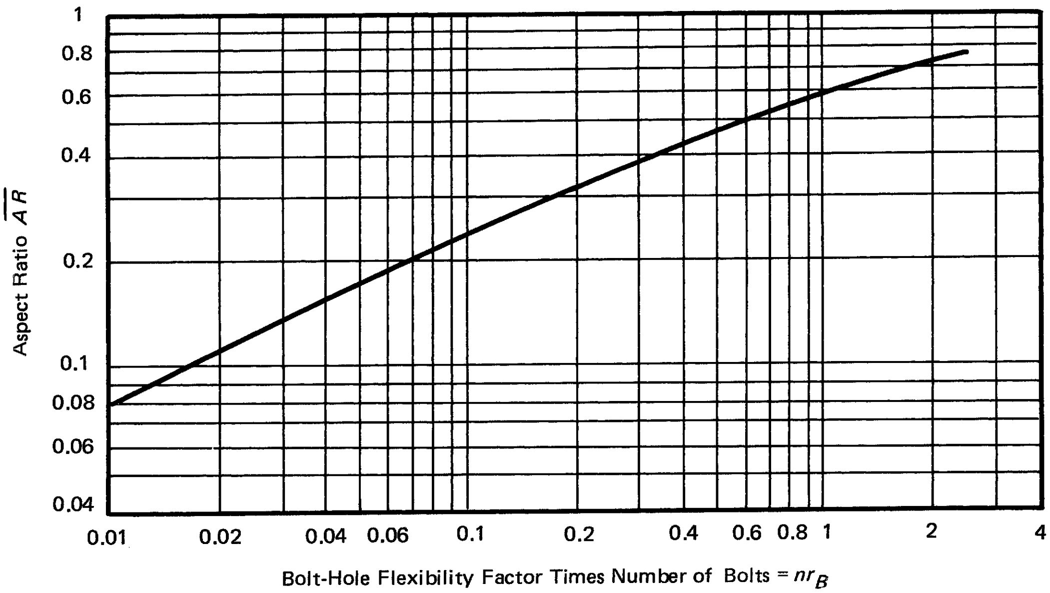


FIG. Y-3.1

dimensions of the nonreducing flange (Flange I) in a Class 2 or 3 assembly.

(d) All logarithms are to base 10.

Y-4 BOLT LOADS

(a) Required Bolt Load. The flange bolt load used in calculating the required cross-sectional area of bolts shall be determined as follows.

(1) The required bolt load for the operating condition W_{m1} shall be sufficient to resist the sum of the hydrostatic end force H exerted by the maximum allowable working pressure on the area bounded by the diameter of the gasket reaction, and the contact force H_C exerted by the mating flange on the annular area where the flange faces are in contact. To this shall be added the gasket load H_G for those designs where gasket seating requirements are significant.

(2) Before the contact force H_C can be determined, it is necessary to obtain a value for its moment arm h_C. Due to the interaction between bolt elongation and flange deflection, h_C involves the flange thickness t, operating bolt stress σ_b, initial bolt prestress factor r_s, and calculated strain length l, elasticity factor r_E, and total moment loading on the flange. This Appendix is based on starting a design by assuming a value for h_C and then calculating the value of the initial bolt stress S_i which satisfies the assumption.

Although the distance h_C from the bolt circle to the flange-to-flange contact circle is a design variable, for the purpose of this Appendix the use of

$$h_C < h_{C\max}$$

to optimize stresses is considered to be a special situation requiring controlled bolt tightening and verification (see Y-8). Except in special instances, setting h_C equal to $h_{C\max}$ should be satisfactory. It is inherent in the computational process that the flanges will be in tangential contact between the selected bearing circle

$$C + 2h_C$$

and the outside diameter of the flanges

$$C + 2h_{C\max}$$

(3) The hub-flange interaction moment M_s, which acts on the flange, is expressed by Formulas (7), (19), and (20); for Category 3 flanges

$$M_s = 0$$

The contact force H_C is determined by Formulas (9) or (27).

(4) The required bolt load for operating conditions is determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$W_{m1} = H + H_C + H_G$$

(b) Total Required and Actual Bolt Areas, and Flange Design Bolt Load. The total required cross-sectional area of bolts A_m equals W_{m1} / S_b. A selection of bolts to be used shall be made such that the actual total cross-sectional area of bolts A_b will not be less than A_m. The flange design bolt load W shall be taken equal to W_{m1}.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

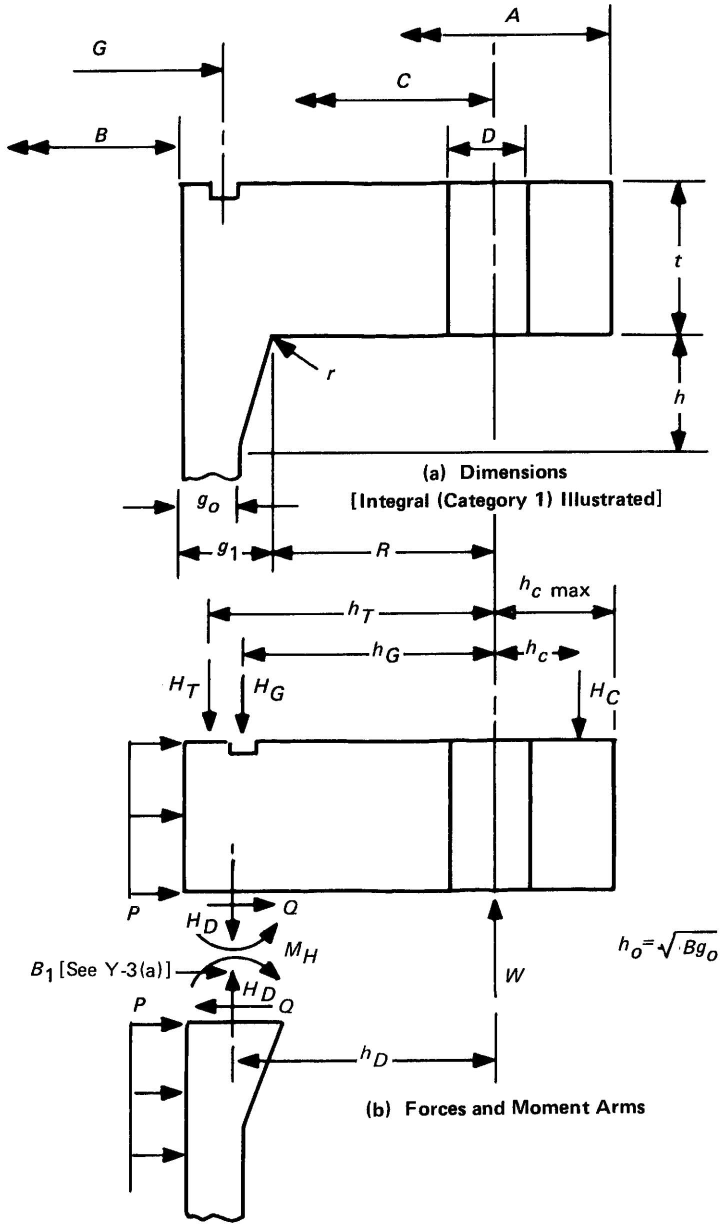


FIG. Y-3.2 FLANGE DIMENSIONS AND FORCES

Y-5 CLASSIFICATION OF ASSEMBLIES AND CATEGORIZATION OF INDIVIDUAL FLANGES

It is necessary to classify the different types of flanged assemblies and to further categorize each flange which comprises the assembly under consideration.

Y-5.1 Classification of an Appendix Y Assembly

Since the flanges comprising an assembly are in contact outside the bolt circle, the behavior of one flange is influenced by the stiffness of the other. For the purpose of

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

computation it is helpful to classify an assembly consisting of different types of flanges according to the way the flanges influence the deformation of the assembly.

(a) Class 1 Assembly.[2] A pair of flanges which are bolted together and which are nominally identical with respect to shape, dimensions, physical properties, and allowable stresses[3] except that one flange of the pair may contain a gasket groove. (A Class 1 assembly is also referred to as an identical flange pair.) Figure Y-5.1.1 illustrates configuration of a Class 1 assembly.

(b) Class 2 Assembly. Any assemblage which does not fit the description of Class 1 where, in the case of reducers, the inside diameter of the reducing flange exceeds one-half of the bolt circle diameter. Figure Y-5.1.2 illustrates configuration of a Class 2 assembly.

(c) Class 3 Assembly. Any assemblage consisting of a reducer or a flat circular head without an opening or with a central, reinforced opening provided the diameter of the opening in the reducing flange or flat cover is less than one-half of the bolt circle diameter. In the analysis the reducing flange is considered to be the equivalent of a flat circular head without an opening. Figure Y-5.1.3 illustrates configuration of a Class 3 assembly.

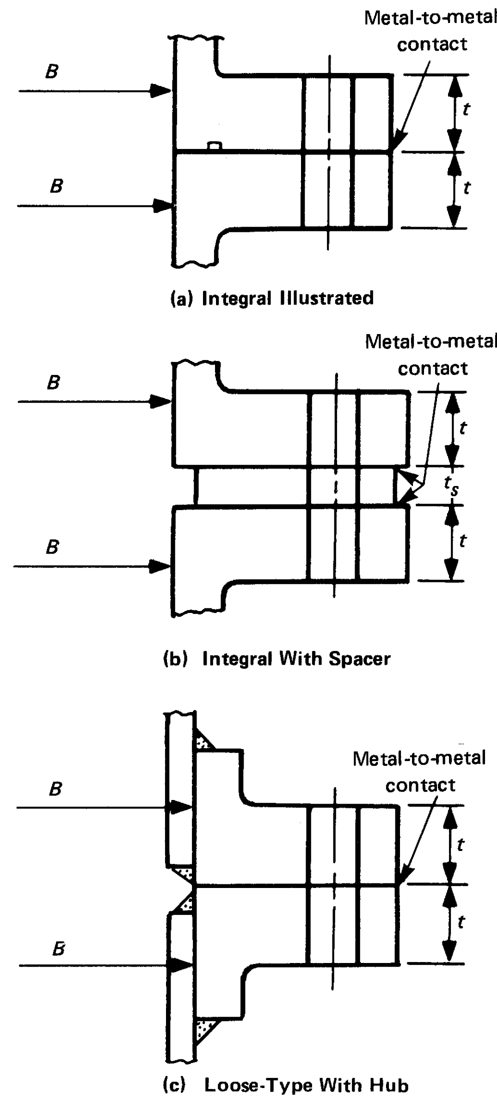
Y-5.2 Categorization of an Appendix Y Flange

In addition to classifying an assembly, the individual flanges (except the reducing flange or flat circular head) must be categorized for the purpose of computation as loose type, integral type, or optional type. This can be done using 2-4; Fig. 2-4 is suitable by considering the flanges as flat faced (as a result of removing the raised gasket surface by machining and recessing the gasket in a groove) and by adding a flange-to-flange contact force H_C at some distance h_C outside the bolt circle. Since certain design options exist depending upon the Category of the flange, the following categories include both the type of flange and the various design options.

(a) Category 1 Flange. An integral flange or an optional flange calculated as an integral flange.

(b) Category 2 Flange. A loose type flange with a hub where credit is taken for the strengthening effect of the hub.

(c) Category 3 Flange. A loose type flange with a hub where no credit is taken for the strengthening effect of the hub, a loose type flange without a hub, or an optional-type flange calculated as a loose type without a hub. Substitute B for B_1 in the applicable equation for this category of flange.



NOTES:
(1) Category 1 flanges illustrated in sketch (a) and (b); Category 2 flanges illustrated in sketch (c).
(2) Permitted weld details are in accordance with Figs. 2-4 and UW-13.2.

FIG. Y-5.1.1 CLASS 1 FLANGE ASSEMBLY (IDENTICAL FLANGE PAIRS)

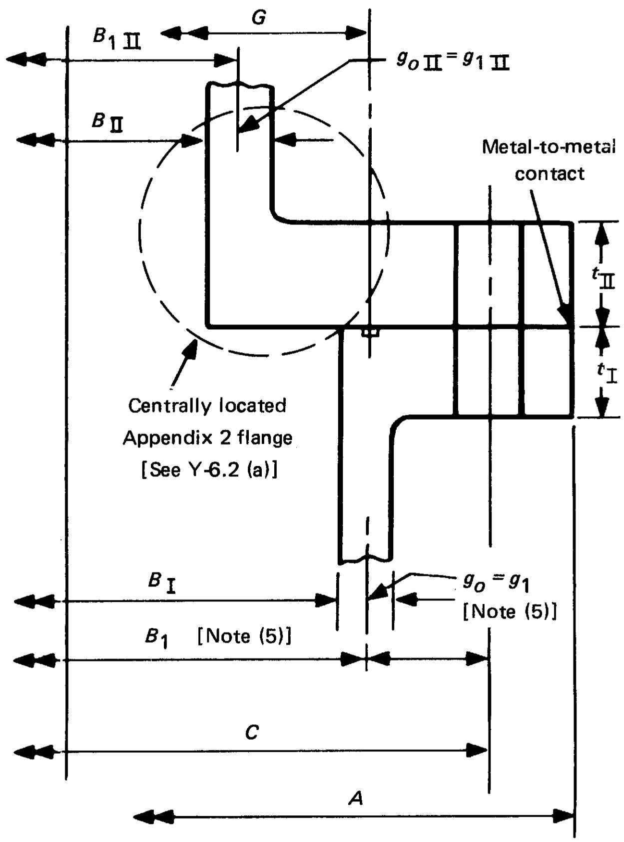
Y-6 FLANGE ANALYSIS

(a) In order to calculate the stresses in the flanges and bolts of a flanged assembly, classify the assemblage in

[2] An Appendix Y flange bolted to a rigid foundation may be analyzed as a Class 1 assembly by substituting $2l$ for l in Eq. (12) of Y-6.1.

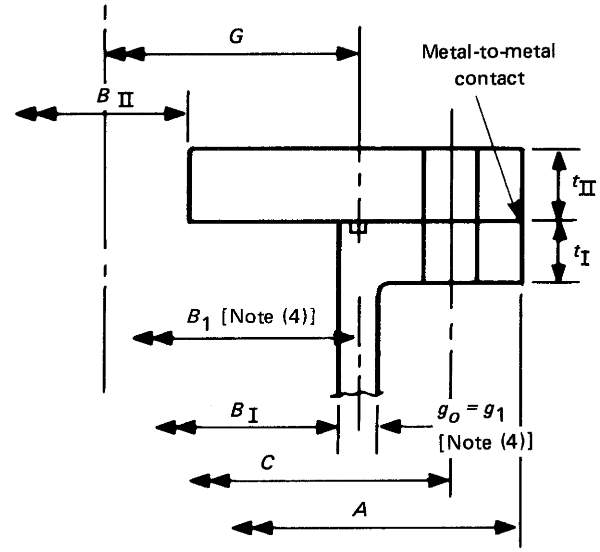
[3] Where the flanges are identical dimensionally and have the same elastic modulus E, but have different allowable stresses S_f, the assembly may be analyzed as a Class 1 assembly provided the calculated stresses are evaluated against the lower allowable stress.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale



NOTES:
(1) Category 1 flanges illustrated. Categories II and III permitted.
(2) For purposes of analysis of Flange II by method in Y-6.2(a), assume $A_{II} = G_{II} = C_{II} = B_1$
(3) $B_{II} > C/2$
(4) Permitted weld details are in accordance with Figs. 2-4 and UW-13.2.
(5) See Y-3 (b) and (c).

FIG. Y-5.1.2 CLASS 2 FLANGE ASSEMBLY



NOTES:
(1) Category I flange illustrated. Categories II and III permitted.
(2) $B_{II} \leqslant C/2$
(3) Permitted weld details are in accordance with Figs. 2-4 and UW-13.2
(4) See Y-3 (b) and (c).

FIG. Y-5.1.3 CLASS 3 FLANGE ASSEMBLY

accordance with Y-5.1 and then categorize each flange per Y-5.2.

(b) The method of analyzing various classes and categories of flanges is basically the same. Although many equations appear to be identical, subtle differences do exist and care must be exercised in the analysis. To minimize the need for numerous footnotes and repetitive statements throughout the text, the formulas to be used in analyzing the various classes of assemblies and categories of flanges are given in Table Y-6.1. In general, the terms should be calculated in the same order as they are listed in the table. It is important to refer to the table before starting an analysis since only a limited number of the equations contained in this Appendix are used in the

TABLE Y-6.1
SUMMARY OF APPLICABLE FORMULAS FOR DIFFERENT CLASSES OF ASSEMBLIES AND DIFFERENT CATEGORIES OF FLANGES

Class	Category [Note (1)]	Applicable Formulas
1	1	(5a), (7)–(13), (14a), (15a), (16a)
1	2	(5b), (7)–(13), (14b), (15b), (16b)
1	3	(5c), (7)–(13), (14c), (15c), (16c)
2	All	See Y-6.2
3	1	(1)–(4), (6a), (17)–(31), (32a), (33a), (34a), (35)–(38)
3	2	(1)–(4), (6b), (17)–(31), (32b), (33b), (34b), (35)–(38)
3	3	(1)–(4), (6c), (17)–(31), (32c), (33c), (34c), (35)–(38)

NOTE:
(1) Of the nonreducing flange in a Class 2 or Class 3 assembly.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

design of a particular pair of flanges. Some of the numbered equations appear in Y-3(a) along with general purpose, unnumbered expressions.

(c) Subscripts I and II refer to the nonreducing flange and the reducer (or flat circular head), respectively, of a Class 3 assembly and of a Class 2 assembly designed using the method of Y-6.2(a).

Y-6.1 The Analysis of a Class 1 Assembly

The following equations are used for the analysis of Category 1, 2, and 3 flanges of a Class 1 assembly in accordance with Table Y-6.1:

Flange Moment due to Flange-Hub Interaction

$$M_S = -\frac{J_P F' M_P}{t^3 + J_S F'} \tag{7}$$

Slope of Flange at Inside Diameter Times E

$$E\theta_B = \frac{5.46}{\pi t^3}(J_S M_S + J_P M_P) \tag{8}$$

Contact Force Between Flanges at h_C

$$H_C = (M_P + M_S)/h_C \tag{9}$$

Bolt Load at Operating Conditions

$$W_{m1} = H + H_G + H_C \tag{10}$$

Operating Bolt Stress

$$\sigma_b = W_{m1}/A_b \tag{11}$$

Design Prestress in Bolts

$$S_i = \sigma_b - \frac{1.159 h_C^2 (M_P + M_S)}{a t^3 l r_E B_1} \tag{12}$$

Radial Flange Stress at Bolt Circle

$$S_R = \frac{6(M_P + M_S)}{t^2(\pi C - nD)} \tag{13}$$

Radial Flange Stress at Inside Diameter

$$S_R = -\left(\frac{2Ft}{h_0 + Ft} + 6\right)\frac{M_S}{\pi B_1 t^2} \tag{14a}$$

$$S_R = -\left(\frac{2F_L t}{h_0 + F_L t} + 6\right)\frac{M_S}{\pi B_1 t^2} \tag{14b}$$

$$S_R = 0 \tag{14c}$$

Tangential Flange Stress at Inside Diameter

$$S_T = \frac{tE\theta_B}{B_1} + \left(\frac{2FtZ}{h_0 + Ft} - 1.8\right)\frac{M_S}{\pi B_1 t^2} \tag{15a}$$

$$S_T = \frac{tE\theta_B}{B_1} + \left(\frac{2F_L tZ}{h_0 + F_L t} - 1.8\right)\frac{M_S}{\pi B_1 t^2} \tag{15b}$$

$$S_T = \frac{tE\theta_B}{B_1} \tag{15c}$$

Longitudinal Hub Stress

$$S_H = \frac{h_0 E\theta_B f}{0.91(g_1/g_0)^2 B_1 V} \tag{16a}$$

$$S_H = \frac{h_0 E\theta_B}{0.91(g_1/g_0)^2 B_1 V_L} \tag{16b}$$

$$S_H = 0 \tag{16c}$$

Y-6.2 The Analysis of a Class 2 Assembly

(a) The assembly may be analyzed using a variation of the analysis for a Class 3 assembly (Y-6.3) that accounts for the interaction of nonidentical flanges and the stiffening effect of an integral nozzle or hub centrally located in the reducing flange.

(1) The central nozzle of Flange II with diameter B_{II} shall be assumed for analysis purposes as an Appendix 2 flange with outside diameter A, bolt circle C, and gasket circle G all equal to B_1 of Flange I. See Fig. Y-5.1.2.

(2) In addition it is necessary to categorize the centrally located Appendix 2 flange (nozzle plus the associated over plate to diameter B_1) as a Category 1, 2, or 3 flange in accordance with Y-5.2.

(3) The moment due to pressure shall be designated M_p' where

$$M_p' = H_D' h_D' + H_T' h_T'$$

$$H_D' = 0.785 B_{II}^2 P$$

$$H_T' = 0.785 P (B_1^2 - B_{II}^2)$$

For Category 1, 2, or 3 flanges [(a)(2) above],

$$h_T' = \frac{B_1 - B_{II}}{4}$$

For Category 1 or 2 flanges [(a)(2) above],

$$h_D' = \frac{B_1 - B_{II} - g_{1\,II}}{2}$$

For Category 3 flanges [(a)(2) above],

$$h_D' = \frac{B_1 - B_{II}}{2}$$

(4) The rules in Y-6.3 and the summary of Table Y-6.1 for the analysis of a Class 3 assembly apply to the analysis of a Class 2 assembly with the following additions and substitutions:

C_5 and C_6 and all the symbols in equations in (a) and (b) below pertain only to the centrally located Appendix 2 flange [nozzle plus the associated cover of thickness t_{II} to diameter B_1 defined in (1) above]. All terms in

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

equations in (c) and (d) below, except C_5 and C_6, refer to the nonreducing flange (Flange I).

C_1 and C_2 of equations in (c) and (d) below replace

C_1 and C_2 of Eqs. (1) and (2) in Y-3(a).

(a) Let

$$C_5 = M_P'$$

(b) Let

$$C_6 = \frac{0.829}{\log (B_1/B_{1\,\mathrm{II}})}$$

for Category 3 flanges.[4] Let

$$C_6 = \frac{0.91 t_{\mathrm{II}}^3 V}{L h_0 g_0^2}$$

for Category 1 or 2 flanges.[4]

(c) Let

$$C_1 = [1 - 2.095 J_S \log (A/B_1)] \div [- C_6 - 1.738 J_S]$$

(d) Let

$$C_2 = (1.738 J_P M_P - C_5 C_6) \div (- C_6 - 1.738 J_S)$$

(e) Replace Eq. (26) with:

$$E_{\mathrm{II}}\,\theta_{B\,\mathrm{II}} = \frac{5.46}{\pi t_{\mathrm{II}}^3}(J_S M_{b\,\mathrm{II}} + J_P M_P) + (E_{\mathrm{II}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{II}})/t_{\mathrm{II}}^3$$

(f) Delete Eq. (38). Subparagraphs (a)(1), (a)(2), and (a)(3) above apply only for calculating $C_5(M_p')$ and C_6, and subsequently when using (a)(5) below for calculating the stresses in and adjacent to the nozzle in Flange II.

(5) Stresses in the centrally located nozzle of Flange II shall be calculated in accordance with the following equations after $M_{S\,\mathrm{II}}$ has been found using (a)(4) above. All terms, such as *e, Y,* and *Z*, apply to the centrally located Appendix 2 flange as defined in (a)(1) and (a)(2) above.

For Category 1 or 2 flanges [(a)(2) above]:

Longitudinal Hub Stress

$$S_{H\,\mathrm{II}} = \frac{f(M_p' - M_{S\,\mathrm{II}})}{L g_{1\,\mathrm{II}}^2 B_{\mathrm{II}}}$$

Radial Flange Stress Adjacent to Central Nozzle

$$S_{R\,\mathrm{II}} = \frac{(1.33 t_{\mathrm{II}} e + 1)(M_p' - M_{S\,\mathrm{II}})}{L t_{\mathrm{II}}^2 B_{\mathrm{II}}}$$

Tangential Flange Stress Adjacent to Central Nozzle

$$S_{T\,\mathrm{II}} = \frac{Y(M_p' - M_{S\,\mathrm{II}})}{t_{\mathrm{II}}^2 B_{\mathrm{II}}} - Z S_{R\,\mathrm{II}}$$

For Category 3 Flanges [(a)(2) above]:

Tangential Flange Stress Adjacent to Central Nozzle

$$S_{T\,\mathrm{II}} = \frac{Y(M_p' - M_{S\,\mathrm{II}})}{t_{\mathrm{II}}^2 B_{\mathrm{II}}}$$

Radial and Longitudinal Hub Stress

$$S_{R\,\mathrm{II}} = 0$$

$$S_{H\,\mathrm{II}} = 0$$

(6) The stresses in Flange I and the remaining stresses in Flange II shall be calculated in accordance with Y-6.3 except as modified by Y-6.2(4).

(b) As an alternative to the method in (a) above and at the option of the designer, the assembly may be analyzed as if it is one flange of an identical pair in a Class 1 assembly using the procedure in Y-6.1. All stresses shall satisfy Y-7. The same value of h_C shall be used in both calculations and the strain length l of the bolts shall be based on the thickness of the flange under consideration. This method is more conservative and more bolting may be required than the method in (a) above.

(c) The central nozzle or opening in Flange II of a Class 2 assembly determined by the rules in (a) or (b) above meets the general requirements of this Division and of this Appendix. The rules for determining thickness and reinforcing requirements of UG-34 and UG-39, respectively, are not applicable.

Y-6.3 The Analysis of a Class 3 Assembly

(a) The following equations are used for the analysis of Category 1, 2, and 3 nonreducing flanges and the reducer (or flat circular head) of a Class 3 assembly:

Rigid Body Rotation of Flanges Times E^*

$$E_{\mathrm{I}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{I}} = \frac{X(C_4 - C_2)}{1.206 \log (A/B_1) - X C_3 - (1 - X) C_1} \quad (17)$$

$$E_{\mathrm{II}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{II}} = -E_{\mathrm{I}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{I}}(E_{\mathrm{II}}{}^*/E_{\mathrm{I}}{}^*) \quad (18)$$

Total Flange Moment at Diameter B_1

$$M_{S\,\mathrm{I}} = C_3(E_{\mathrm{I}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{I}}) + C_4 \quad (19)$$

$$M_{S\,\mathrm{II}} = C_1(E_{\mathrm{II}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{II}}) + C_2 \quad (20)$$

Unbalanced Flange Moment at Diameter B_1

$$M_{u\,\mathrm{I}} = 1.206\, E_{\mathrm{I}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{I}} \log (A/B_1) \quad (21)$$

$$M_{u\,\mathrm{II}} = 1.206 E_{\mathrm{II}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb\,\mathrm{II}} \log (A/B_1) \quad (22)$$

Balanced Flange Moment at Diameter B_1

$$M_{b\,\mathrm{I}} = M_{S\,\mathrm{I}} - M_{u\,\mathrm{I}} \quad (23)$$

$$M_{b\,\mathrm{II}} = M_{S\,\mathrm{II}} - M_{u\,\mathrm{II}} \quad (24)$$

[4] See Y-6.2(a)(2).

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Slope of Flange at Diameter B_1 Times E

$$E_{\mathrm{I}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{I}} = \frac{5.46}{\pi t_{\mathrm{I}}^3}\,(J_S M_{b1} + J_P M_P) + E_{\mathrm{I}}{}^*\,\theta_{rb1}/t_{\mathrm{I}}^3 \tag{25}$$

$$E_{\mathrm{II}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{II}} = \frac{-\,1.337(M_{S\mathrm{II}} - \pi P B_1{}^3/32)}{t_{\mathrm{II}}{}^3} \tag{26}$$

Contact Force Between Flanges at h_C

$$H_C = (M_P + M_{b1})/h_C \tag{27}$$

Bolt Load at Operating Conditions

$$W_{m1} = H + H_G + H_C \tag{28}$$

Operating Bolt Stress

$$\sigma_b = W_{m1}/A_b \tag{29}$$

Design Prestress in Bolts

$$S_i = \sigma_b - \frac{1.159 h_C{}^2\,(M_P + M_{b\mathrm{I}})}{2(1 - X) a t_{\mathrm{I}}{}^3\, l r_{E\mathrm{I}} B_1} \tag{30}$$

Radial Stress in Flange I at Bolt Circle

$$S_{R\mathrm{I}} = \frac{6(M_P + M_{S\mathrm{I}})}{t_{\mathrm{I}}{}^2(\pi C - nD)} \tag{31}$$

Radial Stress in Flange I at Inside Diameter

$$S_{R\mathrm{I}} = -\left(\frac{2Ft_{\mathrm{I}}}{h_0 + Ft_{\mathrm{I}}} + 6\right)\frac{M_{S\mathrm{I}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{I}}{}^2} \tag{32a}$$

$$S_{R\mathrm{I}} = -\left(\frac{2F_L t_{\mathrm{I}}}{h_0 + F_L t_{\mathrm{I}}} + 6\right)\frac{M_{S\mathrm{I}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{I}}{}^2} \tag{32b}$$

$$S_{R\mathrm{I}} = 0 \tag{32c}$$

Tangential Stress in Flange I at Inside Diameter

$$S_{T\mathrm{I}} = \frac{t_{\mathrm{I}} E_{\mathrm{I}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{I}}}{B_1} + \left(\frac{2Ft_{\mathrm{I}}Z}{h_0 + Ft_{\mathrm{I}}} - 1.8\right)\frac{M_{S\mathrm{I}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{I}}{}^2} \tag{33a}$$

$$S_{T\mathrm{I}} = \frac{t_{\mathrm{I}} E_{\mathrm{I}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{I}}}{B_1} + \left(\frac{2F_L t_{\mathrm{I}}Z}{h_0 + F_L t_{\mathrm{I}}} - 1.8\right)\frac{M_{S\mathrm{I}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{I}}{}^2} \tag{33b}$$

$$S_{T\mathrm{I}} = \frac{t_{\mathrm{I}} E_{\mathrm{I}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{I}}}{B_1} \tag{33c}$$

Longitudinal Hub Stress in Flange I

$$S_{H\mathrm{I}} = \frac{h_0 E_I\,\theta_{B\mathrm{I}} f}{0.91(g_1/g_0)^2 B_1 V} \tag{34a}$$

$$S_{H\mathrm{I}} = \frac{h_0 E_{\mathrm{I}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{I}}}{0.91(g_1/g_0)^2 B_1 V_L} \tag{34b}$$

$$S_{H\mathrm{I}} = 0 \tag{34c}$$

Radial Stress in Flange II at Bolt Circle

$$S_{R\mathrm{II}} = \frac{6(M_P + M_{S\mathrm{II}})}{t_{\mathrm{II}}{}^2(\pi C - nD)} \tag{35}$$

Radial Stress in Flange II at Diameter B_1

$$S_{R\mathrm{II}} = \frac{6M_{S\mathrm{II}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{II}}{}^2} \tag{36}$$

Tangential Stress in Flange II at Diameter B_1

$$S_{T\mathrm{II}} = \frac{t_{\mathrm{II}} E_{\mathrm{II}}\,\theta_{B\mathrm{II}}}{B_1} - \frac{1.8 M_{S\mathrm{II}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{II}}{}^2} \tag{37}$$

Radial and Tangential Stress at Center of Flange II

$$S_{R\mathrm{II}} = S_{T\mathrm{II}} = \frac{0.3094 P B_1{}^2}{t_{\mathrm{II}}{}^2} - \frac{6M_{S\mathrm{II}}}{\pi B_1 t_{\mathrm{II}}{}^2} \tag{38}$$

(b) The thickness of Flange II of a Class 3 assembly determined by the above rules shall be used in lieu of the thickness that is determined by UG-34. However, any centrally located opening in Flange II shall be reinforced to meet the rules of UG-39(b).

Y-7 ALLOWABLE FLANGE DESIGN STRESSES

The stresses calculated by the above equations, whether tensile or compressive (−), shall not exceed the following values for all classes of assemblies:[5]

(a) operating bolt stress σ_b not greater than S_b for the design value of S_i;

(b) longitudinal hub stress S_H not greater than S_f for Category 1 and 2 cast iron flanges except as otherwise limited by (1) and (2) below and not greater than 1.5 S_f for materials other than cast iron:

(1) longitudinal hub stress S_H not greater than the smaller of 1.5 S_f or 1.5 S_n for Category 1 flanges where the pipe or shell constitutes the hub;

(2) longitudinal hub stress S_H not greater than the smaller of 1.5 S_f or 2.5S_n for integral Appendix Y flanges (Category 1) similar to the Appendix 2 flanges shown as Fig. 2-4, sketches (6), (6a), and (6b).

(c) radial stress S_R not greater than S_f;

(d) tangential stress S_T not greater than S_f;

(e) also,

$$(S_H + S_R)/2$$

not greater than S_f and

$$(S_H + S_T)/2$$

not greater than S_f;

(f) S_R and S_T at the center of the reducing flange in a Class 3 assembly [see Eq. (38)] shall not exceed S_f.

[5] The symbols for the various stresses in the case of a Class 3 assembly also carry the subscript I or II. For example $S_{H\mathrm{I}}$ represents the longitudinal hub stress in Flange I of the Class 3 assembly.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

TABLE Y-9.1
TRIAL FLANGE THICKNESS AND AREA OF BOLTING FOR VARIOUS CLASSES OF ASSEMBLIES AND FLANGE CATEGORIES

Class (Assembly)	Category of Flanges: Nonreducing	Category of Flanges: Reducing	Suggested Trial Values: t or t_I	Suggested Trial Values: t_{II}	A_b
1	1 or 2	. . .	$0.9t_a$	. . .	$0.9A_b'$
	3	. . .	t_a	. . .	A_b'
2	1 or 2	1 or 2	t_a	t_e	A_b'
	3	3	$1.1t_a$	$1.1t_c$	$1.1A_b'$
	3	1 or 2	t_a	t_c	A_b'
	1 or 2	3	$1.1t_g$	$1.1t_g$	A_b*
3	1, 2, or 3	. . .	$1.1t_a$	$1.1t_c$	$1.05A_b'$

Y-8 PRESTRESSING THE BOLTS

The design rules of this Appendix provide for tangential contact between the flanges at $h_{C\max}$ or some lesser value h_C beyond the bolt circle. As in the case of Appendix 2 flanges, an Appendix Y flange must be designed so that the calculated value of the operating bolt stress σ_b does not exceed S_b. Also, as in the case of Appendix 2 flanges, ordinary wrenching techniques without verification of the actual initial bolt stress (assembly stress) is considered to meet all practical needs with control and verification reserved for special applications. For the purposes of this Appendix the use of

$$h_C < h_{C\max}$$

to optimize stresses is considered to be a special application unless it is also shown that all of the requirements of this Appendix are also satisfied when

$$h_C = h_{C\max}$$

Y-9 ESTIMATING FLANGE THICKNESSES AND BOLTING

(a) The following simple equations are offered for calculating approximate values of t, t_I, t_{II}, and A_b before applying the rules in Y-4 through Y-8. The equations are not intended to replace the rules; however, they should significantly reduce the amount of work required to achieve a suitable design. Since the flanges are in metal-to-metal contact and interact, the stresses in one flange are influenced by the stiffness of the mating flange and theoretically an unlimited number of designs can be found which satisfy the rules. In practice, however, economics, engineering judgment, and dimensional constraints will show which is the "best" design. It should be noted that the equations in Table Y-9.1 assume that both flanges comprising an assembly have essentially the same modulus of elasticity and allowable stress.

(b) Equations for Trial Flange Thickness and Bolting

$$t_a = 2.45 \sqrt{\frac{M_p}{(\pi C - nD)S_f}} \tag{39}$$

$$t_b = 0.56B_1\sqrt{P/S_f} \tag{40}$$

$$t_c = \text{greater of } t_a \text{ or } t_b$$

$$t_d = t_a + \frac{(B_1 - B_{II})}{(B_1 - 0.5C)}(t_b - t_a) \tag{41}$$

$$t_e = t_a \text{ when } t_b < t_a$$

$$t_e = t_d \text{ when } t_b > t_a$$

$$A_b' = [H + 2M_p/(A - C)] \div S_b \tag{42}$$

$$t_f = 2.45\sqrt{\frac{H_1 l_1 + H_2 l_2}{(\pi C - nD)S_f}} \tag{43}$$

$$A_b* = 0.95\left[\frac{2(H_1 l_1 + H_2 l_2)}{(A - C)} + 0.785G^2P\right] \div S_b \tag{44}$$

where

$H_1 = 0.785B_{II}^2P$
$H_2 = 0.785\,(G^2 - B_{II}^2)P$
$l_1 = (C - B_{II})/2$
$l_2 = (C - G)/2 + (G - B_{II})/4$
$t_g =$ smaller of t_c or t_f

(c) Trial Values of t, t_I, t_{II}, and A_b. The simple equations given in Table Y-9.1 should yield relatively good trial values of t, t_I, t_{II}, and A_b but they do not assure that the "first trial design" will meet the requirements of Y-6 through Y-7. As a result, it becomes necessary to select new trial values and reanalyze. In order to assist the designer in selecting the second trial values, the following comments concerning the behavior of different classes of Appendix Y flanges are offered.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(1) The hub of a Category 1 or 2 flange of a Class 1 assembly reduces the radial stress at the bolt circle (due to a negative hub–flange interaction moment) and the longitudinal hub stress. As a result, a pair of Category 1 or Category 2 flanges will be thinner than a pair of identical Category 3 flanges.

(2) Increasing the thickness of the reducing flange of a Class 3 assembly, when the nonreducing flange is Category 1 and 2, generally reduces the significant stresses in both flanges comprising the assembly. When the stress in Flange I (nonreducing) is excessive, increasing t_{I} will generally be more effective in reducing the stresses; however, a nominal increase of the stresses in Flange II will occur due to the additional restraint provided by increasing t_{I}. When the stress in Flange I is excessive and only marginally acceptable in Flange II, both t_{I} and t_{II} should be increased with the emphasis placed on t_{I}.

(3) A Category 3 reducing flange bolted to a Category 1 or 2 nonreducing flange produces a large overturning moment which tends to rotate Flange I in a negative direction. As a result, the radial stress at the bolt circle in Flange I will often be excessive due to a large, positive hub–flange interaction moment. As a result, it is usually necessary to increase t_{I} so that $t_{\mathrm{I}} = t_{\mathrm{II}}$. The same problem does not occur when Flange I is Category 3 since there exists no hub–flange interaction moment. When Flange I is an optional type treated as a loose-type (Category 3), a hub–flange interaction moment actually exists but is disregarded in the analysis by assigning the flange to Category 3.

(4) When the longitudinal hub stress of a Category 1 or 2 flange is excessive, it can be reduced by increasing the size of the hub, or g_0 when $g_1 = g_0$; however, this will cause an increase in the radial stress at the flange–hub junction. When S_H is excessive and S_R is marginally acceptable, an increase in the thickness of the flange is indicated in which case it may or may not be necessary to alter the size of the hub.

(5) When the longitudinal stress in the hub of the nonreducing flange of a Class 2 or Class 3 assembly is low compared to the allowable stress and the radial stress at the bolt circle is excessive, increasing S_H by making the hub smaller (more flexible) will often reduce the radial stress at the bolt circle to S_f. If it does not, an increase in t_{I} is indicated.

Y-10

Additional guidance on the design of flat faced metal-to-metal contact flanges can be found in the following references:

(1) Schneider, R. W., and Waters, E. O., The Background of ASME Code Case 1828: A Simplified Model of Analyzing Part B Flanges, *Journal of Pressure Vessel Technology,* ASME, Vol. 100, No. 2, May 1978, pp. 215–219;

(2) Schneider, R. W., and Waters, E. O., The Application of ASME Code Case 1828, *Journal of Pressure Vessel Technology,* ASME, Vol. 101, No. 1, February 1979, pp. 87–94.

It should be noted that the rules in Appendix Y were formerly contained in Code Case 1828, A Simplified Method for Analyzing Flat Face Flanges with Metal-to-Metal Contact Outside the Bolt Circle/Section VIII, Division 1.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX DD
GUIDE TO INFORMATION APPEARING ON CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION (SEE FIG. DD-1)

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
①	a. The name of the Manufacturer or Assembler; this description could include "doing business as" (DBA) or an abbreviation of the name. b. The full street address, city, state or province, country, and zip code.
②	This entry describes the scope and limitations, if any, on use of the Code Symbol Stamps, as illustrated below.

U Code Symbol Stamp

1. Manufacture of pressure vessels at the above location only.
2. Manufacture of pressure vessels at the above location only. (This authorization includes multiple duplicate pressure vessels.)
3. Manufacture of pressure vessels at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
4. Manufacture of pressure vessels at the above location and field sites controlled by that location.
5. Manufacture of pressure vessels at the above location and field sites controlled by that location. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
6. Manufacture of pressure vessels at field sites controlled by the above location.
7. Manufacture of pressure vessels at field sites controlled by the above location. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
8. Manufacture of pressure vessels (cast iron only) at the above location only.

UM Code Symbol Stamp

1. Manufacture of miniature vessels at the above location only.
2. Manufacture of miniature vessels at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
3. Manufacture of miniature vessels (cast iron only) at the above location only.

UV Code Symbol Stamp

1. Manufacture of pressure vessel pressure relief valves at the above location only.
2. Manufacture of pressure vessel pressure relief valves at the above location only. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)
3. Assembly of pressure vessel pressure relief valves at the above location. (This authorization does not cover welding or brazing.)

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

ITEM	DESCRIPTION
③	The date authorization was granted by the Society to use the indicated Code Symbol Stamp.
④	The date authorization to use the Code Symbol Stamp will expire.
⑤	A unique Certificate number assigned by the Society.
⑥	Code Symbol granted by the Society, i.e., U pressure vessels, UM miniature vessels, UV pressure relief valves.
⑦,⑧	The signatures of the current chairman and director.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

The American Society of Mechanical Engineers

This certificate accredits the named company as authorized to use the indicated symbol of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) for the scope of activity shown below in accordance with the applicable rules of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. The use of the code symbol and the authority granted by this Certificate of Authorization are subject to the provisions of the agreement set forth in the application. Any construction stamped with this symbol shall have been built strictly in accordance with the provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

SAMPLE

COMPANY ①

SCOPE ②

AUTHORIZED ③

EXPIRES ④

CERTIFICATE NUMBER ⑤

SYMBOL ⑥

⑦

CHAIRMAN OF THE BOILER
AND PRESSURE VESSEL COMMITTEE

⑧

DIRECTOR, ASME ACCREDITATION

®

FIG. DD-1 SAMPLE CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORIZATION

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX EE
HALF-PIPE JACKETS

EE-1 GENERAL

The calculation procedure in this Appendix shall be used only if both of the following conditions apply.

(a) There is positive pressure inside the shell or head.

(b) There is positive pressure inside the half-pipe jacket.

EE-2 HALF-PIPE JACKETS

The maximum permissible pressure P' in half-pipe jackets shall be determined from the following formula:

$$P' = F/K \tag{1}$$

where

P' = permissible jacket pressure, psi
F = $1.5S - S'$
(F shall not exceed 1.5 S)
S = maximum allowable tensile stress at design temperature of shell or head material, psi
S' = actual longitudinal tensile stress in shell or head due to internal pressure and other axial forces, psi. When axial forces are negligible, S' shall be taken as $PR/2t$. When the combination of axial forces and pressure stress ($PR/2t$) is such that S' would be a negative number, then S' shall be taken as zero.
K = factor obtained from Fig. EE-1, EE-2, or EE-3
P = internal design pressure (see UG-21) in vessel, psi
R = inside shell or head radius, in.
D = $2R$

The minimum thickness of a half-pipe jacket, when the thickness does not exceed one-half of the inside pipe radius or P does not exceed $0.385S_1$, is given by

$$T = \frac{P_1 r}{0.85S_1 - 0.6P_1} \tag{2}$$

where

T = minimum thickness of half-pipe jacket, in.
r = inside radius of jacket defined in Fig. EE-4, in.
S_1 = allowable tensile stress of jacket material at design temperature, psi
P_1 = design pressure in jacket, psi. (P_1 shall not exceed P'.)

The fillet weld attaching the half-pipe jacket to the vessel shall have a throat thickness not less than the smaller of the jacket or shell thickness. Through thickness jacket welds with a fillet shall be considered when the jacket is in cyclic service.

EE-3 JACKETS WITH OTHER GEOMETRIES

For other jacket geometries such as shown in Fig. EE-5, the permissible pressure P' may be obtained from the rules of UG-47 for stayed construction or 9-5 for jacketed vessels.

Example

What is the required thickness of a cylindrical shell subjected to an inside pressure of 190 psi and a half-pipe jacket pressure of 300 psi? The jacket is in noncyclic service. Let

I.D. of shell = 40 in.
allowable stress of shell = 16,000 psi
joint efficiency of shell = 1.0
half-pipe jacket is NPS 3
allowable stress of jacket material = 12,000 psi
jacket girth welds are not radiographed
corrosion allowance = 0

SOLUTION: The required thickness of the shell due to internal pressure is calculated from Eq. (1) of UG-27 as

$$t = \frac{PR}{SE - 0.6P}$$

$$= \frac{190 \times 20}{16{,}000 \times 1.0 - 0.6 \times 190}$$

$$= 0.24 \text{ in.}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

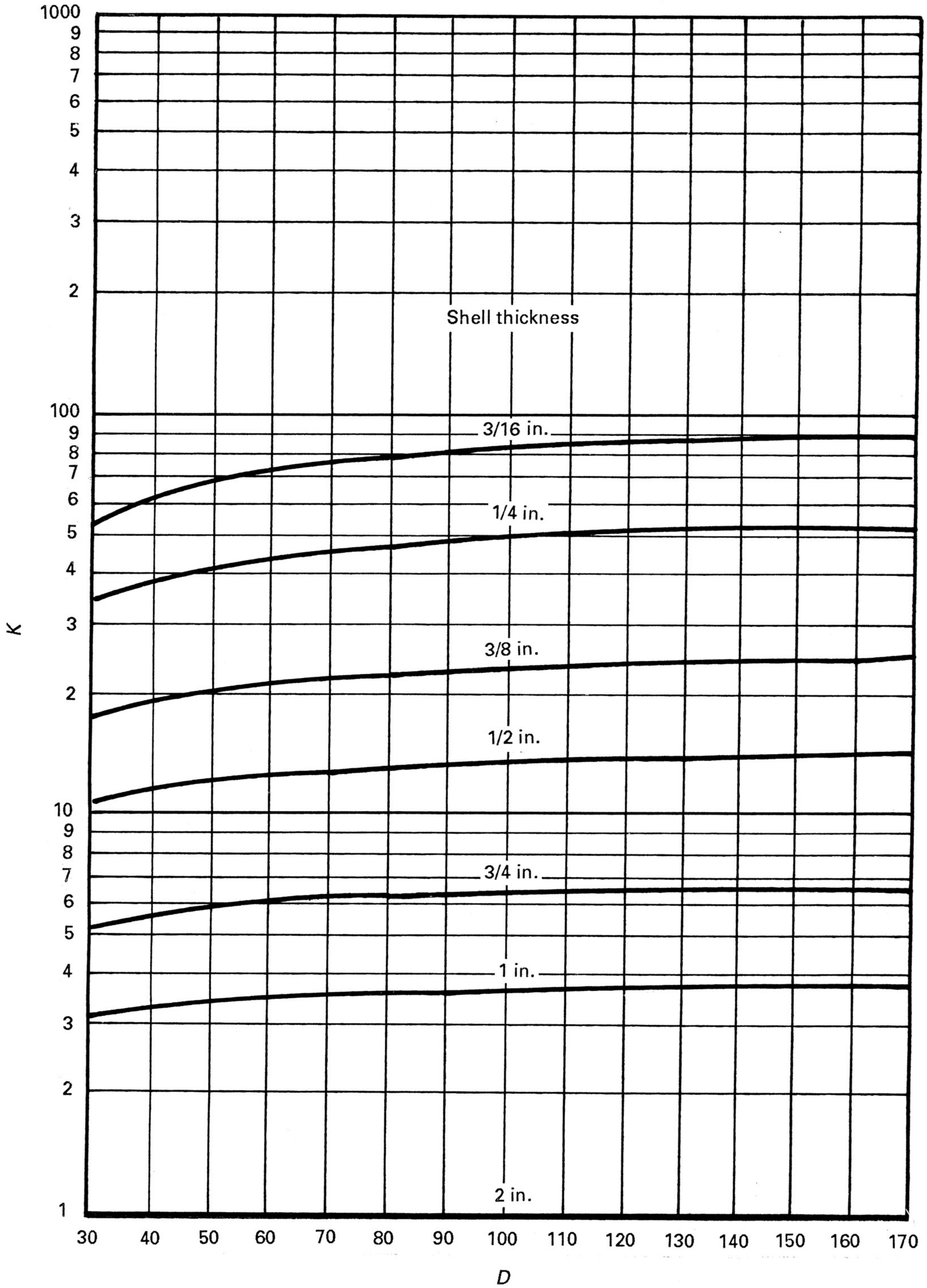


FIG. EE-1 NPS 2 PIPE JACKET

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

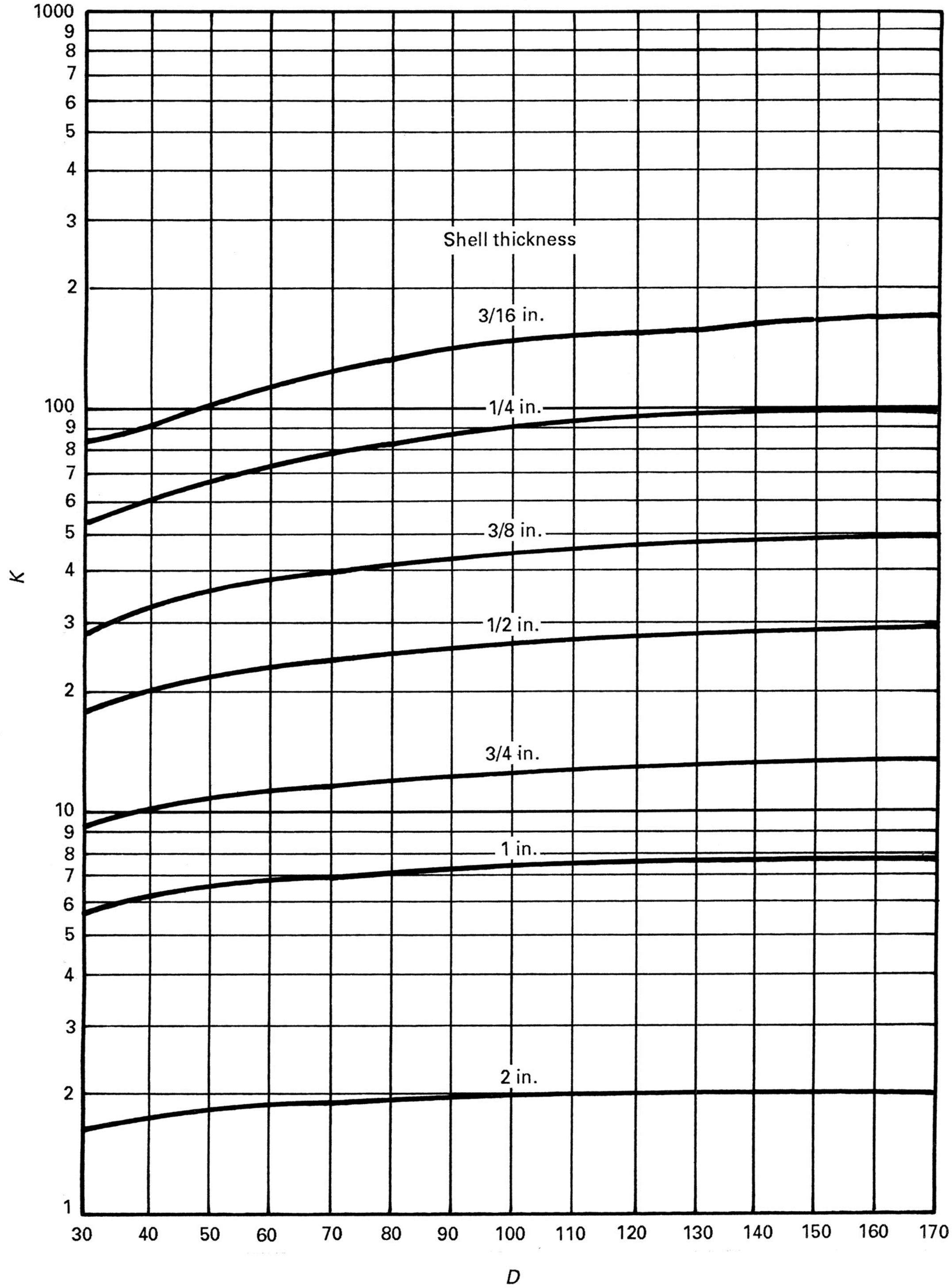


FIG. EE-2 NPS 3 PIPE JACKET

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

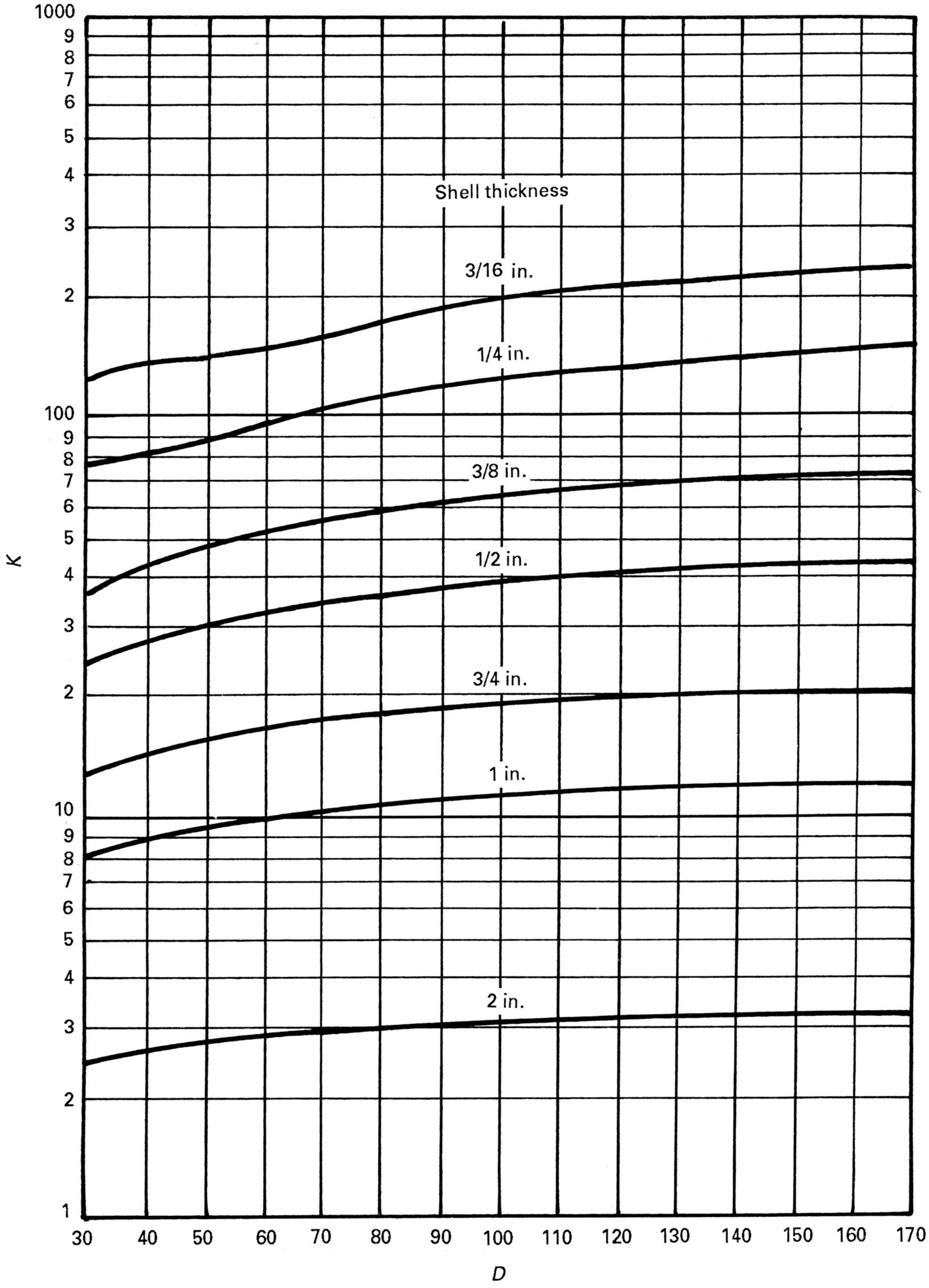


FIG. EE-3 NPS 4 PIPE JACKET

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

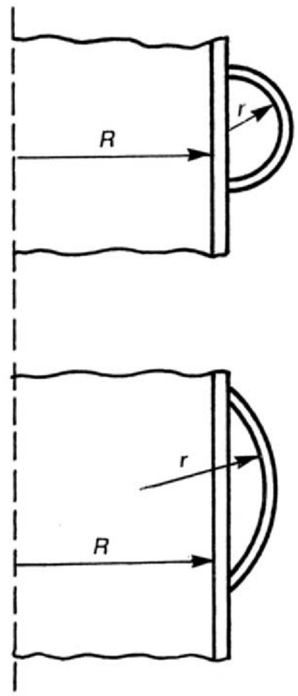


FIG. EE-4

(a) *Try* $t = \frac{1}{4}$ *in.:* From Fig. EE-2, with $D = 40$ in. and $t = \frac{1}{4}$ in., $K = 60$:

$$S' = PR/2t = (190 \times 20)/(2 \times 0.25)$$
$$= 7{,}600 \text{ psi}$$
$$P' = F/K = (1.5 \times 16{,}000 - 7{,}600)/60$$
$$= 273 \text{ psi} < 300 \text{ psi not adequate}$$

(b) *Try* $t = \frac{5}{16}$ *in.:* From Fig. EE-2, with $D = 40$ in. and $t = \frac{5}{16}$ in., $K = 49$:

$$S' = PR/2t = (190 \times 20)/(2 \times 0.3125)$$
$$= 6{,}080 \text{ psi}$$
$$P' = F/K = (1.5 \times 16{,}000 - 6{,}080)/49$$
$$= 366 \text{ psi} > 300 \text{ psi adequate}$$

(c) *Try Sch. 5S Pipe:*

$$t = 0.083 \times 0.875 = 0.073 \text{ in.}$$

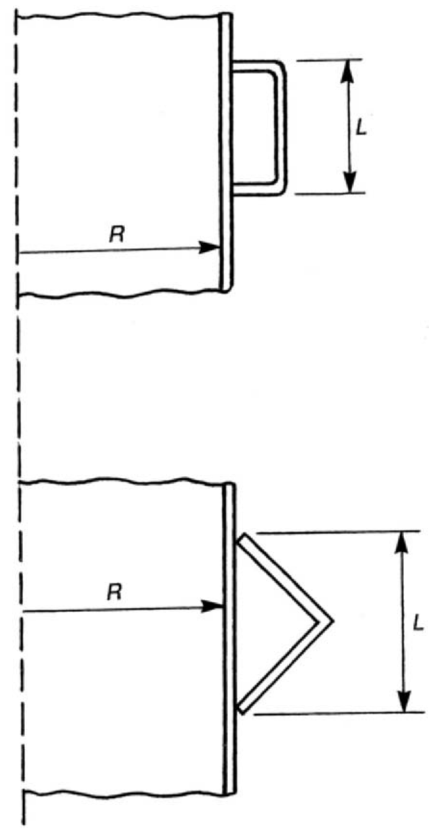


FIG. EE-5

$$r = 3.5/2 - 0.073 = 1.677 \text{ in.}$$

The required half-pipe jacket thickness is

$$T = \frac{P_1 r}{0.85 S_1 - 0.6 P_1}$$

$$= \frac{300 \times 1.677}{0.85 \times 12{,}000 - 0.6 \times 300}$$

$$= 0.050 \text{ in. OK}$$

The minimum fillet weld size is equal to 0.083 × 1.414 = 0.12 in. Use shell thickness of $\frac{5}{16}$ in., half-pipe jacket of NPS 3 Sch. 5S, and fillet weld size of $\frac{1}{8}$ in.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX FF GUIDE FOR THE DESIGN AND OPERATION OF QUICK-ACTUATING (QUICK-OPENING) CLOSURES

04

FF-1 INTRODUCTION

This Appendix provides guidance in the form of recommendations for the installation, operation, and maintenance of quick-actuating closures. This guidance is primarily for the use of the Owner and the User. The safety of the quick-actuating closure is the responsibility of the User. This includes the requirement for the User to provide training for all operating personnel, follow safety procedures, periodically inspect the closure, provide scheduled maintenance, and have all necessary repairs made in a timely fashion.

This Appendix also contains guidance for use by the Designer. The rules specific to the design and construction of quick-actuating closures are found in para. UG-35.2 of this Division.

The Manufacturer should supply to the Owner a copy(s) of the Installation, Operational, and Maintenance Manual for the quick-actuating closure which should, as a minimum, address the requirements described in this Appendix. The Owner should supply a copy of the Installation, Operational, and Maintenance Manual to the User.

FF-2 RESPONSIBILITIES

It is the responsibility of the User to ensure that the sensing and safety devices and equipment specified by the Manufacturer are properly installed before initial operation, and maintained during subsequent operation. Provision of written operation and maintenance procedures and training of personnel are also the responsibility of the Owner or User.

The User must not remove any devices furnished or specified by the Manufacturer of the vessel, and any repairs or replacements must be the same as, or equal to the original equipment furnished or specified by the Manufacturer.

The rules of this Division do not require these safety devices to be supplied by the manufacturer of the vessel or of the quick-actuating closure.

FF-3 DESIGN

Code rules cannot be written to address each specific design; therefore, engineering judgment exercised by a qualified designer with the necessary experience is required to achieve a safe design.

Because of the multiple requirements imposed on the design, it should be prepared by a designer with suitable experience and training in the design of quick-actuating closures.

The design must be safe, reliable, and allow for quick and safe opening and closing. Therefore, sensing and safety devices and equipment are integral and vitally important parts of the closure, and are to be furnished or specified by the manufacturer of the vessel or the quick-actuating closure. These devices must never be removed by the User.

It should be noted that there is a higher likelihood of personnel being close to the vessel and the closure when accidents during opening occur, especially those due to violations of operating procedures. An example is attempting to pry open the closure when they believe the vessel has been depressurized and when it may not be.

The passive safety features described below can help to protect against such actions, but most can still be subverted. Protection against subversion of safety features is covered under Inspection, Training, and Administrative Controls, below.

Some suggestions, which are not mandatory and which are not necessarily applicable to each design, are provided below for illustrative purposes.

Structural elements in the vessel and the closure are designed using required design margins. However, it is

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

also important to provide the features listed below for the prevention of erroneous opening.

(a) Passive Actuation. A passively actuated safety feature or device does not require the operator to take any action to provide safety. An example is a pressure relief valve in a vessel, or a pressure-actuated locking device in a quick-actuating closure.

(b) Redundancy. A redundant safety feature or device is one of two or more features or devices that perform the same safety function. Two pressure-actuated locking devices in parallel are an example appliable to quick-actuating closures. Another example is two or more independent holding elements, the failure of one of which not reducing the capability to withstand pressure loadings below an acceptable level.

(c) Fail-Safe Behavior. If a device or element fails, it should fail in a safe mode. An example applicable to quick-actuating closures is a normally-closed electrical interlock that stays locked if power fails.

(d) Multiple Lines of Defense. This can consist of any combination of two or more items from the list above. They should consist, at the very least, of warnings or alarms to keep operators and other personnel away from a quick-actuating closure.

Pressure controls and sensors that operate well at 50 or 100 psi (350 or 700 kPa) or at a much greater pressure often do not operate well at very low pressure. For example, they may not sense a small, static head of hot water. Certain accidents can occur because of release of hot fluid under static head alone, or under very low pressure. To protect against such accidents, separate controls and sensors may be used to maintain operating pressure on the one hand, and others may be required to prevent inappropriate opening at low pressures.

It may be necessary or desirable to utilize electrical or electronic devices and interlocks. If these are used, careful installation, operating, and maintenance instructions (see below) will be required.

The effects of repetitive loading must be considered, as required by UG-22. There are two phenomena that are of major concern. The first is the wear produced by repetitive actuation of the mechanism. This can generally be mitigated by routine maintenance. The second is fatigue damage produced in the vessel or in the closure by repetitive actuation of the mechanism or by repetitive pressurization and depressurization.

The Code does not provide explicit guidance for the evaluation or mitigation of wear. As well as proper maintainenance, the selection of suitable materials for mating wear surfaces and control of contract stresses is necessary during the design process to properly control wear.

FF-4 INSTALLATION

The Manufacturer should provide clear instructions for the installation of the quick-actuating closure itself and any adjustments that are necessary in the field. An example is adjustment of wedges or clamps. Instructions, preferably including schematics and drawings, should be provided for the installation, adjustment, and checkout of interlocks and warning devices.

FF-5 MAINTENANCE

Vessels with quick-actuating closures are commonly installed in industrial environments subject to dirt, moisture, abrasive materials, etc. These environmental factors are detrimental to safe and reliable operation of mechanical, electrical, and electronic sensors and safety devices. Therefore, the User should establish a suitable cleaning and maintenance interval, and a means to verify that the equipment has been properly cleaned and maintained.

Specifically, accidents have occurred because gaskets have stuck, and have released suddenly when pried open.

Many soft gaskets (60–70 Shore A Scale) have a combined shelf life and operating life of as little as six months. Aging can change the properties of the gasket material and change the gasket dimensions, impeding its proper function.

FF-6 INSPECTION

It is recommended that the User inspect the completed installation including the pressure gauges before it is permitted to operate. Records of this inspection should be retained.

It is recommended that the User establishes and documents a periodic in-service inspection program, and that this program is followed and documented.

FF-7 TRAINING

Many accidents involving quick-actuating closures have occurred because the operators have been unfamiliar with the equipment or its safety features. The greater safety inherent in current designs has sometimes been produced by the use of sophisticated mechanical, electrial, and electronic control devices. In order to make these features produce the maximum safety, personnel should be properly trained in their operation and maintenance.

Note that accidents may occur because hot fluid remains present in the vessel at atmospheric pressure of 2 to 3 psig (15 to 20 kPa gage). When the vessel is forced open while under this pressure, injuries may occur. Such

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

specific accident-sources should be guarded against by training and by administrative procedures.

It is important that sound written operating procedures, understandable by the operating personnel and multilingual if necessary, exist for the quick-actuating closure, and that the operators be trained in the proper use of all interlocks, sensing devices, and manual closure mechanisms.

Provision of written operation and maintenance procedures and training of personnel are the responsibility of the User.

As part of the training program, testing should be performed to assure that the trainee understands the material he or she is trained in. Records should be retained by the User.

FF-8 ADMINISTRATIVE CONTROLS

The User should provide administrative controls over training, cleanliness, operation, periodic inspection, and maintenance of equipment with quick-actuating closures. Records should be retained by the User.

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

04

NONMANDATORY APPENDIX GG
GUIDANCE FOR THE USE OF U.S. CUSTOMARY AND SI UNITS IN THE ASME BOILER AND PRESSURE VESSEL CODE

GG-1 USE OF UNITS IN EQUATIONS

The equations in this Nonmandatory Appendix are suitable for use only with either the U.S. Customary or the SI units provided in Mandatory Appendix 33, or with the units provided in the nomenclature associated with that equation. It is the responsibility of the individual and organization performing the calculations to ensure that appropriate units are used. Either U.S. Customary or SI units may be used as a consistent set. When SI units are selected, U.S. Customary values in referenced specifications may be converted to SI values to at least three significant figures for use in calculations and other aspects of construction.

GG-2 GUIDELINES USED TO DEVELOP SI EQUIVALENTS

The following guidelines were used to develop SI equivalents:

(a) SI units are placed in parentheses after the U.S. Customary units in the text.

(b) In general, separate SI tables are provided if interpolation is expected. The table designation (e.g., table number) is the same for both the U.S. Customary and SI tables, with the addition of suffix "M" to the designator for the SI table, if a separate table is provided. In the text, references to a table use only the primary table number (i.e., without the "M"). For some small tables, where interpolation is not required, SI units are placed in parentheses after the U.S. Customary unit.

(c) Separate SI versions of graphical information (charts) are provided, except that if both axes are dimensionless, a single figure (chart) is used.

(d) In most cases, conversions of units in the text were done using hard SI conversion practices, with some soft conversions on a case-by-case basis, as appropriate. This was implemented by rounding the SI values to the number of significant figures of implied precision in the existing U.S. Customary units. For example, 3,000 psi has an implied precision of one significant figure. Therefore, the conversion to SI units would typically be to 20 000 kPa. This is a difference of about 3% from the "exact" or soft conversion of 20 684.27 kPa. However, the precision of the conversion was determined by the Committee on a case-by-case basis. More significant digits were included in the SI equivalent if there was any question. The values of allowable stress in Section II, Part D generally include three significant figures.

(e) Minimum thickness and radius values that are expressed in fractions of an inch were generally converted according to the following table:

Fraction, in.	Proposed SI Conversion, mm	Difference, %
$\frac{1}{32}$	0.8	−0.8
$\frac{3}{64}$	1.2	−0.8
$\frac{1}{16}$	1.5	5.5
$\frac{3}{32}$	2.5	−5.0
$\frac{1}{8}$	3	5.5
$\frac{5}{32}$	4	−0.8
$\frac{3}{16}$	5	−5.0
$\frac{7}{32}$	5.5	1.0
$\frac{1}{4}$	6	5.5
$\frac{5}{16}$	8	−0.8
$\frac{3}{8}$	10	−5.0
$\frac{7}{16}$	11	1.0
$\frac{1}{2}$	13	−2.4
$\frac{9}{16}$	14	2.0
$\frac{5}{8}$	16	−0.8
$\frac{11}{16}$	17	2.6
$\frac{3}{4}$	19	0.3
$\frac{7}{8}$	22	1.0
1	25	1.6

(f) For nominal sizes that are in even increments of inches, even multiples of 25 mm were generally used. Intermediate values were interpolated rather than converting and rounding to the nearest mm. See examples in the following table. [Note that this table does not apply

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

to nominal pipe sizes (NPS), which are covered below.]

Size, in.	Size, mm
1	25
1⅛	29
1¼	32
1½	38
2	50
2¼	57
2½	64
3	75
3½	89
4	100
4½	114
5	125
6	150
8	200
12	300
18	450
20	500
24	600
36	900
40	1 000
54	1 350
60	1 500
72	1 800

Size or Length, ft	Size or Length, m
3	1
5	1.5
200	60

(g) For nominal pipe sizes, the following relationships were used:

U.S. Customary Practice	SI Practice	U.S. Customary Practice	SI Practice
NPS ⅛	DN 6	NPS 20	DN 500
NPS ¼	DN 8	NPS 22	DN 550
NPS ⅜	DN 10	NPS 24	DN 600
NPS ½	DN 15	NPS 26	DN 650
NPS ¾	DN 20	NPS 28	DN 700
NPS 1	DN 25	NPS 30	DN 750
NPS 1¼	DN 32	NPS 32	DN 800
NPS 1½	DN 40	NPS 34	DN 850
NPS 2	DN 50	NPS 36	DN 900
NPS 2½	DN 65	NPS 38	DN 950
NPS 3	DN 80	NPS 40	DN 1000
NPS 3½	DN 90	NPS 42	DN 1050
NPS 4	DN 100	NPS 44	DN 1100
NPS 5	DN 125	NPS 46	DN 1150
NPS 6	DN 150	NPS 48	DN 1200
NPS 8	DN 200	NPS 50	DN 1250
NPS 10	DN 250	NPS 52	DN 1300
NPS 12	DN 300	NPS 54	DN 1350
NPS 14	DN 350	NPS 56	DN 1400
NPS 16	DN 400	NPS 58	DN 1450
NPS 18	DN 450	NPS 60	DN 1500

(h) Areas in square inches (in.^{2}) were converted to square mm (mm^2) and areas in square feet (ft^2) were converted to square meters (m^2). See examples in the following table:

Area (U.S. Customary)	Area (SI)
1 in.^{2}	650 mm^2
6 in.^{2}	4 000 mm^2
10 in.^{2}	6 500 mm^2
5 ft^2	0.5 m^2

(i) Volumes in cubic inches (in.^{3}) were converted to cubic mm (mm^3) and volumes in cubic feet (ft^3) were converted to cubic meters (m^3). See examples in the following table:

Volume (U.S. Customary)	Volume (SI)
1 in.^{3}	16 000 mm^3
6 in.^{3}	100 000 mm^3
10 in.^{3}	160 000 mm^3
5 ft^3	0.14 m^3

(j) Although the pressure should always be in MPa for calculations, there are cases where other units are used in the text. For example, kPa is used for small pressures. Also, rounding was to one significant figure (two at the most) in most cases. See examples in the following table. (Note that 14.7 psi converts to 101 kPa, while 15 psi converts to 100 kPa. While this may seem at first glance to be an anomaly, it is consistent with the rounding philosophy.)

Pressure (U.S. Customary)	Pressure (SI)
0.5 psi	3 kPa
2 psi	15 kPa
3 psi	20 kPa
10 psi	70 kPa
14.7 psi	101 kPa
15 psi	100 kPa
30 psi	200 kPa
50 psi	350 kPa
100 psi	700 kPa
150 psi	1 MPa
200 psi	1.5 MPa
250 psi	1.7 MPa
300 psi	2 MPa
350 psi	2.5 MPa
400 psi	3 MPa
500 psi	3.5 MPa
600 psi	4 MPa
1,200 psi	8 MPa
1,500 psi	10 MPa

(k) Material properties that are expressed in psi or ksi (e.g., allowable stress, yield and tensile strength, elastic modulus) were generally converted to MPa to three significant figures. See example in the following table:

Strength (U.S. Customary)	Strength (SI)
95,000 psi	655 MPa

(l) In most cases, temperatures (e.g., for PWHT) were

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

rounded to the nearest 5°C. Depending on the implied precision of the temperature, some were rounded to the nearest 1°C or 10°C or even 25°C. Temperatures colder than 0°F (negative values) were generally rounded to the nearest 1°C. The examples in the table below were created by rounding to the nearest 5°C, with one exception:

Temperature, °F	Temperature, °C
70	20
100	38
120	50
150	65
200	95
250	120
300	150
350	175
400	205
450	230
500	260
550	290
600	315
650	345
700	370
750	400
800	425
850	455
900	480
925	495
950	510
1,000	540
1,050	565
1,100	595
1,150	620
1,200	650
1,250	675
1,800	980
1,900	1 040
2,000	1 095
2,050	1 120

GG-3 CHECKING EQUATIONS

When a single equation is provided, it has been checked using dimensional analysis to verify that the results obtained by using either the U.S. Customary or SI units provided are equivalent. When constants used in these equations are not dimensionless, different constants are provided for each system of units. Otherwise, a U.S. Customary and an SI version of the equation are provided. However, in all cases, the Code user should check the equation for dimensional consistency.

GG-4 EXAMPLES OF DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS

(a) This example illustrates the concept of dimensional analysis.

(1) Equation and Nomenclature

$$S = \frac{Pr}{t}$$

where

S = stress, psi (MPa)
P = pressure, psi (MPa)
r = radius, inches (mm)
t = thickness, inches (mm)

(2) Dimensional Analysis

$$S\left[\frac{\text{pounds}}{(\text{inches})(\text{inches})}\right] = \frac{P\left[\frac{\text{pounds}}{(\text{inches})(\text{inches})}\right] r(\text{inches})}{t(\text{inches})}$$

(b) Note that in the above equation, it is necessary that the dimensions of the radius, r, and the thickness, t, be the same, since they must cancel out. The dimensions of the pressure, P, and the stress, S, must also be the same. For this particular equation, r and t could be in U.S. Customary units and P and S in SI units, and the result would still be acceptable. Further, any consistent units could be used for the radius and the thickness (e.g., feet, miles, meters, light years) and the result would be the same. Similarly, the units of pressure and stress can be any legitimate pressure or stress unit (e.g., psi, ksi, kPa, MPa), as long as they are the same.

(c) When the equation is converted to SI units,

$$S(\text{MPa}) = \frac{P(\text{MPa})\, r(\text{mm})}{t(\text{mm})}$$

(d) However, more complex equations present special challenges, e.g., if it is necessary to add the stress from an axial load acting on a cylinder to the stress that results from pressure.

(1) Equation and Nomenclature

$$S_t = \frac{Pr}{2t} + \frac{L}{2\pi rt}$$

where

S_t = total stress, psi (MPa)
P = pressure, psi (MPa)
L = load, pounds (N)
r = radius, inches (mm)
t = thickness, inches (mm)

(2) Dimensional Analysis

$$S_t\left[\frac{\text{pounds}}{(\text{inches})(\text{inches})}\right] = \frac{P\left[\frac{\text{pounds}}{(\text{inches})(\text{inches})}\right] r(\text{inches})}{2t(\text{inches})} + \frac{L(\text{pounds})}{2\pi r(\text{inches})\, t(\text{inches})}$$

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

(e) Note that in the above equation, it is necessary that the pressure, load, and length dimensions be consistent, because quantities cannot be added unless they have the same units. Although the first part of the equation is similar to the first example, where the length and pressure units could be in different systems, the second example requires that if the pressure and stress units are in pounds per square inch, the load must be in pounds and the radius and thickness must be in inches. Note that the load could be in kips and the pressure in ksi. This is why we should permit any consistent system of units to be used. However, the equations should be checked only for the "standard" units.

(f) When the equation is converted to SI units,

$$S_t(\text{MPa}) = \frac{P(\text{MPa})r(\text{mm})}{2t(\text{mm})} + \frac{L(\text{N})}{2\pi r(\text{mm})t(\text{mm})}$$

Note that 1 MPa = 1 N/mm^2, so

$$S_t\left[\frac{\text{N}}{(\text{mm})(\text{mm})}\right] = \frac{P\left[\frac{\text{N}}{(\text{mm})(\text{mm})}\right]r(\text{mm})}{2t(\text{mm})} + \frac{L(\text{N})}{2\pi r(\text{mm})t(\text{mm})}$$

which reduces to

$$S_t\left[\frac{\text{N}}{(\text{mm})(\text{mm})}\right] = \frac{P(\text{N})r(\text{mm})}{(\text{mm})(\text{mm})2t(\text{mm})} + \frac{L(\text{N})}{2\pi r(\text{mm})t(\text{mm})}$$

(g) Therefore, the units in the above equation are consistent. However, this is not always the case. For example, the bolted joint design rules define an effective gasket seating width as a function of the actual width using an equation of the form below.

(1) Equation and Nomenclature

$$b_e = \sqrt{b_a}$$

where

b_e = effective gasket seating width
b_a = actual gasket seating width

(2) Dimensional Analysis

$$b_e(\text{inches}) = \sqrt{b_a(\text{inches})}$$

(h) Obviously, the equation above is not dimensionally consistent; therefore, a constant is needed if it is to be used with SI units. The constant can be calculated by converting the SI unit (mm) to the U.S. Customary unit (in.) for the calculation, then converting back to get the result in mm as follows:

$$b_e(\text{mm}) = 25.4(\text{mm/inch})\sqrt{\frac{b_a(\text{mm})}{25.4(\text{mm/inch})}}$$

which can be reduced to

$$b_e(\text{mm}) = 5.04\sqrt{b_a(\text{mm})}$$

GG-5 SOFT CONVERSION FACTORS

The following table of "soft" conversion factors is provided for convenience. Multiply the U.S. Customary value by the factor given to obtain the SI value. Similarly, divide the SI value by the factor given to obtain the U.S. Customary value. In most cases it is appropriate to round the answer to three significant figures.

U.S. Customary	SI	Factor	Notes
in.	mm	25.4	. . .
ft	m	0.3048	. . .
in.^{2}	mm^2	645.16	. . .
ft^2	m^2	0.09290304	. . .
in.^{3}	mm^3	16,387.064	. . .
ft^3	m^3	0.02831685	. . .
U.S. gal	m^3	0.003785412	. . .
U.S. gal	liters	3.785412	. . .
psi	MPa	0.0068948	Used exclusively in equations
psi	kPa	6.894757	Used only in text and for nameplate
ft-lb	J	1.355818	. . .
°F	°C	$\frac{5}{9}$ × (°F − 32)	Not for temperature difference
°F	°C	$\frac{5}{9}$ × °F	For temperature differences only
R	K	$\frac{5}{9}$	Absolute temperature
lbm	kg	0.4535924	. . .
lbf	N	4.448222	. . .
in.-lb	N·mm	112.98484	Use exclusively in equations
ft-lb	N·m	1.3558181	Use only in text
ksi$\sqrt{\text{in.}}$	MPa$\sqrt{\text{m}}$	1.0988434	. . .
Btu/hr	W	0.2928104	Use for boiler rating and heat transfer
lb/ft^3	kg/m^3	16.018463	. . .

GG-6 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POSTWELD HEAT TREAT TIMES

In general, PWHT times in hours per inch of thickness were converted to minutes per millimeter of thickness as follows:

(a) 1 hr/in. = 2 min/mm. Although this results in heat treatment for only 51 min for a 25.4 mm thick section, this is considered to be within the range of intended precision of the U.S. Customary requirement.

(b) 15 min/in. = 0.5 min/mm. Although converting and rounding would give 0.6 min/mm, it was necessary to use 0.5 to be consistent with the rounding for 1 hr/in.

GG-7 NOTES ON CONVERSIONS IN SECTION II, PARTS A, B, AND C

The conversions provided by ASTM and AWS were used for consistency with those documents.

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

04

INDEX

--`,,```,,,,````-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright ASME International
Provided by IHS under license with ASME
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale